AUTHENTICATED
U.S. GOVERNMENT
INFORMATION
GPO

code of federal regulations

Patents, Trademarks, and Copyrights

37

Revised as of July 1, 1997

CONTAINING
A CODIFICATION OF DOCUMENTS
OF GENERAL APPLICABILITY
AND FUTURE EFFECT

AS OF JULY 1, 1997

With Ancillaries

Published by
the Office of the Federal Register
National Archives and Records
Administration

as a Special Edition of
the Federal Register

U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
WASHINGTON : 1997

For sale by U.S. Government Printing Office
Superintendent of Documents, Mail Stop: SSOP, Washington, DC 20402–9328

Table of Contents

	Page
Explanation	v
Title 37:	
Chapter I—Patent and Trademark Office, Department of Commerce	3
Chapter II—Copyright Office, Library of Congress	333
Chapter IV—Assistant Secretary for Technology Policy, Department of Commerce	501
Chapter V—Under Secretary for Technology, Department of Commerce	523
Finding Aids:	
Table of CFR Titles and Chapters	531
Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR	547
List of CFR Sections Affected	557

Cite this Code: CFR

To cite the regulations in this volume use title, part and section number. Thus, 37 CFR 1.1 *refers to title 37, part 1, section 1.*

Explanation

The Code of Federal Regulations is a codification of the general and permanent rules published in the Federal Register by the Executive departments and agencies of the Federal Government. The Code is divided into 50 titles which represent broad areas subject to Federal regulation. Each title is divided into chapters which usually bear the name of the issuing agency. Each chapter is further subdivided into parts covering specific regulatory areas.

Each volume of the Code is revised at least once each calendar year and issued on a quarterly basis approximately as follows:

Title 1 through Title 16.....as of January 1
Title 17 through Title 27.....as of April 1
Title 28 through Title 41.....as of July 1
Title 42 through Title 50.....as of October 1

The appropriate revision date is printed on the cover of each volume.

LEGAL STATUS

The contents of the Federal Register are required to be judicially noticed (44 U.S.C. 1507). The Code of Federal Regulations is prima facie evidence of the text of the original documents (44 U.S.C. 1510).

HOW TO USE THE CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS

The Code of Federal Regulations is kept up to date by the individual issues of the Federal Register. These two publications must be used together to determine the latest version of any given rule.

To determine whether a Code volume has been amended since its revision date (in this case, July 1, 1997), consult the ''List of CFR Sections Affected (LSA),'' which is issued monthly, and the ''Cumulative List of Parts Affected,'' which appears in the Reader Aids section of the daily Federal Register. These two lists will identify the Federal Register page number of the latest amendment of any given rule.

EFFECTIVE AND EXPIRATION DATES

Each volume of the Code contains amendments published in the Federal Register since the last revision of that volume of the Code. Source citations for the regulations are referred to by volume number and page number of the Federal Register and date of publication. Publication dates and effective dates are usually not the same and care must be exercised by the user in determining the actual effective date. In instances where the effective date is beyond the cutoff date for the Code a note has been inserted to reflect the future effective date. In those instances where a regulation published in the Federal Register states a date certain for expiration, an appropriate note will be inserted following the text.

OMB CONTROL NUMBERS

The Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980 (Pub. L. 96–511) requires Federal agencies to display an OMB control number with their information collection request.

Many agencies have begun publishing numerous OMB control numbers as amendments to existing regulations in the CFR. These OMB numbers are placed as close as possible to the applicable recordkeeping or reporting requirements.

OBSOLETE PROVISIONS

Provisions that become obsolete before the revision date stated on the cover of each volume are not carried. Code users may find the text of provisions in effect on a given date in the past by using the appropriate numerical list of sections affected. For the period before January 1, 1986, consult either the List of CFR Sections Affected, 1949–1963, 1964–1972, or 1973–1985, published in seven separate volumes. For the period beginning January 1, 1986, a ''List of CFR Sections Affected'' is published at the end of each CFR volume.

CFR INDEXES AND TABULAR GUIDES

A subject index to the Code of Federal Regulations is contained in a separate volume, revised annually as of January 1, entitled CFR INDEX AND FINDING AIDS. This volume contains the Parallel Table of Statutory Authorities and Agency Rules (Table I), and Acts Requiring Publication in the Federal Register (Table II). A list of CFR titles, chapters, and parts and an alphabetical list of agencies publishing in the CFR are also included in this volume.

An index to the text of ''Title 3—The President'' is carried within that volume.

The Federal Register Index is issued monthly in cumulative form. This index is based on a consolidation of the ''Contents'' entries in the daily Federal Register.

A List of CFR Sections Affected (LSA) is published monthly, keyed to the revision dates of the 50 CFR titles.

REPUBLICATION OF MATERIAL

There are no restrictions on the republication of material appearing in the Code of Federal Regulations.

INQUIRIES

For a legal interpretation or explanation of any regulation in this volume, contact the issuing agency. The issuing agency's name appears at the top of odd–numbered pages.

For inquiries concerning CFR reference assistance, call 202–523–5227 or write to the Director, Office of the Federal Register, National Archives and Records Administration, Washington, DC 20408.

SALES

The Government Printing Office (GPO) processes all sales and distribution of the CFR. For payment by credit card, call 202–512–1800, M–F 8 a.m. to 4 p.m. e.s.t. or fax your order to 202–512–2233, 24 hours a day. For payment by check, write to the Superintendent of Documents, Attn: New Orders, P.O. Box 371954, Pittsburgh, PA 15250–7954. For GPO Customer Service call 202–512–1803.

RAYMOND A. MOSLEY,
Director,
Office of the Federal Register.

July 1, 1997.

THIS TITLE

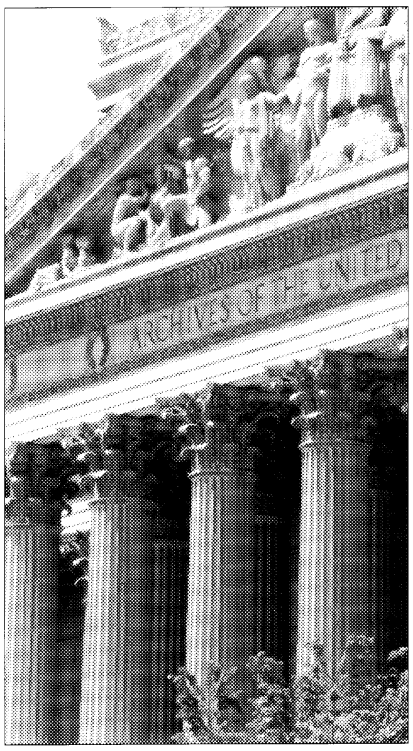
Title 37—PATENTS, TRADEMARKS AND COPYRIGHTS is composed of one volume. The contents of this volume represent all current regulations codified under this title of the CFR as of July 1, 1997.

In this revision, the parts in chapter I, subchapter A are regrouped according to subject matter. All parts pertaining to patents—parts 1, 5, and 7—appear sequentially. All parts pertaining to trademarks—parts 2 and 6—follow, also in sequence. Part 3 which pertains to both patents and trademarks follows part 1. Appropriate notes are inserted in the text to guide the user.

For this volume, Karen A. Thornton was Chief Editor. The Code of Federal Regulations publication program is under the direction of Frances D. McDonald, assisted by Alomha S. Morris.

Would you like to know. . .

if any changes have been made to the *Code of Federal Regulations* or what documents have been published in the *Federal Register* without reading the *Federal Register* every day? If so, you may wish to subscribe to the *LSA* (List of CFR Sections Affected), the *Federal Register Index,* or both.



LSA

The *LSA* (List of CFR Sections Affected) is designed to lead users of the *Code of Federal Regulations* to amendatory actions published in the *Federal Register*. The *LSA* is issued monthly in cumulative form. Entries indicate the nature of the changes—such as revised, removed, or corrected.
$27 per year.

Federal Register Index

The index, covering the contents of the daily *Federal Register,* is issued monthly in cumulative form. Entries are carried primarily under the names of the issuing agencies. Significant subjects are carried as cross-references.
$25 per year.

A finding aid is included in each publication which lists *Federal Register* page numbers with the date of publication in the *Federal Register.*

Superintendent of Documents Subscription Order Form

Order Processing Code:
***5421**

❑ **YES,** send me the following indicated subscriptions for one year:

____ **LSA (List of CFR Sections Affected),** (LCS) for $27 per year.

____ **Federal Register Index** (FRSU) $25 per year.

The total cost of my order is $ _____
Price is subject to change. International customers please add 25%.

(Includes regular shipping and handling.)

For privacy check box below:

❑ Do not make my name available to other mailers

Check method of payment:

❑ Check payable to Superintendent of Documents

❑ GPO Deposit Account ☐☐☐☐☐☐☐ — ☐

❑ VISA ❑ MasterCard ☐☐☐☐ (expiration date)

Company or personal name

Street address

City, State, ZIP code

Daytime phone with area code

Purchase order No. (optional)

Credit card No. (must be 20 digits)

Thank you for your order!

Authorizing signature 1/97

Mail To: Superintendent of Documents
PO Box 371954
Pittsburgh PA 15250–7954

Fax your orders (202) 512–2250
Phone your orders (202) 512–1800

Title 37—Patents, Trademarks, and Copyrights

	Part
CHAPTER I—Patent and Trademark Office, Department of Commerce	1
CHAPTER II—Copyright Office, Library of Congress	201
CHAPTER IV—Assistant Secretary for Technology Policy, Department of Commerce	401
CHAPTER V—Under Secretary for Technology, Department of Commerce	501

CHAPTER I—PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE, DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

EDITORIAL NOTE: Chapter I—Patent and Trademark Office, Department of Commerce, Subchapter A—General, contains patent and trademark regulations. Subchapter A has been restructured to allow parts pertaining to patent regulations and trademark regulations to be grouped separately.

SUBCHAPTER A—GENERAL

PATENTS

Part		*Page*
1	Rules of practice in patent cases	5
3	Assignment, recording and rights of assignee	178
4	[Reserved]	
5	Secrecy of certain inventions and licenses to export and file applications in foreign countries	182
7	Register of Government interests in patents	190
	Index I—Rules relating to patents	193

TRADEMARKS

2	Rules of practice in trademark cases	216
4	[Reserved]	270
6	Classification of goods and services under the Trademark Act	275
	Index II—Rules relating to trademarks	293

PRACTICE BEFORE THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

10	Representation of others before the Patent and Trademark Office	323
15	[Reserved]	
15a	[Reserved]	
	Index III—Rules relating to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office	

SUBCHAPTER B—GOVERNMENT INVENTIONS JURISDICTION

100	[Reserved]
101	[Reserved]

102 [Reserved]

SUBCHAPTER C—PROTECTION OF FOREIGN MASK WORKS

150 Requests for Presidential proclamations pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 902(a)(2) 331

SUBCHAPTER A—GENERAL

PATENTS

PART 1—RULES OF PRACTICE IN PATENT CASES

Subpart A—General Provisions

GENERAL INFORMATION AND CORRESPONDENCE

Sec.
1.1 Addresses for correspondence with the Patent and Trademark Office.
1.2 Business to be transacted in writing.
1.3 Business to be conducted with decorum and courtesy.
1.4 Nature of correspondence and signature requirements.
1.5 Identification of application, patent or registration.
1.6 Receipt of correspondence.
1.7 Times for taking action: Expiration on Saturday, Sunday or Federal holiday.
1.8 Certificate of mailing or transmission.
1.9 Definitions.
1.10 Filing of correspondence by ≥Express Mail.≥

RECORDS AND FILES OF THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

1.11 Files open to the public.
1.12 Assignment records open to public inspection.
1.13 Copies and certified copies.
1.14 Patent applications preserved in confidence.
1.15 Requests for identifiable records.

FEES AND PAYMENT OF MONEY

1.16 National application filing fees.
1.17 Patent application processing fees.
1.18 Patent issue fees.
1.19 Document supply fees.
1.20 Post issuance fees.
1.21 Miscellaneous fees and charges.
1.22 Fees payable in advance.
1.23 Method of payment.
1.24 Coupons.
1.25 Deposit accounts.
1.26 Refunds.
1.27 Statement of status as small entity.
1.28 Effect on fees of failure to establish status, or change status, as a small entity.

Subpart B—National Processing Provisions

PROSECUTION OF APPLICATION AND APPOINTMENT OF ATTORNEY OR AGENT

1.31 Applicants may be represented by a registered attorney or agent.
1.32 [Reserved]
1.33 Correspondence respecting patent applications, reexamination proceedings, and other proceedings.
1.34 Recognition for representation.
1.36 Revocation of power of attorney or authorization; withdrawal of attorney or agent.

WHO MAY APPLY FOR A PATENT

1.41 Applicant for patent.
1.42 When the inventor is dead.
1.43 When the inventor is insane or legally incapacitated.
1.44 Proof of authority.
1.45 Joint inventors.
1.46 Assigned inventions and patents.
1.47 Filing when an inventor refuses to sign or cannot be reached.
1.48 Correction of inventorship.

THE APPLICATION

1.51 General requisites of an application.
1.52 Language, paper, writing, margins.
1.53 Application number, filing date, and completion of application.
1.54 Parts of application to be filed together; filing receipt.
1.55 Claim for foreign priority.
1.56 Duty to disclose information material to patentability.
1.57 [Reserved]
1.58 Chemical and mathematical formulae and tables.
1.59 Papers of application with filing date not to be returned.
1.60 Continuation or divisional application for invention disclosed in a prior nonprovisional application.
1.61 [Reserved]
1.62 File wrapper continuing procedure.

OATH OR DECLARATION

1.63 Oath or declaration.
1.64 Person making oath or declaration.
1.66 Officers authorized to administer oaths.
1.67 Supplemental oath or declaration.
1.68 Declaration in lieu of oath.
1.69 Foreign language oaths and declarations.
1.70 [Reserved]

SPECIFICATION

1.71 Detailed description and specification of the invention.
1.72 Title and abstract.
1.73 Summary of the invention.
1.74 Reference to drawings.
1.75 Claim(s).
1.77 Arrangement of application elements.

1.78 Claiming benefit of earlier filing date and cross-references to other applications.
1.79 Reservation clauses not permitted.

THE DRAWINGS

1.81 Drawings required in patent application.
1.83 Content of drawing.
1.84 Standards for drawings.
1.85 Corrections to drawings.
1.88 [Reserved]

MODELS, EXHIBITS, SPECIMENS

1.91 Models not generally required as part of application or patent.
1.92 Model or exhibit may be required.
1.93 Specimens.
1.94 Return of models, exhibits or specimens.
1.95 Copies of exhibits.
1.96 Submission of computer program listings.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

1.97 Filing information disclosure statement.
1.98 Content of information disclosure statement.
1.99 [Reserved]

EXAMINATION OF APPLICATIONS

1.101 Order of examination.
1.102 Advancement of examination.
1.103 Suspension of action.
1.104 Nature of examination; examiner's action.
1.105 Completeness of examiner's action.
1.106 Rejection of claims.
1.107 Citation of references.
1.108 Abandoned applications not cited.
1.109 Reasons for allowance.
1.110 Inventorship and date of invention of the subject matter of individual claims.

ACTION BY APPLICANT AND FURTHER CONSIDERATION

1.111 Reply by applicant or patent owner.
1.112 Reconsideration.
1.113 Final rejection or action.

AMENDMENTS

1.115 Amendment.
1.116 Amendments after final action.
1.117 Amendment and revision required.
1.118 Amendment of disclosure.
1.119 Amendment of claims.
1.121 Manner of making amendments.
1.122 Entry and consideration of amendments.
1.123 Amendments to the drawing.
1.124 Amendment of amendments.
1.125 Substitute specification.
1.126 Numbering of claims.
1.127 Petition from refusal to admit amendment.

TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS

1.129 Transitional procedures for limited examination after final rejection and restriction practice.

AFFIDAVITS OVERCOMING REJECTIONS

1.130 Affidavit or declaration to disqualify commonly owned patent as prior art.
1.131 Affidavit or declaration of prior invention to overcome cited patent or publication.
1.132 Affidavits or declarations traversing grounds of rejection.

INTERVIEWS

1.133 Interviews.

TIME FOR RESPONSE BY APPLICANT; ABANDONMENT OF APPLICATION

1.134 Time period for response to an Office action.
1.135 Abandonment for failure to respond within time period.
1.136 Filing of timely responses with petition and fee for extension of time and extensions of time for cause.
1.137 Revival of abandoned application.
1.138 Express abandonment.
1.139 Revival of provisional application.

JOINDER OF INVENTIONS IN ONE APPLICATION; RESTRICTION

1.141 Different inventions in one national application.
1.142 Requirement for restriction.
1.143 Reconsideration of requirement.
1.144 Petition from requirement for restriction.
1.145 Subsequent presentation of claims for different invention.
1.146 Election of species.

DESIGN PATENTS

1.151 Rules applicable.
1.152 Design drawing.
1.153 Title, description and claim, oath or declaration.
1.154 Arrangement of specification.
1.155 Issue and term of design patents.

PLANT PATENTS

1.161 Rules applicable.
1.162 Applicant, oath or declaration.
1.163 Specification.
1.164 Claim.
1.165 Plant drawings.
1.166 Specimens.
1.167 Examination.

REISSUES

1.171 Application for reissue.
1.172 Applicants, assignees.
1.173 Specification.
1.174 Drawings.
1.175 Reissue oath or declaration.

1.176 Examination of reissue.
1.177 Reissue in divisions.
1.178 Original patent.
1.179 Notice of reissue application.

PETITIONS AND ACTION BY THE COMMISSIONER

1.181 Petition to the Commissioner.
1.182 Questions not specifically provided for.
1.183 Suspension of rules.
1.184 Reconsideration of cases decided by former Commissioners.

APPEAL TO THE BOARD OF PATENT APPEALS AND INTERFERENCES

1.191 Appeal to Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.
1.192 Appellant's brief.
1.193 Examiner's answer.
1.194 Oral hearing.
1.195 Affidavits or declarations after appeal.
1.196 Decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.
1.197 Action following decision.
1.198 Reopening after decision.

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

1.248 Service of papers; manner of service; proof of service in cases other than interferences.

PROTESTS AND PUBLIC USE PROCEEDINGS

1.291 Protests by the public against pending applications.
1.292 Public use proceedings.
1.293 Statutory invention registration.
1.294 Examination of request for publication of a statutory invention registration and patent application to which the request is directed.
1.295 Review of decision finally refusing to publish a statutory invention registration.
1.296 Withdrawal of request for publication of statutory invention registration.
1.297 Publication of statutory invention registration.

REVIEW OF PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE DECISIONS BY COURT

1.301 Appeal to U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.
1.302 Notice of appeal.
1.303 Civil action under 35 U.S.C. 145, 146, 306.
1.304 Time for appeal or civil action.

ALLOWANCE AND ISSUE OF PATENT

1.311 Notice of allowance.
1.312 Amendments after allowance.
1.313 Withdrawal from issue.
1.314 Issuance of patent.
1.315 Delivery of patent.
1.316 Application abandoned for failure to pay issue fee.
1.317 Lapsed patents; delayed payment of balance of issue fee.
1.318 Notification of national publication of a patent based on an international application.

DISCLAIMER

1.321 Statutory disclaimers, including terminal disclaimers.

CORRECTION OF ERRORS IN PATENT

1.322 Certificate of correction of Office mistake.
1.323 Certificate of correction of applicant's mistake.
1.324 Correction of inventorship in patent.
1.325 Other mistakes not corrected.

ARBITRATION AWARDS

1.331–1.334 [Reserved]
1.335 Filing of notice of arbitration awards.

AMENDMENT OF RULES

1.351 Amendments to rules will be published.
1.352 Publication of notice of proposed amendments.

MAINTENANCE FEES

1.362 Time for payment of maintenance fees.
1.363 Fee address for maintenance fee purposes.
1.366 Submission of maintenance fees.
1.377 Review of decision refusing to accept and record payment of a maintenence fee filed prior to expiration of patent.
1.378 Acceptance of delayed payment of maintenance fee in expired patent to reinstate patent.

Subpart C—International Processing Provisions

GENERAL INFORMATION

1.401 Definitions of terms under the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
1.412 The United States Receiving Office.
1.413 The United States International Searching Authority.
1.414 The United States Patent and Trademark Ofice as a Designated Office or Elected Office.
1.415 The International Bureau.
1.416 The United States International Preliminary Examining Authority.

WHO MAY FILE AN INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION

1.421 Applicant for international application.
1.422 When the inventor is dead.
1.423 When the inventor is insane or legally incapacitated.

1.424 Joint inventors.
1.425 Filing by other than inventor.

THE INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION

1.431 International application requirements.
1.432 Designation of States and payment of designation fees.
1.433 Physical requirements of international application.
1.434 The request.
1.435 The description.
1.436 The claims.
1.437 The drawings.
1.438 The abstract.

FEES

1.445 International application filing, processing and search fees.
1.446 Refund of international application filing and processing fees.

PRIORITY

1.451 The priority claim and priority document in an international application.

REPRESENTATION

1.455 Representation in international applications.

TRANSMITTAL OF RECORD COPY

1.461 Procedures for transmittal of record copy to the International Bureau.

TIMING

1.465 Timing of application processing based on the priority date.
1.468 Delays in meeting time limits.

AMENDMENTS

1.471 Corrections and amendments during international processing.
1.472 Changes in person, name, or address of applicants and inventors.

UNITY OF INVENTION

1.475 Unity of invention before the International Searching Authority, the International Preliminary Examining Authority and during the national stage.
1.476 Determination of unity of invention before the International Searching Authority.
1.477 Protest to lack of unity of invention before the International Searching Authority.

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION

1.480 Demand for international preliminary examination.
1.482 International preliminary examination fees.
1.484 Conduct of international preliminary examination.
1.485 Amendments by applicant during international preliminary examination.
1.488 Determination of unity of invention before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.
1.489 Protest to lack of unity of invention before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

NATIONAL STAGE

1.491 Entry into the national stage.
1.492 National stage fees.
1.494 Entering the national stage in the United States of America as a Designated Office.
1.495 Entering the national stage in the United States of America as an Elected Office.
1.496 Examination of international applications in the national stage.
1.497 Oath or declaration under 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4).
1.499 Unity of invention during the national stage.

Subpart D—Reexamination of Patents

CITATION OF PRIOR ART

1.501 Citation of prior art in patent files.

REQUEST FOR REEXAMINATION

1.510 Request for reexamination.
1.515 Determination of the request for reexamination.
1.520 Reexamination at the initiative of the Commissioner.

REEXAMINATION

1.525 Order to reexamine.
1.530 Statement and amendment by patent owner.
1.535 Reply by requester.
1.540 Consideration of responses.
1.550 Conduct of reexamination proceedings.
1.552 Scope of reexamination in reexamination proceedings.
1.555 Information material to patentability in reexamination proceedings.
1.560 Interviews in reexamination proceedings.
1.565 Concurrent office proceedings.

CERTIFICATE

1.570 Issuance of reexamination certificate after reexamination proceedings.

Subpart E—Interferences

1.601 Scope of rules, definitions.
1.602 Interest in applications and patents involved in an interference.
1.603 Interference between applications; subject matter of the interference.
1.604 Request for interference between applications by an applicant.

1.605 Suggestion of claim to applicant by examiner.
1.606 Interference between an application and a patent; subject matter of the interference.
1.607 Request by applicant for interference with patent.
1.608 Interference between an application and a patent; *prima facie* showing by applicant.
1.609 Preparation of interference papers by examiner.
1.610 Assignment of interference to administrative patent judge, time period for completing interference.
1.611 Declaration of interference.
1.612 Access to applications.
1.613 Lead attorney, same attorney representing different parties in an interference, withdrawal of attorney or agent.
1.614 Jurisdiction over interference.
1.615 Suspension of ex parte prosecution.
1.616 Sanctions for failure to comply with rules or order or for taking and maintaining a frivolous position.
1.617 Summary judgment against applicant.
1.618 Return of unauthorized papers.
1.621 Preliminary statement, time for filing, notice of filing.
1.622 Preliminary statement, who made invention, where invention made.
1.623 Preliminary statement; invention made in United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.
1.624 Preliminary statement; invention made in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.
1.625 Preliminary statement; derivation by an opponent.
1.626 Preliminary statement; earlier application.
1.627 Preliminary statement; sealing before filing, opening of statement.
1.628 Preliminary statement; correction of error.
1.629 Effect of preliminary statement.
1.630 Reliance on earlier application.
1.631 Access to preliminary statement, service of preliminary statement.
1.632 Notice of intent to argue abandonment, suppression, or concealment by opponent.
1.633 Preliminary motions.
1.634 Motion to correct inventorship.
1.635 Miscellaneous motions.
1.636 Motions, time for filing.
1.637 Content of motions.
1.638 Opposition and reply; time for filing opposition and reply.
1.639 Evidence in support of motion, opposition, or reply.
1.640 Motions, hearing and decision, redeclaration of interference, order to show cause.
1.641 Unpatentability discovered by administrative patent judge.
1.642 Addition of application or patent to interference.
1.643 Prosecution of interference by assignee.
1.644 Petitions in interferences.
1.645 Extension of time, late papers, stay of proceedings.
1.646 Service of papers, proof of service.
1.647 Translation of document in foreign language.
1.651 Setting times for discovery and taking testimony, parties entitled to take testimony.
1.652 Judgment for failure to take testimony or file record.
1.653 Record and exhibits.
1.654 Final hearing.
1.655 Matters considered in rendering a final decision.
1.656 Briefs for final hearing.
1.657 Burden of proof as to date of invention.
1.658 Final decision.
1.659 Recommendation.
1.660 Notice of reexamination, reissue, protest, or litigation.
1.661 Termination of interference after judgment.
1.662 Request for entry of adverse judgment; reissue filed by patentee.
1.663 Status of claim of defeated applicant after interference.
1.664 Action after interference.
1.665 Second interference.
1.666 Filing of interference settlement agreements.
1.671 Evidence must comply with rules.
1.672 Manner of taking testimony.
1.673 Notice of examination of witness.
1.674 Persons before whom depositions may be taken.
1.675 Examination of witness, reading and signing transcript of deposition.
1.676 Certification and filing by officer, marking exhibits.
1.677 Form of an affidavit or a transcript of deposition.
1.678 Time for filing transcript of deposition.
1.679 Inspection of transcript.
1.682 Official records and printed publications.
1.683 Testimony in another interference, proceeding, or action.
1.684 [Reserved]
1.685 Errors and irregularities in depositions.
1.687 Additional discovery.
1.688 Use of discovery.
1.690 Arbitration of interferences.

Subpart F—Extension of Patent Term

1.701 Extension of patent term due to prosecution delay.
1.710 Patents subject to extension of the patent term.

1.720 Conditions for extension of patent term.
1.730 Applicant for extension of patent term.
1.740 Application for extension of patent term.
1.741 Filing date of application.
1.750 Determination of eligibility for extension of patent term.
1.760 Interim extension of patent term under 35 U.S.C. 156(e)(2).
1.765 Duty of disclosure in patent term extension proceedings.
1.770 Express withdrawal of application for extension of patent term.
1.775 Calculation of patent term extension for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product.
1.776 Calculation of patent term extension for a food additive or color additive.
1.777 Calculation of patent term extension for a medical device.
1.778 Calculation of patent term extension for an animal drug product.
1.779 Calculation of patent term extension for a veterinary biological product.
1.780 Certificate of extension of patent term.
1.785 Multiple applications for extension of term of the same patent or of different patents for the same regulatory review period for a product.
1.790 Interim extension of patent term under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(5).
1.791 Termination of interim extension granted prior to regulatory approval of a product for commercial marketing or use.

Subpart G—Biotechnology Invention Disclosures

DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL

1.801 Biological material.
1.802 Need or Opportunity to make a deposit.
1.803 Acceptable depository.
1.804 Time of making an original deposit.
1.805 Replacement or supplement of deposit.
1.806 Term of deposit.
1.807 Viability of deposit.
1.808 Furnishing of samples.
1.809 Examination procedures.

APPLICATION DISCLOSURES CONTAINING NUCLEOTIDE AND/OR AMINO ACID SEQUENCES

1.821 Nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence disclosures in patent applications.
1.822 Symbols and format to be used for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence data.
1.823 Requirements for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences as part of the application papers.
1.824 Form and Format for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence submissions in computer readable form.
1.825 Amendments to or replacement of sequence listing and computer readable copy thereof.

APPENDIX A TO SUBPART G TO PART 1—SAMPLE SEQUENCE LISTING
APPENDIX B TO SUBPART G TO PART 1—HEADINGS FOR INFORMATION ITEMS IN § 1.823

AUTHORITY: 35 U.S.C. 6 and 23, unless otherwise noted.

SOURCE: 24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, unless otherwise noted.

EDITORIAL NOTE: In Patent and Trademark Office publications and usage the part number is omitted from the numbers of §§ 1.1 to 1.352 and the numbers to the right of the decimal point correspond with the respective rule numbers.

Subpart A—General Provisions

GENERAL INFORMATION AND CORRESPONDENCE

§ 1.1 Addresses for correspondence with the Patent and Trademark Office.

(a) Except for § 1.1(a)(3) (i) and (ii), all correspondence intended for the Patent and Trademark Office must be addressed to either ''Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231'' or to specific areas within the Office as set out in paragraphs (a)(1), (2) and (3)(iii) of this section. When appropriate, correspondence should also be marked for the attention of a particular office or individual.

(1) *Patent correspondence.* All correspondence concerning patent matters processed by organizations reporting to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents should be addressed to ''Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231.''

(2) *Trademark correspondence.* All correspondence concerning trademark matters, except for trademark-related documents sent to the Assignment Division for recordation and requests for certified and uncertified copies of trademark application and registration documents, should be addressed to ''Assistant Commissioner for Trademarks, 2900 Crystal Drive, Arlington, Virginia 22202–3513.'' This includes correspondence intended for the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.

(3) *Office of Solicitor correspondence.* (i) Correspondence relating to pending litigation required by court rule or order to be served on the Solicitor shall be hand-delivered to the Office of the Solicitor or shall be mailed to: Office of the Solicitor, P.O. Box 15667, Arlington, Virginia 22215; or such other address as may be designated in writing in the litigation. See §§1.302(c) and 2.145(b)(3) for filing a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.

(ii) Correspondence relating to disciplinary proceedings pending before an Administrative Law Judge or the Commissioner shall be mailed to: Office of the Solicitor, P.O. Box 16116, Arlington, Virginia 22215.

(iii) All other correspondence to the Office of the Solicitor shall be addressed to: Box 8, Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231.

(iv) Correspondence improperly addressed to a Post Office Box specified in paragraphs (a)(3) (i) and (ii) of this section will not be filed elsewhere in the Patent and Trademark Office, and may be returned.

(b) Letters and other communications relating to international applications during the international stage and prior to the assignment of a national serial number should be additionally marked ''Box PCT.''

(c) Requests for reexamination should be additionally marked ''Box Reexam.''

(d) Payments of maintenance fees in patents and other communications relating thereto should be additionally marked ''Box M. Fee.''

(e) Communications relating to interferences and applications or patents involved in an interference should be additionally marked ''BOX INTERFERENCE.''

(f) All applications for extension of patent term and any communications relating thereto intended for the Patent and Trademark Office should be additionally marked ''Box Patent Ext.'' When appropriate, the communication should also be marked to the attention of a particular individual, as where a decision has been rendered.

(g) [Reserved]

(h) In applications under section 1(b) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1051(b), all statements of use filed under section 1(d) of the Act, and requests for extensions of time therefor, should be additionally marked ''Box ITU.''

(i) The filing of all provisional applications and any communications relating thereto should be additionally marked ''Box Provisional Patent Application.''

NOTE: Sections 1.1 to 1.26 are applicable to trademark cases as well as to national and international patent cases except for provisions specifically directed to patent cases. See §1.9 for definitions of ''national application'' and ''international application.''

(Pub. L. 94–131, 89 Stat. 685)

[46 FR 29181, May 29, 1981, as amended at 49 FR 34724, Aug. 31, 1984; 49 FR 48451, Dec. 12, 1984; 52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987; 53 FR 16413, May 9, 1988; 54 FR 37588, Sept. 11, 1989; 60 FR 20220, Apr. 25, 1995; 61 FR 56446, Nov. 1, 1996]

§1.2 Business to be transacted in writing.

All business with the Patent and Trademark Office should be transacted in writing. The personal attendance of applicants or their attorneys or agents at the Patent and Trademark Office is unnecessary. The action of the Patent and Trademark Office will be based exclusively on the written record in the Office. No attention will be paid to any alleged oral promise, stipulation, or understanding in relation to which there is disagreement or doubt.

§1.3 Business to be conducted with decorum and courtesy.

Applicants and their attorneys or agents are required to conduct their business with the Patent and Trademark Office with decorum and courtesy. Papers presented in violation of this requirement will be submitted to the Commissioner and will be returned by the Commissioner's direct order. Complaints against examiners and other employees must be made in correspondence separate from other papers.

[61 FR 56446, Nov. 1, 1996]

§1.4 Nature of correspondence and signature requirements.

(a) Correspondence with the Patent and Trademark Office comprises:

(1) Correspondence relating to services and facilities of the Office, such as general inquiries, requests for publications supplied by the Office, orders for printed copies of patents or trademark registrations, orders for copies of records, transmission of assignments for recording, and the like, and

(2) Correspondence in and relating to a particular application or other proceeding in the Office. See particularly the rules relating to the filing, processing, or other proceedings of national applications in subpart B, §§ 1.31 to 1.378; of international applications in subpart C, §§ 1.401 to 1.499; of reexamination of patents in subpart D, §§ 1.501 to 1.570; of interferences in subpart E; §§ 1.601 to 1.690; of extension of patent term in subpart F, §§ 1.710 to 1.785; and of trademark applications §§ 2.11 to 2.189.

(b) Since each application file should be complete in itself, a separate copy of every paper to be filed in an application should be furnished for each application to which the paper pertains, even though the contents of the papers filed in two or more applications may be identical.

(c) Since different matters may be considered by different branches or sections of the Patent and Trademark Office, each distinct subject, inquiry or order should be contained in a separate letter to avoid confusion and delay in answering letters dealing with different subjects.

(d) Each piece of correspondence, except as provided in paragraphs (e) and (f) of this section, filed in a patent or trademark application, reexamination proceeding, patent or trademark interference proceeding, patent file or trademark registration file, trademark opposition proceeding, trademark cancellation proceeding, or trademark concurrent use proceeding, which requires a person's signature, must either:

(1) Be an original, that is, have an original signature personally signed in permanent ink by that person; or

(2) Be a copy, such as a photocopy or facsimile transmission (§ 1.6(d)), of an original. In the event that a copy of the original is filed, the original should be retained as evidence of authenticity. If a question of authenticity arises, the Patent and Trademark Office may require submission of the original.

(e) Correspondence requiring a person's signature and relating to registration to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office in patent cases, enrollment and disciplinary investigations, or disciplinary proceedings must be submitted with an original signature personally signed in permanent ink by that person.

(f) When a document that is required by statute to be certified must be filed, a copy, including a photocopy or facsimile transmission, of the certification is not acceptable.

(Pub. L. 94–131, 89 Stat. 685; 35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 48 FR 2707, Jan. 20, 1982; 49 FR 48451, Dec. 12, 1984; 53 FR 47807, Nov. 28, 1988; 58 FR 54501, Oct. 22, 1993]

§ 1.5 Identification of application, patent or registration.

(a) No correspondence relating to an application should be filed prior to receipt of the application number from the Patent and Trademark Office. When a letter directed to the Patent and Trademark Office concerns a previously filed application for a patent, it must identify on the top page in a conspicuous location, the application number (consisting of the series code and the serial number; e.g., 07/123,456), or the serial number and filing date assigned to that application by the Patent and Trademark Office, or the international application number of the international application. Any correspondence not containing such identification will be returned to the sender where a return address is available. The returned correspondence will be accompanied by a cover letter which will indicate to the sender that if the returned correspondence is resubmitted to the Patent and Trademark Office within two weeks of the mailing date on the cover letter, the original date of receipt of the correspondence will be considered by the Patent and Trademark Office as the date of receipt of the correspondence. Applicants may use either the Certificate of Mailing or Transmission procedure under § 1.8 or the Express Mail procedure under § 1.10

for resubmissions of returned correspondence if they desire to have the benefit of the date of deposit with the United States Postal Service. If the returned correspondence is not resubmitted within the two-week period, the date of receipt of the resubmission will be considered to be the date of receipt of the correspondence. The two-week period to resubmit the returned correspondence will not be extended. In addition to the application number, all letters directed to the Patent and Trademark Office concerning applications for patents should also state the name of the applicant, the title of the invention, the date of filing the same, and, if known, the group art unit or other unit within the Patent and Trademark Office responsible for considering the letter and the name of the examiner or other person to which it has been assigned.

(b) When the letter concerns a patent other than for purposes of paying a maintenance fee, it should state the number and date of issue of the patent, the name of the patentee, and the title of the invention. For letters concerning payment of a maintenance fee in a patent, see the provisions of §1.366(c).

(c) A letter relating to a trademark application should identify it as such and by the name of the applicant and the serial number and filing date of the application. A letter relating to a registered trademark should identify it by the name of the registrant and by the number and date of the certificate.

(d) A letter relating to a reexamination proceeding should identify it as such by the number of the patent undergoing reexamination, the reexamination request control number assigned to such proceeding and, if known, the group art unit and name of the examiner to which it has been assigned.

(e) When a paper concerns an interference, it should state the names of the parties and the number of the interference. The name of the examiner-in-chief assigned to the interference (§1.610) and the name of the party filing the paper should appear conspicuously on the first page of the paper.

(f) When a paper concerns a provisional application, it should identify the application as such and include the application number.

(Pub. L. 94–131, 89 Stat. 685; 35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 46 FR 29181, May 29, 1981; 49 FR 552, Jan. 4, 1984; 49 FR 48451, Dec. 12, 1984; 53 FR 47807, Nov. 28, 1988; 58 FR 54501, Oct. 22, 1993;61 FR 42802, Aug. 19, 1996; 61 FR 56446, Nov. 1, 1996]

§1.6 Receipt of correspondence.

(a) *Date of receipt and Express Mail date of deposit.* Correspondence received in the Patent and Trademark Office is stamped with the date of receipt except as follows:

(1) The Patent and Trademark Office is not open for the filing of correspondence on any day that is a Saturday, Sunday or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. Except for correspondence transmitted by facsimile as provided for in paragraph (a)(3) of this section, no correspondence is received in the Patent and Trademark Office on Saturdays, Sundays or Federal holidays within the District of Columbia.

(2) Correspondence filed in accordance with §1.10 will be stamped with the date of deposit as ''Express Mail'' with the United States Postal Service.

(3) Correspondence transmitted by facsimile to the Patent and Trademark Office will be stamped with the date on which the complete transmission is received in the Patent and Trademark Office unless that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, in which case the date stamped will be the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia.

(b) *Patent and Trademark Office Post Office pouch.* Mail placed in the Patent and Trademark Office pouch up to midnight on any day, except Saturdays, Sundays and Federal holidays within the District of Columbia, by the post office at Washington, DC, serving the Patent and Trademark Office, is considered as having been received in the Patent and Trademark Office on the day it was so placed in the pouch by the U.S. Postal Service.

(c) *Correspondence delivered by hand.* In addition to being mailed, correspondence may be delivered by hand

during hours the Office is open to receive correspondence.

(d) *Facsimile transmission.* Except in the cases enumerated below, correspondence, including authorizations to charge a deposit account, may be transmitted by facsimile. The receipt date accorded to the correspondence will be the date on which the complete transmission is received in the Patent and Trademark Office, unless that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. See § 1.6(a)(3). To facilitate proper processing, each transmission session should be limited to correspondence to be filed in a single application or other proceeding before the Patent and Trademark Office. The application number of a patent or trademark application, the control number of a reexamination proceeding, the interference number of an interference proceeding, the patent number of a patent, or the registration number of a trademark should be entered as a part of the sender's identification on a facsimile cover sheet. Facsimile transmissions are not permitted and if submitted, will not be accorded a date of receipt, in the following situations:

(1) Correspondence as specified in § 1.4(e), requiring an original signature;

(2) Certified documents as specified in § 1.4(f);

(3) Correspondence which cannot receive the benefit of the certificate of mailing or transmission as specified in § 1.8 (a)(2)(i)(A) through (D) and (F); 1.8 (a)(2)(ii)(A) and (D); and 1.8 (a)(2)(iii)(A);

(4) Drawings submitted under §§ 1.81, 1.83 through 1.85, 1.152, 1.165, 1.174, 1.437, 2.51, 2.52, or 2.72;

(5) A request for reexamination under § 1.510;

(6) Correspondence to be filed in a patent application subject to a secrecy order under §§ 5.1 through 5.8 of this chapter and directly related to the secrecy order content of the application;

(7) Requests for cancellation or amendment of a registration under section 7(e) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1057(e); and certificates of registration surrendered for cancellation or amendment under section 7(e) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1057(e);

(8) Correspondence to be filed with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, except the notice of ex parte appeal;

(9) Correspondence to be filed in an interference proceeding which consists of a preliminary statement under § 1.621; a transcript of a deposition under § 1.676 or of interrogatories, cross-interrogatories, or recorded answers under § 1.684(c); or an evidentiary record and exhibits under § 1.653.

(e) *Interruptions in U.S. Postal Service.* If interruptions or emergencies in the United States Postal Service which have been so designated by the Commissioner occur, the Patent and Trademark Office will consider as filed on a particular date in the Office any correspondence which is:

(1) Promptly filed after the ending of the designated interruption or emergency; and

(2) Accompanied by a statement indicating that such correspondence would have been filed on that particular date if it were not for the designated interruption or emergency in the United States Postal Service. Such statement must be a verified statement if made by a person other than a practitioner as defined in § 10.1(r) of this chapter.

[58 FR 54501, Oct. 22, 1993; 58 FR 64154, Dec. 6, 1993; 61 FR 56447, Nov. 1, 1996]

§ 1.7 Times for taking action: Expiration on Saturday, Sunday or Federal holiday.

Whenever periods of time are specified in this part in days, calendar days are intended. When the day, or the last day fixed by statute or by or under this part for taking any action or paying any fee in the Patent and Trademark Office falls on Saturday, Sunday, or on a Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, the action may be taken, or the fee paid, on the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday. See § 1.304 for time for appeal or for commencing civil action.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2707, Jan. 20, 1983; 48 FR 4285, Jan. 31, 1983]

§1.8 Certificate of mailing or transmission.

(a) Except in the cases enumerated in paragraph (a)(2) of this section, correspondence required to be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office within a set period of time will be considered as being timely filed if the procedure described in this section is followed. The actual date of receipt will be used for all other purposes.

(1) Correspondence will be considered as being timely filed if:

(i) The correspondence is mailed or transmitted prior to expiration of the set period of time by being:

(A) Addressed as set out in §1.1(a) and deposited with the U.S. Postal Service with sufficient postage as first class mail; or

(B) Transmitted by facsimile to the Patent and Trademark Office in accordance with §1.6(d); and

(ii) The correspondence includes a certificate for each piece of correspondence stating the date of deposit or transmission. The person signing the certificate should have reasonable basis to expect that the correspondence would be mailed or transmitted on or before the date indicated.

(2) The procedure described in paragraph (a)(1) of this section does not apply to, and no benefit will be given to a Certificate of Mailing or Transmission on the following:

(i) *Relative to Patents and Patent Applications—*

(A) The filing of a national patent application specification and drawing or other correspondence for the purpose of obtaining an application filing date;

(B) The filing of correspondence in an interference which an examiner-in-chief orders to be filed by hand or ''Express Mail'';

(C) The filing of agreements between parties to an interference under 35 U.S.C. 135(c);

(D) The filing of an international application for patent;

(E) The filing of correspondence in an international application before the U.S. Receiving Office, the U.S. International Searching Authority, or the U.S. International Preliminary Examining Authority;

(F) The filing of a copy of the international application and the basic national fee necessary to enter the national stage, as specified in §1.494(b) or §1.495(b).

(ii) *Relative to Trademark Registrations and Trademark Applications—*

(A) The filing of a trademark application.

(B) [Reserved]

(C) [Reserved]

(D) [Reserved]

(E) [Reserved]

(F) [Reserved]

(iii) *Relative to Disciplinary Proceedings—*

(A) Correspondence filed in connection with a disciplinary proceeding under part 10 of this chapter.

(B) [Reserved]

(b) In the event that correspondence is considered timely filed by being mailed or transmitted in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section, but not received in the Patent and Trademark Office, and the application is held to be abandoned or the proceeding dismissed, terminated, or decided with prejudice, the correspondence will be considered timely if the party who forwarded such correspondence:

(1) Informs the Office of the previous mailing or transmission of the correspondence promptly after becoming aware that the Office has no evidence of receipt of the correspondence,

(2) Supplies an additional copy of the previously mailed or transmitted correspondence and certificate, and

(3) Includes a statement which attests on a personal knowledge basis or to the satisfaction of the Commissioner to the previous timely mailing or transmission. Such statement must be a verified statement if made by a person other than a practitioner as defined in §10.1(r) of this chapter. If the correspondence was sent by facsimile transmission, a copy of the sending unit's report confirming transmission may be used to support this statement.

(c) The Office may require additional evidence to determine if the correspondence was timely filed.

[58 FR 54502, Oct. 22, 1993; 58 FR 64154, Dec. 6, 1993, as amended at 61 FR 56447, Nov. 1, 1996]

§1.9 Definitions.

(a)(1) A national application as used in this chapter means a U.S. application for patent which was either filed

in the Office under 35 U.S.C. 111, or which entered the national stage from an international application after compliance with 35 U.S.C. 371.

(2) A provisional application as used in this chapter means a U.S. national application for patent filed in the Office under 35 U.S.C. 111(b).

(3) A nonprovisional application as used in this chapter means a U.S. national application for patent which was either filed in the Office under 35 U.S.C. 111(a), or which entered the national stage from an international application after compliance with 35 U.S.C. 371.

(b) An international application as used in this chapter means an international application for patent filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty prior to entering national processing at the Designated Office stage.

(c) An independent inventor as used in this chapter means any inventor who (1) has not assigned, granted, conveyed, or licensed, and (2) is under no obligation under contract or law to assign, grant, convey, or license, any rights in the invention to any person who could not likewise be classified as an independent inventor if that person had made the invention, or to any concern which would not qualify as a small business concern or a nonprofit organization under this section.

(d) A small business concern as used in this chapter means any business concern as defined by the regulations of the Small Business Administration in 13 CFR 121.1301 through 121.1305, which define a small business concern as one whose number of employees, including those of its affiliates, does not exceed 500 persons and which has not assigned, granted, conveyed, or licensed, and is under no obligation under contract or law to assign, grant, convey or license, any rights in the invention to any person who could not be classified as an independent inventor if that person had made the invention, or to any concern which would not qualify as a small business concern or a nonprofit organization under this section. Questions related to size standards for a small business concern may be directed to: Small Business Administration, Size Standards Staff, 409 Third Street, SW., Washington, DC 20416.

(e) A nonprofit organization as used in this chapter means (1) a university or other institution of higher education located in any country; (2) an organization of the type described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954 (26 U.S.C. 501(c)(3)) and exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of the Internal Revenue Code (26 U.S.C. 501(a)); (3) any nonprofit scientific or educational organization qualified under a nonprofit organization statute of a state of this country (35 U.S.C. 201(i)); or (4) any nonprofit organization located in a foreign country which would qualify as a nonprofit organization under paragraphs (e)(2) or (3) of this section if it were located in this country.

(f) A small entity as used in this chapter means an independent inventor, a small business concern or a nonprofit organization.

(g) For definitions in interferences see § 1.601.

(h) A *Federal holiday within the District of Columbia* as used in this chapter means any day, except Saturdays and Sundays, when the Patent and Trademark Office is officially closed for business for the entire day.

(Pub. L. 94–131, 89 Stat. 685; 35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[43 FR 20461, May 11, 1978, as amended at 47 FR 40139, Sept. 10, 1982; 47 FR 43275, Sept. 30, 1982; 49 FR 34724, Aug. 31, 1984; 49 FR 48451, Dec. 12, 1984; 58 FR 54508, Oct. 22, 1993; 60 FR 20220, Apr. 25, 1995; 61 FR 56447, Nov. 1, 1996]

§ 1.10 Filing of correspondence by "Express Mail."

(a) Any correspondence received by the Patent and Trademark Office (Office) that was delivered by the ''Express Mail Post Office to Addressee'' service of the United States Postal Service (USPS) will be considered filed in the Office on the date of deposit with the USPS. The date of deposit with the USPS is shown by the ''date-in'' on the ''Express Mail'' mailing label or other official USPS notation. If the USPS deposit date cannot be determined, the correspondence will be accorded the Office receipt date as the filing date. See § 1.6(a).

(b) Correspondence should be deposited directly with an employee of the

USPS to ensure that the person depositing the correspondence receives a legible copy of the ''Express Mail'' mailing label with the ''date-in'' clearly marked. Persons dealing indirectly with the employees of the USPS (such as by deposit in an ''Express Mail'' drop box) do so at the risk of not receiving a copy of the ''Express Mail'' mailing label with the desired ''date-in'' clearly marked. The paper(s) or fee(s) that constitute the correspondence should also include the ''Express Mail'' mailing label number thereon. See paragraphs (c), (d) and (e) of this section.

(c) Any person filing correspondence under this section that was received by the Office and delivered by the ''Express Mail Post Office to Addressee'' service of the USPS, who can show that there is a discrepancy between the filing date accorded by the Office to the correspondence and the date of deposit as shown by the ''date-in'' on the ''Express Mail'' mailing label or other official USPS notation, may petition the Commissioner to accord the correspondence a filing date as of the ''date-in'' on the ''Express Mail'' mailing label or other official USPS notation, provided that:

(1) The petition is filed promptly after the person becomes aware that the Office has accorded, or will accord, a filing date other than the USPS deposit date;

(2) The number of the ''Express Mail'' mailing label was placed on the paper(s) or fee(s) that constitute the correspondence prior to the original mailing by ''Express Mail;'' and

(3) The petition includes a true copy of the ''Express Mail'' mailing label showing the ''date-in,'' and of any other official notation by the USPS relied upon to show the date of deposit.

(d) Any person filing correspondence under this section that was received by the Office and delivered by the ''Express Mail Post Office to Addressee'' service of the USPS, who can show that the ''date-in'' on the ''Express Mail'' mailing label or other official notation entered by the USPS was incorrectly entered or omitted by the USPS, may petition the Commissioner to accord the correspondence a filing date as of the date the correspondence is shown to have been deposited with the USPS, provided that:

(1) The petition is filed promptly after the person becomes aware that the Office has accorded, or will accord, a filing date based upon an incorrect entry by the USPS;

(2) The number of the ''Express Mail'' mailing label was placed on the paper(s) or fee(s) that constitute the correspondence prior to the original mailing by ''Express Mail''; and

(3) The petition includes a showing which establishes, to the satisfaction of the Commissioner, that the requested filing date was the date the correspondence was deposited in ''Express Mail Post Office to Addressee'' service prior to the last scheduled pickup for that day. Any showing pursuant to this paragraph must be corroborated by evidence from the USPS or that came into being after deposit and within one business day of the deposit of the correspondence in the ''Express Mail Post Office to Addressee'' service of the USPS. Any statement submitted in support of such a showing pursuant to this paragraph must be a verified statement if made by a person other than an employee of the USPS or a practitioner as defined in § 10.1(r) of this chapter.

(e) Any person mailing correspondence addressed as set out in § 1.1(a) to the Office with sufficient postage utilizing the ''Express Mail Post Office to Addressee'' service of the USPS but not received by the Office, may petition the Commissioner to consider such correspondence filed in the Office on the USPS deposit date, provided that:

(1) The petition is filed promptly after the person becomes aware that the Office has no evidence of receipt of the correspondence;

(2) The number of the ''Express Mail'' mailing label was placed on the paper(s) or fee(s) that constitute the correspondence prior to the original mailing by ''Express Mail;''

(3) The petition includes a copy of the originally deposited paper(s) or fee(s) that constitute the correspondence showing the number of the ''Express Mail'' mailing label thereon, a copy of any returned postcard receipt, a copy of the ''Express Mail'' mailing label showing the ''date-in,'' a copy of

any other official notation by the USPS relied upon to show the date of deposit, and, if the requested filing date is a date other than the ''date-in'' on the ''Express Mail'' mailing label or other official notation entered by the USPS, a showing pursuant to paragraph (d)(3) of this section that the requested filing date was the date the correspondence was deposited in ''Express Mail Post Office to Addressee'' service prior to the last scheduled pickup for that day; and

(4) The petition includes a statement which establishes, to the satisfaction of the Commissioner, the original deposit of the correspondence, and that the copies of the correspondence, the copy of the ''Express Mail'' mailing label, the copy of any returned postcard receipt, and any official notation entered by the USPS are true copies of the originally mailed correspondence and original ''Express Mail'' mailing label, returned postcard receipt, and official notation entered by the USPS. Such statement must be a verified statement if made by a person other than a practitioner as defined in § 10.1(r) of this chapter.

(f) The Office may require additional evidence to determine if the correspondence was deposited as ''Express Mail'' with the USPS on the date in question.

[61 FR 56447, Nov. 1, 1996]

RECORDS AND FILES OF THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

§ 1.11 Files open to the public.

(a) After a patent has been issued or a statutory invention registration has been published, the specification, drawings and all papers relating to the case in the file of the patent or statutory invention registration are open to inspection by the public, and copies may be obtained upon paying the fee therefor. See § 2.27 for trademark files.

(b) All reissue applications, all applications in which the Office has accepted a request to open the complete application to inspection by the public, and related papers in the application file, are open to inspection by the public, and copies may be furnished upon paying the fee therefor. The filing of reissue applications will be announced in the *Official Gazette*. The announcement shall include at least the filing date, reissue application and original patent numbers, title, class and subclass, name of the inventor, name of the owner of record, name of the attorney or agent of record, and examining group to which the reissue application is assigned.

(c) All requests for reexamination for which the fee under § 1.20(c) has been paid, will be announced in the *Official Gazette*. Any reexaminations at the initiative of the Commissioner pursuant to § 1.520 will also be announced in the *Official Gazette*. The announcement shall include at least the date of the request, if any, the reexamination request control number or the Commissioner initiated order control number, patent number, title, class and subclass, name of the inventor, name of the patent owner of record, and the examining group to which the reexamination is assigned.

(d) All papers or copies thereof relating to a reexamination proceeding which have been entered of record in the patent or reexamination file are open to inspection by the general public, and copies may be furnished upon paying the fee therefor.

(e) The file of any interference involving a patent, a statutory invention registration, a reissue application, or an application on which a patent has been issued or which has been published as a statutory invention registration, is open to inspection by the public, and copies may be obtained upon paying the fee therefor, if:

(1) The interference has terminated or

(2) An award of priority or judgment has been entered as to all parties and all counts.

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[46 FR 29181, May 29, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 41272, Sept. 17, 1982; 50 FR 9378, Mar. 7, 1985; 60 FR 14518, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.12 Assignment records open to public inspection.

(a)(1) Separate assignment records are maintained in the Patent and Trademark Office for patents and trademarks. The assignment records, relating to original or reissue patents,

including digests and indexes, for assignments recorded on or after May 1, 1957, and assignment records relating to pending or abandoned trademark applications and to trademark registrations, for assignments recorded on or after January 1, 1955, are open to public inspection at the Patent and Trademark Office, and copies of those assignment records may be obtained upon request and payment of the fee set forth in §§1.19 and 2.6 of this chapter.

(2) All records of assignments of patents recorded before May 1, 1957, and all records of trademark assignments recorded before January 1, 1955, are maintained by the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA). The records are open to public inspection. Certified and uncertified copies of those assignment records are provided by NARA upon request and payment of the fees required by NARA.

(b) Assignment records, digests, and indexes, relating to any pending or abandoned patent application are not available to the public. Copies of any such assignment records and information with respect thereto shall be obtainable only upon written authority of the applicant or applicant's assignee or attorney or agent or upon a showing that the person seeking such information is a bona fide prospective or actual purchaser, mortgagee, or licensee of such application, unless it shall be necessary to the proper conduct of business before the Office or as provided by these rules.

(c) Any request by a member of the public seeking copies of any assignment records of any pending or abandoned patent application preserved in confidence under §1.14, or any information with respect thereto, must:

(1) Be in the form of a petition accompanied by the petition fee set forth in §1.17(i); or

(2) Include written authority granting access to the member of the public to the particular assignment records from the applicant or applicant's assignee or attorney or agent of record.

(d) An order for a copy of an assignment or other document should identify the reel and frame number where the assignment or document is recorded. If a document is identified without specifying its correct reel and frame, an extra charge as set forth in §1.21(j) will be made for the time consumed in making a search for such assignment.

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[47 FR 41272, Sept. 17, 1982, as amended at 54 FR 6900, Feb. 15, 1989; 56 FR 65151, Dec. 13, 1991; 56 FR 66670, Dec. 24, 1991; 57 FR 29641, July 6, 1992; 60 FR 20221, Apr. 25, 1995; 61 FR 42802, Aug. 19, 1996]

§1.13 Copies and certified copies.

(a) Non-certified copies of patents and trademark registrations and of any records, books, papers, or drawings within the jurisdiction of the Patent and Trademark Office and open to the public, will be furnished by the Patent and Trademark Office to any person, and copies of other records or papers will be furnished to persons entitled thereto, upon payment of the fee therefor.

(b) Certified copies of the patents and trademark registrations and of any records, books, papers, or drawings within the jurisdiction of the Patent and Trademark Office and open to the public or persons entitled thereto will be authenticated by the seal of the Patent and Trademark Office and certified by the Commissioner, or in his name attested by an officer of the Patent and Trademark Office authorized by the Commissioner, upon payment of the fee for the certified copy.

[58 FR 54508, Oct. 22, 1993]

§1.14 Patent applications preserved in confidence.

(a) (1) Patent applications are generally preserved in confidence pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122. No information will be given concerning the filing, pendency, or subject matter of any application for patent, and no access will be given to, or copies furnished of, any application or papers relating thereto, except as set forth in this section.

(2) Status information, which includes information such as whether the application is pending, abandoned, or patented, as well as the application number and filing date, may be supplied:

(i) Concerning an application or any application claiming the benefit of the

filing date of the application, if the application has been identified by application number or serial number and filing date in a published patent document,

(ii) Concerning the national stage application or any application claiming the benefit of the filing date of a published international application, if the United States of America has been indicated as a Designated State in the international application, or

(iii) When it has been determined by the Commissioner to be necessary for the proper conduct of business before the Office.

(3) Access to, or copies of, an application may be provided:

(i) When the application is open to the public as provided in § 1.11(b),

(ii) When written authority in that application from the applicant, the assignee of the application, or the attorney or agent of record has been granted,

(iii) When it has been determined by the Commissioner to be necessary for the proper conduct of business before the Office, or

(iv) To any person on written request, without notice to the applicant, when the application is abandoned and available and is:

(A) Referred to in a U.S. patent,

(B) Referred to in an application open to public inspection,

(C) An application which claims the benefit of the filing date of an application open to public inspection, or

(D) An application in which the applicant has filed an authorization to lay open the complete application to the public.

(b) Complete applications (§ 1.51(a)) which are abandoned may be destroyed and hence may not be available for access or copies as permitted by paragraph (a)(3)(iv) of this section after 20 years from their filing date, except those to which particular attention has been called and which have been marked for preservation.

(c) Applications for patents which disclose, or which appear to disclose, or which purport to disclose, inventions or discoveries relating to atomic energy are reported to the Department of Energy, which Department will be given access to such applications, but such reporting does not constitute a determination that the subject matter of each application so reported is in fact useful or an invention or discovery or that such application in fact discloses subject matter in categories specified by sections 151(c) and 151(d) of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, 68 Stat. 919; 42 U.S.C. 2181 (c) and (d).

(d) Any decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, or any decision of the Commissioner on petition, not otherwise open to public inspection shall be published or made available for public inspection if:

(1) The Commissioner believes the decision involves an interpretation of patent laws or regulations that would be of important precedent value; and

(2) The applicant, or any party involved in the interference, does not within one month after being notified of the intention to make the decision public, object in writing on the ground that the decision discloses a trade secret or other confidential information. If a decision discloses such information, the applicant or party shall identify the deletions in the text of the decision considered necessary to protect the information. If it is considered the entire decision must be withheld from the public to protect such information, the applicant or party must explain why. Applicants or parties will be given time, not less than twenty days, to request reconsideration and seek court review before any portions of decisions are made public over their objection. See § 2.27 for trademark applications.

(e) Any request by a member of the public seeking access to, or copies of, any pending or abandoned application preserved in confidence pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, or any papers relating thereto, must:

(1) Be in the form of a petition and be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in § 1.17(i); or

(2) Include written authority granting access to the member of the public in that particular application from the applicant or the applicant's assignee or attorney or agent of record.

NOTE: See §1.612(a) for access by an interference party to a pending or abandoned application.

(Pub. L. 94–131, 89 Stat. 685; 35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[42 FR 5593, Jan. 28, 1977, as amended at 43 FR 20462, May 11, 1978; 49 FR 48451, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 9378, Mar. 7, 1985; 54 FR 6900, Feb. 15, 1989; 56 FR 55461, Oct. 28, 1991; 58 FR 54509, Oct. 22, 1993; 60 FR 20221, Apr. 25, 1995; 61 FR 42802, Aug. 19, 1996]

§1.15 Requests for identifiable records.

(a) Requests for records, not disclosed to the public as part of the regular informational activity of the Patent and Trademark Office and which are not otherwise dealt with in the rules in this part, shall be made in writing, with the envelope and the letter clearly marked ''Freedom of Information Request.'' Each such request, so marked, should be submitted by mail addressed to the ''Patent and Trademark Office, Freedom of Information Request Control Desk, Box 8, Washington, DC 20231,'' or hand delivered to the Office of the Solicitor, Patent and Trademark Office, Arlington, Virginia. The request will be processed in accordance with the procedures set forth in part 4 of title 15, Code of Federal Regulations.

(b) Any person whose request for records has been initially denied in whole or in part, or has not been timely determined, may submit a written appeal as provided in §4.8 of title 15, Code of Federal Regulations.

(c) Procedures applicable in the event of service of process or in connection with testimony of employees on official matters and production of official documents of the Patent and Trademark Office in civil legal proceedings not involving the United States shall be those established in parts 15 and 15a of title 15, Code of Federal Regulations.

[53 FR 47686, Nov. 25, 1988]

FEES AND PAYMENT OF MONEY

§1.16 National application filing fees.

(a) Basic fee for filing each application for an original patent, except provisional, design or plant applications:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$385.00

By other than a small entity—$770.00

(b) In addition to the basic filing fee in an original application, except provisional applications, for filing or later presentation of each independent claim in excess of 3:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$40.00

By other than a small entity—$80.00

(c) In addition to the basic filing fee in an original application, except provisional applications, for filing or later presentation of each claim (whether independent or dependent) in excess of 20 (Note that §1.75(c) indicates how multiple dependent claims are considered for fee calculation purposes.):

By a small entity (§1.9(f))....$11.00

By other than a small entity $22.00

(d) In addition to the basic filing fee in an original application, except provisional applications, if the application contains, or is amended to contain, a multiple dependent claim(s), per application:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$130.00

By other than a small entity—$260.00

(e) Surcharge for filing the basic filing fee or oath or declaration on a date later than the filing date of the application, except provisional applications:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))....$65.00

By other than a small entity $130.00

(f) Basic fee for filing each design application

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$160.00

By other than a small entity—$320.00

(g) Basic fee for filing each plant application, except provisional applications:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$265.00

By other than a small entity—$530.00

(h) Basic fee for filing each reissue application:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$385.00

By other than a small entity—$770.00

(i) In addition to the basic filing fee in a reissue application, for filing or later presentation of each independent claim which is in excess of the number of independent claims in the original patent:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$40.00

By other than a small entity—$80.00

(j) In addition to the basic filing fee in a reissue application, for filing or later presentation of each claim (whether independent or dependent) in excess of 20 and also in excess of the number of claims in the original patent. (Note that §1.75(c) indicates how multiple dependent claims are considered for fee calculation purposes):

By a small entity (§1.9(f))....$11.00

By other than a small entity $22.00

(k) Basic fee for filing each provisional application:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))....$75.00

By other than a small entity $150.00

(l) Surcharge for filing the basic filing fee or cover sheet (§ 1.51(a)(2)(i)) on a date later than the filing date of the provisional application:

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f)).....$25.00
By other than a small entity $50.00

(m) If the additional fees required by paragraphs (b), (c), (d), (i) and (j) of this section are not paid on filing or on later presentation of the claims for which the additional fees are due, they must be paid or the claims must be canceled by amendment, prior to the expiration of the time period set for reply by the Office in any notice of fee deficiency.

NOTE: See §§ 1.445, 1.482 and 1.492 for international application filing and processing fees.

[56 FR 65151, Dec. 13, 1991, as amended at 57 FR 38194, Aug. 21, 1992; 60 FR 20221, Apr. 25, 1995; 60 FR 41022, Aug. 11, 1995; 61 FR 39587, July 30, 1996; 61 FR 43400, Aug. 22, 1996]

§ 1.17 Patent application processing fees.

(a) Extension fee for response within first month pursuant to § 1.136(a):

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f)).....$55.00
By other than a small entity $110.00

(b) Extension fee for response within second month pursuant to § 1.136(a):

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$195.00
By other than a small entity—$390.00

(c) Extension fee for response within third month pursuant to § 1.136(a):

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$465.00
By other than a small entity—$930.00

(d) Extension fee for response within fourth month pursuant to § 1.136(a):

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$735.00
By other than a small entity—$1,470.00

(e) For filing a notice of appeal from the examiner to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences:

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$150.00
By other than a small entity—$300.00

(f) In addition to the fee for filing a notice of appeal, for filing a brief in support of an appeal:

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$150.00
By other than a small entity—$300.00

(g) For filing a request for an oral hearing before the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences in an appeal under 35 U.S.C. 134:

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$130.00
By other than a small entity—$260.00

(h) For filing a petition to the Commissioner under a section listed below which refers to this paragraph.....$130.00

§ 1.47—for filing by other than all the inventors or a person not the inventor

§ 1.48—for correction of inventorship, except in provisional applications

§ 1.84—for accepting color drawings or photographs

§ 1.182—for decision on questions not specifically provided for

§ 1.183—to suspend the rules

§ 1.295—for review of refusal to publish a statutory invention registration

§ 1.377—for review of decision refusing to accept and record payment of a maintenance fee filed prior to expiration of patent

§ 1.378(e)—for reconsideration of decision on petition refusing to accept delayed payment of maintenance fee in expired patent

§ 1.644(e)—for petition in an interference

§ 1.644(f)—for request for reconsideration of a decision on petition in an interference

§ 1.666(c)—for late filing of interference settlement agreement

§§ 5.12, 5.13 and 5.14—for expedited handling of a foreign filing license

§ 5.15—for changing the scope of a license

§ 5.25—for retroactive license

(i) For filing a petition to the Commissioner under a section listed below which refers to this paragraph.....$130.00

§ 1.12—for access to an assignment record

§ 1.14—for access to an application

§ 1.53—to accord a filing date, except in provisional applications

§ 1.55—for entry of late priority papers

§ 1.60—to accord a filing date

§ 1.62—to accord a filing date

§ 1.97(d)—to consider an information disclosure statement

§ 1.102—to make application special

§ 1.103—to suspend action in application

§ 1.177—for divisional reissues to issue separately

§ 1.312—for amendment after payment of issue fee

§ 1.313—to withdraw an application from issue

§ 1.314—to defer issuance of a patent

§ 1.666(b)—for access to interference settlement agreement

§ 3.81—for patent to issue to assignee, assignment submitted after payment of the issue fee

(j) For filing a petition to institute a public use proceeding under § 1.292—$1,470.00

(k) For processing an application filed

with a specification in a non-English language (§1.52(d)) $130.00

(l) For filing a petition:

(1) For the revival of an unavoidably abandoned application under 35 U.S.C. 111, 133, 364, or 371, or

(2) For delayed payment of the issue fee under 35 U.S.C. 151:

By a small entity (§1.9(f)).....$55.00
By other than a small entity $110.00

(m) For filing a petition:

(1) For revival of an unintentionally abandoned application, or

(2) For the unintentionally delayed payment of the fee for issuing a patent:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$645.00
By other than a small entity—$1,290.00

(n) For requesting publication of a statutory invention registration prior to the mailing of the first examiner's action pursuant to §1.104—$900.00 reduced by the amount of the application basic filing fee paid.

(o) For requesting publication of a statutory invention registration after the mailing of the first examiner's action pursuant to §1.104—$1,790.00 reduced by the amount of the application basic filing fee paid.

(p) For submission of an information disclosure statement under §1.97(c)—$230.00

(q) For filing a petition to the Commissioner under a section listed below which refers to this paragraph $50.00

§1.48—for correction of inventorship in a provisional application

§1.53—to accord a provisional application a filing date or to convert an application filed under §1.53(b)(1) to a provisional application

(r) For entry of a submission after final rejection under §1.129(a):

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$385.00
By other than a small entity—$770.00

(s) For each additional invention requested to be examined under §1.129(b):

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$385.00
By other than a small entity—$770.00

[56 FR 65152, Dec. 13, 1991, as amended at 57 FR 2033, Jan 17, 1992; 57 FR 32439, July 22, 1992; 58 FR 38723, July 20, 1993; 58 FR 45841, Aug. 31, 1993; 59 FR 43740, Aug. 25, 1994; 60 FR 20221, Apr. 25, 1995; 60 FR 41022, Aug. 11, 1995; 61 FR 39587, July 30, 1996]

§1.18 Patent issue fees.

(a) Issue fee for issuing each original or reissue patent, except a design or plant patent:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$645.00
By other than a small entity—$1,290.00

(b) Issue fee for issuing a design patent:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$220.00
By other than a small entity—$440.00

(c) Issue fee for issuing a plant patent:

By a small entity (§1.9(f))—$325.00
By other than a small entity—$650.00

[61 FR 39588, July 30, 1996]

§1.19 Document supply fees.

The Patent and Trademark Office will supply copies of the following documents upon payment of the fees indicated:

(a) Uncertified copies of patents:

(1) Printed copy of a patent, including a design patent, statutory invention registration, or defensive publication document, except patent or statutory invention registration containing color drawing:

(i) Regular service $3.00
(ii) Overnight delivery to PTO Box or overnight fax $6.00
(iii) Expedited service for copy ordered by expedited mail or fax delivery service and delivered to the customer within two workdays $25.00
(2) Printed copy of a plant patent in color $12.00
(3) Copy of a utility patent or statutory invention registration containing color drawing (see §1.84(a)(2)) $24.00

(b) Certified and uncertified copies of Office documents:

(1) Certified or uncertified copy of patent application as filed

(i) Regular service $15.00
(ii) Expedited regular service $30.00

(2) Certified or uncertified copy of patent-related file wrapper and contents $150.00

(3) Certified or uncertified copies of Office records, per document except as otherwise provided in this section.....$25.00

(4) For assignment records, abstract of title and certification, per patent $25.00

(c) Library service (35 U.S.C. 13): For providing to libraries copies of all patents issued annually, per annum $50.00

(d) For list of all United States patents and statutory invention registrations in a subclass.....$3.00

(e) Uncertified statement as to status of the payment of maintenance fees due on a patent or expiration of a patent.....$10.00

(f) Uncertified copy of a non-United

States patent document, per document $25.00

(g) To compare and certify copies made from Patent and Trademark Office records, but not prepared by the Patent and Trademark Office, per copy of document $25.00

(h) Additional filing receipts; duplicate; or corrected due to:

applicant error $25.00

[56 FR 65152, Dec. 13, 1991, as amended at 57 FR 38195, Aug. 21, 1992; 58 FR 38723, July 20, 1993; 60 FR 41022, Aug. 11, 1995]

§ 1.20 Post issuance fees.

(a) For providing a certificate of correction for applicant's mistake:

(§ 1.323) $100.00

(b) Petition for correction of inventorship in patent (§ 1.324).....$130.00

(c) For filing a request for reexamination (§ 1.510(a))—$2,460.00

(d) For filing each statutory disclaimer (§ 1.321):

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f)).....$55.00
By other than a small entity $110.00

(e) For maintaining an original or reissue patent, except a design or plant patent, based on an application filed on or after December 12, 1980, in force beyond four years; the fee is due by three years and six months after the original grant:

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$510.00
By other than a small entity—$1,020.00

(f) For maintaining an original or reissue patent, except a design or plant patent, based on an application filed on or after December 12, 1980, in force beyond eight years; the fee is due by seven years and six months after the original grant:

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$1,025.00
By other than a small entity—$2,050.00

(g) For maintaining an original or reissue patent, except a design or plant patent, based on an application filed on or after December 12, 1980, in force beyond twelve years; the fee is due by eleven years and six months after the original grant:

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$1,540.00
By other than a small entity—$3,080.00

(h) Surcharge for paying a maintenance fee during the six-month grace period following the expiration of three years and six months, seven years and six months, and eleven years and six months after the date of the original grant of a patent based on an application filed on or after December 12, 1980:

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f)).....$65.00
By other than a small entity $130.00

(i) Surcharge for accepting a maintenance fee after expiration of a patent for non-timely payment of a maintenance fee where the delay in payment is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner to have been—

(1) Unavoidable—$680.00
(2) Unintentional—$1,600.00

(j) For filing an application for extension of the term of a patent (§ 1.740) $1,060.00

(1) Application for extension under § 1.740—$1,090.00
(2) Initial application for interim extension under § 1.790—$410.00
(3) Subsequent application for interim extension under § 1.790—$210.00

[56 FR 65153, Dec. 13, 1991, as amended at 57 FR 38195, Aug. 21, 1992; 57 FR 56450, Nov. 30, 1992; 58 FR 44280, Aug. 20, 1993; 60 FR 41022, Aug. 11, 1995; 61 FR 39588, July 30, 1996]

§ 1.21 Miscellaneous fees and charges.

The Patent and Trademark Office has established the following fees for the services indicated:

(a) Registration of attorneys and agents:

(1) For admission to examination for registration to practice:
(i) Application Fee (non-refundable)—$40.00
(ii) Registration examination fee—$300.00

(2) On registration to practice $100.00

(3) For reinstatement to practice—$40.00

(4) For certificate of good standing as an attorney or agent $10.00
Suitable for framing.....$20.00

(5) For review of a decision of the Director of Enrollment and Discipline under § 10.2(c) $130.00

(6) For requesting regrading of an examination under § 10.7(c):
(i) Regrading of morning section (PTO Practice and Procedure)—$225.00
(ii) Regrading of afternoon section (Claim Drafting)—$530.00

(b) Deposit accounts:

(1) For establishing a deposit account $10.00

(2) Service charge for each month when the balance at the end of the month is below $1,000 .....$25.00

(3) Service charge for each month when the balance at the end of the month is below $300 for restricted subscription deposit accounts used

exclusively for subscription order of patent copies as issued $25.00

(c) Disclosure document: For filing a disclosure document.....$10.00

(d) Delivery box: Local delivery box rental, per annum $50.00

(e) International type search reports: For preparing an international type search report of an international type search made at the time of the first action on the merits in a national patent application $40.00

(f) [Reserved]

(g) Self-service copy charge, per page $0.25

(h) For recording each assignment, agreement or other paper relating to the property in a patent or application, per property $40.00

(i) Publication in Official Gazette: For publication in the Official Gazette of a notice of the availability of an application or a patent for licensing or sale:

Each application or patent $25.00

(j) Labor charges for services, per hour or fraction thereof.....$30.00

(k) For items and services that the Commissioner finds may be supplied, for which fees are not specified by statute or by this part, such charges as may be determined by the Commissioner with respect to each such item or service .....Actual Cost

(l) For processing and retaining any application abandoned pursuant to §1.53(d)(1) unless the required basic filing fee has been paid $130.00

(m) For processing each check returned ''unpaid'' by a bank $50.00

(n) For handling an incomplete or improper application under §1.53(c), §1.60 or §1.62.....$130.00

(o) Marginal cost, paid in advance, for each hour of terminal session time, including print time, using Automated Patent System full-text search capabilities, prorated for the actual time used. The Commissioner may waive the payment by an individual for access to the Automated Patent System full-text search capability (APS-Text) upon a showing of need or hardship, and if such waiver is in the public interest.....$40.00

[56 FR 65153, Dec. 13, 1991, as amended at 57 FR 38195, Aug. 21, 1992; 57 FR 40493, Sept. 3, 1992; 59 FR 43741, Aug. 25, 1994; 60 FR 20222, Apr. 25, 1995; 60 FR 41022, Aug. 11, 1995; 61 FR 39588, July 30, 1996; 61 FR 43400, Aug. 22, 1996]

§1.22 Fees payable in advance.

(a) Patent and trademark fees and charges payable to the Patent and Trademark Office are required to be paid in advance, that is, at the time of requesting any action by the Office for which a fee or charge is payable with the exception that under §1.53 applications for patent may be assigned a filing date without payment of the basic filing fee.

(b) All patent and trademark fees paid to the Patent and Trademark Office should be itemized in each individual application, patent or other proceeding in such a manner that it is clear for which purpose the fees are paid.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2708, Jan. 20, 1983]

§1.23 Method of payment.

All payments of money required for Patent and Trademark Office fees, including fees for the processing of international applications (§1.445), should be made in U.S. specie, Treasury notes, national bank notes, post office money orders, or by certified check. If sent in any other form, the Office may delay or cancel the credit until collection is made. Money orders and checks must be made payable to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks. Remittances from foreign countries must be payable and immediately negotiable in the United States for the full amount of the fee required. Money sent by mail to the Patent and Trademark Office will be at the risk of the sender; letters containing money should be registered.

(Pub. L. 94–131, 89 Stat. 685)

[43 FR 20462, May 11, 1978]

§1.24 Coupons.

Coupons in denominations of three dollars, for the purchase of patents, designs, defensive publications, statutory invention registrations, and trademark registrations are sold by the Patent and Trademark Office for the convenience of the general public; these coupons may not be used for any other purpose. The three-dollar coupons are sold individually and in books of 50 for $150.00. These coupons are good until

used; they may be transferred but cannot be redeemed.

[56 FR 65153, Dec. 13, 1991]

§ 1.25 Deposit accounts.

(a) For the convenience of attorneys, and the general public in paying any fees due, in ordering services offered by the Office, copies of records, etc., deposit accounts may be established in the Patent and Trademark Office upon payment of the fee for establishing a deposit account (§ 1.21(b)(1)). A minimum deposit of $1,000 is required for paying any fees due or in ordering any services offered by the Office. However, a minimum deposit of $300 may be paid to establish a restricted subscription deposit account used exclusively for subscription order of patent copies as issued. At the end of each month, a deposit account statement will be rendered. A remittance must be made promptly upon receipt of the statement to cover the value of items or services charged to the account and thus restore the account to its established normal deposit. An amount sufficient to cover all fees, services, copies, etc., requested must always be on deposit. Charges to accounts with insufficient funds will not be accepted. A service charge (§ 1.21(b)(2)) will be assessed for each month that the balance at the end of the month is below $1,000. For restricted subscription deposit accounts, a service charge (§ 1.21(b)(3)) will be assessed for each month that the balance at the end of the month is below $300.

(b) Filing, issue, appeal, international-type search report, international application processing, petition, and post-issuance fees may be charged against these accounts if sufficient funds are on deposit to cover such fees. A general authorization to charge all fees, or only certain fees, set forth in §§ 1.16 to 1.18 to a deposit account containing sufficient funds may be filed in an individual application, either for the entire pendency of the application or with respect to a particular paper filed. An authorization to charge to a deposit account the fee for a request for reexamination pursuant to § 1.510 and any other fees required in a reexamination proceeding in a patent may also be filed with the request for reexamination. An authorization to charge a fee to a deposit account will not be considered payment of the fee on the date the authorization to charge the fee is effective as to the particular fee to be charged unless sufficient funds are present in the account to cover the fee.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[49 FR 553, Jan. 4, 1984, as amended at 50 FR 31826, Aug. 6, 1985]

§ 1.26 Refunds.

(a) Money paid in excess will be refunded, but a mere change of purpose after the payment of money, as when a party desires to withdraw an application, an appeal, or a request for oral hearing, will not entitle a party to demand such a return. Amounts of twenty-five dollars or less will not be returned unless specifically requested within a reasonable time, nor will the payer be notified of such amount; amounts over twenty-five dollars may be returned by check, or if requested, by credit to a deposit account.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) If the Commissioner decides not to institute a reexamination proceeding, a refund of $1,690 will be made to the requester of the proceeding. Reexamination requesters should indicate whether any refund should be made by check or by credit to a deposit account.

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[47 FR 41274, Sept. 17, 1982, as amended at 50 FR 31826, Aug. 6, 1985; 54 FR 6902, Feb. 15, 1989; 56 FR 65153, Dec. 13, 1991; 57 FR 38195, Aug. 21, 1992]

§ 1.27 Statement of status as small entity.

(a) Any person seeking to establish status as a small entity (§ 1.9(f) of this part) for purposes of paying fees in an application or a patent must file a verified statement in the application or patent prior to or with the first fee paid as a small entity. Such a verified statement need only be filed once in an application or patent and remains in effect until changed.

(b) Any verified statement filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section on behalf of an independent inventor must be signed by the independent inventor except as provided in §§ 1.42, 1.43, or 1.47 of this part, and must aver that

the inventor qualifies as an independent inventor in accordance with §1.9(c) of this part. Where there are joint inventors in an application, each inventor must file a verified statement establishing status as an independent inventor in order to qualify as a small entity. Where any rights have been assigned, granted, conveyed, or licensed, or there is an obligation to assign, grant, convey, or license, any rights to a small business concern, a nonprofit organization, or any other individual, a verified statement must be filed by the individual, the owner of the small business concern, or an official of the small business concern or nonprofit organization empowered to act on behalf of the small business concern or nonprofit organization averring to their status. For purposes of a verified statement under this paragraph, a license to a Federal agency resulting from a funding agreement with that agency pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(4) does not constitute a license as set forth in §1.9 of this part.

(c) Any verified statement filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section on behalf of a small business concern must (1) be signed by the owner or an official of the small business concern empowered to act on behalf of the concern; (2) aver that the concern qualifies as a small business concern as defined in §1.9(d); and (3) aver that exclusive rights to the invention have been conveyed to and remain with the small business concern, or if the rights are not exclusive, that all other rights belong to small entities as defined in §1.9. Where the rights of the small business concern as a small entity are not exclusive, a verified statement must also be filed by the other small entities having rights averring to their status as such. For purposes of a verified statement under this paragraph, a license to a Federal agency resulting from a funding agreement with that agency pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(4) does not consititute a license as set forth in §1.9 of this part.

(d) Any verified statement filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section on behalf of a nonprofit organization must (1) be signed by an official of the nonprofit organization empowered to act on behalf of the organization; (2) aver that the organization qualifies as a nonprofit organization as defined in §1.9(e) of this part specifying under which one of §1.9(e) (1), (2), (3), or (4) of this part the organization qualifies; and (3) aver that exclusive rights to the invention have been conveyed to and remain with the organization or if the rights are not exclusive, that all other rights belong to small entities as defined in §1.9 of this part. Where the rights of the nonprofit organization as a small entity are not exclusive, a verified statement must also be filed by the other small entities having rights averring to their status as such. For purposes of a verified statement under this paragraph, a license to a Federal agency resulting from a funding agreement with that agency pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(4) does not constitute a conveyance of rights as set forth in this paragraph.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[47 FR 40139, Sept. 10, 1982, as amended at 49 FR 553, Jan. 4, 1984]

§1.28 Effect on fees of failure to establish status, or change status, as a small entity.

(a) The failure to establish status as a small entity (§§1.9(f) and 1.27 of this part) in any application or patent prior to paying, or at the time of paying, any fee precludes payment of the fee in the amount established for small entities. A refund pursuant to §1.26 of this part, based on establishment of small entity status, of a portion of fees timely paid in full prior to establishing status as a small entity may only be obtained if a verified statement under §1.27 and a request for a refund of the excess amount are filed within two months of the date of the timely payment of the full fee. The two-month time period is not extendable under §1.136. Status as a small entity is waived for any fee by the failure to establish the status prior to paying, at the time of paying, or within two months of the date of payment of, the fee. Status as a small entity must be specifically established in each application or patent in which the status is available and desired. Status as a small entity in one application or patent does not affect any other application or patent, including applications

or patents which are directly or indirectly dependent upon the application or patent in which the status has been established. A nonprovisional application claiming benefit under 35 U.S.C. 119(e), 120, 121, or 365(c) of a prior application may rely on a verified statement filed in the prior application if the nonprovisional application includes a reference to the verified statement in the prior application or includes a copy of the verified statement in the prior application and status as a small entity is still proper and desired. Once status as a small entity has been established in an application or patent, the status remains in the application or patent without the filing of a further verified statement pursuant to § 1.27 of this part unless the Office is notified of a change in status.

(b) Once status as a small entity has been established in an application or patent, fees as a small entity may thereafter be paid in that application or patent without regard to a change in status until the issue fee is due or any maintenance fee is due. Notification of any change in status resulting in loss of entitlement to small entity status must be filed in the application or patent prior to paying, or at the time of paying, the earliest of the issue fee or any maintenance fee due after the date on which status as a small entity is no longer appropriate pursuant to § 1.9 of this part. The notification of change in status may be signed by the applicant, any person authorized to sign on behalf of the assignee, or an attorney or agent of record or acting in a representative capacity pursuant to § 1.34(a) of this part.

(c) If status as a small entity is established in good faith, and fees as a small entity are paid in good faith, in any application or patent, and it is later discovered that such status as a small entity was established in error or that through error the Patent and Trademark Office was not notified of a change in status as required by paragraph (b) of this section, the error will be excused (1) if any deficiency between the amount paid and the amount due is paid within three months after the date the error occurred or (2) if any deficiency between the amount paid and the amount due is paid more than three months after the date the error occurred and the payment is accompanied by a statement explaining how the error in good faith occurred and how and when the error was discovered. The statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. The deficiency is based on the amount of the fee, for other than a small entity, in effect at the time the deficiency is paid in full.

(d)(1) Any attempt to fraudulently (i) establish status as a small entity or (ii) pay fees as a small entity shall be considered as a fraud practiced or attempted on the Office.

(2) Improperly and with intent to deceive

(i) Establishing status as a small entity, or

(ii) Paying fees as a small entity shall be considered as a fraud practiced or attempted on the Office.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[47 FR 40140, Sept. 10, 1982, as amended at 49 FR 553, Jan. 4, 1984; 57 FR 2033, Jan. 17, 1992; 58 FR 54509, Oct. 22, 1993; 60 FR 20222, Apr. 25, 1995]

Subpart B—National Processing Provisions

PROSECUTION OF APPLICATION AND APPOINTMENT OF ATTORNEY OR AGENT

§ 1.31 Applicants may be represented by a registered attorney or agent.

An applicant for patent may file and prosecute his or her own case, or he or she may be represented by a registered attorney, registered agent, or other individual authorized to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office in patent cases. See §§ 10.6 and 10.9 of this subchapter. The Patent and Trademark Office cannot aid in the selection of a registered attorney or agent.

[50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 1.32 [Reserved]

§ 1.33 Correspondence respecting patent applications, reexamination proceedings, and other proceedings.

(a) The residence and post office address of the applicant must appear in the oath or declaration if not stated

elsewhere in the application. The applicant may also specify and an attorney or agent of record may specify a correspondence address to which communications about the application are to be directed. All notices, official letters, and other communications in the case will be directed to the correspondence address or, if no such correspondence address is specified, to an attorney or agent of record (see §1.34(b)), or, if no attorney or agent is of record, to the applicant, or to any assignee of record of the entire interest if the applicant or such assignee so requests, or to an assignee of an undivided part if the applicant so requests, at the post office address of which the Office has been notified in the case. Amendments and other papers filed in the application must be signed:

(1) By the applicant, or

(2) If there is an assignee of record of an undivided part interest, by the applicant and such assignee, or

(3) If there is an assignee of record of the entire interest, by such assignee, or

(4) By an attorney or agent of record, or

(5) By a registered attorney or agent not of record who acts in a representative capacity under the provisions of §1.34(a).

Double correspondence with an applicant and his attorney or agent, or with more than one attorney or agent, will not be undertaken. If more than one attorney or agent be made of record and a correspondence address has not been specified, correspondence will be held with the one last made of record.

(b) An applicant who has not made of record a registered attorney or agent may be required to state whether he received assistance in the preparation or prosecution of his application, for which any compensation or consideration was given or charged, and if so, to disclose the name or names of the person or persons providing such assistance. This includes the preparation for the applicant of the specification and amendments or other papers to be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office, as well as other assistance in such matters, but does not include merely making drawings by draftsmen or stenographic services in typing papers.

(c) All notices, official letters, and other communications for the patent owner or owners in a reexamination proceeding will be directed to the attorney or agent of record (see §1.34(b)) in the patent file at the address listed on the register of patent attorneys and agents maintained pursuant to §§10.5 and 10.11 or, if no attorney or agent is of record, to the patent owner or owners at the address or addresses of record. Amendments and other papers filed in a reexamination proceeding on behalf of the patent owner must be signed by the patent owner, or if there is more than one owner by all the owners, or by an attorney or agent of record in the patent file, or by a registered attorney or agent not of record who acts in a representative capacity under the provisions of §1.34(a). Double correspondence with the patent owner or owners and the patent owner's attorney or agent, or with more than one attorney or agent, will not be undertaken. If more than one attorney or agent is of record and a correspondence address has not been specified, correspondence will be held with the last attorney or agent made of record.

(d) A ''correspondence address'' or change thereto may be filed with the Patent and Trademark Office during the enforceable life of the patent. The ''correspondence address'' will be used in any correspondence relating to maintenance fees unless a separate ''fee address'' has been specified. See §1.363 for ''fee address'' used solely for maintenance fee purposes.

[36 FR 12617, July 2, 1971, as amended at 46 FR 29181, May 29, 1981; 49 FR 34724, Aug. 31, 1984; 50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985]

§1.34 Recognition for representation.

(a) When a registered attorney or agent acting in a representative capacity appears in person or signs a paper in practice before the Patent and Trademark Office in a patent case, his or her personal appearance or signature shall constitute a representation to the Patent and Trademark Office that under the provisions of this subchapter and the law, he or she is authorized to represent the particular party in whose behalf he or she acts. In filing such a paper, the registered attorney or agent should specify his or

her registration number with his or her signature. Further proof of authority to act in a representative capacity may be required.

(b) When an attorney or agent shall have filed his or her power of attorney, or authorization, duly executed by the person or persons entitled to prosecute an application or a patent involved in a reexamination proceeding, he or she is a principal attorney of record in the case. A principal attorney or agent, so appointed, may appoint an associate attorney or agent who shall also then be of record.

[46 FR 29181, May 29, 1981, as amended at 50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985]

§ 1.36 Revocation of power of attorney or authorization; withdrawal of attorney or agent.

A power of attorney or authorization of agent may be revoked at any stage in the proceedings of a case, and an attorney or agent may withdraw, upon application to and approval by the Commissioner. An attorney or agent, except an associate attorney or agent whose address is the same as that of the principal attorney or agent, will be notified of the revocation of the power of attorney or authorization, and the applicant or patent owner will be notified of the withdrawal of the attorney or agent. An assignment will not of itself operate as a revocation of a power or authorization previously given, but the assignee of the entire interest may revoke previous powers and be represented by an attorney or agent of the assignee's own selection. See § 1.613(d) for withdrawal of an attorney or agent of record in an interference.

[49 FR 48452, Dec. 12, 1984]

WHO MAY APPLY FOR A PATENT

§ 1.41 Applicant for patent.

(a) A patent must be applied for in the name of the actual inventor or inventors. Full names must be stated, including the family name and at least one given name without abbreviation together with any other given name or initial.

(b) Unless the contrary is indicated the word ''applicant'' when used in these sections refers to the inventor or joint inventors who are applying for a patent, or to the person mentioned in §§ 1.42, 1.43, or 1.47 who is applying for a patent in place of the inventor.

(c) Any person authorized by the applicant may file an application for patent on behalf of the inventor or inventors, but an oath or declaration for the application (§ 1.63) can only be made in accordance with § 1.64.

(d) A showing may be required from the person filing the application that the filing was authorized where such authorization comes into question.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2708, Jan. 20, 1983; 48 FR 4285, Jan. 31, 1983]

§ 1.42 When the inventor is dead.

In case of the death of the inventor, the legal representative (executor, administrator, etc.) of the deceased inventor may make the necessary oath or declaration, and apply for and obtain the patent. Where the inventor dies during the time intervening between the filing of the application and the granting of a patent thereon, the letters patent may be issued to the legal representative upon proper intervention.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983]

§ 1.43 When the inventor is insane or legally incapacitated.

In case an inventor is insane or otherwise legally incapacitated, the legal representative (guardian, conservator, etc.) of such inventor may make the necessary oath or declaration, and apply for and obtain the patent.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983]

§ 1.44 Proof of authority.

In the cases mentioned in §§ 1.42 and 1.43, proof of the power or authority of the legal representative must be recorded in the Patent and Trademark Office or filed in the application before the grant of a patent.

(35 U.S.C. 6, 111, 116, 117, 118)

§ 1.45 Joint inventors.

(a) Joint inventors must apply for a patent jointly and each must make the

required oath or declaration: neither of them alone, nor less than the entire number, can apply for a patent for an invention invented by them jointly, except as provided in §1.47.

(b) Inventors may apply for a patent jointly even though

(1) They did not physically work together or at the same time,

(2) Each inventor did not make the same type or amount of contribution, or

(3) Each inventor did not make a contribution to the subject matter of every claim of the application.

(c) If multiple inventors are named in a nonprovisional application, each named inventor must have made a contribution, individually or jointly, to the subject matter of at least one claim of the application and the application will be considered to be a joint application under 35 U.S.C. 116. If multiple inventors are named in a provisional application, each named inventor must have made a contribution, individually or jointly, to the subject matter disclosed in the provisional application and the provisional application will be considered to be a joint application under 35 U.S.C. 116.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983, as amended at 50 FR 9379, Mar. 7, 1985; 60 FR 20222, Apr. 25, 1995]

§1.46 Assigned inventions and patents.

In case the whole or a part interest in the invention or in the patent to be issued is assigned, the application must still be made or authorized to be made, and an oath or declaration signed, by the inventor or one of the persons mentioned in §1.42, 1.43, or 1.47. However, the patent may be issued to the assignee or jointly to the inventor and the assignee as provided in §3.81.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992]

§1.47 Filing when an inventor refuses to sign or cannot be reached.

(a) If a joint inventor refuses to join in an application for patent or cannot be found or reached after diligent effort, the application may be made by the other inventor on behalf of himself or herself and the omitted inventor. The oath or declaration in such an application must be accompanied by a petition including proof of the pertinent facts and by the required fee (§1.17(h)) and must state the last known address of the omitted inventor. The Patent and Trademark Office shall forward notice of the filing of the application to the omitted inventor at said address. Should such notice be returned to the Office undelivered, or should the address of the omitted inventor be unknown, notice of the filing of the application shall be published in the *Official Gazette.* The omitted inventor may subsequently join in the application on filing an oath or declaration of the character required by §1.63. A patent may be granted to the inventor making the application, upon a showing satisfactory to the Commissioner, subject to the same rights which the omitted inventor would have had if he or she had been joined.

(b) Whenever an inventor refuses to execute an application for patent, or cannot be found or reached after diligent effort, a person to whom the inventor has assigned or agreed in writing to assign the invention or who otherwise shows sufficient proprietary interest in the matter justifying such action may make application for patent on behalf of and as agent for the inventor. The oath or declaration in such an application must be accompanied by a petition including proof of the pertinent facts and a showing that such action is necessary to preserve the rights of the parties or to prevent irreparable damage, and by the required fee (§1.17(h)) and must state the last known address of the inventor. The assignment, written agreement to assign or other evidence of proprietary interest, or a verified copy thereof, must be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office. The Office shall forward notice of the filing of the application to the inventor at the address stated in the application. Should such notice be returned to the Office undelivered, or should the address of the inventor be unknown, notice of the filing of the application shall be published in the *Official Gazette.* The inventor may subsequently join in the application on filing an oath or declaration of the character required by §1.63. A patent may

be granted to the inventor upon a showing satisfactory to the Commissioner.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983]

§ 1.48 Correction of inventorship.

(a) If the correct inventor or inventors are not named in a nonprovisional application through error without any deceptive intention on the part of the actual inventor or inventors, the application may be amended to name only the actual inventor or inventors. Such amendment must be diligently made and must be accompanied by:

(1) A petition including a statement of facts verified by the original named inventor or inventors establishing when the error without deceptive intention was discovered and how it occurred;

(2) An oath or declaration by each actual inventor or inventors as required by § 1.63;

(3) The fee set forth in § 1.17(h); and

(4) The written consent of any assignee. When the application is involved in an interference, the petition shall comply with the requirements of this section and shall be accompanied by a motion under § 1.634.

(b) If the correct inventors are named in the nonprovisional application when filed and the prosecution of the application results in the amendment or cancellation of claims so that less than all of the originally named inventors are the actual inventors of the invention being claimed in the application, an amendment shall be filed deleting the names of the person or persons who are not inventors of the invention being claimed. The amendment must be diligently made and shall be accompanied by:

(1) A petition including a statement identifying each named inventor who is being deleted and acknowledging that the inventor's invention is no longer being claimed in the application; and

(2) The fee set forth in § 1.17(h).

(c) If a nonprovisional application discloses unclaimed subject matter by an inventor or inventors not named in the application, the application may be amended pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section to add claims to the subject matter and name the correct inventors for the application.

(d) If the name or names of an inventor or inventors were omitted in a provisional application through error without any deceptive intention on the part of the actual inventor or inventors, the provisional application may be amended to add the name or names of the actual inventor or inventors. Such amendment must be accompanied by:

(1) A petition including a statement that the error occurred without deceptive intention on the part of the actual inventor or inventors, which statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office; and

(2) The fee set forth in § 1.17(q).

(e) If a person or persons were named as an inventor or inventors in a provisional application through error without any deceptive intention, an amendment may be filed in the provisional application deleting the name or names of the person or persons who were erroneously named. Such amendment must be accompanied by:

(1) A petition including a statement of facts verified by the person or persons whose name or names are being deleted establishing that the error occurred without deceptive intention;

(2) The fee set forth in § 1.17(q); and

(3) The written consent of any assignee.

[60 FR 20222, Apr. 25, 1995]

THE APPLICATION

§ 1.51 General requisites of an application.

(a) Applications for patents must be made to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks.

(1) A complete application filed under § 1.53(b)(1) comprises:

(i) A specification, including a claim or claims, see §§ 1.71 to 1.77;

(ii) An oath or declaration, see §§ 1.63 and 1.68;

(iii) Drawings, when necessary, see §§ 1.81 to 1.85; and

(iv) The prescribed filing fee, see § 1.16.

(2) A complete provisional application filed under § 1.53(b)(2) comprises:

(i) A cover sheet identifying:

(A) The application as a provisional application,

(B) The name or names of the inventor or inventors, (see § 1.41),

(C) The residence of each named inventor,

(D) The title of the invention,

(E) The name and registration number of the attorney or agent (if applicable),

(F) The docket number used by the person filing the application to identify the application (if applicable),

(G) The correspondence address, and

(H) The name of the U.S. Government agency and Government contract number (if the invention was made by an agency of the U.S. Government or under a contract with an agency of the U.S. Government);

(ii) A specification as prescribed by 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, see § 1.71;

(iii) Drawings, when necessary, see §§ 1.81 to 1.85; and

(iv) The prescribed filing fee, see § 1.16.

(b) Applicants are encouraged to file an information disclosure statement in nonprovisional applications. See §§ 1.97 and 1.98. No information disclosure statement may be filed in a provisional application.

(c) Applicants may desire and are permitted to file with, or in, the application an authorization to charge, at any time during the pendency of the application, any fees required under any of §§ 1.16 to 1.18 to a deposit account established and maintained in accordance with § 1.25.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[42 FR 5593, Jan. 28, 1977, as amended at 47 FR 41275, Sept. 17, 1982; 48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983; 57 FR 2033, Jan. 17, 1992; 60 FR 20222, Apr. 25, 1995]

§ 1.52 Language, paper, writing, margins.

(a) The application, any amendments or corrections thereto, and the oath or declaration must be in the English language except as provided for in § 1.69 and paragraph (d) of this section, or be accompanied by a verified translation of the application and a translation of any corrections or amendments into the English language. All papers which are to become a part of the permanent records of the Patent and Trademark Office must be legibly written either by a typewriter or mechanical printer in permanent dark ink or its equivalent in portrait orientation on flexible, strong, smooth, non-shiny, durable, and white paper. All of the application papers must be presented in a form having sufficient clarity and contrast between the paper and the writing thereon to permit the direct reproduction of readily legible copies in any number by use of photographic, electrostatic, photo-offset, and microfilming processes and electronic reproduction by use of digital imaging and optical character recognition. If the papers are not of the required quality, substitute typewritten or mechanically printed papers of suitable quality will be required. See § 1.125 for filing substitute typewritten or mechanically printed papers constituting a substitute specification when required by the Office.

(b) Except for drawings, the application papers (specification, including claims, abstract, oath or declaration, and papers as provided for in this part) and also papers subsequently filed, must have each page plainly written on only one side of a sheet of paper, with the claim or claims commencing on a separate sheet and the abstract commencing on a separate sheet. See §§ 1.72(b) and 1.75(h). The sheets of paper must be the same size and either 21.0 cm. by 29.7 cm. (DIN size A4) or 21.6 cm. by 27.9 cm. (8½ by 11 inches). Each sheet must include a top margin of at least 2.0 cm. (¾ inch), a left side margin of at least 2.5 cm. (1 inch), a right side margin of at least 2.0 cm. (¾ inch), and a bottom margin of at least 2.0 cm. (¾ inch), and no holes should be made in the sheets as submitted. The lines of the specification, and any amendments to the specification, must be 1½ or double spaced. The pages of the specification including claims and abstract must be numbered consecutively, starting with 1, the numbers being centrally located above or preferably, below, the text. See § 1.84 for drawings.

(c) any interlineation, erasure, cancellation, or other alteration of the application papers filed should be made before signing of any accompanying

oath or declaration pursuant to §1.63 referring to those application papers and should be dated and initialed or signed by the applicant on the same sheet of paper. Application papers containing alterations made after the signing of the oath or declaration referring to those application papers must be supported by a supplemental oath or declaration under §1.67(c). After the signing of the oath or declaration referring to the application papers, amendments may be made in the manner provided by §§1.121 and 1.123 through 1.125.

(d) An application may be filed in a language other than English. A verified English translation of the non-English-language application and the fee set forth in §1.17(k) are required to be filed with the application or within such time as may be set by the Office.

(Pub. L. 94–131, 89 Stat. 685; 35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[43 FR 20462, May. 11, 1978, as amended at 47 FR 41275, Sept. 17, 1982; 48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983; 49 FR 554, Jan. 4, 1984; 57 FR 2033, Jan. 17, 1992; 61 FR 42803, Aug. 19, 1996]

§ 1.53 Application number, filing date, and completion of application.

(a) Any application for a patent received in the Patent and Trademark Office will be assigned an application number for identification purposes.

(b)(1) The filing date of an application for patent filed under this section, except for a provisional application, is the date on which: a specification containing a description pursuant to §1.71 and at least one claim pursuant to §1.75; and any drawing required by §1.81(a), are filed in the Patent and Trademark Office in the name of the actual inventor or inventors as required by §1.41. No new matter may be introduced into an application after its filing date (§1.118). If all the names of the actual inventor or inventors are not supplied when the specification and any required drawing are filed, the application will not be given a filing date earlier than the date upon which the names are supplied unless a petition with the fee set forth in §1.17(i) is filed which sets forth the reasons the delay in supplying the names should be excused. A continuation or divisional application (filed under the conditions specified in 35 U.S.C. 120 or 121 and §1.78(a)) may be filed under this section, §1.60 or §1.62. A continuation-in-part application may be filed under this section or §1.62.

(2) The filing date of a provisional application is the date on which: a specification as prescribed by 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph; and any drawing required by §1.81(a), are filed in the Patent and Trademark Office in the name of the actual inventor or inventors as required by §1.41. No amendment, other than to make the provisional application comply with all applicable regulations, may be made to the provisional application after the filing date of the provisional application. If all the names of the actual inventor or inventors are not supplied when the specification and any required drawing are filed, the provisional application will not be given a filing date earlier than the date upon which the names are supplied unless a petition with the fee set forth in §1.17(q) is filed which sets forth the reasons the delay in supplying the names should be excused.

(i) A provisional application must also include a cover sheet identifying the application as a provisional application. Otherwise, the application will be treated as an application filed under §1.53(b)(1).

(ii) An application for patent filed under §1.53(b)(1) may be treated as a provisional application and be accorded the original filing date provided that a petition requesting the conversion, with the fee set forth in §1.17(q), is filed prior to the earlier of the abandonment of the §1.53(b)(1) application, the payment of the issue fee, the expiration of 12 months after the filing date of the §1.53(b)(1) application, or the filing of a request for a statutory invention registration under §1.293. The grant of any such petition will not entitle applicant to a refund of the fees which were properly paid in the application filed under §1.53(b)(1).

(iii) A provisional application shall not be entitled to the right of priority under §1.55 or 35 U.S.C. 119 or 365(a) or to the benefit of an earlier filing date under §1.78 or 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 or 365(c) of any other application. No claim for priority under §1.78(a)(3) may be made

in a design application based on a provisional application. No request under § 1.293 for a statutory invention registration may be filed in a provisional application. The requirements of §§ 1.821 through 1.825 regarding application disclosures containing nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences are not mandatory for provisional applications.

(c) If any application is filed without the specification, drawing or name, or names, of the actual inventor or inventors required by paragraph (b)(1) or (b)(2) of this section, applicant will be so notified and given a time period within which to submit the omitted specification, drawing, name, or names, of the actual inventor, or inventors, in order to obtain a filing date as of the date of filing of such submission. A copy of the ''Notice of Incomplete Application'' form notifying the applicant should accompany any response thereto submitted to the Office. If the omission is not corrected within the time period set, the application will be returned or otherwise disposed of; the fee, if submitted, will be refunded less the handling fee set forth in § 1.21(n). Any request for review of a refusal to accord an application a filing date must be by way of a petition accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(i), if the application was filed under § 1.53(b)(1), or by the fee set forth in § 1.17(q), if the application was filed under § 1.53(b)(2).

(d)(1) If an application which has been accorded a filing date pursuant to paragraph (b)(1) of this section does not include the appropriate filing fee or an oath or declaration by the applicant, applicant will be so notified, if a correspondence address has been provided and given a period of time within which to file the fee, oath, or declaration and to pay the surcharge as set forth in § 1.16(e) in order to prevent abandonment of the application. A copy of the ''Notice to File Missing Parts'' form mailed to applicant should accompany any response thereto submitted to the Office. If the required filing fee is not timely paid, or if the processing and retention fee set forth in § 1.21(l) is not paid within one year of the date of mailing of the notification required by this paragraph, the application will be disposed of. No copies will be provided or certified by the Office of an application which has been disposed of or in which neither the required basic filing fee nor the processing and retention fee has been paid. The notification pursuant to this paragraph may be made simultaneously with any notification pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section. If no correspondence address is included in the application, applicant has two months from the filing date to file the basic filing fee, oath or declaration and to pay the surcharge as set forth in § 1.16(e) in order to prevent abandonment of the application; or, if no basic filing fee has been paid, one year from the filing date to pay the processing and retention fee set forth in § 1.21(l) to prevent disposal of the application.

(2) If a provisional application which has been accorded a filing date pursuant to paragraph (b)(2) of this section does not include the appropriate filing fee or the cover sheet required by § 1.51(a)(2), applicant will be so notified if a correspondence address has been provided and given a period of time within which to file the fee, cover sheet and to pay the surcharge as set forth in § 1.16(l) in order to prevent abandonment of the application. A copy of the ''Notice to File Missing Parts'' form mailed to applicant should accompany any response thereto submitted to the Office. If the required filing fee is not timely paid, the application will be disposed of. No copies will be provided or certified by the Office of an application which has been disposed of or in which the required basic filing fee has not been paid. The notification pursuant to this paragraph may be made simultaneously with any notification pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section. If no correspondence address is included in the application, applicant has two months from the filing date to file the basic filing fee, cover sheet and to pay the surcharge as set forth in § 1.16(l) in order to prevent abandonment of the application.

(e)(1) An application for a patent filed under paragraph (b)(1) of this section will not be placed upon the files for examination until all its required parts, complying with the rules relating thereto, are received, except that

certain minor informalities may be waived subject to subsequent correction whenever required.

(2) A provisional application for a patent filed under paragraph (b)(2) of this section will not be placed upon the files for examination and will become abandoned no later than twelve months after its filing date pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 111(b)(1).

(f) The filing date of an international application designating the United States of America shall be treated as the filing date in the United States of America under PCT Article 11(3), except as provided in 35 U.S.C. 102(e).

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983, as amended at 49 FR 554, Jan. 4, 1984; 50 FR 31826, Aug. 6, 1985; 60 FR 20223, Apr. 25, 1995]

§ 1.54 Parts of application to be filed together; filing receipt.

(a) It is desirable that all parts of the complete application be deposited in the Office together; otherwise a letter must accompany each part, accurately and clearly connecting it with the other parts of the application. See § 1.53 with regard to completion of an application.

(b) Applicant will be informed of the application number and filing date by a filing receipt.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2710, Jan. 20, 1983, as amended at 61 FR 42803, Aug. 19, 1996]

§ 1.55 Claim for foreign priority.

(a) An applicant in a nonprovisional application may claim the benefit of the filing date of one or more prior foreign applications under the conditions specified in 35 U.S.C. 119(a)–(d) and 172. The claim to priority need be in no special form and may be made by the attorney or agent if the foreign application is referred to in the oath or declaration as required by § 1.63. The claim for priority and the certified copy of the foreign application specified in 35 U.S.C. 119(b) must be filed in the case of an interference (§ 1.630), when necessary to overcome the date of a reference relied upon by the examiner, when specifically required by the examiner, and in all other cases, before the patent is granted. If the claim for priority or the certified copy of the foreign application is filed after the date the issue fee is paid, it must be accompanied by a petition requesting entry and by the fee set forth in § 1.17(i). If the certified copy filed is not in the English language, a translation need not be filed except in the case of interference; or when necessary to overcome the date of a reference relied upon by the examiner; or when specifically required by the examiner, in which event an English language translation must be filed together with a statement that the translation of the certified copy is accurate. The statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) An applicant in a nonprovisional application may under certain circumstances claim priority on the basis of one or more applications for an inventor's certificate in a country granting both inventor's certificates and patents. To claim the right of priority on the basis of an application for an inventor's certificate in such a country under 35 U.S.C. 119(d), the applicant when submitting a claim for such right as specified in paragraph (a) of this section, shall include an affidavit or declaration. The affidavit or declaration must include a specific statement that, upon an investigation, he or she is satisfied that to the best of his or her knowledge, the applicant, when filing the application for the inventor's certificate, had the option to file an application for either a patent or an inventor's certificate as to the subject matter of the identified claim or claims forming the basis for the claim of priority.

[60 FR 20224, Apr. 25, 1995]

§ 1.56 Duty to disclose information material to patentability.

(a) A patent by its very nature is affected with a public interest. The public interest is best served, and the most effective patent examination occurs when, at the time an application is being examined, the Office is aware of and evaluates the teachings of all information material to patentability. Each individual associated with the filing and prosecution of a patent application has a duty of candor and good

faith in dealing with the Office, which includes a duty to disclose to the Office all information known to that individual to be material to patentability as defined in this section. The duty to disclose information exists with respect to each pending claim until the claim is cancelled or withdrawn from consideration, or the application becomes abandoned. Information material to the patentability of a claim that is cancelled or withdrawn from consideration need not be submitted if the information is not material to the patentability of any claim remaining under consideration in the application. There is no duty to submit information which is not material to the patentability of any existing claim. The duty to disclose all information known to be material to patentability is deemed to be satisfied if all information known to be material to patentability of any claim issued in a patent was cited by the Office or submitted to the Office in the manner prescribed by §§1.97(b)–(d) and 1.98. However, no patent will be granted on an application in connection with which fraud on the Office was practiced or attempted or the duty of disclosure was violated through bad faith or intentional misconduct. The Office encourages applicants to carefully examine:

(1) Prior art cited in search reports of a foreign patent office in a counterpart application, and

(2) The closest information over which individuals associated with the filing or prosecution of a patent application believe any pending claim patentably defines, to make sure that any material information contained therein is disclosed to the Office.

(b) Under this section, information is material to patentability when it is not cumulative to information already of record or being made of record in the application, and

(1) It establishes, by itself or in combination with other information, a prima facie case of unpatentability of a claim; or

(2) It refutes, or is inconsistent with, a position the applicant takes in:

(i) Opposing an argument of unpatentability relied on by the Office, or

(ii) Asserting an argument of patentability.

A prima facie case of unpatentability is established when the information compels a conclusion that a claim is unpatentable under the preponderance of evidence, burden-of-proof standard, giving each term in the claim its broadest reasonable construction consistent with the specification, and before any consideration is given to evidence which may be submitted in an attempt to establish a contrary conclusion of patentability.

(c) Individuals associated with the filing or prosecution of a patent application within the meaning of this section are:

(1) Each inventor named in the application;

(2) Each attorney or agent who prepares or prosecutes the application; and

(3) Every other person who is substantively involved in the preparation or prosecution of the application and who is associated with the inventor, with the assignee or with anyone to whom there is an obligation to assign the application.

(d) Individuals other than the attorney, agent or inventor may comply with this section by disclosing information to the attorney, agent, or inventor.

[57 FR 2034, Jan. 17, 1992]

§ 1.57 [Reserved]

§ 1.58 Chemical and mathematical formulae and tables.

(a) The specification, including the claims, may contain chemical and mathematical formulas, but shall not contain drawings or flow diagrams. The description portion of the specification may contain tables; claims may contain tables either if necessary to conform to 35 U.S.C. 112 or if otherwise found to be desirable.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) Chemical and mathematical formulae and tables must be presented in compliance with §1.52 (a) and (b), except that chemical and mathematical formulae or tables may be placed in a landscape orientation if they cannot be presented satisfactorily in a portrait orientation. Typewritten characters

used in such formulae and tables must be chosen from a block (nonscript) type font or lettering style having capital letters which are at least 0.21 cm. (0.08 inch) high (*e.g.*, elite type). A space at least 0.64 cm. (¼ inch) high should be provided between complex formulae and tables and the text. Tables should have the lines and columns of data closely spaced to conserve space, consistent with a high degree of legibility.

(Pub. L. 94–131, 89 Stat. 685)

[43 FR 20463, May 11, 1978, as amended at 61 FR 42803, Aug. 19, 1996]

§ 1.59 Papers of application with filing date not to be returned.

Papers in an application which has received a filing date pursuant to § 1.53 will not be returned for any purpose whatever. If applicants have not preserved copies of the papers, the Office will furnish copies at the usual cost of any application in which either the required basic filing fee (§ 1.16) or, if the application was filed under § 1.53(b)(1), the processing and retention fee (§ 1.21(1)) has been paid. See § 1.618 for return of unauthorized and improper papers in interferences.

[60 FR 20224, Apr. 25, 1995]

§ 1.60 Continuation or divisional application for invention disclosed in a prior nonprovisional application.

(a) [Reserved]

(b) An applicant may omit signing of the oath or declaration in a continuation or divisional application (filed under the conditions specified in 35 U.S.C. 120 or 121 and § 1.78(a)) if:

(1) The prior application was a nonprovisional application and a complete application as set forth in § 1.51(a)(1);

(2) Applicant indicates that the application is being filed pursuant to this section and files a true copy of the prior complete application as filed including the specification (with claims), drawings, oath or declaration showing the signature or an indication it was signed, and any amendments referred to in the oath or declaration filed to complete the prior application;

(3) The inventors named in the continuation or divisional application are the same or less than all the inventors named in the prior application; and

(4) The application is filed before the patenting, or abandonment of, or termination of proceedings on the prior application. The copy of the prior application must be accompanied by a statement that the application papers filed are a true copy of the prior complete application. Such statement must be by the applicant or applicant's attorney or agent and must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. Only amendments reducing the number of claims or adding a reference to the prior application (§ 1.78(a)) will be entered before calculating the filing fee and granting the filing date. If the continuation or divisional application is filed by less than all the inventors named in the prior application, a statement must accompany the application when filed requesting deletion of the names of the person or persons who are not inventors of the invention being claimed in the continuation or divisional application. Except as provided in paragraph (d) of this section, if a true copy of the prior application as filed is not filed with the application or if the statement that the application papers are a true copy is omitted, the application will not be given a filing date earlier than the date upon which the copy and statement are filed, unless a petition with the fee set forth in § 1.17(i) is filed which satisfactorily explains the delay in filing these items.

(c) If an application filed pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section is incomplete for reasons other than those specified in paragraph (d) of this section, applicant will be notified and given a time period within which to complete the application in order to obtain a filing date as of the date of filing the omitted item provided the omitted item is filed before the patenting or abandonment of or termination of proceedings on the prior application. If the omission is not corrected within the time period set, the application will be returned or otherwise disposed of; the fee, if submitted, will be refunded less the handling fee set forth in § 1.21(n).

(d) If an application filed pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section is otherwise complete, but does not include the appropriate filing fee or a true copy of

the oath or declaration from the prior complete application, showing the signature or an indication it was signed, a filing date will be granted and applicant will be so notified and given a period of time within which to file the fee, or the true copy of the oath or declaration and to pay the surcharge as set forth in § 1.16(e) in order to prevent abandonment of the application. The notification pursuant to this paragraph may be made simultaneously with any notification pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section.

[50 FR 9379, Mar. 7, 1985, as amended at 54 FR 47519, Nov. 15, 1989; 57 FR 56447, Nov. 30, 1992; 60 FR 20224, Apr. 25, 1995]

§ 1.61 [Reserved]

§ 1.62 File wrapper continuing procedure.

(a) A continuation, continuation-in-part, or divisional application, which uses the specification, drawings and oath or declaration from a prior nonprovisional application which is complete as defined by § 1.51(a)(1), and which is to be abandoned, may be filed under this section before the payment of the issue fee, abandonment of, or termination of proceedings on the prior application, or after payment of the issue fee if a petition under § 1.313(b)(5) is granted in the prior application. The filing date of an application filed under this section is the date on which a request is filed for an application under this section including identification of the application number and the names of the inventors named in the prior complete application. If the continuation, continuation-in-part, or divisional application is filed by less than all the inventors named in the prior application a statement must accompany the application when filed requesting deletion of the names of the person or persons who are not inventors of the invention being claimed in the continuation, continuation-in-part, or divisional application.

(b) The filing fee for a continuation, continuation-in-part, or divisional application under this section is based on the number of claims remaining in the application after entry of any preliminary amendment and entry of any amendments under § 1.116 unentered in the prior application which applicant has requested to be entered in the continuing application.

(c) In the case of a continuation-in-part application which adds and claims additional disclosure by amendment, an oath or declaration as required by § 1.63 must also be filed. In those situations where a new oath or declaration is required due to additional subject matter being claimed, additional inventors may be named in the continuing application. In a continuation or divisional application which discloses and claims only subject matter disclosed in a prior application, no additional oath or declaration is required and the application must name as inventors the same or less than all the inventors named in the prior application.

(d) If an application which has been accorded a filing date pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section does not include the appropriate basic filing fee pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section, or an oath or declaration by the applicant in the case of a continuation-in-part application pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section, applicant will be so notified and given a period of time within which to file the fee, oath, or declaration and to pay the surcharge as set forth in § 1.16(e) in order to prevent abandonment of the application. The notification pursuant to this paragraph may be made simultaneously with any notification of a defect pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section.

(e) An application filed under this section will utilize the file wrapper and contents of the prior application to constitute the new continuation, continuation-in-part, or divisional application but will be assigned a new application number. Changes to the prior application must be made in the form of an amendment to the prior application as it exists at the time of filing the application under this section. No copy of the prior application or new specification is required. The filing of such a copy or specification will be considered improper, and a filing date as of the date of deposit of the request for an application under this section will not be granted to the application unless a petition with the fee set forth in § 1.17(i)

is filed with instructions to cancel the copy or specification.

(f) The filing of an application under this section will be construed to include a waiver of confidence by the applicant under 35 U.S.C. 122 to the extent that any member of the public who is entitled under the provisions of § 1.14 to access to, or information concerning either the prior application or any continuing application filed under the provisions of this section may be given similar access to, or similar information concerning, the other application(s) in the file wrapper.

(g) The filing of a request for a continuing application under this section will be considered to be a request to expressly abandon the prior application as of the filing date granted the continuing application.

(h) The applicant is urged to furnish the following information relating to the prior and continuing applications to the best of his or her ability:

(1) Title as originally filed and as last amended;

(2) Name of applicant as originally filed and as last amended;

(3) Current correspondence address of applicant;

(4) Identification of prior foreign application and any priority claim under 35 U.S.C. 119.

(5) The title of the invention and names of the applicants to be named in the continuing application.

(i) Envelopes containing only application papers and fees for filing under this section should be marked ''Box FWC''.

(j) If any application filed under this section is found to be improper, the applicant will be notified and given a time period within which to correct the filing error in order to obtain a filing date as of the date the filing error is corrected provided the correction is made before the payment of the issue fee, abandonment of, or termination of proceedings on the prior application. If the filing error is not corrected within the time period set, the application will be returned or otherwise disposed of; the fee, if submitted, will be refunded less the handling fee set forth in § 1.21(n).

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2710, Jan. 20, 1983, as amended at 49 FR 555, Jan. 4, 1984; 50 FR 9380, Mar. 7, 1985; 54 FR 47519, Nov. 15, 1989; 60 FR 20225, Apr. 25, 1995; 61 FR 42803, Aug. 19, 1996]

OATH OR DECLARATION

§ 1.63 Oath or declaration.

(a) An oath or declaration filed under § 1.51(a)(1)(ii) as a part of a nonprovisional application must:

(1) Be executed in accordance with either § 1.66 or § 1.68;

(2) Identify the specification to which it is directed;

(3) Identify each inventor and the residence and country of citizenship of each inventor; and

(4) State whether the inventor is a sole or joint inventor of the invention claimed.

(b) In addition to meeting the requirements of paragraph (a), the oath or declaration must state that the person making the oath or declaration:

(1) Has reviewed and understands the contents of the specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment specifically referred to in the oath or declaration;

(2) Believes the named inventor or inventors to be the original and first inventor or inventors of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought; and

(3) Acknowledges the duty to disclose to the Office all information known to the person to be material to patentability as defined in § 1.56.

(c) In addition to meeting the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, the oath or declaration in any application in which a claim for foreign priority is made pursuant to § 1.55 must identify the foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate on which priority is claimed, and any foreign application having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed, by specifying the application number, country, day, month and year of its filing.

(d) In any continuation-in-part application filed under the conditions specified in 35 U.S.C. 120 which discloses and

claims subject matter in addition to that disclosed in the prior copending application, the oath or declaration must also state that the person making the oath or declaration acknowledges the duty to disclose to the Office all information known to the person to be material to patentability as defined in §1.56, which became available between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of the continuation-in-part application.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2711, Jan. 20, 1983; 48 FR 4285, Jan. 31, 1983, as amended at 57 FR 2034, Jan. 17, 1992; 60 FR 20225, Apr. 25, 1995]

§1.64 Person making oath or declaration.

(a) The oath or declaration must be made by all of the actual inventors except as provided for in §1.42, 1.43, or 1.47.

(b) If the person making the oath or declaration is not the inventor (§1.42, 1.43, or 1.47), the oath or declaration shall state the relationship of the person to the inventor and, upon information and belief, the facts which the inventor is required to state.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2711, Jan. 20, 1983]

§1.66 Officers authorized to administer oaths.

(a) The oath or affirmation may be made before any person within the United States authorized by law to administer oaths. An oath made in a foreign country may be made before any diplomatic or consular officer of the United States authorized to administer oaths, or before any officer having an official seal and authorized to administer oaths in the foreign country in which the applicant may be, whose authority shall be proved by a certificate of a diplomatic or consular officer of the United States, or by an apostille of an official designated by a foreign country which, by treaty or convention, accords like effect to apostilles of designated officials in the United States. The oath shall be attested in all cases in this and other countries, by the proper official seal of the officer before whom the oath or affirmation is made. Such oath or affirmation shall be valid as to execution if it complies with the laws of the State or country where made. When the person before whom the oath or affirmation is made in this country is not provided with a seal, his official character shall be established by competent evidence, as by a certificate from a clerk of a court of record or other proper officer having a seal.

(b) When the oath is taken before an officer in a country foreign to the United States, any accompanying application papers, except the drawings, must be attached together with the oath and a ribbon passed one or more times through all the sheets of the application, except the drawings, and the ends of said ribbon brought together under the seal before the latter is affixed and impressed, or each sheet must be impressed with the official seal of the officer before whom the oath is taken. If the papers as filed are not properly ribboned or each sheet impressed with the seal, the case will be accepted for examination, but before it is allowed, duplicate papers, prepared in compliance with the foregoing sentence, must be filed.

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[47 FR 41275, Sept. 17, 1982]

§1.67 Supplemental oath or declaration.

(a) A supplemental oath or declaration meeting the requirements of §1.63 may be required to be filed to correct any deficiencies or inaccuracies present in an earlier filed oath or declaration.

(b) A supplemental oath or declaration meeting the requirements of §1.63 must be filed when a claim is presented for matter originally shown or described but not substantially embraced in the statement of invention or claims originally presented or when an oath or declaration submitted in accordance with §1.53(d)(1) after the filing of the specification and any required drawings specifically and improperly refers to an amendment which includes new matter. No new matter may be introduced into a nonprovisional application after its filing date even if a supplemental oath or declaration is filed.

In proper cases, the oath or declaration here required may be made on information and belief by an applicant other than the inventor.

(c) A supplemental oath or declaration meeting the requirements of § 1.63 must also be filed if the application was altered after the oath or declaration was signed or if the oath or declaration was signed:

(1) In blank;

(2) Without review thereof by the person making the oath or declaration; or

(3) Without review of the specification, including the claims, as required by § 1.63(b)(1).

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2711, Jan. 20, 1983, as amended at 57 FR 2034, Jan. 17, 1992; 60 FR 20225, Apr. 25, 1995]

§ 1.68 Declaration in lieu of oath.

Any document to be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office and which is required by any law, rule, or other regulation to be under oath may be subscribed to by a written declaration. Such declaration may be used in lieu of the oath otherwise required, if, and only if, the declarant is on the same document, warned that willful false statements and the like are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both (18 U.S.C. 1001) and may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereon. The declarant must set forth in the body of the declaration that all statements made of the declarant's own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true.

[49 FR 48452, Dec. 12, 1984]

§ 1.69 Foreign language oaths and declarations.

(a) Whenever an individual making an oath or declaration cannot understand English, the oath or declaration must be in a language that such individual can understand and shall state that such individual understands the content of any documents to which the oath or declaration relates.

(b) Unless the text of any oath or declaration in a language other than English is a form provided or approved by the Patent and Trademark Office, it must be accompanied by a verified English translation, except that in the case of an oath or declaration filed under § 1.63, the translation may be filed in the Office no later than two months from the date applicant is notified to file the translation.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[42 FR 5594, Jan. 28, 1977, as amended at 48 FR 2711, Jan. 20, 1983]

§ 1.70 [Reserved]

SPECIFICATION

AUTHORITY: Secs. 1.71 to 1.79 also issued under 35 U.S.C. 112.

§ 1.71 Detailed description and specification of the invention.

(a) The specification must include a written description of the invention or discovery and of the manner and process of making and using the same, and is required to be in such full, clear, concise, and exact terms as to enable any person skilled in the art or science to which the invention or discovery appertains, or with which it is most nearly connected, to make and use the same.

(b) The specification must set forth the precise invention for which a patent is solicited, in such manner as to distinguish it from other inventions and from what is old. It must describe completely a specific embodiment of the process, machine, manufacture, composition of matter or improvement invented, and must explain the mode of operation or principle whenever applicable. The best mode contemplated by the inventor of carrying out his invention must be set forth.

(c) In the case of an improvement, the specification must particularly point out the part or parts of the process, machine, manufacture, or composition of matter to which the improvement relates, and the description should be confined to the specific improvement and to such parts as necessarily cooperate with it or as may be necessary to a complete understanding or description of it.

(d) A copyright or mask work notice may be placed in a design or utility patent application adjacent to copyright and mask work material contained therein. The notice may appear

at any appropriate portion of the patent application disclosure. For notices in drawings, see §1.84(s). The content of the notice must be limited to only those elements provided for by law. For example, ''©1983 John Doe'' (17 U.S.C. 401) and '' *M* John Doe'' (17 U.S.C. 909) would be properly limited and, under current statutes, legally sufficient notices of copyright and mask work, respectively. Inclusion of a copyright or mask work notice will be permitted only if the authorization language set forth in paragraph (e) of this section is included at the beginning (preferably as the first paragraph) of the specification.

(e) The authorization shall read as follows:

A portion of the disclosure of this patent document contains material which is subject to (copyright or mask work) protection. The (copyright or mask work) owner has no objection to the facsimile reproduction by anyone of the patent document or the patent disclosure, as it appears in the Patent and Trademark Office patent file or records, but otherwise reserves all (copyright or mask work) rights whatsoever.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 53 FR 47808, Nov. 28, 1988; 58 FR 38723, July 20, 1993]

§1.72 Title and abstract.

(a) The title of the invention, which should be as short and specific as possible, should appear as a heading on the first page of the specification, if it does not otherwise appear at the beginning of the application.

(b) A brief abstract of the technical disclosure in the specification must commence on a separate sheet, preferably following the claims, under the heading ''Abstract of the Disclosure.'' The purpose of the abstract is to enable the Patent and Trademark Office and the public generally to determine quickly from a cursory inspection the nature and gist of the technical disclosure. The abstract shall not be used for interpreting the scope of the claims.

(Pub. L. 94–131, 89 Stat. 685)

[31 FR 12922, Oct. 4, 1966, as amended at 43 FR 20464, May 11, 1978; 61 FR 42803, Aug. 19, 1996]

§1.73 Summary of the invention.

A brief summary of the invention indicating its nature and substance, which may include a statement of the object of the invention, should precede the detailed description. Such summary should, when set forth, be commensurate with the invention as claimed and any object recited should be that of the invention as claimed.

§1.74 Reference to drawings.

When there are drawings, there shall be a brief description of the several views of the drawings and the detailed description of the invention shall refer to the different views by specifying the numbers of the figures and to the different parts by use of reference letters or numerals (preferably the latter).

§1.75 Claim(s).

(a) The specification must conclude with a claim particularly pointing out and distinctly claiming the subject matter which the applicant regards as his invention or discovery.

(b) More than one claim may be presented provided they differ substantially from each other and are not unduly multiplied.

(c) One or more claims may be presented in dependent form, referring back to and further limiting another claim or claims in the same application. Any dependent claim which refers to more than one other claim (''multiple dependent claim'') shall refer to such other claims in the alternative only. A multiple dependent claim shall not serve as a basis for any other multiple dependent claim. For fee calculation purposes under §1.16, a multiple dependent claim will be considered to be that number of claims to which direct reference is made therein. For fee calculation purposes, also, any claim depending from a multiple dependent claim will be considered to be that number of claims to which direct reference is made in that multiple dependent claim. In addition to the other filing fees, any original application which is filed with, or is amended to include, multiple dependent claims must have paid therein the fee set forth in §1.16(d). Claims in dependent form shall be construed to include all the limitations of the claim incorporated by reference into the dependent claim. A multiple dependent claim shall be construed to incorporate by reference

all the limitations of each of the particular claims in relation to which it is being considered.

(d)(1) The claim or claims must conform to the invention as set forth in the remainder of the specification and the terms and phrases used in the claims must find clear support or antecedent basis in the description so that the meaning of the terms in the claims may be ascertainable by reference to the description. (See § 1.58(a).)

(2) See §§ 1.141 to 1.146 as to claiming different inventions in one application.

(e) Where the nature of the case admits, as in the case of an improvement, any independent claim should contain in the following order:

(1) A preamble comprising a general description of all the elements or steps of the claimed combination which are conventional or known,

(2) A phrase such as ''wherein the improvement comprises,'' and

(3) Those elements, steps and/or relationships which constitute that portion of the claimed combination which the applicant considers as the new or improved portion.

(f) If there are several claims, they shall be numbered consecutively in Arabic numerals.

(g) The least restrictive claim should be presented as claim number 1, and all dependent claims should be grouped together with the claim or claims to which they refer to the extent practicable.

(h) The claim or claims must commence on a separate sheet.

(i) Where a claim sets forth a plurality of elements or steps, each element or step of the claim should be separated by a line indentation.

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1126)

[31 FR 12922, Oct. 4, 1966, as amended at 36 FR 12690, July 3, 1971; 37 FR 21995, Oct. 18, 1972; 43 FR 4015, Jan. 31, 1978; 47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982; 61 FR 42803, Aug. 19, 1996]

§ 1.77 Arrangement of application elements.

(a) The elements of the application, if applicable, should appear in the following order:

(1) Utility Application Transmittal Form.

(2) Fee Transmittal Form.

(3) Title of the invention; or an introductory portion stating the name, citizenship, and residence of the applicant, and the title of the invention.

(4) Cross-reference to related applications.

(5) Statement regarding federally sponsored research or development.

(6) Reference to a ''Microfiche appendix.'' (See § 1.96 (c)). The total number of microfiche and total number of frames should be specified.

(7) Background of the invention.

(8) Brief summary of the invention.

(9) Brief description of the several views of the drawing.

(10) Detailed description of the invention.

(11) Claim or claims.

(12) Abstract of the Disclosure.

(13) Drawings.

(14) Executed oath or declaration.

(15) Sequence Listing (See §§ 1.821 through 1.825).

(b) The elements set forth in paragraphs (a)(3) through (a)(5), (a)(7) through (a)(12) and (a)(15) of this section should appear in upper case, without underlining or bold type, as section headings. If no text follows the section heading, the phrase ''Not Applicable'' should follow the section heading.

[61 FR 42803, Aug. 19, 1996]

§ 1.78 Claiming benefit of earlier filing date and cross references to other applications.

(a)(1) A nonprovisional application may claim an invention disclosed in one or more prior filed copending nonprovisional applications or international applications designating the United States of America. In order for a nonprovisional application to claim the benefit of a prior filed copending nonprovisional application or international application designating the United States of America, each prior application must name as an inventor at least one inventor named in the later filed nonprovisional application and disclose the named inventor's invention claimed in at least one claim of the later filed nonprovisional application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112. In addition, each prior application must be:

(i) Complete as set forth in § 1.51(a)(1); or

(ii) Entitled to a filing date as set forth in § 1.53(b)(1), § 1.60 or § 1.62 and include the basic filing fee set forth in § 1.16; or

(iii) Entitled to a filing date as set forth in § 1.53(b)(1) and have paid therein the processing and retention fee set forth in § 1.21(l) within the time period set forth in § 1.53(d)(1).

(2) Any nonprovisional application claiming the benefit of one or more prior filed copending nonprovisional applications or international applications designating the United States of America must contain or be amended to contain in the first sentence of the specification following the title a reference to each such prior application, identifying it by application number (consisting of the series code and serial number) or international application number and international filing date and indicating the relationship of the applications. Cross-references to other related applications may be made when appropriate. (See § 1.14(a)).

(3) A nonprovisional application other than for a design patent may claim an invention disclosed in one or more prior filed copending provisional applications. Since a provisional application can be pending for no more than twelve months, the last day of pendency may occur on a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia which for copendency would require the nonprovisional application to be filed prior to the Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday. In order for a nonprovisional application to claim the benefit of one or more prior filed copending provisional applications, each prior provisional application must name as an inventor at least one inventor named in the later filed nonprovisional application and disclose the named inventor's invention claimed in at least one claim of the later filed nonprovisional application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112. In addition, each prior provisional application must be:

(i) Complete as set forth in § 1.51(a)(2); or

(ii) Entitled to a filing date as set forth in § 1.53(b)(2) and include the basic filing fee set forth in § 1.16(k).

(4) Any nonprovisional application claiming the benefit of one or more prior filed copending provisional applications must contain or be amended to contain in the first sentence of the specification following the title a reference to each such prior provisional application, identifying it as a provisional application, and including the provisional application number (consisting of series code and serial number).

(b) Where two or more applications filed by the same applicant contain conflicting claims, elimination of such claims from all but one application may be required in the absence of good and sufficient reason for their retention during pendency in more than one application.

(c) Where an application or a patent under reexamination and at least one other application naming different inventors are owned by the same party and contain conflicting claims, and there is no statement of record indicating that the claimed inventions were commonly owned or subject to an obligation of assignment to the same person at the time the later invention was made, the assignee may be called upon to state whether the claimed inventions were commonly owned or subject to an obligation of assignment to the same person at the time the later invention was made, and if not, indicate which named inventor is the prior inventor.

(Pub. L. 94–131, 89 Stat. 685; 35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[36 FR 7312, Apr. 17, 1971, as amended at 50 FR 9380, Mar. 7, 1985; 50 FR 11366, Mar. 21, 1985; 58 FR 54509, Oct. 22, 1993; 60 FR 20225, Apr. 25, 1995; 61 FR 42804, Aug. 19, 1996]

§ 1.79 Reservation clauses not permitted.

A reservation for a future application of subject matter disclosed but not claimed in a pending application will not be permitted in the pending application, but an application disclosing unclaimed subject matter may contain a reference to a later filed application of the same applicant or owned by a common assignee disclosing and claiming that subject matter.

THE DRAWINGS

AUTHORITY: Secs. 1.81 to 1.88 also issued under 35 U.S.C. 113.

§ 1.81 Drawings required in patent application.

(a) The applicant for a patent is required to furnish a drawing of his or her invention where necessary for the understanding of the subject matter sought to be patented; this drawing, or a high quality copy thereof, must be filed with the application. Since corrections are the responsibility of the applicant, the original drawing(s) should be retained by the applicant for any necessary future correction.

(b) Drawings may include illustrations which facilitate an understanding of the invention (for example, flow sheets in cases of processes, and diagrammatic views).

(c) Whenever the nature of the subject matter sought to be patented admits of illustration by a drawing without its being necessary for the understanding of the subject matter and the applicant has not furnished such a drawing, the examiner will require its submission within a time period of not less than two months from the date of the sending of a notice thereof.

(d) Drawings submitted after the filing date of the application may not be used to overcome any insufficiency of the specification due to lack of an enabling disclosure or otherwise inadequate disclosure therein, or to supplement the original disclosure thereof for the purpose of interpretation of the scope of any claim.

[43 FR 4015, Jan. 31, 1978, as amended at 53 FR 47808, Nov. 28, 1988]

§ 1.83 Content of drawing.

(a) The drawing in a nonprovisional application must show every feature of the invention specified in the claims. However, conventional features disclosed in the description and claims, where their detailed illustration is not essential for a proper understanding of the invention, should be illustrated in the drawing in the form of a graphical drawing symbol or a labeled representation (e.g., a labeled rectangular box).

(b) When the invention consists of an improvement on an old machine the drawing must when possible exhibit, in one or more views, the improved portion itself, disconnected from the old structure, and also in another view, so much only of the old structure as will suffice to show the connection of the invention therewith.

(c) Where the drawings in a nonprovisional application do not comply with the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, the examiner shall require such additional illustration within a time period of not less than two months from the date of the sending of a notice thereof. Such corrections are subject to the requirements of § 1.81(d).

[31 FR 12923, Oct. 4, 1966, as amended at 43 FR 4015, Jan. 31, 1978; 60 FR 20226, Apr. 25, 1995]

§ 1.84 Standards for drawings.

(a) *Drawings.* There are two acceptable categories for presenting drawings in utility patent applications:

(1) *Black ink.* Black and white drawings are normally required. India ink, or its equivalent that secures solid black lines, must be used for drawings, or

(2) *Color.* On rare occasions, color drawings may be necessary as the only practical medium by which to disclose the subject matter sought to be patented in a utility patent application or the subject matter of a statutory invention registration. The Patent and Trademark Office will accept color drawings in utility patent applications and statutory invention registrations only after granting a petition filed under this paragraph explaining why the color drawings are necessary. Any such petition must include the following:

(i) The appropriate fee set forth in § 1.17(h);

(ii) Three (3) sets of color drawings; and

(iii) The specification must contain the following language as the first paragraph in that portion of the specification relating to the brief description of the drawing:

The file of this patent contains at least one drawing executed in color. Copies of this patent with color drawing(s) will be provided by the Patent and Trademark Office upon request and payment of the necessary fee.

If the language is not in the specification, a proposed amendment to insert the language must accompany the petition.

(b) *Photographs.* (1) Black and white. Photographs are not ordinarily permitted in utility and design patent applications. However, the Office will accept photographs in utility and design patent applications only after granting a petition filed under this paragraph which requests that photographs be accepted. Any such petition must include the following:

(i) The appropriate fee set forth in § 1.17(h); and

(ii) Three (3) sets of photographs. Photographs must either be developed on double weight photographic paper or be permanently mounted on bristol board. The photographs must be of sufficient quality so that all details in the drawing are reproducible in the printed patent.

(2) Color. Color photographs will be accepted in utility patent applications if the conditions for accepting color drawings have been satisfied. See paragraph (a)(2) of this section.

(c) *Identification of drawings.* Identifying indicia, if provided, should include the application number or the title of the invention, inventor's name, docket number (if any), and the name and telephone number of a person to call if the Office is unable to match the drawings to the proper application. This information should be placed on the back of each sheet of drawings a minimum distance of 1.5 cm. (5/8 inch) down from the top of the page. In addition, a reference to the application number, or, if an application number has not been assigned, the inventor's name, may be included in the left-hand corner, provided that the reference appears within 1.5 cm. (9/16 inch) from the top of the sheet.

(d) *Graphic forms in drawings.* Chemical or mathematical formulae, tables, and waveforms may be submitted as drawings, and are subject to the same requirements as drawings. Each chemical or mathematical formula must be labeled as a separate figure, using brackets when necessary, to show that information is properly integrated. Each group of waveforms must be presented as a single figure, using a common vertical axis with time extending along the horizontal axis. Each individual waveform discussed in the specification must be identified with a separate letter designation adjacent to the vertical axis.

(e) *Type of paper.* Drawings submitted to the Office must be made on paper which is flexible, strong, white, smooth, non-shiny, and durable. All sheets must be free from cracks, creases, and folds. Only one side of the sheet shall be used for the drawing. Each sheet must be reasonably free from erasures and must be free from alterations, overwritings, and interlineations. Photographs must either be developed on double weight photographic paper or be permanently mounted on bristol board. See paragraph (b) of this section for other requirements for photographs.

(f) *Size of paper.* All drawing sheets in an application must be the same size. One of the shorter sides of the sheet is regarded as its top. The size of the sheets on which drawings are made must be:

(1) 21.0 cm. by 29.7 cm. (DIN size A4), or

(2) 21.6 cm. by 27.9 cm. (8½ by 11 inches).

(g) *Margins.* The sheets must not contain frames around the sight; *i.e.,* the usable surface, but should have scan target points, *i.e.,* cross-hairs, printed on two catercorner margin corners. Each sheet must include a top margin of at least 2.5 cm. (1 inch), a left side margin of at least 2.5 cm. (1 inch), a right side margin of at least 1.5 cm. (9/16 inch), and a bottom margin of at least 1.0 cm. (3/8 inch), thereby leaving a sight no greater than 17.0 cm. by 26.2 cm. on 21.0 cm. by 29.7 cm. (DIN size A4) drawing sheets, and a sight no greater than 17.6 cm. by 24.4 cm. (6 15/16 by 9 5/8 inches) on 21.6 cm. by 27.9 cm. (8½ by 11 inch) drawing sheets.

(h) *Views.* The drawing must contain as many views as necessary to show the invention. The views may be plan, elevation, section, or perspective views. Detail views of portions of elements, on a larger scale if necessary, may also be used. All views of the drawing must be grouped together and arranged on the sheet(s) without wasting space, preferably in an upright position, clearly separated from one another, and must

not be included in the sheets containing the specifications, claims, or abstract. Views must not be connected by projection lines and must not contain center lines. Waveforms of electrical signals may be connected by dashed lines to show the relative timing of the waveforms.

(1) *Exploded views.* Exploded views, with the separated parts embraced by a bracket, to show the relationship or order of assembly of various parts are permissible. When an exploded view is shown in a figure which is on the same sheet as another figure, the exploded view should be placed in brackets.

(2) *Partial views.* When necessary, a view of a large machine or device in its entirety may be broken into partial views on a single sheet, or extended over several sheets if there is no loss in facility of understanding the view. Partial views drawn on separate sheets must always be capable of being linked edge to edge so that no partial view contains parts of another partial view. A smaller scale view should be included showing the whole formed by the partial views and indicating the positions of the parts shown. When a portion of a view is enlarged for magnification purposes, the view and the enlarged view must each be labeled as separate views.

(i) Where views on two or more sheets form, in effect, a single complete view, the views on the several sheets must be so arranged that the complete figure can be assembled without concealing any part of any of the views appearing on the various sheets.

(ii) A very long view may be divided into several parts placed one above the other on a single sheet. However, the relationship between the different parts must be clear and unambiguous.

(3) *Sectional views.* The plane upon which a sectional view is taken should be indicated on the view from which the section is cut by a broken line. The ends of the broken line should be designated by Arabic or Roman numerals corresponding to the view number of the sectional view, and should have arrows to indicate the direction of sight. Hatching must be used to indicate section portions of an object, and must be made by regularly spaced oblique parallel lines spaced sufficiently apart to enable the lines to be distinguished without difficulty. Hatching should not impede the clear reading of the reference characters and lead lines. If it is not possible to place reference characters outside the hatched area, the hatching may be broken off wherever reference characters are inserted. Hatching must be at a substantial angle to the surrounding axes or principal lines, preferably 45°. A cross section must be set out and drawn to show all of the materials as they are shown in the view from which the cross section was taken. The parts in cross section must show proper material(s) by hatching with regularly spaced parallel oblique strokes, the space between strokes being chosen on the basis of the total area to be hatched. The various parts of a cross section of the same item should be hatched in the same manner and should accurately and graphically indicate the nature of the material(s) that is illustrated in cross section. The hatching of juxtaposed different elements must be angled in a different way. In the case of large areas, hatching may be confined to an edging drawn around the entire inside of the outline of the area to be hatched. Different types of hatching should have different conventional meanings as regards the nature of a material seen in cross section.

(4) *Alternate position.* A moved position may be shown by a broken line superimposed upon a suitable view if this can be done without crowding; otherwise, a separate view must be used for this purpose.

(5) *Modified forms.* Modified forms of construction must be shown in separate views.

(i) *Arrangement of views.* One view must not be placed upon another or within the outline of another. All views on the same sheet should stand in the same direction and, if possible, stand so that they can be read with the sheet held in an upright position. If views wider than the width of the sheet are necessary for the clearest illustration of the invention, the sheet may be turned on its side so that the top of the sheet, with the appropriate top margin to be used as the heading space, is on the right-hand side. Words must appear in a horizontal, left-to-right fashion when the page is either upright or

turned so that the top becomes the right side, except for graphs utilizing standard scientific convention to denote the axis of abscissas (of X) and the axis of ordinates (of Y).

(j) *View for Official Gazette.* One of the views should be suitable for publication in the *Official Gazette* as the illustration of the invention.

(k) *Scale.* (1) The scale to which a drawing is made must be large enough to show the mechanism without crowding when the drawing is reduced in size to two-thirds in reproduction. Views of portions of the mechanism on a larger scale should be used when necessary to show details clearly. Two or more sheets may be used if one does not give sufficient room. The number of sheets should be kept to a minimum.

(2) When approved by the examiner, the scale of the drawing may be graphically represented. Indications such as ''actual size'' or ''scale ½'' on the drawings, are not permitted, since these lose their meaning with reproduction in a different format.

(3) Elements of the same view must be in proportion to each other, unless a difference in proportion is indispensable for the clarity of the view. Instead of showing elements in different proportion, a supplementary view may be added giving a larger-scale illustration of the element of the initial view. The enlarged element shown in the second view should be surrounded by a finely drawn or ''dot-dash'' circle in the first view indicating its location without obscuring the view.

(l) *Character of lines, numbers, and letters.* All drawings must be made by a process which will give them satisfactory reproduction characteristics. Every line, number, and letter must be durable, clean, black (except for color drawings), sufficiently dense and dark, and uniformly thick and well-defined. The weight of all lines and letters must be heavy enough to permit adequate reproduction. This requirement applies to all lines however fine, to shading, and to lines representing cut surfaces in sectional views. Lines and strokes of different thicknesses may be used in the same drawing where different thicknesses have a different meaning.

(m) *Shading.* The use of shading in views is encouraged if it aids in understanding the invention and if it does not reduce legibility. Shading is used to indicate the surface or shape of spherical, cylindrical, and conical elements of an object. Flat parts may also be lightly shaded. Such shading is preferred in the case of parts shown in perspective, but not for cross sections. See paragraph (h)(3) of this section. Spaced lines for shading are preferred. These lines must be thin, as few in number as practicable, and they must contrast with the rest of the drawings. As a substitute for shading, heavy lines on the shade side of objects can be used except where they superimpose on each other or obscure reference characters. Light should come from the upper left corner at an angle of 45°. Surface delineations should preferably be shown by proper shading. Solid black shading areas are not permitted, except when used to represent bar graphs or color.

(n) *Symbols.* Graphical drawing symbols may be used for conventional elements when appropriate. The elements for which such symbols and labeled representations are used must be adequately identified in the specification. Known devices should be illustrated by symbols which have a universally recognized conventional meaning and are generally accepted in the art. Other symbols which are not universally recognized may be used, subject to approval by the Office, if they are not likely to be confused with existing conventional symbols, and if they are readily identifiable.

(o) *Legends.* Suitable descriptive legends may be used, or may be required by the Examiner, where necessary for understanding of the drawing, subject to approval by the Office. They should contain as few words as possible.

(p) *Numbers, letters, and reference characters.* (1) Reference characters (numerals are preferred), sheet numbers, and view numbers must be plain and legible, and must not be used in association with brackets or inverted commas, or enclosed within outlines, e.g., encircled. They must be oriented in the same direction as the view so as to avoid having to rotate the sheet. Reference characters should be arranged to follow the profile of the object depicted.

(2) The English alphabet must be used for letters, except where another alphabet is customarily used, such as the Greek alphabet to indicate angles, wavelengths, and mathematical formulas.

(3) Numbers, letters, and reference characters must measure at least .32 cm. (⅛ inch) in height. They should not be placed in the drawing so as to interfere with its comprehension. Therefore, they should not cross or mingle with the lines. They should not be placed upon hatched or shaded surfaces. When necessary, such as indicating a surface or cross section, a reference character may be underlined and a blank space may be left in the hatching or shading where the character occurs so that it appears distinct.

(4) The same part of an invention appearing in more than one view of the drawing must always be designated by the same reference character, and the same reference character must never be used to designate different parts.

(5) Reference characters not mentioned in the description shall not appear in the drawings. Reference characters mentioned in the description must appear in the drawings.

(q) *Lead lines.* Lead lines are those lines between the reference characters and the details referred to. Such lines may be straight or curved and should be as short as possible. They must originate in the immediate proximity of the reference character and extend to the feature indicated. Lead lines must not cross each other. Lead lines are required for each reference character except for those which indicate the surface or cross section on which they are placed. Such a reference character must be underlined to make it clear that a lead line has not been left out by mistake. Lead lines must be executed in the same way as lines in the drawing. See paragraph (l) of this section.

(r) *Arrows.* Arrows may be used at the ends of the lines, provided that their meaning is clear, as follows:

(1) On a lead line, a freestanding arrow to indicate the entire section towards which it points;

(2) On a lead line, an arrow touching a line to indicate the surface shown by the line looking along the direction of the arrow; or

(3) To show the direction of movement.

(s) *Copyright or Mask Work Notice.* A copyright or mask work notice may appear in the drawing, but must be placed within the sight of the drawing immediately below the figure representing the copyright or mask work material and be limited to letters having a print size of .32 cm. to .64 cm. (1/8 to 1/4 inches) high. The content of the notice must be limited to only those elements provided for by law. For example, ''©1983 John Doe'' (17 U.S.C. 401) and ''*M* John Doe'' (17 U.S.C. 909) would be properly limited and, under current statutes, legally sufficient notices of copyright and mask work, respectively. Inclusion of a copyright or mask work notice will be permitted only if the authorization language set forth in § 1.71(e) is included at the beginning (preferably as the first paragraph) of the specification.

(t) *Numbering of sheets of drawings.* The sheets of drawings should be numbered in consecutive Arabic numerals, starting with 1, within the sight as defined in paragraph (g) of this section. These numbers, if present, must be placed in the middle of the top of the sheet, but not in the margin. The numbers can be placed on the right-hand side if the drawing extends too close to the middle of the top edge of the usable surface. The drawing sheet numbering must be clear and larger than the numbers used as reference characters to avoid confusion. The number of each sheet should be shown by two Arabic numerals placed on either side of an oblique line, with the first being the sheet number, and the second being the total number of sheets of drawings, with no other marking.

(u) *Numbering of views.* (1) The different views must be numbered in consecutive Arabic numerals, starting with 1, independent of the numbering of the sheets and, if possible, in the order in which they appear on the drawing sheet(s). Partial views intended to form one complete view, on one or several sheets, must be identified by the same number followed by a capital letter. View numbers must be preceded by the abbreviation ''FIG.''

Where only a single view is used in an application to illustrate the claimed invention, it must not be numbered and the abbreviation ''FIG.'' must not appear.

(2) Numbers and letters identifying the views must be simple and clear and must not be used in association with brackets, circles, or inverted commas. The view numbers must be larger than the numbers used for reference characters.

(v) *Security markings.* Authorized security markings may be placed on the drawings provided they are outside the sight, preferably centered in the top margin.

(w) *Corrections.* Any corrections on drawings submitted to the Office must be durable and permanent.

(x) *Holes.* No holes should be made by applicant in the drawing sheets. (See § 1.152 for design drawings, § 1.165 for plant drawings, and § 1.174 for reissue drawings.)

[58 FR 38723, July 20, 1993; 58 FR 45841, 45842, Aug. 31, 1993, as amended at 61 FR 42804, Aug. 19, 1996]

§ 1.85 Corrections to drawings.

(a) The requirements of § 1.84 relating to drawings will be strictly enforced. A drawing not executed in conformity thereto, if suitable for reproduction, may be admitted for examination but in such case a new drawing must be furnished.

(b) The Patent and Trademark Office will not release drawings in applications having a filing date after January 1, 1989, or any drawings from any applications after January 1, 1991, for purposes of correction. If corrections are necessary, new corrected drawings must be submitted within the time set by the Office.

(c) When corrected drawings are required to be submitted at the time of allowance, the applicant is required to submit acceptable drawings within three months from the mailing of the ''Notice of Allowability.'' Within that three-month period, two weeks should be allowed for review of the drawings by the Drafting Branch. If the Office finds that correction is necessary, the applicant must submit a new corrected drawing to the Office within the original three-month period to avoid the necessity of obtaining an extension of time and paying the extension fee. Therefore, the applicant should file corrected drawings as soon as possible following the receipt of the Notice of Allowability. The provisions with respect to obtaining an extension of time relates only to the late filing of corrected drawings. The time limit for payment of the issue fee is a fixed three-month period which cannot be extended as set forth in 35 U.S.C. 151.

[53 FR 47810, Nov. 28, 1988]

§ 1.88 [Reserved]

MODELS, EXHIBITS, SPECIMENS

AUTHORITY: Secs. 1.91 to 1.95 also issued under 35 U.S.C. 114.

§ 1.91 Models not generally required as part of application or patent.

Models were once required in all cases admitting a model, as a part of the application, and these models became a part of the record of the patent. Such models are no longer generally required (the description of the invention in the specification, and the drawings, must be sufficiently full and complete, and capable of being understood, to disclose the invention without the aid of a model), and will not be admitted unless specifically called for.

§ 1.92 Model or exhibit may be required.

A model, working model, or other physical exhibit, may be required if deemed necessary for any purpose on examination of the application.

§ 1.93 Specimens.

When the invention relates to a composition of matter, the applicant may be required to furnish specimens of the composition, or of its ingredients or intermediates, for the purpose of inspection or experiment.

§ 1.94 Return of models, exhibits or specimens.

Models, exhibits, or specimens in applications which have become abandoned, and also in other applications on conclusion of the prosecution, may be returned to the applicant upon demand and at his expense, unless it be

deemed necessary that they be preserved in the Office. Such physical exhibits in contested cases may be returned to the parties at their expense. If not claimed within a reasonable time, they may be disposed of at the discretion of the Commissioner.

§ 1.95 Copies of exhibits.

Copies of models or other physical exhibits will not ordinarily be furnished by the Office, and any model or exhibit in an application or patent shall not be taken from the Office except in the custody of an employee of the Office specially authorized by the Commissioner.

§ 1.96 Submission of computer program listings.

(a) *General.* Descriptions of the operation and general content of computer program listings should appear in the description portion of the specification. A computer program listing for the purpose of this section is defined as a printout that lists in appropriate sequence the instructions, routines, and other contents of a program for a computer. The program listing may be either in machine or machine-independent (object or source) language which will cause a computer to perform a desired procedure or task such as solve a problem, regulate the flow of work in a computer, or control or monitor events. Computer program listings may be submitted in patent applications as set forth in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section.

(b) *Material which will be printed in the patent.* If the computer program listing is contained on ten printout pages or less, it must be submitted either as drawings or as part of the specification.

(1) *Drawings.* If the listing is submitted as drawings, it must be submitted in the manner and complying with the requirements for drawings as provided in § 1.84. At least one figure numeral is required on each sheet of drawing.

(2) *Specification.* (i) If the listing is submitted as part of the specification, it must be submitted in accordance with the provisions of § 1.52, at the end of the description but before the claims.

(ii) Any listing submitted as part of the specification must be direct printouts (*i.e.*, not copies) from the computer's printer with dark solid black letters not less than 0.21 cm. high, on white, unshaded and unlined paper, and the sheets should be submitted in a protective cover. Any amendments must be made by way of submission of substitute sheets.

(c) *As an appendix which will not be printed.* If a computer program listing printout is eleven or more pages long, applicants must submit such listing in the form of microfiche, referred to in the specification (see § 1.77(a)(6)). Such microfiche filed with a patent application is to be referred to as a ''microfiche appendix.'' The ''microfiche appendix'' will not be part of the printed patent. Reference in the application to the ''microfiche appendix'' must be made at the beginning of the specification at the location indicated in § 1.77(a)(6). Any amendments thereto must be made by way of revised microfiche.

(1) *Availability of appendix.* Such computer program listings on microfiche will be available to the public for inspection, and microfiche copies thereof will be available for purchase with the file wrapper and contents, after a patent based on such application is granted or the application is otherwise made publicly available.

(2) *Submission requirements.* Except as modified or clarified in this paragraph (c)(2), computer-generated information submitted as a ''microfiche appendix'' to an application shall be in accordance with the standards set forth in 36 CFR part 1230 (Micrographics).

(i) Film submitted shall be a first generation (camera film) negative appearing microfiche (with emulsion on the back side of the film when viewed with the images right-reading).

(ii) Reduction ratio of microfiche submitted should be 24:1 or a similar ratio where variation from said ratio is required in order to fit the documents into the image area of the microfiche format used.

(iii) At least the left-most third (50 mm.×12 mm.) of the header or title area of each microfiche submitted shall be clear or positive appearing so that the Patent and Trademark Office can apply

an application number and filing date thereto in an eye-readable form. The middle portion of the header shall be used by applicant to apply an eye-readable application identification such as the title and/or the first inventor's name. The attorney's docket number may be included. The final right-hand portion of the microfiche shall contain sequence information for the microfiche, such as 1 of 4, 2 of 4, *etc.*

(iv) Additional requirements which apply specifically to microfiche of filmed paper copy:

(A) The first frame of each microfiche submitted shall contain a test target.

(B) The second frame of each microfiche submitted must contain a fully descriptive title and the inventor's name as filed.

(C) The pages or lines appearing on the microfiche frames should be consecutively numbered.

(D) Pagination of the microfiche frames shall be from left to right and from top to bottom.

(E) At a reduction of 24:1, resolution of the original microfilm shall be at least 120 lines per mm. (5.0 target).

(F) An index, when included, should appear in the last frame (lower right-hand corner when data is right-reading) of each microfiche.

(v) Microfiche generated by Computer Output Microfilm.

(A) The first frame of each microfiche submitted should contain a resolution test frame.

(B) The second frame of each microfiche submitted must contain a fully descriptive title and the inventor's name as filed.

(C) The pages or lines appearing on the microfiche frames should be consecutively numbered.

(D) It is preferred that pagination of the microfiche frames be from left to right and top to bottom but the alternative, *i.e.,* from top to bottom and from left to right, is also acceptable.

(E) An index, when included, should appear on the last frame (lower right-hand corner when data is right-reading) of each microfiche.

[61 FR 42804, Aug. 19, 1996]

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

§1.97 Filing of information disclosure statement.

(a) In order for an applicant for a patent or for a reissue of a patent to have an information disclosure statement in compliance with §1.98 considered by the Office during the pendency of the application, it must satisfy paragraph (b), (c), or (d) of this section.

(b) An information disclosure statement shall be considered by the Office if filed by the applicant:

(1) Within three months of the filing date of a national application;

(2) Within three months of the date of entry of the national stage as set forth in §1.491 in an international application; or

(3) Before the mailing date of a first Office action on the merits, whichever event occurs last.

(c) An information disclosure statement shall be considered by the Office if filed by the applicant after the period specified in paragraph (b) of this section, provided that the statement is accompanied by either a certification as specified in paragraph (e) of this section or the fee set forth in §1.17(p), and is filed before the mailing date of either:

(1) A final action under §1.113; or

(2) A notice of allowance under §1.311, whichever occurs first.

(d) An information disclosure statement shall be considered by the Office if filed by the applicant after the period specified in paragraph (c) of this section, provided that the statement is filed on or before payment of the issue fee and is accompanied by:

(1) A certification as specified in paragraph (e) of this section;

(2) A petition requesting consideration of the information disclosure statement; and

(3) The petition fee set forth in §1.17(i).

(e) A certification under this section must state either:

(1) That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the statement, or

(2) That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application or, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, was known to any individual designated in § 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the statement.

(f) No extensions of time for filing an information disclosure statement are permitted under § 1.136. If a bona fide attempt is made to comply with § 1.98, but part of the required content is inadvertently omitted, additional time may be given to enable full compliance.

(g) An information disclosure statement filed in accordance with this section shall not be construed as a representation that a search has been made.

(h) The filing of an information disclosure statement shall not be construed to be an admission that the information cited in the statement is, or is considered to be, material to patentability as defined in § 1.56(b).

(i) Information disclosure statements, filed before the grant of a patent, which do not comply with this section and § 1.98 will be placed in the file, but will not be considered by the Office.

[57 FR 2034, Jan. 17, 1992, as amended at 59 FR 32658, June 24, 1994; 60 FR 20226, Apr. 25, 1995; 61 FR 42805, Aug. 19, 1996]

§ 1.98 Content of information disclosure statement.

(a) Any information disclosure statement filed under § 1.97 shall include:

(1) A list of all patents, publications, or other information submitted for consideration by the Office;

(2) A legible copy of:

(i) Each U.S. and foreign patent;

(ii) Each publication or that portion which caused it to be listed; and

(iii) All other information or that portion which caused it to be listed, except that no copy of a U.S. patent application need be included; and

(3) A concise explanation of the relevance, as it is presently understood by the individual designated in § 1.56(c) most knowledgeable about the content of the information, of each patent, publication, or other information listed that is not in the English language. The concise explanation may be either separate from the specification or incorporated therein.

(b) Each U.S. patent listed in an information disclosure statement shall be identified by patentee, patent number and issue date. Each foreign patent or published foreign patent application shall be identified by the country or patent office which issued the patent or published the application, an appropriate document number, and the publication date indicated on the patent or published application. Each publication shall be identified by author (if any), title, relevant pages of the publication, date and place of publication.

(c) When the disclosures of two or more patents or publications listed in an information disclosure statement are substantively cumulative, a copy of one of the patents or publications may be submitted without copies of the other patents or publications provided that a statement is made that these other patents or publications are cumulative. If a written English-language translation of a non-English language document, or portion thereof, is within the possession, custody or control of, or is readily available to any individual designated in § 1.56(c), a copy of the translation shall accompany the statement.

(d) A copy of any patent, publication or other information listed in an information disclosure statement is not required to be provided if it was previously cited by or submitted to the Office in a prior application, provided that the prior application is properly identified in the statement and relied upon for an earlier filing date under 35 U.S.C. 120.

[57 FR 2035, Jan. 17, 1992]

§ 1.99 [Reserved]

EXAMINATION OF APPLICATIONS

AUTHORITY: Secs. 1.101 to 1.108 also issued under 35 U.S.C. 131, 132.

§ 1.101 Order of examination.

(a) Nonprovisional applications filed in the Patent and Trademark Office and accepted as complete applications

are assigned for examination to the respective examining groups having the classes of inventions to which the applications relate. Nonprovisional applications shall be taken up for examination by the examiner to whom they have been assigned in the order in which they have been filed except for those applications in which examination has been advanced pursuant to §1.102. See §1.496 for order of examination of international applications in the national stage.

(b) Applications which have been acted upon by the examiner, and which have been placed by the applicant in condition for further action by the examiner (amended applications) shall be taken up for action in such order as shall be determined by the Commissioner.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[29 FR 13470, Sept. 30, 1964, as amended at 52 FR 20046, May 28, 1987; 60 FR 20226, Apr. 25, 1995]

§1.102 Advancement of examination.

(a) Applications will not be advanced out of turn for examination or for further action except as provided by this part, or upon order of the Commissioner to expedite the business of the Office, or upon filing of a request under paragraph (b) of this section or upon filing a petition under paragraph (c) or (d) of this section with a verified showing which, in the opinion of the Commissioner, will justify so advancing it.

(b) Applications wherein the inventions are deemed of peculiar importance to some branch of the public service and the head of some department of the Government requests immediate action for that reason, may be advanced for examination.

(c) A petition to make an application special may be filed without a fee if the basis for the petition is the applicant's age or health or that the invention will materially enhance the quality of the environment or materially contribute to the development or conservation of energy resources.

(d) A petition to make an application special on grounds other than those referred to in paragraph (c) of this section must be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in §1.17(i).

(36 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982; 54 FR 6903, Feb. 15, 1989; 60 FR 20226, Apr. 25, 1995]

§1.103 Suspension of action.

(a) Suspension of action by the Office will be granted for good and sufficient cause and for a reasonable time specified upon petition by the applicant and, if such cause is not the fault of the Office, the payment of the fee set forth in §1.17(i). Action will not be suspended when a response by the applicant to an Office action is required.

(b) If action by the Office on an application is suspended when not requested by the applicant, the applicant shall be notified of the reasons therefor.

(c) Action by the examiner may be suspended by order of the Commissioner in the case of applications owned by the United States whenever publication of the invention by the granting of a patent thereon might be detrimental to the public safety or defense, at the request of the appropriate department or agency.

(d) Action on applications in which the Office has accepted a request to publish a defensive publication will be suspended for the entire pendency of these applications except for purposes relating to patent interference proceedings under subpart E.

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982; 50 FR 9381, Mar. 7, 1985; 54 FR 6903, Feb. 15, 1989; 60 FR 20226, Apr. 25, 1995]

§1.104 Nature of examination; examiner's action.

(a) On taking up an application for examination or a patent in a reexamination proceeding, the examiner shall make a thorough study thereof and shall make a thorough investigation of the available prior art relating to the subject matter of the claimed invention. The examination shall be complete with respect both to compliance of the application or patent under reexamination with the applicable statutes and rules and to the patentability of the invention as claimed, as well as

with respect to matters of form, unless otherwise indicated.

(b) The applicant, or in the case of a reexamination proceeding, both the patent owner and the requester, will be notified of the examiner's action. The reasons for any adverse action or any objection or requirement will be stated and such information or references will be given as may be useful in aiding the applicant, or in the case of a reexamination proceeding the patent owner, to judge the propriety of continuing the prosecution.

(c) An international-type search will be made in all national applications filed on and after June 1, 1978.

(d) Any national application may also have an international-type search report prepared thereon at the time of the national examination on the merits, upon specific written request therefor and payment of the international-type search report fee. See § 1.21(e) for amount of fee for preparation of international-type search report.

NOTE: The Patent and Trademark Office does not require that a formal report of an international-type search be prepared in order to obtain a search fee refund in a later filed international application.

(e) Co-pending applications will be considered by the examiner to be owned by, or subject to an obligation of assignment to, the same person if:

(1) The application files refer to assignments recorded in the Patent and Trademark Office in accordance with part 3 of this chapter which convey the entire rights in the applications to the same person or organization; or

(2) Copies of unrecorded assignments which convey the entire rights in the applications to the same person or organization are filed in each of the applications; or

(3) An affidavit or declaration by the common owner is filed which states that there is common ownership and states facts which explain why the affiant or declarant believes there is common ownership; or

(4) Other evidence is submitted which establishes common ownership of the applications.

In circumstances where the common owner is a corporation or other organization, an affidavit or declaration may be signed by an official of the corporation or organization empowered to act on behalf of the corporation or organization.

(Pub. L. 94–131, 89 Stat. 685; 35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113,1123)

[43 FR 20465, May 11, 1978, as amended at 46 FR 29182, May 29, 1981; 47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982; 50 FR 9381, Mar. 7, 1985; 57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992]

§ 1.105 Completeness of examiner's action.

The examiner's action will be complete as to all matters, except that in appropriate circumstances, such as misjoinder of invention, fundamental defects in the application, and the like, the action of the examiner may be limited to such matters before further action is made. However, matters of form need not be raised by the examiner until a claim is found allowable.

§ 1.106 Rejection of claims.

(a) If the invention is not considered patentable, or not considered patentable as claimed, the claims, or those considered unpatentable will be rejected.

(b) In rejecting claims for want of novelty or for obviousness, the examiner must cite the best references at his command. When a reference is complex or shows or describes inventions other than that claimed by the applicant, the particular part relied on must be designated as nearly as practicable. The pertinence of each reference, if not apparent, must be clearly explained and each rejected claim specified.

(c) In rejecting claims the examiner may rely upon admissions by the applicant, or the patent owner in a reexamination proceeding, as to any matter affecting patentability and, insofar as rejections in applications are concerned, may also rely upon facts within his or her knowledge pursuant to § 1.107.

(d) Subject matter which is developed by another person which qualifies as prior art only under 35 U.S.C. 102(f) or (g) may be used as prior art under 35 U.S.C. 103 against a claimed invention unless the entire rights to the subject matter and the claimed invention were commonly owned by the same person or organization or subject to an obligation of assignment to the same person

or organization at the time the claimed invention was made.

(e) The claims in any original application naming an inventor will be rejected as being precluded by a waiver in a published statutory invention registration naming that inventor if the same subject matter is claimed in the application and the statutory invention registration. The claims in any reissue application naming an inventor will be rejected as being precluded by a waiver in a published statutory invention registration naming that inventor if the reissue application seeks to claim subject matter (1) which was not covered by claims issued in the patent prior to the date of publication of the statutory invention registration and (2) which was the same subject matter waived in the statutory invention registration.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 34 FR 18857, Nov. 26, 1969; 47 FR 21752, May 19, 1982; 50 FR 9381, Mar. 7, 1985]

§1.107 Citation of references.

(a) If domestic patents are cited by the examiner, their numbers and dates, and the names of the patentees must be stated. If foreign published applications or patents are cited, their nationality or country, numbers and dates, and the names of the patentees must be stated, and such other data must be furnished as may be necessary to enable the applicant, or in the case of a reexamination proceeding, the patent owner, to identify the published applications or patents cited. In citing foreign published applications or patents, in case only a part of the document is involved, the particular pages and sheets containing the parts relied upon must be identified. If printed publications are cited, the author (if any), title, date, pages or plates, and place of publication, or place where a copy can be found, shall be given.

(b) When a rejection in an application is based on facts within the personal knowledge of an employee of the Office, the data shall be as specific as possible, and the reference must be supported, when called for by the applicant, by the affidavit of such employee, and such affidavit shall be subject to contradiction or explanation by the affidavits of the applicant and other persons.

[46 FR 29182, May 29, 1981, as amended at 61 FR 42805, Aug. 19, 1996]

§1.108 Abandoned applications not cited.

Abandoned applications as such will not be cited as references except those which have been opened to inspection by the public following a defensive publication.

[50 FR 9381, Mar. 7, 1985]

§1.109 Reasons for allowance.

If the examiner believes that the record of the prosecution as a whole does not make clear his or her reasons for allowing a claim or claims, the examiner may set forth such reasoning. The reasons shall be incorporated into an Office action rejecting other claims of the application or patent under reexamination or be the subject of a separate communication to the applicant or patent owner. The applicant or patent owner may file a statement commenting on the reasons for allowance within such time as may be specified by the examiner. Failure to file such a statement shall not give rise to any implication that the applicant or patent owner agrees with or acquiesces in the reasoning of the examiner.

[46 FR 29182, May 29, 1981]

§1.110 Inventorship and date of invention of the subject matter of individual claims.

When more than one inventor is named in an application or patent, the Patent and Trademark Office, when necessary for purposes of an Office proceeding, may require an applicant, patentee, or owner to identify the inventive entity of the subject matter of each claim in the application or patent. Where appropriate, the invention dates of the subject matter of each claim and the ownership of the subject matter on the date of invention may be required of the applicant, patentee or owner. See also §§1.78(c) and 1.130.

[61 FR 42805, Aug. 19, 1996]

ACTION BY APPLICANT AND FURTHER CONSIDERATION

AUTHORITY: Secs. 1.111 to 1.113 also issued under 35 U.S.C. 132.

§ 1.111 Reply by applicant or patent owner.

(a) After the Office action, if adverse in any respect, the applicant or patent owner, if he or she persists in his or her application for a patent or reexamination proceeding, must reply thereto and may request reconsideration or further examination, with or without amendment.

(b) In order to be entitled to reconsideration or further examination, the applicant or patent owner must make request therefor in writing. The reply by the applicant or patent owner must distinctly and specifically point out the supposed errors in the examiner's action and must respond to every ground of objection and rejection in the prior Office action. If the reply is with respect to an application, a request may be made that objections or requirements as to form not necessary to further consideration of the claims be held in abeyance until allowable subject matter is indicated. The applicant's or patent owner's reply must appear throughout to be a bona fide attempt to advance the case to final action. A general allegation that the claims define a patentable invention without specifically pointing out how the language of the claims patentably distinguishes them from the references does not comply with the requirements of this section.

(c) In amending in response to a rejection of claims in an application or patent undergoing reexamination, the applicant or patent owner must clearly point out the patentable novelty which he or she thinks the claims present in view of the state of the art disclosed by the references cited or the objections made. He or she must also show how the amendments avoid such references or objections. (See §§ 1.135 and 1.136 for time for reply.)

[46 FR 29182, May 29, 1981]

§ 1.112 Reconsideration.

After response by applicant or patent owner (§ 1.111), the application or patent under reexamination will be reconsidered and again examined. The applicant or patent owner will be notified if claims are rejected, or objections or requirements made, in the same manner as after the first examination. Applicant or patent owner may respond to such Office action in the same manner provided in § 1.111, with or without amendment. Any amendments after the second Office action must ordinarily be restricted to the rejection or to the objections or requirements made. The application or patent under reexamination will be again considered, and so on repeatedly, unless the examiner has indicated that the action is final.

[46 FR 29182, May 29, 1981]

§ 1.113 Final rejection or action.

(a) On the second or any subsequent examination or consideration the rejection or other action may be made final, whereupon applicant's or patent owner's response is limited to appeal in the case of rejection of any claim (§ 1.191), or to amendment as specified in § 1.116. Petition may be taken to the Commissioner in the case of objections or requirements not involved in the rejection of any claim (§ 1.181). Response to a final rejection or action must include cancellation of, or appeal from the rejection of, each rejected claim. If any claim stands allowed, the response to a final rejection or action must comply with any requirements or objection as to form.

(b) In making such final rejection, the examiner shall repeat or state all grounds of rejection then considered applicable to the claims in the case, clearly stating the reasons therefor.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 46 FR 29182, May 29, 1981]

AMENDMENTS

AUTHORITY: Secs. 1.115 to 1.127 also issued under 35 U.S.C. 132.

§ 1.115 Amendment.

The applicant may amend before or after the first examination and action and also after the second or subsequent examination or reconsideration as specified in § 1.112 or when and as specifically required by the examiner. The

patent owner may amend in accordance with §§1.510(e) and 1.530(b) prior to reexamination, and during reexamination proceedings in accordance with §§1.112 and 1.116.

[46 FR 29183, May 29, 1981]

§1.116 Amendments after final action.

(a) After final rejection or action (§1.113) amendments may be made cancelling claims or complying with any requirement of form which has been made. Amendments presenting rejected claims in better form for consideration on appeal may be admitted. The admission of, or refusal to admit, any amendment after final rejection, and any proceedings relative thereto, shall not operate to relieve the application or patent under reexamination from its condition as subject to appeal or to save the application from abandonment under §1.135.

(b) If amendments touching the merits of the application or patent under reexamination are presented after final rejection, or after appeal has been taken, or when such amendment might not otherwise be proper, they may be admitted upon a showing of good and sufficient reasons why they are necessary and were not earlier presented.

(c) No amendment can be made as a matter of right in appealed cases. After decision on appeal, amendments can only be made as provided in §1.198, or to carry into effect a recommendation under §1.196.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 46 FR 29183, May 29, 1981]

§1.117 Amendment and revision required.

The specification, claims and drawing must be amended and revised when required, to correct inaccuracies of description and definition or unnecessary prolixity, and to secure correspondence between the claims, the specification and the drawing.

§1.118 Amendment of disclosure.

(a) No amendment shall introduce new matter into the disclosure of an application after the filing date of the application (§1.53(b)). All amendments to the specification, including the claims, and the drawings filed after the filing date of the application must conform to at least one of them as it was at the time of the filing of the application. Matter not found in either, involving a departure from or an addition to the original disclosure, cannot be added to the application after its filing date even though supported by an oath or declaration in accordance with §1.63 or §1.67 filed after the filing date of the application.

(b) If it is determined that an amendment filed after the filing date of the application introduces new matter, claims containing new matter will be rejected and deletion of the new matter in the specification and drawings will be required even if the amendment is accompanied by an oath or declaration in accordance with §1.63 or §1.67.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2712, Jan. 20, 1983]

§1.119 Amendment of claims.

The claims may be amended by canceling particular claims, by presenting new claims, or by rewriting particular claims as indicated in §1.121. The requirements of §1.111 must be complied with by pointing out the specific distinctions believed to render the claims patentable over the references in presenting arguments in support of new claims and amendments.

[32 FR 13583, Sept. 28, 1967]

§1.121 Manner of making amendments.

(a) Erasures, additions, insertions, or alterations of the Office file of papers and records must not be physically entered by the applicant. Amendments to the application (excluding the claims) are made by filing a paper (which should conform to §1.52), directing or requesting that specified amendments be made. The exact word or words to be stricken out or inserted by said amendment must be specified and the precise point indicated where the deletion or insertion is to be made.

(b) Except as otherwise provided herein, a particular claim may be amended only by directions to cancel or by rewriting such claim with underlining below the word or words added and brackets around the word or words deleted. The rewriting of a claim in

this form will be construed as directing the cancellation of the original claim; however, the original claim number followed by the parenthetical word ''amended'' must be used for the rewritten claim. If a previously rewritten claim is rewritten, underlining and bracketing will be applied in reference to the previously rewritten claim with the parenthetical expression ''twice amended,'' ''three times amended,'' etc., following the original claim number.

(c) A particular claim may be amended in the manner indicated for the application in paragraph (a) of this section to the extent of corrections in spelling, punctuation, and typographical errors. Additional amendments in this manner will be admitted provided the changes are limited to:

(1) Deletions and/or

(2) The addition of no more than five words in any one claim.

Any amendment submitted with instructions to amend particular claims but failing to conform to the provisions of paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section may be considered nonresponsive and treated accordingly.

(d) Where underlining or brackets are intended to appear in the printed patent or are properly part of the claimed material and not intended as symbolic of changes in the particular claim, amendment by rewriting in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section shall be prohibited.

(e) In reissue applications, both the descriptive portion and the claims are to be amended by either (1) submitting a copy of a portion of the description or an entire claim with all matter to be deleted from the patent being placed between brackets and all matter to be added to the patent being underlined, or (2) indicating the exact word or words to be stricken out or inserted and the precise point where the deletion or insertion is to be made. Any word or words to be inserted must be underlined. See § 1.173.

(f) Proposed amendments presented in patents involved in reexamination proceedings must be presented in the form of a full copy of the text of:

(1) Each claim which is amended and

(2) Each paragraph of the description which is amended.

Matter deleted from the patent shall be placed between brackets and matter added shall be underlined. Copies of the printed claims from the patent may be used with any additions being indicated by carets and deleted material being placed between brackets. Claims must not be renumbered and the numbering of the claims added for reexamination must follow the number of the highest numbered patent claim. No amendment may enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent. No new matter may be introduced into the patent.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[32 FR 13583, Sept. 28, 1967, as amended at 46 FR 29183, May 29, 1981; 49 FR 555, Jan. 4, 1984]

§ 1.122 Entry and consideration of amendments.

(a) Amendments are ''entered'' by the Office by making the proposed deletions by drawing a line in red ink through the word or words cancelled, and by making the proposed substitutions or insertions in red ink, small insertions being written in at the designated place and larger insertions being indicated by reference.

(b) Ordinarily all amendments presented in a paper filed while the application is open to amendment are entered and considered, subsequent cancellation or correction being required of improper amendments. Untimely amendatory papers may be refused entry and consideration in whole or in part. For amendments presented during an interference see § 1.664.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 49 FR 48452, Dec. 12, 1984]

§ 1.123 Amendments to the drawing.

No change in the drawing may be made except with permission of the Office. Permissible changes in the construction shown in any drawing may be made only by the submission of a substitute drawing by applicant. A sketch in permanent ink showing proposed changes, to become part of the record, must be filed for approval by the examiner and should be a separate paper.

[58 FR 38726, July 20, 1993]

§ 1.124 Amendment of amendments.

When an amendatory clause is to be amended, it should be wholly rewritten

and the original insertion canceled, so that no interlineations or deletions shall appear in the clause as finally presented. Matter canceled by amendment can be reinstated only by a subsequent amendment presenting the canceled matter as a new insertion.

§1.125 Substitute specification.

If the number or nature of the amendments shall render it difficult to consider the case, or to arrange the papers for printing or copying, the examiner may require the entire specification, including the claims, or any part thereof, to be rewritten. A substitute specification may not be accepted unless it has been required by the examiner or unless it is clear to the examiner that acceptance of a substitute specification would facilitate processing of the application. Any substitute specification filed must be accompanied by a statement that the substitute specification includes no new matter. Such statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Office.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2712, Jan. 20, 1983]

§1.126 Numbering of claims.

The original numbering of the claims must be preserved throughout the prosecution. When claims are canceled, the remaining claims must not be renumbered. When claims are added, except when presented in accordance with §1.121(b), they must be numbered by the applicant consecutively beginning with the number next following the highest numbered claim previously presented (whether entered or not). When the application is ready for allowance, the examiner, if necessary, will renumber the claims consecutively in the order in which they appear or in such order as may have been requested by applicant.

[32 FR 13583, Sept. 28, 1967]

§1.127 Petition from refusal to admit amendment.

From the refusal of the primary examiner to admit an amendment, in whole or in part, a petition will lie to the Commissioner under §1.181.

TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS

§1.129 Transitional procedures for limited examination after final rejection and restriction practice.

(a) An applicant in an application, other than for reissue or a design patent, that has been pending for at least two years as of June 8, 1995, taking into account any reference made in such application to any earlier filed application under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 and 365(c), is entitled to have a first submission entered and considered on the merits after final rejection under the following circumstances: The Office will consider such a submission, if the first submission and the fee set forth in §1.17(r) are filed prior to the filing of an appeal brief and prior to abandonment of the application. The finality of the final rejection is automatically withdrawn upon the timely filing of the submission and payment of the fee set forth in §1.17(r). If a subsequent final rejection is made in the application, applicant is entitled to have a second submission entered and considered on the merits after the subsequent final rejection under the following circumstances: The Office will consider such a submission, if the second submission and a second fee set forth in §1.17(r) are filed prior to the filing of an appeal brief and prior to abandonment of the application. The finality of the subsequent final rejection is automatically withdrawn upon the timely filing of the submission and payment of the second fee set forth in §1.17(r). Any submission filed after a final rejection made in an application subsequent to the fee set forth in §1.17(r) having been twice paid will be treated as set forth in §1.116. A submission as used in this paragraph includes, but is not limited to, an information disclosure statement, an amendment to the written description, claims or drawings and a new substantive argument or new evidence in support of patentability.

(b)(1) In an application, other than for reissue or a design patent, that has been pending for at least three years as of June 8, 1995; taking into account any reference made in the application to any earlier filed application under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121, and 365(c), no requirement for restriction or for the filing of

divisional applications shall be made or maintained in the application after June 8, 1995, except where:

(i) The requirement was first made in the application or any earlier filed application under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 and 365(c) prior to April 8, 1995;

(ii) The examiner has not made a requirement for restriction in the present or parent application prior to April 8, 1995, due to actions by the applicant; or

(iii) The required fee for examination of each additional invention was not paid.

(2) If the application contains more than one independent and distinct invention and a requirement for restriction or for the filing of divisional applications cannot be made or maintained pursuant to this paragraph, applicant will be so notified and given a time period to:

(i) Elect the invention or inventions to be searched and examined, if no election has been made prior to the notice, and pay the fee set forth in § 1.17(s) for each independent and distinct invention claimed in the application in excess of one which applicant elects;

(ii) Confirm an election made prior to the notice and pay the fee set forth in § 1.17(s) for each independent and distinct invention claimed in the application in addition to the one invention which applicant previously elected; or

(iii) File a petition under this section traversing the requirement. If the required petition is filed in a timely manner, the original time period for electing and paying the fee set forth in § 1.17(s) will be deferred and any decision on the petition affirming or modifying the requirement will set a new time period to elect the invention or inventions to be searched and examined and to pay the fee set forth in § 1.17(s) for each independent and distinct invention claimed in the application in excess of one which applicant elects.

(3) The additional inventions for which the required fee has not been paid will be withdrawn from consideration under § 1.142(b). An applicant who desires examination of an invention so withdrawn from consideration can file a divisional application under 35 U.S.C. 121.

(c) The provisions of this section shall not be applicable to any application filed after June 8, 1995.

[60 FR 20226, Apr. 25, 1995]

AFFIDAVITS OVERCOMING REJECTIONS

§ 1.130 Affidavit or declaration to disqualify commonly owned patent as prior art.

(a) When any claim of an application or a patent under reexamination is rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103 in view of a U.S. patent which is not prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(b), and the inventions defined by the claims in the application or patent under reexamination and by the claims in the patent are not identical but are not patentably distinct, and the inventions are owned by the same party, the applicant or owner of the patent under reexamination may disqualify the patent as prior art. The patent can be disqualified as prior art by submission of:

(1) A terminal disclaimer in accordance with § 1.321(c), and

(2) An oath or declaration stating that the application or patent under reexamination and the patent are currently owned by the same party, and that the inventor named in the application or patent under reexamination is the prior inventor under 35 U.S.C. 104.

(b) When an application or a patent under reexamination claims an invention which is not patentably distinct from an invention claimed in a commonly owned patent with the same or a different inventive entity, a double patenting rejection will be made in the application or a patent under reexamination. A judicially created double patenting rejection may be obviated by filing a terminal disclaimer in accordance with § 1.321(c).

[61 FR 42805, Aug. 19, 1996]

§ 1.131 Affidavit or declaration of prior invention to overcome cited patent or publication.

(a) (1) When any claim of an application or a patent under reexamination is rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102 (a) or (e), or 35 U.S.C. 103 based on a U.S. patent to another or others which is prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102 (a) or (e) and which

substantially shows or describes but does not claim the same patentable invention, as defined in §1.601(n), or on reference to a foreign patent or to a printed publication, the inventor of the subject matter of the rejected claim, the owner of the patent under reexamination, or the party qualified under §§1.42, 1.43, or 1.47, may submit an appropriate oath or declaration to overcome the patent or publication. The oath or declaration must include facts showing a completion of the invention in this country or in a NAFTA or WTO member country before the filing date of the application on which the U.S. patent issued, or before the date of the foreign patent, or before the date of the printed publication. When an appropriate oath or declaration is made, the patent or publication cited shall not bar the grant of a patent to the inventor or the confirmation of the patentability of the claims of the patent, unless the date of such patent or printed publication is more than one year prior to the date on which the inventor's or patent owner's application was filed in this country.

(2) A date of completion of the invention may not be established under this section before December 8, 1993, in a NAFTA country, or before January 1, 1996, in a WTO member country other than a NAFTA country.

(b) The showing of facts shall be such, in character and weight, as to establish reduction to practice prior to the effective date of the reference, or conception of the invention prior to the effective date of the reference coupled with due diligence from prior to said date to a subsequent reduction to practice or to the filing of the application. Original exhibits of drawings or records, or photocopies thereof, must accompany and form part of the affidavit or declaration of their absence satisfactorily explained.

[53 FR 23734, June 23, 1988, as amended at 60 FR 21044, May 1, 1995; 61 FR 42806, Aug. 19, 1996]

§1.132 Affidavits or declarations traversing grounds of rejection.

When any claim of an application or a patent under reexamination is rejected on reference to a U.S. patent which substantially shows or describes but does not claim the same patentable invention, as defined in §1.601(n), on reference to a foreign patent, on reference to a printed publication, or on reference to facts within the personal knowledge of an employee of the Office, or when rejected upon a mode or capability of operation attributed to a reference, or because the alleged invention is held to be inoperative, lacking in utility, frivolous, or injurious to public health or morals, affidavits or declarations traversing these references or objections may be received.

[61 FR 42806, Aug. 19, 1996]

INTERVIEWS

§1.133 Interviews.

(a) Interviews with examiners concerning applications and other matters pending before the Office must be had in the examiners' rooms at such times, within office hours, as the respective examiners may designate. Interviews will not be permitted at any other time or place without the authority of the Commissioner. Interviews for the discussion of the patentability of pending applications will not be had before the first official action thereon. Interviews should be arranged for in advance.

(b) In every instance where reconsideration is requested in view of an interview with an examiner, a complete written statement of the reasons presented at the interview as warranting favorable action must be filed by the applicant. An interview does not remove the necessity for response to Office actions as specified in §§1.111, 1.135.

(35 U.S.C. 132)

TIME FOR RESPONSE BY APPLICANT; ABANDONMENT OF APPLICATION

AUTHORITY: Secs. 1.135 to 1.138 also issued under 35 U.S.C. 133.

§1.134 Time period for response to an Office action.

An Office action will notify the applicant of any non-statutory or shortened statutory time period set for response to an Office action. Unless the applicant is notified in writing that response is required in less than six

months, a maximum period of six months is allowed.

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982]

§ 1.135 Abandonment for failure to respond within time period.

(a) If an applicant of a patent application fails to respond within the time period provided under §§ 1.134 and 1.136, the application will become abandoned unless an Office action indicates otherwise.

(b) Prosecution of an application to save it from abandonment pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section must include such complete and proper action as the condition of the case may require. The admission of an amendment not responsive to the last Office action, or refusal to admit the same, and any proceedings relative thereto, shall not operate to save the application from abandonment.

(c) When action by the applicant is a bona fide attempt to respond and to advance the case to final action, and is substantially a complete response to the Office action, but consideration of some matter or compliance with some requirement has been inadvertently omitted, opportunity to explain and supply the omission may be given before the question of abandonment is considered.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982, as amended at 49 FR 555, Jan. 4, 1984]

§ 1.136 Filing of timely responses with petition and fee for extension of time and extensions of time for cause.

(a)(1) If an applicant is required to respond within a nonstatutory or shortened statutory time period, applicant may respond up to four months after the time period set if a petition for an extension of time and the fee set in § 1.17 are filed prior to or with the response, unless:

(i) Applicant is notified otherwise in an Office action,

(ii) The response is a reply brief submitted pursuant to § 1.193(b),

(iii) The response is a request for an oral hearing submitted pursuant to § 1.194(b),

(iv) The response is to a decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences pursuant to § 1.196, 1.197 or 1.304, or

(v) The application is involved in an interference declared pursuant to § 1.611.

(2) The date on which the response, the petition, and the fee have been filed is the date of the response and also the date for purposes of determining the period of extension and the corresponding amount of the fee. The expiration of the time period is determined by the amount of the fee paid. In no case may an applicant respond later than the maximum time period set by statute, or be granted an extension of time under paragraph (b) of this section when the provisions of this paragraph are available. See § 1.136(b) for extensions of time relating to proceedings pursuant to § 1.193(b), 1.194, 1.196 or 1.197. See § 1.304 for extension of time to appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or to commence a civil action. See § 1.550(c) for extension of time in reexamination proceedings and § 1.645 for extension of time in interference proceedings.

(b) When a response with petition and fee for extension of time cannot be filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, the time for response will be extended only for sufficient cause, and for a reasonable time specified. Any request for such extension must be filed on or before the day on which action by the applicant is due, but in no case will the mere filing of the request effect any extension. In no case can any extension carry the date on which response to an Office action is due beyond the maximum time period set by statute or be granted when the provisions of paragraph (a) of this section are available. See § 1.304 for extension of time to appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or to commence a civil action, § 1.645 for extension of time in interference proceedings and § 1.550(c) for extension of time in reexamination proceedings.

[54 FR 29551, July 13, 1989; 54 FR 32637, Aug. 9, 1989, as amended at 58 FR 54509, Oct. 22, 1993]

§1.137 Revival of abandoned application.

(a) An application abandoned for failure to prosecute may be revived as a pending application if it is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner that the delay was unavoidable. A petition to revive an abandoned application must be promptly filed after the applicant is notified of, or otherwise becomes aware of, the abandonment, and must be accompanied by:

(1) A proposed response to continue prosecution of that application, or the filing of a continuing application, unless either has been previously filed;

(2) The petition fee as set forth in §1.17(l); and

(3) A showing that the delay was unavoidable. The showing must be a verified showing if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) An application unintentionally abandoned for failure to prosecute may be revived as a pending application if the delay was unintentional. A petition to revive an unintentionally abandoned application must be:

(1) Accompanied by a proposed response to continue prosecution of that application, or the filing of a continuing application, unless either has been previously filed;

(2) Accompanied by the petition fee as set forth in §1.17(m);

(3) Accompanied by a statement that the delay was unintentional. The statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. The Commissioner may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay was unintentional; and

(4) Filed either:

(i) Within one year of the date on which the application became abandoned; or

(ii) Within three months of the date of the first decision on a petition to revive under paragraph (a) of this section which was filed within one year of the date on which the application became abandoned.

(c) In all applications filed before June 8, 1995, and in all design applications filed on or after June 8, 1995, any petition pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section not filed within six months of the date of abandonment of the application, must be accompanied by a terminal disclaimer with fee under §1.321 dedicating to the public a terminal part of the term of any patent granted thereon equivalent to the period of abandonment of the application. The terminal disclaimer must also apply to any patent granted on any continuing application entitled under 35 U.S.C. 120 to the benefit of the filing date of the application for which revival is sought.

(d) Any request for reconsideration or review of a decision refusing to revive an application upon petition filed pursuant to paragraphs (a) or (b) of this section, to be considered timely, must be filed within two months of the decision refusing to revive or within such time as set in the decision.

(e) The time periods set forth in this section cannot be extended, except that the three-month period set forth in paragraph (b)(4)(ii) and the time period set forth in paragraph (d) of this section may be extended under the provisions of §1.136.

[58 FR 44280, Aug. 20, 1993, as amended at 60 FR 20227, Apr. 25, 1995]

§1.138 Express abandonment.

An application may be expressly abandoned by filing in the Patent and Trademark Office a written declaration of abandonment signed by the applicant and the assignee of record, if any, and identifying the application. An application may also be expressly abandoned by filing a written declaration of abandonment signed by the attorney or agent of record. A registered attorney or agent acting under the provision of §1.34(a), or of record, may also expressly abandon a prior application as of the filing date granted to a continuing application when filing such a continuing application. Express abandonment of the application may not be recognized by the Office unless it is actually received by appropriate officials in time to act thereon before the date of issue.

[49 FR 48452, Dec. 12, 1984]

§ 1.139 Revival of provisional application.

(a) A provisional application which has been accorded a filing date and abandoned for failure to timely respond to an Office requirement may be revived so as to be pending for a period of no longer than twelve months from its filing date if it is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner that the delay was unavoidable. Under no circumstances will the provisional application be pending after twelve months from its filing date. A petition to revive an abandoned provisional application must be promptly filed after the applicant is notified of, or otherwise becomes aware of, the abandonment, and must be accompanied by:

(1) The required response unless it has been previously filed;

(2) The petition fee as set forth in § 1.17(l); and

(3) A showing that the delay was unavoidable. The showing must be a verified showing if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) A provisional application which has been accorded a filing date and abandoned for failure to timely respond to an Office requirement may be revived so as to be pending for a period of no longer than twelve months from its filing date if the delay was unintentional. Under no circumstances will the provisional application be pending after twelve months from its filing date. A petition to revive an abandoned provisional application must be:

(1) Accompanied by the required response unless it has been previously filed;

(2) Accompanied by the petition fee as set forth in § 1.17(m);

(3) Accompanied by a statement that the delay was unintentional. The statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. The Commissioner may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay was unintentional; and

(4) Filed either:

(i) Within one year of the date on which the provisional application became abandoned; or

(ii) Within three months of the date of the first decision on a petition to revive under paragraph (a) of this section which was filed within one year of the date on which the provisional application became abandoned.

(c) Any request for reconsideration or review of a decision refusing to revive a provisional application upon petition filed pursuant to paragraphs (a) or (b) of this section, to be considered timely, must be filed within two months of the decision refusing to revive or within such time as set in the decision.

(d) The time periods set forth in this section cannot be extended, except that the three-month period set forth in paragraph (b)(4)(ii) of this section and the time period set forth in paragraph (c) of this section may be extended under the provisions of § 1.136.

[60 FR 20227, Apr. 25, 1995]

JOINDER OF INVENTIONS IN ONE APPLICATION; RESTRICTION

AUTHORITY: Secs. 1.141 to 1.147 also issued under 35 U.S.C. 121.

§ 1.141 Different inventions in one national application.

(a) Two or more independent and distinct inventions may not be claimed in one national application, except that more than one species of an invention, not to exceed a reasonable number, may be specifically claimed in different claims in one national application, provided the application also includes an allowable claim generic to all the claimed species and all the claims to species in excess of one are written in dependent form (§ 1.75) or otherwise include all the limitations of the generic claim.

(b) Where claims to all three categories, product, process of making, and process of use, are included in a national application, a three way requirement for restriction can only be made where the process of making is distinct from the product. If the process of making and the product are not distinct, the process of using may be joined with the claims directed to the product and the process of making the product even though a showing of distinctness between the product and

process of using the product can be made.

[52 FR 20046, May 28, 1987]

§1.142 Requirement for restriction.

(a) If two or more independent and distinct inventions are claimed in a single application, the examiner in his action shall require the applicant in his response to that action to elect that invention to which his claim shall be restricted, this official action being called a requirement for restriction (also known as a requirement for division). If the distinctness and independence of the inventions be clear, such requirement will be made before any action on the merits; however, it may be made at any time before final action in the case at the discretion of the examiner.

(b) Claims to the invention or inventions not elected, if not canceled, are nevertheless withdrawn from further consideration by the examiner by the election, subject however to reinstatement in the event the requirement for restriction is withdrawn or overruled.

§1.143 Reconsideration of requirement.

If the applicant disagrees with the requirement for restriction, he may request reconsideration and withdrawal or modification of the requirement, giving the reasons therefor. (See §1.111.) In requesting reconsideration the applicant must indicate a provisional election of one invention for prosecution, which invention shall be the one elected in the event the requirement becomes final The requirement for restriction will be reconsidered on such a request. If the requirement is repeated and made final the examiner will at the same time act on the claims to the invention elected.

§1.144 Petition from requirement for restriction.

After a final requirement for restriction, the applicant, in addition to making any response due on the remainder of the action, may petition the Commissioner to review the requirement. Petition may be deferred until after final action on or allowance of claims to the invention elected, but must be filed not later than appeal. A petition will not be considered if reconsideration of the requirement was not requested. (See §1.181.)

§1.145 Subsequent presentation of claims for different invention.

If, after an office action on an application, the applicant presents claims directed to an invention distinct from and independent of the invention previously claimed, the applicant will be required to restrict the claims to the invention previously claimed if the amendment is entered, subject to reconsideration and review as provided in §§1.143 and 1.144.

§1.146 Election of species.

In the first action on an application containing a generic claim and claims restricted separately to each of more than one species embraced thereby, the examiner may require the applicant in his response to that action to elect that species of his or her invention to which his or her claim shall be restricted if no generic claim is held allowable. However, if such application contains claims directed to more than a reasonable number of species, the examiner may require restriction of the claims to not more than a reasonable number of species before taking further action in the case.

(Pub. L. 94–131, 89 Stat. 685)

[43 FR 20465, May 11, 1978]

DESIGN PATENTS

§1.151 Rules applicable.

The rules relating to applications for patents for other inventions or discoveries are also applicable to applications for patents for designs except as otherwise provided.

(35 U.S.C. 171)

§1.152 Design drawing.

The design must be represented by a drawing that complies with the requirements of §1.84, and must contain a sufficient number of views to constitute a complete disclosure of the appearance of the article. Appropriate surface shading must be used to show the character or contour of the surfaces represented. Solid black surface shading is not permitted except when

used to represent color contrast. Broken lines may be used to show visible environmental structure, but may not be used to show hidden planes and surfaces which cannot be seen through opaque materials. Alternate positions of a design component, illustrated by full and broken lines in the same view are not permitted in a design drawing. Photographs and ink drawings must not be combined in one application. Photographs submitted in lieu of ink drawings in design patent applications must comply with § 1.84(b) and must not disclose environmental structure but must be limited to the design for the article claimed. Color drawings and color photographs are not permitted in design patent applications.

[58 FR 38726, July 20, 1993]

§ 1.153 Title, description and claim, oath or declaration.

(a) The title of the design must designate the particular article. No description, other than a reference to the drawing, is ordinarily required. The claim shall be in formal terms to the ornamental design for the article (specifying name) as shown, or as shown and described. More than one claim is neither required nor permitted.

(b) The oath or declaration required of the applicant must comply with § 1.63.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 29 FR 18503, Dec. 29, 1964; 48 FR 2712, Jan. 20, 1983]

§ 1.154 Arrangement of specification.

(a) The elements of the design application, if applicable, should appear in the following order:

(1) Design Application Transmittal Form.

(2) Fee Transmittal Form.

(3) Preamble, stating name of the applicant and title of the design.

(4) Cross-reference to related applications.

(5) Statement regarding federally sponsored research or development.

(6) Description of the figure or figures of the drawing.

(7) Feature Description.

(8) A single claim.

(9) Drawings or photographs.

(10) Executed oath or declaration (See § 1.153(b)).

(b) [Reserved]

[61 FR 42806, Aug. 19, 1996]

§ 1.155 Issue and term of design patents.

(a) If, on examination, it shall appear that the applicant is entitled to a design patent under the law, a notice of allowance will be sent to the applicant, or applicant's attorney or agent, calling for the payment of the issue fee (§ 1.18(b)). If this issue fee is not paid within 3 months of the date of the notice of allowance, the application shall be regarded as abandoned.

(b) The Commissioner may accept the payment of the issue fee later than three months after the mailing of the notice of allowance as though no abandonment had ever occurred if upon petition the delay in payment is shown to have been unavoidable. The petition to accept the delayed payment must be promptly filed after the applicant is notified of, or otherwise becomes aware of, the abandonment, and must be accompanied by:

(1) The issue fee, unless it has been previously submitted;

(2) The fee for delayed payment (§ 1.17(1)); and

(3) A showing that the delay was unavoidable. The showing must be a verified showing if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(c) The Commissioner may, upon petition, accept the payment of the issue fee later than three months after the mailing of the notice of allowance as though no abandonment had ever occurred if the delay in payment was unintentional. The petition to accept the delayed payment must be:

(1) Accompanied by the issue fee, unless it had been previously submitted;

(2) Accompanied by the fee for unintentionally delayed payment (§ 1.17(m));

(3) Accompanied by a statement that the delay was unintentional. The statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. The Commissioner may require additional information where

there is a question whether the delay was unintentional; and

(4) Filed either:

(i) Within one year of the date on which the application became abandoned; or

(ii) Within three months of the date of the first decision on a petition under paragraph (b) of this section which was filed within one year of the date on which the application became abandoned.

(d) Any petition pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section not filed within six months of the date of abandonment of the application, must be accompanied by a terminal disclaimer with fee under §1.321 dedicating to the public a terminal part of the term of any patent granted thereon equivalent to the period of abandonment of the application. The terminal disclaimer must also apply to any patent granted on any continuing application entitled under 35 U.S.C. 120 to the benefit of the filing date of the application for which revival is sought.

(e) Any request for reconsideration or review of a decision refusing to accept the delayed payment upon petition filed pursuant to paragraphs (b) or (c) of this section, to be considered timely, must be filed within two months of the decision refusing to accept the delayed payment or within such time as set in the decision.

(f) The time periods set forth in this section cannot be extended, except that the three-month period set forth in paragraph (c)(4)(ii) of this section and the time period set forth in paragraph (e) of this section may be extended under the provisions of §1.136.

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[47 FR 41277, Sept. 17, 1982, as amended at 58 FR 44280, Aug. 20, 1993]

PLANT PATENTS

§1.161 Rules applicable.

The rules relating to applications for patent for other inventions or discoveries are also applicable to applications for patents for plants except as otherwise provided.

§1.162 Applicant, oath or declaration.

The applicant for a plant patent must be the person who has invented or discovered and asexually reproduced the new and distinct variety of plant for which a patent is sought (or as provided in §§1.42, 1.43, and 1.47). The oath or declaration required of the applicant, in addition to the averments required by §1.63, must state that he or she has asexually reproduced the plant. Where the plant is a newly found plant the oath or declaration must also state that it was found in a cultivated area.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983]

§1.163 Specification.

(a) The specification must contain as full and complete a disclosure as possible of the plant and the characteristics thereof that distinguish the same over related known varieties, and its antecedents, and must particularly point out where and in what manner the variety of plant has been asexually reproduced. In the case of a newly found plant, the specification must particularly point out the location and character of the area where the plant was discovered.

(b) Two copies of the specification (including the claim) must be submitted, but only one signed oath or declaration is required. The second copy of the specification may be a legible carbon copy of the original.

(c) The elements of the plant application, if applicable, should appear in the following order:

(1) Plant Application Transmittal Form.

(2) Fee Transmittal Form.

(3) Title of the invention.

(4) Cross-reference to related applications.

(5) Statement regarding federally sponsored research or development.

(6) Background of the invention.

(7) Brief summary of the invention.

(8) Brief description of the drawing.

(9) Detailed Botanical Description.

(10) A single claim.

(11) Abstract of the Disclosure.

(12) Drawings (in duplicate).

(13) Executed oath or declaration.

(14) Plant color coding sheet.

(d) A plant color coding sheet as used in this section means a sheet that specifies a color coding system as designated in a color dictionary, and lists every plant structure to which color is

a distinguishing feature and the corresponding color code which best represents that plant structure.

(35 U.S.C. 112, 162; 35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983; 61 FR 42806, Aug. 19, 1996]

§ 1.164 Claim.

The claim shall be in formal terms to the new and distinct variety of the specified plant as described and illustrated, and may also recite the principal distinguishing characteristics. More than one claim is not permitted.

(35 U.S.C. 162)

§ 1.165 Plant drawings.

(a) Plant patent drawings should be artistically and competently executed and must comply with the requirements of § 1.84. View numbers and reference characters need not be employed unless required by the examiner. The drawing must disclose all the distinctive characteristics of the plant capable of visual representation.

(b) The drawing may be in color and when color is a distinguishing characteristic of the new variety, the drawing must be in color. Two copies of color drawings or color photographs must be submitted.

[58 FR 38726, July 20, 1993]

§ 1.166 Specimens.

The applicant may be required to furnish specimens of the plant, or its flower or fruit, in a quantity and at a time in its stage of growth as may be designated, for study and inspection. Such specimens, properly packed, must be forwarded in conformity with instructions furnished to the applicant. When it is not possible to forward such specimens, plants must be made available for official inspection where grown.

(35 U.S.C. 114, 161)

§ 1.167 Examination.

(a) Applications may be submitted by the Patent and Trademark Office to the Department of Agriculture for study and report.

(b) Affidavits or declarations from qualified agricultural or horticultural experts regarding the novelty and distinctiveness of the variety of plant may be received when the need of such affidavits or declarations is indicated.

(35 U.S.C. 161, 164; E.O. 5464, Oct. 17, 1930)

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 34 FR 18857, Nov. 26, 1969]

REISSUES

AUTHORITY: Secs. 1.171 to 1.179 also issued under 35 U.S.C. 251.

§ 1.171 Application for reissue.

An application for reissue must contain the same parts required for an application for an original patent, complying with all the rules relating thereto except as otherwise provided, and, in addition, must comply with the requirements of the rules relating to reissue applications. The application must be accompanied by a certified copy of an abstract of title or an order for a title report accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.19(b)(4) to be placed in the file, and by an offer to surrender the original patent (§ 1.178).

[56 FR 65153, Dec. 13, 1991]

§ 1.172 Applicants, assignees.

(a) A reissue oath must be signed and sworn to or declaration made by the inventor or inventors except as otherwise provided (see §§ 1.42, 1.43, 1.47), and must be accompanied by the written assent of all assignees, if any, owning an undivided interest in the patent, but a reissue oath may be made and sworn to or declaration made by the assignee of the entire interest if the application does not seek to enlarge the scope of the claims of the original patent.

(b) A reissue will be granted to the original patentee, his legal representatives or assigns as the interest may appear.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983]

§ 1.173 Specification.

The specification of the reissue application must include the entire specification and claims of the patent, with the matter to be omitted by reissue enclosed in square brackets; and any additions made by the reissue must be underlined, so that the old and the new

specifications and claims may be readily compared. Claims should not be renumbered and the numbering of claims added by reissue should follow the number of the highest numbered patent claim. No new matter shall be introduced into the specification.

§1.174 Drawings.

(a) The drawings upon which the original patent was issued may be used in reissue applications if no changes whatsoever are to be made in the drawings. In such cases, when the reissue application is filed, the applicant must submit a temporary drawing which may consist of a copy of the printed drawings of the patent or a photoprint of the original drawings of the size required for original drawing.

(b) Amendments which can be made in a reissue drawing, that is, changes from the drawing of the patent, are restricted.

(36 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983]

§1.175 Reissue oath or declaration.

(a) Applicants for reissue, in addition to complying with the requirements of §1.63, must also file with their applications a statement under oath or declaration as follows:

(1) When the applicant verily believes the original patent to be wholly or partly inoperative or invalid, stating such belief and the reasons why.

(2) When it is claimed that such patent is so inoperative or invalid ''by reason of a defective specification or drawing,'' particularly specifying such defects.

(3) When it is claimed that such patent is inoperative or invalid ''by reason of the patentee claiming more or less than he had the right to claim in the patent,'' distinctly specifying the excess or insufficiency in the claims.

(4) [Reserved]

(5) Particularly specifying the errors relied upon, and how they arose or occurred.

(6) Stating that said errors arose ''without any deceptive intention'' on the part of the applicant.

(7) Acknowledging the duty to disclose to the Office all information known to applicants to be material to patentability as defined in §1.56.

(b) Corroborating affidavits or declarations of others may be filed and the examiner may, in any case, require additional information or affidavits or declarations concerning the application for reissue and its object.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 29 FR 18503, Dec. 29, 1964; 34 FR 18857, Nov. 26, 1969; 47 FR 21752, May 19, 1982; 48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983; 57 FR 2035, Jan. 17, 1992]

§1.176 Examination of reissue.

An original claim, if re-presented in the reissue application, is subject to reexamination, and the entire application will be examined in the same manner as original applications, subject to the rules relating thereto, excepting that division will not be required. Applications for reissue will be acted on by the examiner in advance of other applications, but not sooner than two months after announcement of the filing of the reissue application has appeared in the *Official Gazette*.

[42 FR 5595, Jan. 28, 1977]

§1.177 Reissue in divisions.

The Commissioner may, in his or her discretion, cause several patents to be issued for distinct and separate parts of the thing patented, upon demand of the applicant, and upon payment of the required fee for each division. Each division of a reissue constitutes the subject of a separate specification descriptive of the part or parts of the invention claimed in such division; and the drawing may represent only such part or parts, subject to the provisions of §§1.83 and 1.84. On filing divisional reissue applications, they shall be referred to the Commissioner. Unless otherwise ordered by the Commissioner upon petition and payment of the fee set forth in §1.17(i), all the divisions of a reissue will issue simultaneously; if there is any controversy as to one division, the others will be withheld from issue until the controversy is ended, unless the Commissioner orders otherwise.

[60 FR 20227, Apr. 25, 1995]

§ 1.178 Original patent.

The application for a reissue must be accompanied by an offer to surrender the original patent. The application should also be accompanied by the original patent, or if the original is lost or inaccessible, by an affidavit or declaration to that effect. The application may be accepted for examination in the absence of the original patent or the affidavit or declaration, but one or the other must be supplied before the case is allowed. If a reissue be refused, the original patent will be returned to applicant upon his request.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 34 FR 18857, Nov. 26, 1969]

§ 1.179 Notice of reissue application.

When an application for a reissue is filed, there will be placed in the file of the original patent a notice stating that an application for reissue has been filed. When the reissue is granted or the reissue application is otherwise terminated, the fact will be added to the notice in the file of the original patent.

PETITIONS AND ACTION BY THE COMMISSIONER

AUTHORITY: 35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123.

§ 1.181 Petition to the Commissioner.

(a) Petition may be taken to the Commissioner:

(1) From any action or requirement of any examiner in the *ex parte* prosecution of an application which is not subject to appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences or to the court;

(2) In cases in which a statute or the rules specify that the matter is to be determined directly by or reviewed by the Commissioner; and

(3) To invoke the supervisory authority of the Commissioner in appropriate circumstances. For petitions in interferences, see § 1.644.

(b) Any such petition must contain a statement of the facts involved and the point or points to be reviewed and the action requested. Briefs or memoranda, if any, in support thereof should accompany or be embodied in the petition; and where facts are to be proven, the proof in the form of affidavits or declarations (and exhibits, if any) must accompany the petition.

(c) When a petition is taken from an action or requirement of an examiner in the ex parte prosecution of an application, it may be required that there have been a proper request for reconsideration (§ 1.111) and a repeated action by the examiner. The examiner may be directed by the Commissioner to furnish a written statement, within a specified time, setting forth the reasons for his decision upon the matters averred in the petition, supplying a copy thereof to the petitioner.

(d) Where a fee is required for a petition to the Commissioner the appropriate section of this part will so indicate. If any required fee does not accompany the petition, the petition will be dismissed.

(e) Oral hearing will not be granted except when considered necessary by the Commissioner.

(f) Except as otherwise provided in these rules, any such petition not filed within 2 months from the action complained of, may be dismissed as untimely. The mere filing of a petition will not stay the period for reply to an Examiner's action which may be running against an application, nor act as a stay of other proceedings.

(g) The Commissioner may delegate to appropriate Patent and Trademark Office officials the determination of petitions.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 34 FR 18857, Nov. 26, 1969; 47 FR 41278, Sept. 17, 1982; 49 FR 48452, Dec. 12, 1984]

§ 1.182 Questions not specifically provided for.

All cases not specifically provided for in the regulations of this part will be decided in accordance with the merits of each case by or under the authority of the Commissioner, and such decision will be communicated to the interested parties in writing. Any petition seeking a decision under this section must be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in § 1.17(h).

[47 FR 41278, Sept. 17, 1982]

§ 1.183 Suspension of rules.

In an extraordinary situation, when justice requires, any requirement of

the regulations in this part which is not a requirement of the statutes may be suspended or waived by the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee, sua sponte, or on petition of the interested party, subject to such other requirements as may be imposed. Any petition under this section must be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in §1.17(h).

[47 FR 41278, Sept. 17, 1982]

§1.184 Reconsideration of cases decided by former Commissioners.

Cases which have been decided by one Commissioner will not be reconsidered by his successor except in accordance with the principles which govern the granting of new trials.

APPEAL TO THE BOARD OF PATENT APPEALS AND INTERFERENCES

AUTHORITY: Secs. 1.191 to 1.198 also issued under 35 U.S.C. 134.

§1.191 Appeal to Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(a) Every applicant for a patent or for reissue of a patent, or every owner of a patent under reexamination, any of the claims of which have been twice rejected or who has been given a final rejection (§1.113), may, upon the payment of the fee set forth in §1.17(e), appeal from the decision of the examiner to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences within the time allowed for response.

(b) The appeal in an application or reexamination proceeding must identify the rejected claim or claims appealed, and must be signed by the applicant, patent owner or duly authorized attorney or agent.

(c) An appeal when taken must be taken from the rejection of all claims under rejection which the applicant or patent owner proposes to contest. Questions relating to matters not affecting the merits of the invention may be required to be settled before an appeal can be considered.

(d) The time periods set forth in §§1.191 and 1.192 are subject to the provisions of §1.136 for patent applications and §1.550(c) for reexamination proceedings. The time periods set forth in §§1.193, 1.194, 1.196 and 1.197 are subject to the provisions of §1.136(b) for patent applications or §1.550(c) for reexamination proceedings. See §1.304(a) for extensions of time for filing a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or for commencing a civil action.

(e) Jurisdiction over the application or patent under reexamination passes to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences upon transmittal of the file, including all briefs and examiner's answers, to the Board. Prior to the entry of a decision on the appeal, the Commissioner may sua sponte order the application remanded to the examiner.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[46 FR 29183, May 29, 1981, as amended at 49 FR 555, Jan. 4, 1984; 49 FR 48453, Dec. 12, 1984; 54 FR 29552, July 13, 1989; 58 FR 54510, Oct. 22, 1993]

§1.192 Appellant's brief.

(a) Appellant shall, within 2 months from the date of the notice of appeal under §1.191 or within the time allowed for response to the action appealed from, if such time is later, file a brief in triplicate. The brief must be accompanied by the requisite fee set forth in §1.17(f) and must set forth the authorities and arguments on which appellant will rely to maintain the appeal. Any arguments or authorities not included in the brief will be refused consideration by the Board of patent Appeals and Interferences, unless good cause is shown.

(b) On failure to file the brief, accompanied by the requisite fee, within the time allowed, the appeal shall stand dismissed.

(c) The brief shall contain the following items under appropriate headings and in the order indicated below unless the brief is filed by an applicant who is not represented by a registered practitioner:

(1) *Real party in interest.* A statement identifying the real party in interest, if the party named in the caption of the brief is not the real party in interest.

(2) *Related appeals and interferences.* A Statement identifying by number and filing date all other appeals or interferences known to appellant, the appellant's legal representative, or assignee which will directly affect or be directly

affected by or have a bearing on the Board's decision in the pending appeal.

(3) *Status of claims.* A statement of the status of all the claims, pending or cancelled, and identifying the claims appealed.

(4) *Status of amendments.* A statement of the status of any amendment filed subsequent to final rejection.

(5) *Summary of invention.* A concise explanation of the invention defined in the claims involved in the appeal, which shall refer to the specification by page and line number, and to the drawing, if any, by reference characters.

(6) *Issues.* A concise statement of the issues presented for review.

(7) *Grouping of claims.* For each ground of rejection which appellant contests and which applies to a group of two or more claims, the Board shall select a single claim from the group and shall decide the appeal as to the ground of rejection on the basis of that claim alone unless a statement is included that the claims of the group do not stand or fall together and, in the argument under paragraph (c)(8) of this section, appellant explains why the claims of the group are believed to be separately patentable. Merely pointing out differences in what the claims cover is not an argument as to why the claims are separately patentable.

(8) *Argument.* The contentions of appellant with respect to each of the issues presented for review in paragraph (c)(6) of this section, and the basis therefor, with citations of the authorities, statutes, and parts of the record relied on. Each issue should be treated under a separate heading.

(i) For each rejection under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection and how the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112 is complied with, including, as appropriate, how the specification and drawings, if any,

(A) Describe the subject matter defined by each of the rejected claims,

(B) Enable any person skilled in the art to make and use the subject matter defined by each of the rejected claims, and

(C) Set forth the best mode contemplated by the inventor of carrying out his or her invention.

(ii) For each rejection under 35 U.S.C. 112, second paragraph, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection and how the claims particularly point out and distinctly claim the subject matter which applicant regards as the invention.

(iii) For each rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection and why the rejected claims are patentable under 35 U.S.C. 102, including any specific limitations in the rejected claims which are not described in the prior art relied upon in the rejection.

(iv) For each rejection under 35 U.S.C. 103, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection and, if appropriate, the specific limitations in the rejected claims which are not described in the prior art relied on in the rejection, and shall explain how such limitations render the claimed subject matter unobvious over the prior art. If the rejection is based upon a combination of references, the argument shall explain why the references, taken as a whole, do not suggest the claimed subject matter, and shall include, as may be appropriate, an explanation of why features disclosed in one reference may not properly be combined with features disclosed in another reference. A general argument that all the limitations are not described in a single reference does not satisfy the requirements of this paragraph.

(v) For any rejection other than those referred to in paragraphs (c)(8) (i) to (iv) of this section, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection and the specific limitations in the rejected claims, if appropriate, or other reasons, which cause the rejection to be in error.

(9) *Appendix.* An appendix containing a copy of the claims involved in the appeal.

(d) If a brief is filed which does not comply with all the requirements of paragraph (c) of this section, appellant will be notified of the reasons for non-compliance and provided with a period of one month within which to file an amended brief. If appellant does not file an amended brief during the one-month period, or files an amended brief which does not overcome all the reasons for non-compliance stated in the

notification, the appeal will stand dismissed.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[36 FR 5850, Mar. 30, 1971, as amended at 53 FR 23734, June 23, 1988; 58 FR 54510, Oct. 22, 1993; 60 FR 14518, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.193 Examiner's answer.

(a) The primary examiner may, within such time as may be directed by the Commissioner, furnish a written statement in answer to the appellant's brief including such explanation of the invention claimed and of the references and grounds of rejection as may be necessary, supplying a copy to the appellant. If the primary examiner shall find that the appeal is not regular in form or does not relate to an appealable action, he shall so state and a petition from such decision may be taken to the Commissioner as provided in §1.181.

(b) The appellant may file a reply brief directed only to such new points of argument as may be raised in the examiner's answer, within two months from the date of such answer. The new points of argument shall be specifically identified in the reply brief. If the examiner determines that the reply brief is not directed only to new points of argument raised in the examiner's answer, the examiner may refuse entry of the reply brief and will so notify the appellant. If the examiner's answer expressly states that it includes a new ground of rejection, appellant must file a reply thereto within two months from the date of such answer to avoid dismissal of the appeal as to the claims subject to the new ground of rejection; such reply may be accompanied by any amendment or material appropriate to the new ground. See §1.136(b) for extensions of time for filing a reply brief in a patent application and §1.550(c) for extensions of time in a reexamination proceeding.

(c) [Reserved]

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 47 FR 21752, May 19, 1982; 57 FR 2035, Jan. 17, 1992; 58 FR 54510, Oct. 22, 1993]

§1.194 Oral hearing.

(a) An oral hearing should be requested only in those circumstances in which the appellant considers such a hearing necessary or desirable for a proper presentation of his appeal. An appeal decided without an oral hearing will receive the same consideration by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences as appeals decided after oral hearing.

(b) If appellant desires an oral hearing, appellant must file a written request for such hearing accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.17(g) within two months after the date of the examiner's answer. If appellant requests an oral hearing and submits therewith the fee set forth in §1.17(g), an oral argument may be presented by, or on behalf of, the primary examiner if considered desirable by either the primary examiner or the Board. See §1.136(b) for extensions of time for requesting an oral hearing in a patent application and §1.550(c) for extensions of time in a reexamination proceeding.

(c) If no request and fee for oral hearing have been timely filed by the appellant, the appeal will be assigned for consideration and decision. If the appellant has requested an oral hearing and has submitted the fee set forth in §1.17(g), a day of hearing will be set, and due notice thereof given to the appellant and to the primary examiner. Hearing will be held as stated in the notice, and oral argument will be limited to twenty minutes for the appellant and fifteen minutes for the primary examiner unless otherwise ordered before the hearing begins.

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[42 FR 5595, Jan. 28, 1977, as amended at 47 FR 41278, Sept. 17, 1982; 49 FR 48453, Dec. 12, 1984; 58 FR 54510, Oct. 22, 1993]

§1.195 Affidavits or declarations after appeal.

Affidavits, declarations, or exhibits submitted after the case has been appealed will not be admitted without a showing of good and sufficient reasons why they were not earlier presented.

[34 FR 18858, Nov. 26, 1969]

§1.196 Decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(a) The Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, in its decision, may affirm or reverse the decision of the examiner in whole or in part on the grounds and on the claims specified by

the examiner or remand the application to the examiner for further consideration. The affirmance of the rejection of a claim on any of the grounds specified constitutes a general affirmance of the decision of the examiner on that claim, except as to any ground specifically reversed.

(b) Should the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences have knowledge of any grounds not involved in the appeal for rejecting any appealed claim, it may include in the decision a statement to that effect with its reasons for so holding, which statement shall constitute a new rejection of the claims. A new rejection shall not be considered final for the purpose of judicial review. When the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences makes a new rejection of an appealed claim, the appellant may exercise either of the following two options with respect to the new ground:

(1) The appellant may submit an appropriate amendment of the claims so rejected or a showing of facts, or both, and have the matter reconsidered by the examiner in which event the application will be remanded to the examiner. The statement shall be binding upon the examiner unless an amendment or showing of facts not previously of record be made which, in the opinion of the examiner, overcomes the new ground for rejection stated in the decision. Should the examiner again reject the application the applicant may again appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(2) The appellant may have the case reconsidered under § 1.197(b) by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences upon the same record. The request for reconsideration shall address the new ground for rejection and state with particularity the points believed to have been misapprehended or overlooked in rendering the decision and also state all other grounds upon which reconsideration is sought. Where request for such reconsideration is made the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences shall reconsider the new ground for rejection and, if necessary, render a new decision which shall include all grounds upon which a patent is refused. The decision on reconsideration is deemed to incorporate the earlier decision, except for those portions specifically withdrawn on reconsideration, and is final for the purpose of judicial review.

(c) Should the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences include an explicit statement that a claim may be allowed in amended form, appellant shall have the right to amend in conformity with such statement which shall be binding on the examiner in the absence of new references or grounds of rejection.

(d) Although the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences normally will confine its decision to a review of rejections made by the examiner, should it have knowledge of any grounds for rejecting any allowed claim it may include in its decision a recommended rejection of the claim and remand the case to the examiner. In such event, the Board shall set a period, not less than one month, within which the appellant may submit to the examiner an appropriate amendment, a showing of facts or reasons, or both, in order to avoid the grounds set forth in the recommendation of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences. The examiner shall be bound by the recommendation and shall enter and maintain the recommended rejection unless an amendment or showing of facts not previously of record is filed which, in the opinion of the examiner, overcomes the recommended rejection. Should the examiner make the recommended rejection final the applicant may again appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(e) Whenever a decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences includes or allows a remand, that decision shall not be considered a final decision. When appropriate, upon conclusion of proceedings on remand before the examiner, the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences may enter an order otherwise making its decision final.

(f) See § 1.136(b) for extensions of time to take action under this section in a patent application and § 1.550(c) for extensions of time in a reexamination proceeding.

[49 FR 48453, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 54 FR 29552, July 13, 1989; 58 FR 54510, Oct. 22, 1993]

§1.197 Action following decision.

(a) After decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, the case shall be returned to the examiner, subject to the appellant's right of appeal or other review, for such further action by the appellant or by the examiner, as the condition of the case may require, to carry into effect the decision.

(b) A single request for reconsideration or modification of the decision may be made if filed within one month from the date of the original decision, unless the original decision is so modified by the decision on reconsideration as to become, in effect, a new decision, and the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences so states. The request for reconsideration shall state with particularity the points believed to have been misapprehended or overlooked in rendering the decision and also state all other grounds upon which reconsideration is sought. See §1.136(b) for extensions of time for seeking reconsideration in a patent application and §1.550(c) for extensions of time in a reexamination proceeding.

(c) Termination of proceedings. Proceedings are considered terminated by the dismissal of an appeal or the failure to timely file an appeal to the court or a civil action (§1.304) except:

(1) Where claims stand allowed in an application or

(2) Where the nature of the decision requires further action by the examiner.

The date of termination of proceedings is the date on which the appeal is dismissed or the date on which the time for appeal to the court or review by civil action (§1.304) expires. If an appeal to the court or a civil action has been filed, proceedings are considered terminated when the appeal or civil action is terminated. An appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit is terminated when the mandate is received by the Office. A civil action is terminated when the time to appeal the judgment expires.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[46 FR 29184, May 29, 1981, as amended at 49 FR 48453, Dec. 12, 1984; 54 FR 29552, July 13, 1989; 58 FR 54510, Oct. 22, 1993]

§1.198 Reopening after decision.

Cases which have been decided by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences will not be reopened or reconsidered by the primary examiner except under the provisions of §1.196 without the written authority of the Commissioner, and then only for the consideration of matters not already adjudicated, sufficient cause being shown.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 49 FR 48453, Dec. 12, 1984]

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§1.248 Service of papers; manner of service; proof of service in cases other than interferences.

(a) Service of papers must be on the attorney or agent of the party if there be such or on the party if there is no attorney or agent, and may be made in any of the following ways:

(1) By delivering a copy of the paper to the person served;

(2) By leaving a copy at the usual place of business of the person served with someone in his employment;

(3) When the person served has no usual place of business, by leaving a copy at the person's residence, with some person of suitable age and discretion who resides there;

(4) Transmission by first class mail. When service is by mail the date of mailing will be regarded as the date of service;

(5) Whenever it shall be satisfactorily shown to the Commissioner that none of the above modes of obtaining or serving the paper is practicable, service may be by notice published in the *Official Gazette*.

(b) Papers filed in the Patent and Trademark Office which are required to be served shall contain proof of service. Proof of service may appear on or be affixed to papers filed. Proof of service shall include the date and manner of service. In the case of personal service, proof of service shall also include the name of any person served, certified by the person who made service. Proof of service may be made by:

(1) An acknowledgement of service by or on behalf of the person served or

(2) A statement signed by the attorney or agent containing the information required by this section.

(c) See § 1.646 for service of papers in interferences.

[46 FR 29184, May 29, 1981, as amended at 49 FR 48454, Dec. 12, 1984]

PROTESTS AND PUBLIC USE PROCEEDINGS

§ 1.291 Protests by the public against pending applications.

(a) Protests by a member of the public against pending applications will be referred to the examiner having charge of the subject matter involved. A protest specifically identifying the application to which the protest is directed will be entered in the application file if:

(1) The protest is submitted prior to the mailing of a notice of allowance under § 1.311; and

(2) The protest is either served upon the applicant in accordance with § 1.248, or filed with the Office in duplicate in the event service is not possible.

(b) Protests raising fraud or other inequitable conduct issues will be entered in the application file, generally without comment on those issues. Protests which do not adequately identify a pending patent application will be returned to the protestor and will not be further considered by the Office. A protest submitted in accordance with the second sentence of paragraph (a) of this section will be considered by the Office if the application is still pending when the protest and application file are brought before the examiner and it includes:

(1) A listing of the patents, publications, or other information relied upon;

(2) A concise explanation of the relevance of each listed item;

(3) A copy of each listed patent or publication or other item of information in written form or at least the pertinent portions thereof; and

(4) An English language translation of all the necessary and pertinent parts of any non-English language patent, publication, or other item of information in written form relied upon.

(c) A member of the public filing a protest in an application under paragraph (a) of this section will not receive any communications from the Office relating to the protest, other than the return of a self-addressed postcard which the member of the public may include with the protest in order to receive an acknowledgment by the Office that the protest has been received. The Office may communicate with the applicant regarding any protest and may require the applicant to respond to specific questions raised by the protest. In the absence of a request by the Office, an applicant has no duty to, and need not, respond to a protest. The limited involvement of the member of the public filing a protest pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section ends with the filing of the protest, and no further submission on behalf of the protestor will be considered unless such submission raises new issues which could not have been earlier presented.

[47 FR 21752, May 19, 1982, as amended at 57 FR 2035, Jan. 17, 1992; 61 FR 42806, Aug. 19, 1996]

§ 1.292 Public use proceedings.

(a) When a petition for the institution of public use proceedings, supported by affidavits or declarations is found, on reference to the examiner, to make a *prima facie* showing that the invention claimed in an application believed to be on file had been in public use or on sale more than one year before the filing of the application, a hearing may be had before the Commissioner to determine whether a public use proceeding should be instituted. If instituted, the Commissioner may designate an appropriate official to conduct the public use proceeding, including the setting of times for taking testimony, which shall be taken as provided by §§ 1.671 through 1.685. The petitioner will be heard in the proceedings but after decision therein will not be heard further in the prosecution of the application for patent.

(b) The petition and accompanying papers, or a notice that such a petition has been filed, shall be entered in the application file if:

(1) The petition is accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(j);

(2) The petition is served on the applicant in accordance with § 1.248, or filed with the Office in duplicate in the event service is not possible; and

(3) The petition is submitted prior to the mailing of a notice of allowance under §1.311.

(c) A petition for institution of public use proceedings shall not be filed by a party to an interference as to an application involved in the interference. Public use and on sale issues in an interference shall be raised by a preliminary motion under §1.633(a).

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[42 FR 5595, Jan. 28, 1977, as amended at 49 FR 48454, Dec. 12, 1984; 61 FR 42807, Aug. 19, 1996]

§1.293 Statutory invention registration.

(a) An applicant for an original patent may request, at any time during the pendency of applicant's pending complete application, that the specification and drawings be published as a statutory invention registration. Any such request must be signed by (1) the applicant and any assignee of record or (2) an attorney or agent of record in the application.

(b) Any request for publication of a statutory invention registration must include the following parts:

(1) A waiver of the applicant's right to receive a patent on the invention claimed effective upon the date of publication of the statutory invention registration;

(2) The required fee for filing a request for publication of a statutory invention registration as provided for in §1.17 (n) or (o);

(3) A statement that, in the opinion of the requester, the application to which the request is directed meets the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112; and

(4) A statement that, in the opinion of the requester, the application to which the request is directed complies with the formal requirements of this part for printing as a patent.

(c) A waiver filed with a request for a statutory invention registration will be effective, upon publication of the statutory invention registration, to waive the inventor's right to receive a patent on the invention claimed in the statutory invention registration, in any application for an original patent which is pending on, or filed after, the date of publication of the statutory invention registration. A waiver filed with a request for a statutory invention registration will not affect the rights of any other inventor even if the subject matter of the statutory invention registration and an application of another inventor are commonly owned. A waiver filed with a request for a statutory invention registration will not affect any rights in a patent to the inventor which issued prior to the date of publication of the statutory invention registration unless a reissue application is filed seeking to enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent. See also §1.106(e).

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651–0018)

[50 FR 9382, Mar. 7, 1985]

§1.294 Examination of request for publication of a statutory invention registration and patent application to which the request is directed.

(a) Any request for a statutory invention registration will be examined to determine if the requirements of §1.293 have been met. The application to which the request is directed will be examined to determine (1) if the subject matter of the application is appropriate for publication, (2) if the requirements for publication are met, and (3) if the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112 and §1.293 of this part are met.

(b) Applicant will be notified of the results of the examination set forth in paragraph (a) of this section. If the requirements of §1.293 and this section are not met by the request filed, the notification to applicant will set a period of time within which to comply with the requirements in order to avoid abandonment of the application. If the application does not meet the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112, the notification to applicant will include a rejection under the appropriate provisions of 35 U.S.C 112. The periods for response established pursuant to this section are subject to the extension of time provisions of §1.136. After response by the applicant, the application will again be considered for publication of a statutory invention registration. If the requirements of §1.293 and this section are not timely met, the refusal to publish will be made final. If the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112 are not met, the

rejection pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 112 will be made final.

(c) If the examination pursuant to this section results in approval of the request for a statutory invention registration the applicant will be notified of the intent to publish a statutory invention registration.

[50 FR 9382, Mar. 7, 1985]

§ 1.295 Review of decision finally refusing to publish a statutory invention registration.

(a) Any requester who is dissatisfied with the final refusal to publish a statutory invention registration for reasons other than compliance with 35 U.S.C. 112 may obtain review of the refusal to publish the statutory invention registration by filing a petition to the Commissioner accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(h) within one month or such other time as is set in the decision refusing publication. Any such petition should comply with the requirements of § 1.181(b). The petition may include a request that the petition fee be refunded if the final refusal to publish a statutory invention registration for reasons other than compliance with 35 U.S.C. 112 is determined to result from an error by the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) Any requester who is dissatisfied with a decision finally rejecting claims pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 112 may obtain review of the decision by filing an appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences pursuant to § 1.191. If the decision rejecting claims pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 112 is reversed, the request for a statutory invention registration will be approved and the registration published if all of the other provisions of § 1.293 and this section are met.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651–0018)

[50 FR 9382, Mar. 7, 1985]

§ 1.296 Withdrawal of request for publication of statutory invention registration.

A request for a statutory invention registration, which has been filed, may be withdrawn prior to the date of the notice of the intent to publish a statutory invention registration issued pursuant to § 1.294(c) by filing a request to withdraw the request for publication of a statutory invention registration. The request to withdraw may also include a request for a refund of any amount paid in excess of the application filing fee and a handling fee of $130.00 which will be retained. Any request to withdraw the request for publication of a statutory invention registration filed on or after the date of the notice of intent to publish issued pursuant to § 1.294(c) must be in the form of a petition pursuant to § 1.183 accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(h).

[56 FR 65153, Dec. 13, 1991]

§ 1.297 Publication of statutory invention registration.

(a) If the request for a statutory invention registration is approved the statutory invention registration will be published. The statutory invention registration will be mailed to the requester at the correspondence address as provided for in § 1.33(a). A notice of the publication of each statutory invention registration will be published in the *Official Gazette.*

(b) Each statutory invention registration published will include a statement relating to the attributes of a statutory invention registration. The statement will read as follows:

A statutory invention registration is not a patent. It has the defensive attributes of a patent but does not have the enforceable attributes of a patent. No article or advertisement or the like may use the term patent, or any term suggestive of a patent, when referring to a statutory invention registration. For more specific information on the rights associated with a statutory invention registration see 35 U.S.C. 157.

[50 FR 9383, Mar. 7, 1985, as amended at 50 FR 31826, Aug. 6, 1985]

REVIEW OF PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE DECISIONS BY COURT

§ 1.301 Appeal to U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.

Any applicant or any owner of a patent involved in a reexamination proceeding dissatisfied with the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, and any party to an interference dissatisfied with the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, may appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal

Circuit. The appellant must take the following steps in such an appeal:

(a) In the Patent and Trademark Office file a written notice of appeal directed to the Commissioner (see §§1.302 and 1.304); and

(b) In the Court, file a copy of the notice of appeal and pay the fee for appeal, as provided by the rules of the Court.

[54 FR 29552, July 13, 1989]

§1.302 Notice of appeal.

(a) When an appeal is taken to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, the appellant shall give notice thereof to the Commissioner within the time specified in §1.304.

(b) In interferences, the notice must be served as provided in §1.646.

(c) A notice of appeal, if mailed to the Office, shall be addressed as follows: Box 8, Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, DC 20231.

[50 FR 9383, Mar. 7, 1985, as amended at 53 FR 16414, May 9, 1988]

§1.303 Civil action under 35 U.S.C. 145, 146, 306.

(a) Any applicant or any owner of a patent involved in a reexamination proceeding dissatisfied with the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, and any party dissatisfied with the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, may, instead of appealing to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (§1.301), have remedy by civil action under 35 U.S.C. 145 or 146, as appropriate. Such civil action must be commenced within the time specified in §1.304.

(b) If an applicant in an ex parte case or an owner of a patent involved in a reeexamination proceeding has taken an appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, he or she thereby waives his or her right to proceed under 35 U.S.C. 145.

(c) If any adverse party to an appeal taken to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit by a defeated party in an interference proceeding files notice with the Commissioner within twenty days after the filing of the defeated party's notice of appeal to the court (§1.302), that he or she elects to have all further proceedings conducted as provided in 35 U.S.C. 146, the notice of election must be served as provided in §1.646.

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1123)

[47 FR 47381, Oct. 26, 1982, as amended at 49 FR 48454, Dec. 12, 1984; 54 FR 29553, July 13, 1989]

§1.304 Time for appeal or civil action.

(a)(1) The time for filing the notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (§1.302) or for commencing a civil action (§1.303) is two months from the date of the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences. If a request for consideration or modification of the decision is filed within the time period provided under §1.197(b) or §1.658(b), the time for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action shall expire two months after action on the request. In interferences, the time for filing a cross-appeal or cross-action expires:

(i) 14 days after service of the notice of appeal or the summons and complaint, or

(ii) Two months after the date of decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, whichever is later.

(2) The time periods set forth in this section are not subject to the provisions of §§1.136, 1.550(c) or 1.645 (a) or (b).

(3) The Commissioner may extend the time for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action:

(i) For good cause shown if requested in writing before the expiration of the period for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action, or

(ii) Upon written request after the expiration of the period for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action upon a showing that the failure to act was the result of excusable neglect.

(b) The times specified in this section in days are calendar days. The times specified herein in months are calendar months except that one day shall be added to any two-month period which includes February 28. If the last day of the time specified for appeal or commencing a civil action falls on a Saturday, Sunday or Federal holiday in the District of Columbia, the time is extended to the next day which is neither

a Saturday, Sunday nor a Federal holiday.

(c) If a defeated party to an interference has taken an appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit and an adverse party has filed notice under 35 U.S.C. 141 electing to have all further proceedings conducted under 35 U.S.C. 146 (§ 1.303(c)), the time for filing a civil action thereafter is specified in 35 U.S.C. 141. The time for filing a cross-action expires 14 days after service of the summons and complaint.

[54 FR 29553, July 13, 1989, as amended at 58 FR 54502, Oct. 22, 1993]

ALLOWANCE AND ISSUE OF PATENT

§ 1.311 Notice of allowance.

(a) If, on examination, it shall appear that the applicant is entitled to a patent under the law, a notice of allowance will be sent to applicant at the correspondence address indicated in § 1.33, calling for the payment of a specified sum constituting the issue fee (§ 1.18), which shall be paid within 3 months from the date of the mailing of the notice of allowance.

(b) An authorization to charge the issue fee (§ 1.18) to a deposit account may be filed in an individual application, either before or after mailing of the notice of allowance. Where an authorization to charge the issue fee to a deposit account has been filed before the mailing of the notice of allowance, the issue fee will be automatically charged to the deposit account at the time of mailing the notice of allowance.

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[47 FR 41279, Sept. 17, 1982]

§ 1.312 Amendments after allowance.

(a) No amendment may be made as a matter of right in an application after the mailing of the notice of allowance. Any amendment pursuant to this paragraph filed before the payment of the issue fee may be entered on the recommendation of the primary examiner, approved by the Commissioner, without withdrawing the case from issue.

(b) Any amendment pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section filed after the date the issue fee is paid must be accompanied by a petition including the fee set forth in § 1.17(i) and a showing of good and sufficient reasons why the amendment is necessary and was not earlier presented.

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[47 FR 41280, Sept. 17, 1982, as amended at 58 FR 54510, Oct. 22, 1993; 60 FR 20227, Apr. 25, 1995]

§ 1.313 Withdrawal from issue.

(a) Applications may be withdrawn from issue for further action at the initiative of the Office or upon petition by the applicant. Any such petition by the applicant must include a showing of good and sufficient reasons why withdrawal of the application is necessary and, if the reason for the withdrawal is not the fault of the Office, must be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(i). If the application is withdrawn from issue, a new notice of allowance will be sent if the application is again allowed. Any amendment accompanying a petition to withdraw an application from issue must comply with the requirements of § 1.312.

(b) When the issue fee has been paid, the application will not be withdrawn from issue for any reason except:

(1) A mistake on the part of the Office;

(2) A violation of § 1.56 or illegality in the application;

(3) Unpatentability of one or more claims;

(4) For interference; or

(5) For abandonment to permit consideration of an information disclosure statement under § 1.97 in a continuing application.

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[47 FR 41280, Sept. 17, 1982, as amended at 57 FR 2035, Jan. 17, 1992; 60 FR 20227, Apr. 25, 1995]

§ 1.314 Issuance of patent.

If payment of the issue fee is timely made, the patent will issue in regular course unless the application is withdrawn from issue (§ 1.313), or issuance of the patent is deferred. Any petition by the applicant requesting a deferral of the issuance of a patent must be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(i) and must include a showing of good and sufficient reasons why it is

necessary to defer issuance of the patent.

[60 FR 20227, Apr. 25, 1995]

§1.315 Delivery of patent.

The patent will be delivered or mailed upon issuance to the correspondence address of record. See §1.33(a).

[61 FR 42807, Aug. 19, 1996]

§1.316 Application abandoned for failure to pay issue fee.

(a) If the issue fee is not paid within 3 months from the date of the notice of allowance, the application will be regarded as abandoned. Such an abandoned application will not be considered as pending before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) The Commissioner may accept the payment of the issue fee later than three months after the mailing of the notice of allowance as though no abandonment had ever occurred if upon petition the delay in payment is shown to have been unavoidable. The petition to accept the delayed payment must be promptly filed after the applicant is notified of, or otherwise becomes aware of, the abandonment, and must be accompanied by:

(1) The issue fee, unless it has been previously submitted;

(2) The fee for delayed payment (§1.17(1)); and

(3) A showing that the delay was unavoidable. The showing must be a verified showing if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(c) The Commissioner may, upon petition, accept the payment of the issue fee later than three months after the mailing of the notice of allowance as though no abandonment had ever occurred if the delay in payment was unintentional. The petition to accept the delayed payment must be:

(1) Accompanied by the issue fee, unless it has been previously submitted;

(2) Accompanied by the fee for unintentionally delayed payment (§1.17(m));

(3) Accompanied by a statement that the delay was unintentional. The statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. The Commissioner may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay was unintentional; and

(4) Filed either:

(i) Within one year of the date on which the application became abandoned; or

(ii) Within three months of the date of the first decision on a petition under paragraph (b) of this section which was filed within one year of the date on which the application became abandoned.

(d) In all applications filed before June 8, 1995, any petition pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section not filed within six months of the date of abandonment of the application, must be accompanied by a terminal disclaimer with fee under §1.321 dedicating to the public a terminal part of the term of any patent granted thereon equivalent to the period of abandonment of the application. The terminal disclaimer must also apply to any patent granted on any continuing application entitled under 35 U.S.C. 120 to the benefit of the filing date of the application for which revival is sought.

(e) Any request for reconsideration or review of a decision refusing to accept the delayed payment upon petition filed pursuant to paragraphs (b) or (c) of this section, to be considered timely, must be filed within two months of the decision refusing to accept the delayed payment or within such time as set in the decision.

(f) The time periods set forth in this section cannot be extended, except that the three-month period set forth in paragraph (c)(4)(ii) of this section and the time period set forth in paragraph (e) of this section may be extended under the provisions of §1.136.

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[47 FR 41280, Sept. 17, 1982, as amended at 58 FR 44281, Aug. 20, 1993; 60 FR 20228, Apr. 25, 1995]

§1.317 Lapsed patents; delayed payment of balance of issue fee.

(a) If the issue fee paid is the amount specified in the Notice of Allowance, but a higher amount is required at the time the issue fee is paid, any remaining balance of the issue fee is to be paid

within three months from the date of notice thereof and, if not paid, the patent will lapse at the termination of the three-month period.

(b) The Commissioner may accept the payment of the remaining balance of the issue fee later than three months after the mailing of the notice thereof as though no lapse had ever occurred if upon petition the delay in payment is shown to have been unavoidable. The petition to accept the delayed payment must be promptly filed after the applicant is notified of, or otherwise becomes aware of, the lapse, and must be accompanied by:

(1) The remaining balance of the issue fee, unless it has been previously submitted;

(2) The fee for delayed payment (§ 1.17(l)); and

(3) A showing that the delay was unavoidable. The showing must be a verified showing if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(c) The Commissioner may, upon petition, accept the payment of the remaining balance of the issue fee later than three months after the mailing of the notice thereof as though no lapse had ever occurred if the delay in payment was unintentional. The petition to accept the delayed payment must be:

(1) Accompanied by the remaining balance of the issue fee, unless it has been previously submitted;

(2) Accompanied by the fee for unintentionally delayed payment (§ 1.17(m));

(3) Accompanied by a statement that the delay was unintentional. The statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. The Commissioner may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay in payment was unintentional; and

(4) Filed either:

(i) Within one year of the date on which the patent lapsed; or

(ii) Within three months of the date of the first decision on a petition under paragraph (b) of this section which was filed within one year of the date on which the patent lapsed.

(d) [Reserved]

(e) Any request for reconsideration or review of a decision refusing to accept the delayed payment upon petition filed pursuant to paragraphs (b) or (c) of this section, to be considered timely, must be filed within two months of the decision refusing to accept the delayed payment or within such time as set in the decision.

(f) The time periods set forth in this section cannot be extended, except that the three-month period set forth in paragraph (c)(4)(ii) and the time period set forth in paragraph (e) of this section may be extended under the provisions of § 1.136.

[58 FR 44281, Aug. 20, 1993, as amended at 60 FR 20228, Apr. 25, 1995]

§ 1.318 Notification of national publication of a patent based on an international application.

The Office will notify the International Bureau when a patent is issued on an application filed under 35 U.S.C. 371, and there has been no previous international publication.

(Pub. L. 94–131, 89 Stat. 685)

[43 FR 20465, May 11, 1978]

DISCLAIMER

§ 1.321 Statutory disclaimers, including terminal disclaimers.

(a) A patentee owning the whole or any sectional interest in a patent may disclaim any complete claim or claims in a patent. In like manner any patentee may disclaim or dedicate to the public the entire term, or any terminal part of the term, of the patent granted. Such disclaimer is binding upon the grantee and its successors or assigns. A notice of the disclaimer is published in the Official Gazette and attached to the printed copies of the specification. The disclaimer, to be recorded in the Patent and Trademark Office, must:

(1) Be signed by the patentee, or an attorney or agent of record;

(2) Identify the patent and complete claim or claims, or term being disclaimed. A disclaimer which is not a disclaimer of a complete claim or claims, or term will be refused recordation;

(3) State the present extent of patentee's ownership interest in the patent; and

(4) Be accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.20(d).

(b) An applicant or assignee may disclaim or dedicate to the public the entire term, or any terminal part of the term, of a patent to be granted. Such terminal disclaimer is binding upon the grantee and its successors or assigns. The terminal disclaimer, to be recorded in the Patent and Trademark Office, must:

(1) Be signed:

(i) By the applicant, or

(ii) If there is an assignee of record of an undivided part interest, by the applicant and such assignee, or

(iii) If there is an assignee of record of the entire interest, by such assignee, or

(iv) By an attorney or agent of record;

(2) Specify the portion of the term of the patent being disclaimed;

(3) State the present extent of applicant's or assignee's ownership interest in the patent to be granted; and

(4) Be accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.20(d).

(c) A terminal disclaimer, when filed to obviate a judicially created double patenting rejection in a patent application or in a reexamination proceeding, must:

(1) Comply with the provisions of paragraphs (b)(2) through (b)(4) of this section;

(2) Be signed in accordance with paragraph (b)(1) of this section if filed in a patent application or in accordance with paragraph (a)(1) of this section if filed in a reexamination proceeding; and

(3) Include a provision that any patent granted on that application or any patent subject to the reexamination proceeding shall be enforceable only for and during such period that said patent is commonly owned with the application or patent which formed the basis for the rejection.

[58 FR 54510, Oct. 22, 1993, as amended at 61 FR 42807, Aug. 19, 1996]

CORRECTION OF ERRORS IN PATENT

§1.322 Certificate of correction of Office mistake.

(a) A certificate of correction under 35 U.S.C. 254 may be issued at the request of the patentee or the patentee's assignee. Such certificate will not be issued at the request or suggestion of anyone not owning an interest in the patent, nor on motion of the Office, without first notifying the patentee (including any assignee of record) and affording the patentee an opportunity to be heard. When the request relates to a patent involved in an interference, the request shall comply with the requirements of this section and shall be accompanied by a motion under §1.635.

(b) If the nature of the mistake on the part of the Office is such that a certificate of correction is deemed inappropriate in form, the Commissioner may issue a corrected patent in lieu thereof as a more appropriate form for certificate of correction, without expense to the patentee.

(35 U.S.C. 254)

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 49 FR 48454, Dec. 12, 1984]

§1.323 Certificate of correction of applicant's mistake.

Whenever a mistake of a clerical or typographical nature or of minor character which was not the fault of the Office, appears in a patent and a showing is made that such mistake occurred in good faith, the Commissioner may, upon payment of the fee set forth in §1.20(a), issue a certificate, if the correction does not involve such changes in the patent as would constitute new matter or would require reexamination. A request for a certificate of correction of a patent involved in an interference shall comply with the requirements of this section and shall be accompanied by a motion under §1.635.

[49 FR 48454, Dec. 12, 1984]

§1.324 Correction of inventorship in patent.

Whenever a patent is issued and it appears that the correct inventor or inventors were not named through error without deceptive intention on the

part of the actual inventor or inventors, the Commissioner may, on petition of all the parties and the assignees and satisfactory proof of the facts and payment of the fee set forth in § 1.20(b), or on order of a court before which such matter is called in question, issue a certificate naming only the actual inventor or inventors. A request to correct inventorship of a patent involved in an interference shall comply with the requirements of this section and shall be accompanied by a motion under § 1.634.

[49 FR 48454, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23123, May 31, 1985]

§ 1.325 Other mistakes not corrected.

Mistakes other than those provided for in §§ 1.322, 1.323, 1.324, and not affording legal grounds for reissue or for reexamination, will not be corrected after the date of the patent.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2714, Jan. 20, 1983]

ARBITRATION AWARDS

§ 1.331–1.334 [Reserved]

§ 1.335 Filing of notice of arbitration awards.

(a) Written notice of any award by an arbitrator pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 294 must be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office by the patentee, or the patentee's assignee or licensee. If the award involves more than one patent a separate notice must be filed for placement in the file of each patent. The notice must set forth the patent number, the names of the inventor and patent owner, and the names and addresses of the parties to the arbitration. The notice must also include a copy of the award.

(b) If an award by an arbitrator pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 294 is modified by a court, the party requesting the modification must file in the Patent and Trademark Office, a notice of the modification for placement in the file of each patent to which the modification applies. The notice must set forth the patent number, the names of the inventor and patent owner, and the names and addresses of the parties to the arbitration. The notice must also include a copy of the court's order modifying the award.

(c) Any award by an arbitrator pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 294 shall be unenforceable until any notices required by paragraph (a) or (b) of this section are filed in the Patent and Trademark Office. If any required notice is not filed by the party designated in paragraph (a) or (b) of this section, any party to the arbitration proceeding may file such a notice.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2714, Jan. 20, 1983]

AMENDMENT OF RULES

§ 1.351 Amendments to rules will be published.

All amendments to the regulations in this part will be published in the Official Gazette and in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

§ 1.352 Publication of notice of proposed amendments.

(a) Whenever required by law, notice of proposed amendments to the regulations in this part will be published in the Official Gazette and in the FEDERAL REGISTER. If not published with the notice, copies of the text will be furnished to any person requesting the same. All comments, suggestions, and briefs received within a time specified in the notice will be considered before adoption of the proposed amendments which may be modified in the light thereof.

(b) Oral hearings may be held at the discretion of the Commissioner.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 58 FR 54511, Oct. 22, 1993]

MAINTENANCE FEES

§ 1.362 Time for payment of maintenance fees.

(a) Maintenance fees as set forth in §§ 1.20 (e) through (g) are required to be paid in all patents based on applications filed on or after December 12, 1980, except as noted in paragraph (b) of this section, to maintain a patent in force beyond 4, 8 and 12 years after the date of grant.

(b) Maintenance fees are not required for any plant patents or for any design

patents. Maintenance fees are not required for a reissue patent if the patent being reissued did not require maintenance fees.

(c) The application filing dates for purposes of payment of maintenance fees are as follows:

(1) For an application not claiming benefit of an earlier application, the actual United States filing date of the application.

(2) For an application claiming benefit of an earlier foreign application under 35 U.S.C. 119, the United States filing date of the application.

(3) For a continuing (continuation, division, continuation-in-part) application claiming the benefit of a prior patent application under 35 U.S.C. 120, the actual United States filing date of the continuing application.

(4) For a reissue application, including a continuing reissue application claiming the benefit of a reissue application under 35 U.S.C. 120, United States filing date of the original non-reissue application on which the patent reissued is based.

(5) For an international application which has entered the United States as a Designated Office under 35 U.S.C. 371, the international filing date granted under Article 11(1) of the Patent Cooperation Treaty which is considered to be the United States filing date under 35 U.S.C. 363.

(d) Maintenance fees may be paid in patents without surcharge during the periods extending respectively from:

(1) 3 years through 3 years and 6 months after grant for the first maintenance fee,

(2) 7 years through 7 years and 6 months after grant for the second maintenance fee, and

(3) 11 years through 11 years and 6 months after grant for the third maintenance fee.

(e) Maintenance fees may be paid with the surcharge set forth in §1.20(h) during the respective grace periods after:

(1) 3 years and 6 months and through the day of the 4th anniversary of the grant for the first maintenance fee.

(2) 7 years and 6 months and through the day of the 8th anniversary of the grant for the second maintenance fee, and

(3) 11 years and 6 months and through the day of the 12th anniversary of the grant for the third maintenance fee.

(f) If the last day for paying a maintenance fee without surcharge set forth in paragraph (d) of this section, or the last day for paying a maintenance fee with surcharge set forth in paragraph (e) of this section, falls on a Saturday, Sunday, or a federal holiday within the District of Columbia, the maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge may be paid under paragraph (d) or paragraph (e) respectively on the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, or federal holiday.

(g) Unless the maintenance fee and any applicable surcharge is paid within the time periods set forth in paragraphs (d), (e) or (f) of this section, the patent will expire as of the end of the grace period set forth in paragraph (e) of this section. A patent which expires for the failure to pay the maintenance fee will expire at the end of the same date (anniversary date) the patent was granted in the 4th, 8th, or 12th year after grant.

(h) The periods specified in §§1.362 (d) and (e) with respect to a reissue application, including a continuing reissue application thereof, are counted from the date of grant of the original non-reissue application on which the reissued patent is based.

[49 FR 34724, Aug. 31, 1984, as amended at 56 FR 65154, Dec. 13, 1991; 58 FR 54511, Oct. 22, 1993]

§1.363 Fee address for maintenance fee purposes.

(a) All notices, receipts, refunds, and other communications relating to payment or refund of maintenance fees will be directed to the correspondence address used during prosecution of the application as indicated in §1.33(a) unless:

(1) A fee address for purposes of payment of maintenance fees is set forth when submitting the issue fee, or

(2) A change in the correspondence address for all purposes is filed after payment of the issue fee, or

(3) A fee address or a change in the ''fee address'' is filed for purposes of receiving notices, receipts and other correspondence relating to the payment of maintenance fees after the payment of

the issue fee, in which instance, the latest such address will be used.

(b) An assignment of a patent application or patent does not result in a change of the ''correspondence address'' or ''fee address'' for maintenance fee purposes.

[49 FR 34725, Aug. 31, 1984]

§ 1.366 Submission of maintenance fees.

(a) The patentee may pay maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges, or any person or organization may pay maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges on behalf of a patentee. Authorization by the patentee need not be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office to pay maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges on behalf of the patentee.

(b) A maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge submitted for a patent must be submitted in the amount due on the date the maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge are paid and may be paid in the manner set forth in § 1.23 or by an authorization to charge a deposit account established pursuant to § 1.25. Payment of a maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge or the authorization to charge a deposit account must be submitted within the periods set forth in § 1.362(d), (e) or (f). Any payment or authorization of maintenance fees and surcharges filed at any other time will not be accepted and will not serve as a payment of the maintenance fee expect insofar as a delayed payment of the maintenance fee is accepted by the Commissioner in an expired patent pursuant to a petition filed under § 1.378. Any authorization to charge a deposit account must authorize the immediate charging of the maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge to the deposit account. Payment of less than the required amount, payment in a manner other than that set forth in § 1.23, or the filing of an authorization to charge a deposit account having insufficient funds will not constitute payment of a maintenance fee or surcharge on a patent. The certificate procedures of either § 1.8 or § 1.10 may be utilized in paying maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges.

(c) In submitting maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges, identification of the patents for which maintenance fees are being paid must include the following:

(1) The patent number, and

(2) The serial number of the United States application for the patent on which the maintenance fee is being paid.

(d) Payments of maintenance fees and any surcharges should identify the fee being paid for each patent as to whether it is the 3½, 7½ or 11½ year fee, whether small entity status is being changed or claimed, the amount of the maintenance fee and any surcharge being paid, any assigned payor number, the patent issue date and the United States application filing date. If the maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge is being paid on a reissue patent, the payment must identify the reissue patent by reissue patent number and reissue application serial number as required by paragraph (c) of this section and should also include the original patent number, the original patent issue date and the original United States application filing date.

(e) Maintenance fee payments and surcharge payments relating thereto must be submitted separate from any other payments for fees or charges, whether submitted in the manner set forth in § 1.23 or by an authorization to charge a deposit account. If maintenance fee and surcharge payments for more than one patent are submitted together, they should be submitted on as few sheets as possible with the patent numbers listed in increasing patent number order. If the payment submitted is insufficient to cover the maintenance fees and surcharges for all the listed patents, the payment will be applied in the order the patents are listed, beginning at the top of the listing.

(f) Notification of any change in status resulting in loss of entitlement to small entity status must be filed in a patent prior to paying, or at the time of paying, the earliest maintenance fee due after the date on which status as a small entity is no longer appropriate. See § 1.28(b).

(g) Maintenance fees and surcharges relating thereto will not be refunded

except in accordance with §§1.26 and 1.28(a).

[49 FR 34725, Aug. 31, 1984, as amended at 58 FR 54503, Oct. 22, 1993]

§1.377 Review of decision refusing to accept and record payment of a maintenance fee filed prior to expiration of patent.

(a) Any patentee who is dissatisfied with the refusal of the Patent and Trademark Office to accept and record a maintenance fee which was filed prior to the expiration of the patent may petition the Commissioner to accept and record the maintenance fee.

(b) Any petition under this section must be filed within 2 months of the action complained of, or within such other time as may be set in the action complained of, and must be accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.17(h). The petition may include a request that the petition fee be refunded if the refusal to accept and record the maintenance fee is determined to result from an error by the Patent and Trademark Office.

(c) Any petition filed under this section must comply with the requirements of paragraph (b) of §1.181 and must be signed by an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office, or by the patentee, the assignee, or other party in interest. Such petition must be in the form of a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

[49 FR 34725, Aug. 31, 1984]

§1.378 Acceptance of delayed payment of maintenance fee in expired patent to reinstate patent.

(a) The Commissioner may accept the payment of any maintenance fee due on a patent after expiration of the patent if, upon petition, the delay in payment of the maintenance fee is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner to have been unavoidable (paragraph (b) of this section) or unintentional (paragraph (c) of this section) and if the surcharge required by §1.20(i) is paid as a condition of accepting payment of the maintenance fee. If the Commissioner accepts payment of the maintenance fee upon petition, the patent shall be considered as not having expired, but will be subject to the conditions set forth in 35 U.S.C. 41(c)(2).

(b) Any petition to accept an unavoidably delayed payment of a maintenance fee filed under paragraph (a) of this section must include:

(1) The required maintenance fee set forth in §1.20 (e) through (g);

(2) The surcharge set forth in §1.20(i)(1); and

(3) A showing that the delay was unavoidable since reasonable care was taken to ensure that the maintenance fee would be paid timely and that the petition was filed promptly after the patentee was notified of, or otherwise became aware of, the expiration of the patent. The showing must enumerate the steps taken to ensure timely payment of the maintenance fee, the date and the manner in which patentee became aware of the expiration of the patent, and the steps taken to file the petition promptly.

(c) Any petition to accept an unintentionally delayed payment of a maintenance fee filed under paragraph (a) of this section must be filed within twenty-four months after the six-month grace period provided in §1.362(e) and must include:

(1) The required maintenance fee set forth in §1.20 (e) through (g);

(2) The surcharge set forth in §1.20(i)(2); and

(3) A statement that the delay in payment of the maintenance fee was unintentional.

(d) Any petition under this section must be signed by an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office, or by the patentee, the assignee, or other party in interest. Such petition must be in the form of a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(e) Reconsideration of a decision refusing to accept a maintenance fee upon petition filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section may be obtained by filing a petition for reconsideration within two months of, or such other time as set in, the decision refusing to accept the delayed payment of the maintenance fee. Any such petition for reconsideration must be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in §1.17(h). After decision on the petition

for reconsideration, no further reconsideration or review of the matter will be undertaken by the Commissioner. If the delayed payment of the maintenance fee is not accepted, the maintenance fee and the surcharge set forth in § 1.20(i) will be refunded following the decision on the petition for reconsideration, or after the expiration of the time for filing such a petition for reconsideration, if none is filed. Any petition fee under this section will not be refunded unless the refusal to accept and record the maintenance fee is determined to result from an error by the Patent and Trademark Office.

[49 FR 34726, Aug. 31, 1984, as amended at 50 FR 9383, Mar. 7, 1985; 58 FR 44282, Aug. 20, 1993]

Subpart C—International Processing Provisions

AUTHORITY: Pub. L. 94–131, 89 Stat. 685; Pub. L. 99–616, 35 U.S.C. 351 through 376.

SOURCE: 43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

GENERAL INFORMATION

§ 1.401 Definitions of terms under the Patent Cooperation Treaty.

(a) The abbreviation *PCT* and the term *Treaty* mean the Patent Cooperation Treaty.

(b) *International Bureau* means the World Intellectual Property Organization located in Geneva, Switzerland.

(c) *Administrative Instructions* means that body of instructions for operating under the Patent Cooperation Treaty referred to in PCT Rule 89.

(d) *Request*, when capitalized, means that element of the international application described in PCT Rules 3 and 4.

(e) *International application*, as used in this subchapter is defined in § 1.9(b).

(f) *Priority date* for the purpose of computing time limits under the Patent Cooperation Treaty is defined in PCT Art. 2 (xi). Note also § 1.465.

(g) *Demand*, when capitalized, means that document filed with the International Preliminary Examining Authority which requests an international preliminary examination.

(h) *Annexes* means amendments made to the claims, description or the drawings before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(i) Other terms and expressions in this subpart C not defined in this section are to be taken in the sense indicated in PCT Art. 2 and 35 U.S.C. 351.

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987]

§ 1.412 The United States Receiving Office.

(a) The United States Patent and Trademark Office is a Receiving Office only for applicants who are residents or nationals of the United States of America.

(b) The Patent and Trademark Office, when acting as a Receiving Office, will be identified by the full title ''United States Receiving Office'' or by the abbreviation ''RO/US.''

(c) The major functions of the Receiving Office include:

(1) According of international filing dates to international applications meeting the requirements of PCT Art. 11(1), and PCT Rule 20;

(2) Assuring that international applications meet the standards for format and content of PCT Art. 14(1), PCT Rule 9, 26, 29.1, 37, 38, 91, and portions of PCT Rules 3 through 11;

(3) Collecting and, when required, transmitting fees due for processing international applications (PCT Rule 14, 15, 16);

(4) Transmitting the record and search copies to the International Bureau and International Searching Authority, respectively (PCT Rules 22 and 23); and

(5) Determining compliance with applicable requirements of part 5 of this chapter.

(6) Reviewing and, where the United States Receiving Office is not the competent Receiving Office under § 1.421(a) and PCT Rule 19.1 or 19.2, transmitting the international application to the International Bureau for processing in its capacity as a Receiving Office unless prescriptions concerning national security prevent the application from being so transmitted (PCT Rule 19.4).

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 60 FR 21439, May 2, 1995]

§1.413 The United States International Searching Authority.

(a) Pursuant to appointment by the Assembly, the United States Patent and Trademark Office will act as an International Searching Authority for international applications filed in the United States Receiving Office and in other Receiving Offices as may be agreed upon by the Commissioner, in accordance with agreement between the Patent and Trademark Office and the International Bureau (PCT Art. 16(3)(b)).

(b) The Patent and Trademark Office, when acting as an International Searching Authority, will be identified by the full title ''United States International Searching Authority'' or by the abbreviation ''ISA/US.''

(c) The major functions of the International Searching Authority include:

(1) Approving or establishing the title and abstract;

(2) Considering the matter of unity of invention;

(3) Conducting international and international-type searches and preparing international and international-type search reports (PCT Art. 15, 17 and 18, and PCT Rules 25, 33 to 45 and 47); and

(4) Transmitting the international search report to the applicant and the International Bureau.

§1.414 The United States Patent and Trademark Office as a Designated Office or Elected Office.

(a) The United States Patent and Trademark Office will act as a Designated Office or Elected Office for international applications in which the United States of America has been designated or elected as a State in which patent protection is desired.

(b) The United States Patent and Trademark Office, when acting as a Designated Office or Elected Office during international processing will be identified by the full title ''United States Designated Office'' or by the abbreviation ''DO/US'' or by the full title ''United States Elected Office'' or by the abbreviation ''EO/US''.

(c) The major functions of the United States Designated Office or Elected Office in respect to international applications in which the United States of America has been designated or elected, include:

(1) Receiving various notifications throughout the international stage and

(2) Accepting for national stage examination international applications which satisfy the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 371.

[52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987]

§1.415 The International Bureau.

(a) The International Bureau is the World Intellectual Property Organization located at Geneva, Switzerland. It is the international intergovernmental organization which acts as the coordinating body under the Treaty and the Regulations (PCT Art. 2 (xix) and 35 U.S.C. 351 (h)).

(b) The major functions of the International Bureau include:

(1) Publishing of international applications and the International Gazette;

(2) Transmitting copies of international applications to Designated Offices;

(3) Storing and maintaining record copies; and

(4) Transmitting information to authorities pertinent to the processing of specific international applications.

§1.416 The United States International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(a) Pursuant to appointment by the Assembly, the United States Patent and Trademark Office will act as an International Preliminary Examining Authority for international applications filed in the United States Receiving Office and in other Receiving Offices as may be agreed upon by the Commissioner, in accordance with agreement between the Patent and Trademark Office and the International Bureau.

(b) The United States Patent and Trademark Office, when acting as an International Preliminary Examining Authority, will be identified by the full title ''United States International Preliminary Examining Authority'' or by the abbreviation ''IPEA/US.''

(c) The major functions of the International Preliminary Examining Authority include:

(1) Receiving and checking for defects in the Demand;

(2) Collecting the handling fee for the International Bureau and the preliminary examination fee for the United States International Preliminary Examining Authority;

(3) Informing applicant of receipt of the Demand;

(4) Considering the matter of unity of invention;

(5) Providing an international preliminary examination report which is a non-binding opinion on the questions whether the claimed invention appears to be novel, to involve an inventive step (to be non-obvious), and to be industrially applicable; and

(6) Transmitting the international preliminary examination report to applicant and the International Bureau.

[52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987]

WHO MAY FILE AN INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION

§ 1.421 Applicant for international application.

(a) Only residents or nationals of the United States of America may file international applications in the United States Receiving Office. If an international application does not include an applicant who is indicated as being a resident or national of the United States of America, and at least one applicant:

(1) Has indicated a residence or nationality in a PCT Contracting State, or

(2) Has no residence or nationality indicated; applicant will be so notified and, if the international application includes a fee amount equivalent to that required by § 1.445(a)(5), the international application will be forwarded for processing to the International Bureau acting as a Receiving Office. (See also § 1.412(c)(6).)

(b) Although the United States Receiving Office will accept international applications filed by any resident or national of the United States of America for international processing, an international application designating the United States of America will be accepted by the Patent and Trademark Office for the national stage only if filed by the inventor or as provided in § 1.422, 1.423 or § 1.425.

(c) International applications which do not designate the United States of America may be filed by the assignee or owner.

(d) The attorney or agent of the applicant may sign the international application Request and file the international application for the applicant if the international application when filed is accompanied by a separate power of attorney to that attorney or agent from the applicant. The separate power of attorney from the applicant may be submitted after filing if sufficient cause is shown for not submitting it at the time of filing. Note that paragraph (b) of this section requires that the applicant be the inventor if the United States of America is designated.

(e) Any indication of different applicants for the purpose of different Designated Offices must be shown on the Request portion of the international application.

(f) Changes in the person, name, or address of the applicant of an international application shall be made in accordance with PCT Rule 92bis.

(g) The wording of PCT Rule 92bis is as follows:

PCT Rule 92bis—Recording of Changes in Certain Indications in the Request or the Demand

92bis Recording of Changes by the International Bureau

(a) The International Bureau shall, on the request of the applicant or the receiving Office, record changes in the following indications appearing in the request or demand:

(i) Person name, residence, nationality or address of the applicant,

(ii) Person, name or address of the agent, the common representative or the inventor.

(b) The International Bureau shall not record the requested change if the request for recording is received by it after the expiration:

(i) Of the time limit referred to in Article 22(1), where Article 39(1) is not applicable with respect to any Contracting State;

(ii) Of the time limit referred to in Article 39(1)(a), where Article 39(1) is applicable with respect to at least one Contracting State.

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 53 FR 47810, Nov. 28, 1988; 60 FR 21440, May 2, 1995]

§1.422 When the inventor is dead.

In case of the death of the inventor, the legal representative (executor, administrator, etc.) of the deceased inventor may file an international application which designates the United States of America.

§1.423 When the inventor is insane or legally incapacitated.

In case an inventor is insane or otherwise legally incapacitated, the legal representative (guardian, conservator, etc.) of such inventor may file an international application which designates the United States of America.

§1.424 Joint inventors.

Joint inventors must jointly file an international application which designates the United States of America; the signature of either of them alone, or less than the entire number will be insufficient for an invention invented by them jointly, except as provided in §1.425.

§1.425 Filing by other than inventor.

(a) If a joint inventor refuses to join in an international application which designates the United States of America or cannot be found or reached after diligent effort, the international application which designates the United States of America may be filed by the other inventor on behalf of himself or herself and the omitted inventor. Such an international application which designates the United States of America must be accompanied by proof of the pertinent facts and must state the last known address of the omitted inventor. The Patent and Trademark Office shall forward notice of the filing of the international application to the omitted inventor at said address.

(b) Whenever an inventor refuses to execute an international application which designates the United States of America, or cannot be found or reached after diligent effort, a person to whom the inventor has assigned or agreed in writing to assign the invention or who otherwise shows sufficient proprietary interest in the matter justifying such action may file the international application on behalf of and as agent for the inventor. Such an international application which designates the United States of America, must be accompanied by proof of the pertinent facts and a showing that such action is necessary to preserve the rights of the parties or to prevent irreparable damage, and must state the last known address of the inventor. The assignment, written agreement to assign or other evidence of proprietary interest, or a verified copy thereof, must be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office. The Office shall forward notice of the filing of the application to the inventor at the address stated in the application.

THE INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION

§1.431 International application requirements.

(a) An international application shall contain, as specified in the Treaty and the Regulations, a Request, a description, one or more claims, an abstract, and one or more drawings (where required). (PCT Art. 3(2) and section 207 of the Administrative Instructions.)

(b) An international filing date will be accorded by the United States Receiving Office, at the time to receipt of the international application, provided that:

(1) At least one applicant (§1.421) is a United States resident or national and the papers filed at the time of receipt of the international application so indicate (35 U.S.C. 361(a), PCT Art. 11(1)(i)).

(2) The international application is in the English language (35 U.S.C. 361(c), PCT Art. 11(1)(ii)).

(3) The international application contains at least the following elements (PCT Art. 11(1)(iii)):

(i) An indication that it is intended as an international application (PCT Rule 4.2);

(ii) The designation of at least one Contracting State of the International Patent Cooperation Union (§1.432);

(iii) The name of the applicant, as perscribed (note §§1.421–1.424);

(iv) A part which on the face of it appears to be a description; and

(v) A part which on the face of it appears to be a claim.

(c) Payment of the basic portion of the international fee (PCT Rule 15.2) and the transmittal and search fees (§1.445) may be made in full at the time the international application papers

required by paragraph (b) of this section are deposited or within one month thereafter. If the basic transmittal and search fees are not paid within one month from the date of receipt of the international application, applicant will be notified and given one month within which to pay the deficient fees plus a late payment fee equal to the greater of:

(1) 50% of the amount of the deficient fees up to a maximum amount equal to the basic fee, or

(2) An amount equal to the transmittal fee (PCT Rule 16bis).

The one-month time limit set in the notice to pay deficient fees may not be extended.

(d) If the payment needed to cover the transmittal fee, the basic fee, the search fee, one designation fee and the late payment fee pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section is not timely made, the Receiving Office will declare the international application withdrawn under PCT Article 14(3)(a).

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 50 FR 9383, Mar. 7, 1985; 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987; 58 FR 4344, Jan. 14, 1993]

§ 1.432 Designation of States and payment of designation fees.

(a) The designation of States including an indication that applicant wishes to obtain a regional patent, where applicable, shall appear in the Request upon filing and must be indicated as set forth in PCT Rule 4.9 and section 115 of the Administrative Instructions. Applicant must specify at least one national or regional designation on filing of the international application for a filing date to be granted.

(b) If the fees necessary to cover all the national and regional designations specified in the Request are not paid by the applicant within one year from the priority date or within one month from the date of receipt of the international application if that month expires after the expiration of one year from the priority date, applicant will be notified and given one month within which to pay the deficient designation fees plus a late payment fee equal to the greater of 50% of the amount of the deficient fees up to a maximum amount equal to the basic fee, or an amount equal to the transmittal fee (PCT Rule 16bis). The one-month time limit set in the notification of deficient designation fees may not be extended. Failure to timely pay at least one designation fee will result in the withdrawal of the international application. The one designation fee may be paid:

(1) Within one year from the priority date,

(2) Within one month from the date of receipt of the international application if that month expires after the expiration of one year from the priority date, or

(3) With the late payment fee defined in this paragraph within the time set in the notification of the deficient designation fees. If after a notification of deficient designation fees the applicant makes timely payment, but the amount paid is not sufficient to cover the late payment fee and all designation fees, the Receiving Office will, after allocating payment for the basic, search, transmittal and late payment fees, allocate the amount paid in accordance with PCT Rule 16bis.1(c) and withdraw the unpaid designations. The notification of deficient designation fees pursuant to this paragraph may be made simultaneously with any notification pursuant to § 1.431(c).

(c) On filing the international application, in addition to specifying at least one national or regional designation under PCT Rule 4.9(a), applicant may also indicate under PCT Rule 4.9(b) that all other designations permitted under the Treaty are made. The latter indication under PCT Rule 4.9(b) must be made in a statement on the Request that any designation made under this paragraph is subject to confirmation (PCT Rule 4.9(c)) not later than the expiration of 15 months from the priority date by:

(1) Filing a written notice with the United States Receiving Office specifying the national and/or regional designations being confirmed;

(2) Paying the designation fee for each designation being confirmed; and

(3) Paying the confirmation fee specified in § 1.445(a)(4).

Unconfirmed designations will be considered withdrawn. If the amount submitted is not sufficient to cover the designation fee and the confirmation

fee for each designation being confirmed, the Receiving Office will allocate the amount paid in accordance with any priority of designations specified by applicant. If applicant does not specify and priority of designations, the allocation of the amount paid will be made in accordance with PCT Rule 16bis.1(c).

[58 FR 4344, Jan. 14, 1993]

§1.433 Physical requirements of international application.

(a) The international application and each of the documents that may be referred to in the check list of the Request (PCT Rule 3.3(a)(ii)) shall be filed in one copy only.

(b) All sheets of the international application must be on A4 size paper (21.0 x 29.7 cm.).

(c) Other physical requirements for international applications are set forth in PCT Rule 11 and sections 201–207 of the Administrative Instructions.

§1.434 The request.

(a) The request shall be made on a standardized form (PCT Rules 3 and 4). Copies of printed Request forms are available from the Patent and Trademark Office. Letters requesting printed forms should be marked ''Box PCT.''

(b) The Check List portion of the Request form should indicate each document accompanying the international application on filing.

(c) All information, for example, addresses, names of States and dates, shall be indicated in the Request as required by PCT Rule 4 and Administrative Instructions 110 and 201.

(d) International applications which designate the United States of America shall include:

(1) The name, address and signature of the inventor, except as provided by §§1.421(d), 1.422, 1.423 and 1.425;

(2) A reference to any copending national application or international application designating the United States of America, if the benefit of the filing date for the prior copending application is to be claimed.

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 58 FR 4345, Jan. 14, 1993]

§1.435 The description.

(a) Requirements as to the content and form of the description are set forth in PCT Rules 5, 9, 10 and 11 and Administrative Instruction 204, and shall be adhered to.

(b) In international applications designating the United States the description must contain upon filing an indication of the best mode contemplated by the inventor for carrying out the claimed invention.

§1.436 The claims.

The requirements as to the content and format of claims are set forth in PCT Art. 6 and PCT Rules 6, 9, 10 and 11 and shall be adhered to. The number of the claims shall be reasonable, considering the nature of the invention claimed.

§1.437 The drawings.

(a) Subject to paragraph (b) of this section, when drawings are necessary for the understanding of the invention, or are mentioned in the description, they must be part of an international application as originally filed in the United States Receiving Office in order to maintain the international filing date during the national stage (PCT Art. 7).

(b) Drawings missing from the application upon filing will be accepted if such drawings are received within 30 days of the date of first receipt of the incomplete papers. If the missing drawings are received within the 30-day period, the international filing date shall be the date on which such drawings are received. If such drawings are not timely received, all references to drawings in the international application shall be considered non-existent (PCT Art. 14(2), Administrative Instruction 310).

(c) The physical requirements for drawings are set forth in PCT Rule 11 and shall be adhered to.

§1.438 The abstract.

(a) Requirements as to the content and form of the abstract are set forth in PCT Rule 8, and shall be adhered to.

(b) Lack of an abstract upon filing of an international application will not affect the granting of a filing date. However, failure to furnish an abstract

within one month from the date of the notification by the Receiving Office will result in the international appplication being declared withdrawn.

FEES

§ 1.445 International application filing, processing and search fees.

(a) The following fees and charges for international applications are established by the Commissioner under the authority of 35 U.S.C. 376:

(1) A transmittal fee (see 35 U.S.C. 361(d) and PCT Rule 14)—$230.00

(2) A search fee (see 35 U.S.C. 361(d) and PCT Rule 16):

(i) Where a corresponding prior United States National application filed under 35 U.S.C. 111(a) with the filing fee under 37 CFR 1.16(a) has been filed—$440.00

(ii) For all situations not provided for in (a)(2)(i) of this section—$680.00

(3) A supplemental search fee when required, per additional invention—$200.00

(b) The basic fee and designation fee portions of the international fee shall be prescribed in PCT Rule 15.

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987; 54 FR 9432, Mar. 7, 1989; 60 FR 41023, Aug. 11, 1995; 61 FR 39588, July 30, 1996]

§ 1.446 Refund of international application filing and processing fees.

(a) Money paid for international application fees, where paid by actual mistake or in excess, such as a payment not required by law or Treaty and its Regulations, will be refunded.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) Refund of the supplemental search fees will be made if such refund is determined to be warranted by the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee acting under PCT Rule 40.2(c).

(d) The international and search fees will be refunded if no international filing date is accorded or if the application is withdrawn before transmittal of the record copy to the International Bureau (PCT Rules 15.6 and 16.2). The search fee will be refunded if the application is withdrawn before transmittal of the search copy to the International Searching Authority. The transmittal fee will not be refunded.

(e) The handling fee (§ 1.482(b)) will be refunded (PCT Rule 57.6) only if:

(1) The Demand is withdrawn before the Demand has been sent by the International Preliminary Examining Authority to the International Bureau, or

(2) The Demand is considered not to have been submitted (PCT Rule 54.4(a)).

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 50 FR 9384, Mar. 7, 1985; 50 FR 31826, Aug. 6, 1985; 58 FR 4345, Jan. 14, 1993]

PRIORITY

§ 1.451 The priority claim and priority document in an international application.

(a) The claim for priority must be made on the Request (PCT Rule 4.10) in a manner complying with sections 110 and 115 of the Administrative Instructions.

(b) Whenever the priority of an earlier United States national application is claimed in an international application, the applicant may request in a letter of transmittal accompanying the international application upon filing with the United States Receiving Office or in a separate letter filed in the Receiving Office not later than 16 months after the priority date, that the Patent and Trademark Office prepare a certified copy of the national application for transmittal to the International Bureau (PCT Article 8 and PCT Rule 17). The fee for preparing a certified copy is stated in § 1.19 (b)(1).

(c) If a certified copy of the priority document is not submitted together with the international application on filing, or, if the priority application was filed in the United States and a request and appropriate payment for preparation of such a certified copy do not accompany the international application on filing or are not filed within 16 months of the priority date, the certified copy of the priority document must be furnished by the applicant to the International Bureau or to the United States Receiving Office within

the time limit specified in PCT Rule 17.1(a).

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 50 FR 9384, Mar. 7, 1985; 50 FR 11366, Mar. 21, 1985; 54 FR 6903, Feb. 15, 1989; 58 FR 4345, Jan. 14, 1993]

REPRESENTATION

§1.455 Representation in international applications.

(a) Applicants of international applications may be represented by attorneys or agents registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office or by an applicant appointed as a common representative (PCT Art. 49, Rules 4.8 and 90 and §10.10). If applicants have not appointed an attorney or agent or one of the applicants to represent them, and there is more than one applicant, the applicant first named in the request and who is entitled to file in the U.S. Receiving Office shall be considered to be the common representative of all the applicants. An attorney or agent having the right to practice before a national office with which an international application is filed and for which the United States is an International Searching Authority or International Preliminary Examining Authority may be appointed to represent the applicants in the international application before that authority. An attorney or agent may appoint an associate attorney or agent who shall also then be of record (PCT Rule 90.1(d)). The appointment of an attorney or agent, or of a common representative, revokes any earlier appointment unless otherwise indicated (PCT Rule 90.6 (b) and (c)).

(b) Appointment of an agent, attorney or common representative (PCT Rule 4.8) must be effected either in the Request form, signed by all applicants, or in a separate power of attorney submitted either to the United States Receiving Office or to the International Bureau.

(c) Powers of attorney and revocations thereof should be submitted to the United States Receiving Office until the issuance of the international search report.

(d) The addressee for correspondence will be as indicated in section 108 of the Administrative Instructions.

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985; 58 FR 4345, Jan. 14, 1993]

TRANSMITTAL OF RECORD COPY

§1.461 Procedures for transmittal of record copy to the International Bureau.

(a) Transmittal of the record copy of the international application to the International Bureau shall be made by the United States Receiving Office.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) No copy of an international application may be transmitted to the International Bureau, a foreign Designated Office, or other foreign authority by the United States Receiving Office or the applicant, unless the applicable requirements of part 5 of this chapter have been satisfied.

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978, as amended at 50 FR 9384, Mar. 7, 1985]

TIMING

§1.465 Timing of application processing based on the priority date.

(a) For the purpose of computing time limits under the Treaty, the priority date shall be defined as in PCT Art. 2(xi).

(b) When a claimed priority date is cancelled under PCT Rule 4.10(d), or considered not to have been made under PCT Rule 4.10(b), the priority date for the purposes of computing time limits will be the date of the earliest valid remaining priority claim of the international application, or if none, the international filing date.

(c) When corrections under PCT Art. 11(2), Art. 14(2) or PCT Rule 20.2(a)(i) or (iii) are timely submitted, and the date of receipt of such corrections falls later than one year from the claimed priority date or dates, the Receiving Office shall proceed under PCT Rule 4.10(d).

§1.468 Delays in meeting time limits.

Delays in meeting time limits during international processing of international applications may only be excused as provided in PCT Rule 82. For delays in meeting time limits in a national application, see §1.137.

AMENDMENTS

§ 1.471 Corrections and amendments during international processing.

(a) All corrections submitted to the United States Receiving Office must be in the form of replacement sheets and be accompanied by a letter that draws attention to the differences between the replaced sheets and the replacement sheets, except that the deletion of lines of text, the correction of simple typographical errors, and one addition or change of not more than five words per sheet may be stated in a letter and the United States Receiving Office will make the deletion or transfer the correction to the international application, provided that such corrections do not adversely affect the clarity and direct reproducibility of the application (PCT Rule 26.4).

(b) Amendments of claims submitted to the International Bureau shall be as prescribed by PCT Rule 46.

§ 1.472 Changes in person, name, or address of applicants and inventors.

All requests for a change in person, name or address of applicants and inventor be sent to the United States Receiving Office until the time of issuance of the international search report. Thereafter requests for such changes should be submitted to the International Bureau.

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978. Redesignated at 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987]

UNITY OF INVENTION

§ 1.475 Unity of invention before the International Searching Authority, the International Preliminary Examining Authority and during the national stage.

(a) An international and a national stage application shall relate to one invention only or to a group of inventions so linked as to form a single general inventive concept (''requirement of unity of invention''). Where a group of inventions is claimed in an application, the requirement of unity of invention shall be fulfilled only when there is a technical relationship among those inventions involving one or more of the same or corresponding special technical features. The expression ''special technical features'' shall mean those technical features that define a contribution which each of the claimed inventions, considered as a whole, makes over the prior art.

(b) An international or a national stage application containing claims to different categories of invention will be considered to have unity of invention if the claims are drawn only to one of the following combinations of categories:

(1) A product and a process specially adapted for the manufacture of said product; or

(2) A product and a process of use of said product; or

(3) A product, a process specially adapted for the manufacture of the said product, and a use of the said product; or

(4) A process and an apparatus or means specifically designed for carrying out the said process; or

(5) A product, a process specially adapted for the manufacture of the said product, and an apparatus or means specifically designed for carrying out the said process.

(c) If an application contains claims to more or less than one of the combinations of categories of invention set forth in paragraph (b) of this section, unity of invention might not be present.

(d) If multiple products, processes of manufacture or uses are claimed, the first invention of the category first mentioned in the claims of the application and the first recited invention of each of the other categories related thereto will be considered as the main invention in the claims, see PCT Article 17(3)(a) and § 1.476(c).

(e) The determination whether a group of inventions is so linked as to form a single general inventive concept shall be made without regard to whether the inventions are claimed in separate claims or as alternatives within a single claim.

[58 FR 4345, Jan. 14, 1993]

§1.476 Determination of unity of invention before the International Searching Authority.

(a) Before establishing the international search report, the International Searching Authority will determine whether the international application complies with the requirement of unity of invention as set forth in §1.475.

(b) If the International Searching Authority considers that the international application does not comply with the requirement of unity of invention, it shall inform the applicant accordingly and invite the payment of additional fees (note §1.445 and PCT Art. 17(3)(a) and PCT Rule 40). The applicant will be given a time period in accordance with PCT Rule 40.3 to pay the additional fees due.

(c) In the case of non-compliance with unity of invention and where no additional fees are paid, the international search will be performed on the invention first mentioned (''main invention'') in the claims.

(d) Lack of unity of invention may be directly evident before considering the claims in relation to any prior art, or after taking the prior art into consideration, as where a document discovered during the search shows the invention claimed in a generic or linking claim lacks novelty or is clearly obvious, leaving two or more claims joined thereby without a common inventive concept. In such a case the International Searching Authority may raise the objection of lack of unity of invention.

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978. Redesignated and amended at 52 FR 20048, May 28, 1987; 58 FR 4346, Jan. 14, 1993]

§1.477 Protest to lack of unity of invention before the International Searching Authority.

(a) If the applicant disagrees with the holding of lack of unity of invention by the International Searching Authority, additional fees may be paid under protest, accompanied by a request for refund and a statement setting forth reasons for disagreement or why the required additional fees are considered excessive, or both (PCT Rule 40.2(c)).

(b) Protest under paragraph (a) of this section will be examined by the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee. In the event that the applicant's protest is determined to be justified, the additional fees or a portion thereof will be refunded.

(c) An applicant who desires that a copy of the protest and the decision thereon accompany the international search report when forwarded to the Designated Offices, may notify the International Searching Authority to that effect any time prior to the issuance of the international search report. Thereafter, such notification should be directed to the International Bureau (PCT Rule 40.2(c)).

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978. Redesignated and amended at 52 FR 20048, May 28, 1987]

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION

§1.480 Demand for international preliminary examination.

(a) On the filing of a Demand and payment of the fees for international preliminary examination (§1.482), the international application shall be the subject of an international preliminary examination. The preliminary examination fee (§1.482(a)(1)) and the handling fee (§1.482(b)) shall be due at the time of filing of the Demand.

(b) The Demand shall be made on a standardized form. Copies of printed Demand forms are available from the Patent and Trademark Office. Letters requesting printed Demand forms should be marked ''Box PCT''.

(c) If the Demand is made prior to the expiration of the 19th month from the priority date and the United States of America is elected, the provisions of §1.495 shall apply rather than §1.494.

(d) Withdrawal of a proper Demand prior to the start of the international preliminary examination will entitle applicant to a refund of the preliminary examination fee minus the amount of the transmittal fee set forth in §1.445(a)(1).

[52 FR 20048, May 28, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 47810, Nov. 28, 1988; 58 FR 4346, Jan. 14, 1993]

§1.482 International preliminary examination fees.

(a) The following fees and charges for international preliminary examination

are established by the Commissioner under the authority of 35 U.S.C. 376:

(1) A preliminary examination fee is due on filing the Demand:

(i) Where an international search fee as set forth in § 1.445(a)(2) has been paid on the international application to the United States Patent and Trademark Office as an International Searching Authority, a preliminary examination fee of—$480.00

(ii) Where the International Searching Authority for the international application was an authority other than the United States Patent and Trademark Office, a preliminary examination fee of—$730.00

(2) An additional preliminary examination fee when required, per additional invention:

(i) Where the International Searching Authority for the international application was the United States Patent and Trademark Office $140.00

(ii) Where an International Search Authority for the international application was an authority other than the United States Patent and Trademark Office—$260.00

(b) The handling fee is due on filing the Demand.

(35 U.S.C. 6, 376)

[52 FR 20048, May 28, 1987, as amended at 56 FR 65154, Dec. 13, 1991; 57 FR 38196, Aug. 21, 1992; 58 FR 4346, Jan. 14, 1993; 60 FR 41023, Aug. 11, 1995; 61 FR 39588, July 30, 1996]

§ 1.484 Conduct of international preliminary examination.

(a) An international preliminary examination will be conducted to formulate a non-binding opinion as to whether the claimed invention has novelty, involves an inventive step (is non-obvious) and is industrially applicable.

(b) International preliminary examination will begin promptly upon receipt of a Demand which requests examination based on the application as filed, or as amended by an amendment which has been received by the United States International Preliminary Examining Authority. Where a Demand requests examination based on a PCT Article 19 amendment which has not been received, examination may begin at 20 months without receipt of a PCT Article 19 amendment. Where a Demand requests examination based on a PCT Article 34 amendment which has not been received, applicant will be notified and given a time period within which to submit the amendment. Examination will begin after the earliest of:

(1) Receipt of the amendment;

(2) Receipt of applicant's statement that no amendment will be made; or

(3) Expiration of the time period set in the notification.

No international preliminary examination report will be established prior to issuance of an international search report.

(c) No international preliminary examination will be conducted on inventions not previously searched by an International Searching Authority.

(d) The International Preliminary Examining Authority will establish a written opinion if any defect exists or if the claimed invention lacks novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability and will set a non-extendable time limit in the written opinion for the applicant to respond.

(e) If no written opinion under paragraph (d) of this section is necessary, or after any written opinion and the response thereto or the expiration of the time limit for response to such written opinion, an international preliminary examination report will be established by the International Preliminary Examining Authority. One copy will be submitted to the International Bureau and one copy will be submitted to the applicant.

(f) An applicant will be permitted a personal or telephone interview with the examiner, which must be conducted during the non-extendable time limit for response by the applicant to a written opinion. Additional interviews may be conducted where the examiner determines that such additional interviews may be helpful to advancing the international preliminary examination procedure. A summary of any such personal or telephone interview must be filed by the applicant as a part of the response to the written opinion or, if applicant files no response, be made of record in the file by the examiner.

[52 FR 20049, May 28, 1987, as amended at 58 FR 4346, Jan. 14, 1993]

§1.485 Amendments by applicant during international preliminary examination.

(a) The applicant may make amendments at the time of filing of the Demand and within the time limit set by the International Preliminary Examining Authority for response to any notification under §1.484(b) or to any written opinion. Any such amendments must:

(1) Be made by submitting a replacement sheet for every sheet of the application which differs from the sheet it replaces unless an entire sheet is cancelled, and

(2) Include a description of how the replacement sheet differs from the replaced sheet.

(b) If an amendment cancels an entire sheet of the international application, that amendment shall be communicated in a letter.

[58 FR 4346, Jan. 14, 1993]

§1.488 Determination of unity of invention before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(a) Before establishing any written opinion or the international preliminary examination report, the International Preliminary Examining Authority will determine whether the international application complies with the requirement of unity of invention as set forth in §1.475.

(b) If the International Preliminary Examining Authority considers that the international application does not comply with the requirement of unity of invention, it may:

(1) Issue a written opinion and/or an international preliminary examination report, in respect of the entire international application and indicate that unity of invention is lacking and specify the reasons therefor without extending an invitation to restrict or pay additional fees. No international preliminary examination will be conducted on inventions not previously searched by an International Searching Authority.

(2) Invite the applicant to restrict the claims or pay additional fees, pointing out the categories of invention found, within a set time limit which will not be extended. No international preliminary examination will be conducted on inventions not previously searched by an International Searching Authority, or

(3) If applicant fails to restrict the claims or pay additional fees within the time limit set for response, the International Preliminary Examining Authority will issue a written opinion and/or establish an international preliminary examination report on the main invention and shall indicate the relevant facts in the said report. In case of any doubt as to which invention is the main invention, the invention first mentioned in the claims and previously searched by an International Searching Authority shall be considered the main invention.

(c) Lack of unity of invention may be directly evident before considering the claims in relation to any prior art, or after taking the prior art into consideration, as where a document discovered during the search shows the invention claimed in a generic or linking claim lacks novelty or is clearly obvious, leaving two or more claims joined thereby without a common inventive concept. In such a case the International Preliminary Examining Authority may raise the objection of lack of unity of invention.

[52 FR 20049, May 28, 1987, as amended at 58 FR 4346, Jan. 14, 1993]

§1.489 Protest to lack of unity of invention before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(a) If the applicant disagrees with the holding of lack of unity of invention by the International Preliminary Examining Authority, additional fees may be paid under protest, accompanied by a request for refund and a statement setting forth reasons for disagreement or why the required additional fees are considered excessive, or both.

(b) Protest under paragraph (a) of this section will be examined by the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee. In the event that the applicant's protest is determined to be justified, the additional fees or a portion thereof will be refunded.

(c) An applicant who desires that a copy of the protest and the decision thereon accompany the international preliminary examination report when forwarded to the Elected Offices, may notify the International Preliminary

Examining Authority to that effect any time prior to the issuance of the international preliminary examination report. Thereafter, such notification should be directed to the International Bureau.

[52 FR 20050, May 28, 1987]

NATIONAL STAGE

§ 1.491 Entry into the national stage.

An international application enters the national stage when the applicant has filed the documents and fees required by 35 U.S.C. 371(c) within the periods set forth in § 1.494 or § 1.495.

[52 FR 20050, May 28, 1987]

§ 1.492 National stage fees.

The following fees and charges are established for international applications entering the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371:

(a) The basic national fee:

(1) Where an international preliminary examination fee as set forth in § 1.482 has been paid on the international application to the United States Patent and Trademark Office:

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$350.00
By other than a small entity—$700.00

(2) Where no international preliminary examination fee as set forth in § 1.482 has been paid to the United States Patent and Trademark Office, but an international search fee as set forth in § 1.445(a)(2) has been paid on the international application to the United States Patent and Trademark Office as an International Searching Authority:

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$385.00
By other than a small entity—$770.00

(3) Where no international preliminary examination fee as set forth in § 1.482 has been paid and no international search fee as set forth in § 1.445(a)(2) has been paid on the international application to the United States Patent and Trademark Office:

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$520.00
By other than a small entity—$1,040.00

(4) Where an international preliminary examination fee as set forth in § 1.482 has been paid to the United States Patent and Trademark Office and the international preliminary examination report states that the criteria of novelty, inventive step (non-obviousness), and industrial applicability, as defined in PCT Article 33 (1) to (4) have been satisfied for all the claims presented in the application entering the national stage (see § 1.496(b)):

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$48.00
By other than a small entity—$96.00

(5) Where a search report on the international application has been prepared by the European Patent Office or the Japanese Patent Office:

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$455.00
By other than a small entity—$910.00

(b) In addition to the basic national fee, for filing or later presentation of each independent claim in excess of 3:

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$40.00
By other than a small entity—$80.00

(c) In addition to the basic national fee, for filing or later presentation of each claim (whether independent or dependent) in excess of 20 (Note that § 1.75(c) indicates how multiple dependent claims are considered for fee calculation purposes.):

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f)).....$11.00
By other than a small entity $22.00

(d) In addition to the basic national fee, if the application contains, or is amended to contain, a multiple dependent claim(s), per application:

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))—$130.00
By other than a small entity—$260.00

(e) Surcharge for filing the oath or declaration later than 20 months from the priority date pursuant to § 1.494(c) or later than 30 months from the priority date pursuant to § 1.495(c):

By a small entity (§ 1.9(f)).....$65.00
By other than a small entity.....$130.00

(f) For filing an English translation of an international application later than 20 months after the priority date (§ 1.494(c)) or filing an English translation of the international application or of any annexes to the international preliminary examination report later than 30 months after the priority date (§§ 1.495 (c) and (e)) $130.00

[56 FR 65154, Dec. 13, 1991, as amended at 57 FR 38196, Aug. 21, 1992; 58 FR 4346, Jan. 14, 1993; 60 FR 41023, Aug. 11, 1995; 61 FR 39588, July 30, 1996]

§1.494 Entering the national stage in the United States of America as a Designated Office.

(a) Where the United States of America has not been elected by the expiration of 19 months from the priority date (see §1.495), the applicant must fulfill the requirements of PCT Article 22 and 35 U.S.C. 371 within the time periods set forth in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section in order to prevent the abandonment of the international application as to the United States of America. International applications for which those requirements are timely fulfilled will enter the national stage and obtain an examination as to the patentability of the invention in the United States of America.

(b) To avoid abandonment of the application, the applicant shall furnish to the United States Patent and Trademark Office not later than the expiration of 20 months from the priority date:

(1) A copy of the international application, unless it has been previously communicated by the International Bureau or unless it was originally filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office; and

(2) The basic national fee (see §1.492(a)). The 20-month time limit may not be extended.

(c) If applicant complies with paragraph (b) of this section before expiration of 20 months from the priority date but omits:

(1) A translation of the international application, as filed, into the English language, if it was originally filed in another language (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)) and/or

(2) The oath or declaration of the inventor (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4); see §1.497), applicant will be so notified and given a period of time within which to file the translation and/or oath or declaration in order to prevent abandonment of the application. The payment of the processing fee set forth in §1.492(f) is required for acceptance of an English translation later than the expiration of 20 months after the priority date. The payment of the surcharge set forth in §1.492(e) is required for acceptance of the oath or declaration of the inventor later than the expiration of 20 months after the priority date. A copy of the notification mailed to applicant should accompany any response thereto submitted to the Office.

(d) A copy of any amendments to the claims made under PCT Article 19, and a translation of those amendments into English, if they were made in another language, must be furnished not later than the expiration of 20 months from the priority date. Amendments under PCT Article 19 which are not received by the expiration of 20 months from the priority date will be considered to be cancelled. The 20-month time limit may not be extended.

(e) Verification of the translation of the international application or any other document pertaining to an international application may be required where it is considered necessary, if the international application or other document was filed in a language other than English.

(f) The documents and fees submitted under paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section must be clearly identified as a submission to enter the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371, otherwise the submission will be considered as being made under 35 U.S.C. 111.

(g) An international application becomes abandoned as to the United States 20 months from the priority date if the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section have not been complied with within 20 months from the priority date where the United States has been designated but not elected by the expiration of 19 months from the priority date. If the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section are complied with within 20 months from the priority date but any required translation of the international application as filed and/or the oath or declaration are not timely filed, an international application will become abandoned as to the United States upon expiration of the time period set pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section.

[52 FR 20050, May 28, 1987, as amended at 58 FR 4346, Jan. 14, 1993]

§1.495 Entering the national stage in the United States of America as an Elected Office.

(a) Where the United States of America has been elected by the expiration of 19 months from the priority date,

the applicant must fulfill the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 371 within the time periods set forth in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section in order to prevent the abandonment of the international application as to the United States of America. International applications for which those requirements are timely fulfilled will enter the national stage and obtain an examination as to the patentability of the invention in the United States of America.

(b) To avoid abandonment of the application the applicant shall furnish to the United States Patent and Trademark Office not later than the expiration of 30 months from the priority date:

(1) A copy of the international application, unless it has been previously communicated by the International Bureau or unless it was originally filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office; and

(2) The basic national fee (see § 1.492(a)). The 30-month time limit may not be extended.

(c) If applicant complies with paragraph (b) of this section before expiration of 30 months from the priority date but omits:

(1) A translation of the international application, as filed, into the English language, if it was originally filed in another language (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)) and/or

(2) The oath or declaration of the inventor (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4); see § 1.497), applicant will be so notified and given a period of time within which to file the translation and/or oath or declaration in order to prevent abandonment of the application. The payment of the processing fee set forth in § 1.492(f) is required for acceptance of an English translation later than the expiration of 30 months after the priority date. The payment of the surcharge set forth in § 1.492(e) is required for acceptance of the oath or declaration of the inventor later than the expiration of 30 months after the priority date. A copy of the notification mailed to applicant should accompany any response thereto submitted to the Office.

(d) A copy of any amendments to the claims made under PCT Article 19, and a translation of those amendments into English, if they were made in another language, must be furnished not later than the expiration of 30 months from the priority date. Amendments under PCT Article 19 which are not received by the expiration of 30 months from the priority date will be considered to be cancelled. The 30-month time limit may not be extended.

(e) A translation into English of any annexes to the international preliminary examination report, if the annexes were made in another language, must be furnished not later than the expiration of 30 months from the priority date. Translations of the annexes which are not received by the expiration of 30 months from the priority date may be submitted within any period set pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section accompanied by the processing fee set forth in § 1.492(f). Annexes for which translations are not timely received will be considered cancelled. The 30-month time limit may not be extended.

(f) Verification of the translation of the international application or any other document pertaining to an international application may be required where it is considered necessary, if the international application or other document was filed in a language other than English.

(g) The documents submitted under paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section must be clearly identified as a submission to enter the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371, otherwise the submission will be considered as being made under 35 U.S.C. 111.

(h) An international application becomes abandoned as to the United States 30 months from the priority date if the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section have not been complied with within 30 months from the priority date and the United States has been elected by the expiration of 19 months from the priority date. If the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section are complied with within 30 months from the priority date but any required translation of the international application as filed and/or the oath or declaration are not timely filed, an international application will become abandoned as to the United

States upon expiration of the time period set pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section.

[52 FR 20051, May 28, 1987, as amended at 58 FR 4347, Jan. 14, 1993]

§1.496 Examination of international applications in the national stage.

(a) International applications which have complied with the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 371(c) will be taken up for action based on the date on which such requirements were met. However, unless an express request for early processing has been filed under 35 U.S.C. 371(f), no action may be taken prior to one month after entry into the national stage.

(b) A national stage application filed under 35 U.S.C. 371 may have paid therein the basic national fee as set forth in §1.492(a)(4) if it contains, or is amended to contain, at the time of entry into the national stage, only claims which have been indicated in an international preliminary examination report prepared by the United States Patent and Trademark Office as satisfying the criteria of PCT Article 33(1)–(4) as to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability. Such national stage applications in which the basic national fee as set forth in §1.492(a)(4) has been paid may be amended subsequent to the date of entry into the national stage only to the extent necessary to eliminate objections as to form or to cancel rejected claims. Such national stage applications in which the basic national fee as set forth in §1.492(a)(4) has been paid will be taken up out of order.

[52 FR 20051, May 28, 1987]

§1.497 Oath or declaration under 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4).

(a) When an applicant of an international application desires to enter the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371 pursuant to §§1.494 or 1.495, he or she must file an oath or declaration that:

(1) Is executed in accordance with either §§1.66 or 1.68;

(2) Identifies the specification to which it is directed;

(3) Identifies each inventor and the country of citizenship of each inventor; and

(4) States that the person making the oath or declaration believes the named inventor or inventors to be the original and first inventor or inventors of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought.

(b)(1) The oath or declaration must be made by all of the actual inventors except as provided for in §§1.42, 1.43 or 1.47.

(2) If the person making the oath or declaration is not the inventor, the oath or declaration shall state the relationship of the person to the inventor, the facts required by §§1.42, 1.43 or 1.47, and, upon information and belief, the facts which the inventor would have been required to state.

(c) If the oath or declaration meets the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, the oath or declaration will be accepted as complying with 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4) and §§1.494(c) or 1.495(c). However, if the oath or declaration does not also meet the requirements of §1.63, a supplemental oath or declaration in compliance with §1.63 will be required in accordance with §1.67.

[61 FR 42807, Aug. 19, 1996]

§1.499 Unity of invention during the national stage.

If the examiner finds that a national stage application lacks unity of invention under §1.475, the examiner may in an Office action require the applicant in the response to that action to elect the invention to which the claims shall be restricted. Such requirement may be made before any action on the merits but may be made at any time before the final action at the discretion of the examiner. Review of any such requirement is provided under §§1.143 and 1.144.

[58 FR 4347, Jan. 14, 1993]

Subpart D—Reexamination of Patents

SOURCE: 46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981, unless otherwise noted.

CITATION OF PRIOR ART

§ 1.501 Citation of prior art in patent files.

(a) At any time during the period of enforceability of a patent, any person may cite to the Patent and Trademark Office in writing prior art consisting of patents or printed publications which that person states to be pertinent and applicable to the patent and believes to have a bearing on the patentability of any claim of a particular patent. If the citation is made by the patent owner, the explanation of pertinency and applicability may include an explanation of how the claims differ from the prior art. Citations by the patent owner under § 1.555 and by a reexamination requester under either § 1.510 or § 1.535 will be entered in the patent file during a reexamination proceeding. The entry in the patent file of citations submitted after the date of an order to reexamine pursuant to § 1.525 by persons other than the patent owner, or a reexamination requester under either § 1.510 or § 1.535, will be delayed until the reexamination proceedings have been terminated.

(b) If the person making the citation wishes his or her identity to be excluded from the patent file and kept confidential, the citation papers must be submitted without any identification of the person making the submission.

(c) Citation of patents or printed publications by the public in patent files should either:

(1) Reflect that a copy of the same has been mailed to the patent owner at the address as provided for in § 1.33(c); or in the event service is not possible

(2) Be filed with the Office in duplicate.

REQUEST FOR REEXAMINATION

§ 1.510 Request for reexamination.

(a) Any person may, at any time during the period of enforceability of a patent, file a request for reexamination by the Patent and Trademark Office of any claim of the patent on the basis of prior art patents or printed publications cited under § 1.501. The request must be accompanied by the fee for requesting reexamination set in § 1.20(c).

(b) Any request for reexamination must include the following parts:

(1) A statement pointing out each substantial new question of patentability based on prior patents and printed publications.

(2) An identification of every claim for which reexamination is requested, and a detailed explanation of the pertinency and manner of applying the cited prior art to every claim for which reexamination is requested. If appropriate the party requesting reexamination may also point out how claims distinguish over cited prior art.

(3) A copy of every patent or printed publication relied upon or referred to in paragraph (b) (1) and (2) of this section accompanied by an English language translation of all the necessary and pertinent parts of any non-English language patent or printed publication.

(4) The entire specification (including claims) and drawings of the patent for which reexamination is requested must be furnished in the form of cut-up copies of the original patent with only a single column of the printed patent securely mounted or reproduced in permanent form on one side of a separate paper. A copy of any disclaimer, certificate of correction, or reexamination certificate issued in the patent must also be included.

(5) A certification that a copy of the request filed by a person other than the patent owner has been served in its entirety on the patent owner at the address as provided for in § 1.33(c). The name and address of the party served must be indicated. If service was not possible, a duplicate copy must be supplied to the Office.

(c) If the request does not include the fee for requesting reexamination or all of the parts required by paragraph (b) of this section, the person identified as requesting reexamination will be so notified and given an opportunity to complete the request within a specified time. If the fee for requesting reexamination has been paid but the defect in the request is not corrected within the specified time, the determination whether or not to institute reexamination will be made on the request as it

then exists. If the fee for requesting reexamination has not been paid, no determination will be made and the request will be placed in the patent file as a citation if it complies with the requirements of §1.501(a).

(d) The filing date of the request is:

(1) The date on which the request including the entire fee for requesting reexamination is received in the Patent and Trademark Office; or

(2) The date on which the last portion of the fee for requesting reexamination is received.

(e) A request filed by the patent owner, may include a proposed amendment in accordance with §1.121(f).

(f) If a request is filed by an attorney or agent identifying another party on whose behalf the request is being filed, the attorney or agent must have a power of attorney from that party or be acting in a representative capacity pursuant to §1.34(a).

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 41282, Sept. 17, 1982]

§1.515 Determination of the request for reexamination.

(a) Within three months following the filing date of a request for reexamination, an examiner will consider the request and determine whether or not a substantial new question of patentability affecting any claim of the patent is raised by the request and the prior art cited therein, with or without consideration of other patents or printed publications. The examiner's determination will be based on the claims in effect at the time of the determination and will become a part of the official file of the patent and will be given or mailed to the patent owner at the address as provided for in §1.33(c) and to the person requesting reexamination.

(b) Where no substantial new question of patentability has been found, a refund of a portion of the fee for requesting reexamination will be made to the requester in accordance with §1.26(c).

(c) The requester may seek review by a petition to the Commissioner under §1.181 within one month of the mailing date of the examiner's determination refusing reexamination. Any such petition must comply with §1.181(b). If no petition is timely filed or if the decision on petition affirms that no substantial new question of patentability has been raised, the determination shall be final and nonappealable.

§1.520 Reexamination at the initiative of the Commissioner.

The Commissioner, at any time during the period of enforceability of a patent, may determine whether or not a substantial new question of patentability is raised by patents or printed publications which have been discovered by the Commissioner or which have been brought to the Commissioner's attention even though no request for reexamination has been filed in accordance with §1.510. The Commissioner may initiate reexamination without a request for reexamination pursuant to §1.510. Normally requests from outside the Patent and Trademark Office that the Commissioner undertake reexamination on his own initiative will not be considered. Any determination to initiate reexamination under this section will become a part of the official file of the patent and will be given or mailed to the patent owner at the address as provided for in §1.33(c).

REEXAMINATION

§1.525 Order to reexamine.

(a) If a substantial new question of patentability is found pursuant to §1.515 or §1.520, the determination will include an order for reexamination of the patent for resolution of the question. If the order for reexamination resulted from a petition pursuant to §1.515(c), the reexamination will ordinarily be conducted by an examiner other than the examiner responsible for the initial determination under §1.515(a).

(b) If the order for reexamination of the patent mailed to the patent owner at the address as provided for in §1.33(c) is returned to the Office undelivered, the notice published in the *Official Gazette* under §1.11(c) will be considered to be constructive notice and reexamination will proceed.

§ 1.530 Statement and amendment by patent owner.

(a) Except as provided in § 1.510(e), no statement or other response by the patent owner shall be filed prior to the determinations made in accordance with § 1.515 or 1.520. If a premature statement or other response is filed by the patent owner it will not be acknowledged or considered in making the determination.

(b) The order for reexamination will set a period of not less than two months from the date of the order within which the patent owner may file a statement on the new question of patentability including any proposed amendments the patent owner wishes to make.

(c) Any statement filed by the patent owner shall clearly point out why the subject matter as claimed is not anticipated or rendered obvious by the prior art patents or printed publications, either alone or in any reasonable combinations. Any statement filed must be served upon the reexamination requester in accordance with § 1.248.

(d) Any proposed amendments to the description and claims must be made in accordance with § 1.121(f). No amendment may enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent or introduce new matter. No amended or new claims may be proposed for entry in an expired patent. Moreover, no amended or new claims will be incorporated into the patent by certificate issued after the expiration of the patent.

(e) Although the Office actions will treat proposed amendments as though they have been entered, the proposed amendments will not be effective until the reexamination certificate is issued.

§ 1.535 Reply by requester.

A reply to the patent owner's statement under § 1.530 may be filed by the reexamination requester within two months from the date of service of the patent owner's statement. Any reply by the requester must be served upon the patent owner in accordance with § 1.248. If the patent owner does not file a statement under § 1.530, no reply or other submission from the reexamination requester will be considered.

§ 1.540 Consideration of responses.

The failure to timely file or serve the documents set forth in § 1.530 or in § 1.535 may result in their being refused consideration. No submissions other than the statement pursuant to § 1.530 and the reply by the requester pursuant to § 1.535 will be considered prior to examination.

§ 1.550 Conduct of reexamination proceedings.

(a) All reexamination proceedings, including any appeals to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, will be conducted with special dispatch within the Office. After issuance of the reexamination order and expiration of the time for submitting any responses thereto, the examination will be conducted in accordance with §§ 1.104 through 1.119 and will result in the issuance of a reexamination certificate under § 1.570.

(b) The patent owner will be given at least 30 days to respond to any Office action. Such response may include further statements in response to any rejections and/or proposed amendments or new claims to place the patent in a condition where all the claims, if amended as proposed, would be patentable.

(c) The time for taking any action by a patent owner in a reexamination proceeding will be extended only for sufficient cause, and for a reasonable time specified. Any request for such extension must be filed on or before the day on which action by the patent owner is due, but in no case will the mere filing of the request effect any extension. See § 1.304(a) for extensions of time for filing a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or for commencing a civil action.

(d) If the patent owner fails to file a timely and appropriate response to any Office action, the reexamination proceeding will be terminated and the Commissioner will proceed to issue a certificate under § 1.570 in accordance with the last action of the Office.

(e) The reexamination requester will be sent copies of Office actions issued during the reexamination proceeding. Any document filed by the patent owner must be served on the requester in the manner provided in § 1.248. The

document must reflect service or the document may be refused consideration by the Office. The active participation of the reexamination requester ends with the reply pursuant to §1.535, and no further submissions on behalf of the reexamination requester will be acknowledged or considered. Further, no submissions on behalf of any third parties will be acknowledged or considered unless such submissions are (1) in accordance with §1.510 or (2) entered in the patent file prior to the date of the order to reexamine pursuant to §1.525. Submissions by third parties, filed after the date of the order to reexamine pursuant to §1.525, must meet the requirements of and will be treated in accordance with §1.501(a).

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981, as amended at 49 FR 556, Jan. 4, 1984; 49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 54 FR 29553, July 13, 1989]

§1.552 Scope of reexamination in reexamination proceedings.

(a) Patent claims will be reexamined on the basis of patents or printed publications.

(b) Amended or new claims presented during a reexamination proceeding must not enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent and will be examined on the basis of patents or printed publications and also for compliance with the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112 and the new matter prohibition of 35 U.S.C. 132.

(c) Questions other than those indicated in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section will not be resolved in a reexamination proceeding. If such questions are discovered during a reexamination proceeding, the existence of such questions will be noted by the examiner in an Office action, in which case the patent owner may desire to consider the advisability of filing a reissue application to have such questions considered and resolved.

§1.555 Information material to patentability in reexamination proceedings.

(a) A patent by its very nature is affected with a public interest. The public interest is best served, and the most effective reexamination occurs when, at the time a reexamination proceeding is being conducted, the Office is aware of and evaluates the teachings of all information material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding. Each individual associated with the patent owner in a reexamination proceeding has a duty of candor and good faith in dealing with the Office, which includes a duty to disclose to the Office all information known to that individual to be material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding. The individuals who have a duty to disclose to the Office all information known to them to be material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding are the patent owner, each attorney or agent who represents the patent owner, and every other individual who is substantively involved on behalf of the patent owner in a reexamination proceeding. The duty to disclose the information exists with respect to each claim pending in the reexamination proceeding until the claim is cancelled. Information material to the patentability of a cancelled claim need not be submitted if the information is not material to patentability of any claim remaining under consideration in the reexamination proceeding. The duty to disclose all information known to be material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding is deemed to be satisfied if all information known to be material to patentability of any claim in the patent after issuance of the reexamination certificate was cited by the Office or submitted to the Office in an information disclosure statement. However, the duties of candor, good faith, and disclosure have not been complied with if any fraud on the Office was practiced or attempted or the duty of disclosure was violated through bad faith or intentional misconduct by, or on behalf of, the patent owner in the reexamination proceeding. Any information disclosure statement must be filed with the items listed in §1.98(a) as applied to individuals associated with the patent owner in a reexamination proceeding, and should be filed within two months of the date of the order for reexamination, or as soon thereafter as possible.

(b) Under this section, information is material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding when it is not cumulative to information of record or

being made of record in the reexamination proceeding, and

(1) It is a patent or printed publication that establishes, by itself or in combination with other patents or printed publications, a prima facie case of unpatentability of a claim; or

(2) It refutes, or is inconsistent with, a position the patent owner takes in:

(i) Opposing an argument of unpatentability relied on by the Office, or

(ii) Asserting an argument of patentability.

A prima facie case of unpatentability of a claim pending in a reexamination proceeding is established when the information compels a conclusion that a claim is unpatentable under the preponderance of evidence, burden-of-proof standard, giving each term in the claim its broadest reasonable construction consistent with the specification, and before any consideration is given to evidence which may be submitted in an attempt to establish a contrary conclusion of patentability.

(c) The responsibility for compliance with this section rests upon the individuals designated in paragraph (a) of this section and no evaluation will be made by the Office in the reexamination proceeding as to compliance with this section. If questions of compliance with this section are discovered during a reexamination proceeding, they will be noted as unresolved questions in accordance with § 1.552(c).

[57 FR 2036, Jan 17, 1992]

§ 1.560 Interviews in reexamination proceedings.

(a) Interviews in reexamination proceedings pending before the Office between examiners and the owners of such patents or their attorneys or agents of record must be had in the Office at such times, within Office hours, as the respective examiners may designate. Interviews will not be permitted at any other time or place without the authority of the Commissioner. Interviews for the discussion of the patentability of claims in patents involved in reexamination proceedings will not be had prior to the first official action thereon. Interviews should be arranged for in advance. Requests that reexamination requesters participate in interviews with examiners will not be granted.

(b) In every instance of an interview with an examiner, a complete written statement of the reasons presented at the interview as warranting favorable action must be filed by the patent owner. An interview does not remove the necessity for response to Office actions as specified in § 1.111.

§ 1.565 Concurrent office proceedings.

(a) In any reexamination proceeding before the Office, the patent owner shall call the attention of the Office to any prior or concurrent proceedings in which the patent is or was involved such as interferences, reissue, reexaminations, or litigation and the results of such proceedings.

(b) If a patent in the process of reexamination is or becomes involved in litigation or a reissue application for the patent is filed or pending, the Commissioner shall determine whether or not to stay the reexamination or reissue proceeding.

(c) If reexamination is ordered while a prior reexamination proceeding is pending, the reexamination proceedings will be consolidated and result in the issuance of a single certificate under § 1.570.

(d) If a reissue application and a reexamination proceeding on which an order pursuant to § 1.525 has been mailed are pending concurrently on a patent, a decision will normally be made to merge the two proceedings or to stay one of the two proceedings. Where merger of a reissue application and a reexamination proceeding is ordered, the merged examination will be conducted in accordance with §§ 1.171 through 1.179 and the patent owner will be required to place and maintain the same claims in the reissue application and the reexamination proceeding during the pendency of the merged proceeding. The examiner's actions and any responses by the patent owner in a merged proceeding will apply to both the reissue application and the reexamination proceeding and be physically entered into both files. Any reexamination proceeding merged with a reissue application shall be terminated by the grant of the reissued patent.

(e) If a patent in the process of reexamination is or becomes involved in an interference, the Commissioner may stay reexamination or the interference. The Commissioner will not consider a request to stay an interference unless a motion (§1.635) to stay the interference has been presented to, and denied by, an examiner-in-chief and the request is filed within ten (10) days of a decision by an examiner-in-chief denying the motion for a stay or such other time as the examiner-in-chief may set.

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 21753, May 19, 1982; 49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23123, May 31, 1985]

CERTIFICATE

§1.570 Issuance of reexamination certificate after reexamination proceedings.

(a) Upon the conclusion of reexamination proceedings, the Commissioner will issue a certificate in accordance with 35 U.S.C. 307 setting forth the results of the reexamination proceeding and the content of the patent following the reexamination proceeding.

(b) A certificate will be issued in each patent in which a reexamination proceeding has been ordered under §1.525. Any statutory disclaimer filed by the patent owner will be made part of the certificate.

(c) The certificate will be mailed on the day of its date to the patent owner at the address as provided for in §1.33(c). A copy of the certificate will also be mailed to the requester of the reexamination proceeding.

(d) If a certificate has been issued which cancels all of the claims of the patent, no further Office proceedings will be conducted with regard to that patent or any reissue applications or reexamination requests relating thereto.

(e) If the reexamination proceeding is terminated by the grant of a reissued patent as provided in §1.565(d) the reissued patent will constitute the reexamination certificate required by this section and 35 U.S.C. 307.

(f) A notice of the issuance of each certificate under this section will be published in the *Official Gazette* on its date of issuance.

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981, as amended at 47 FR 21753, May 19, 1982]

Subpart E—Interferences

AUTHORITY: 35 U.S.C. 6, 23, 41, and 135.

SOURCE: 49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, unless otherwise noted.

§1.601 Scope of rules, definitions.

This subpart governs the procedure in patent interferences in the Patent and Trademark Office. This subpart shall be construed to secure the just, speedy, and inexpensive determination of every interference. For the meaning of terms in the Federal Rules of Evidence as applied to interferences, see §1.671(c). Unless otherwise clear from the context, the following definitions apply to this subpart:

(a) *Additional discovery* is discovery to which a party may be entitled under §1.687 in addition to discovery to which the party is entitled as a matter of right under §1.673 (a) and (b).

(b) *Affidavit* means affidavit, declaration under §1.68, or statutory declaration under 28 U.S.C. 1746. A transcript of an *ex parte* deposition may be used as an affidavit.

(c) *Board* means the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(d) *Case-in-chief* means that portion of a party's case where the party has the burden of going forward with evidence.

(e) *Case-in-rebuttal* means that portion of a party's case where the party presents evidence in rebuttal to the case-in-chief of another party.

(f) A *count* defines the interfering subject matter between two or more applications or between one or more applications and one or more patents. At the time the interference is initially declared, a count should be broad enough to encompass all of the claims that are patentable over the prior art and designated to correspond to the count. When there is more than one count, each count shall define a separate patentable invention. Any claim of an application or patent that is designated to correspond to a count is a claim involved in the interference

within the meaning of 35 U.S.C. 135(a). A claim of a patent or application that is designated to correspond to a count and is identical to the count is said to correspond exactly to the count. A claim of a patent or application that is designated to correspond to a count but is not identical to the count is said to correspond substantially to the count. When a count is broader in scope than all claims which correspond to the count, the count is a phantom count.

(g) The *effective filing date* of an application is the filing date of an earlier application, benefit of which is accorded to the application under 35 U.S.C. 119, 120, 121, or 365 or, if no benefit is accorded, the filing date of the application. The effective filing date of a patent is the filing date of an earlier application, benefit of which is accorded to the patent under 35 U.S.C. 119, 120, 121, or 365 or, if no benefit is accorded, the filing date of the application which issued as the patent.

(h) In the case of an application, *filing date* means the filing date assigned to the application. In the case of a patent, ''filing date'' means the filing date assigned to the application which issued as the patent.

(i) An *interference* is a proceeding instituted in the Patent and Trademark Office before the Board to determine any question of patentability and priority of invention between two or more parties claiming the same patentable invention. An interference may be declared between two or more pending applications naming different inventors when, in the opinion of an examiner, the applications contain claims for the same patentable invention. An interference may be declared between one or more pending applications and one or more unexpired patents naming different inventors when, in the opinion of an examiner, any application and any unexpired patent contain claims for the same patentable invention.

(j) An *interference-in-fact* exists when at least one claim of a party that is designated to correspond to a count and at least one claim of an opponent that is designated to correspond to the count define the same patentable invention.

(k) A *lead* attorney or agent is a registered attorney or agent of record who is primarily responsible for prosecuting an interference on behalf of a party and is the attorney or agent whom an administrative patent judge may contact to set times and take other action in the interference.

(l) A *party* is an applicant or patentee involved in the interference or a legal representative or an assignee of record in the Patent and Trademark Office of an applicant or patentee involved in an interference. Where acts of party are normally performed by an attorney or agent, ''party'' may be construed to mean the attorney or agent. An inventor is the individual named as inventor in an application involved in an interference or the individual named as inventor in a patent involved in an interference.

(m) A *senior party* is the party with the earliest effective filing date as to all counts or, if there is no party with the earliest effective filing date as to all counts, the party with the earliest filing date. A *junior party* is any other party.

(n) Invention ''A'' is the *same patentable invention* as an invention ''B'' when invention ''A'' is the same as (35 U.S.C. 102) or is obvious (35 U.S.C. 103) in view of invention ''B'' assuming invention ''B'' is prior art with respect to invention ''A''. Invention ''A'' is a *separate patentable invention* with respect to invention ''B'' when invention ''A'' is new (35 U.S.C. 102) and non-obvious (35 U.S.C. 103) in view of invention ''B'' assuming invention ''B'' is prior art with respect to invention ''A''.

(o) *Sworn* means sworn or affirmed.

(p) *United States* means the United States of America, its territories and possessions.

(q) A *final decision* is a decision awarding judgment as to all counts. An *interlocutory order* is any other action taken by an administrative patent judge or the Board in an interference, including the notice declaring an interference.

(r) *NAFTA country* means NAFTA country as defined in section 2(4) of the North American Free Trade Agreement Implementation Act, Pub. L. 103–182, 107 Stat. 2060 (19 U.S.C. 3301).

(s) *WTO member country* means WTO member country as defined in section 2(10) of the Uruguay Round Agreements Act, Pub. L. 103–465, 108 Stat. 4813 (19 U.S.C. 3501).

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23123, May 31, 1985, as amended at 58 FR 49434, Sept. 23, 1993; 60 FR 14519, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.602 Interest in applications and patents involved in an interference.

(a) Unless good cause is shown, an interference shall not be declared or continued between (1) applications owned by a single party or (2) applications and an unexpired patent owned by a single party.

(b) The parties, within 20 days after an interference is declared, shall notify the Board of any and all right, title, and interest in any application or patent involved or relied upon in the interference unless the right, title, and interest is set forth in the notice declaring the interference.

(c) If a change of any right, title, and interest in any application or patent involved or relied upon in the interference occurs after notice is given declaring the interference and before the time expires for seeking judicial review of a final decision of the Board, the parties shall notify the Board of the change within 20 days after the change.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14519, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.603 Interference between applications; subject matter of the interference.

Before an interference is declared between two or more applications, the examiner must be of the opinion that there is interfering subject matter claimed in the applications which is patentable to each applicant subject to a judgment in the interference. The interfering subject matter shall be defined by one or more counts. Each application must contain, or be amended to contain, at least one claim that is patentable over the prior art and corresponds to each count. All claims in the applications which define the same patentable invention as a count shall be designated to correspond to the count.

[60 FR 14519, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.604 Request for interference between applications by an applicant.

(a) An applicant may seek to have an interference declared with an application of another by,

(1) Suggesting a proposed count and presenting at least one claim corresponding to the proposed count or identifying at least one claim in its application that corresponds to the proposed count,

(2) Identifying the other application and, if known, a claim in the other application which corresponds to the proposed count, and

(3) Explaining why an interference should be declared.

(b) When an applicant presents a claim known to the applicant to define the same patentable invention claimed in a pending application of another, the applicant shall identify that pending application, unless the claim is presented in response to a suggestion by the examiner. The examiner shall notify the Commissioner of any instance where it appears an applicant may have failed to comply with the provisions of this paragraph.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988; 60 FR 14519, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.605 Suggestion of claim to applicant by examiner.

(a) If no claim in an application is drawn to the same patentable invention claimed in another application or patent, the examiner may suggest that an applicant present a claim drawn to an invention claimed in another application or patent for the purpose of an interference with another application or a patent. The applicant to whom the claim is suggested shall amend the application by presenting the suggested claim within a time specified by the examiner, not less than one month. Failure or refusal of an applicant to timely present the suggested claim shall be taken without further action as a disclaimer by the applicant of the invention defined by the suggested claim. At the time the suggested claim is presented, the applicant may also call the examiner's attention to other claims already in the application or presented with the suggested claim and explain why the other claims would be

more appropriate to be designated to correspond to a count in any interference which may be declared.

(b) The suggestion of a claim by the examiner for the purpose of an interference will not stay the period for response to any outstanding Office action. When a suggested claim is timely presented, *ex parte* proceedings in the application will be stayed pending a determination of whether an interference will be declared.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14519, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.606 Interference between an application and a patent; subject matter of the interference.

Before an interference is declared between an application and an unexpired patent, an examiner must determine that there is interfering subject matter claimed in the application and the patent which is patentable to the applicant subject to a judgment in the interference. The interfering subject matter will be defined by one or more counts. The applications must contain, or be amended to contain, at least one claim that is patentable over the prior art and corresponds to each count. The claim in the application need not be, and most often will not be, identical to a claim in the patent. All claims in the application and patent which define the same patentable invention as a count shall be designated to correspond to the count. At the time an interference is initially declared (§ 1.611), a count shall not be narrower in scope than any application claim that is patentable over the prior art and designated to correspond to the count or any patent claim designated to correspond to the count. Any single patent claim designated to correspond to the count will be presumed, subject to a motion under § 1.633(c), not to contain separate patentable inventions.

[60 FR 14520, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.607 Request by applicant for interference with patent.

(a) An applicant may seek to have an interference declared between an application and an unexpired patent by,

(1) Identifying the patent,

(2) Presenting a proposed count,

(3) Identifying at least one claim in the patent corresponding to the proposed count,

(4) Presenting at least one claim corresponding to the proposed count or identifying at least one claim already pending in its application that corresponds to the proposed count, and, if any claim of the patent or application identified as corresponding to the proposed count does not correspond exactly to the proposed count, explaining why each such claim corresponds to the proposed count, and

(5) Applying the terms of any application claim,

(i) Identified as corresponding to the count, and

(ii) Not previously in the application to the disclosure of the application.

(6) Explaining how the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 135(b) are met, if the claim presented or identified under paragraph (a)(4) of this section was not present in the application until more than one year after the issue date of the patent.

(b) When an applicant seeks an interference with a patent, examination of the application, including any appeal to the Board, shall be conducted with special dispatch within the Patent and Trademark Office. The examiner shall determine whether there is interfering subject matter claimed in the application and the patent which is patentable to the applicant subject to a judgment in an interference. If the examiner determines that there is any interfering subject matter, an interference will be declared. If the examiner determines that there is no interfering subject matter, the examiner shall state the reasons why an interference is not being declared and otherwise act on the application.

(c) When an applicant presents a claim which corresponds exactly or substantially to a claim of a patent, the applicant shall identify the patent and the number of the patent claim, unless the claim is presented in response to a suggestion by the examiner. The examiner shall notify the Commissioner of any instance where an applicant fails to identify the patent.

(d) A notice that an applicant is seeking to provoke an interference with a patent will be placed in the file of the patent and a copy of the notice

will be sent to the patentee. The identity of the applicant will not be disclosed unless an interference is declared. If a final decision is made not to declare an interference, a notice to that effect will be placed in the patent file and will be sent to the patentee.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988; 58 FR 54511, Oct. 22, 1993; 60 FR 14520, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.608 Interference between an application and a patent; prima facie showing by applicant.

(a) When the effective filing date of an application is three months or less after the effective filing date of a patent, before an interference will be declared, either the applicant or the applicant's attorney or agent of record shall file a statement alleging that there is a basis upon which the applicant is entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee.

(b) When the effective filing date of an application is more than three months after the effective filing date of a patent, the applicant, before an interference will be declared, shall file evidence which may consist of patents or printed publications, other documents, and one or more affidavits which demonstrate that applicant is *prima facie* entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee and an explanation stating with particularity the basis upon which the applicant is *prima facie* entitled to the judgment. Where the basis upon which an applicant is entitled to judgment relative to a patentee is priority of invention, the evidence shall include affidavits by the applicant, if possible, and one or more corroborating witnesses, supported by documentary evidence, if available, each setting out a factual description of acts and circumstances performed or observed by the affiant, which collectively would *prima facie* entitle the applicant to judgment on priority with respect to the effective filing date of the patent. To facilitate preparation of a record (§1.653(g)) for final hearing, an applicant should file affidavits on paper which is 21.8 by 27.9 cm. (8½ x 11 inches). The significance of any printed publication or other document which is self-authenticating within the meaning of Rule 902 of the Federal Rules of Evidence or §1.671(d) and any patent shall be discussed in an affidavit or the explanation. Any printed publication or other document which is not self-authenticating shall be authenticated and discussed with particularity in an affidavit. Upon a showing of good cause, an affidavit may be based on information and belief. If an examiner finds an application to be in condition for declaration of an interference, the examiner will consider the evidence and explanation only to the extent of determining whether a basis upon which the application would be entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee is alleged and, if a basis is alleged, an interference may be declared.

[60 FR 14520, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.609 Preparation of interference papers by examiner.

When the examiner determines that an interference should be declared, the examiner shall forward to the Board:

(a) All relevant application and patent files and

(b) A statement identifying:

(1) The proposed count or counts and, if there is more than one count proposed, explaining why the counts define different patentable inventions;

(2) The claims of any application or patent which correspond to each count, explaining why each claim designated as corresponding to a count is directed to the same patentable invention as the count;

(3) The claims in any application or patent which do not correspond to each count and explaining why each claim designated as not corresponding to any count is not directed to the same patentable invention as any count; and

(4) Whether an applicant or patentee is entitled to the benefit of the filing date of an earlier application and, if so, sufficient information to identify the earlier application.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14520, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.610 Assignment of interference to administrative patent judge, time period for completing interference.

(a) Each interference will be declared by an administrative patent judge who may enter all interlocutory orders in the interference, except that only the

Board shall hear oral argument at final hearing, enter a decision under § 1.617, 1.640(e), 1.652, 1.656(i) or 1.658, or enter any other order which terminates the interference.

(b) As necessary, another administrative patent judge may act in place of the one who declared the interference. At the discretion of the administrative patent judge assigned to the interference, a panel consisting of two or more members of the Board may enter interlocutory orders.

(c) Unless otherwise provided in this subpart, times for taking action by a party in the interference will be set on a case-by-case basis by the administrative patent judge assigned to the interference. Times for taking action shall be set and the administrative patent judge shall exercise control over the interference such that the pendency of the interference before the Board does not normally exceed two years.

(d) An administrative patent judge may hold a conference with the parties to consider simplification of any issues, the necessity or desirability of amendments to counts, the possibility of obtaining admissions of fact and genuineness of documents which will avoid unnecessary proof, any limitations on the number of expert witnesses, the time and place for conducting a deposition (§ 1.673(g)), and any other matter as may aid in the disposition of the interference. After a conference, the administrative patent judge may enter any order which may be appropriate.

(e) The administrative patent judge may determine a proper course of conduct in an interference for any situation not specifically covered by this part.

[60 FR 14520, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.611 Declaration of interference.

(a) Notice of declaration of an interference will be sent to each party.

(b) When a notice of declaration is returned to the Patent and Trademark Office undelivered, or in any other circumstance where appropriate, an administrative patent judge may send a copy of the notice to a patentee named in a patent involved in an interference or the patentee's assignee of record in the Patent and Trademark Office or order publication of an appropriate notice in the *Official Gazette.*

(c) The notice of declaration shall specify:

(1) The name and residence of each party involved in the interference;

(2) The name and address of record of any attorney or agent of record in any application or patent involved in the interference;

(3) The name of any assignee of record in the Patent and Trademark Office;

(4) The identity of any application or patent involved in the interference;

(5) Where a party is accorded the benefit of the filing date of an earlier application, the identity of the earlier application;

(6) The count or counts and, if there is more than one count, the examiner's explanation why the counts define different patentable inventions;

(7) The claim or claims of any application or any patent which correspond to each count;

(8) The examiner's explanation as to why each claim designated as corresponding to a count is directed to the same patentable invention as the count and why each claim designated as not corresponding to any count is not directed to the same patentable invention as any count; and

(9) The order of the parties.

(d) The notice of declaration may also specify the time for:

(1) Filing a preliminary statement as provided in § 1.621(a);

(2) Serving notice that a preliminary statement has been filed as provided in § 1.621(b); and

(3) Filing preliminary motions authorized by § 1.633.

(e) Notice may be given in the *Official Gazette* that an interference has been declared involving a patent.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23123, May 31, 1985, as amended at 60 FR 14521, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.612 Access to applications.

(a) After an interference is declared, each party shall have access to and may obtain copies of the files of any application set out in the notice declaring the interference, except for affidavits filed under § 1.131 and any evidence and explanation under § 1.608

filed separate from an amendment. A party seeking access to any abandoned or pending application referred to in the opponent's involved application or access to any pending application referred to in the opponent's patent must file a motion under §1.635. See §1.11(e) concerning public access to interference files.

(b) After preliminary motions under §1.633 are decided (§1.640(b)), each party shall have access to and may obtain copies of any affidavit filed under §1.131 and any evidence and explanation filed under §1.608 in any application set out in the notice declaring the interference.

(c) Any evidence and explanation filed under §1.608 in the file of any application identified in the notice declaring the interference shall be served when required by §1.617(b).

(d) The parties at any time may agree to exchange copies of papers in the files of any application identified in the notice declaring the interference.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, as amended at 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988; 60 FR 14521, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.613 Lead attorney, same attorney representing different parties in an interference, withdrawal of attorney or agent.

(a) Each party may be required to designate one attorney or agent of record as the lead attorney or agent.

(b) The same attorney or agent or members of the same firm of attorneys or agents may not represent two or more parties in an interference except as may be permitted under this chapter.

(c) An administrative patent judge may make necessary inquiry to determine whether an attorney or agent should be disqualified from representing a party in an interference. If an administrative patent judge is of the opinion that an attorney or agent should be disqualified, the administrative patent judge shall refer the matter to the Commissioner. The Commissioner will make a final decision as to whether any attorney or agent should be disqualified.

(d) No attorney or agent of record in an interference may withdraw as attorney or agent of record except with the approval of an administrative patent judge and after reasonable notice to the party on whose behalf the attorney or agent has appeared. A request to withdraw as attorney or agent of record in an interference shall be made by motion (§1.635).

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14521, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.614 Jurisdiction over interference.

(a) The Board acquires jurisdiction over an interference when the interference is declared under §1.611.

(b) When the interference is declared the interference is a contested case within the meaning of 35 U.S.C. 24.

(c) The examiner shall have jurisdiction over any pending application until the interference is declared. An administrative patent judge may for a limited purpose restore jurisdiction to the examiner over any application involved in the interference.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14521, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.615 Suspension of ex parte prosecution.

(a) When an interference is declared, ex parte prosecution of an application involved in the interference is suspended. Amendments and other papers related to the application received during pendency of the interference will not be entered or considered in the interference without the consent of an administrative patent judge.

(b) Ex parte prosecution as to specified matters may be continued concurrently with the interference with the consent of the administrative patent judge.

[60 FR 14521, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.616 Sanctions for failure to comply with rules or order or for taking and maintaining a frivolous position.

(a) An administrative patent judge or the Board may impose an appropriate sanction against a party who fails to comply with the regulations of this part or any order entered by an administrative patent judge or the Board. An appropriate sanction may include among others entry of an order:

(1) Holding certain facts to have been established in the interference;

(2) Precluding a party from filing a paper;

(3) Precluding a party from presenting or contesting a particular issue;

(4) Precluding a party from requesting, obtaining, or opposing discovery;

(5) Awarding compensatory expenses and/or compensatory attorney fees; or

(6) Granting judgment in the interference.

(b) An administrative patent judge or the Board may impose a sanction, including a sanction in the form of compensatory expenses and/or compensatory attorney fees, against a party for taking and maintaining a frivolous position in papers filed in the interference.

(c) To the extent that an administrative patent judge or the Board has authorized a party to compel the taking of testimony or the production of documents or things from an individual or entity located in a NAFTA country or a WTO member country concerning knowledge, use, or other activity relevant to proving or disproving a date of invention (§ 1.671(h)), but the testimony, documents or things have not been produced for use in the interference to the same extent as such information could be made available in the United States, the administrative patent judge or the Board shall draw such adverse inferences as may be appropriate under the circumstances, or take such other action permitted by statute, rule, or regulation, in favor of the party that requested the information in the interference, including imposition of appropriate sanctions under paragraph (a) of this section.

(d) A party may file a motion (§ 1.635) for entry of an order imposing sanctions, the drawing of adverse inferences or other action under paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of this section. Where an administrative patent judge or the Board on its own initiative determines that a sanction, adverse inference or other action against a party may be appropriate under paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of this section, the administrative patent judge or the Board shall enter an order for the party to show cause why the sanction, adverse inference or other action is not appropriate. The Board shall take action in accordance with the order unless, within 20 days after the date of the order, the party files a paper which shows good cause why the sanction, adverse inference or other action would not be appropriate.

[60 FR 14521, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.617 Summary judgment against applicant.

(a) An administrative patent judge shall review any evidence filed by an applicant under § 1.608(b) to determine if the applicant is *prima facie* entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee. If the administrative patent judge determines that the evidence shows the applicant is *prima facie* entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee, the interference shall proceed in the normal manner under the regulations of this part. If in the opinion of the administrative patent judge the evidence fails to show that the applicant is *prima facie* entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee, the administrative patent judge shall, concurrently with the notice declaring the interference, enter an order stating the reasons for the opinion and directing the applicant, within a time set in the order, to show cause why summary judgment should not be entered against the applicant.

(b) The applicant may file a response to the order, which may include an appropriate preliminary motion under § 1.633 (c), (f) or (g), and state any reasons why summary judgment should not be entered. Any request by the applicant for a hearing before the Board shall be made in the response. Additional evidence shall not be presented by the applicant or considered by the Board unless the applicant shows good cause why any additional evidence was not initially presented with the evidence filed under § 1.608(b). At the time an applicant files a response, the applicant shall serve a copy of any evidence filed under § 1.608(b) and this paragraph.

(c) If a response is not timely filed by the applicant, the Board shall enter a final decision granting summary judgment against the applicant.

(d) If a response is timely filed by the applicant, all opponents may file a

statement and may oppose any preliminary motion filed under §1.633 (c), (f) or (g) by the applicant within a time set by the administrative patent judge. The statement may set forth views as to why summary judgment should be granted against the applicant, but the statement shall be limited to discussing why all the evidence presented by the applicant does not overcome the reasons given by the administrative patent judge for issuing the order to show cause. Except as required to oppose a motion under §1.633 (c), (f) or (g) by the applicant, evidence shall not be filed by any opponent. An opponent may not request a hearing.

(e) Within a time authorized by the administrative patent judge, an applicant may file a reply to any statement or opposition filed by any opponent.

(f) When more than two parties are involved in an interference, all parties may participate in summary judgment proceedings under this section.

(g) If a response by the applicant is timely filed, the administrative patent judge or the Board shall decide whether the evidence submitted under §1.608(b) and any additional evidence properly submitted under paragraphs (b) and (e) of this section shows that the applicant is *prima facie* entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee. If the applicant is not *prima facie* entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee, the Board shall enter a final decision granting summary judgment against the applicant. Otherwise, an interlocutory order shall be entered authorizing the interference to proceed in the normal manner under the regulations of this subpart.

(h) Only an applicant who filed evidence under §1.608(b) may request a hearing. If that applicant requests a hearing, the Board may hold a hearing prior to entry of a decision under paragraph (g) of this section. The administrative patent judge shall set a date and time for the hearing. Unless otherwise ordered by the administrative patent judge or the Board, the applicant and any opponent will each be entitled to no more than 30 minutes of oral argument at the hearing.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, as amended at 60 FR 14522, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.618 Return of unauthorized papers.

(a) An administrative patent judge or the Board shall return to a party any paper presented by the party when the filing of the paper is not authorized by, or is not in compliance with the requirements of, this subpart. Any paper returned will not thereafter be considered in the interference. A party may be permitted to file a corrected paper under such conditions as may be deemed appropriate by an administrative patent judge or the Board.

(b) When presenting a paper in an interference, a party shall not submit with the paper a copy of a paper previously filed in the interference.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14522, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.621 Preliminary statement, time for filing, notice of filing.

(a) Within the time set for filing preliminary motions under §1.633, each party may file a preliminary statement. The preliminary statement may be signed by any individual having knowledge of the facts recited therein or by an attorney or agent of record.

(b) When a party files a preliminary statement, the party shall also simultaneously file and serve on all opponents in the interference a notice stating that a preliminary statement has been filed. A copy of the preliminary statement need not be served until ordered by the administrative patent judge.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, as amended at 60 FR 14522, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.622 Preliminary statement, who made invention, where invention made.

(a) A party's preliminary statement must identify the inventor who made the invention defined by each count and must state on behalf of the inventor the facts required by paragraph (a) of §§1.623, 1.624, and 1.625 as may be appropriate. When an inventor identified in the preliminary statement is not an inventor named in the party's application or patent, the party shall file a motion under §1.634 to correct inventorship.

(b) The preliminary statement shall state whether the invention was made in the United States, a NAFTA country (and, if so, which NAFTA country), a WTO member country (and, if so, which WTO member country), or in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country. If made in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, the preliminary statement shall state whether the party is entitled to the benefit of 35 U.S.C. 104(a)(2).

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14522, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.623 Preliminary statement; invention made in United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.

(a) When the invention was made in the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, or a party is entitled to the benefit of 35 U.S.C. 104(a)(2), the preliminary statement must state the following facts as to the invention defined by each count:

(1) The date on which the first drawing of the invention was made.

(2) The date on which the first written description of the invention was made.

(3) The date on which the invention was first disclosed by the inventor to another person.

(4) The date on which the invention was first conceived by the inventor.

(5) The date on which the invention was first actually reduced to practice. If the invention was not actually reduced to practice by or on behalf of the inventor prior to the party's filing date, the preliminary statement shall so state.

(6) The date after the inventor's conception of the invention when active exercise of reasonable diligence toward reducing the invention to practice began.

(b) If a party intends to prove derivation, the preliminary statement must also comply with § 1.625.

(c) When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(1) of this section that a drawing was made, a copy of the first drawing shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(2) of this section that a written description of the invention was made, a copy of the first written description shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. See § 1.628(b) when a copy of the first drawing or written description cannot be filed with the preliminary statement.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14522, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.624 Preliminary statement; invention made in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.

(a) When the invention was made in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country and a party intends to rely on introduction of the invention into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, the preliminary statement must state the following facts as to the invention defined by each count:

(1) The date on which a drawing of the invention was first introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.

(2) The date on which a written description of the invention was first introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.

(3) The date on which the invention was first disclosed to another person in the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.

(4) The date on which the inventor's conception of the invention was first introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.

(5) The date on which an actual reduction to practice of the invention was first introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country. If an actual reduction to practice of the invention was not introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, the preliminary amendment shall so state.

(6) The date after introduction of the inventor's conception into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country when active exercise of reasonable diligence in the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO

member country toward reducing the invention to practice began.

(b) If a party intends to prove derivation, the preliminary statement must also comply with §1.625.

(c) When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(1) of this section that a drawing was introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, a copy of that drawing shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(2) of this section that a written description of the invention was introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, a copy of that written description shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. See §1.628(b) when a copy of the first drawing or first written description introduced in the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country cannot be filed with the preliminary statement.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, as amended at 60 FR 14523, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.625 Preliminary statement; derivation by an opponent.

(a) When a party intends to prove derivation by an opponent from the party, the preliminary statement must state the following as to the invention defined by each count:

(1) The name of the opponent.

(2) The date on which the first drawing of the invention was made.

(3) The date on which the first written description of the invention was made.

(4) The date on which the invention was first disclosed by the inventor to another person.

(5) The date on which the invention was first conceived by the inventor.

(6) The date on which the invention was first communicated to the opponent.

(b) If a party intends to prove priority, the preliminary statement must also comply with §1.623 or §1.624.

(c) When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(2) of this section that a drawing was made, a copy of the first drawing shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(3) of this section that a written description of the invention was made, a copy of the first written description shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. See §1.628(b) when a first drawing or first written description cannot be filed with the preliminary statement.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14523, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.626 Preliminary statement; earlier application.

When a party does not intend to present evidence to prove a conception or an actual reduction to practice and the party intends to rely solely on the filing date of an earlier filed application to prove a constructive reduction to practice, the preliminary statement may so state and identify the earlier filed application with particularity.

[60 FR 14523, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.627 Preliminary statement; sealing before filing, opening of statement.

(a) The preliminary statement and copies of any drawing or written description shall be filed in a sealed envelope bearing only the name of the party filing the statement and the style (e.g., Jones v. Smith) and number of the interference. The sealed envelope should contain only the preliminary statement and copies of any drawing or written description. If the preliminary statement is filed through the mail, the sealed envelope should be enclosed in an outer envelope addressed to the Commission of Patents and Trademarks in accordance with §1.1(e).

(b) A preliminary statement may be opened only at the direction of an administrative patent judge.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14523, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.628 Preliminary statement; correction of error.

(a) A material error arising through inadvertence or mistake in connection with a preliminary statement or drawings or a written description submitted therewith or omitted therefrom may be corrected by a motion (§1.635) for leave to file a corrected statement. The motion shall be supported by an affidavit

stating the date the error was first discovered, shall be accompanied by the corrected statement and shall be filed as soon as practical after discovery of the error. If filed on or after the date set by the administrative patent judge for service of preliminary statements, the motion shall also show that correction of the error is essential to the interest of justice.

(b) When a party cannot attach a copy of a drawing or written description to the party's preliminary statement as required by § 1.623(c), § 1.624(c) or § 1.625(c), the party shall show good cause and explain in the preliminary statement why a copy of the drawing or written description cannot be attached to the preliminary statement and shall attach to the preliminary statement the earliest drawing or written description made in or introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country which is available. The party shall file a motion (§ 1.635) to amend its preliminary statement promptly after the first drawing, first written description, or drawing or written description first introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country becomes available. A copy of the drawing or written description may be obtained, where appropriate, by a motion (§ 1.635) for additional discovery under § 1.687 or during a testimony period.

[60 FR 14523, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.629 Effect of preliminary statement.

(a) A party shall be strictly held to any date alleged in the preliminary statement. Doubts as to definiteness or sufficiency of any allegation in a preliminary statement or compliance with formal requirements will be resolved against the party filing the statement by restricting the party to its effective filing date or to the latest date of a period alleged in the preliminary statement, as may be appropriate. A party may not correct a preliminary statement except as provided by § 1.628.

(b) Evidence which shows that an act alleged in the preliminary statement occurred prior to the date alleged in the statement shall establish only that the act occurred as early as the date alleged in the statement.

(c) If a party does not file a preliminary statement, the party:

(1) Shall be restricted to the party's effective filing date and

(2) Will not be permitted to prove that:

(i) The party made the invention prior to the party's filing date or

(ii) Any opponent derived the invention from the party.

(d) If a party files a preliminary statement which contains an allegation of a date of first drawing or first written description and the party does not file a copy of the first drawing or written description with the preliminary statement as required by § 1.623(c), § 1.624(c), or § 1.625(c), the party will be restricted to the party's effective filing date as to that allegation unless the party complies with § 1.628(b). The content of any drawing or written description submitted with a preliminary statement will not normally be evaluated or considered by the Board.

(e) A preliminary statement shall not be used as evidence on behalf of the party filing the statement.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14523, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.630 Reliance on earlier application.

A party shall not be entitled to rely on the filing date of an earlier filed application unless the earlier application is identified (§ 1.611(c)(5)) in the notice declaring the interference or the party files a preliminary motion under § 1.633 seeking the benefit of the filing date of the earlier application.

[60 FR 14524, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.631 Access to preliminary statement, service of preliminary statement.

(a) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, concurrently with entry of a decision on preliminary motions filed under § 1.633 any preliminary statement filed under § 1.621(a) shall be opened to inspection by the senior party and any junior party who filed a preliminary statement. Within a time set by the administrative patent judge, a party shall

serve a copy of its preliminary statement on each opponent who served a notice under §1.621(b).

(b) A junior party who does not file a preliminary statement shall not have access to the preliminary statement of any other party.

(c) If an interference is terminated before the preliminary statements have been opened, the preliminary statements will remain sealed and will be returned to the respective parties who submitted the statements.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, as amended at 60 FR 14524, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.632 Notice of intent to argue abandonment, suppression or concealment by opponent.

A notice shall be filed by a party who intends to argue that an opponent has abandoned, suppressed, or concealed an actual reduction to practice (35 U.S.C. 102(g)). A party will not be permitted to argue abandonment, suppression, or concealment by an opponent unless the notice is timely filed. Unless authorized otherwise by an administrative patent judge, a notice is timely when filed within ten (10) days after the close of the testimony-in-chief of the opponent.

[60 FR 14524, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.633 Preliminary motions.

A party may file the following preliminary motions:

(a) A motion for judgment against an opponent's claim designated to correspond to a count on the ground that the claim is not patentable to the opponent. The motion shall separately address each claim alleged to be unpatentable. In deciding an issue raised in a motion filed under this paragraph (a), a claim will be construed in light of the specification of the application or patent in which it appears. A motion under this paragraph shall not be based on:

(1) Priority of invention by the moving party as against any opponent or

(2) Derivation of the invention by an opponent from the moving party. See §1.637(a).

(b) A motion for judgment on the ground that there is no interference-in-fact. A motion under this paragraph is proper only if the interference involves a design application or patent or a plant application or patent or no claim of a party which corresponds to a count is identical to any claim of an opponent which corresponds to that count. See §1.637(a). When claims of different parties are presented in ''means plus function'' format, it may be possible for the claims of the different parties not to define the same patentable invention even though the claims contain the same literal wording.

(c) A motion to redefine the interfering subject matter by (1) adding or substituting a count, (2) amending an application claim corresponding to a count or adding a claim in the moving party's application to be designated to correspond to a count, (3) designating an application or patent claim to correspond to a count, (4) designating an application or patent claim as not corresponding to a count, or (5) requiring an opponent who is an applicant to add a claim and to designate the claim to correspond to a count. See §1.637 (a) and (c).

(d) A motion to substitute a different application owned by a party for an application involved in the interference. See §1.637 (a) and (d).

(e) A motion to declare an additional interference (1) between an additional application not involved in the interference and owned by a party and an opponent's application or patent involved in the interference or (2) when an interference involves three or more parties, between less than all applications and any patent involved in the interference. See §1.637 (a) and (e).

(f) A motion to be accorded the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application. See §1.637 (a) and (f).

(g) A motion to attack the benefit accorded an opponent in the notice declaring the interference of the filing date of an earlier filed application. See §1.637 (a) and (g).

(h) When a patent is involved in an interference and the patentee has on file or files an application for reissue under §1.171, a motion to add the application for reissue to the interference. See §1.637 (a) and (h).

(i) When a motion is filed under paragraph (a), (b), or (g) of this section, an opponent, in addition to opposing the

motion, may file a motion to redefine the interfering subject matter under paragraph (c) of this section, a motion to substitute a different application under paragraph (d) of this section, or a motion to add a reissue application to the interference under paragraph (h) of this section.

(j) When a motion is filed under paragraph (c)(1) of this section an opponent, in addition to opposing the motion, may file a motion for benefit under paragraph (f) of this section as to the count to be added or substituted.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, as amended at 60 FR 14524, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.634 Motion to correct inventorship.

A party may file a motion to (a) amend its application involved in an interference to correct inventorship as provided by § 1.48 or (b) correct inventorship of its patent involved in an interference as provided in § 1.324. See § 1.637(a).

§ 1.635 Miscellaneous motions.

A party seeking entry of an order relating to any matter other than a matter which may be raised under § 1.633 or § 1.634 may file a motion requesting entry of the order. See § 1.637 (a) and (b).

§ 1.636 Motions, time for filing.

(a) A preliminary motion under § 1.633 (a) through (h) shall be filed within a time period set by an administrative patent judge.

(b) A preliminary motion under § 1.633 (i) or (j) shall be filed within 20 days of the service of the preliminary motion under § 1.633 (a), (b), (c)(1), or (g) unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge.

(c) A motion under § 1.634 shall be diligently filed after an error is discovered in the inventorship of an application or patent involved in an interference unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge.

(d) A motion under § 1.635 shall be filed as specified in this subpart or when appropriate unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge.

[60 FR 14524, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.637 Content of motions.

(a) A party filing a motion has the burden of proof to show that it is entitled to the relief sought in the motion. Each motion shall include a statement of the precise relief requested, a statement of the material facts in support of the motion, in numbered paragraphs, and a full statement of the reasons why the relief requested should be granted. If a party files a motion for judgment under § 1.633(a) against an opponent based on the ground of unpatentability over prior art, and the dates of the cited prior art are such that the prior art appears to be applicable to the party, it will be presumed, without regard to the dates alleged in the preliminary statement of the party, that the cited prior art is applicable to the party unless there is included with the motion an explanation, and evidence if appropriate, as to why the prior art does not apply to the party.

(b) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge or the Board, a motion under § 1.635 shall contain a certificate by the moving party stating that the moving party has conferred with all opponents in an effort in good faith to resolve by agreement the issues raised by the motion. The certificate shall indicate whether any opponent plans to oppose the motion. The provisions of this paragraph do not apply to a motion to suppress evidence (§ 1.656(h)).

(c) A preliminary motion under § 1.633(c) shall explain why the interfering subject matter should be redefined.

(1) A preliminary motion seeking to add or substitute a count shall:

(i) Propose each count to be added or substituted.

(ii) When the moving party is an applicant, show the patentability to the applicant of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the party's application which correspond to each proposed count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the party's application; when necessary a moving party applicant shall file with the motion an amendment adding any proposed claim to the application.

(iii) Identify all claims in an opponent's application which should be designated to correspond to each proposed count; if an opponent's application

does not contain such a claim, the moving party shall propose a claim to be added to the opponent's application. The moving party shall show the patentability of any proposed claims to the opponent and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the opponent's application.

(iv) Designate the claims of any patent involved in the interference which define the same patentable invention as each proposed count.

(v) Show that each proposed count defines a separate patentable invention from every other count proposed to remain in the interference.

(vi) Be accompanied by a motion under §1.633(f) requesting the benefit of the filing date of any earlier filed application, if benefit of the earlier filed application is desired with respect to a proposed count.

(vii) If an opponent is accorded the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application in the notice of declaration of the interference, show why the opponent is not also entitled to benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count. Otherwise, the opponent will be presumed to be entitled to the benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count.

(2) A preliminary motion seeking to amend an application claim corresponding to a count or adding a claim to be designated to correspond to a count shall:

(i) Propose an amended or added claim.

(ii) Show that the claim proposed to be amended or added defines the same patentable invention as the count.

(iii) Show the patentability to the applicant of each claim proposed to be amended or added and apply the terms of the claim proposed to be amended or added to the disclosure of the application; when necessary a moving party applicant shall file with the motion a proposed amendment to the application amending the claim corresponding to the count or adding the proposed additional claim to the application.

(3) A preliminary motion seeking to designate an application or patent claim to correspond to a count shall:

(i) Identify the claim and the count.

(ii) Show the claim defines the same patentable invention as another claim whose designation as corresponding to the count the moving party does not dispute.

(4) A preliminary motion seeking to designate an application or patent claim as not corresponding to a count shall:

(i) Identify the claim and the count.

(ii) Show that the claim does not defined the same patentable invention as any other claim whose designation in the notice declaring the interference as corresponding to the count the party does not dispute.

(5) A preliminary motion seeking to require an opponent who is an applicant to add a claim and designate the claim as corresponding to a count shall:

(i) Propose a claim to be added by the opponent.

(ii) Show the patentability to the opponent of the claim and apply the terms of the claim to the disclosure of the opponent's application.

(iii) Identify the count to which the claim shall be designated to correspond.

(iv) Show the claim defines the same patentable invention as the count to which it will be designated to correspond.

(d) A preliminary motion under §1.633(d) to substitute a different application of the moving party shall:

(1) Identify the different application.

(2) Certify that a complete copy of the file of the different application, except for documents filed under §1.131 or §1.608, has been served on all opponents.

(3) Show the patentability to the applicant of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the different application which correspond to each count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the different application; when necessary the applicant shall file with the motion an amendment adding a claim to the different application.

(e) A preliminary motion to declare an additional interference under §1.633(e) shall explain why an additional interference is necessary.

(1) When the preliminary motion seeks an additional interference under §1.633(e)(1), the motion shall:

(i) Identify the additional application.

(ii) Certify that a complete copy of the file of the additional application, except for documents filed under § 1.131 or § 1.608, has been served on all opponents.

(iii) Propose a count for the additional interference.

(iv) Show the patentability to the applicant of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the additional application which correspond to each proposed count for the additional interference and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the additional application; when necessary the applicant shall file with the motion an amendment adding any claim to the additional application.

(v) When the opponent is an applicant, show the patentability to the opponent of any claims in, or proposed to be added to, the opponent's application which correspond to the proposed count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the opponent's application.

(vi) Identify all claims in the opponent's application or patent which should be designated to correspond to each proposed count; if the opponent's application does not contain any such claim, the motion shall propose a claim to be added to the opponent's application.

(vii) Show that each proposed count for the additional interference defines a separate patentable invention from all counts of the interference in which the motion is filed.

(viii) Be accompanied by a motion under § 1.633(f) requesting the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application, if benefit is desired with respect to a proposed count.

(ix) If an opponent is accorded the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application in the notice of declaration of the interference, show why the opponent is not also entitled to benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count. Otherwise, the opponent will be presumed to be entitled to the benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count.

(2) When the preliminary motion seeks an additional interference under § 1.633(e)(2), the motion shall:

(i) Identify any application or patent to be involved in the additional interference.

(ii) Propose a count for the additional interference.

(iii) When the moving party is an applicant, show the patentability to the applicant of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the party's application which correspond to each proposed count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the party's application; when necessary a moving party applicant shall file with the motion an amendment adding any proposed claim to the application.

(iv) Identify all claims in any opponent's application which should be designated to correspond to each proposed count; if an opponent's application does not contain such a claim, the moving party shall propose a claim to be added to the opponent's application. The moving party shall show the patentability of any proposed claim to the opponent and apply the terms of the claim to the disclosure of the opponent's application.

(v) Designate the claims of any patent involved in the interference which define the same patentable invention as each proposed count.

(vi) Show that each proposed count for the additional interference defines a separate patentable invention from all counts in the interference in which the motion is filed.

(vii) Be accompanied by a motion under § 1.633(f) requesting the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application, if benefit is desired with respect to a proposed count.

(viii) If an opponent is accorded the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application in the notice of declaration of the interference, show why the opponent is not also entitled to benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count. Otherwise, the opponent will be presumed to be entitled to the benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count.

(f) A preliminary motion for benefit under § 1.633(f) shall:

(1) Identify the earlier application.

(2) When an earlier application is an application filed in the United States, certify that a complete copy of the file of the earlier application, except for documents filed under §1.131 or §1.608, has been served on all opponents. When the earlier application is an application filed in a foreign country, certify that a copy of the application has been served on all opponents. If the earlier filed application is not in English, the requirements of §1.647 must also be met.

(3) Show that the earlier application constitutes a constructive reduction to practice of each count.

(g) A preliminary motion to attack benefit under §1.633(g) shall explain, as to each count, why an opponent should not be accorded the benefit of the filing date of the earlier application.

(h) A preliminary motion to add an application for reissue under §1.633(h) shall:

(1) Identify the application for reissue.

(2) Certify that a complete copy of the file of the application for reissue has been served on all opponents.

(3) Show the patentability of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the application for reissue which correspond to each count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the application for reissue; when necessary a moving applicant for reissue shall file with the motion an amendment adding any proposed claim to the application for reissue.

(4) Be accompanied by a motion under §1.633(f) requesting the benefit of the filing date of any earlier filed application, if benefit is desired.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, as amended at 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988; 58 FR 49434, Sept. 23, 1993; 60 FR 14524, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.638 Opposition and reply; time for filing opposition and reply.

(a) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, any opposition to any motion shall be filed within 20 days after service of the motion. An opposition shall identify any material fact set forth in the motion which is in dispute and include an argument why the relief requested in the motion should be denied.

(b) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, any reply shall be filed within 15 days after service of the opposition. A reply shall be directed only to new points raised in the opposition.

[60 FR 14525, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.639 Evidence in support of motion, opposition, or reply.

(a) Except as provided in paragraphs (c) through (g) of this section, proof of any material fact alleged in a motion, opposition, or reply must be filed and served with the motion, opposition, or reply unless the proof relied upon is part of the interference file or the file of any patent or application involved in the interference or any earlier application filed in the United States of which a party has been accorded or seeks to be accorded benefit.

(b) Proof may be in the form of patents, printed publications, and affidavits. The pages of any affidavits filed under this paragraph shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential numbers, which shall also serve as the record page numbers for the affidavits in the event they are included in the party's record (§1.653). Any patents and printed publications submitted under this paragraph and any exhibits identified in affidavits submitted under this paragraph shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential exhibit numbers, which shall also serve as the exhibit numbers in the event the patents, printed publications and exhibits are filed with the party's record (§1.653).

(c) If a party believes that additional evidence in the form of testimony that is unavailable to the party is necessary to support or oppose a preliminary motion under §1.633 or a motion to correct inventorship under §1,634, the party shall describe the nature of any proposed testimony as specified in paragraphs (d) through (g) of this section. If the administrative patent judge finds that testimony is needed to decide the motion, the administrative patent judge may grant appropriate interlocutory relief and enter an order authorizing the taking of testimony and deferring a decision on the motion to final hearing.

(d) When additional evidence in the form of expert-witness testimony is

needed in support of or opposition to a preliminary motion, the moving party or opponent should:

(1) Identify the person whom it expects to use as an expert;

(2) State the field in which the person is alleged to be an expert; and

(3) State:

(i) The subject matter on which the person is expected to testify;

(ii) The facts and opinions to which the person is expected to testify; and

(iii) A summary of the grounds and basis for each opinion.

(e) When additional evidence in the form of fact-witness testimony is necessary, state the facts to which the witness is expected to testify.

(f) If the opponent is to be called, or if evidence in the possession of the opponent is necessary, explain the evidence sought, what it will show, and why it is needed.

(g) When inter partes tests are to be performed, describe the tests stating what they will be expected to show.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 58 FR 49434, Sept. 23, 1993; 60 FR 14525, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.640 Motions, hearing and decision, redeclaration of interference, order to show cause.

(a) A hearing on a motion may be held in the discretion of the administrative patent judge. The administrative patent judge shall set the date and time for any hearing. The length of oral argument at a hearing on a motion is a matter within the discretion of the administrative patent judge. An administrative patent judge may direct that a hearing take place by telephone.

(b) Unless an administrative patent judge or the Board is of the opinion that an earlier decision on a preliminary motion would materially advance the resolution of the interference, decision on a preliminary motion shall be deferred to final hearing. Motions not deferred to final hearing will be decided by an administrative patent judge. An administrative patent judge may consult with an examiner in deciding motions. An administrative patent judge may take up motions for decisions in any order, may grant, deny, or dismiss any motion, and may take such other action which will secure the just, speedy, and inexpensive determination of the interference. A matter raised by a party in support of or in opposition to a motion that is deferred to final hearing will not be entitled to consideration at final hearing unless the matter is raised in the party's brief at final hearing. If the administrative patent judge determines that the interference shall proceed to final hearing on the issue of priority or derivation, a time shall be set for each party to file a paper identifying any decisions on motions or on matters raised sua sponte by the administrative patent judge that the party wishes to have reviewed at final hearing as well as identifying any deferred motions that the party wishes to have considered at final hearing. Any evidence that a party wishes to have considered with respect to the decisions and deferred motions identified by the party or by an opponent for consideration or review at final hearing shall be filed or, if appropriate, noticed under § 1.671(e) during the testimony-in-chief period of the party.

(1) When appropriate after the time expires for filing replies to oppositions to preliminary motions, the administrative patent judge will set a time for filing any amendment to an application involved in the interference and for filing a supplemental preliminary statement as to any new counts which may become involved in the interference if a preliminary motion to amend or substitute a count has been filed. Failure or refusal of a party to timely present an amendment required by an administrative patent judge shall be taken without further action as a disclaimer by that party of the invention involved. A supplemental preliminary statement shall meet the requirements specified in § 1.623, 1.624, 1.625, or 1.626, but need not be filed if a party states that it intends to rely on a preliminary statement previously filed under § 1.621(a). At an appropriate time in the interference, and when necessary, an order will be entered redeclaring the interference.

(2) After the time expires for filing preliminary motions, a further preliminary motion under § 1.633 will not be considered except as provided by § 1.645(b).

(c) When a decision on any motion under §1.633, 1.634, or 1.635 or on any matter raised sua sponte by an administrative patent judge is entered which does not result in the issuance of an order to show cause under paragraph (d) of this section, a party may file a request for reconsideration within 14 days after the date of the decision. The request for reconsideration shall be filed and served by hand or Express Mail. The filing of a request for reconsideration will not stay any time period set by the decision. The request for reconsideration shall specify with particularity the points believed to have been misapprehended or overlooked in rendering the decision. No opposition to a request for reconsideration shall be filed unless requested by an administrative patent judge or the Board. A decision ordinarily will not be modified unless an opposition has been requested by an administrative patent judge or the Board. The request for reconsideration normally will be acted on by the administrative patent judge or the panel of the Board which issued the decision.

(d) An administrative patent judge may issue an order to show cause why judgment should not be entered against a party when:

(1) A decision on a motion or on a matter raised sua sponte by an administrative patent judge is entered which is dispositive of the interference against the party as to any count;

(2) The party is a junior party who fails to file a preliminary statement; or

(3) The party is a junior party whose preliminary statement fails to overcome the effective filing date of another party.

(e) When an order to show cause is issued under paragraph (d) of this section, the Board shall enter judgment in accordance with the order unless, within 20 days after the date of the order, the party against whom the order issued files a paper which shows good cause why judgment should not be entered in accordance with the order.

(1) If the order was issued under paragraph (d)(1) of this section, the paper may:

(i) Request that final hearing be set to review any decision which is the basis for the order as well as any other decision of the administrative patent judge that the party wishes to have reviewed by the Board at final hearing or

(ii) Fully explain why judgment should not be entered.

(2) Any opponent may file a response to the paper within 20 days of the date of service of the paper. If the order was issued under paragraph (d)(1) of this section and the party's paper includes a request for final hearing, the opponent's response must identify every decision of the administrative patent judge that the opponent wishes to have reviewed by the Board at a final hearing. If the order was issued under paragraph (d)(1) of this section and the paper does not include a request for final hearing, the opponent's response may include a request for final hearing, which must identify every decision of the administrative patent judge that the opponent wishes to have reviewed by the Board at a final hearing. Where only the opponent's response includes a request for a final hearing, the party filing the paper shall, within 14 days from the date of service of the opponent's response, file a reply identifying any other decision of the administrative patent judge that the party wishes to have reviewed by the Board at a final hearing.

(3) The paper or the response should be accompanied by a motion (§1.635) requesting a testimony period if either party wishes to introduce any evidence to be considered at final hearing (§1.671). Any evidence that a party wishes to have considered with respect to the decisions and deferred motions identified for consideration or review at final hearing shall be filed or, if appropriate, noticed under §1.671(e) during the testimony period of the party. A request for a testimony period shall be construed as including a request for final hearing.

(4) If the paper contains an explanation of why judgment should not be entered in accordance with the order, and if no party has requested a final hearing, the decision that is the basis for the order shall be reviewed based on the contents of the paper and the response. If the paper fails to show good cause, the Board shall enter judgment

against the party against whom the order issued.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, as amended at 60 FR 14525, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.641 Unpatentability discovered by administrative patent judge.

(a) During the pendency of an interference, if the administrative patent judge becomes aware of a reason why a claim designated to correspond to a count may not be patentable, the administrative patent judge may enter an order notifying the parties of the reason and set a time within which each party may present its views, including any argument and any supporting evidence, and, in the case of the party whose claim may be unpatentable, any appropriate preliminary motions under §§ 1.633 (c), (d) and (h).

(b) If a party timely files a preliminary motion in response to the order of the administrative patent judge, any opponent may file an opposition (§ 1.638(a)). If an opponent files an opposition, the party may reply (§ 1.638(b)).

(c) After considering any timely filed views, including any timely filed preliminary motions under § 1.633, oppositions and replies, the administrative patent judge shall decide how the interference shall proceed.

[60 FR 14526, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.642 Addition of application or patent to interference.

During the pendency of an interference, if the administrative patent judge becomes aware of an application or a patent not involved in the interference which claims the same patentable invention as a count in the interference, the administrative patent judge may add the application or patent to the interference on such terms as may be fair to all parties.

[60 FR 14526, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.643 Prosecution of interference by assignee.

(a) An assignee of record in the Patent and Trademark Office of the entire interest in an application or patent involved in an interference is entitled to conduct prosecution of the interference to the exclusion of the inventor.

(b) An assignee of a part interest in an application or patent involved in an interference may file a motion (§ 1.635) for entry of an order authorizing it to prosecute the interference. The motion shall show the inability or refusal of the inventor to prosecute the interference or other cause why it is in the interest of justice to permit the assignee of a part interest to prosecute the interference. The administrative patent judge may allow the assignee of a part interest to prosecute the interference upon such terms as may be appropriate.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14527, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.644 Petitions in interferences.

(a) There is no appeal to the Commissioner in an interference from a decision of an administrative patent judge or the Board. The Commissioner will not consider a petition in an interference unless:

(1) The petition is from a decision of an administrative patent judge or the Board and the administrative patent judge or the Board shall be of the opinion that the decision involves a controlling question of procedure or an interpretation of a rule as to which there is a substantial ground for a difference of opinion and that an immediate decision on petition by the Commissioner may materially advance the ultimate termination of the interference;

(2) The petition seeks to invoke the supervisory authority of the Commissioner and does not relate to the merits of priority of invention or patentability or the admissibility of evidence under the Federal Rules of Evidence; or

(3) The petition seeks relief under § 1.183.

(b) A petition under paragraph (a)(1) of this section filed more than 15 days after the date of the decision of the administrative patent judge or the Board may be dismissed as untimely. A petition under paragraph (a)(2) of this section shall not be filed prior to the party's brief for final hearing (see § 1.656). Any petition under paragraph (a)(3) of this section shall be timely if it is filed simultaneously with a proper motion under § 1.633, 1.634, or 1.635 when granting the motion would require waiver of a rule. Any opposition to a petition

under paragraph (a)(1) or (a)(2) of this section shall be filed within 20 days of the date of service of the petition. Any opposition to a petition under paragraph (a)(3) of this section shall be filed within 20 days of the date of service of the petition or the date an opposition to the motion is due, whichever is earlier.

(c) The filing of a petition shall not stay the proceeding unless a stay is granted in the discretion of the administrative patent judge, the Board, or the Commissioner.

(d) Any petition must contain a statement of the facts involved, in numbered paragraphs, and the point or points to be reviewed and the action requested. The petition will be decided on the basis of the record made before the administrative patent judge or the Board, and no new evidence will be considered by the Commissioner in deciding the petition. Copies of documents already of record in the interference shall not be submitted with the petition or opposition.

(e) Any petition under paragraph (a) of this section shall be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in §1.17(h).

(f) Any request for reconsideration of a decision by the Commissioner shall be filed within 14 days of the decision of the Commissioner and must be accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.17(h). No opposition to a request for reconsideration shall be filed unless requested by the Commissioner. The decision will not ordinarily be modified unless such an opposition has been requested by the Commissioner.

(g) Where reasonably possible, service of any petition, opposition, or request for reconsideration shall be such that delivery is accomplished within one working day. Service by hand or Express Mail complies with this paragraph.

(h) An oral hearing on the petition will not be granted except when considered necessary by the Commissioner.

(i) The Commissioner may delegate to appropriate Patent and Trademark Office employees the determination of petitions under this section.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, as amended at 60 FR 14527, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.645 Extension of time, late papers, stay of proceedings.

(a) Except to extend the time for filing a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or for commencing a civil action, a party may file a motion (§1.635) seeking an extension of time to take action in an interference. See §1.304(a) for extensions of time for filing a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or for commencing a civil action. The motion shall be filed within sufficient time to actually reach the administrative patent judge before expiration of the time for taking action. A moving party should not assume that the motion will be granted even if there is no objection by any other party. The motion will be denied unless the moving party shows good cause why an extension should be granted. The press of other business arising after an administrative patent judge sets a time for taking action will not normally constitute good cause. A motion seeking additional time to take testimony because a party has not been able to procure the testimony of a witness shall set forth the name of the witness, any steps taken to procure the testimony of the witness, the dates on which the steps were taken, and the facts expected to be proved through the witness.

(b) Any paper belatedly filed will not be considered except upon notion (§1.635) which shows good cause why the paper was not timely filed, or where an administrative patent judge or the Board, sua sponte, is of the opinion that it would be in the interest of justice to consider the paper. See §1.304(a) for exclusive procedures relating to belated filing of a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or belated commencement of a civil action.

(c) The provisions of §1.136 do not apply to time periods in interferences.

(d) An administrative patent judge may stay proceedings in an interference.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 54 FR 29553, July 13, 1989; 60 FR 14527, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.646 Service of papers, proof of service.

(a) A copy of every paper filed in the Patent and Trademark Office in an interference or an application or patent involved in the interference shall be served upon all other parties except:

(1) Preliminary statements when filed under § 1.621; preliminary statements shall be served when service is ordered by an administrative patent judge.

(2) Certified transcripts and exhibits which accompany the transcripts filed under § 1.676; copies of transcripts shall be served as part of a party's record under § 1.653(c).

(b) Service shall be on an attorney or agent for a party. If there is no attorney or agent for the party, service shall be on the party. An administrative patent judge may order additional service or waive service where appropriate.

(c) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, or except as otherwise provided by this subpart, service of a paper shall be made as follows:

(1) By handing a copy of the paper or causing a copy of the paper to be handed to the person served.

(2) By leaving a copy of the paper with someone employed by the person at the person's usual place of business.

(3) When the person served has no usual place of business, by leaving a copy of the paper at the person's residence with someone of suitable age and discretion then residing therein.

(4) By mailing a copy of the paper by first class mail; when service is by first class mail the date of mailing is regarded as the date of service.

(5) By mailing a copy of the paper by Express Mail; when service is by Express Mail the date of deposit with the U.S. Postal Service is regarded as the date of service.

(6) When it is shown to the satisfaction of an administrative patent judge that none of the above methods of obtaining or serving the copy of the paper was successful, the administrative patent judge may order service by publication of an appropriate notice in the *Official Gazette.*

(d) An administrative patent judge may order that a paper be served by hand or Express Mail.

(e) The due date for serving a paper is the same as the due date for filing the paper in the Patent and Trademark Office. Proof of service must be made before a paper will be considered in an interference. Proof of service may appear on or be affixed to the paper. Proof of service shall include the date and manner of service. In the case of personal service under paragraphs (c)(1) through (c)(3) of this section, proof of service shall include the names of any person served and the person who made the service. Proof of service may be made by an acknowledgment of service by or on behalf of the person served or a statement signed by the party or the party's attorney or agent containing the information required by this section. A statement of an attorney or agent attached to, or appearing in, the paper stating the date and manner of service will be accepted as *prima facie* proof of service.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, as amended at 60 FR 14527, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.647 Translation of document in foreign language.

When a party relies on a document or is required to produce a document in a language other than English, a translation of the document into English and an affidavit attesting to the accuracy of the translation shall be filed with the document.

[60 FR 14528, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.651 Setting times for discovery and taking testimony, parties entitled to take testimony.

(a) At an appropriate stage in an interference, an administrative patent judge shall set a time for filing motions (§ 1.635) for additional discovery under § 1.687(c) and testimony periods for taking any necessary testimony.

(b) Where appropriate, testimony periods will be set to permit a party to:

(1) Present its case-in-chief and/or case-in-rebuttal and/or

(2) Cross-examine an opponent's case-in-chief and/or a case-in-rebuttal.

(c) A party is not entitled to take testimony to present a case-in-chief unless:

(1) The administrative patent judge orders the taking of testimony under §1.639(c);

(2) The party alleges in its preliminary statement a date of invention prior to the effective filing date of the senior party;

(3) A testimony period has been set to permit an opponent to prove a date of invention prior to the effective filing date of the party and the party has filed a preliminary statement alleging a date of invention prior to that date; or

(4) A motion (§1.635) is filed showing good cause why a testimony period should be set.

(d) Testimony, including any testimony to be taken in a place outside the United States, shall be taken and completed during the testimony periods set under paragraph (a) of this section. A party seeking to extend the period for taking testimony must comply with §§1.635 and 1.645(a).

[56 FR 42529, Aug. 28, 1991; 56 FR 46823, Sept. 16, 1991, as amended at 60 FR 14528, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.652 Judgment for failure to take testimony or file record.

If a junior party fails to timely take testimony authorized under §1.651, or file a record under §1.653(c), an administrative patent judge, with or without a motion (§1.635) by another party, may issue an order to show cause why judgment should not be entered against the junior party. When an order is issued under this section, the Board shall enter judgment in accordance with the order unless, within 15 days after the date of the order, the junior party files a paper which shows good cause why judgment should not be entered in accordance with the order. Any other party may file a response to the paper within 15 days of the date of service of the paper. If the party against whom the order was issued fails to show good cause, the Board shall enter judgment against the party.

[60 FR 14528, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.653 Record and exhibits.

(a) Testimony shall consist of affidavits under §§1.672 (b), (c) and (g), 1.682(c), 1.683(b) and 1.688(b), transcripts of depositions under §§1.671(g) and 1.672(a) when a deposition is authorized by an administrative patent judge, transcripts of depositions under §§1.672(d), 1.682(d), 1.683(c) and 1.688(c), agreed statements under §1.672(h), transcripts of interrogatories, cross-interrogatories, and recorded answers and copies of written interrogatories and answers and written requests for admissions and answers under §1.688(a).

(b) An affidavit shall be filed as set forth in §1.677. A certified transcript of a deposition, including a deposition cross-examining an affiant, shall be filed as set forth in §§1.676, 1.677 and 1.678. An original agreed statement shall be filed as set forth in §1.672(h).

(c) In addition to the items specified in paragraph (b) of this section and within a time set by an administrative patent judge, each party shall file three copies and serve one copy of a record consisting of:

(1) An index of the names of the witnesses for the party, giving the pages of the record where the direct testimony and cross-examination of each witness begins.

(2) An index of exhibits briefly describing the nature of each exhibit and giving the page of the record where each exhibit is first identified and offered into evidence.

(3) The count or counts.

(4) Each affidavit by a witness for the party, transcript, including transcripts of cross-examination of any affiant who testified for the party and transcripts of compelled deposition testimony by a witness for the party, agreed statement relied upon by the party, and transcript of interrogatories, cross-interrogatories and recorded answers.

(5) [Reserved]

(6) Any evidence from another interference, proceeding, or action relied upon by the party under §1.683.

(7) Each request for an admission and the admission and each written interrogatory and the answer upon which a party intends to rely under §1.688.

(d) The pages of the record shall be consecutively numbered to the extent possible.

(e) The name of each witness shall appear at the top of each page of each affidavit or transcript.

(f) [Reserved]

(g) The record may be produced by standard typographical printing or by any other process capable of producing a clear black permanent image. All printed matter except on covers must appear in at least 11 point type on opaque, unglazed paper. Footnotes may not be printed in type smaller than 9 point. The page size shall be 21.8 by 27.9 cm. (8½ by 11 inches) (letter size) with printed matter 16.5 by 24.1 cm. (6½ by 9½ inches). The record shall be bound with covers at their left edges in such manner as to lie flat when open to any page and in one or more volumes of convenient size (approximately 100 pages per volume is suggested). When there is more than one volume, the numbers of the pages contained in each volume shall appear at the top of the cover for each volume.

(h) [Reserved]

(i) Each party shall file its exhibits with the record specified in paragraph (c) of this section. Exhibits include documents and things identified in affidavits or on the record during the taking of oral depositions as well as official records and publications filed by the party under § 1.682(a). One copy of each documentary exhibit shall be served. Documentary exhibits shall be filed in an envelope or folder and shall not be bound as part of the record. Physical exhibits, if not filed by an officer under § 1.676(d), shall be filed with the record. Each exhibit shall contain a label which identifies the party submitting the exhibit and an exhibit number, the style of the interference (e.g., Jones v. Smith), and the interference number. Where possible, the label should appear at the bottom right-hand corner of each documentary exhibit. Upon termination of an interference, an administrative patent judge may return an exhibit to the party filing the exhibit. When any exhibit is returned, an order shall be entered indicating that the exhibit has been returned.

(j) Any testimony, record, or exhibit which does not comply with this section may be returned under § 1.618(a).

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, as amended at 60 FR 14528, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.654 Final hearing.

(a) At an appropriate stage of the interference, the parties will be given an opportunity to appear before the Board to present oral argument at a final hearing. An administrative patent judge may set a date and time for final hearing. Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge or the Board, each party will be entitled to no more than 30 minutes of oral argument at final hearing. A party who does not file a brief for final hearing (§ 1.656(a)) shall not be entitled to appear at final hearing.

(b) The opening argument of a junior party shall include a fair statement of the junior party's case and the junior party's position with respect to the case presented on behalf of any other party. A junior party may reserve a portion of its time for rebuttal.

(c) A party shall not be entitled to argue that an opponent abandoned, suppressed, or concealed an actual reduction to practice unless a notice under §1.632 was timely filed.

(d) After final hearing, the interference shall be taken under advisement by the Board. No further paper shall be filed except under § 1.658(b) or as authorized by an administrative patent judge or the Board. No additional oral argument shall be had unless ordered by the Board.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14529, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.655 Matters considered in rendering a final decision.

(a) In rendering a final decision, the Board may consider any properly raised issue, including priority of invention, derivation by an opponent from a party who filed a preliminary statement under § 1.625, patentability of the invention, admissibility of evidence, any interlocutory matter deferred to final hearing, and any other matter necessary to resolve the interference. The Board may also consider whether entry of any interlocutory

order was an abuse of discretion. All interlocutory orders shall be presumed to have been correct, and the burden of showing an abuse of discretion shall be on the party attacking the order. When two or more interlocutory orders involve the same issue, the last entered order shall be presumed to have been correct.

(b) A party shall not be entitled to raise for consideration at final hearing any matter which properly could have been raised by a motion under §1.633 or 1.634 unless the matter was properly raised in a motion that was timely filed by the party under §1.633 or 1.634 and the motion was denied or deferred to final hearing, the matter was properly raised by the party in a timely filed opposition to a motion under §1.633 or 1.634 and the motion was granted over the opposition or deferred to final hearing, or the party shows good cause why the issue was not properly raised by a timely filed motion or opposition. A party that fails to contest, by way of a timely filed preliminary motion under §1.633(c), the designation of a claim as corresponding to a count, or fails to timely argue the separate patentability of a particular claim when the ground for unpatentability is first raised, may not subsequently argue to an administrative patent judge or the Board the separate patentability of claims designated to correspond to the count with respect to that ground.

(c) In the interest of justice, the Board may exercise its discretion to consider an issue even though it would not otherwise be entitled to consideration under this section.

[60 FR 14529, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.656 Briefs for final hearing.

(a) Each party shall be entitled to file briefs for final hearing. The administrative patent judge shall determine the briefs needed and shall set the time and order for filing briefs.

(b) The opening brief of a junior party shall contain under appropriate headings and in the order indicated:

(1) A statement of interest indicating the full name of every party represented by the attorney in the interference and the name of the real party in interest if the party named in the caption is not the real party in interest.

(2) A statement of related cases indicating whether the interference was previously before the Board for final hearing and the name and number of any related appeal or interference which is pending before, or which has been decided by, the Board, or which is pending before, or which has been decided by, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or a district court in a proceeding under 35 U.S.C. 146. A related appeal or interference is one which will directly affect or be directly affected by or have a bearing on the Board's decision in the pending interference.

(3) A table of contents, with page references, and a table of cases (alphabetically arranged), statutes, and other authorities cited, with references to the pages of the brief where they are cited.

(4) A statement of the issues presented for decision in the interference.

(5) A statement of the facts, in numbered paragraphs, relevant to the issues presented for decision with appropriate references to the record.

(6) An argument, which may be preceded by a summary, which shall contain the contentions of the party with respect to the issues it is raising for consideration at final hearing, and the reasons therefor, with citations to the cases, statutes, other authorities, and parts of the record relied on.

(7) A short conclusion stating the precise relief requested.

(8) An appendix containing a copy of the counts.

(c) The opening brief of the senior party shall conform to the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section except:

(1) A statement of the issues and of the facts need not be made unless the party is dissatisfied with the statement in the opening brief of the junior party and

(2) An appendix containing a copy of the counts need not be included if the copy of the counts in the opening brief of the junior party is correct.

(d) Unless ordered otherwise by an administrative patent judge, briefs shall be double-spaced (except for footnotes, which may be single-spaced) and shall comply with the requirements of

§ 1.653(g) for records except the requirement for binding.

(e) An original and four copies of each brief must be filed.

(f) Any brief which does not comply with the requirements of this section may be returned under § 1.618(a).

(g) Any party, separate from its opening brief, but filed concurrently therewith, may file an original and four copies of concise proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law. Any proposed findings of fact shall be in numbered paragraphs and shall be supported by specific references to the record. Any proposed conclusions of law shall be in numbered paragraphs and shall be supported by citation of cases, statutes, or other authority. Any opponent, separate from its opening or reply brief, but filed concurrently therewith, may file a paper accepting or objecting to any proposed findings of fact or conclusions of law; when objecting, a reason must be given. The Board may adopt the proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law in whole or in part.

(h) If a party wants the Board in rendering its final decision to rule on the admissibility of any evidence, the party shall file with its opening brief an original and four copies of a motion (§ 1.635) to suppress the evidence. The provisions of § 1.637(b) do not apply to a motion to suppress under this paragraph. Any objection previously made to the admissibility of the evidence of an opponent is waived unless the motion required by this paragraph is filed. A party that failed to challenge the admissibility of the evidence of an opponent on a ground that could have been raised in a timely objection under § 1.672(c), 1.682(c), 1.683(b) or 1.688(b) may not move under this paragraph to suppress the evidence on that ground at final hearing. An original and four copies of an opposition to the motion may be filed with an opponent's opening brief or reply brief as may be appropriate.

(i) When a junior party fails to timely file an opening brief, an order may issue requiring the junior party to show cause why the Board should not treat failure to file the brief as a concession of priority. If the junior party fails to show good cause within a time period set in the order, judgment may be entered against the junior party.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14529, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.657 Burden of proof as to date of invention.

(a) A rebuttable presumption shall exist that, as to each count, the inventors made their invention in the chronological order of their effective filing dates. The burden of proof shall be upon a party who contends otherwise.

(b) In an interference involving copending applications or involving a patent and an application having an effective filing date on or before the date the patent issued, a junior party shall have the burden of establishing priority by a preponderance of the evidence.

(c) In an interference involving an application and a patent and where the effective filing date of the application is after the date the patent issued, a junior party shall have the burden of establishing priority by clear and convincing evidence.

[60 FR 14530, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.658 Final decision.

(a) After final hearing, the Board shall enter a decision resolving the issues raised at final hearing. The decision may enter judgment, in whole or in part, remand the interference to an administrative patent judge for further proceedings, or take further action not inconsistent with law. A judgment as to a count shall state whether or not each party is entitled to a patent containing the claims in the party's patent or application which correspond to the count. When the Board enters a decision awarding judgment as to all counts, the decision shall be regarded as a final decision for the purpose of judicial review (35 U.S.C. 141–144, 146) unless a request for reconsideration under paragraph (b) of this section is timely filed.

(b) Any request for reconsideration of a decision under paragraph (a) of this section shall be filed within one month after the date of the decision. The request for reconsideration shall specify with particularity the points believed to have been misapprehended or overlooked in rendering the decision. Any

opposition to a request for reconsideration shall be filed within 14 days of the date of service of the request for reconsideration. Service of the request for reconsideration shall be by hand or Express Mail. The Board shall enter a decision on the request for reconsideration. If the Board shall be of the opinion that the decision on the request for reconsideration significantly modifies its original decision under paragraph (a) of this section, the Board may designate the decision on the request for reconsideration as a new decision. A decision on reconsideration is a final decision for the purpose of judicial review (35 U.S.C. 141–144, 146).

(c) A judgment in an interference settles all issues which (1) were raised and decided in the interference, (2) could have been properly raised and decided in the interference by a motion under §1.633 (a) through (d) and (f) through (j) or §1.634, and (3) could have been properly raised and decided in an additional interference with a motion under §1.633(e). A losing party who could have properly moved, but failed to move, under §1.633 or 1.634, shall be estopped to take *ex parte* or *inter partes* action in the Patent and Trademark Office after the interference which is inconsistent with that party's failure to properly move, except that a losing party shall not be estopped with respect to any claims which correspond, or properly could have corresponded, to a count as to which that party was awarded a favorable judgment.

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981, as amended at 54 FR 29553, July 13, 1989; 60 FR 14530, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.659 Recommendation.

(a) Should the Board have knowledge of any ground for rejecting any application claim not involved in the judgment of the interference, it may include in its decision a recommended rejection of the claim. Upon resumption of *ex parte* prosecution of the application, the examiner shall be bound by the recommendation and shall enter and maintain the recommended rejection unless an amendment or showing of facts not previously of record is filed which, in the opinion of the examiner, overcomes the recommended rejection.

(b) Should the Board have knowledge of any ground for reexamination of a patent involved in the interference as to a patent claim not involved in the judgment of the interference, it may include in its decision a recommendation to the Commissioner that the patent be reexamined. The Commissioner will determine whether reexamination will be ordered.

(c) The Board may make any other recommendation to the examiner or the Commissioner as may be appropriate.

§1.660 Notice of reexamination, reissue, protest, or litigation.

(a) When a request for reexamination of a patent involved in an interference is filed, the patent owner shall notify the Board within 10 days of receiving notice that the request was filed.

(b) When an application for reissue is filed by a patentee involved in an interference, the patentee shall notify the Board within 10 days of the day the application for reissue is filed.

(c) When a protest under §1.291 is filed against an application involved in an interference, the applicant shall notify the Board within 10 days of receiving notice that the protest was filed.

(d) A party in an interference shall notify the Board promptly of any litigation related to any patent or application involved in an interference, including any civil action commenced under 35 U.S.C. 146.

(e) The notice required by this section is designed to assist the administrative patent judge and the Board in efficiently handling interference cases. Failure of a party to comply with the provisions of this section may result in sanctions under §1.616. Knowledge by, or notice to, an employee of the Office other than an employee of the Board, of the existence of the reexamination, application for reissue, protest, or litigation shall not be sufficient. The notice contemplated by this section is notice addressed to the administrative patent judge in charge of the interference in which the application or patent is involved.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14530, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.661 Termination of interference after judgment.

After a final decision is entered by the Board, an interference is considered terminated when no appeal (35 U.S.C. 141) or other review (35 U.S.C. 146) has been or can be taken or had.

§ 1.662 Request for entry of adverse judgment; reissue filed by patentee.

(a) A party may, at any time during an interference, request and agree to entry of an adverse judgment. The filing by a party of a written disclaimer of the invention defined by a count, concession of priority or unpatentability of the subject matter of a count, abandonment of the invention defined by a count, or abandonment of the contest as to a count will be treated as a request for entry of an adverse judgment against the applicant or patentee as to all claims which correspond to the count. Abandonment of an application, other than an application for reissue having a claim of the patent sought to be reissued involved in the interference, will be treated as a request for entry of an adverse judgment against the applicant as to all claims corresponding to all counts. Upon the filing by a party of a request for entry of an adverse judgment, the Board may enter judgment against the party.

(b) If a patentee involved in an interference files an application for reissue during the interference and the reissue application does not include a claim that corresponds to a count, judgment may be entered against the patentee. A patentee who files an application for reissue which includes a claim that corresponds to a count shall, in addition to complying with the provisions of § 1.660(b), timely file a preliminary motion under § 1.633(h) or show good cause why the motion could not have been timely filed or would not be appropriate.

(c) The filing of a statutory disclaimer under 35 U.S.C. 253 by a patentee will delete any statutorily disclaimed claims from being involved in the interference. A statutory disclaimer will not be treated as a request for entry of an adverse judgment against the patentee unless it results in the deletion of all patent claims corresponding to a count.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988; 60 FR 14530, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.663 Status of claim of defeated applicant after interference.

Whenever an adverse judgment is entered as to a count against an applicant from which no appeal (35 U.S.C. 141) or other review (35 U.S.C. 146) has been or can be taken or had, the claims of the application corresponding to the count stand finally disposed of without further action by the examiner. Such claims are not open to further *ex parte* prosecution.

§ 1.664 Action after interference.

(a) After termination of an interference, the examiner will promptly take such action in any application previously involved in the interference as may be necessary. Unless entered by order of an administrative patent judge, amendments presented during the interference shall not be entered, but may be subsequently presented by the applicant subject to the provisions of this subpart provided prosecution of the application is not otherwise closed.

(b) After judgment, the application of any party may be held subject to further examination, including an interference with another application.

[60 FR 14530, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.665 Second interference.

A second interference between the same parties will not be declared upon an application not involved in an earlier interference for an invention defined by a count of the earlier interference. See § 1.658(c).

§ 1.666 Filing of interference settlement agreements.

(a) Any agreement or understanding between parties to an interference, including any collateral agreements referred to therein, made in connection with or in contemplation of the termination of the interference, must be in writing and a true copy thereof must be filed before the termination of the interference (§ 1.661) as between the

parties to the agreement or understanding.

(b) If any party filing the agreement or understanding under paragraph (a) of this section so requests, the copy will be kept separate from the file of the interference, and made available only to Government agencies on written request, or to any person upon petition accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.17(i) and on a showing of good cause.

(c) Failure to file the copy of the agreement or understanding under paragraph (a) of this section will render permanently unenforceable such agreement or understanding and any patent of the parties involved in the interference or any patent subsequently issued on any application of the parties so involved. The Commissioner may, however, upon petition accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.17(h) and on a showing of good cause for failure to file within the time prescribed, permit the filing of the agreement or understanding during the six month period subsequent to the termination of the interference as between the parties to the agreement or understanding.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, as amended at 54 FR 6904, Feb. 15, 1989; 60 FR 20228, Apr. 25, 1995]

§1.671 Evidence must comply with rules.

(a) Evidence consists of testimony and referenced exhibits, official records and publications filed under §1.682, testimony and referenced exhibits from another interference, proceeding, or action filed under §1.683, discovery relied upon under §1.688, and the specification (including claims) and drawings of any application or patent:

(1) Involved in the interference.

(2) To which a party has been accorded benefit in the notice declaring the interference or by a preliminary motion granted under §1.633.

(3) For which a party has sought, but has been denied, benefit by a preliminary motion under §1.633.

(4) For which benefit was rescinded by a preliminary motion granted under §1.633.

(b) Except as otherwise provided in this subpart, the Federal Rules of Evidence shall apply to interference proceedings. Those portions of the Federal Rules of Evidence relating to criminal actions, juries, and other matters not relevant to interferences shall not apply.

(c) Unless the context is otherwise clear, the following terms of the Federal Rules of Evidence shall be construed as follows:

(1) *Courts of the United States, U.S. Magistrate, court, trial court,* or *trier of fact* means administrative patent judge or Board as may be appropriate.

(2) *Judge* means administrative patent judge.

(3) *Judicial notice* means official notice.

(4) *Civil action, civil proceeding, action,* or *trial,* mean interference.

(5) *Appellate court* means United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or a United States district court when judicial review is under 35 U.S.C. 146.

(6) *Before the hearing* in Rule 703 of the Federal Rules of Evidence means before giving testimony by affidavit or oral deposition.

(7) *The trial or hearing* in Rules 803(24) and 804(5) of the Federal Rules of Evidence means the taking of testimony by affidavit or oral deposition.

(d) Certification is not necessary as a condition to admissibility when the record is a record of the Patent and Trademark Office to which all parties have access.

(e) A party may not rely on an affidavit (including any exhibits), patent or printed publication previously submitted by the party under §1.639(b) unless a copy of the affidavit, patent or printed publication has been served and a written notice is filed prior to the close of the party's relevant testimony period stating that the party intends to rely on the affidavit, patent or printed publication. When proper notice is given under this paragraph, the affidavit, patent or printed publication shall be deemed as filed under §1.640(b), 1.640(e)(3), 1.672(b) or 1.682(a), as appropriate.

(f) The significance of documentary and other exhibits identified by a witness in an affidavit or during oral deposition shall be discussed with particularity by a witness.

(g) A party must file a motion (§ 1.635) seeking permission from an administrative patent judge prior to compelling testimony or production of documents or things under 35 U.S.C. 24 or from an opposing party. The motion shall describe the general nature and the relevance of the testimony, document, or thing. If permission is granted, the party shall notice a deposition under § 1.673 and may proceed to take testimony.

(h) A party must file a motion (§ 1.635) seeking permission from an administrative patent judge prior to compelling testimony or production of documents or things in a foreign country.

(1) In the case of testimony, the motion shall:

(i) Describe the general nature and relevance of the testimony;

(ii) Identify the witness by name or title;

(iii) Identify the foreign country and explain why the party believes the witness can be compelled to testify in the foreign country, including a description of the procedures that will be used to compel the testimony in the foreign country and an estimate of the time it is expected to take to obtain the testimony; and

(iv) Demonstrate that the party has made reasonable efforts to secure the agreement of the witness to testify in the United States but has been unsuccessful in obtaining the agreement, even though the party has offered to pay the expenses of the witness to travel to and testify in the United States.

(2) In the case of production of a document or thing, the motion shall:

(i) Describe the general nature and relevance of the document or thing;

(ii) Identify the foreign country and explain why the party believes production of the document or thing can be compelled in the foreign country, including a description of the procedures that will be used to compel production of the document or thing in the foreign country and an estimate of the time it is expected to take to obtain production of the document or thing; and

(iii) Demonstrate that the party has made reasonable efforts to obtain the agreement of the individual or entity having possession, custody, or control of the document to produce the document or thing in the United States but has been unsuccessful in obtaining that agreement, even though the party has offered to pay the expenses of producing the document or thing in the United States.

(i) Evidence which is not taken or sought and filed in accordance with this subpart shall not be admissible.

(j) The weight to be given deposition testimony taken in a foreign country will be determined in view of all the circumstances, including the laws of the foreign country governing the testimony. Little, if any, weight may be given to deposition testimony taken in a foreign country unless the party taking the testimony proves by clear and convincing evidence, as a matter of fact, that knowingly giving false testimony in that country in connection with an interference proceeding in the United States Patent and Trademark Office is punishable under the laws of that country and that the punishment in that country for such false testimony is comparable to or greater than the punishment for perjury committed in the United States. The administrative patent judge and the Board, in determining foreign law, may consider any relevant material or source, including testimony, whether or not submitted by a party or admissible under the Federal Rules of Evidence.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, as amended at 60 FR 14530, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.672 Manner of taking testimony.

(a) Unless testimony must be compelled under 35 U.S.C. 24, compelled from a party, or compelled in a foreign country, testimony of a witness shall be taken by affidavit in accordance with this subpart. Testimony which must be compelled under 35 U.S.C. 24, compelled from a party, or compelled in a foreign country shall be taken by oral deposition.

(b) A party presenting testimony of a witness by affidavit shall, within the time set by the administrative patent judge for serving affidavits, file a copy of the affidavit or, if appropriate, notice under § 1.671(e). If the affidavit relates to a party's case-in-chief, it shall be filed or noticed no later than the date set by an administrative patent

judge for the party to file affidavits for its case-in-chief. If the affidavit relates to a party's case-in-rebuttal, it shall be filed or noticed no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file affidavits for its case-in-rebuttal. A party shall not be entitled to rely on any document referred to in the affidavit unless a copy of the document is filed with the affidavit. A party shall not be entitled to rely on any thing mentioned in the affidavit unless the opponent is given reasonable access to the thing. A thing is something other than a document. The pages of affidavits filed under this paragraph and of any other testimony filed therewith under §§ 1.683(a) and 1.688(a) shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential numbers which shall also serve as the record page numbers for the affidavits and other testimony in the party's record to be filed under § 1.653. Exhibits identified in the affidavits or in any other testimony filed under §§ 1.683(a) and 1.688(a) and any official records and printed publications filed under § 1.682(a) shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential exhibit numbers, which shall also serve as the exhibit numbers when the exhibits are filed with the party's record. The affidavits, testimony filed under §§ 1.683(a) and 1.688(a) and exhibits shall be accompanied by an index of the names of the witnesses, giving the number of the page where the testimony of each witness begins, and by an index of the exhibits briefly describing the nature of each exhibit and giving the number of the page where each exhibit is first identified and offered into evidence.

(c) If an opponent objects to the admissibility of any evidence contained in or submitted with an affidavit filed under paragraph (b) of this section, the opponent must, no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for filing objections under this paragraph, file objections stating with particularity the nature of each objection. An opponent that fails to object to the admissibility of the evidence contained in or submitted with an affidavit on a ground that could have been raised in a timely objection under this paragraph will not be entitled to move under § 1.656(h) to suppress the evidence on that ground. If an opponent timely files objections, the party may, within 20 days of the due date for filing objections, file one or more supplemental affidavits, official records or printed publications to overcome the objections. No objection to the admissibility of the supplemental evidence shall be made, except as provided by § 1.656(h). The pages of supplemental affidavits filed under this paragraph shall, to the extent possible, be sequentially numbered beginning with the number following the last page number of the party's testimony submitted under paragraph (b) of this section. The page numbers assigned to the supplemental affidavits shall also serve as the record page numbers for the supplemental affidavits in the party's record filed under § 1.653. Additional exhibits identified in supplemental affidavits and any supplemental official records and printed publications shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential numbers beginning with the number following the last number of the exhibits submitted under paragraph (b) of this section. The exhibit numbers shall also serve as the exhibit numbers when the exhibits are filed with the party's record. The supplemental affidavits shall be accompanied by an index of the names of the witnesses and an index of exhibits of the type specified in paragraph (b) of this section.

(d) After the time expires for filing objections and supplemental affidavits, or earlier when appropriate, the administrative patent judge shall set a time within which any opponent may file a request to cross-examine an affiant on oral deposition. If any opponents requests cross-examination of an affiant, the party shall notice a deposition at a reasonable location within the United States under § 1.673(e) for the purpose of cross-examination by any opponent. Any redirect and recross shall take place at the deposition. At any deposition for the purpose of cross-examination of a witness, the party shall not be entitled to rely on any document or thing not mentioned in one or more of the affidavits filed under paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, except to the extent necessary to conduct proper redirect. The party who gives notice of a deposition shall be responsible for providing a translator if the witness does

not testify in English, for obtaining a court reporter, and for filing a certified transcript of the deposition as required by § 1.676. Within 45 days of the close of the period for taking cross-examination, the party shall serve (but not file) a copy of each transcript on each opponent together with copies of any additional documentary exhibits identified by the witness during the deposition. The pages of the transcripts served under this paragraph shall, to the extent possible, be sequentially numbered beginning with the number following the last page number of the party's supplemental affidavits submitted under paragraph (c) of this section. The numbers assigned to the transcript pages shall also serve as the record page numbers for the transcripts in the party's record filed under § 1.653. Additional exhibits identified in the transcripts, shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential numbers beginning with the number following the last number of the exhibits submitted under paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section. The exhibit numbers assigned to the additional exhibits shall also serve as the exhibit numbers when those exhibits are filed with the party's record. The deposition transcripts shall be accompanied by an index of the names of the witnesses, giving the number of the page where cross-examination, redirect and recross of each witness begins, and an index of exhibits of the type specified in paragraph (b) of this section.

(e) [Reserved]

(f) When a deposition is authorized to be taken within the United States under this subpart and if the parties agree in writing, the deposition may be taken in any place within the United States, before any person authorized to administer oaths, upon any notice, and in any manner, and when so taken may be used like other depositions.

(g) If the parties agree in writing, the affidavit testimony of any witness may be submitted without opportunity for cross-examination.

(h) If the parties agree in writing, testimony may be submitted in the form of an agreed statement setting forth how a particular witness would testify, if called, or the facts in the case of one or more of the parties. The agreed statement shall be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office. See § 1.653(a).

(i) In an unusual circumstance and upon a showing that testimony cannot be taken in accordance with the provisions of this subpart, an administrative patent judge upon motion (§ 1.635) may authorize testimony to be taken in another manner.

[60 FR 14531, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.673 Notice of examination of witness.

(a) A party authorized to take testimony of a witness by deposition shall, after complying with paragraphs (b) and (g) of this section, file and serve a single notice of deposition stating the time and place of each deposition to be taken. Depositions to be taken in the United States may be noticed for a reasonable time and place in the United States. A deposition may not be noticed for any other place without approval of an administrative patent judge. The notice shall specify the name and address of each witness and the general nature of the testimony to be given by the witness. If the name of a witness is not known, a general description sufficient to identify the witness or a particular class or group to which the witness belongs may be given instead.

(b) Unless the parties agree or an administrative patent judge or the Board determine otherwise, a party shall serve, but not file, at least three working days prior to the conference required by paragraph (g) of this section, if service is made by hand or Express Mail, or at least 14 days prior to the conference if service is made by any other means, the following:

(1) A list and copy of each document in the party's possession, custody, or control and upon which the party intends to rely at any deposition and

(2) A list of and a proffer of reasonable access to things in the party's possession, custody, or control and upon which the party intends to rely at any deposition.

(c) A party shall not be permitted to rely on any witness not listed in the notice, or any document not served or any thing not listed as required by paragraph (b) of this section:

(1) Unless all opponents agree in writing or on the record to permit the party to rely on the witness, document or thing, or

(2) Except upon a motion (§1.635) promptly filed which is accompanied by any proposed notice, additional documents, or lists and which shows good cause why the notice, documents, or lists were not served in accordance with this section.

(d) Each opponent shall have a full opportunity to attend a deposition and cross-examine.

(e) A party who has presented testimony by affidavit and is required to notice depositions for the purpose of cross-examination under §1.672(b), shall, after complying with paragraph (g) of this section, file and serve a single notice of deposition stating the time and place of each cross-examination deposition to be taken.

(f) The parties shall not take depositions in more than one place at the same time or so nearly at the same time that reasonable opportunity to travel from one place of deposition to another cannot be had.

(g) Before serving a notice of deposition and after complying with paragraph (b) of this section, a party shall have an oral conference with all opponents to attempt to agree on a mutually acceptable time and place for conducting the deposition. A certificate shall appear in the notice stating that the oral conference took place or explaining why the conference could not be had. If the parties cannot agree to a mutually acceptable place and time for conducting the deposition at the conference, the parties shall contact an administrative patent judge who shall then designate the time and place for conducting the deposition.

(h) A copy of the notice of deposition shall be attached to the certified transcript of the deposition filed under §1.676(a).

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14532, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.674 Persons before whom depositions may be taken.

(a) A deposition shall be taken before an officer authorized to administer oaths by the laws of the United States or of the place where the examination is held.

(b) Unless the parties agree in writing, the following persons shall not be competent to serve as an officer:

(1) A relative or employee of a party,

(2) A relative or employee of an attorney or agent of a party, or

(3) A person interested, directly or indirectly, in the interference either as counsel, attorney, agent, or otherwise.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14533, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.675 Examination of witness, reading and signing transcript of deposition.

(a) Each witness before giving an oral deposition shall be duly sworn according to law by the officer before whom the deposition is to be taken.

(b) The testimony shall be taken in answer to interrogatories with any questions and answers recorded in their regular order by the officer or by some other person, who shall be subject to the provisions of §1.674(b), in the presence of the officer unless the presence of the officer is waived on the record by agreement of all parties.

(c) All objections made at the time of the deposition to the qualifications of the officer taking the deposition, the manner of taking it, the evidence presented, the conduct of any party, or any other objection to the proceeding shall be noted on the record by the officer. Evidence objected to shall be taken subject to any objection.

(d) Unless the parties agree in writing or waive reading and signature by the witness on the record at the deposition, when the testimony has been transcribed a transcript of the deposition shall, unless the witness refuses to read and/or sign the transcript of the deposition, be read by the witness and then signed by the witness in the form of:

(1) An affidavit in the presence of any notary or

(2) A declaration.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14533, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.676 Certification and filing by officer, marking exhibits.

(a) The officer shall prepare a certified transcript of the deposition by

attaching to a transcript of the deposition a copy of the notice of deposition, any exhibits to be annexed to the certified transcript, and a certificate signed and sealed by the officer and showing:

(1) The witness was duly sworn by the officer before commencement of testimony by the witness.

(2) The transcript is a true record of the testimony given by the witness.

(3) The name of the person by whom the testimony was recorded and, if not recorded by the officer, whether the testimony was recorded in the presence of the officer.

(4) The presence or absence of any opponent.

(5) The place where the deposition was taken and the day and hour when the deposition began and ended.

(6) The officer is not disqualified under § 1.674.

(b) If the parties waived any of the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section, the certificate shall so state.

(c) The officer shall note on the certificate the circumstances under which a witness refuses to sign a transcript.

(d) Unless the parties agree otherwise in writing or on the record at the deposition, the officer shall securely seal the certified transcript in an envelope endorsed with the style of the interference (e.g., Smith v. Jones), the interference number, the name of the witness, and the date of sealing and shall promptly forward the envelope to BOX INTERFERENCE, Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, DC 20231. Documents and things produced for inspection during the examination of a witness, shall, upon request of a party, be marked for identification and annexed to the certified transcript, and may be inspected and copied by any party, except that if the person producing the documents and things desires to retain them, the person may:

(1) Offer copies to be marked for identification and annexed to the certified transcript and to serve thereafter as originals if the person affords to all parties fair opportunity to verify the copies by comparison with the originals or

(2) Offer the originals to be marked for identification, after giving to each party an opportunity to inspect and copy them, in which event the documents and things may be used in the same manner as if annexed to the certified transcript.

The exhibits shall then be filed as specified in § 1.653(i). If the weight or bulk of a document or thing shall reasonably prevent the document or thing from being annexed to the certified transcript, it shall, unless waived on the record at the deposition by all parties, be authenicated by the officer and fowarded to the Commissioner in a separate package marked and addressed as provided in this paragraph.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, as amended at 60 FR 14533, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.677 Form of an affidavit or a transcript of deposition.

(a) An affidavit or a transcript of a deposition must be on opaque, unglazed, durable paper approximately 21.8 by 27.9 cm. (8½ by 11 inches) in size (letter size). The printed matter shall be double-spaced on one side of the paper in not smaller than 11 point type with a margin of 3.8 cm. (1½ inches) on the left-hand side of the page. The pages of each transcript must be consecutively numbered and the name of the witness shall appear at the top of each page (§ 1.653(e)). In transcripts of depositions, the questions propounded to each witness must be consecutively numbered unless paper with numbered lines is used and each question must be followed by its answer.

(b) Exhibits must be numbered consecutively to the extent possible and each must be marked as required by § 1.653(i).

[60 FR 14533, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.678 Time for filing transcript of deposition.

Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, a certified transcript of a deposition must be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office within one month after the date of deposition. If a party refuses to file a certified transcript, the administrative patent judge or the Board may take appropriate action under § 1.616. If a party refuses to file a certified transcript,

any opponent may move for leave to file the certified transcript and include a copy of the transcript as part of the opponent's record.

[60 FR 14533, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.679 Inspection of transcript.

A certified transcript of a deposition filed in the Patent and Trademark Office may be inspected by any party. The certified transcript may not be removed from the Patent and Trademark Office unless authorized by an administrative patent judge upon such terms as may be appropriate.

[60 FR 14533, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.682 Official records and printed publications.

(a) A party may introduce into evidence, if otherwise admissible, an official record or printed publication not identified in an affidavit or on the record during an oral deposition of a witness, by filing a copy of the official record or printed publication or, if appropriate, a notice under §1.671(e). If the official record or printed publication relates to the party's case-in-chief, it shall be filed or noticed together with any affidavits filed by the party under §1.672(b) for its case-in-chief or, if the party does not serve any affidavits under §1.672(b) for its case-in-chief, no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file affidavits under §1.672(b) for its case-in-chief. If the official record or printed publication relates to rebuttal, it shall be filed or noticed together with any affidavits filed by the party under §1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal or, if the party does not file any affidavits under §1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal, no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file affidavits under §1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal. Official records and printed publications filed under this paragraph shall be assigned sequential exhibit numbers by the party in the manner set forth in §1.672(b). The official record and printed publications shall be accompanied by a paper which shall:

(1) Identify the official record or printed publication;

(2) Identify the portion thereof to be introduced in evidence; and

(3) Indicate generally the relevance of the portion sought to be introduced in evidence.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, any written objection by an opponent to the paper or to the admissibility of the official record or printed publication shall be filed no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for the opponent to file objections under §1.672(c) to affidavits submitted by the party under §1.672(b). An opponent who fails to object to the admissibility of the official record or printed publication on a ground that could have been raised in a timely objection under this paragraph will not be entitled to move under §1.656(h) to suppress the evidence on that ground. If an opponent timely files an objection, the party may respond by filing one or more supplemental affidavits, official records or printed publications, which must be filed together with any supplemental evidence filed by the party under §1.672(c) or, if the party does not file any supplemental evidence under §1.672(c), no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file supplemental affidavits under §1.672(c). No objection to the admissibility of the supplemental evidence shall be made, except as provided by §1.656(h). The pages of supplemental affidavits and the exhibits filed under this section shall be sequentially numbered by the party in the manner set forth in §1.672(c). The supplemental affidavits and exhibits shall be accompanied by an index of witnesses and an index of exhibits of the type required by §1.672(b).

(d) Any request by an opponent to cross-examine on oral deposition the affiant of a supplemental affidavit submitted under paragraph (c) of this section shall be filed no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for the opponent to file a request to cross-examine an affiant with respect to an affidavit served by the party under §1.672 (b) or (c). If any opponent requests cross-examination of an affiant, the party shall file notice of a deposition for a reasonable location

within the United States under § 1.673(e) for the purpose of cross-examination by any opponent. Any redirect and recross shall take place at the deposition. At any deposition for the purpose of cross-examination of a witness, the party shall not be entitled to rely on any document or thing not mentioned in one or more of the affidavits filed under this paragraph, except to the extent necessary to conduct proper redirect. The party who gives notice of a deposition shall be responsible for providing a translator if the witness does not testify in English, for obtaining a court reporter, and for filing a certified transcript of the deposition as required by § 1.676. Within 45 days of the close of the period for taking cross-examination, the party shall serve (but not file) a copy of each deposition transcript on each opponent together with copies of any additional documentary exhibits identified by the witness during the deposition. The pages of deposition transcripts and exhibits served under this paragraph shall be sequentially numbered by the party in the manner set forth in § 1.672(d). The deposition transcripts shall be accompanied by an index of the names of the witnesses, giving the number of the page where cross-examination, redirect and recross of each witness begins, and an index of exhibits of the type specified in § 1.672(b).

[60 FR 14533, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.683 Testimony in another interference, proceeding, or action.

(a) A party may introduce into evidence, if otherwise admissible, testimony by affidavit or oral deposition and referenced exhibits from another interference, proceeding, or action involving the same parties by filing a copy of the affidavit or a copy of the transcript of the oral deposition and the referenced exhibits. If the testimony and referenced exhibits relate to the party's case-in-chief, they shall be filed together with any affidavits served by the party under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-chief or, if the party does not file any affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-chief, no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-chief. If the testimony and referenced exhibits relate to rebuttal, they shall be filed together with any affidavits served by the party under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal or, if the party does not file any affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal, no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal. Pages of affidavits and deposition transcripts served under this paragraph and any new exhibits served therewith shall be assigned sequential numbers by the party in the manner set forth in § 1.672(b). The testimony shall be accompanied by a paper which specifies with particularity the exact testimony to be used and demonstrates its relevance.

(b) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, any written objection by an opponent to the paper or the admissibility of the testimony and referenced exhibits filed under this section shall be filed no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for the opponent to file any objections under § 1.672(c) to affidavits submitted by the party under § 1.672(b). An opponent who fails to challenge the admissibility of the testimony or referenced exhibits on a ground that could have been raised in a timely objection under this paragraph will not be entitled to move under § 1.656(h) to suppress the evidence on that ground. If an opponent timely files an objection, the party may respond with one or more supplemental affidavits, official records or printed publications, which must be filed together with any supplemental evidence filed by the party under § 1.672(c) or, if the party does not file any supplemental evidence under § 1.672(c), no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file supplemental evidence under § 1.672(c). No objection to the admissibility of the evidence contained in or submitted with a supplemental affidavit shall be made, except as provided by § 1.656(h). The pages of supplemental affidavits and the exhibits filed under this section shall be sequentially numbered by the party in the manner set

forth in §1.672(c). The supplemental affidavits and exhibits shall be accompanied by an index of witnesses and an index of exhibits of the type required by §1.672(b).

(c) Any request by an opponent to cross-examine on oral deposition the affiant of an affidavit or supplemental affidavit submitted under paragraph (a) or (b) of this section shall be filed no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for the opponent to file a request to cross-examine an affiant with respect to an affidavit filed by the party under §1.672 (b) or (c). If any opponent requests cross-examination of an affiant, the party shall file a notice of deposition for a reasonable location within the United States under §1.673(e) for the purpose of cross-examination by any opponent. Any redirect and recross shall take place at the deposition. At any deposition for the purpose of cross-examination of a witness, the party shall not be entitled to rely on any document or thing not mentioned in one or more of the affidavits filed under this paragraph, except to the extent necessary to conduct proper redirect. The party who gives notice of a deposition shall be responsible for providing a translator if the witness does not testify in English, for obtaining a court reporter, and for filing a certified transcript of the deposition as required by §1.676. Within 45 days of the close of the period for taking cross-examination, the party shall serve (but not file) a copy of each deposition transcript on each opponent together with copies of any additional documentary exhibits identified by the witness during the deposition. The pages of deposition transcripts and exhibits served under this paragraph shall be sequentially numbered by the party in the manner set forth in §1.672(d). The deposition transcripts shall be accompanied by an index of the names of the witnesses, giving the number of the page where cross-examination, redirect and recross of each witness begins, and an index of exhibits of the type specified in §1.672(b).

[60 FR 14534, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.684 [Reserved]

§1.685 Errors and irregularities in depositions.

(a) An error in a notice for taking a deposition is waived unless a motion (§1.635) to quash the notice is filed as soon as the error is, or could have been, discovered.

(b) An objection to a qualification of an officer taking a deposition is waived unless:

(1) The objection is made on the record of the deposition before a witness begins to testify.

(2) If discovered after the deposition, a motion (§1.635) to suppress the deposition is filed as soon as the objection is, or could have been, discovered.

(c) An error or irregularity in the manner in which testimony is transcribed, a certified transcript is signed by a witness, or a certified transcript is prepared, signed, certified, sealed, endorsed, forwarded, filed, or otherwise handled by the officer is waived unless a motion (§1.635) to suppress the deposition is filed as soon as the error or irregularity is, or could have been, discovered.

(d) An objection to the deposition on any grounds, such as the competency of a witness, admissibility of evidence, manner of taking the deposition, the form of questions and answers, any oath or affirmation, or conduct of any party at the deposition, is waived unless an objection is made on the record at the deposition stating the specific ground of objection. Any objection which a party wishes considered by the Board at final hearing shall be included in a motion to suppress under §1.656(h).

(e) Nothing in this section precludes taking notice of plain errors affecting substantial rights although they were not brought to the attention of an administrative patent judge or the Board.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, as amended at 60 FR 14534, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.687 Additional discovery.

(a) A party is not entitled to discovery except as authorized in this subpart.

(b) Where appropriate, a party may obtain production of documents and things during cross-examination of an

opponent's witness or during the testimony period of the party's case-in-rebuttal.

(c) Upon a motion (§ 1.635) brought by a party within the time set by an administrative patent judge under § 1.651 or thereafter as authorized by § 1.645 and upon a showing that the interest of justice so requires, an administrative patent judge may order additional discovery, as to matters under the control of a party within the scope of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, specifying the terms and conditions of such additional discovery. See § 1.647 concerning translations of documents in a foreign language.

(d) The parties may agree to discovery among themselves at any time. In the absence of an agreement, a motion for additional discovery shall not be filed except as authorized by this subpart.

[49 FR 48455, Dec. 12, 1984, as amended at 60 FR 14535, Mar. 17, 1995]

§ 1.688 Use of discovery.

(a) If otherwise admissible, a party may introduce into evidence an answer to a written request for an admission or an answer to a written interrogatory obtained by discovery under § 1.687 by filing a copy of the request for admission or the written interrogatory and the answer. If the answer relates to a party's case-in-chief, the answer shall be served together with any affidavits served by the party under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-chief or, if the party does not serve any affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-chief, no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to serve affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-chief. If the answer relates to the party's rebuttal, the answer shall be served together with any affidavits served by the party under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal or, if the party does not serve any affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal, no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to serve affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal.

(b) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, any written objection to the admissibility of an answer shall be filed no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for the opponent to file any objections under § 1.672(c) to affidavits submitted by the party under § 1.672(b). An opponent who fails to challenge the admissibility of an answer on a ground that could have been raised in a timely objection under this paragraph will not be entitled to move under § 1.656(h) to suppress the evidence on that ground. If an opponent timely files an objection, the party may respond with one or more supplemental affidavits, which must be filed together with any supplemental evidence filed by the party under § 1.672(c) or, if the party does not file any supplemental evidence under § 1.672(c), no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file supplemental affidavits under § 1.672(c). No objection to the admissibility of the evidence contained in or submitted with a supplemental affidavit shall be made, except as provided by § 1.656(h). The pages of supplemental affidavits and the exhibits filed under this section shall be sequentially numbered by the party in the manner set forth in § 1.672(c). The supplemental affidavits and exhibits shall be accompanied by an index of witnesses and an index of exhibits of the type required by § 1.672(b).

(c) Any request by an opponent to cross-examine on oral deposition the affiant of a supplemental affidavit submitted under paragraph (b) of this section shall be filed no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for the opponent to file a request to cross-examine an affiant with respect to an affidavit filed by the party under § 1.672 (b) or (c). If any opponent requests cross-examination of an affiant, the party shall file a notice of deposition for a reasonable location within the United States under § 1.673(e) for the purpose of cross-examination by any opponent. Any redirect and recross shall take place at the deposition. At any deposition for the purpose of cross-examination of a witness, the party shall not be entitled to rely on any document or thing not mentioned in one or more of the affidavits filed under this paragraph, except to the extent necessary to conduct proper redirect. The party who gives notice of a deposition shall be responsible for providing a translator if the witness does

not testify in English, for obtaining a court reporter, and for filing a certified transcript of the deposition as required by §1.676. Within 45 days of the close of the period for taking cross-examination, the party shall serve (but not file) a copy of each deposition transcript on each opponent together with copies of any additional documentary exhibits identified by the witness during the deposition. The pages of deposition transcripts and exhibits served under this paragraph shall be sequentially numbered by the party in the manner set forth in §1.672(d). The deposition transcripts shall be accompanied by an index of the names of the witnesses, giving the number of the page where cross-examination, redirect and recross of each witness begins, and an index of exhibits of the type specified in §1.672(b).

(d) A party may not rely upon any other matter obtained by discovery unless it is introduced into evidence under this subpart.

[60 FR 14535, Mar. 17, 1995]

§1.690 Arbitration of interferences.

(a) Parties to a patent interference may determine the interference or any aspect thereof by arbitration. Such arbitration shall be governed by the provisions of Title 9, United States Code. The parties must notify the Board in writing of their intention to arbitrate. An agreement to arbitrate must be in writing, specify the issues to be arbitrated, the name of the arbitrator or a date not more than thirty (30) days after the execution of the agreement for the selection of the arbitrator, and provide that the arbitrator's award shall be binding on the parties and that judgment thereon can be entered by the Board. A copy of the agreement must be filed within twenty (20) days after its execution. The parties shall be solely responsible for the selection of the arbitrator and the rules for conducting proceedings before the arbitrator. Issues not disposed of by the arbitration will be resolved in accordance with the procedures established in this subpart, as determined by the administrative patent judge.

(b) An arbitration proceeding under this section shall be conducted within such time as may be authorized on a case-by-case basis by an administrative patent judge.

(c) An arbitration award will be given no consideration unless it is binding on the parties, is in writing and states in a clear and definite manner the issue or issues arbitrated and the disposition of each issue. The award may include a statement of the grounds and reasoning in support thereof. Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, the parties shall give notice to the Board of an arbitration award by filing within twenty (20) days from the date of the award a copy of the award signed by the arbitrator or arbitrators. When an award is timely filed, the award shall, as to the parties to the arbitration, be dispositive of the issue or issues to which it relates.

(d) An arbitration award shall not preclude the Office from determining patentability of any invention involved in the interference.

[52 FR 13838, Apr. 27, 1987, as amended at 60 FR 14535, Mar. 17, 1995]

Subpart F—Extension of Patent Term

AUTHORITY: 35 U.S.C. 6 and 156.

SOURCE: 52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987, unless otherwise noted.

§1.701 Extension of patent term due to prosecution delay.

(a) A patent, other than for designs, issued on an application filed on or after June 8, 1995, is entitled to extension of the patent term if the issuance of the patent was delayed due to:

(1) Interference proceedings under 35 U.S.C. 135(a); and/or

(2) The application being placed under a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181; and/or

(3) Appellate review by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences or by a Federal court under 35 U.S.C. 141 or 145, if the patent was issued pursuant to a decision reversing an adverse determination of patentability and if the patent is not subject to a terminal disclaimer due to the issuance of another patent claiming subject matter that is not patentably distinct from that under appellate review.

(b) The term of a patent entitled to extension under paragraph (a) of this

section shall be extended for the sum of the periods of delay calculated under paragraphs (c)(1), (c)(2), (c)(3) and (d) of this section, to the extent that these periods are not overlapping, up to a maximum of five years. The extension will run from the expiration date of the patent.

(c)(1) The period of delay under paragraph (a)(1) of this section for an application is the sum of the following periods, to the extent that the periods are not overlapping:

(i) With respect to each interference in which the application was involved, the number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date the interference was declared or redeclared to involve the application in the interference and ending on the date that the interference was terminated with respect to the application; and

(ii) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date prosecution in the application was suspended by the Patent and Trademark Office due to interference proceedings under 35 U.S.C. 135(a) not involving the application and ending on the date of the termination of the suspension.

(2) The period of delay under paragraph (a)(2) of this section for an application is the sum of the following periods, to the extent that the periods are not overlapping:

(i) The number of days, if any, the application was maintained in a sealed condition under 35 U.S.C. 181;

(ii) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date of mailing of an examiner's answer under § 1.193 in the application under secrecy order and ending on the date the secrecy order and any renewal thereof was removed;

(iii) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date applicant was notified that an interference would be declared but for the secrecy order and ending on the date the secrecy order and any renewal thereof was removed; and

(iv) The number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date of notification under § 5.3(c) and ending on the date of mailing of the notice of allowance under § 1.311.

(3) The period of delay under paragraph (a)(3) of this section is the sum of the number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date on which an appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences was filed under 35 U.S.C. 134 and ending on the date of a final decision in favor of the applicant by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences or by a Federal court in an appeal under 35 U.S.C. 141 or a civil action under 35 U.S.C. 145.

(d) The period of delay set forth in paragraph (c)(3) shall be reduced by:

(1) Any time during the period of appellate review that occurred before three years from the filing date of the first national application for patent presented for examination; and

(2) Any time during the period of appellate review, as determined by the Commissioner, during which the applicant for patent did not act with due diligence. In determining the due diligence of an applicant, the Commissioner may examine the facts and circumstances of the applicant's actions during the period of appellate review to determine whether the applicant exhibited that degree of timeliness as may reasonably be expected from, and which is ordinarily exercised by, a person during a period of appellate review.

[60 FR 20228, Apr. 25, 1995]

§ 1.710 Patents subject to extension of the patent term.

(a) A patent is eligible for extension of the patent term if the patent claims a product as defined in paragraph (b) of this section, either alone or in combination with other ingredients that read on a composition that received permission for commercial marketing or use, or a method of using such a product, or a method of manufacturing such a product, and meets all other conditions and requirements of this subpart.

(b) The term *product* referred to in paragraph (a) of this section means—

(1) The active ingredient of a new human drug, antibiotic drug, or human biological product (as those terms are used in the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and the Public Health Service Act) including any salt or ester of the active ingredient, as a single entity or in combination with another active ingredient; or

(2) The active ingredient of a new animal drug or veterinary biological

product (as those terms are used in the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act) that is not primarily manufactured using recombinant DNA, recombinant RNA, hybridoma technology, or other processes including site specific genetic manipulation techniques, including any salt or ester of the active ingredient, as a single entity or in combination with another active ingredient; or

(3) Any medical device, food additive, or color additive subject to regulation under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

[54 FR 30379, July 20, 1989]

§1.720 Conditions for extension of patent term.

The term of a patent may be extended if:

(a) The patent claims a product or a method of using or manufacturing a product as defined in §1.710;

(b) The term of the patent has never been previously extended except for any interim extension issued pursuant to §1.760;

(c) An application for extension is submitted in compliance with §1.740;

(d) The product has been subject to a regulatory review period as defined in 35 U.S.C. 156(g) before its commercial marketing or use;

(e) The product has received permission for commercial marketing or use and—

(1) The permission for the commercial marketing or use of the product is the first received permission for commercial marketing or use under the provision of law under which the applicable regulatory review occurred, or

(2) In the case of a patent other than one directed to subject matter within §1.710(b)(2) claiming a method of manufacturing the product that primarily uses recombinant DNA technology in the manufacture of the product, the permission for the commercial marketing or use is the first received permission for the commercial marketing or use of a product manufactured under the process claimed in the patent, or

(3) In the case of a patent claiming a new animal drug or a veterinary biological product that is not covered by the claims in any other patent that has been extended, and has received permission for the commercial marketing or use in non-food-producing animals and in food-producing animals, and was not extended on the basis of the regulatory review period for use in non-food-producing animals, the permission for the commercial marketing or use of the drug or product after the regulatory review period for use in food-producing animals is the first permitted commercial marketing or use of the drug or product for administration to a food-producing animal.

(f) The application is submitted within the sixty-day period beginning on the date the product first received permission for commercial marketing or use under the provisions of law under which the applicable regulatory review period occurred; or in the case of a patent claiming a method of manufacturing the product which primarily uses recombinant DNA technology in the manufacture of the product, the application for extension is submitted within the sixty-day period beginning on the date of the first permitted commercial marketing or use of a product manufactured under the process claimed in the patent; or in the case of a patent that claims a new animal drug or a veterinary biological product that is not covered by the claims in any other patent that has been extended, and said drug or product has received permission for the commercial marketing or use in non-food-producing animals, the application for extension is submitted within the sixty-day period beginning on the date of the first permitted commercial marketing or use of the drug or product for administration to a food-producing animal;

(g) The term of the patent has not expired before the submission of an application in compliance with §1.741; and

(h) No other patent term has been extended for the same regulatory review period for the product.

[52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987, as amended at 54 FR 30380, July 20, 1989]

§1.730 Applicant for extension of patent term.

Any application for extension of a patent term must be submitted by the owner of record of the patent or its agent and must comply with the requirements of §1.740.

§ 1.740 Application for extension of patent term.

(a) An application for extension of patent term must be made in writing to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks. A formal application for the extension of patent term shall include:

(1) A complete identification of the approved product as by appropriate chemical and generic name, physical structure or characteristics;

(2) A complete identification of the Federal statute including the applicable provision of law under which the regulatory review occurred;

(3) An identification of the date on which the product received permission for commercial marketing or use under the provision of law under which the applicable regulatory review period occurred;

(4) In the case of a drug product, an identification of each active ingredient in the product and as to each active ingredient, a statement that it has not been previously approved for commercial marketing or use under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, the Public Health Service Act, or the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act, or a statement of when the active ingredient was approved for commercial marketing or use (either alone or in combination with other active ingredients), the use for which it was approved, and the provision of law under which it was approved.

(5) A statement that the application is being submitted within the sixty day period permitted for submission pursuant to § 1.720(f) and an identification of the date of the last day on which the application could be submitted;

(6) A complete identification of the patent for which an extension is being sought by the name of the inventor, the patent number, the date of issue, and the date of expiration;

(7) A copy of the patent for which an extension is being sought, including the entire specification (including claims) and drawings;

(8) A copy of any disclaimer, certificate of correction, receipt of maintenance fee payment, or reexamination certificate issued in the patent;

(9) A statement that the patent claims the approved product or a method of using or manufacturing the approved product, and a showing which lists each applicable patent claim and demonstrates the manner in which each applicable patent claim reads on the approved product or method of using or manufacturing the approved product;

(10) A statement, beginning on a new page, of the relevant dates and information pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 156(g) in order to enable the Secretary of Health and Human Services or the Secretary of Agriculture, as appropriate, to determine the applicable regulatory review period as follows:

(i) For a patent claiming a human drug, antibiotic, or human biological product, the effective date of the investigational new drug (IND) application and the IND number; the date on which a new drug application (NDA) or a Product License Application (PLA) was initially submitted and the NDA or PLA number and the date on which the NDA was approved or the Product License issued;

(ii) For a patent claiming a new animal drug, the date a major health or environmental effects test on the drug was initiated and any available substantiation of the date or the date of an exemption under subsection (j) of section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act became effective for such animal drug; the date on which a new animal drug application (NADA) was initially submitted and the NADA number; and the date on which the NADA was approved;

(iii) For a patent claiming a veterinary biological product, the date the authority to prepare an experimental biological product under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act became effective; the date an application for a license was submitted under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act; and the date the license issued;

(iv) For a patent claiming a food or color additive, the date a major health or environmental effects test on the additive was initiated and any available substantiation of that date; the date on which a petition for product approval under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act was initially submitted and the petition number; and the date on which the FDA published the

FEDERAL REGISTER notice listing the additive for use;

(v) For a patent claiming a medical device, the effective date of the investigational device exemption (IDE) and the IDE number, if applicable, or the date on which the applicant began the first clinical investigation involving the device if no IDE was submitted and any available substantiation of that date; the date on which the application for product approval or notice of completion of a product development protocol under section 515 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act was initially submitted and the number of the application or protocol; and the date on which the application was approved or the protocol declared to be completed.

(11) A brief description beginning on a new page of the significant activities undertaken by the marketing applicant during the applicable regulatory review period with respect to the approved product and the significant dates applicable to such activities;

(12) A statement beginning on a new page that in the opinion of the applicant the patent is eligible for the extension and a statement as to the length of extension claimed, including how the length of extension was determined;

(13) A statement that applicant acknowledges a duty to disclose to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks and the Secretary of Health and Human Services or the Secretary of Agriculture any information which is material to the determination of entitlement to the extension sought (see §1.765);

(14) The prescribed fee for receiving and acting upon the application for extension (see §1.20(j)).

(15) The name, address, and telephone number of the person to whom inquiries and correspondence relating to the application for patent term extension are to be directed;

(16) A duplicate of the application papers, certified as such; and

(17) An oath or declaration as set forth in paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) Any oath or declaration submitted in compliance with paragraph (a) of this section must be signed by the owner of record of the patent or its agent, specifically identify the papers and the patent for which an extension is sought and aver that the person signing the oath or declaration:

(1) Is the owner, an official of a corporate owner authorized to obligate the corporation, or a patent attorney or agent authorized to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office and who has general authority from the owner to act on behalf of the owner in patent matters.

(2) Has reviewed and understands the contents of the application being submitted pursuant to this section;

(3) Believes the patent is subject to extension pursuant to §1.710;

(4) Believes an extension of the length claimed is justified under 35 U.S.C. 156 and the applicable regulations; and

(5) Believes the patent for which the extension is being sought meets the conditions for extension of the term of a patent as set forth in §1.720.

(c) If any application for extension of patent term submitted pursuant to this section is held to be informal, applicant may seek to have that holding reviewed by filing a petition with the required fee, as necessary, pursuant to §1.181, §1.182 or §1.183, as appropriate, within such time as may be set in the notice that the application has been held to be informal, or if no time is set, within one month of the date on which the application was held informal. The time periods set forth herein are subject to the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136.

[54 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987, as amended at 54 FR 30380, July 20, 1989; 56 FR 65155, Dec. 13, 1991]

§1.741 Filing date of application.

(a) The filing date of an application for extension of a patent term is the date on which a complete application is received in the Patent and Trademark Office or filed pursuant to the ''Certificate of Mailing or Transmission'' procedures of 37 CFR 1.8 or ''Express Mail'' provisions of 37 CFR 1.10. A complete application shall include:

(1) An identification of the approved product;

(2) An identification of each Federal statute under which regulatory review occurred;

(3) An identification of the patent for which an extension is being sought;

(4) An identification of each claim of the patent which claims the approved product or a method of using or manufacturing the approved product;

(5) Sufficient information to enable the Commissioner to determine under 35 U.S.C. 156 subsections (a) and (b) the eligibility of a patent for extension and the rights that will be derived from the extension and information to enable the Commissioner and the Secretary of Health and Human Services or the Secretary of Agriculture to determine the length of the regulatory review period; and

(6) A brief description of the activities undertaken by the marketing applicant during the applicable regulatory review period with respect to the approved product and the significant dates applicable to such activities.

(b) If any application submitted pursuant to this section is held to be incomplete, applicant may seek to have this holding reviewed under § 1.181.

[52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987, as amended at 59 FR 54503, Oct. 22, 1993; 61 FR 64028, Dec. 3, 1996]

§ 1.750 Determination of eligibility for extension of patent term.

A determination as to whether a patent is eligible for extension may be made by the Commissioner solely on the basis of the representations contained in the application for extension filed in compliance with § 1.740 or § 1.790. This determination may be delegated to appropriate Patent and Trademark Office officials and may be made at any time before the certificate of extension is issued. The Commissioner or other appropriate officials may require from applicant further information or make such independent inquiries as desired before a final determination is made on whether a patent is eligible for extension. In an application for extension filed in compliance with § 1.740, a notice will be mailed to applicant containing the determination as to the eligibility of the patent for extension and the period of time of the extension, if any. This notice shall constitute the final determination as to the eligibility and any period of extension of the patent. A single request for reconsideration of a final determination may be made if filed by the applicant within such time as may be set in the notice of final determination or, if no time is set, within one month from the date of the final determination. The time periods set forth herein are subject to the provisions of § 1.136.

[60 FR 25618, May 12, 1995]

§ 1.760 Interim extension of patent term under 35 U.S.C. 156(e)(2).

An applicant who has filed a formal application for extension in compliance with § 1.740 may request one or more interim extensions for periods of up to one year each pending a final determination on the application pursuant to § 1.750. Any such request should be filed at least three months prior to the expiration date of the patent. The Commissioner may issue interim extensions, without a request by the applicant, for periods of up to one year each until a final determination is made. The patent owner or agent will be notified when an interim extension is granted and notice of the extension will be published in the Offical Gazette of the Patent and Trademark Office. The notice will be recorded in the official file of the patent and will be considered as part of the original patent. In no event will the interim extensions granted under this section be longer than the maximum period of extension to which the applicant would be eligible.

[52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987, as amended at 60 FR 25618, May 12, 1995]

§ 1.765 Duty of disclosure in patent term extension proceedings.

(a) A duty of candor and good faith toward the Patent and Trademark Office and the Secretary of Health and Human Services or the Secretary of Agriculture rests on the patent owner or its agent, on each attorney or agent who represents the patent owner and on every other individual who is substantively involved on behalf of the patent owner in a patent term extension proceeding. All such individuals who are aware, or become aware, of

material information adverse to a determination of entitlement to the extension sought, which has not been previously made of record in the patent term extension proceeding must bring such information to the attention of the Office or the Secretary, as appropriate, in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section, as soon as it is practical to do so after the individual becomes aware of the information. Information is material where there is a substantial likelihood that the Office or the Secretary would consider it important in determinations to be made in the patent term extension proceeding.

(b) Disclosures pursuant to this section must be accompanied by a copy of each written document which is being disclosed. The disclosure must be made to the Office or the Secretary, as appropriate, unless the disclosure is material to determinations to be made by both the Office and the Secretary, in which case duplicate copies, certified as such, must be filed in the Office and with the Secretary. Disclosures pursuant to this section may be made to the Office or the Secretary, as appropriate, through an attorney or agent having responsibility on behalf of the patent owner or its agent for the patent term extension proceeding or through a patent owner acting on his or her own behalf. Disclosure to such an attorney, agent or patent owner shall satisfy the duty of any other individual. Such an attorney, agent or patent owner has no duty to transmit information which is not material to the determination of entitlement to the extension sought.

(c) No patent will be determined eligible for extension and no extension will be issued if it is determined that fraud on the Office or the Secretary was practiced or attempted or the duty of disclosure was violated through bad faith or gross negligence in connection with the patent term extension proceeding. If it is established by clear and convincing evidence that any fraud was practiced or attempted on the Office or the Secretary in connection with the patent term extension proceeding or that there was any violation of the duty of disclosure through bad faith or gross negligence in connection with the patent term extension proceeding, a final determination will be made pursuant to §1.750 that the patent is not eligible for extension.

(d) The duty of disclosure pursuant to this section rests on the individuals identified in paragraph (a) of this section and no submission on behalf of third parties, in the form of protests or otherwise, will be considered by the Office. Any such submissions by third parties to the Office will be returned to the party making the submission, or otherwise disposed of, without consideration by the Office.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, as amended at 54 FR 30381, July 20, 1989; 60 FR 25618, May 12, 1995]

§1.770 Express withdrawal of application for extension of patent term.

An application for extension of patent term may be expressly withdrawn before a determination is made pursuant to §1.750 by filing in the Office, in duplicate, a written declaration of withdrawal signed by the owner of record of the patent or its agent. An application may not be expressly withdrawn after the date permitted for response to the final determination on the application. An express withdrawal pursuant to this section is effective when acknowledged in writing by the Office. The filing of an express withdrawal pursuant to this section and its acceptance by the Office does not entitle applicant to a refund of the filing fee (§1.20(j)) or any portion thereof.

[56 FR 65155, Dec. 13, 1991]

§1.775 Calculation of patent term extension for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to §1.750 that a patent for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer (§1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product will be extended by

the length of the regulatory review period for the product as determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product will be determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(1)(B), it is the sum of—

(1) The number of days in the period beginning on the date an exemption under subsection (i) of section 505 or subsection (d) of section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act became effective for the approved product and ending on the date the application was initially submitted for such product under those sections or under section 351 of the Public Health Service Act; and

(2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date the application was initially submitted for the approved product under section 351 of the Public Health Service Act, subsection (b) of section 505 or section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and ending on the date such application was approved under such section.

(d) The term of the patent as extended for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product will be determined by—

(1) Subtracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services to be in the regulatory review period:

(i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section which were on and before the date on which the patent issued;

(ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Health and Human Services that applicant did not act with due diligence;

(iii) One-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1) (i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;

(2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;

(3) By adding 14 years to the date of approval of the application under section 351 of the Public Health Service Act, or subsection (b) of section 505 or section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act;

(4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(5) If the original patent was issued after September 24, 1984,

(i) By adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(ii) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(6) If the original patent was issued before September 24, 1984, and

(i) If no request was submitted for an exemption under subsection (i) of section 505 or subsection (d) of section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act before September 24, 1984, by—

(A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date; or

(ii) If a request was submitted for an exemption under subsection (i) of section 505 or subsection (d) of section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, or Cosmetic Act before September 24, 1984 and the commercial marketing or use of the product was not approved before September 24, 1984, by—

(A) Adding 2 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and

(B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(ii)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date.

[52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987, as amended at 54 FR 30381, July 20, 1989]

§1.776 Calculation of patent term extension for a food additive or color additive.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to §1.750 that a patent for a food additive or color additive is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer (§1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for a food additive or color additive will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the product as determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for a food additive or color additive will be determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(2)(B), it is the sum of—

(1) The number of days in the period beginning on the date a major health or environmental effects test on the additive was initiated and ending on the date a petition was initially submitted with respect to the approved product under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act requesting the issuance of a regulation for use of the product; and

(2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date a petition was initially submitted with respect to the approved product under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act requesting the issuance of a regulation for use of the product, and ending on the date such regulation became effective or, if objections were filed to such regulation, ending on the date such objections were resolved and commercial marketing was permitted or, if commercial marketing was permitted and later revoked pending further proceedings as a result of such objections, ending on the date such proceedings were finally resolved and commercial marketing was permitted.

(d) The term of the patent as extended for a food additive or color additive will be determined by

(1) Subtracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services to be in the regulatory review period:

(i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section which were on and before the date on which the patent issued;

(ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Health and Human Services that applicant did not act with due diligence;

(iii) The number of days equal to one-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1) (i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;

(2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;

(3) By adding 14 years to the date a regulation for use of the product became effective or, if objections were filed to such regulation, to the date such objections were resolved and commercial marketing was permitted or, if commercial marketing was permitted and later revoked pending further proceedings as a result of such objections, to the date such proceedings were finally resolved and commercial marketing was permitted;

(4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(5) If the original patent was issued after September 24, 1984,

(i) By adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(ii) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(6) If the original patent was issued before September 24, 1984, and

(i) If no major health or environmental effects test was initiated and

no petition for a regulation or application for registration was submitted before September 24, 1984, by—

(A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and

(B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date; or

(ii) If a major health or environmental effects test was initiated or a petition for a regulation or application for registration was submitted by September 24, 1984, and the commercial marketing or use of the product was not approved before September 24, 1984, by—

(A) Adding 2 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and

(B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(ii)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date.

§ 1.777 Calculation of patent term extension for a medical device.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to § 1.750 that a patent for a medical device is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date as set by terminal disclaimer (§ 1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for a medical device will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the product as determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for a medical device will be determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(3)(B), it is the sum of

(1) The number of days in the period beginning on the date a clinical investigation on humans involving the device was begun and ending on the date an application was initially submitted with respect to the device under section 515 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act; and

(2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date the application was initially submitted with respect to the device under section 515 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, and ending on the date such application was approved under such Act or the period beginning on the date a notice of completion of a product development protocol was initially submitted under section 515(f)(5) of the Act and ending on the date the protocol was declared completed under section 515(f)(6) of the Act.

(d) The term of the patent as extended for a medical device will be determined by—

(1) Substracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services to be in the regulatory review period pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section:

(i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section which were on and before the date on which the patent issued;

(ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Health and Human Services that applicant did not act with due diligence;

(iii) One-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1) (i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;

(2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;

(3) By adding 14 years to the date of approval of the application under section 515 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act or the date a product development protocol was declared completed under section 515(f)(6) of the Act;

(4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(5) If the original patent was issued after September 24, 1984,

(i) By adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(ii) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(6) If the original patent was issued before September 24, 1984, and

(i) If no clinical investigation on humans involving the device was begun or no product development protocol was submitted under section 515(f)(5) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act before September 24, 1984, by—

(A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer and

(B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date; or

(ii) If a clinical investigation on humans involving the device was begun or a product development protocol was submitted under section 515(f)(5) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act before September 24, 1984 and the commercial marketing or use of the product was not approved before September 24, 1984, by

(A) Adding 2 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and

(B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(ii)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date.

§1.778 Calculation of patent term extension for an animal drug product.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to §1.750 that a patent for an animal drug is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer (§1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for an animal drug will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the drug as determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for an animal drug will be determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(4)(B), it is the sum of—

(1) The number of days in the period beginning on the earlier of the date a major health or environmental effects test on the drug was initiated or the date an exemption under subsection (j) of section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act became effective for the approved animal drug and ending on the date an application was initially submitted for such animal drug under section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act; and

(2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date the application was initially submitted for the approved animal drug under subsection (b) of section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and ending on the date such application was approved under such section.

(d) The term of the patent as extended for an animal drug will be determined by—

(1) Subtracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services to be in the regulatory review period:

(i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section that were on and before the date on which the patent issued;

(ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Health and Human Services that applicant did not act with due diligence;

(iii) One-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1) (i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;

(2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;

(3) By adding 14 years to the date of approval of the application under section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act;

(4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(5) If the original patent was issued after November 16, 1988, by—

(i) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(ii) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(6) If the original patent was issued before November 16, 1988, and

(i) If no major health or environmental effects test on the drug was initiated and no request was submitted for an exemption under subsection (j) of section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act before November 16, 1988, by—

(A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(B) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date; or

(ii) If a major health or environmental effects test was initiated or a request for an exemption under subsection (j) of section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act was submitted before November 16, 1988, and the application for commercial marketing or use of the animal drug was not approved before November 16, 1988, by—

(A) Adding 3 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and

(B) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(ii)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date.

[54 FR 30381, July 20, 1989]

§ 1.779 Calculation of patent term extension for a veterinary biological product.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to § 1.750 that a patent for a veterinary biological product is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer (§ 1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for a veterinary biological product will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the product as determined by the Secretary of Agriculture, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for a veterinary biological product will be determined by the Secretary of Agriculture. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(5)(B), it is the sum of—

(1) The number of days in the period beginning on the date the authority to prepare an experimental biological product under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act became effective and ending on the date an application for a license was submitted under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act; and

(2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date an application for a license was initially submitted for approval under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act and ending on the date such license was issued.

(d) The term of the patent as extended for a veterinary biological product will be determined by—

(1) Subtracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Agriculture to be in the regulatory review period:

(i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section that were on and before the date on which the patent issued;

(ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Agriculture that applicant did not act with due diligence;

(iii) One-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1) (i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;

(2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent

as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;

(3) By adding 14 years to the date of the issuance of a license under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act;

(4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(5) If the original patent was issued after November 16, 1988, by—

(i) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(ii) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

(6) If the original patent was issued before November 16, 1988, and

(i) If no request for the authority to prepare an experimental biological product under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act was submitted before November 16, 1988, by—

(A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(B) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date; or

(ii) If a request for the authority to prepare an experimental biological product under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act was submitted before November 16, 1988, and the commercial marketing or use of the product was not approved before November 16, 1988, by—

(A) Adding 3 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and

(B) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(ii)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date.

[52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987, as amended at 54 FR 30382, July 20, 1989]

§1.780 Certificate of extension of patent term.

If a determination is made pursuant to §1.750 that a patent is eligible for extension and that the term of the patent is to be extended, a certificate of extension, under seal, or certificate of interim extension under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(5) will be issued to the applicant for the extension of the patent term. Such certificate will be recorded in the official file of the patent and will be considered as part of the original patent. Notification of the issuance of the certificate of extension will be published in the Official Gazette of the Patent and Trademark Office. Notification of the issuance of the certificate of interim extension under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(5), including the identity of the product currently under regulatory review, will be published in the Official Gazette of the Patent and Trademark Office and in the FEDERAL REGISTER. No certificate of extension will be issued if the term of the patent cannot be extended, even though the patent is otherwise determined to be eligible for extension. In such situations the final determination made pursuant to §1.750 will indicate that no certificate will issue.

[60 FR 25618, May 12, 1995]

§1.785 Multiple applications for extension of term of the same patent or of different patents for the same regulatory review period for a product.

(a) Only one patent may be extended for a regulatory review period for any product (§1.720(h)). If more than one application for extension of the same patent is filed, the certificate of extension of patent term, if appropriate, will be issued based upon the first filed application for extension.

(b) If more than one application for extension is filed by a single applicant which seeks the extension of the term of two or more patents based upon the same regulatory review period, and the patents are otherwise eligible for extension pursuant to the requirements of this subpart, in the absence of an election by the applicant, the certificate of extension of patent term, if appropriate, will be issued upon the application for extension of the patent term having the earliest date of issuance of those patents for which extension is sought.

(c) If an application for extension is filed which seeks the extension of the term of a patent based upon the same regulatory review period as that relied upon in one or more applications for

extension pursuant to the requirements of this subpart, the certificate of extension of patent term will be issued on the application only if the patent owner or its agent is the holder of the regulatory approval granted with respect to the regulatory review period.

(d) An application for extension shall be considered complete and formal regardless of whether it contains the identification of the holder of the regulatory approval granted with respect to the regulatory review period. When an application contains such information, or is amended to contain such information, it will be considered in determining whether an application is eligible for an extension under this section. A request may be made of any applicant to supply such information within a non-extendable period of not less than one (1) month whenever multiple applications for extension of more than one patent are received and rely upon the same regulatory review period. Failure to provide such information within the period for response set shall be regarded as conclusively establishing that the applicant is not the holder of the regulatory approval.

(e) Determinations made under this section shall be included in the notice of final determination of eligibility for extension of the patent term pursuant to § 1.750 and shall be regarded as part of that determination.

[60 FR 25618, May 12, 1995]

§ 1.790 Interim extension of patent term under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(5).

(a) An owner of record of a patent or its agent who reasonably expects that the applicable regulatory review period described in paragraph (1)(B)(ii), (2)(B)(ii), (3)(B)(ii), (4)(B)(ii), or (5)(B)(ii) of subsection (g) that began for a product that is the subject of such patent may extend beyond the expiration of the patent term in effect may submit one or more applications for interim extensions for periods of up to one year each. The initial application for interim extension must be filed during the period beginning 6 months and ending 15 days before the patent term is due to expire. Each subsequent application for interim extension must be filed during the period beginning 60 days before and ending 30 days before the expiration of the preceding interim extension. In no event will the interim extensions granted under this section be longer than the maximum period of extension to which the applicant would be entitled under 35 U.S.C. 156(c).

(b) A complete application for interim extension under this section shall include all of the information required for a formal application under § 1.740 and a complete application under § 1.741. Sections (a)(1), (a)(2), (a)(4), and (a)(6)–(a)(17) of § 1.740 and § 1.741 shall be read in the context of a product currently undergoing regulatory review. Sections (a)(3) and (a)(5) of § 1.740 are not applicable to an application for interim extension under this section.

(c) The content of each subsequent interim extension application may be limited to a request for a subsequent interim extension along with a statement that the regulatory review period has not been completed along with any materials or information required under §§ 1.740 and 1.741 that are not present in the preceding interim extension application.

[60 FR 25619, May 12, 1995]

§ 1.791 Termination of interim extension granted prior to regulatory approval of a product for commercial marketing or use.

Any interim extension granted under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(5) terminates at the end of the 60-day period beginning on the date on which the product involved receives permission for commercial marketing or use. If within that 60-day period the patent owner or its agent files an application for extension under §§ 1.740 and 1.741 including any additional information required under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(1) not contained in the application for interim extension, the patent shall be further extended in accordance with the provisions of 35 U.S.C. 156.

[60 FR 25619, May 12, 1995]

Subpart G—Biotechnology Invention Disclosures

DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL

SOURCE: 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989, unless otherwise noted.

§1.801 Biological material.

For the purposes of these regulations pertaining to the deposit of biological material for purposes of patents for inventions under 35 U.S.C. 101, the term biological material shall include material that is capable of self-replication either directly or indirectly. Representative examples include bacteria, fungi including yeast, algae, protozoa, eukaryotic cells, cell lines, hybridomas, plasmids, viruses, plant tissue cells, lichens and seeds. Viruses, vectors, cell organelles and other non-living material existing in and reproducible from a living cell may be deposited by deposit of the host cell capable of reproducing the non-living material.

§1.802 Need or opportunity to make a deposit.

(a) Where an invention is, or relies on, a biological material, the disclosure may include reference to a deposit of such biological material.

(b) Biological material need not be deposited unless access to such material is necessary for the satisfaction of the statutory requirements for patentability under 35 U.S.C. 112. If a deposit is necessary, it shall be acceptable if made in accordance with these regulations. Biological material need not be deposited, inter alia, if it is known and readily avaliable to the public or can be made or isolated without undue experimentation. Once deposited in a depository complying with these regulations, a biological material will be considered to be readily available even though some requirement of law or regulation of the United States or of the country in which the depository institution is located permits access to the material only under conditions imposed for safety, public health or similar reasons.

(c) The reference to a biological material in a specification disclosure or the actual deposit of such material by an applicant or patent owner does not create any presumption that such material is necessary to satisfy 35 U.S.C. 112 or that deposit in accordance with these regulations is or was required.

§1.803 Acceptable depository.

(a) A deposit shall be recognized for the purposes of these regulations if made in

(1) Any International Depositary Authority (IDA) as established under the Budapest Treaty on the International Recognition of the Deposit of Microorganisms for the Purposes of Patent Procedure, or

(2) Any other depository recognized to be suitable by the Office. Suitability will be determined by the Commissioner on the basis of the administrative and technical competence, and agreement of the depository to comply with the terms and conditions applicable to deposits for patent purposes. The Commissioner may seek the advice of impartial consultants on the suitability of a depository. The depository must:

(i) Have a continuous existence;

(ii) Exist independent of the control of the depositor;

(iii) Possess the staff and facilities sufficient to examine the viability of a deposit and store the deposit in a manner which ensures that it is kept viable and uncontaminated;

(iv) Provide for sufficient safety measures to minimize the risk of losing biological material deposited with it;

(v) Be impartial and objective;

(vi) Furnish samples of the deposited material in an expeditious and proper manner; and

(vii) Promptly notify depositors of its inability to furnish samples, and the reasons why.

(b) A depository seeking status under paragraph (a)(2) of this section must direct a communication to the Commissioner which shall:

(1) Indicate the name and address of the depository to which the communication relates;

(2) Contain detailed information as to the capacity of the depository to comply with the requirements of paragraph (a)(2) of this section, including information on its legal status, scientific standing, staff and facilities;

(3) Indicate that the depository intends to be available, for the purposes of deposit, to any depositor under these same conditions;

(4) Where the depository intends to accept for deposit only certain kinds of biological material, specify such kinds;

(5) Indicate the amount of any fees that the depository will, upon acquiring the status of suitable depository under paragraph (a)(2) of this section, charge for storage, viability statements and furnishings of samples of the deposit.

(c) A depository having status under paragraph (a)(2) of this section limited to certain kinds of biological material may extend such status to additional kinds of biological material by directing a communication to the Commissioner in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section. If a previous communication under paragraph (b) of this section is of record, items in common with the previous communication may be incorporated by reference.

(d) Once a depository is recognized to be suitable by the Commissioner or has defaulted or discontinued its performance under this section, notice thereof will be published in the Office Gazette of the Patent and Trademark Office.

§ 1.804 Time of making an original deposit.

(a) Whenever a biological material is specifically identified in an application for patent as filed, an original deposit thereof may be made at any time before filing the application for patent or, subject to § 1.809, during pendency of the application for patent.

(b) When the original deposit is made after the effective filing date of an application for patent, the applicant shall promptly submit a verified statement from a person in a position to corroborate the fact, and shall state, that the biological material which is deposited is a biological material specifically identified in the application as filed, except if the person is an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Office, in which case the statement need not be verified.

§ 1.805 Replacement or supplement of deposit.

(a) A depositor, after receiving notice during the pendency of an application for patent, application for reissue patent or reexamination proceeding, that the depository possessing a deposit either cannot furnish samples thereof or can furnish samples thereof but the deposit has become contaminated or has lost its capability to function as described in the specification, shall notify the Office in writing, in each application for patent or patent affected. In such a case, or where the Office otherwise learns, during the pendency of an application for patent, application for reissue patent or reexamination proceeding, that the depository possessing a deposit either cannot furnish samples thereof or can furnish samples thereof but the deposit has become contaminated or has lost its capability to function as described in the specification, the need for making a replacement or supplemental deposit will be governed by the same considerations governing the need for making an original deposit under the provisions set forth in § 1.802(b). A replacement or supplemental deposit made during the pendency of an application for patent shall not be accepted unless it meets the requirements for making an original deposit under these regulations, including the requirement set forth under § 1.804(b). A replacement or supplemental deposit made in connection with a patent, whether or not made during the pendency of an application for reissue patent or a reexamination proceeding or both, shall not be accepted unless a certificate of correction under § 1.323 is requested by the patent owner which meets the terms of paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section.

(b) A request for certificate of correction under this section shall not be granted unless the certificate identifies:

(1) The accession number for the replacement or supplemental deposit;

(2) The date of the deposit; and

(3) The name and address of the depository.

(c) A request for a certificate of correction under this section shall not be granted unless the request is made promptly after the replacement or supplemental deposit has been made and:

(1) Includes a verified statement of the reason for making the replacement or supplemental deposit;

(2) Includes a verified statement from a person in a position to corroborate

the fact, and shall state, that the replacement or supplemental deposit is of a biological material which is identical to that originally deposited;

(3) Includes a verified showing that the patent owner acted diligently—

(i) In the case of a replacement deposit, in making the deposit after receiving notice that samples could no longer be furnished from an earlier deposit or

(ii) In the case of a supplemental deposit, in making the deposit after receiving notice that the earlier deposit and become contaminated or had lost its compability to function as described in the specification;

(4) Includes a verified statement that the term of the replacement or supplemental deposit expires no earlier than the term of the deposit being replaced or supplemented; and

(5) Otherwise establishes compliance with these regulations, except that if the person making one or more of the required statements or showing is an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Office, that statement or showing need not be verified.

(d) A depositor's failure to replace a deposit, or in the case of a patent, to diligently replace a deposit and promptly thereafter request a certificate of correction which meets the terms of paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, after being notified that the depository possessing the deposit cannot furnish samples thereof, shall cause the application or patent involved to be treated in any Office proceeding as if no deposit were made.

(e) In the event a deposit is replaced according to these regulations, the Office will apply a rebuttable presumption of identity between the original and the replacement deposit where a patent making reference to the deposit is relied upon during any Office proceeeding.

(f) A replacement or supplement deposit made during the pendency of an application for patent may be made for any reason.

(g) In no case is a replacement or supplemental deposit of a biological material necessary where the biological material, in accordance with §1.802(b), need not be deposited.

(h) No replacement deposit of a biological material is necessary where a depository can furnish samples thereof but the depository for national security, health or environmental safety reasons is unable to provide samples to requesters outside of the jurisdiction where the depository is located.

(i) The Office will not recognize in any Office proceeding a replacement deposit of a biological material made by a patent owner where the depository could furnish samples of the deposit being replaced.

§1.806 Term of deposit.

A deposit made before or during pendency of an application for patent shall be made for a term of at least thirty (30) years and at least five (5) years after the most recent request for the furnishing of a sample of the deposit was received by the depository. In any case, samples must be stored under agreements that would make them available beyond the enforceable life of the patent for which the deposit was made.

§1.807 Viability of deposit.

(a) A deposit of biological material that is capable of self-replication either directly or indirectly must be viable at the time of deposit and during the term of deposit. Viability may be tested by the depository. The test must conclude only that the deposited material is capable of reproduction. No evidence is necessarily required regarding the ability of the deposited material to perform any function described in the patent application.

(b) A viability statement for each deposit of a biological material defined in paragraph (a) of this section not made under the Budapest Treaty on the International Recognition of the Deposit of Microorganisms for the Purposes of Patent Procedure must be filed in the application and must contain:

(1) The name and address of the depository;

(2) The name and address of the depositor;

(3) The date of deposit;

(4) The identity of the deposit and the accession number given by the depository;

(5) The date of the viability test;

(6) The procedures used to obtain a sample if the test is not done by the depository; and

(7) A statement that the deposit is capable of reproduction.

(c) If a viability test indicates that the deposit is not viable upon receipt, or the examiner cannot, for scientific or other valid reasons, accept the statement of viability received from the applicant, the examiner shall proceed as if no deposit has been made. The examiner will accept the conclusion set forth in a viability statement issued by a depository recognized under § 1.803(a).

§ 1.808 Furnishing of samples.

(a) A deposit must be made under conditions that assure that:

(1) Access to the deposit will be available during pendency of the patent application making reference to the deposit to one determined by the Commissioner to be entitled thereto under § 1.14 and 35 U.S.C. 122, and

(2) Subject to paragraph (b) of this section, all restrictions imposed by the depositor on the availability to the public of the deposited material will be irrevocably removed upon the granting of the patent.

(b) The depositor may contract with the depository to require that samples of a deposited biological material shall be furnished only if a request for a sample, during the term of the patent:

(1) Is in writing or other tangible form and dated;

(2) Contains the name and address of the requesting party and the accession number of the deposit; and

(3) Is communicated in writing by the depository to the depositor along with the date on which the sample was furnished and the name and address of the party to whom the sample was furnished.

(c) Upon request made to the Office, the Office will certify whether a deposit has been stated to have been made under conditions which make it available to the public as of the issue date of the patent grant provided the request contains:

(1) The name and address of the depository;

(2) The accession number given to the deposit;

(3) The patent number and issue date of the patent referring to the deposit; and

(4) The name and address of the requesting party.

§ 1.809 Examination procedures.

(a) The examiner shall determine pursuant to § 1.104 in each application for patent, application for reissue patent or reexamination proceeding if a deposit is needed, and if needed, if a deposit actually made is acceptable for patent purposes. If a deposit is needed and has not been made or replaced or supplemented in accordance with these regulations, the examiner, where appropriate, shall reject the affected claims under the appropriate provision of 35 U.S.C. 112, explaining why a deposit is needed and/or why a deposit actually made cannot be accepted.

(b) The applicant for patent or patent owner shall respond to a rejection under paragraph (a) of this section by—

(1) In the case of an applicant for patent, making an acceptable original or replacement or supplemental deposit or assuring the Office in writing that an acceptable deposit will be made on or before the date of payment of the issue fee, or, in the case of a patent owner, requesting a certificate of correction of the patent which meets the terms of paragraphs (b) and (c) of § 1.805, or

(2) Arguing why a deposit is not needed under the circumstances of the application or patent considered and/or why a deposit actually made should be accepted. Other replies to the examiner's action shall be considered non-responsive. The rejection will be repeated until either paragraph (b)(1) of this section is satisfied or the examiner is convinced that a deposit is not needed.

(c) If an application for patent is otherwise in condition for allowance except for a needed deposit and the Office has received a written assurance that an acceptable deposit will be made on or before payment of the issue fee, the Office will mail to the applicant a Notice of Allowance and Issue Fee Due together with a requirement that the needed deposit be made within three months. The period for satisfying this requirement is extendable under § 1.136. Failure to make the needed deposit in

accordance with this requirement will result in abandonment of the application for failure to prosecute.

(d) For each deposit made pursuant to these regulations, the specification shall contain:

(1) The accession number for the deposit;

(2) The date of the deposit;

(3) A description of the deposited biological material sufficient to specifically identify it and to permit examination; and

(4) The name and address of the depository.

APPLICATION DISCLOSURES CONTAINING NUCLEOTIDE AND/OR AMINO ACID SEQUENCES

SOURCE: Sections 1.821 through 1.825 appear at 55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990, unless otherwise noted.

§1.821 Nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence disclosures in patent applications.

(a) Nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences as used in §§1.821 through 1.825 is interpreted to mean an unbranched sequence of four or more amino acids or an unbranched sequence of ten or more nucleotides. Branched sequences are specifically excluded from this definition. Nucleotides and amino acids are further defined as follows:

(1) *Nucleotides* are intended to embrace only those nucleotides that can be represented using the symbols set forth in §1.822(b)(1). Modifications, *e.g.*, methylated bases, may be described as set forth in §1.822(b), but shall not be shown explicitly in the nucleotide sequence.

(2) *Amino acids* are those L-amino acids commonly found in naturally occurring proteins and are listed in §1.822(b)(2). Those amino acid sequences containing D-amino acids are not intended to be embraced by this definition. Any amino acid sequence that contains post-translationally modified amino acids may be described as the amino acid sequence that is initially translated using the symbols shown in §1.822(b)(2) with the modified positions, *e.g.*, hydroxylations or glycosylations, being described as set forth in §1.822(b), but these modifications shall not be shown explicitly in the amino acid sequence. Any peptide or protein that can be expressed as a sequence using the symbols in §1.822(b)(2) in conjunction with a description elsewhere in the ''Sequence Listing'' to describe, for example, modified linkages, cross links and end caps, non-peptidyl bonds, etc., is embraced by this definition.

(b) Patent applications which contain disclosures of nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences, in accordance with the definition in paragraph (a) of this section, shall, with regard to the manner in which the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences are presented and described, conform exclusively to the requirements of §§1.821 through 1.825.

(c) Patent applications which contain disclosures of nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences must contain, as a separate part of the disclosure on paper copy, hereinafter referred to as the ''Sequence Listing,'' a disclosure of the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences and associated information using the symbols and format in accordance with the requirements of §§1.822 and 1.823. Each sequence disclosed must appear separately in the ''Sequence Listing.'' Each sequence set forth in the ''Sequence Listing'' shall be assigned a separate identifier written as SEQ ID NO:1, SEQ ID NO:2, SEQ ID NO:3, etc.

(d) Where the description or claims of a patent application discuss a sequence listing that is set forth in the ''Sequence Listing'' in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section, reference must be made to the sequence by use of the assigned identifier, in the text of the description or claims, even if the sequence is also embedded in the text of the description or claims of the patent application.

(e) A copy of the ''Sequence Listing'' referred to in paragraph (c) of this section must also be submitted in computer readable form in accordance with the requirements of §1.824. The computer readable form is a copy of the ''Sequence Listing'' and will not necessarily be retained as part of the patent application file. If the computer readable form of a new application is to be identical with the computer readable form of another application of the

applicant on file in the Office, reference may be made to the other application and computer readable form in lieu of filing a duplicate computer readable form in the new application. The new application shall be accompanied by a letter making such reference to the other application and computer readable form, both of which shall be completely identified.

(f) In addition to the paper copy required by paragraph (c) of this section and the computer readable form required by paragraph (e) of this section, a statement that the content of the paper and computer readable copies are the same must be submitted with the computer readable form. Such a statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Office.

(g) If any of the requirements of paragraphs (b) through (f) of this section are not satisfied at the time of filing under 35 U.S.C. 111 or at the time of entering the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371, applicant has one month from the date of a notice which will be sent requiring compliance with the requirements in order to prevent abandonment of the application. Any submission in response to a requirement under this paragraph must be accompanied by a statement that the submission includes no new matter. Such a statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Office.

(h) If any of the requirements of paragraphs (b) through (f) of this section are not satisfied at the time of filing, in the United States Receiving Office, an international application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT), applicant has one month from the date of a notice which will be sent requiring compliance with the requirements, or such other time as may be set by the Commissioner, in which to comply. Any submission in response to a requirement under this paragraph must be accompanied by a statement that the submission does not include new matter or go beyond the disclosure in the international application as filed. Such a statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Office. If applicant fails to timely provide the required computer readable form, the United States International Searching Authority shall search only to the extent that a meaningful search can be performed.

(i) Neither the presence nor the absence of information which is not required under §§ 1.821 through 1.825, in an application shall create any presumption that such information is necessary to satisfy one or more of the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112. Further, the grant of a patent on an application that is subject to the requirements of §§ 1.821 through 1.825 shall constitute a conclusive presumption that said patent complies with the requirements of §§ 1.821 through 1.825.

(j) Envelopes containing only application papers, computer readable forms and fees filed under this section should be marked ''Box SEQUENCE.''

[55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990, as amended at 58 FR 4348, Jan. 14, 1993]

§ 1.822 Symbols and format to be used for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence data.

(a) The symbols and format to be used for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence data shall conform to the requirements of paragraphs (b) through (p) of this section.

(b) The code for representing the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence characters shall conform to the code set forth in the tables in paragraphs (b)(1) and (b)(2) of this section. No code other than that specified in this section shall be used in nucleotide and amino acid sequences. A modified base or amino acid may be presented in a given sequence as the corresponding unmodified base or amino acid if the modified base or amino acid is one of those listed in paragraphs (p)(1) or (p)(2) of this section and the modification is also set forth elsewhere in the Sequence Listing (for example, FEATURES § 1.823(b)(2)(ix)). Otherwise, all bases or amino acids not appearing in paragraphs (b)(1) or (b)(2) of this section shall be listed in a given sequence as ''N'' or ''Xaa,'' respectively, with further information, as appropriate, given elsewhere in the Sequence Listing.

(1) Base codes:

Symbol	Meaning
A	A; adenine
C	C; cytosine
G	G; guanine
T	T; thymine
U	U; uracil
M	A or C
R	A or G
W	A or T/U
S	C or G
Y	C or T/U
K	G or T/U
V	A or C or G; not T/U
H	A or C or T/U; not G
D	A or G or T/U; not C
B	C or G or T/U; not A
N	(A or C or G or T/U) or (unknown or other)

(2) Amino acid three-letter abbreviations:

Abbreviation	Amino acid name
Ala	Alanine
Arg	Arginine
Asn	Asparagine
Asp	Aspartic Acid
Asx	Aspartic Acid or Asparagine
Cys	Cysteine
Glu	Glutamic Acid
Gln	Glutamine
Glx	Glutamine or Glutamic Acid
Gly	Glycine
His	Histidine
Ile	Isoleucine
Leu	Leucine
Lys	Lysine
Met	Methionine
Phe	Phenylalanine
Pro	Proline
Ser	Serine
Thr	Threonine
Trp	Tryptophan
Tyr	Tyrosine
Val	Valine
Xaa	Unknown or other

(c) A nucleotide sequence shall be listed using the one-letter code for the nucleotide bases, as in paragraph (b)(1) of this section.

(d) The amino acids corresponding to the codons in the coding parts of a nucleotide sequence shall be typed immediately below the corresponding codons. Where a codon spans an intron, the amino acid symbol shall be typed below the portion of the codon containing two nucleotides.

(e) The amino acids in a protein or peptide sequence shall be listed using the three-letter abbreviation with the first letter as an upper case character, as in paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

(f) The bases in a nucleotide sequence (including introns) shall be listed in groups of 10 bases except in the coding parts of a sequence. Leftover bases, fewer than 10 in number, at the end of noncoding parts of a sequence shall be grouped together and separated from adjacent groups of 10 or 3 bases by a space.

(g) The bases in the coding parts of a nucleotide sequence shall be listed as triplets (codons).

(h) A protein or peptide sequence shall be listed with a maximum of 16 amino acids per line, with a space provided between each amino acid.

(i) A nucleotide sequence shall be listed with a maximum of 16 codons or 60 bases per line, with a space provided between each codon or group of 10 bases.

(j) A nucleotide sequence shall be presented, only by a single strand, in the 5′ to 3′ direction, from left to right.

(k) An amino acid sequence shall be presented in the amino to carboxy direction, from left to right, and the amino and carboxy groups shall not be presented in the sequence.

(l) The enumeration of nucleotide bases shall start at the first base of the sequence with number 1. The enumeration shall be continuous through the whole sequence in the direction 5′ to 3′. The enumeration shall be marked in the right margin, next to the line containing the one-letter codes for the bases, and giving the number of the last base of that line.

(m) The enumeration of amino acids may start at the first amino acid of the first mature protein, with number 1. The amino acids preceding the mature protein, e.g., pre-sequences, pro-sequences, pre-pro-sequences and signal sequences, when presented, shall have negative numbers, counting backwards starting with the amino acid next to number 1. Otherwise, the enumeration of amino acids shall start at the first amino acid at the amino terminal as number 1. It shall be marked below the sequence every 5 amino acids.

(n) For those nucleotide sequences that are circular in configuration, the enumeration method set forth in paragraph (l) of this section remains applicable with the exception that the designation of the first base of the nucleotide sequence may be made at the option of the applicant. The enumeration method for amino acid sequences that is set forth in paragraph

(m) of this section remains applicable for amino acid sequences that are circular in configuration.

(o) A sequence with a gap or gaps shall be presented as a plurality of separate sequences, with separate sequence identifiers, with the number of separate sequences being equal in number to the number of continuous strings of sequence data. A sequence that is made up of one or more noncontiguous segments of a larger sequence or segments from different sequences shall be presented as a separate sequence.

(p) The code for representing modified nucleotide bases and modified and unusual amino acids shall conform to the code set forth in the tables in paragraphs (p)(1) and (p)(2) of this section. The modified base controlled vocabulary in paragraph (p)(1) of this section and the modified and unusual amino acids in paragraph (p)(2) of this section shall not be used in the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences; but may be used in the description and/or the ''Sequence Listing'' corresponding to, but not including, the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence.

(1) Modified base controlled vocabulary:

Abbreviation	Modified base description
ac4c	4-acetylcytidine.
chm5u	5-(carboxyhydroxylmethyl)uridine.
cm	2′-O-methylcytidine.
cmnm5s2u	5-carboxymethylaminomethyl-2-thioridine.
cmnm5u	5-carboxymethylaminomethyluridine.
d	dihydrouridine.
fm	2′-O-methylpseudouridine.
galq	beta,D-galactosylqueosine
gm	2′-O-methylguanosine.
i	inosine.
i6a	N6-isopentenyladenosine.
m1a	1-methyladenosine.
m1f	1-methylpseudouridine.
m1g	1-methylguanosine.
ml1	1-methylinosine.
m22g	2,2-dimethylguanosine.
m2a	2-methyladenosine.
m2g	2-methylguanosine.
m3c	3-methylcytidine.
m5c	5-methylcytidine.
m6a	N6-methyladenosine.
m7g	7-methylguanosine.
mam5u	5-methylaminomethyluridine.
mam5s2u	5-methoxyaminomethyl-2-thiouridine.
manq	beta,D-mannosylqueosine.
mcm5s2u	5-methoxycarbonylmethyluridine.
mo5u	5-methoxyuridine.
ms2i6a	2-methylthio-N6-isopentenyladenosine.
ms2t6a	N-((9-beta-D-ribofuranosyl-2-methylthiopurine-6-yl)carbamoyl)threonine.
mt6a	N-((9-beta-D-ribofuranosylpurine-6-yl)N-methyl-carbamoyl)threonine.
mv	uridine-5-oxyacetic acid methylester.
o5u	uridine-5-oxyacetic acid (v).
osyw	wybutoxosine.
p	pseudouridine.
q	queosine.
s2c	2-thiocytidine.
s2t	5-methyl-2-thiouridine.
s2u	2-thiouridine.
s4u	4-thiouridine.
t	5-methyluridine.
t6a	N-((9-beta-D-ribofuranosylpurine-6-yl)carbamoyl)threonine.
tm	2′-O-methyl-5-methyluridine.
um	2′-O-methyluridine.
yw	wybutosine.
x	3-(3-amino-3-carboxypropyl)uridine, (acp3)u.

(2) Modified and unusual amino acids:

Abbreviation	Modified and unusual amino acid
Aad	2-Aminoadipic acid.
bAad	3-Aminoadipic acid.
bAla	beta-Alanine,beta-Aminopropionic acid.
Abu	2-Aminobutyric acid.
4Abu	4-Aminobutyric acid, piperidinic acid.
Acp	6-Aminocaproic acid.
Ahe	2-Aminoheptanoic acid.
Aib	2-Aminoisobutyric acid.
bAib	3-Aminoisobutyric acid.
Apm	2-Aminopimelic acid.
Dbu	2,4-Diaminobutyric acid.
Des	Desmosine.
Dpm	2,2′-Diaminopimelic acid.
Dpr	2,3-Diaminopropionic acid.
EtGly	N-Ethylglycine.
EtAsn	N-Ethylasparagine.
Hyl	Hydroxylysine.
aHyl	allo-Hydroxylysine.
3Hyp	3-Hydroxyproline.
4Hyp	4-Hydroxyproline.
Ide	Isodesmosine.
alle	allo-Isoleucine.
MeGly	N-Methylglycine, sarcosine.
Melle	N-Methylisoleucine.
MeLys	N-Methylvaline.
Nva	Norvaline.
Nle	Norleucine.
Orn	Ornithine.

§ 1.823 Requirements for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences as part of the application papers.

(a) The ''Sequence Listing,'' required by § 1.821(c), setting forth the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences, and associated information in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section, must begin on a new page and be titled ''Sequence Listing'' and appear immediately prior to the claims. Each page of the ''Sequence Listing'' shall contain no more than 66 lines and each line shall contain no more than 72 characters. A fixed-width font shall be

used exclusively throughout the ''Sequence Listing.''

(b) The ''Sequence Listing'' shall, except as otherwise indicated, include, in addition to and immediately preceding the actual nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence, the following items of information. The order and presentation of the items of information in the ''Sequence Listing'' shall conform to the arrangement given below, except that parenthetical explanatory information following the headings (identifiers) is to be omitted. Each item of information shall begin on a new line, enumerated with the number/numeral/letter in parentheses as shown below, with the heading (identifier) in upper case characters, followed by a colon, and then followed by the information provided. Except as allowed below, no item of information shall occupy more than one line. Those items of information that are applicable for all sequences shall only be set forth once in the ''Sequence Listing.'' The submission of those items of information designated with an ''M'' is mandatory. The submission of those items of information designated with an ''R'' is recommended, but not required. The submission of those items of information designated with an ''O'' is optional. Those items designated with ''rep'' may have multiple responses and, as such, the item may be repeated in the ''Sequence Listing.''

(1) GENERAL INFORMATION (Application, diskette/tape and publication information):

(i) APPLICANT (maximum of first ten named applicants; specify one name per line: SURNAME comma OTHER NAMES and/or INITIALS—M/rep):

(ii) TITLE OF INVENTION (title of the invention, as elsewhere in application, four lines maximum—M):

(iii) NUMBER OF SEQUENCES (number of sequences in the ''Sequence Listing''—M):

(iv) CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS (M):

(A) ADDRESSEE (name of applicant, firm, company or institution, as may be appropriate):

(B) STREET (correspondence street address, as elsewhere in application, four lines maximum):

(C) CITY (correspondence city address, as elsewhere in application):

(D) STATE (correspondence State, as elsewhere in application):

(E) COUNTRY (correspondence country, as elsewhere in application):

(F) ZIP (correspondence zip or postal code, as elsewhere in application):

(v) COMPUTER READABLE FORM (M):

(A) MEDIUM TYPE (type of diskette/tape submitted):

(B) COMPUTER (type of computer used with diskette/tape submitted):

(C) OPERATING SYSTEM (type of operating system used):

(D) SOFTWARE (type of software used to create computer readable form):

(vi) CURRENT APPLICATION DATA (M, if available):

(A) APPLICATION NUMBER (U.S. application number, including a series code, a slash and a serial number, or U.S. PCT application number, including the letters PCT, a slash, a two letter code indicating the U.S. as the Receiving Office, a two digit indication of the year, a slash and a five digit number, if available):

(B) FILING DATE (U.S. or PCT application filing date, if available; specify as dd-MMM-yyyy):

(C) CLASSIFICATION (IPC/US classification or F-term designation, where F-terms have been developed, if assigned, specify each designation, left justified, within an eighteen position alpha numeric field—rep, to a maximum of ten classification designations):

(vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA (prior domestic, foreign priority or international application data, if applicable—M/rep):

(A) APPLICATION NUMBER (application number; specify as two letter country code and an eight digit application number; or if a PCT application, specify as the letters PCT, a slash, a two letter code indicating the Receiving Office, a two digit indication of the year, a slash and a five digit number):

(B) FILING DATE (document filing date, specify as dd-MMM-yyyy):

(viii) ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION (O):

(A) NAME (attorney/agent name; SURNAME comma OTHER NAMES and/or INITIALS):

(B) REGISTRATION NUMBER (attorney/agent registration number):

(C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER (attorney/agent reference or docket number):

(ix) TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION (O):

(A) TELEPHONE (telephone number of applicant or attorney/agent):

(B) TELEFAX (telefax number of applicant or attorney/agent):

(C) TELEX (telex number of applicant or attorney/agent):

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO: X(rep):

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS (M):

(A) LENGTH (sequence length, expressed as number of base pairs or amino acid residues):

(B) TYPE (sequence type, i.e., whether nucleic acid or amino acid):

(C) STRANDEDNESS (if nucleic acid, number of strands of source organism molecule, i.e., whether single stranded, double stranded, both or unknown to applicant):

(D) TOPOLOGY (whether source organism molecule is circular, linear, both or unknown to applicant)

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE (type of molecule sequenced in SEQ ID NO:X (at least one of the following should be included with subheadings, if any, in Sequence Listing—R)):

—Genomic RNA;
—Genomic DNA;
—mRNA
—tRNA;
—rRNA;
—snRNA;
—scRNA;
—preRNA;
—cDNA to genomic RNA;
—cDNA to mRNA;
—cDNA to tRNA;
—cDNA to rRNA;
—cDNA to snRNA;
—cDNA to scRNA;
—Other nucleic acid;

(A) DESCRIPTION (four lines maximum):

—protein and
—peptide.

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL (yes/no—R):

(iv) ANTI-SENSE (yes/no—R):

(v) FRAGMENT TYPE (for proteins and peptides only, at least one of the following should be included in the Sequence Listing—R):

—N-terminal fragment;
—C-terminal fragment and
—internal fragment.

(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE (original source of molecule sequenced in SEQ ID NO:X–R):

(A) ORGANISM (scientific name of source organism):

(B) STRAIN:

(C) INDIVIDUAL ISOLATE (name/number of individual/isolate):

(D) DEVELOPMENTAL STAGE (give developmental stage of source organism and indicate whether derived from germ-line or rearranged developmental pattern):

(E) HAPLOTYPE:

(F) TISSUE TYPE:

(G) CELL TYPE:

(H) CELL LINE:

(I) ORGANELLE:

(vii) IMMEDIATE SOURCE (immediate experimental source of the sequence in SEQ ID NO:X–R):

(A) LIBRARY (library-type, name):

(B) CLONE (clone(s)):

(viii) POSITION IN GENOME (position of sequence in SEQ ID NO:X in genome–R):

(A) CHROMOSOME/SEGMENT (chromosome/segment—name/number):

(B) MAP POSITION:

(C) UNITS (units for map position, i.e., whether units are genome percent, nucleotide number or other/specify):

(ix) FEATURE (description of points of biological significance in the sequence in SEQ ID NO:X–R/rep):

(A) NAME/KEY (provide appropriate identifier for feature—four lines maximum):

(B) LOCATION (specify location according to syntax of DDBJ/EMBL/GenBank Feature Tables Definition, including whether feature is on complement of presented sequence; where appropriate state number of first and last bases/amino acids in feature-four lines maximum):

(C) IDENTIFICATION METHOD (method by which the feature was identified, i.e., by experiment, by similarity with known sequence or to an established consensus sequence, or by

similarity to some other pattern—four lines maximum):

(D) OTHER INFORMATION (include information on phenotype conferred, biological activity of sequence or its product, macromolecules which bind to sequence or its product, or other relevant information—four lines maximum):

(x) PUBLICATION INFORMATION (Repeat section for each relevant publication—O/rep):

(A) AUTHORS (maximum of first ten named authors of publication; specify one name per line: SURNAME comma OTHER NAMES and/or INITIALS—rep):

(B) TITLE (title of publication):

(C) JOURNAL (journal name in which data published):

(D) VOLUME (journal volume in which data published):

(E) ISSUE (journal issue number in which data published):

(F) PAGES (journal page numbers in which data published):

(G) DATE (journal date in which data published; specify as dd-MMM-yyyy, MMM-yyyy or Season-yyyy):

(H) DOCUMENT NUMBER (document number, for patent type citations only; specify as two letter country code, eight digit document number (right justified), one letter and, as appropriate, one number or a space as a document type code; of if a PCT application, specify as the letters PCT, a slash, a two letter code indicating the Receiving Office, a two digit indication of the year, a slash and a five digit number; or if a PCT publication, specify as the two letters WO, a two digit indication of the year, a slash and a five digit publication number):

(I) FILING DATE (document filing date, for patent-type citations only; specify as dd-MMM-yyyy):

(J) PUBLICATION DATE (document publication date; for patent-type citations only, specify as dd-MMM-yyyy):

(K) RELEVANT RESIDUES In SEQ ID NO:X (rep): FROM (position) TO (position)

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:X:

§1.824 Form and format for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence submissions in computer readable form.

(a) The computer readable form required by §1.821(e) shall contain a printable copy of the ''Sequence Listing,'' as defined in §§1.821(c), 1.822 and 1.823, recorded as a single file on either a diskette or a magnetic tape. The computer readable form shall be encoded and formatted such that a printed copy of the ''Sequence Listing'' may be recreated using the print commands of the computer/operating-system configuration specified in paragraph (f) of this section.

(b) The file in paragraph (a) of this section shall be encoded in a subset of the American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII). This subset shall consist of all the printable ASCII characters including the ASCII space character plus line-termination, pagination and end-of-file characters associated with the computer/operating-system configurations specified in paragraph (f) of this section. No other characters shall be allowed.

(c) The computer readable form may be created by any means, such as word processors, nucleotide/amino acid sequence editors or other custom computer programs; however, it shall be readable by one of the computer/operating-system configurations specified in paragraph (f) of this section, and shall conform to the specifications in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section.

(d) The entire printable copy of the ''Sequence Listing'' shall be contained within one file on a single diskette or magnetic tape unless it is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner that it is not practical or possible to submit the entire printable copy of the ''Sequence Listing'' within one file on a single diskette or magnetic tape.

(e) The submitted diskette or tape shall be write-protected such as by covering or uncovering diskette holes, removing diskette write tabs or removing tape write rings.

(f) As set forth in paragraph (c), above, any means may be used to create the computer readable form, as long as the following conditions are satisfied. A submitted diskette shall be readable on one of the computer/operating-system configurations described

in paragraphs (1) through (3), below. A submitted tape shall satisfy the format specifications described in paragraph (4), below.

(1) Computer: IBM PC/XT/AT, IBM PS/2 or compatibles;

(i) Operating system: PC–DOS or MS–DOS (Versions 2.1 or above);

(ii) Line Terminator: ASCII Carriage Return plus ASCII Line Feed;

(iii) Pagination: ASCII Form Feed or Series of Line Terminators;

(iv) End-of-File: ASCII SUB (Ctrl-Z);

(v) Media: (A) Diskette—5.25 inch, 360 Kb storage;

(B) Diskette—5.25 inch, 1.2 Mb storage;

(C) Diskette—3.50 inch, 720 Kb storage;

(D) Diskette—3.5 inch, 1.44 Mb storage;

(vi) Print Command: PRINT filename.extension;

(2) Computer: IBM PC/XT/AT, IBM PS/2 or compatibles;

(i) Operating system: Xenix;

(ii) Line Terminator: ASCII Carriage Return;

(iii) Pagination: ASCII Form Feed or Series of Line Terminators;

(iv) End-of-File: None;

(v) Media: (A) Diskette—5.25 inch, 360 Kb storage;

(B) Diskette—5.25 inch, 1.2 Mb storage;

(C) Diskette—3.50 inch, 720 Kb storage;

(D) Diskette—3.5 inch, 1.44 Mb storage;

(vi) Print Command: Ipr filename;

(3) Computer: Apple Macintosh;

(i) Operating System: Macintosh;

(ii) Macintosh File Type: text with line termination

(iii) Line Terminator: Pre-defined by text type file;

(iv) Pagination: Pre-defined by text type file;

(v) End-of-file: Pre-defined by text type file;

(vi) Media: (A) Diskett—3.50 inch, 400 Kb storage;

(B) Diskette—3.50 inch, 800 Kb storage;

(C) Diskette—3.50 inch, 1.4 Mb storage;

(vii) Print Command: Use PRINT command from any Macintosh Application that processes text files, such as MacWrite or Teach Text;

(4) Magnetic tape: 0.5 inch, up to 2400 feet;

(i) Density: 1600 or 6250 bits per inch, 9 track;

(ii) Format: raw, unblocked;

(iii) Line Terminator: ASCII Carriage Return plus optional ASCII Line Feed;

(iv) Pagination: ASCII Form Feed or Series of Line Terminators;

(v) Print Command (Unix shell version given here as sample response—mt/dev/rmt0; lpr/dev/rmt0):

(g) Computer readable forms that are submitted to the Office will not be returned to the applicant.

(h) All computer readable forms shall have a label permanently affixed thereto on which has been hand printed or typed, a description of the format of the computer readable form as well as the name of the applicant, the title of the invention, the date on which the data were recorded on the computer readable form and the name and type of computer and operating system which generated the files on the computer readable form. If all of this information cannot be printed on a label affixed to the computer readable form, by reason of size or otherwise, the label shall include the name of the applicant and the title of the invention and a reference number, and the additional information may be provided on a container for the computer readable form with the name of the applicant, the title of the invention, the reference number and the additional information affixed to the container. If the computer readable form is submitted after the date of filing under 35 U.S.C. 111, after the date of entry in the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371 or after the time of filing, in the United States Receiving Office, an international application under the PCT, the labels mentioned herein must also include the date of the application and the application number, including series code and serial number.

§ 1.825 Amendments to or replacement of sequence listing and computer readable copy thereof.

(a) Any amendment to the paper copy of the ''Sequence Listing'' (§ 1.821(c)) must be made by the submission of

substitute sheets. Amendments must be accompanied by a statement that indicates support for the amendment in the application, as filed, and a statement that the substitute sheets include no new matter. Such a statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Office.

(b) Any amendment to the paper copy of the ''Sequence Listing,'' in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section, must be accompanied by a substitute copy of the computer readable form (§1.821(e)) including all previously submitted data with the amendment incorporated therein, accompanied by a statement that the copy in computer readable form is the same as the substitute copy of the ''Sequence Listing.'' Such a statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Office.

(c) Any appropriate amendments to the ''Sequence Listing'' in a patent, e.g., by reason of reissue or certificate of correction, must comply with the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section.

(d) If, upon receipt, the computer readable form is found to be damaged or unreadable, applicant must provide, within such time as set by the Commissioner, a substitute copy of the data in computer readable form accompanied by a statement that the substitute data is identical to that originally filed. Such a statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Office.

APPENDIX A TO SUBPART G TO PART 1—SAMPLE SEQUENCE LISTING

(1) GENERAL INFORMATION:
(i) APPLICANT: Doe, Joan X, Doe, John Q
(ii) TITLE OF INVENTION: Isolation and Characterization of a Gene Encoding a Protease from *Paramecium* sp.
(iii) NUMBER OF SEQUENCES: 2
(iv) CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS:
(A) ADDRESSEE: Smith and Jones
(B) STREET: 123 Main Street
(C) CITY: Smalltown
(D) STATE: Anystate
(E) COUNTRY: USA
(F) ZIP: 12345
(v) COMPUTER READABLE FORM:
(A) MEDIUM TYPE: Diskette, 3.50 inch, 800 Kb storage
(B) COMPUTER: Apple Macintosh
(C) OPERATING SYSTEM: Mcintosh 5.0
(D) SOFTWARE: MacWrite
(vi) CURRENT APPLICATION DATA:
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: 09/999,999
(B) FILING DATE: 28-FEB-1989
(C) CLASSIFICATION: 999/99
(vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: PCT/US88/99999
(B) FILING DATE: 01-MAR-1988
(viii) ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION:
(A) NAME: Smith, John A.
(B) REGISTRATION NUMBER: 00001
(C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER: 01–0001
(ix) TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION:
(A) TELEPHONE: (909) 999–0001
(B) TELEFAX: (909) 999–0002
(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO: 1:
(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 954 base pairs
(B) TYPE: nucleic acid
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear
(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: genomic DNA
(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: yes
(iv) ANTI-SENSE: no
(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:
(A) ORGANISM: Paramecium sp
(C) INDIVIDUAL/ISOLATE: XYZ2
(G) CELL TYPE: unicellular organism
(vii) IMMEDIATE SOURCE:
(A) LIBRARY: genomic
(B) CLONE: Para–XYZ2/36
(x) PUBLICATION INFORMATION:
(A) AUTHORS: Doe, Joan X, Doe, John Q
(B) TITLE: Isolation and Characterization of a Gene Encoding a Protease from *Paramecium* sp.
(C) JOURNAL: Fictional Genes
(D) VOLUME: I
(E) ISSUE: 1
(F) PAGES: 1–20
(G) DATE: 02-MAR-1988
(K) RELEVANT RESIDUES IN SEQ ID NO: 1: FROM 1 TO 954

(xi)SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:1:

```
ATCGGGATAG TACTGGTCAA GACCGGTGGA CACCGGTTAA CCCCGGTTAA GTACCGGTTA   60

TAGGCCATTT CAGGCCAAAT GTGCCCAACT ACGCCAATTG TTTTGCCAAC GGCCAACGTT  120

ACGTTCGTAC GCACGTATGT ACCTAGGTAC TTACGGACGT GACTACGGAC ACTTCCGTAC  180

GTACGTACGT TTACGTACCC ATCCCAACGT AACCACAGTG TGGTCGCAGT GTCCCAGTGT  240

ACACAGACTG CCAGACATTC TTCACAGACA CCCC ATG ACA CCA CCT GAA CGT CTC  295
                                      Met Thr Pro Pro Glu Arg Leu
                                                      -30

TTC CTC CCA AGG GTG TGT GGC ACC ACC CTA CAC CTC CTC CTT CTG GGG    343
Phe Leu Pro Arg Val Cys Gly Thr Thr Leu His Leu Leu Leu Leu Gly
       -25                 -20                 -15

CTG CTG CTG GTT CTG CTG CCT GGG GCC CAT GTGAGGCAGC AGGAGAATGG      393
Leu Leu Leu Val Leu Leu Pro Gly Ala His
    -10                 -5

GGTGGCTCAG CCAAACCTTG AGCCCTAGAG CCCCCCTCAA CTCTGTTCTC CTAG GGG    450
                                                            Gly


CTC ATG CAT CTT GCC CAC AGC AAC CTC AAA CCT GCT GCT CAC CTC ATT    498
Leu Met His Leu Ala His Ser Asn Leu Lys Pro Ala Ala His Leu Ile
 1               5                  10                  15

GTAAACATCC ACCTGACCTC CCAGACATGT CCCCACCAGC TCTCCTCCTA CCCCTGCCTC  558

AGGAACCCAA GCATCCACCC CTCTCCCCCA ACTTCCCCCA CGCTAAAAAA AACAGAGGGA  618

GCCCACTCCT ATGCCTCCCC CTGCCATCCC CCAGGAACTC AGTTGTTCAG TGCCCACTTC  678

TAC CCC AGC AAG CAG AAC TCA CTG CTC TGG AGA GCA AAC ACG GAC CGT    726
Tyr Pro Ser Lys Gln Asn Ser Leu Leu Trp Arg Ala Asn Thr Asp Arg
            20                  25                  30

GCC TTC CTC CAG GAT GGT TTC TCC TTG AGC AAC AAT TCT CTC CTG GTC    774
Ala Phe Leu Gln Asp Gly Phe Ser Leu Ser Asn Asn Ser Leu Leu Val
         35                 40                  45

TAGAAAAAAT AATTGATTTC AAGACCTTCT CCCCATTCTG CCTCCATTCT GACCATTTCA  834

GGGGTCGTCA CCACCTCTCC TTTGGCCATT CCAACAGCTC AAGTCTTCCC TGATCAAGTC  894

ACCGGAGCTT TCAAAGAAGG AATTCTAGGC ATCCCAGGGG ACCCACACCT CCCTGAACCA  954
```

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO: 2:
(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH: 82 amino acids
(B) TYPE: amino acid
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear
(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein
(ix) FEATURE:
(A) NAME/KEY: signal sequence
(B) LOCATION: –34 to –1
(C) IDENTIFICATION METHOD: similarity to other signal sequences, hydrophobic
(D) OTHER INFORMATION: expresses protease
(x) PUBLICATION INFORMATION:
(A) AUTHORS: Doe, Joan X, Doe, John Q
(B) TITLE: Isolation and Characterization of a Gene Encoding a Protease from *Paramecium* sp.
(C) JOURNAL: Fictional Genes
(D) VOLUME: I
(E) ISSUE: 1
(F) PAGES: 1–20
(G) DATE: 02-MAR-1988
(K) RELEVANT RESIDUES IN SEQ ID NO: 2: FROM –34 TO 48

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:2:

```
Met Thr Pro Pro Glu Arg Leu Phe Leu Pro Arg Val Cys Gly Thr Thr
                -30                 -25                 -20

Leu His Leu Leu Leu Leu Gly Leu Leu Leu Val Leu Leu Pro Gly Ala
            -15                 -10                 -5

His Gly Leu Met His Leu Ala His Ser Asn Leu Lys Pro Ala Ala His
        1               5                   10

Leu Ile Tyr Pro Ser Lys Gln Asn Ser Leu Leu Trp Arg Ala Asn Thr
15                  20                  25                  30

Asp Arg Ala Phe Leu Gln Asp Gly Phe Ser Leu Ser Asn Asn Ser Leu
                35                  40                  45

Leu Val
```

[55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990]

APPENDIX B TO SUBPART G TO PART 1—HEADINGS FOR INFORMATION ITEMS IN §1.823

(1) GENERAL INFORMATION:
(i) APPLICANT:
(ii) TITLE OF INVENTION:
(iii) NUMBER OF SEQUENCES:
(iv) CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS:
(A) ADDRESSEE:
(B) STREET:
(C) CITY:
(D) STATE:
(E) COUNTRY:
(F) ZIP:
(v) COMPUTER READABLE FORM:
(A) MEDIUM TYPE:
(B) COMPUTER:
(C) OPERATING SYSTEM:
(D) SOFTWARE:
(vi) CURRENT APPLICATION DATA:
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER:
(B) FILING DATE:
(C) CLASSIFICATION:
(vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:
(A) APPLICATION NUMBER:
(B) FILING DATE:
(viii) ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION:
(A) NAME:
(B) REGISTRATION NUMBER:
(C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER:
(ix) TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION:
(A) TELEPHONE:
(B) TELEFAX:
(C) TELEX:
(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO: X:
(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
(A) LENGTH:
(B) TYPE:
(C) STRANDEDNESS:
(D) TOPOLOGY:
(ii) MOLECULE TYPE:
—Genomic RNA;
—Genomic DNA;
—mRNA
—tRNA;
—rRNA;

—snRNA;
—scRNA;
—preRNA;
—cDNA to genomic RNA;
—cDNA to mRNA;
—cDNA to tRNA;
—cDNA to rRNA;
—cDNA to snRNA;
—cDNA to scRNA;
—Other nucleic acid;
(A) DESCRIPTION:
—protein and
—peptide.
(iii) HYPOTHETICAL:
(iv) ANTI-SENSE:
(v) FRAGMENT TYPE:
(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:
(A) ORGANISM:
(B) STRAIN:
(C) INDIVIDUAL ISOLATE:
(D) DEVELOPMENTAL STAGE:
(E) HAPLOTYPE:
(F) TISSUE TYPE:
(G) CELL TYPE:
(H) CELL LINE:
(I) ORGANELLE:
(vii) IMMEDIATE SOURCE:
(A) LIBRARY:
(B) CLONE:
(viii) POSITION IN GENOME:
(A) CHROMOSOME/SEGMENT:
(B) MAP POSITION:
(C) UNITS:
(ix) FEATURE:
(A) NAME/KEY:
(B) LOCATION:
(C) IDENTIFICATION METHOD:
(D) OTHER INFORMATION:
(x) PUBLICATION INFORMATION:
(A) AUTHORS:
(B) TITLE:
(C) JOURNAL:
(D) VOLUME:
(E) ISSUE:
(F) PAGES:
(G) DATE:
(H) DOCUMENT NUMBER:
(I) FILING DATE:
(J) PUBLICATION DATE:
(K) RELEVANT RESIDUES:
(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:X:

[55 FR 18245, May 1, 1990]

PART 2—RULES OF PRACTICE IN TRADEMARK CASES

EDITORIAL NOTE: Part 2 is placed in a separate grouping of parts pertaining to trademarks. It appears on page 216 of this volume.

PART 3—ASSIGNMENT, RECORDING AND RIGHTS OF ASSIGNEE

Sec.
3.1 Definitions.

DOCUMENTS ELIGIBLE FOR RECORDING

3.11 Documents which will be recorded.
3.16 Assignability of trademarks prior to filing of use statements.

REQUIREMENTS FOR RECORDING

3.21 Identification of patents and patent applications.
3.24 Formal requirements for documents and cover sheets.
3.26 English language requirement.
3.27 Mailing address for submitting documents to be recorded.
3.28 Requests for recording.

COVER SHEET REQUIREMENTS

3.31 Cover sheet content.
3.34 Correction of cover sheet errors.

FEES

3.41 Recording fees.

DATE AND EFFECT OF RECORDING

3.51 Recording date.
3.54 Effect of recording.
3.56 Conditional assignments.

DOMESTIC REPRESENTATIVE

3.61 Domestic representative.

PROSECUTION BY ASSIGNEE

3.71 Prosecution by assignee.
3.73 Establishing right of assignee to prosecute.

ISSUANCE TO ASSIGNEE

3.81 Issue of patent to assignee.
3.85 Issue of registration to assignee.

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 1123; 35 U.S.C. 6.

SOURCE: 57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992, unless otherwise noted.

§ 3.1 Definitions.

For purposes of this part, the following definitions shall apply:

Application means a national application for patent, an international application that designates the United States of America, or an application to register a trademark unless otherwise indicated.

Assignment means a transfer by a party of all or part of its right, title and interest in a patent or patent application, or a transfer of its entire

right, title and interest in a registered mark or a mark for which an application to register has been filed.

Document means a document which a party requests to be recorded in the Office pursuant to §3.11 and which affects some interest in an application, patent, or registration.

Office means the Patent and Trademark Office.

Recorded document means a document which has been recorded in the Office pursuant to §3.11.

Registration means a trademark registration issued by the Office.

DOCUMENTS ELIGIBLE FOR RECORDING

§3.11 Documents which will be recorded.

Assignments of applications, patents, and registrations, accompanied by completed cover sheets as specified in §§3.28 and 3.31, will be recorded in the Office. Other documents, accompanied by completed cover sheets as specified in §§3.28 and 3.31, affecting title to applications, patents, or registrations, will be recorded as provided in this part or at the discretion of the Commissioner.

§3.16 Assignability of trademarks prior to filing of use statements.

No application to register a mark under 15 U.S.C. 1051(b) is assignable prior to the filing of the verified statement of use under 15 U.S.C. 1051(d) except to a successor to the business of the applicant, or portion thereof, to which the mark pertains, if that business is ongoing and existing.

REQUIREMENTS FOR RECORDING

§3.21 Identification of patents and patent applications.

An assignment relating to a patent must identify the patent by the patent number. An assignment relating to a national patent application must identify the national patent application by the application number (consisting of the series code and the serial number, e.g., 07/123,456). An assignment relating to an international patent application which designates the United States of America must identify the international application by the international number (e.g., PCT/US90/01234). If an assignment of a patent application filed under §1.53(b)(1) or §1.62 is executed concurrently with, or subsequent to, the execution of the patent application, but before the patent application is filed, it must identify the patent application by its date of execution, name of each inventor, and title of the invention so that there can be no mistake as to the patent application intended. If an assignment of a provisional application is executed before the provisional application is filed, it must identify the provisional application by name of each inventor and title of the invention so that there can be no mistake as to the provisional application intended.

[60 FR 20228, Apr. 25, 1995]

§3.24 Formal requirements for documents and cover sheets.

The document and cover sheet must be legible. Either the original document or a true copy of the original document, may be submitted for recording. Only one side of each page shall be used. The paper used should be flexible, strong, white, non-shiny, durable, and preferably no larger than 21.6 x 33.1 cm. (8½ x 14 inches) with a 2.5 cm. (one-inch) margin on all sides.

§3.26 English language requirement.

The Office will accept and record non-English language documents only if accompanied by a verified English translation signed by the individual making the translation.

§3.27 Mailing address for submitting documents to be recorded.

Documents and cover sheets to be recorded should be addressed to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Box Assignments, Washington, DC 20231, unless they are filed together with new applications or with a petition under §3.81(b).

§3.28 Requests for recording.

Each document submitted to the Office for recording must be accompanied by at least one cover sheet as specified in §3.31 referring either to those patent applications and patents, or to those trademark applications and registrations, against which the document is to

be recorded. If a document to be recorded includes interests in, or transactions involving, both patents and trademarks, separate patent and trademark cover sheets must be submitted. Only one set of documents and cover sheets to be recorded should be filed. If a document to be recorded is not accompanied by a completed cover sheet, the document and any incomplete cover sheet will be returned pursuant to § 3.51 for proper completion of a cover sheet and resubmission of the document and a completed cover sheet.

COVER SHEET REQUIREMENTS

§ 3.31 Cover sheet content.

(a) Each patent or trademark cover sheet required by § 3.28 must contain:

(1) The name of the party conveying the interest;

(2) The name and address of the party receiving the interest;

(3) A description of the interest conveyed or transaction to be recorded;

(4) Each application number, patent number or registration number against which the document is to be recorded, or an indication that the document is filed together with a patent application;

(5) The name and address of the party to whom correspondence concerning the request to record the document should be mailed;

(6) The number of applications, patents or registrations identified in the cover sheet and the total fee;

(7) The date the document was executed;

(8) An indication that the assignee of a trademark application or registration who is not domiciled in the United States has designated a domestic representative (see § 3.61); and

(9) A statement by the party submitting the document that to the best of the person's knowledge and belief, the information contained on the cover sheet is true and correct and any copy submitted is a true copy of the original document; and

(10) The signature of the party submitting the document.

(b) A cover sheet may not refer to both patents and trademarks.

§ 3.34 Correction of cover sheet errors.

(a) An error in a cover sheet recorded pursuant to § 3.11 will be corrected only if:

(1) The error is apparent when the cover sheet is compared with the recorded document to which it pertains, and

(2) A corrected cover sheet is filed for recordation.

(b) The corrected cover sheet must be accompanied by the originally recorded document or a copy of the originally recorded document and by the recording fee as set forth in § 3.41.

FEES

§ 3.41 Recording fees.

All requests to record documents must be accompanied by the appropriate fee. A fee is required for each application, patent and registration against which the document is recorded as identified in the cover sheet. The recording fee is set in § 1.21(h) of this chapter for patents and in § 2.6(q) of this chapter for trademarks.

DATE AND EFFECT OF RECORDING

§ 3.51 Recording date.

The date of recording of a document is the date the document meeting the requirements for recording set forth in this part is filed in the Office. A document which does not comply with the identification requirements of § 3.21 will not be recorded. Documents not meeting the other requirements for recording, for example, a document submitted without a completed cover sheet or without the required fee, will be returned for correction to the sender where a correspondence address is available. The returned papers, stamped with the original date of receipt by the Office, will be accompanied by a letter which will indicate that if the returned papers are corrected and resubmitted to the Office within the time specified in the letter, the Office will consider the original date of filing of the papers as the date of recording of the document. The certification procedure under either § 1.8 or § 1.10 of this chapter may be used for resubmissions of returned papers to have the benefit of the date of deposit

in the United States Postal Service. If the returned papers are not corrected and resubmitted within the specified period, the date of filing of the corrected papers will be considered to be the date of recording of the document. The specified period to resubmit the returned papers will not be extended.

§3.54 Effect of recording.

The recording of a document pursuant to §3.11 is not a determination by the Office of the validity of the document or the effect that document has on the title to an application, a patent, or a registration. When necessary, the Office will determine what effect a document has, including whether a party has the authority to take an action in a matter pending before the Office.

§3.56 Conditional assignments.

Assignments which are made conditional on the performance of certain acts or events, such as the payment of money or other condition subsequent, if recorded in the Office, are regarded as absolute assignments for Office purposes until cancelled with the written consent of all parties or by the decree of a court of competent jurisdiction. The Office does not determine whether such conditions have been fulfilled.

DOMESTIC REPRESENTATIVE

§3.61 Domestic representative.

If the assignee of a trademark application or registration is not domiciled in the United States, the assignee must designate, in writing to the Office, a domestic representative. An assignee of a patent application or patent may designate a domestic representative if the assignee is not residing in the United States. The designation shall state the name and address of a person residing within the United States on whom may be served process or notice of proceedings affecting the application, patent or registration or rights thereunder.

PROSECUTION BY ASSIGNEE

§3.71 Prosecution by assignee.

The assignee of record of the entire right, title and interest in an application for patent is entitled to conduct the prosecution of the patent application to the exclusion of the named inventor or previous assignee. The assignee of a registered trademark or a trademark for which an application to register has been filed is entitled to conduct the prosecution of the trademark application or registration to the exclusion of the original applicant or previous assignee.

§3.73 Establishing right of assignee to prosecute.

(a) The inventor is presumed to be the owner of a patent application, and any patent that may issue therefrom, unless there is an assignment. The original applicant is presumed to be the owner of a trademark application unless there is an assignment.

(b) When the assignee of the entire right, title and interest seeks to take action in a matter before the Office with respect to a patent application, trademark application, patent, registration, or reexamination proceeding, the assignee must establish its ownership of the property to the satisfaction of the Commissioner. Ownership is established by submitting to the Office documentary evidence of a chain of title from the original owner to the assignee or by specifying (e.g. reel and frame number, etc.) where such evidence is recorded in the Office. Documents submitted to establish ownership may be required to be recorded as a condition to permitting the assignee to take action in a matter pending before the Office. In addition, the assignee of a patent application or patent must submit a statement specifying that the evidentiary documents have been reviewed and certifying that, to the best of assignee's knowledge and belief, title is in the assignee seeking to take the action.

ISSUANCE TO ASSIGNEE

§3.81 Issue of patent to assignee.

(a) For a patent application, if an assignment of the entire right, title, and interest is recorded before the issue fee is paid, the patent may issue in the name of the assignee. If the assignee holds an undivided part interest, the patent may issue jointly to the inventor and the assignee. At the time the

issue fee is paid, the name of the assignee must be provided if the patent is to issue solely or jointly to that assignee.

(b) If the assignment is submitted for recording after the date of payment of the issue fee, but prior to issuance of the patent, the assignee may petition that the patent issue to the assignee. Any such petition must be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(i) of this chapter.

[57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992, as amended at 60 FR 20229, Apr. 25, 1995]

§ 3.85 Issue of registration to assignee.

The certificate of registration may be issued to the assignee of the applicant, or in a new name of the applicant, provided that the party files a written request in the trademark application by the time the application is being prepared for issuance of the certificate of registration, and the appropriate document is recorded in the Office. If the assignment or name change document has not been recorded in the Office, then the written request must state that the document has been filed for recordation. The address of the assignee must be made of record in the application file.

PART 4 [RESERVED]

PART 5—SECRECY OF CERTAIN INVENTIONS AND LICENSES TO EXPORT AND FILE APPLICATIONS IN FOREIGN COUNTRIES

SECRECY ORDERS

Sec.
5.1 Defense inspection of certain applications.
5.2 Secrecy order.
5.3 Prosecution of application under secrecy orders; withholding patent.
5.4 Petition for rescission of secrecy order.
5.5 Permit to disclose or modification of secrecy order.
5.6 General and group permits.
5.7 Compensation.
5.8 Appeal to Secretary.

LICENSES FOR FOREIGN EXPORTING AND FILING

5.11 License for filing in a foreign country an application on an invention made in the United States or for transmitting international application.
5.12 Petition for license.
5.13 Petition for license; no corresponding application.
5.14 Petition for license; corresponding U.S. application.
5.15 Scope of license.
5.16 Effect of secrecy order.
5.17 Who may use license.
5.18 Arms, ammunition, and implements of war.
5.19 Export of technical data.
5.20 Export of technical data relating to sensitive nuclear technology.
5.25 Petition for retroactive license.

GENERAL

5.31 Effect of modification, rescission or license.
5.32 Papers in English language.
5.33 Correspondence.

AUTHORITY: 35 U.S.C. 6, 41, 181–188, as amended by the Patent Law Foreign Filing Amendments Act of 1988, Pub. L. 100–418, 102 Stat. 1567; the Arms Export Control Act, as amended, 22 U.S.C. 2751 *et seq.*, the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, 42 U.S.C. 2011 *et seq.*, and the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978, 22 U.S.C. 3201 *et seq.*, and the delegations in the regulations under these acts to the Commissioner (15 CFR 370.10(j), 22 CFR 125.04, and 10 CFR 810.7).

SOURCE: 24 FR 10381, Dec. 22, 1959, unless otherwise noted.

SECRECY ORDERS

§ 5.1 Defense inspection of certain applications.

(a) The provisions of this part shall apply to both national and international applications filed in the Patent and Trademark Office and, with respect to inventions made in the United States, to applications filed in any foreign country or any international authority other than the United States Receiving Office. The (1) filing of a national or an international application in a foreign country or with an international authority other than the United States Receiving Office, or (2) transmittal of an international application to a foreign agency or an international authority other than the United States Receiving Office is considered to be a foreign filing within the meaning of Chapter 17 of Title 35, United States Code.

(b) In accordance with the provisions of 35 U.S.C. 181, patent applications containing subject matter the disclosure of which might be detrimental to

the national security are made available for inspection by defense agencies as specified in said section. Only applications obviously relating to national security, and applications within fields indicated to the Patent and Trademark Office by the defense agencies as so related, are made available. The inspection will be made only by responsible representatives authorized by the agency to review applications. Such representatives are required to sign a dated acknowledgement of access accepting the condition that information obtained from the inspection will be used for no purpose other than the administration of 35 U.S.C. 181–188. Copies of applications may be made available to such representatives for inspection outside the Patent and Trademark Office under conditions assuring that the confidentiality of the applications will be maintained, including the conditions that:

(1) All copies will be returned to the Patent and Trademark Office promptly if no secrecy order is imposed, or upon rescission of such order if one is imposed, and

(2) No additional copies will be made by the defense agencies.

A record of the removal and return of copies made available for defense inspection will be maintained by the Patent and Trademark Office. Applications relating to atomic energy are made available to the Department of Energy as specified in §1.14 of this chapter.

(Pub. L. 94–131, 89 Stat. 685)

[43 FR 20470, May 11, 1978]

§5.2 Secrecy order.

(a) When notified by the chief officer of a defense agency that publication or disclosure of the invention by the granting of a patent would be detrimental to the national security, an order that the invention be kept secret will be issued by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks.

(b) The secrecy order is directed to the applicant, his successors, any and all assignees, and their legal representatives; hereinafter designated as principals.

(c) A copy of the secrecy order will be forwarded to each principal of record in the application and will be accompanied by a receipt, identifying the particular principal, to be signed and returned.

(d) The secrecy order is directed to the subject matter of the application. Where any other application in which a secrecy order has not been issued discloses a significant part of the subject matter of the application under secrecy order, the other application and the common subject matter should be called to the attention of the Patent and Trademark Office. Such a notice may include any material such as would be urged in a petition to rescind secrecy orders on either of the applications.

§5.3 Prosecution of application under secrecy orders; withholding patent.

Unless specifically ordered otherwise, action on the application by the Office and prosecution by the applicant will proceed during the time an application is under secrecy order to the point indicated in this section:

(a) National applications under secrecy order which come to a final rejection must be appealed or otherwise prosecuted to avoid abandonment. Appeals in such cases must be completed by the applicant but unless otherwise specifically ordered by the Commissioner will not be set for hearing until the secrecy order is removed.

(b) An interference will not be declared involving national applications under secrecy order. However, if an applicant whose application is under secrecy order seeks to provoke an interference with an issued patent, a notice of that fact will be placed in the file wrapper of the patent. (See §1.607(d))

(c) When the national application is found to be in condition for allowance except for the secrecy order the applicant and the agency which caused the secrecy order to be issued will be notified. This notice (which is not a notice of allowance under §1.311 of this chapter) does not require response by the applicant and places the national application in a condition of suspension until the secrecy order is removed. When the secrecy order is removed the Patent and Trademark Office will issue a notice of allowance under §1.311 of

this chapter, or take such other action as may then be warranted.

(d) International applications under secrecy order will not be mailed, delivered or otherwise transmitted to the international authorities or the applicant. International applications under secrecy order will be processed up to the point where, if it were not for the secrecy order, record and search copies would be transmitted to the international authorities or the applicant.

(Pub. L. 94–131, 89 Stat. 685)

[43 FR 20470, May 11, 1978, as amended at 53 FR 23736, June 23, 1988]

§ 5.4 Petition for rescission of secrecy order.

(a) A petition for rescission or removal of a secrecy order may be filed by, or on behalf of, any principal affected thereby. Such petition may be in letter form, and it must be in duplicate. The petition must be accompanied by one copy of the application or an order for the same, unless a showing is made that such a copy has already been furnished to the department or agency which caused the secrecy order to be issued.

(b) The petition must recite any and all facts that purport to render the order ineffectual or futile if this is the basis of the petition. When prior publications or patents are alleged the petition must give complete data as to such publications or patents and should be accompanied by copies thereof.

(c) The petition must identify any contract between the Government and any of the principals, under which the subject matter of the application or any significant part thereof was developed, or to which the subject matter is otherwise related. If there is no such contract, the petition must so state.

(d) Unless based upon facts of public record, the petition must be verified.

§ 5.5 Permit to disclose or modification of secrecy order.

(a) Consent to disclosure, or to the filing of an application abroad, as provided in 35 U.S.C. 182, shall be made by a ''permit'' or ''modification'' of the secrecy order.

(b) Petitions for a permit or modification must fully recite the reason or purpose for the proposed disclosure. Where any proposed disclosee is known to be cleared by a defense agency to receive classified information, adequate explanation of such clearance should be made in the petition including the name of the agency or department granting the clearance and the date and degree thereof. The petition must be filed in duplicate and be accompanied by one copy of the application or an order for the same, unless a showing is made that such a copy has already been furnished to the department or agency which caused the secrecy order to be issued.

(c) In a petition for modification of a secrecy order to permit filing abroad, all countries in which it is proposed to file must be made known, as well as all attorneys, agents and others to whom the material will be consigned prior to being lodged in the foreign patent office. The petition should include a statement vouching for the loyalty and integrity of the proposed disclosees and where their clearance status in this or the foreign country is known all details should be given.

(d) Consent to the disclosure of subject matter from one application under secrecy order may be deemed to be consent to the disclosure of common subject matter in other applications under secrecy order so long as not taken out of context in a manner disclosing material beyond the modification granted in the first application.

(e) The permit or modification may contain conditions and limitations.

§ 5.6 General and group permits.

(a) Organizations requiring consent for disclosure of applications under secrecy order to persons or organizations in connection with repeated routine operation may petition for such consent in the form of a general permit. To be successful such petitions must ordinarily recite the security clearance status of the disclosees as sufficient for the highest classification of material that may be involved.

(b) Where identical disclosees and circumstances are involved, and consent is desired for the disclosure of each of a specific list of applications, the petitions may be joined.

§5.7 Compensation.

Any request for compensation as provided in 35 U.S.C. 183 must not be made to the Patent and Trademark Office but should be made directly to the department or agency which caused the secrecy order to be issued. Upon written request persons having a right to such information will be informed as to the department or agency which caused the secrecy order to be issued.

§5.8 Appeal to Secretary.

Appeal to the Secretary of Commerce, as provided by 35 U.S.C. 181, from a secrecy order cannot be taken until after a petition for rescission of the secrecy order has been made and denied. Appeal must be taken within 60 days from the date of the denial, and the party appealing, as well as the department or agency which caused the order to be issued will be notified of the time and place of hearing. The appeal will be heard and decided by the Secretary or such officer or officers as he may designate.

LICENSES FOR FOREIGN EXPORTING AND FILING

§5.11 License for filing in a foreign country an application on an invention made in the United States or for transmitting an international application.

(a) A license from the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks under 35 U.S.C. 184 is required before filing any application for patent including any modifications, amendments, or supplements thereto or divisions thereof or for the registration of a utility model, industrial design, or model, in a foreign patent office or any foreign patent agency or any international agency other than the United States Receiving Office, if the invention was made in the United States and:

(1) An application on the invention has been on file in the United States less than six months prior to the date on which the application is to be filed, or

(2) No application on the invention has been filed in the United States.

(b) The license from the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks referred to in paragraph (a) would also authorize the export of technical data abroad for purposes related to the preparation, filing or possible filing and prosecution of a foreign patent application without separately complying with the regulations contained in 22 CFR parts 121 through 130 (International Traffic in Arms Regulations of the Department of State), 15 CFR part 379 (Regulations of the Office of Export Administration, International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce) and 10 CFR part 810 (Foreign Atomic Energy Programs of the Department of Energy).

(c) Where technical data in the form of a patent application, or in any form, is being exported for purposes related to the preparation, filing or possible filing and prosecution of a foreign patent application, without the license from the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks referred to in paragraphs (a) or (b) of this section, or on an invention not made in the United States, the export regulations contained in 22 CFR parts 121 through 130 (International Traffic in Arms Regulations of the Department of State), 15 CFR part 379 (Regulations of Office of Export Administration, International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce) and 10 CFR part 810 (Foreign Atomic Energy Programs of the Department of Energy) must be complied with unless a license is not required because a United States application was on file at the time of export for at least six months without a secrecy order under §5.2 being placed thereon. The term ''exported'' means export as it is defined in 22 CFR parts 121 through 130, 15 CFR part 379 and 10 CFR part 810.

(d) If a secrecy order has been issued under §5.2, an application cannot be exported to, or filed in, a foreign country (including an international agency in a foreign country), except in accordance with §5.5.

(e) No license pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section is required:

(1) If the invention was not made in the United States, or

(2) If the corresponding United States application is not subject to a secrecy order under §5.2, and was filed at least six months prior to the date on which

the application is filed in a foreign country, or

(3) For subsequent modifications, amendments and supplements containing additional subject matter to, or divisions of, a foreign patent application if:

(i) A license is not, or was not, required under paragraph (e)(2) of this section for the foreign patent application;

(ii) The corresponding United States application was not required to be made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 and § 5.1; and

(iii) Such modifications, amendments, and supplements do not, or did not, change the general nature of the invention in a manner which would require any corresponding United States application to be or have been available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 and § 5.1.

(f) A license pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section can be revoked at any time upon written notification by the Patent and Trademark Office. An authorization to file a foreign patent application resulting from the passage of six months from the date of filing of a United States patent application may be revoked by the imposition of a secrecy order.

[49 FR 13461, Apr. 4, 1984, as amended at 56 FR 1928, Jan. 18, 1991]

§ 5.12 Petition for license.

(a) Filing of an application for patent for inventions made in the United States will be considered to include a petition for license under 35 U.S.C. 184 for the subject matter of the application. The filing receipt will indicate if a license is granted. If the initial automatic petition is not granted, a subsequent petition may be filed under paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) Petitions for license should be presented in letter form and must include the required fee (§ 1.17(h)), if expedited handling of the petition is also sought, the petitioner's address, and full instructions for delivery of the requested license when it is to be delivered to other than the petitioner.

(35 U.S.C. 6, Pub. L. 97–247)

[48 FR 2714, Jan. 20, 1983, as amended at 49 FR 13462, Apr. 4, 1984]

§ 5.13 Petition for license; no corresponding application.

If no corresponding national or international application has been filed in the United States, the petition for license under § 5.12(b) must be accompanied by the required fee (§ 1.17(h)), if expedited handling of the petition is also sought, and a legible copy of the material upon which a license is desired. This copy will be retained as a measure of the license granted. For assistance in the identification of the subject matter of each license so issued, it is suggested that the petition be submitted in duplicate and provide a title and other description of the material. The duplicate copy of the petition will be returned with the license or other action on the petition.

[49 FR 13462, Apr. 4, 1984]

§ 5.14 Petition for license; corresponding U.S. application.

(a) When there is a corresponding United States application on file, a petition for license under § 5.12(b) must include the required fee (§ 1.17(h)), if expedited handling of the petition is also sought, and must identify this application by serial number, filing date, inventor, and title, but a copy of the material upon which the license is desired is not required. The subject matter licensed will be measured by the disclosure of the United States application. Where the title is not descriptive, and the subject matter is clearly of no interest from a security standpoint, time may be saved by a short statement in the petition as to the nature of the invention.

(b) Two or more United States applications should not be referred to in the same petition for license unless they are to be combined in the foreign or international application, in which event the petition should so state and the identification of each United States application should be in separate paragraphs.

(c) When the application to be filed or exported abroad contains matter not disclosed in the United States application or applications, including the case where the combining of two or more United States applications introduces subject matter not disclosed in any of

them, a copy of the application as it is to be filed in the foreign country or international application which is to be transmitted to a foreign international or national agency for filing in the Receiving Office, must be furnished with the petition. If however, all new matter in the foreign or international application to be filed is readily identifiable, the new matter may be submitted in detail and the remainder by reference to the pertinent United States application or applications.

(Pub. L. 94–131, 89 Stat. 685)

[43 FR 20471, May 11, 1978, as amended at 49 FR 13462, Apr. 4, 1984]

§5.15 Scope of license.

(a) Applications or other materials reviewed pursuant to §§5.12 through 5.14, which were not required to be made available for inspection by defense agencies under 35 U.S.C. 181 and §5.1, will be eligible for a license of the scope provided in this paragraph. This license permits subsequent modifications, amendments, and supplements containing additional subject matter to, or divisions of, a foreign patent application, if such changes to the application do not alter the general nature of the invention in a manner which would require the United States application to have been made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 and §5.1. This license also covers the inventions disclosed in foreign applications which had been granted a license under this part prior to April 4, 1984, and which were not subject to security inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 and §5.1. Grant of this license authorizes the export and filing of an application in a foreign country or the transmitting of an international application to any foreign patent agency or international patent agency when the subject matter of the foreign or international application corresponds to that of the domestic application. This license includes authority:

(1) To export and file all duplicate and formal application papers in foreign countries or with international agencies;

(2) To make amendments, modifications, and supplements, including divisions, changes or supporting matter consisting of the illustration, exemplification, comparison, or explanation of subject matter disclosed in the application; and

(3) To take any action in the prosecution of the foreign or international application provided that the adding of subject matter or taking of any action under paragraphs (a) (1) and (2) of this section does not change the general nature of the invention disclosed in the application in a manner which would require such application to have been made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 and §5.1 by including technical data pertaining to:

(i) Defense services or articles designated in the United States Munitions List applicable at the time of foreign filing, the unlicensed exportation of which is prohibited pursuant to the Arms Export Control Act, as amended, and 22 CFR parts 121 through 130; or

(ii) Restricted Data, sensitive nuclear technology or technology useful in the production or utilization of special nuclear material or atomic energy, the dissemination of which is subject to restrictions of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, and the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978, as implemented by the regulations for Unclassified Activities in Foreign Atomic Energy Programs, 10 CFR part 810, in effect at the time of foreign filing.

(b) Applications or other materials which were required to be made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 and §5.1 will be eligible for a license of the scope provided in this paragraph. Grant of this license authorizes the export and filing of an application in a foreign country or the transmitting of an international application to any foreign patent agency of international patent agency. Further, this license includes authority to export and file all duplicate and formal papers in foreign countries or with foreign and international patent agencies and to make amendments, modifications, and supplements to, file divisions of, and take any action in the prosecution of the foreign or international application, provided subject matter additional to that covered by the license is not involved.

(c) A license granted under §5.12(b) pursuant to §5.13 or §5.14 shall have the scope indicated in paragraph (a) of this

section, if it is so specified in the license. A petition, accompanied by the required fee (§ 1.17(h)), may also be filed to change a license having the scope indicated in paragraph (b) of this section to a license having the scope indicated in paragraph (a) of this section. No such petition will be granted if the copy of the material filed pursuant to § 5.13 or any corresponding United States application was required to be made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 and § 5.1. The change in the scope of a license will be effective as of the date of the grant of the petition.

(d) In those cases in which no license is required to file the foreign application or transmit the international application, no license is required to file papers in connection with the prosecution of the foreign or international application not involving the disclosure of additional subject matter.

(e) Any paper filed abroad or transmitted to an international patent agency following the filing of a foreign or international application which changes the general nature of the subject matter disclosed at the time of filing in a manner which would require such application to have been made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 and § 5.1 or which involves the disclosure of subject matter listed in paragraphs (a)(3) (i) or (ii) of this section must be separately licensed in the same manner as a foreign or international application. Further, if no license has been granted under § 5.12(a) on filing the corresponding United States application, any paper filed abroad or with an international patent agency which involves the disclosure of additional subject matter must be licensed in the same manner as a foreign or international application.

(f) Licenses separately granted in connection with two or more United States applications may be exercised by combining or dividing the disclosures, as desired, provided:

(1) Subject matter which changes the general nature of the subject matter disclosed at the time of filing or which involves subject matter listed in paragraph (a)(3) (i) or (ii) of this section is not introduced, and

(2) In the case where at least one of the licenses was obtained under § 5.12(b), additional subject matter is not introduced.

(g) A license does not apply to acts done before the license was granted. See § 5.25 for petitions for retroactive licenses.

[49 FR 13462, Apr. 4, 1984, as amended at 56 FR 1928, Jan. 18, 1991]

§ 5.16 Effect of secrecy order.

Any license obtained under 35 U.S.C. 184 is ineffective if the subject matter is under a secrecy order, and a secrecy order prohibits the exercise of or any further action under the license unless separately specifically authorized by a modification of the secrecy order in accordance with § 5.5.

§ 5.17 Who may use license.

Licenses may be used by anyone interested in the export, foreign filing, or international transmittal for or on behalf of the inventor or the inventor's assigns.

[49 FR 13463, Apr. 4, 1984]

§ 5.18 Arms, ammunition, and implements of war.

(a) The exportation of technical data relating to arms, ammunition, and implements of war generally is subject to the International Traffic in Arms Regulations of the Department of State (22 CFR parts 121 through 128); the articles designated as arms, ammunition, and implements of war are enumerated in the U.S. Munitions List, 22 CFR 121.01. However, if a patent applicant complies with regulations issued by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks under 35 U.S.C. 184, no separate approval from the Department of State is required unless the applicant seeks to export technical data exceeding that used to support a patent application in a foreign country. This exemption from Department of State regulations is applicable regardless of whether a license from the Commissioner is required by the provisions of §§ 5.11 and 5.15 (22 CFR 125.04(b), 125.20(b)).

(b) When a patent application containing subject matter on the Munitions List (22 CFR 121.01) is subject to

a secrecy order under §5.2 and a petition is made under §5.5 for a modification of the secrecy order to permit filing abroad, a separate request to the Department of State for authority to export classified information is not required (22 CFR 125.05(d)).

[35 FR 6430, Apr. 22, 1970]

§5.19 Export of technical data.

(a) Under regulations (15 CFR 770.10(j)) established by the U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of Export Administration, Office of Export Licensing, a validated export license is not required in any case to file a patent application or part thereof in a foreign country if the foreign filing is in accordance with the regulations (37 CFR 5.11 through 5.33) of the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) A validated export license is not required for data contained in a patent application prepared wholly from foreign-origin technical data where such application is being sent to the foreign inventor to be executed and returned to the United States for subsequent filing in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (15 CFR 379.3(c)).

(c) Inquiries concerning the export control regulations for the foreign filing of technical data other than patent applications should be made to the Office of Export Administration, International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20230.

[45 FR 72654, Nov. 3, 1980, as amended at 58 FR 54511, Oct. 22, 1993]

§5.20 Export of technical data relating to sensitive nuclear technology.

(a) Under regulations (10 CFR 810.7) established by the United States Department of Energy, an application filed in accordance with the regulations (37 CFR 5.11 through 5.33) of the United States Patent and Trademark Office and eligible for foreign filing under 35 U.S.C. 184, is considered to be information available to the public in published form and a generally authorized activity for the purposes of the Department of Energy regulations.

(b) Inquiries concerning the export of sensitive nuclear technology other than related to the filing or prosecution of a foreign patent application should be made to the Attention: Secretary, United States Department of Energy, Office of International Security Affairs, Washington, D.C. 20858.

[49 FR 13463, Apr. 4, 1984]

§5.25 Petition for retroactive license.

(a) A petition for a retroactive license under 35 U.S.C. 184 shall be presented in accordance with §5.13 or §5.14(a), and shall include:

(1) A listing of each of the foreign countries in which the unlicensed patent application material was filed,

(2) The dates on which the material was filed in each country,

(3) A verified statement (oath or declaration) containing:

(i) An averment that the subject matter in question was not under a secrecy order at the time it was filed aboard, and that it is not currently under a secrecy order,

(ii) A showing that the license has been diligently sought after discovery of the proscribed foreign filing, and

(iii) An explanation of why the material was filed abroad through error and without deceptive intent without the required license under §5.11 first having been obtained, and

(4) The required fee (§1.17(h)).

The above explanation must include a showing of facts rather than a mere allegation of action through error and without deceptive intent. The showing of facts as to the nature of the error should include statements by those persons having personal knowledge of the acts regarding filing in a foreign country and should be accompanied by copies of any necessary supporting documents such as letters of transmittal or instructions for filing. The acts which are alleged to constitute error without deceptive intent should cover the period leading up to and including each of the proscribed foreign filings.

(b) If a petition for a retroactive license is denied, a time period of not less than thirty days shall be set, during which the petition may be renewed. Failure to renew the petition within the set time period will result in a final denial of the petition. A final denial of a petition stands unless a petition is filed under §1.181 within two months of

the date of the denial. If the petition for a retroactive license is denied with respect to the invention of a pending application and no petition under § 1.181 has been filed, a final rejection of the application under 35 U.S.C. 185 will be made.

(c) The granting of a retroactive license does not excuse any violation of the export regulations contained in 22 CFR parts 121 through 130 (International Traffic in Arms Regulations of the Department of State), 15 CFR part 379 (Regulations of Office of Export Administration, International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce) and 10 CFR part 810 (Foreign Atomic Energy Programs of the Department of Energy) which may have occurred because of the failure to obtain an appropriate license prior to export.

[49 FR 13463, Apr. 4, 1984, as amended at 56 FR 1929, Jan. 18, 1991]

GENERAL

§ 5.31 Effect of modification, rescission or license.

Any consent, rescission or license under the provisions of this part does not lessen the responsibilities of the principals in respect to any Government contract or the requirements of any other Government agency.

[24 FR 10381, Dec. 22, 1959. Redesignated at 49 FR 13463, Apr. 4, 1984]

§ 5.32 Papers in English language.

All papers submitted in connection with petitions must be in the English language, or be accompanied by an English translation and a translator's certificate as to the true, faithful and exact character of the translation.

[24 FR 10381, Dec. 22, 1959. Redesignated at 49 FR 13463, Apr. 4, 1984]

§ 5.33 Correspondence.

All correspondence in connection with this part, including petitions, should be addressed to ''Assistant Commissioner for Patents (Attention: Licensing and Review), Washington, D.C. 20231.''

[61 FR 56448, Nov. 1, 1996]

PART 6—CLASSIFICATION OF GOODS AND SERVICES UNDER THE TRADEMARK ACT

EDITORIAL NOTE: Part 6 is placed in a separate grouping of parts pertaining to trademarks. It appears on page 270 of this volume.

PART 7—REGISTER OF GOVERNMENT INTERESTS IN PATENTS

Sec.
7.1 Requirements.
7.2 Assignments.
7.3 Licenses.
7.4 Abbreviated copy.
7.5 Instruments already on record.
7.6 Access to register.
7.7 Secret register.

AUTHORITY: E.O. 9424, Feb. 18, 1944, 9 FR 1959; 3 CFR 1943–1948 Comp.

SOURCE: 24 FR 10383, Dec. 22, 1959, unless otherwise noted.

§ 7.1 Requirements.

(a) Executive Order 9424 (3 CFR 1943–1948 Comp.) requires the several departments and other executive agencies of the Government, including Government-owned or Government-controlled corporations, to forward promptly to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks for recording all licenses, assignments, or other interests of the Government in or under patents or applications for patents.

(b) An instrument relating to a patent must identify the patent by the patent number. An instrument relating to a national patent application must identify the national patent application by the application number (consisting of the series code and the serial number, e.g., 07/123,456) or the serial number and filing date. An instrument relating to an international patent application which designates the United States of America must identify the international applications by the international application number (e.g., PCT/US90/01234). If an assignment is executed concurrently with, or subsequent to, the execution of the patent application, but before the patent application is filed, it must identify the patent application by its date of execution, name of each inventor, and title of the

invention so that there can be no mistake as to the patent application intended.

(c) Each instrument submitted to the Office for recording must be accompanied by at least one cover sheet as specified in paragraph (d) of this section referring to those patent applications and patents against which the instrument is to be recorded. Only one set of instruments and cover sheets to be recorded should be filed. If an instrument to be recorded is not accompanied by a completed cover sheet, the instrument and any incomplete cover sheet will be returned for proper completion of a cover sheet and resubmission of the instrument and a completed cover sheet.

(d) Each cover sheet required by paragraph (c) of this section must contain:

(1) The name of the party conveying the interest;

(2) The name and address of the party receiving the interest;

(3) A description of the interest conveyed or transaction to be recorded;

(4) Each application number or patent number against which the instrument is to be recorded, or an indication that the instrument is filed together with a patent application;

(5) The name and address of the party to whom correspondence concerning the request to record the instrument should be mailed;

(6) The number of applications or patents identified in the cover sheet and the total fee;

(7) The date the instrument was executed;

(8) A statement by the party submitting the instrument that to the best of the person's knowledge and belief, the information contained on the cover sheet is true and correct and any copy submitted is a true copy of the original instrument; and

(9) The signature of the party submitting the instrument.

(e) Each patent cover sheet required by paragraph (c) of this section seeking to record a governmental interest as provided by paragraph (a) of this section must:

(1) Indicate that the instrument is to be recorded on the governmental register, and, if applicable, that the instrument is to be recorded on the Secret Register. See §7.7.

(2) Indicate, if applicable, that the instrument to be recorded is not an instrument affecting title. See paragraph (j) of this section.

(f) An error in a cover sheet recorded pursuant to this Part will be corrected only if:

(1) The error is apparent when the cover sheet is compared with the recorded instrument to which it pertains, and

(2) A corrected cover sheet accompanied by the recording fee set forth in paragraph (i) of this section and either the original recorded instrument or a copy of the original recorded instrument is filed for recordation.

(g) The Office will accept and record non-English language instruments only if accompanied by a verified English translation signed by the individual making the translation.

(h) Instruments and cover sheets to be recorded should be addressed to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Box Assignment, Washington, D.C. 20231.

(i) All requests to record instruments must be accompanied by the appropriate fee. Except as provided in paragraph (j) of this section, a recording fee set forth in §1.21(h) of this chapter fee is required for each application and patent against which the instrument is recorded as identified in the cover sheet.

(j) No fee is required for each patent application and patent against which an instrument required by Executive Order 9424 (3 CFR 1943–1948 Comp.) to be filed if:

(1) The instrument does not affect title and is so identified in the cover sheet (see paragraph (e) of this section); and

(2) The cover sheet is filed in a format approved by the Office.

[60 FR 41023, Aug. 11, 1995]

§7.2 Assignments.

The original of an assignment or other instrument which conveys to the Government only the title to a patent or to an application for patent shall be forwarded to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks. The instrument

will be recorded, endorsed, and returned.

§ 7.3 Licenses.

A copy of any license or instrument other than an assignment which conveys to or gives the Government any interest in or under a patent or an application for patent shall be forwarded for recording. The copy will be retained by the Patent and Trademark Office but, when desired, the original will be endorsed and returned.

§ 7.4 Abbreviated copy.

If an instrument deals with matters in addition to rights and interests in patents or in applications for patents, or in inventions disclosed therein, a copy of only those portions of the instrument dealing with such rights and interests need be forwarded. In such case, a statement giving the general nature of the entire instrument, the parties involved, the date of the instrument, the place where it is usually filed, and any docket or identifying number, must be attached to the copy.

§ 7.5 Instruments already on record.

Instruments which have been recorded prior to the adoption of §§ 7.1 to 7.7 and are on the general assignment records of the Patent and Trademark Office need not be forwarded again for recording.

§ 7.6 Access to register.

The register will not be open to public inspection. It will be available for examination and inspection by duly authorized representatives of the Government, subject to the provisions of § 7.7. Public examination will be restricted to those instruments which the department or agency of origin has so authorized in writing.

§ 7.7 Secret register.

Any instrument to be recorded will be placed on a secret record or register at the request of the department or agency submitting the same. No information will be given concerning any instrument in such record or register, and no examination or inspection thereof or of the index thereto will be permitted, except on the written authority of the head of the department or agency which submitted the instrument and requested secrecy, and the approval of such authority by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks. No instrument or record other than the one specified may be examined, and the examination must take place in the presence of a designated official of the Patent and Trademark Office. When the department or agency which submitted an instrument no longer requires secrecy with respect to that instrument, it will be recorded or registered anew in the appropriate part of the register which is not secret.

INDEX I—RULES RELATING TO PATENTS

EDITORIAL NOTE: This listing is provided for information purposes only. It is compiled and kept up-to-date by the Department of Commerce.

Section

A

Abandoned applications:
- Abandonment by failure to prosecute 1.135
- Abandonment during interference ..... 1.662(a)
- Abandonment for failure to pay issue fee 1.155, 1.316
- Destruction after 20 yrs. unless marked for preservation. 1.14(b)
- Express abandonment 1.138
- Not cited 1.108
- Processing and retention fee ..... 1.21(l)
- Referred to in issued patents 1.14
- Revival of 1.137, 1.139, 1.155, 1.316
- When to public inspection 1.14

Abandonment of application. (*See* Abandoned applications.)

Abstract of the disclosure.(content, physical requirements) 1.72
- Separate sheet required for commencement of ..... 1.72(b)
- Arrangement in overall application 1.163

Access to pending applications (limited) 1.14

Action by applicant 1.111-1.139

Address, Correspondence, only one recognized by Office. 1.33(c)

Address for notice to Commissioner of appeal to Fed. Cir ..... 1.302(c)

Address of Solicitor's Office ..... 1.1(g)

Address of the Patent and Trademark Office 1.1
- Box FWC ..... 1.62(i)
- Box Interference ..... 1.1(e)
- Box M. Fee ..... 1.1(d)
- Box Patent Ext ..... 1.1(f)
- Box PCT ..... 1.1(b)
- Box Provisional Patent Application ..... 1.1(i)
- Box Reexam ..... 1.1(c)

Administrator or executor, may make application and receive patent 1.42
- Proof of authority 1.44

Admission to practice. (*See* Attorneys and agents.)

Affidavit (*See also* Oath in patent application):
- After appeal 1.195
- In support of application for reissue 1.175
- To disqualify commonly owned patent as prior art 1.130
- To overcome cited patent or publication 1.131
- Traversing grounds of rejection 1.132

Agents. (*See* Attorneys and agents.)

Allowance and issue of patent:
- Amendment after allowance 1.312
- Deferral of issuance 1.314
- Delayed payment of issue fee 1.155, 1.316, 1.317
- Delivery of patent 1.315
- Forfeited application 1.155, 1.316

Issuance of patent 1.155, 1.314
Notice of allowance 1.155, 1.311
Patent to issue upon payment of issue fee 1.311, 1.314
Patent to lapse if issue fee is not paid in full 1.317
Patent withheld for nonpayment of issue fee 1.155, 1.316
Reasons for 1.109
Withdrawal from issue 1.313
Allowed claims statement of grounds for rejecting, by Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences 1.196
Amendment:
Adding or substituting claims 1.119
After appeal 1.116
After decision on appeal, based on new rejection of Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences 1.196
After final action 1.116
After final action (transitional procedures) 1.129
After notice of allowance 1.312
By patent owner 1.530
Copying claim of another application for interference..1.603
Copying claim of issued patent 1.606, 1.607
Drawings 1.123
Entry and consideration of 1.122
Erasures and insertions 1.121
Involving a departure from original invention 1.118
Manner of making 1.121
May be required 1.117
Not covered by original oath 1.67
Numbering of claims 1.126
Of amendments 1.124
Of claims 1.119
Of disclosure 1.118
Of drawing 1.123
Of specification 1.118
Paper and writing 1.52
Petition from refusal to admit 1.127
Proposed during interference 1.615
Provisional application ..... 1.53(b)(2)
Reissue ..... 1.121(e), 1.173, 1.174
Requisites of 1.33, 1.111, 1.115, 1.116, 1.121 1.123, 1.124, 1.125
Right to amend 1.111, 1.115, 1.116, 1.127
Signature to 1.33
Substitute specification 1.125
Time for 1.134
To accompany motion to amend interference 1.633
To applications in interference 1.633
To correct inaccuracies or prolixity 1.117
To correspond to original drawing or specification 1.118
To preliminary statement in interference 1.628
To reissues 1.173, 1.174
To save from abandonment 1.135
Amino Acid Sequences. (*See* Nucleotide and/or Amino A Acid Sequences.)
Appeal to Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences:
Action following decision 1.197
Affidavits after appeal 1.195
Brief 1.192
Decision by Board 1.196
Examiner's answer 1.193
Fees 1.17

Index 1

Hearing of 1.194
New grounds for refusing a patent 1.196
Notice of appeal 1.191
Rehearing 1.197
Reopening after decision 1.198
Reply brief 1.193
Statement of grounds for rejecting, by Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences 1.196
Appeal to Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit:
Fee provided by rules of court 1.301
From Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences 1.301
Notice and reasons of appeal 1.302
Time for 1.302, 1.304
Applicant for patent 1.41-1.48
Change 1.48
Deceased or insane inventor 1.42, 1.43
Executor or administrator 1.42
Informed of application number 1.54
Joint changed to sole 1.48
Letters for, sent to attorney or agent 1.33
May be represented by an attorney or agent 1.31
Personal attendance unnecessary 1.2
Required to conduct business with decorum and courtesy..1.3
Required to report assistance received 1.33
Sole changed to joint 1.48
Sole changed to another sole 1.48
Application for patent (*See also* Abandoned applications, Claims, Drawing, Examination of application Reissues, Provisional applications, Specification):
Accepted and filed for examination only when complete..1.53
Access to 1.14
Acknowledgement of filing 1.54
Alteration after execution 1.67
Alteration before execution 1.52
Arrangement 1.77
Continuation or division, reexecution not required 1.60, 1.62
Copies of, furnished to applicants 1.59
Cross-references of related applications 1.78
Deceased or insane inventor 1.42, 1.43
Declaration 1.68
Duty of disclosure 1.56
Elements of, order and arrangement of 1.77
Execution in blank 1.67
File Wrapper Continuing application 1.62
Filed by other than inventor 1.42, 1.43, 1.47
Filed apparently without all pages of specification, petition asserting all pages were filed ..... 1.53(c)
Filed apparently without any drawing, petition asserting drawing was filed, or was not necessary, or adding drawing along with new oath or declaration and seeking new filing date.1.53(c)
Filed apparently without all figures of drawing:
Petition asserting all figures of drawing were filed.1.53(c)
Petition and filing of missing figures with new oath or declaration seeking new filing date 1.182
Filing date 1.53
Foreign language oath or declaration 1.69
Formulas and tables 1.58
General requisites ..... 1.51(a)(1)
Identification required in letters concerning 1.5

Incomplete papers not accepted and filed for examination 1.53
Interlineations, etc., to be indicated 1.52
Language, paper, writing, margin 1.52
Later filing of oath and filing fee 1.53
Must be made by actual inventor, with exceptions..1.41, 1.46
Names of all inventors required 1.41, 1.53
Non-English language 1.52
Nonprovisional filed without at least one claim, filing of peti- tion to convert to a provisional application.1.53(b)(2)(ii)
Owned by Government 1.103
Papers having filing date not to be returned 1.59
Parts filed separately 1.54
Parts of application desirably filed together 1.54
Parts of complete application 1.51
Processing fees 1.17
Provisional application ..... 1.9, 1.51(a)(2), 1.53(b)(2)
Relating to atomic energy 1.14
Reservation for future application not permitted 1.79
Retention fee ..... 1.53(d)
Secrecy order 5.1-5.8
Secret while pending 1.14
Serial number and filing date 1.54
Tables and formulas 1.58
To contain but one invention unless connected 1.141
To whom made 1.51
Two or more by same party with conflicting claims 1.78
Application number ..... 1.5(a)
Arbitration award filing 1.335
Arbitration in interference 1.690
Assignee:
Correspondence held with assignee of entire interest 3.71, 3.73
If of entire interest, patent may issue to him..1.46, 3.81
If of undivided part interest, correspondence will be held with inven- tor 1.33
If of undivided part interest, must assent to application for reissue of patent 1.171, 1.172
If of undivided part interest, patent may issue jointly 1.46, 3.81
May conduct prosecution of application 3.71, 3.73
May take action in interference 1.643
Taking of action in a patent matter before the Office by the Assignee, Assignee must establish its ownership of the patent application or patent involved to the satisfaction of the Commissioner ..... 3.73(b)
Assignments and recording:
Abstracts of title, fee for ..... 1.19(b)
Conditional assignments 3.56
Date of receipt is date of record 3.51
Fees ..... 1.21(h), 3.41
Cover Sheet required 3.28, 3.31
Correction of Cover Sheet errors 3.34
Effect of recording 3.54
Requirements for recording 3.21-3.41
If recorded before payment of issue fee, patent may issue to as- signee 3.81
Must be recorded in Patent and Trademark Office to issue patent to assignee 3.81
Orders for copies of 1.12
Patent may issue to assignee 3.81
Recording of assignments 3.11

Records open to public inspection 1.12
Must identify patent or application 3.21
What will be accepted for recording 3.11
Atomic energy applications reported to Department of Energy.1.14
Attorneys and agents:
Acting in a representative capacity 1.33, 1.34
Assignment will not operate as a revocation of power..1.36
Associate 1.34
Certificate of good standing ..... 1.21(a)
Fee on admission ..... 1.21(a)
General powers not recognized 1.34
Office cannot aid in selection of 1.31
Personal interviews with examiners 1.133
Power of attorney or authorization of agent 1.34
Representative capacity 1.33, 1.34
Representing conflicting parties 1.613
Required to conduct business with decorum and courtesy..1.3
Revocation of power 1.36
Withdrawal of 1.36
Authorization of agents. (*See* Attorneys and agents.)
Award in arbitration 1.335

B

Balance in deposit account 1.25
Basic filing fee 1.16
Benefit of earlier application 1.78
Bill in equity. (*See* Civil action.)
Biological material. (*See* Deposit of Biological material)
Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences. (*See* Appeal to Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, Interferences.)
Box FWC 1.62
Box PCT ..... 1.1(b)
Box Reexam ..... 1.1(c)
Briefs:
At final hearing in interference 1.656
In petitions to Commissioner 1.181
On appeal to Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences 1.192
Business to be conducted with decorum and courtesy 1.3
Business to be transacted in writing 1.2

C

Certificate of correction 1.322, 1.323
Fees 1.20
Mistakes not corrected 1.325
Certificate of mailing (as first class mail) or transmission.1.8
Certificate of mailing by ≥Express Mail≥ no longer required, effective December 2, 1996 ..... 1.10
Certificate, Reexamination 1.570
Certified copies of records, papers, etc 1.13
Fee for certification ..... 1.19(b)
Chemical and mathematical formulas and tables 1.58
Citation of prior art in patent 1.501
Citation of references 1.107
Civil action 1.303, 1.304
Claims (*See also* Examination of applications):
Amendment of 1.119
Conflicting, same applicant or owner 1.78

Date of invention of 1.110
Dependent 1.75
Design patent 1.153
May be in dependent form 1.75
More than one permitted 1.75
Multiple dependent 1.75
Must conform to invention and specification 1.75
Notice of rejection of 1.104
Numbering of 1.126
Part of complete application 1.51
Plant patent 1.164
Rejection of 1.106
Required 1.75
Separate Sheet required for commencement of claim(s)..1.52(b)
Twice or finally rejected before appeal 1.191
Color drawing ..... 1.84(a)(2)
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks (*See also* Petition to Commissioner):
Address of 1.1
All communications to Patent and Trademark Office to be addressed to 1.1
Cases decided by Board reopened only by 1.198
Initiates reexamination 1.520
Reconsideration of cases decided by former 1.184
Reissue in divisions referred to 1.177
Return of papers in violation of rule on decorum and courtesy 1.3
Common Ownership, statement by assignee may be required.1.78(c)
Complaints against examiners, how presented 1.3
Composition of matter, specimens of ingredients may be required 1.93
Computer program listings 1.96
Concurrent office proceedings 1.565
Conduct of reexamination proceedings 1.550
Conflicting claims, same applicant or owner in two or more applications 1.78
Continuing application for invention disclosed and claimed in prior application 1.53, 1.60, 1.62
Copies of patents, records, etc 1.11, 1.12, 1.13
Copies of records, fees ..... 1.19(b), 1.59
Copyright notice in specification ..... 1.71(d)
Copyright notice in drawings ..... 1.84(s)
Correction, certificate of 1.322, 1.323
Correction of inventorship 1.48
Correspondence:
Address, only one recognized ..... 1.33(c)
All letters and communications to the Office to be addressed to (a)Assistant Commissioner for Patents; or (b) Assistant Commissioner for Trademarks; or (c) Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks (except for communications relating to pending litigation per 1.1(g)) 1.1
Business with the Office to be transacted by 1.2
Discourteous communications returned 1.3
Double, with different parties in interest not allowed 1.33
Facsimile transmissions ..... 1.6(d)
Held with attorney or agent 1.33
Identification of application or patent in letter relating to 1.5
May be held exclusively with assignee of entire interest 3.81
Nature of 1.4
Patent owners in reexamination ..... 1.33(c)
Receipt of letters and papers 1.6

Resumed with principal, if power or authorization is revoked 1.36
Rules for conducting in general..... 1.1-1.8
Secrecy, License to Export or File in Foreign Countries..5.33
Separate letter for each subject of inquiry..... 1.4
Signature requirements..... 1.4(d)
When no attorney or agent..... 1.33
With attorney or agent after power or authorization is filed 1.33
Coupons sold by the Office 1.24
Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, appeal to. (*See* Appeal to Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.)

D

Date of invention of subject matter of individual claims..... 1.110
Day for taking any action or paying any fee falling on Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday..... 1.7
Death or insanity of inventor 1.42, 1.43
Decision on appeal by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences..... 1.196
Action following decision 1.197
Declaration (*See also* Oath in patent application).
Foreign language..... 1.69
In lieu of oath..... 1.68
In patent application..... 1.68
Definitions:
Independent inventor..... 1.9
National and international applications 1.9
Nonprofit organization 1.9
Nonprovisional application..... 1.9
Provisional application 1.9
Service of process ..... 15 C.F.R. Part 15
Small business concern..... 1.9
Small entity 1.9
Terms under Patent Cooperation Treaty..... 1.401
Testimony by employees ..... 15 C.F.R. Part 15a
Delivery of patent..... 1.315
Deposit accounts 1.25
Fees..... 1.21(b)
Deposit of computer program listings..... 1.96
Deposit of Biological Material:
Acceptable depository 1.803
Biological material..... 1.801
Examination procedures 1.809
Furnishing of samples..... 1.808
Need or Opportunity to make a deposit..... 1.802
Replacement or supplemental deposit 1.805
Term of deposit..... 1.806
Time of making original deposit 1.804
Viability of deposit..... 1.807
Depositions (*See also* Testimony in interferences):
Certificate of officer to accompany 1.676
Formalities to be observed in preparing..... 1.677
Person before whom taken..... 1.674
To be sealed up, addressed, and forwarded to the Commissioner..... 1.676
When transcript must be filed 1.678
Description of invention. (*See* Specification.)
Design Patent Applications:
Arrangement of specification 1.154

Claim 1.153
Drawing 1.152
Filing fee ..... 1.16(f)
Issue and term 1.155
Issue fee ..... 1.18(b)
Oath 1.153
Rules applicable 1.151
Title, description and claim 1.153
Determination of request for reexamination 1.515
Disclaimer, statutory:
During interference ..... 1.662(a)
Fee ..... 1.20(d)
Requirements of 1.321
Terminal 1.321
Disclosure, amendments to not permitted 1.118
Disclosure document fee ..... 1.21(c)
Discovery in interferences 1.672-1.688
Division. (*See* Restriction of application.)
Division of patent on reissue 1.177
Document supply fees 1.19
Drawing:
Amendment of 1.118, 1.123
Arrangement of views ..... 1.84(h)
Arrows ..... 1.84(r)
Character of lines ..... 1.84(l)
Color ..... 1.84(a)(2)
Content of drawing 1.83
Copyright notice ..... 1.84(s)
Correction ..... 1.84(w), 1.85(c), 1.123
Cost of copies of 1.19
Design application 1.152
Extraneous matter ..... 1.83(a)
Figure for Official Gazette ..... 1.84(j)
Filed with application 1.81
Hatching and shading ..... 1.84(m)
Holes ..... 1.84(x)
Identification ..... 1.84(c)
If of an improvement, must show connection with old structure ..... 1.83(b)
Inferior or defective drawings will be rejected 1.85
Informal drawings 1.85
Ink ..... 1.84(a)(1)
Lead lines ..... 1.84(q)
Legends ..... 1.84(o)
Letters ..... 1.84(p)
Location of names ..... 1.84(c)
Margin ..... 1.84(g)
Mask work notice ..... 1.84(s)
Must be described in and referred to specification 1.74
Must show every feature of the invention 1.83
No return or release ..... 1.85(b)
Numbering of sheets ..... 1.84(t)
Numbering of views ..... 1.84(u)
Numbers ..... 1.84(p)
Original may be used with application for reissue 1.174
Original should be retained by applicant ..... 1.81(a)
Paper ..... 1.84(e)
Part of application papers ..... 1.52(b)

Photographs ..... 1.84(b)
Plant patent application 1.81, 1.165
Printed and published by the Office when patented 1.84
Reference characters ..... 1.74, 1.84(p)
Reissue 1.174
Release not permitted ..... 1.85(b)
Required by law when necessary for understanding 1.81
Scale ..... 1.84(k)
Security markings ..... 1.84(v)
Shading ..... 1.84(m)
Size of sheet ..... 1.84(f)
Specific rules relating to preparation of drawings will be enforced 1.85
Standards for drawings 1.84
Symbols ..... 1.84(n)
Views ..... 1.84(h)
When necessary, part of complete application 1.51
Duty of disclosure 1.56, 1.555
Patent term extension 1.765

E

Election of species 1.146
Employee testimony (*See* Testimony by Office employees)
Establishing small entity status 1.27, 1.28
Evidence. (*See* Testimony in interferences.)
Examination of applications:
Abandoned and forfeited applications not cited in 1.108
Advancement of examination 1.102
As to form 1.104, 1.105
Citation of references 1.107
Completeness of examiner's action 1.105
Examiner's action 1.104
International-type search 1.104
Nature of examination 1.104
Order of examination 1.101
Reasons for allowance 1.109
Reexamination after rejection if requested 1.111
Reexamination of original claims upon reissue 1.176
Reissue 1.176
Rejection of claims 1.106
Suspension of 1.103
Examination of papers by attorney or agent not permitted without authorization 1.34
Examiners:
Answers on appeal 1.193
Complaints against 1.3
Interviews with 1.133
Executors 1.42, 1.44
Exhibits. (*See* Models and exhibits.)
Export of technical data 5.19, 5.20
Express abandonment 1.138
Express Mail, Addressee Only, USPS 1.10
Certificate of mailing by, not required eff. 12/2/96.1.10
Date of Receipt of 1.6
Petition in regard to 1.10
Extension of patent term
Due to regulatory review period (35 U.S.C. 156):
Applicant for 1.730

Application for 1.740
Calculation of term:
Animal Drug Product 1.778
Food or color additive 1.776
Human drug product 1.775
Medical device 1.777
Veterinary biological product 1.779
Certificate 1.780
Conditions for 1.701, 1.720
Determination of eligibility 1.750
Duty of disclosure 1.765
Filing date of application 1.741
Complete application, what constitutes ..... 1.741(a)
Review of determination via 1.181 ..... 1.741(b)
Interim extension 1.760
Multiple applications 1.785
Patents subject to 1.701, 1.710
Withdrawal of application 1.770
Due to prosecution delay (35 U.S.C. 154):
Conditions for ..... 1.701(a) .....
Appellate review ..... 1.701(a)(3)
Interference proceeding ..... 1.701(a)(1)
Secrecy order ..... 1.701(a)(2)
Calculation of term:
Appellate Review ..... 1.701(c)(3)
Interference proceeding ..... 1.701(c)(1)
Maximum extension ..... 1.701(b)
Reduction of extension ..... 1.701(d)
Secrecy order ..... 1.701(c)(2)
Extension of time 1.136
Fees ..... 1.17(a)-(d)
Interference proceedings 1.645
Reexamination proceedings ..... 1.550(c)

F

Facsimile transmissions ..... 1.6(d), 1.8
Federal Holiday, defined for 35 USC 21 purposes ..... 1.9(h)
FEDERAL REGISTER, publication of rules in 1.351, 1.352
Fees and payment of money:
Coupons 1.24
Deposit account 1.25
Extension of time ..... 1.17(a)-(d)
Fee on appeal to the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit provided by rules of court 1.301
Fees in case of petitions ..... 1.181(d)
Fees payable in advance 1.22
Foreign filing license petition ..... 1.17(h)
For international-type search report ..... 1.21(e)
Method of payment 1.23
Money by mail at risk of sender 1.23
Money paid by mistake 1.26
Petitions 1.17
Reexamination request ..... 1.20(c)
Refunds 1.26
Relating to international applications 1.445
Schedule of fees and charges 1.16-1.21
File wrapper continuing application procedure 1.62

Files and papers of abandoned applications, disposition 1.14
Files open to the public 1.11
Filing date of application 1.53
Filing fee part of complete application 1.51
Filing fees 1.16
Filing in Post Office 1.10
Filing of interference settlement agreements 1.666
Final rejection:
  Appeal from 1.191
  Response to 1.113, 1.116, 1.129
  When and how given 1.113
First Class Mail (includes Priority Mail and Express Mail) 1.8
Foreign application 1.55
  License to file 5.11-5.33
Foreign country:
  Taking oath in 1.66
  Taking testimony in 1.671
Foreign mask work protection ..... Part 150
  Evaluation of request 150.4
  Definition 150.1
  Duration of proclamation 150.5
  Initiation of evaluation 150.2
  Mailing address 150.6
  Submission of requests 150.3
Foreign patent rights acquired by government 101.1-101.11
  Licensing 102.1-102.6
Formulas and tables in patent applications 1.58
Fraud practiced or attempted on Office 1.56

G

Gazette. (*See* Official Gazette.)
General authorization to charge deposit account 1.25
General information and correspondence 1.1-1.8
Government acquisition of foreign patent rights ..... Part 501
Government employee invention ..... Part 501
Government interest in patent, recording of 7.1-7.7
Guardian of insane person may apply for patent 1.43

H

Hearings:
  Before the Board of Patents Appeals and Interferences 1.194
  Fee for appeal hearing 1.17
  In disciplinary proceedings 10.144
  Of motions in interferences 1.640
Holiday, time for action expiring on 1.6, 1.7

I

Identification of application, patent or registration 1.5
Independent inventor:
  Definition 1.9
  Status statement 1.27
Information disclosure statement:
  At time of filing application 1.51
  Content of 1.98
  Not permitted in provisional applications 1.51
  Reexamination 1.555

To comply with duty of disclosure 1.97
Information, Public 1.15
Insane inventor, application by guardian of 1.43
Interferences (*See also* Depositions, Notice, Preliminary Statement in interferences, Testimony in interferences):
Abandonment of the contest 1.662
Access to applications 1.612
Access to preliminary statement 1.631
Action by examiner after interference 1.664
Action if statutory bar appears 1.641, 1.659
Addition of new party by judge 1.642
Amendment during 1.615, 1.634, 1.637
Appeal to the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit 1.301, 1.302
Applicant requests 1.604
Arbitration 1.690
Briefs at final hearing 1.656
Burden of proof 1.657
Civil action 1.303
Claims copied from patent 1.606, 1.607
Claims of defeated parties stand finally disposed of 1.663
Concession of priority 1.662
Conflicting parties having same attorney 1.613
Copying claims from patent 1.606, 1.607
Correspondence ..... 1.5(e)
Declaration of interference 1.611
Definition 1.601
Disclaimer to avoid interference ..... 1.662(a)
Discovery 1.671, 1.688
Dissolution of 1.633
Dissolution on motion of judge 1.641
Extensions of time 1.645
Failure of junior party to take testimony 1.652
Failure to prepare for 1.603-1.606
Final decision 1.658
Final hearing 1.654
Final hearing briefs 1.656
Identifying claim from patent..1.607(a)(3), 1.637(e)(1)(vi)
In what cases declared 1.602
Inspection of cases of opposing parties 1.612
Interference with a patent 1.606-1.608
Junior party fails to overcome filing date of senior party 1.640
Jurisdiction of interference 1.614
Manner of service of papers 1.646
Matters considered in at final hearing 1.655
Motions 1.633-1.638
NAFTA country ..... 1.601(r)
Nonpatentability argued at final hearing 1.655
Notice and access to applications of opposing parties 1.612
Notice of intent to argue abandonment 1.632
Notice of reexamination, reissue, protest or litigation 1.660
Notice to file civil action 1.303
Notices and statements 1.611
Order to show cause, judgment on the record 1.640
Ownership of applications or patents involved 1.602
Petitions 1.644
Preliminary statement 1.621-1.631
Preparation for 1.603-1.609

Presumption as to order of invention 1.657
Prosecution by assignee 1.643
Recommendation by Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences 1.659
Record and exhibits 1.653
Records of, when open to public 1.11
Reissue filed by patentee during 1.662
Request by applicant 1.604
Requests for findings of fact and conclusions of law..1.656
Return of unauthorized papers 1.618
Review of decision by civil action 1.303
Same party 1.602
Sanctions for failure to comply with rules or order..1.616
Sanctions for taking and maintaining a frivolous position 1.616
Second interference between same parties 1.665
Secrecy order cases ..... 5.3(b)
Service of papers 1.646
Statement of, from examiner to Board 1.609
Status of claims of defeated applicant after interference 1.663
Statutory disclaimer by patentee during 1.662
Suggestion of claims for interference 1.605
Summary judgement 1.617
Suspension of ex parte prosecution 1.615
Termination of interference 1.661
Testimony copies 1.653
Time period for completion 1.610
Times for discovery and taking testimony 1.651
Translation of document in foreign language 1.647
WTO member country ..... 1.601(s)
International application. (*See* Patent Cooperation Treaty.)
International Preliminary Examining Authority 1.416
Interview summary 1.133
Interviews with examiner 1.133, 1.560
Inventor (*See also* Applicant for patent, Oath in patent application):
Death or insanity of 1.42, 1.43
Refuses to sign application 1.47
To make application 1.41
Unavailable 1.47
Inventor's certificate priority benefit 1.55
Inventorship and date of invention of the subject matter of individual claims 1.110
Issue fee 1.18
Issue of patent. (*See* Allowance and issue of patent.)

J

Joinder of inventions in one application 1.141
Joint inventors 1.45, 1.47, 1.324
Joint patent to inventor and assignee 1.46, 3.81
Jurisdiction:
After decision by Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences 1.197, 1.198
After notice of allowance 1.312
Of contested case 1.614

L

Lapsed patents 1.317
Legal representative of deceased or incapacitated inventor 1.42, 1.43
Legibility of papers which are to become part of the permanent Office records ..... 1.52(a)

Letters to the Office. (*See* Correspondence.)
Library service fee ..... 1.19(c)
License and assignment of government interest in patent 7.1-7.3
License for foreign filing 5.11-5.17
Licensing of government owned foreign patents 102.1-102.6
List of U.S. Patents classified in a subclass, cost of ..... 1.19(d)
Local delivery box rental ..... 1.21(d)

M

Maintenance fees ..... 1.20(e)-(i)
  Acceptance of delayed payment of 1.378
  Fee address for 1.363
  Review of decision refusing to accept 1.377
  Submission of 1.366
  Time for payment of 1.362
Mask work notice in specification ..... 1.71(d)
Mask work notice on drawing ..... 1.84(s)
Mask work protection, foreign ..... Part 150
Microfiche deposit 1.96
Microorganisms. (*See*) Deposit of Biological Material.)
Minimum balance in deposit accounts 1.25
Misjoinder of inventor 1.48, 1.324
Missing pages when application filed
  Petition alleging there were no missing pages. . . . . .1.53(c)
  Petition with new oath or declaration and later submission of missing pages Seeking new filing date 1.182
Mistake in patent, certificate thereof issued..1.322, 1.323
Models and exhibits:
  Copies of 1.95
  If not claimed within reasonable time, may be disposed of by Commissioner 1.94
  If on examination model be found necessary request therefor will be made 1.91
  In contested cases 1.676
  May be required 1.92
  Model not generally required as part of application or patent 1.91
  Not to be taken from the Office except in custody of sworn employee 1.95
  Return of 1.94
  Working model may be required 1.92
Money. (*See* Fees and payment of money.)
Motions in interference 1.633-1.637
  To take testimony in foreign country 1.671

N

Name of applicant 1.41
New matter inadmissible in application 1.118
New matter inadmissible in reexamination..1.530(d), 1.552(b)
New matter inadmissible in reissue 1.173
Non-English language specification fee ..... 1.17(k)
Nonprofit organization:
  Definition 1.9
  Status statement 1.27
Notice:
  Of allowance of application 1.311
  Of appeal to the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit 1.301, 1.302
  Of arbitration award 1.335

Of defective reexamination request ..... 1.510(c)
Of interference 1.611
Of oral hearings on appeals before Board of Patent Appeals and Interference 1.194
Of rejection of an application 1.104
Of use of official records as evidence 1.682
To conflicting parties with same attorney or agent 1.613
Nucleotide and/or Amino Acid Sequences:
Amendments to 1.825
Disclosure in patent application 1.821
Format for sequence data 1.822
Form and format for computer readable form 1.824
Replacement of 1.825
Requirements 1.823

O

Oath or declaration in patent application:
Apostilles 1.66
Before whom taken in foreign countries 1.66
Before whom taken in the United States 1.66
By administrator or executor 1.42, 1.63
By guardian of insane 1.43, 1.63
Certificate of Officer administering 1.66
Continuation-in-part ..... 1.63(d)
Declaration 1.68
Foreign language 1.69
Identification of specification to which it is directed..1.63
International application, National Stage 1.497
Inventor's Certificate 1.63
Made by inventor 1.41, 1.63
Officers authorized to administer oaths 1.66
Part of complete application 1.51
Person making 1.64
Plant patent application 1.162
Requirements of 1.63
Ribboned to other papers 1.66
Sealed 1.66
Signature to 1.63
Supplemental oath for matter disclosed but not originally claimed, or for other noncompliance with 1.63 ..... 1.67
To acknowledge duty of disclosure 1.63
When taken abroad to seal all papers 1.66
Oath or declaration in reissue application 1.175
Object of the invention 1.73
Office action time for response 1.134
Office fees. (*See* Fees and payment of money.)
Official action, based exclusively upon the written record.1.2
Official business, should be transacted in writing 1.2
Official Gazette:
Amendments to rules published in 1.351
One view of drawing published in ..... 1.84(j)
Reexamination order published in is returned undelivered ..... 1.525(b)
Service of notices in 1.646
Oral statements 1.2
Order of examination 1.101
Order to reexamine 1.525

P

Papers (requirements to become part of Office permanent records, e.g. legibility, capable of reproduction, etc.) 1.52
Handwritten, no longer permitted ..... 1.52(a)
Papers not received on Saturday, Sunday or holidays 1.6
Patent application (*See* Application for patent and Provisional patent applications.)
Patent attorneys and agents. (*See* Attorneys and agents.)
Patent Cooperation Treaty:
Amendments and corrections during international processing 1.471
Amendments during international preliminary examination 1.485
Applicant for international application 1.421
Changes in person, name and address, where filed ..... 1.421(f), 1.472
Conduct of international preliminary examination 1.484
Definition of terms 1.401
Delays in meeting time limits 1.468
Demand for international preliminary examination 1.480
Designation of States 1.432
Entry into national stage 1.491
As a designated office 1.494
As an elected office 1.495
Examination at national stage 1.496
Fees:
Designation fees 1.432
Due on filing of international application ..... 1.431(c)
Failure to pay results in withdrawal of application ..... 1.431(d), 1.432
Filing and processing fees 1.445
International preliminary examining 1.482
National stage 1.492
Refunds 1.446
Filing by other than inventor 1.425
International application requirements 1.431
Abstract 1.438
Claims 1.436
Description 1.435
Drawings 1.437
Physical requirements 1.433
Request 1.434
International Bureau 1.415
International Preliminary Examining Authority 1.416
Inventor deceased 1.422
Inventor insane or legally incapacitated 1.423
Inventors, joint 1.424
National stage examination 1.496
Oath or declaration at national stage 1.497
Priority, claim for 1.451
Record copy to International Bureau, Transmittal procedures 1.461
Representation by attorney or agent 1.455
Rule 13 ..... 1.475
Time limits for processing applications 1.465, 1.468
United States as:
Designated Office 1.414, 1.497
International Searching Authority 1.413
Receiving Office 1.412
Unity of invention:
Before International Searching Authority 1.475, 1.476
Before International Preliminary Examining Authority 1.488

Index 1

National stage 1.499
Protest to lack of 1.477, 1.489
Patent policy, government 100.1-100.11
Patentee notified of interference 1.602
Patents (*See also* Allowance and issue of Patent):
Available for license or sale, publication of notice..1.21(i)
Certified copies of 1.13
Copying claims of 1.606, 1.607
Correction of errors in 1.171, 1.322, 1.323, 1.324
Date, duration and form 1.317
Delivery of 1.315
Disclaimer 1.321
Identification required in letters concerning 1.5
Lapsed, for nonpayment of issue fee 1.317
Obtainable by civil action 1.303
Price of copies 1.19
Records of, open to public 1.11
Reissuing of, when defective 1.171-1.179
Payment of fees 1.23
Personal attendance unnecessary 1.2
Petition for reissue 1.171, 1.172
Petition to Commissioner:
Fees 1.17
For delayed payment of issue fee 1.155, 1.316, 1.317
For license for foreign filing 5.12
For the revival of an abandoned application 1.137, 1.139
From formal objections or requirements 1.113, 1.181
From requirement for restriction 1.129, 1.144
General requirements 1.181
In interferences 1.644
In reexamination ..... 1.515(c)
On refusal of examiner to admit amendment 1.127
Questions not specifically provided for 1.182
Reconsideration of cases decided by former Commissioners 1.184
Suspension of rules 1.183
To exercise supervisory authority 1.181
To make special 1.102
Upon objection that appeal is informal 1.193
Plant patent applications:
Applicant 1.162
Claim 1.164
Declaration 1.162
Description 1.162
Drawings 1.165
Examination 1.167
Fee for copies 1.19
Filing fee ..... 1.16(g)
Issue fee ..... 1.18(c)
Oath 1.162
Rules applicable 1.161
Specification 1.163
Specimens 1.166
Post issuance fees 1.20
Post Office receipt as filing date 1.10
Postal emergency or interruption ..... 1.6(e)
Power of attorney. (*See* Attorneys and agents.)
Preliminary statement in interferences:

Access to 1.631
Contents to 1.622-1.627
Contents of, invention made in other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country 1.624
Correction of statement on motion 1.628
Effect of statement 1.629
Failure to file 1.639, 1.640
In case of motion to amend interference 1.633
May be amended if defective 1.628
Not evidence 1.630
Reliance on prior application 1.626
Requirement for 1.621
Sealed before filing 1.627
Service on opposing parties 1.621
Subsequent testimony alleging prior dates excluded 1.629
When opened to inspection 1.631
Preserved in confidence, applications ..... 1.12 & 1.14
Exceptions (status, access or copies available) 1.14
Printing testimony 1.653
Prior art citation in patent 1.501
Prior Art, disqualification of commonly owned patent as..1.130
Prior art may be made of record in patent file 1.501
Prior art statement:
Content of 1.98
In reexamination 1.555
To comply with duty of disclosure 1.97
Prior Invention, affidavit or declaration of, to overcome cited patent or publication 1.131
Priority, right of, under treaty or law 1.55
Processing and retention fee ..... 1.21(l), 1.53(d)(1)
Proclamation as to protection of foreign mask works..Part 150
Production of documents in legal proceedings.15 C.F.R. Part 15a
Protests to grant of patent 1.291
Provisional patent applications:
Claiming the benefit of ..... 1.78(a)(3)
Converting a nonprovisional to a provisional..1.53(b)(2)(ii)
Filing date ..... 1.53(b)(2)
Filing fee ..... 1.16(k)
General requisites ..... 1.51(a)(2)
Later filing of filing fee and cover sheet ..... 1.53(d)(2)
Names of all inventors required ..... 1.41, 1.53(b)(2)
No right of priority ..... 1.53(b)(2)(iii)
No examination ..... 1.53(e)(2)
Papers concerning, must identify provisional applications as such, and by application number ..... 1.5(f)
Parts of complete provisional application ..... 1.51(a)(2)
Processing fees 1.17
Revival of 1.139
When abandoned ..... 1.53(e)(2)
Public information 1.15
Public use proceedings 1.292
Fee ..... 1.17(j)
Publication:
Of patent based on international application 1.318
Of reexamination certificate ..... 1.570(f)

R

Reasons for allowance.....1.109
Reconsideration of cases decided by a former Commissioner.1.184
Reconsideration of Office action.....1.112
Recording of assignments. (*See* Assignments and recording.)
Records of the Patent and Trademark Office.....1.11-1.15
Records used as evidence in interference.....1.682
Reexamination:
  Amendments, manner of making.....1.121(f)
  Announcement in Official Gazette.....1.11(c)
  Appeal to Board.....1.191
  Appeal to Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.....1.301
  Certificate.....1.570
  Civil action.....1.303
  Common ownership, statement by assignee may be required.1.78(c)
  Concurrent office proceedings.....1.565
  Conduct of proceedings.....1.550
  Correspondence address.....1.33(c)
  Decision of request.....1.515
  Duty of disclosure.....1.555
  Examiner's action.....1.104
  Fee.....1.20(c)
  Fee charged to deposit account.....1.25
  Fee refund.....1.26
  Identification in letter.....1.5(d)
  Initiated by Commissioner.....1.520
  Interference.....1.565
  Interviews.....1.560
  Open to public.....1.11(d)
  Order.....1.525
  Reconsideration.....1.112
  Refund of fee.....1.26
  Reply by requester.....1.535
  Reply to action.....1.111
  Request.....1.510
  Response consideration.....1.540
  Scope.....1.552
  Service.....1.248
  Statement of patent owner.....1.530
Reference characters in drawings.....1.74, 1.84(p)
References cited on examination.....1.107
Refund of money paid by mistake.....1.26
Register of Government interest in patents.....7.1-7.7
Rehearing:
  Of appeal decisions by Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.....1.197(b)
  Request for, time for appeal after action on.....1.304
Reissues:
  Applicants, assignees.....1.172
  Application for reissue.....1.171
  Application made and sworn to by inventor, if living..1.172
  Declaration.....1.175
  Drawings.....1.174
  Examination of reissue.....1.176
  Filed during interference.....1.662(b)
  Filing during reexamination.....1.565
  Filing fee.....1.16
  Filing of announced in Official Gazette.....1.11

Grounds for and requirements 1.171-1.179
Issue fee ..... 1.18(a)
Loss of original patent 1.178
Notice of reissue application 1.179
Oath 1.175
Open to public 1.11
Original claims subject to reexamination 1.176
Original patent surrendered 1.178
Reissue in divisions 1.177
Specification 1.173
Take precedence in order of examination 1.176
To contain no new matter 1.173
What must accompany application 1.171, 1.172
When in interference 1.660
Rejection:
After two rejections appeal may be taken from examiner to Board of Appeals 1.191
Applicant will be notified of rejection with reasons and references 1.104
Examiner may rely on admissions by applicant or patent owner, or facts within examiner's knowledge 1.106
Final 1.113
Formal objections 1.104, 1.105
On account of invention shown by others but not claimed, how overcome 1.131
References will be cited 1.106
Requisites of notice of 1.104, 1.106, 1.107
Reply brief 1.193
Reply by applicant or patent owner 1.111
Reply by requester 1.535
Representative capacity ..... 1.34(a)
Request for reconsideration 1.112
Request for reexamination 1.510
Reservation clauses not permitted 1.79
Response time to Office action 1.134
Restriction of application 1.141-1.146
Claims to nonelected invention withdrawn 1.142
Constructive election 1.145
Petition from requirements for 1.129, 1.144
Provisional election 1.143
Reconsideration of requirement 1.143
Requirement for 1.142
Subsequent presentation of claims for different invention 1.145
Transitional procedures 1.129
Retention fees ..... 1.21(l), 1.53(d)(1)
Return of correspondence ..... 1.5(a)
Return of papers having a filing date 1.59
Revival of abandoned application 1.137, 1.139
Unavoidable abandonment fee ..... 1.17(l)
Unintentional abandonment fee ..... 1.17(m)
Revocation of power of attorney or authorization of agent 1.36
Rules of Practice:
Amendments to rules will be published 1.351
Publication of notice of proposed amendments 1.352

S

Saturday, when last day falls on 1.7
Scope of reexamination proceedings 1.552

Index 1

Secrecy order 5.1-5.8
Serial number of application (Obsolete terminology) (*See* Application Number) ..... 1.5, 1.53, 1.54(b), 1.62(e)
Service of notices:
  For taking testimony 1.673
  In interference cases 1.611
  Of appeal to the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.1.301
Service of papers 1.248
Service of process ..... 15 C.F.R. Part 15
  Acceptance of service of process 15.3
  Definition 15.2
  Scope and purpose 15.1
Shortened period for response 1.134
Signature:
  Original required for certain correspondence ..... 1.4(d)
  Copy Acceptable for some correspondence ..... 1.4(d)
  To amendments, etc 1.33
  To express abandonment 1.138
  To oath 1.63
  To reissue oath or declaration 1.172
Small business concern:
  Definition 1.9
Status statement 1.27
Small entity:
  Definition 1.9
  License to Federal Agency 1.27
  Statement 1.27
  Statement in parent application 1.28
  Status establishment 1.27, 1.28
  Status update 1.28
Solicitor's address ..... 1.1(g)
Species of invention claimed 1.141, 1.146
Specification (*See also* Application for patent, Claims):
  Abstract 1.72
  Amendments to 1.117, 1.118, 1.125
  Arrangement of 1.77, 1.154, 1.163
  Best mode 1.71
  Claim 1.75
  Contents of 1.71-1.75
  Copyright notice ..... 1.71(d)
  Cross-references to other applications 1.78
  Description of the invention 1.71
  Erasures and insertions must not be made by applicant..1.121
  If defective, reissue to correct 1.171-1.179
  Mask work notice ..... 1.71(d)
  Must conclude with specific and distinct claim 1.75
  Must point out new improvements specifically 1.71
  Must refer by figures to drawings 1.74
  Must set forth the precise invention 1.71
  Not returned after completion 1.59
  Object of the invention 1.73
  Order of arrangement in framing 1.77
  Paper, writing, margins 1.52
  Part of complete application 1.51
  Reference to drawings 1.74
  Requirements of 1.71-1.75
  Reservation clauses not permitted 1.79
  Substitute 1.125

Summary of the invention 1.73
Title of the invention 1.72
To be rewritten, if necessary 1.125
Specimens. (*See* Models and exhibits.)
Specimens of composition of matter to be furnished when required 1.93
Specimens of plants 1.166
Statement of status as small entity 1.27
Statutory disclaimer fee ..... 1.20(d)
Statutory invention registrations 1.293
Examination of 1.294
Publication of 1.297
Review of decision finally refusing to publish 1.295
Withdrawal of request for publication of 1.296
Sufficient funds in deposit account 1.25
Suit in equity. (*See* Civil action.)
Summary of invention 1.73
Sunday, when last day falls on 1.7
Supervisory authority, petition to Commissioner to exercise 1.181
Supplemental oath for amendment presenting claims for matter disclosed but not originally claimed 1.67
Surcharge for oath or basic filing fee filed after filing date ..... 1.16(e), 1.53(d)
Suspension of action 1.103
Suspension of ex parte prosecution during interference 1.615
Suspension of rules 1.183
Symbols for drawings ..... 1.84(n)
Symbols for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence data ..1.822

T

Tables in patent applications 1.58
Term of design patent 1.155
Terminal disclaimer 1.321
Testimony by Office employees ..... 15 C.F.R. Part 15a
Definition ..... 15 C.F.R. Part 15a.2
Policy re demand for testimony or document production ..... 15 C.F.R. Part 15a.3
Procedures re demand for testimony or document production ..... 15 C.F.R. Part 15a.4
Private litigation ..... 15 C.F.R. Part 15a.6
Proceedings involving the United States..15 C.F.R. Part 15a.7
Requests for confidential documents ..... 15 C.F.R. Part 15a.7
Scope ..... 15 C.F.R. Part 15a.1
Subpoena of Office employee ..... 15 C.F.R. Part 15a.5
Testimony of employees in proceedings involving U.S ..... 15 C.F.R. Part 15a.8
Testimony in interferences:
Additional time for taking 1.645
Assignment of times for taking 1.651
Certification and filing by officer 1.676
Copies of 1.653
Depositions must be filed 1.678
Discovery 1.687
Effect of errors and irregularities in deposition 1.685
Evidence must comply with rules 1.671
Examination of witnesses 1.675
Failure to take 1.652
Form of deposition 1.677
Formal objections to 1.685
Formalities in preparing depositions 1.674-1.677
In foreign countries 1.671

Inspection of testimony 1.679
Manner of taking testimony of witnesses 1.672
Motion to extend time for taking 1.645
Not considered if not taken and filed in compliance with rules 1.671
Notice of examination of witnesses 1.673
Notice of intent to rely on affidavit ..... 1.671(e)
Objections noted in depositions 1.675
Weight of deposition testimony taken in foreign country ..... 1.671(j)
Objections to formal matters 1.685
Official records and printed publications 1.682
Officer's certificate 1.676
Persons before whom depositions may be taken 1.674
Printing of 1.653
Service of notice 1.673
Stipulations or agreements concerning 1.672
Taken by depositions 1.672
Testimony taken in another interference or action, use of 1.683
Time for taking 1.651
To be inspected by parties to the case only 1.679
Time expiring on Saturday, Sunday, or holiday 1.7
Time for payment of issue fee 1.311
Time for response by applicant 1.134, 1.136
Time for response by patent owner 1.530
Time for response by requester 1.535
Time for response to Office action 1.134, 1.136
Time, periods of 1.7
Timely filing of correspondence 1.8, 1.10
Title of invention 1.72
Title reports, fee for ..... 1.19(b)(4)
Transitional procedures 1.129

U

Unavoidable abandonment 1.137, 1.139, 1.555, 1.316
Unintentional abandonment 1.137, 1.139, 1.555, 1.316
United States as:
Designated Office 1.414, 1.497
Elected Office 1.414
International Preliminary Examining Authority 1.416
International Searching Authority 1.413
Receiving Office 1.412
Unsigned continuation or divisional application..1.60, 1.62
Use of file of parent application 1.62

V

Verified statement of small entity status 1.27

W

Waiver of secrecy 1.62
Withdrawal from issue 1.313
Withdrawal of attorney or agent 1.36
Withdrawal of request for statutory invention registration 1.296
Written Description allegedly missing petition contesting this allegation ..... 1.53(c)
Petition with new oath or declaration and later submission of missing specification Seeing new filing date ..... 1.53(c)

PART 1—RULES OF PRACTICE IN PATENT CASES

EDITORIAL NOTE: Part 1 is placed in a separate grouping of parts pertaining to patents. It appears on page 5 of this volume.

TRADEMARKS

PART 2—RULES OF PRACTICE IN TRADEMARK CASES

Sec.
2.1 Sections of part 1 applicable.
2.2 Definitions.
2.6 Trademark fees.
2.7 Fastener recordal fees.

REPRESENTATION BY ATTORNEYS OR OTHER AUTHORIZED PERSONS

2.11 Applicants may be represented by an attorney.
2.12—2.16 [Reserved]
2.17 Recognition for representation.
2.18 Correspondence, with whom held.
2.19 Revocation of power of attorney or of other authorization to represent; withdrawal.

DECLARATIONS

2.20 Declarations in lieu of oaths.

APPLICATION FOR REGISTRATION

2.21 Requirements for receiving a filing date.
2.23 Serial number.
2.24 Designation of representative by foreign applicant.
2.25 Papers not returnable.
2.26 Use of old drawing in new application.
2.27 Pending trademark application index; access to applications.

THE WRITTEN APPLICATION

2.31 Application must be in English.
2.32 Application to be signed and sworn to or include a declaration by applicant.
2.33 Requirements for written application.
2.35 Description of mark.
2.36 Identification of prior registrations.
2.37 Authorization for representation; U.S. representative.
2.38 Use by predecessor or by related companies.
2.39 Priority claim based on foreign application.
2.41 Proof of distinctiveness under section 2(f).
2.42 Concurrent use.
2.43 Service mark.
2.44 Collective mark.
2.45 Certification mark.
2.46 Principal Register.
2.47 Supplemental Register.

DRAWING

2.51 Drawing required.
2.52 Requirements for drawings.

SPECIMENS

2.56 Specimens.
2.57 Facsimiles.
2.58 Specimens or facsimiles in the case of a service mark.
2.59 Filing substitute specimens.

EXAMINATION OF APPLICATION AND ACTION BY APPLICANTS

2.61 Action by examiner.
2.62 Period for response.
2.63 Re-examination.
2.64 Final action.
2.65 Abandonment.
2.66 Revival of abandoned applications.
2.67 Suspension of action by the Patent and Trademark Office.
2.68 Express abandonment (withdrawal) of application.
2.69 Compliance with other laws.

AMENDMENT OF APPLICATION

2.71 Amendments to correct informalities.
2.72 Amendments to description or drawing of the mark.
2.73 Amendment to recite concurrent use.
2.74 Form of amendment.
2.75 Amendment to change application to different register.
2.76 Amendment to allege use.
2.77 Amendments between notice of allowance and statement of use.

PUBLICATION AND POST PUBLICATION

2.80 Publication for opposition.
2.81 Post publication.
2.82 Marks on Supplemental Register published only upon registration.
2.83 Conflicting marks.
2.84 Jurisdiction over published applications.

CLASSIFICATION

2.85 Classification schedules.
2.86 Application may include multiple goods or services comprised in single class or multiple classes.
2.87 Dividing an application.

POST NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE

2.88 Filing statement of use after notice of allowance.
2.89 Extensions of time for filing a statement of use.

INTERFERENCES AND CONCURRENT USE PROCEEDINGS

2.91 Declaration of interference.
2.92 Preliminary to interference.
2.93 Institution of interference.
2.94—2.95 [Reserved]

2.96 Issue; burden of proof.
2.97 [Reserved]
2.98 Adding party to interference.
2.99 Application to register as concurrent user.

OPPOSITION

2.101 Filing an opposition.
2.102 Extension of time for filing an opposition.
2.104 Contents of opposition.
2.105 Notification of opposition proceeding(s).
2.106 Answer.
2.107 Amendment of pleadings in an opposition proceeding.

CANCELLATION

2.111 Filing petition for cancellation.
2.112 Contents of petition for cancellation.
2.113 Notification of cancellation proceeding.
2.114 Answer.
2.115 Amendment of pleadings in a cancellation proceeding.

PROCEDURE IN INTER PARTES PROCEEDINGS

2.116 Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.
2.117 Suspension of proceedings.
2.118 Undelivered Office notices.
2.119 Service and signing of papers.
2.120 Discovery.
2.121 Assignment of times for taking testimony.
2.122 Matters in evidence.
2.123 Trial testimony in inter partes cases.
2.124 Depositions upon written questions.
2.125 Filing and service of testimony.
2.126 [Reserved]
2.127 Motions.
2.128 Briefs at final hearing.
2.129 Oral argument; reconsideration.
2.130 New matter suggested by Examiner of Trademarks.
2.131 Remand after decision in inter partes proceeding.
2.132 Involuntary dismissal for failure to take testimony.
2.133 Amendment of application or registration during proceedings.
2.134 Surrender or voluntary cancellation of registration.
2.135 Abandonment of application or mark.
2.136 Status of application on termination of proceeding.

APPEALS

2.141 Ex parte appeals from the Examiner of Trademarks.
2.142 Time and manner of ex parte appeals.
2.144 Reconsideration of decision on ex parte appeal.
2.145 Appeal to court and civil action.

PETITIONS AND ACTION BY THE COMMISSIONER

2.146 Petitions to the Commissioner.
2.147 [Reserved]
2.148 Commissioner may suspend certain rules.

CERTIFICATE

2.151 Certificate.

PUBLICATION OF MARKS REGISTERED UNDER 1905 ACT

2.153 Publication requirements.
2.154 Publication in Official Gazette.
2.155 Notice of publication.
2.156 Not subject to opposition; subject to cancellation.

REREGISTRATION OF MARKS REGISTERED UNDER PRIOR ACTS

2.158 Reregistration of marks registered under Acts of 1881, 1905, and 1920.

CANCELLATION FOR FAILURE TO FILE AFFIDAVIT OR DECLARATION DURING SIXTH YEAR

2.161 Cancellation for failure to file affidavit or declaration during sixth year.
2.162 Requirements for affidavit or declaration during sixth year.
2.163 Notice to registrant.
2.164 Acknowledgment of receipt of affidavit or declaration.
2.165 Reconsideration of affidavit or declaration.
2.166 Time of cancellation.

AFFIDAVIT OR DECLARATION UNDER SECTION 15

2.167 Affidavit or declaration under section 15.
2.168 Combined with other affidavits or declarations.

CORRECTION, DISCLAIMER, SURRENDER, ETC.

2.171 New certificate on change of ownership.
2.172 Surrender for cancellation.
2.173 Amendment; disclaimer in part.
2.174 Correction of Office mistake.
2.175 Correction of mistake by registrant.
2.176 Consideration of above matters.

TERM AND RENEWAL

2.181 Term of original registrations and renewals.
2.182 Period within which application for renewal must be filed.
2.183 Requirements of application for renewal.
2.184 Refusal of renewal.
2.185—2.187 [Reserved]

AUTHORITY: 15 U.S.C. 1123; 35 U.S.C. 6, unless otherwise noted.

SOURCE: 30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, unless otherwise noted.

§ 2.1 Sections of part 1 applicable.

Sections 1.1 to 1.26 of this chapter are applicable to trademark cases except such parts thereof which specifically refer to patents and except § 1.22 to the extent that it is inconsistent with § 2.85(e), 2.101(d), 2.111(c) or § 2.162(d). Other sections of part 1 incorporated by reference or referred to in particular sections of this part are also applicable to trademark cases.

[51 FR 28709, Aug. 11, 1986]

§ 2.2 Definitions.

(a) *The Act* as used in this part means the Trademark Act of 1946, 60 Stat. 427, as amended, codified in 15 U.S.C. 1051 *et seq.*

(b) *Entity* as used in this part includes both natural and juristic persons.

[54 FR 37588, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.6 Trademark fees.

The following fees and charges are established by the Patent and Trademark Office for trademark cases:

(a) Trademark process fees.

(1) For filing an application, per class $245.00
(2) For filing an amendment to allege use under section 1(c) of the Act, per class $100.00
(3) For filing a statement of use under section 1(d)(1) of the Act, per class $100.00
(4) For filing a request under section 1(d)(2) of the Act for a six-month extension of time for filing a statement of use under section 1(d)(1) of the Act, per class $100.00
(5) For filing an application for renewal of a registration, per class $300.00
(6) Additional fee for filing a renewal application made within three months after the expiration of the registration, per class.....$100.00
(7) For filing to publish a mark under section 12(c), per class $100.00
(8) For issuing a new certificate of registration upon request of assignee $100.00
(9) For a certificate of correction of registrant's error $100.00
(10) For filing a disclaimer to a registration $100.00
(11) For filing an amendment to a registration $100.00
(12) For filing an affidavit under section 8 of the Act, per class $100.00
(13) For filing an affidavit under section 15 of the Act, per class $100.00
(14) For filing a combined affidavit under sections 8 and 15 of the Act, per class $200.00
(15) For petitions to the Commissioner $100.00
(16) For filing a petition to cancel, per class $200.00
(17) For filing a notice of opposition, per class $200.00
(18) For ex parte appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, per class $100.00
(19) Dividing an application, per new application (file wrapper) created $100.00

(b) Trademark service fees.

(1) For printed copy of registered mark, copy only
(i) Regular service $3.00
(ii) Overnight delivery to PTO Box or overnight fax $6.00
(iii) Expedited service for copy ordered by expedited mail or fax delivery service and delivered to the customer within two work days $25.00
(2) Certified or uncertified copy of trademark application as filed:
(i) Regular service.....$15.00
(ii) Expedited local service.....$30.00
(3) Certified or uncertified copy of a trademark-related file wrapper and contents.....$50.00
(4) Certified copy of a registered mark, showing title and/or status:
(i) Regular service.....$10.00
(ii) Expedited local service.....$20.00
(5) Certified or uncertified copy of trademark records, per document except as otherwise provided in this section $25.00
(6) For recording each trademark assignment, agreement or other paper relating to the property in a registration or application
(i) First property in a document $40.00
(ii) For each additional property in the same document $25.00
(7) For assignment records, abstract of title and certification, per registration $25.00
(8) Marginal cost, paid in advance, for each hour of terminal session time, including print time, using T-Search capabilities, prorated for the actual time used. The Commissioner may waive the payment by an individual for access to T-Search upon a showing of need or hardship, and if such waiver is in the public interest.....$40.00
(9) Self-service copy charge, per page $0.25
(10) Labor charges for services, per hour or fraction thereof $30.00

(11) For items and services that the Commissioner finds may be supplied, for which fees are not specified by statute or by this part, such charges as may be determined by the Commissioner with respect to each such item or service .....Actual Cost

[56 FR 65155, Dec. 13, 1991; 56 FR 66670, Dec. 24, 1991, as amended at 57 FR 38196, Aug. 21, 1992; 59 FR 257, Jan. 4, 1994; 60 FR 41023, Aug. 11, 1995]

§2.7 Fastener Recordal Fees.

(a) Application fee for recordal of insignia $20.00
(b) Renewal of insignia recordal.....$20.00
(c) Surcharge for late renewal of insignia recordal.....$20.00

[61 FR 55223, Oct. 25, 1996]

REPRESENTATION BY ATTORNEYS OR OTHER AUTHORIZED PERSONS

AUTHORITY: Secs. 2.11 to 2.19 also issued under 35 U.S.C. 31, 32.

§2.11 Applicants may be represented by an attorney.

The owner of a trademark may file and prosecute his or her own application for registration of such trademark, or he or she may be represented by an attorney or other individual authorized to practice in trademark cases under §10.14 of this subchapter. The Patent and Trademark Office cannot aid in the selection of an attorney or other representative.

[50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985]

§2.12—2.16 [Reserved]

§2.17 Recognition for representation.

(a) When an attorney as defined in §10.1(c) of this subchapter acting in a representative capacity appears in person or signs a paper in practice before the Patent and Trademark Office in a trademark case, his or her personal appearance or signature shall constitute a representation to the Patent and Trademark Office that, under the provisions of §10.14 and the law he or she is authorized to represent the particular party in whose behalf he or she acts. Further proof of authority to act in a representative capacity may be required.

(b) Before any non-lawyer will be allowed to take action of any kind in any application or proceeding, a written authorization from the applicant, party to the proceeding, or other person entitled to prosecute such application or proceeding must be filed therein.

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985]

§2.18 Correspondence, with whom held.

Correspondence will be sent to the applicant or a party to a proceeding at its address unless papers are transmitted by an attorney at law, or a written power of attorney is filed, or written authorization of other person entitled to be recognized is filed, or the applicant or party designates in writing another address to which correspondence is to be sent, in which event correspondence will be sent to the attorney at law transmitting the papers, or to the attorney at law designated in the power of attorney, or to the other person designated in the written authorization, or to the address designated by the applicant or party for correspondence. Correspondence will continue to be sent to such address until the applicant or party, or the attorney at law or other authorized representative of the applicant or party, indicates in writing that correspondence is to be sent to another address. Correspondence will be sent to the domestic representative of a foreign applicant unless the application is being prosecuted by an attorney at law or other qualified person duly authorized, in which event correspondence will be sent to the attorney at law or other qualified person duly authorized. Double correspondence will not be undertaken by the Patent and Trademark Office, and if more than one attorney at law or other authorized representative appears or signs a paper, the Office reply will be sent to the address already established in the file until another correspondence address is specified by the applicant or party or by the attorney or other authorized representative of the applicant or party.

[54 FR 37588, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.19 Revocation of power of attorney or of other authorization to represent; withdrawal.

(a) Authority to represent an applicant or a party to a proceeding may be revoked at any stage in the proceedings of a case upon notification to the Commissioner; and when it is so revoked, the Office will communicate directly with the applicant or party to the proceeding or with such other qualified person as may be authorized. The Patent and Trademark Office will notify the person affected of the revocation of his or her authorization.

(b) An individual authorized to represent an applicant or party in a trademark case may withdraw upon application to and approval by the Commissioner.

[50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985]

DECLARATIONS

§ 2.20 Declarations in lieu of oaths.

The applicant or member of the firm or an officer of the corporation or association making application for registration or filing a document in the Patent and Trademark Office relating to a mark may, in lieu of the oath, affidavit, verification, or sworn statement required from him, in those instances prescribed in the individual rules, file a declaration that all statements made of his own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true, if, and only if, the declarant is, on the same paper, warned that willful false statements and the like are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both (18 U.S.C. 1001), and may jeopardize the validity of the application or document or any registration resulting therefrom.

[31 FR 5261, Apr. 1, 1966]

APPLICATION FOR REGISTRATION

AUTHORITY: Secs. 2.21 to 2.47 also issued under sec. 1, 60 Stat. 427; 15 U.S.C. 1051.

§ 2.21 Requirements for receiving a filing date.

(a) Materials submitted as an application for registration of a mark will not be accorded a filing date as an application until all of the following elements are received:

(1) Name of the applicant;

(2) A name and address to which communications can be directed;

(3) A drawing of the mark sought to be registered substantially meeting all the requirements of §2.52;

(4) An identification of goods or services;

(5) A basis for filing:

(i) A date of first use of the mark in commerce, and at least one specimen or facsimile of the mark as used, in an application under section 1(a) of the Act, or

(ii) A claim of a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce and a certification or certified copy of the foreign registration on which the application is based in an application under section 44(e) of the Act, or

(iii) A claim of a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce and a claim of the benefit of a prior foreign application in an application filed in accordance with section 44(d) of the Act, or

(iv) A claim of a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce in an application under section 1(b) of the Act;

(6) A verification or declaration in accordance with §2.33(b) signed by the applicant;

(7) The required filing fee for at least one class of goods or services. Compliance with one or more of the rules relating to the elements specified above may be required before the application is further processed.

(b) The filing date of the application is the date on which all of the elements set forth in paragraph (a) of this section are received in the Patent and Trademark Office.

(c) If the papers and fee submitted as an application do not satisfy all of the requirements specified in paragraph (a) of this section, the papers will not be considered to constitute an application and will not be given a filing date. The Patent and Trademark Office will return the papers and any fee submitted therewith to the person who submitted the papers. The Office will notify the person to whom the papers are returned of the defect or defects which

prevented their being considered to be an application.

[47 FR 38695, Sept. 2, 1982, as amended at 51 FR 29921, Aug. 21, 1986; 54 FR 37588, Sept. 11, 1989]

§2.23 Serial number.

Applications will be given a serial number as received, and the applicant will be informed of the serial number and the filing date of the application.

[37 FR 931, Jan. 21, 1972]

§2.24 Designation of representative by foreign applicant.

If an applicant is not domiciled in the United States, the applicant must designate by a written document filed in the Patent and Trademark Office the name and address of some person resident in the United States on whom may be served notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark. If this document does not accompany or form part of the application, it will be required and registration refused unless it is supplied. Official communications of the Patent and Trademark Office will be addressed to the domestic representative unless the application is being prosecuted by an attorney at law or other qualified person duly authorized, in which event Official communications will be sent to the attorney at law or other qualified person duly authorized. The mere designation of a domestic representative does not authorize the person designated to prosecute the application unless qualified under paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of §10.14 of this subchapter and authorized under §2.17(b).

[54 FR 37588, Sept. 11, 1989]

§2.25 Papers not returnable.

After an application is filed the papers will not be returned for any purpose whatever; but the Office will furnish copies to the applicant upon request and payment of the fee.

§2.26 Use of old drawing in new application.

In an application filed in place of an abandoned or rejected application, or in an application for reregistration (§2.158), a new complete application is required, but the old drawing, if suitable, may be used. The application must be accompanied by a request for the transfer of the drawing, and by a permanent photographic copy, or an order for such copy, of the drawing to be placed in the original file. A drawing so transferred, or to be transferred, cannot be amended.

§2.27 Pending trademark application index; access to applications.

(a) An index of pending applications including the name and address of the applicant, a reproduction or description of the mark, the goods or services with which the mark is used, the class number, the dates of use, and the serial number and filing date of the application will be available for public inspection as soon as practicable after filing.

(b) Except as provided in paragraph (e) of this section, access to the file of a particular pending application will be permitted prior to publication under §2.80 upon written request.

(c) Decisions of the Commissioner and the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board in applications and proceedings relating thereto are published or available for inspection or publication.

(d) Except as provided in paragraph (e) of this section, after a mark has been registered, or published for opposition, the file of the application and all proceedings relating thereto are available for public inspection and copies of the papers may be furnished upon paying the fee therefor.

(e) Anything ordered to be filed under seal pursuant to a protective order issued or made by any court or by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board in any proceeding involving an application or a registration shall be kept confidential and shall not be made available for public inspection or copying unless otherwise ordered by the court or the Board, or unless the party protected by the order voluntarily discloses the matter subject thereto. When possible, only confidential portions of filings with the Board shall be filed under seal.

[36 FR 25406, Dec. 31, 1971, as amended at 48 FR 23134, May 23, 1983; 48 FR 27225, June 14, 1983]

THE WRITTEN APPLICATION

§ 2.31 Application must be in English.

The application must be in the English language and plainly written on but one side of the paper. It is preferable that the application be on lettersize (i.e., 8½ inches, 21.6 cm., by 11 inches, 27.9 cm.) paper, typewritten double spaced, with at least a one and one-half inch (3.8 cm.) margin on the left-hand side and top of the page.

[54 FR 37589, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.32 Application to be signed and sworn to or include a declaration by applicant.

(a) The application must be made to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks and must be signed and verified (sworn to) or include a declaration in accordance with § 2.20 by the applicant or by a member of the firm or an officer of the corporation or association applying.

(b) Re-executed papers or a statement which is verified or which includes a declaration in accordance with § 2.20 of continued use of the mark may be required when the application has not been filed in the Patent and Trademark Office within a reasonable time after the date of execution.

(c) The signature to the application must be the correct name of the applicant, since the name will appear in the certificate of registration precisely as it is signed to the application. The name of the applicant, wherever it appears in the papers of the application, will be made to agree with the name as signed.

§ 2.33 Requirements for written application.

(a)(1) The application shall include a request for registration and shall specify:

(i) The name of the applicant;

(ii) The citizenship of the applicant; if the applicant is a partnership, the state or nation under the laws of which the partnership is organized and the names and citizenship of the general partners or, if the applicant is a corporation or association, the state or nation under the laws of which the corporation or association is organized;

(iii) The domicile and post office address of the applicant;

(iv) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, that the applicant has adopted and is using the mark shown in the accompanying drawing, or, in an application under section 1(b) or 44 of the Act, that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark shown in the accompanying drawing in commerce;

(v) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, the particular goods or services on or in connection with which the mark is used or, in an application under section 1(b) or 44 of the Act, the particular goods or services on or in connection with which the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark, which in an application under section 44 may not exceed the scope of the goods or services covered by the foreign application or registration;

(vi) The class of goods or services according to the official classification, if known to the applicant;

(vii) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, the date of applicant's first use of the mark as a trademark or service mark on or in connection with goods or services specified in the application and the date of applicant's first use in commerce of the mark as a trademark or service mark on or in connection with goods or services specified in the application, specifying the nature of such commerce (see § 2.38);

(viii) In an application under section 44(e) of the Act for registration of a mark duly registered in the applicant's country of origin, as that term is defined in section 44(c), accompanying the application, a certificate of the trademark office of the applicant's country of origin showing that the mark has been registered in such country and also showing the mark, the goods or services for which the mark is registered, the date of filing of the application on the basis of which registration was granted and that said registration is in full force and effect and, if the certificate is not in the English language, a translation thereof;

(ix) In an application claiming the benefit of a foreign application in accordance with section 44(d) of the Act, compliance with the requirements of § 2.39;

(x) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, the mode, manner or method of applying, affixing or otherwise using the mark on or in connection with the goods or services specified or, in an application under section 1(b) of the Act, the intended mode, manner or method of applying, affixing or otherwise using the mark on or in connection with the goods or services specified.

(2) If more than one item of goods or services is specified in the application, the dates of use required in paragraph (a)(1)(vii) of this section need be for only one of the items specified, provided the particular item to which the dates apply is designated.

(3) The word *commerce* as used throughout this part means commerce which may lawfully be regulated by Congress, as specified in section 45 of the Act.

(b)(1) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, the application must include averments to the effect that the applicant is believed to be the owner of the mark sought to be registered; that the mark is in use in commerce, specifying the nature of such commerce; that no other entity, to the best of the declarant's knowledge and belief, has the right to use such mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when applied to the goods or services of such other entity, to cause confusion, or to cause mistake, or to deceive; that the specimens or facsimiles show the mark as used on or in connection with the goods or services; and that the facts set forth in the application are true; or

(2) In an application under section 1(b) or 44 of the Act, the application must include averments to the effect that the applicant is believed to be the owner of the mark sought to be registered; that the applicant has a bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce on or in connection with the specified goods or services; that no other entity, to the best of the declarant's knowledge and belief, has the right to use such mark in commerce, either in the identical form or in such near resemblance as to be likely, when applied to the goods or services of such other entity, to cause confusion, or to cause mistake, or to deceive; and that the facts set forth in the application are true.

(c) For an application for the registration of a mark for goods or services falling within multiple classes, see §2.86.

(d) An applicant may not file under both sections 1(a) and 1(b) of the Act in a single application, nor may an applicant in an application under section 1(a) of the Act amend that application to seek registration under section 1(b) of the Act.

[51 FR 28709, Aug. 11, 1986, as amended at 54 FR 37589, Sept. 11, 1989; 54 FR 46231, Nov. 2, 1989]

§2.35 Description of mark.

A description of the mark, which must be acceptable to the Examiner of Trademarks, may be included in the application, and must be included if required by the examiner. If the mark is displayed in color or a color combination, the colors should be described in the application.

§2.36 Identification of prior registrations.

Prior registrations of the same or similar marks owned by the applicant should be identified in the application.

§2.37 Authorization for representation; U.S. representative.

The authorization of a qualified person to represent applicant (§2.17(b)) and the designation of a domestic representative (§2.24) may be included as a paragraph or paragraphs in the application.

[41 FR 758, Jan. 5, 1976]

§2.38 Use by predecessor or by related companies.

(a) If the first use, the date of which is required by paragraph (a)(1)(vii) of §2.33, was by a predecessor in title, or by a related company (sections 5 and 45 of the Act), and such use inures to the benefit of the applicant, the date of such first use may be asserted with a statement that such first use was by the predecessor in title or by the related company as the case may be.

(b) If the mark is not in fact being used by the applicant but is being used

by one or more related companies whose use inures to the benefit of the applicant under section 5 of the Act, such facts must be indicated in the application.

(c) The Office may require such details concerning the nature of the relationship and such proofs as may be necessary and appropriate for the purpose of showing that the use by related companies inures to the benefit of the applicant and does not affect the validity of the mark.

(Sec. 5, 60 Stat. 429; 15 U.S.C. 1055)

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 54 FR 37589, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.39 Priority claim based on foreign application.

(a) An application claiming the benefit of a foreign application in accordance with section 44(d) of the Act shall specify the filing date and country of the first regularly filed foreign application or, if the application is based upon a subsequent regularly filed application in the same foreign country, the application shall so state and shall show that any prior filed application has been withdrawn, abandoned or otherwise disposed of, without having been laid open to public inspection and without having any rights outstanding, and has not served as a basis for claiming a right of priority.

(b) Before the application can be approved for publication, a basis for registration under section 1(a), 1(b) or 44(e) of the Act must be established.

[54 FR 37589, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.41 Proof of distinctiveness under section 2(f).

(a) When registration is sought of a mark which would be unregistrable by reason of section 2(e) of the Act but which is said by applicant to have become distinctive in commerce of the goods or services set forth in the application, applicant may, in support of registrability, submit with the application, or in response to a request for evidence or to a refusal to register, affidavits, or declarations in accordance with § 2.20, depositions, or other appropriate evidence showing duration, extent and nature of use in commerce and advertising expenditures in connection therewith (identifying types of media and attaching typical advertisements), and affidavits, or declarations in accordance with § 2.20, letters or statements from the trade or public, or both, or other appropriate evidence tending to show that the mark distinguishes such goods.

(b) In appropriate cases, ownership of one or more prior registrations on the Principal Register or under the Act of 1905 of the same mark may be accepted as prima facie evidence of distinctiveness. Also, if the mark is said to have become distinctive of applicant's goods by reason of substantially exclusive and continuous use in commerce thereof by applicant for the five years before the date on which the claim of distinctiveness is made, a showing by way of statements which are verified or which include declarations in accordance with § 2.20, in the application may, in appropriate cases, be accepted as prima facie evidence of distinctiveness. In each of these situations, however, further evidence may be required.

[54 FR 37590, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.42 Concurrent use.

An application for registration as a lawful concurrent user shall specify and contain all the elements required by the preceding sections. The applicant in addition shall state in the application the area, the goods, and the mode of use for which applicant seeks registration; and also shall state, to the extent of the applicant's knowledge, the concurrent lawful use of the mark by others, setting forth their names and addresses; registrations issued to or applications filed by such others, if any; the areas of such use; the goods on or in connection with which such use is made; the mode of such use; and the periods of such use.

[54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.43 Service mark.

In an application to register a service mark, the application shall specify and contain all the elements required by the preceding sections for trademarks, but shall be modified to relate to services instead of to goods wherever necessary.

(Sec. 3, 60 Stat. 429; 15 U.S.C. 1052)

§2.44 Collective mark.

(a) In an application to register a collective mark under section 1(a) of the Act, the application shall specify and contain all applicable elements required by the preceding sections for trademarks, but shall, in addition, specify the class of persons entitled to use the mark, indicating their relationship to the applicant, and the nature of the applicant's control over the use of the mark.

(b) In an application to register a collective mark under section 1(b) or 44 of the Act, the application shall specify and contain all applicable elements required by the preceding sections for trademarks, but shall, in addition, specify the class of persons intended to be entitled to use the mark, indicating what their relationship to the applicant will be, and the nature of the control applicant intends to exercise over the use of the mark.

[54 FR 37590, Sept. 11, 1989]

§2.45 Certification mark.

(a) In an application to register a certification mark under section 1(a) of the Act, the application shall specify and contain all applicable elements required by the preceding sections for trademarks. It shall, in addition, specify the manner in which and the conditions under which the certification mark is used; it shall allege that the applicant exercises legitimate control over the use of the mark and that the applicant is not engaged in the production or marketing of the goods or services to which the mark is applied.

(b) In an application to register a certification mark under section 1(b) or 44 of the Act, the application shall specify and contain all applicable elements required by the preceding sections for trademarks. It shall, in addition, specify the manner in which and the conditions under which the certification mark is intended to be used; it shall allege that the applicant intends to exercise legitimate control over the use of the mark and that the applicant will not engage in the production or marketing of the goods or services to which the mark is applied.

[54 FR 37590, Sept. 11, 1989]

§2.46 Principal Register.

All applications will be treated as seeking registration on the Principal Register unless otherwise stated in the application. Service marks, collective marks, and certification marks, registrable in accordance with the applicable provisions of section 2 of the Act, are registered on the Principal Register.

§2.47 Supplemental Register.

(a) In an application to register on the Supplemental Register under section 23 of the Act, the application shall so indicate and shall specify that the mark has been in lawful use in commerce, specifying the nature of such commerce, by the applicant.

(b) In an application to register on the Supplemental Register under section 44 of the Act, the application shall so indicate. The statement of lawful use in commerce may be omitted.

(c) A mark in an application to register on the Principal Register under section 1(b) of the Act is eligible for registration on the Supplemental Register only after an acceptable amendment to allege use under §2.76 or statement of use under §2.88 has been timely filed.

(d) An application for registration on the Supplemental Register must conform to the requirements for registration on the Principal Register under section 1(a) of the Act, so far as applicable.

[54 FR 37590, Sept. 11, 1989]

DRAWING

AUTHORITY: Secs. 2.51 to 2.55 also issued under sec. 1, 60 Stat. 427; 15 U.S.C. 1051.

§2.51 Drawing required.

(a)(1) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, the drawing of the trademark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on or in connection with the goods; or

(2) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act, the drawing of the trademark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as intended to be used on or in connection with the goods specified in the application, and once an amendment to allege

use under § 2.76 or a statement of use under § 2.88 has been filed, the drawing of the trademark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as used on or in connection with the goods; or

(3) In an application under section 44 of the Act, the drawing of the trademark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as it appears in the drawing in the registration certificate of a mark duly registered in the country of origin of the applicant.

(b)(1) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, the drawing of a service mark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as used in the sale or advertising of the services; or

(2) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act, the drawing of a service mark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as intended to be used in the sale or advertising of the services specified in the application and, once an amendment to allege use under § 2.76 or a statement of use under § 2.88 has been filed, the drawing of the service mark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as used in the sale or advertising of the services; or

(3) In an application under section 44 of the Act, the drawing of a service mark shall be a substantially exact representation of the mark as it appears in the drawing in the registration certificate of a mark duly registered in the country of origin of applicant.

(c) The drawing of a mark may be dispensed with in the case of a mark not capable of representation by a drawing, but in any such case the application must contain an adequate description of the mark.

(d) Broken lines should be used in the drawing of a mark to show placement of the mark on the goods, or on the packaging, or to show matter not claimed as part of the mark, or both, as appropriate. In an application to register a mark with three-dimensional features, the drawing shall depict the mark in perspective in a single rendition.

(e) If the application is for the registration of only a word, letter or numeral, or any combination thereof, not depicted in special form, the drawing may be the mark typed in capital letters on paper, otherwise complying with the requirements of § 2.52.

[54 FR 37590, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.52 Requirements for drawings.

(a) *Character of drawing.* All drawings, except as otherwise provided, must be made with the pen or by a process which will provide high definition upon reproduction. A photolithographic reproduction or printer's proof copy may be used if otherwise suitable. Every line and letter, including color lining and lines used for shading, must be black. All lines must be clean, sharp, and solid, and must not be fine or crowded. Gray tones or tints may not be used for surface shading or any other purpose. The requirements of this paragraph are not necessary in the case of drawings permitted and filed in accordance with paragraph (e) of § 2.51.

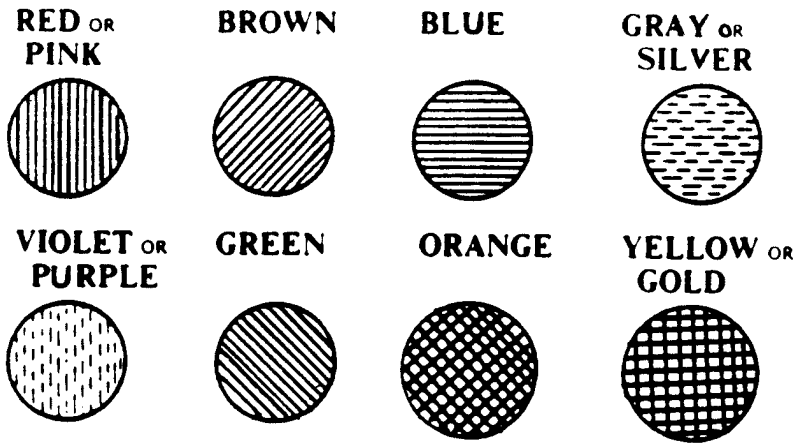
(b) *Paper and ink.* The drawing must be made upon paper which is flexible, strong, smooth, nonshiny, white and durable. A good grade of bond paper is suitable; however, water marks should not be prominent. India ink or its equivalent in quality must be used for pen drawings to secure perfectly black solid lines. The use of white pigment to cover lines is not acceptable.

(c) *Size of paper and margins.* The size of the sheet on which a drawing is made must be 8 to 8½ inches (20.3 to 21.6 cm.) wide and 11 inches (27.9 cm.) long. One of the shorter sides of the sheet should be regarded as its top. It is preferable that the drawing be 2.5 inches (6.1 cm.) high and/or wide, but in no case may it be larger than 4 inches (10.3 cm.) high and 4 inches (10.3 cm) wide. If the amount of detail in the mark precludes a reduction to this size, such detail may be verbally described in the body of the application. There must be a margin of at least 1 inch (2.5 cm.) on the sides and bottom of the paper and at least 1 inch (2.5 cm.) between the drawing and the heading.

(d) *Heading.* Across the top of the drawing, beginning one inch (2.5 cm.) from the top edge and not exceeding one third of the sheet, there must be placed a heading, listing in separate lines, applicant's complete name; applicant's post office address; the dates

of first use of the mark and first use of the mark in commerce in an application under section 1(a) of the Act; the priority filing date of the relevant foreign application in an application claiming the benefit of a prior foreign application in accordance with section 44(d) of the Act; and the goods or services recited in the application or a typical item of the goods or services if a number of items are recited in the application. This heading should be typewritten. If the drawing is in special form, the heading should include a description of the essential elements of the mark.

(e) *Linings for color.* Where color is a feature of a mark, the color or colors employed may be designated by means of conventional linings as shown in the following color chart:



[51 FR 29921, Aug. 21, 1986, as amended at 54 FR 37591, Sept. 11, 1989; 54 FR 46231, Nov. 2, 1989]

§2.56 Specimens.

An application under section 1(a) of the Act, an amendment to allege use under §2.76, and a statement of use under §2.88 must each include three specimens of the trademark as used on or in connection with the goods in commerce. The specimens shall be duplicates of the labels, tags, or containers bearing the trademark, or the displays associated with the goods and bearing the trademark (or if the nature of the goods makes use of such specimens impracticable then on documents associated with the goods or their sale), when made of suitable flat material and of a size not to exceed 8½ inches (21.6 cm.) wide and 11 inches (27.9 cm.) long.

[54 FR 37591, Sept. 11, 1989]

§2.57 Facsimiles.

(a) When, due to the mode of applying or affixing the trademark to the goods, or to the manner of using the mark on the goods, or to the nature of the mark, specimens as above stated cannot be furnished, three copies of a suitable photograph or other acceptable reproduction, not to exceed 8½ inches (21.6 cm.) wide and 11 inches (27.9 cm.) long, and clearly and legibly showing the mark and all matter used in connection therewith, shall be furnished.

(b) A purported facsimile which is merely a reproduction of the drawing submitted to comply with §2.51 will not be considered to be a facsimile depicting the mark as used on or in connection with the goods or in connection with the services.

[54 FR 37591, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.58 Specimens or facsimiles in the case of a service mark.

(a) In the case of service marks, specimens or facsimiles as specified in §§ 2.56 and 2.57, of the mark as used in the sale or advertising of the services shall be furnished unless impossible because of the nature of the mark or the manner in which it is used, in which event some other representation acceptable to the Commissioner must be submitted.

(b) In the case of service marks not used in printed or written form, three audio cassette tape recordings will be accepted.

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 51 FR 29922, Aug. 21, 1986]

§ 2.59 Filing substitute specimens.

(a) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, the applicant may submit substitute specimens of the mark as used on or in connection with the goods, or in the sale or advertising of the services, provided that any substitute specimens submitted are supported by applicant's affidavit or declaration in accordance with § 2.20 verifying that the substitute specimens were in use in commerce at least as early as the filing date of the application. The verification requirement shall not apply if the specimens are duplicates or facsimiles, such as photographs, of specimens already of record in the application.

(b) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act, after filing either an amendment to allege use under § 2.76 or a statement of use under § 2.88, the applicant may submit substitute specimens of the mark as used on or in connection with the goods, or in the sale or advertising of the services, provided that the use in commerce of any substitute specimens submitted is supported by applicant's affidavit or declaration in accordance with § 2.20. In the case of a statement of use under § 2.88, the applicant must verify that the substitute specimens were in use in commerce prior to the filing of the statement of use or prior to the expiration of the time allowed to applicant for filing a statement of use.

[54 FR 37591, Sept. 11, 1989]

EXAMINATION OF APPLICATION AND ACTION BY APPLICANTS

AUTHORITY: Secs. 2.61 to 2.69 also issued under sec. 12, 60 Stat. 432; 15 U.S.C. 1062.

§ 2.61 Action by examiner.

(a) Applications for registration, including amendments to allege use under section 1(c) of the Act, and statements of use under section 1(d) of the Act, will be examined and, if the applicant is found not entitled to registration for any reason, applicant will be notified and advised of the reasons therefor and of any formal requirements or objections.

(b) The examiner may require the applicant to furnish such information and exhibits as may be reasonably necessary to the proper examination of the application.

(c) Whenever it shall be found that two or more parties whose interests are in conflict are represented by the same attorney, each party and also the attorney shall be notified of this fact.

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 37 FR 2880, Feb. 9, 1972; 54 FR 37592, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.62 Period for response.

The applicant has six months from the date of mailing of any action by the examiner to respond thereto. Such response may be made with or without amendment and must include such proper action by the applicant as the nature of the action and the condition of the case may require.

§ 2.63 Reexamination.

(a) After response by the applicant, the application will be reexamined or reconsidered. If registration is again refused or any formal requirement[s] is repeated, but the examiner's action is not stated to be final, the applicant may respond again.

(b) After reexamination the applicant may respond by filing a timely petition to the Commissioner for relief from a

formal requirement if: (1) The requirement is repeated, but the examiner's action is not made final, and the subject matter of the requirement is appropriate for petition to the Commissioner (see §2.146(b)); or (2) the examiner's action is made final and such action is limited to subject matter appropriate for petition to the Commissioner. If the petition is denied, the applicant shall have until six months from the date of the Office action which repeated the requirement or made it final or thirty days from the date of the decision on the petition, whichever date is later, to comply with the requirement. A formal requirement which is the subject of a petition decided by the Commissioner may not subsequently be the subject of an appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.

[48 FR 23134, May 23, 1983]

§2.64 Final action.

(a) On the first or any subsequent reexamination or reconsideration the refusal of the registration or the insistence upon a requirement may be stated to be final, whereupon applicant's response is limited to an appeal, or to a compliance with any requirement, or to a petition to the Commissioner if permitted by §2.63(b).

(b) During the period between a final action and expiration of the time for filing an appeal, the applicant may request the examiner to reconsider the final action. The filing of a request for reconsideration will not extend the time for filing an appeal or petitioning the Commissioner, but normally the examiner will reply to a request for reconsideration before the end of the six-month period if the request is filed within three months after the date of the final action. Amendments accompanying requests for reconsideration after final action will be entered if they comply with the rules of practice in trademark cases and the Act of 1946.

(c)(1) If an applicant in an application under section 1(b) of the Act files an amendment to allege use under §2.76 during the six-month response period after issuance of a final action, the examiner shall examine the amendment. The filing of such an amendment will not extend the time for filing an appeal or petitioning the Commissioner.

(2) If the amendment to allege use under §2.76 is acceptable in all respects, the applicant will be notified of its acceptance.

(3) If, as a result of the examination of the amendment to allege use under §2.76, the applicant is found not entitled to registration for any reason not previously stated, applicant will be notified and advised of the reasons and of any formal requirements or refusals. The Trademark Examining Attorney shall withdraw the final action previously issued and shall incorporate all unresolved refusals or requirements previously stated in the new non-final action.

[48 FR 23134, May 23, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 37592, Sept. 11, 1989]

§2.65 Abandonment.

(a) If an applicant fails to respond, or to respond completely, within six months after the date an action is mailed, the application shall be deemed to have been abandoned. A timely petition to the Commissioner pursuant to §§2.63(b) and 2.146 is a response which avoids abandonment of an application.

(b) When action by the applicant filed within the six-month response period is a bona fide attempt to advance the examination of the application and is substantially a complete response to the examiner's action, but consideration of some matter or compliance with some requirement has been inadvertently omitted, opportunity to explain and supply the omission may be given before the question of abandonment is considered.

(c) If an applicant in an application under section 1(b) of the Act fails to timely file a statement of use under §2.88, the application shall be deemed to be abandoned.

[48 FR 23134, May 23, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 37592, Sept. 11, 1989]

§2.66 Revival of abandoned applications.

(a) An application abandoned for failure to timely respond, or for failure to timely file a statement of use under §2.88 in an application under section 1(b) of the Act, may be revived as a

pending application if it is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner that the delay was unavoidable.

(b) A petition to revive an application abandoned for failure to timely respond must be accompanied by:

(1) The required fee,

(2) A showing which is verified or which includes a declaration in accordance with §2.20 of the causes of the delay, and

(3) The proposed response, unless a response has been previously filed.

(c) A petition to revive an application abandoned for failure to timely file a statement of use under §2.88 in an application under section 1(b) of the Act must be accompanied by:

(1) The required petition fee,

(2) A showing which is verified or which includes a declaration in accordance with §2.20 of the causes of the delay,

(3) The required fees for the number of requests (in accordance with §2.89 for extensions of time to file a statement of use) which should have been filed if the application had not been abandoned, and

(4) Either a statement of use in accordance with §2.88 (unless the same has been previously filed) or a request in accordance with §2.89 for an extension of time to file a statement of use.

(d) The petition must be filed promptly. No petition to revive will be granted in an application under section 1(b) of the Act if granting the petition would permit the filing of a statement of use more than 36 months after the issuance of a notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act.

[54 FR 37592, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.67 Suspension of action by the Patent and Trademark Office.

Action by the Patent and Trademark Office may be suspended for a reasonable time for good and sufficient cause. The fact that a proceeding is pending before the Patent and Trademark Office or a court which is relevant to the issue of registrability of the applicant's mark, or the fact that the basis for registration is, under the provisions of section 44(e) of the Act, registration of the mark in a foreign country and the foreign application is still pending, will be considered prima facie good and sufficient cause. An applicant's request for a suspension of action under this section filed within the 6–month response period (see §2.62) may be considered responsive to the previous Office action. The first suspension is within the discretion of the Examiner of Trademarks and any subsequent suspension must be approved by the Commissioner.

[37 FR 3898, Feb. 24, 1972]

§ 2.68 Express abandonment (withdrawal) of application.

An application may be expressly abandoned by filing in the Patent and Trademark Office a written statement of abandonment or withdrawal of the application signed by the applicant, or the attorney or other person representing the applicant. Except as provided in §2.135, the fact that an application has been expressly abandoned shall not, in any proceeding in the Patent and Trademark Office, affect any rights that the applicant may have in the mark which is the subject of the abandoned application.

[54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.69 Compliance with other laws.

When the sale or transportation of any product for which registration of a trademark is sought is regulated under an Act of Congress, the Patent and Trademark Office may make appropriate inquiry as to compliance with such Act for the sole purpose of determining lawfulness of the commerce recited in the application.

[54 FR 37592, Sept. 11, 1989]

AMENDMENT OF APPLICATION

§ 2.71 Amendments to correct informalities.

(a) The application may be amended to correct informalities, or to avoid objections made by the Patent and Trademark Office, or for other reasons arising in the course of examination.

(b) The identification of goods or services may be amended to clarify or limit the identification, but additions will not be permitted.

(c) If the verification or declaration filed with the application is defective, the defect may be corrected only by the submission of a substitute or supplemental verification or declaration

in accordance with §2.20. A verification or declaration required under §§2.21(a)(6), 2.76(e)(3) or 2.88(e)(3), to be properly signed, must be signed by the applicant, a member of the applicant firm, or an officer of the applicant corporation or association. A verification or declaration which is signed by a person having color of authority to sign, is acceptable for the purpose of determining the timely filing of the paper. Persons having color of authority to sign are those who have first-hand knowledge of the truth of the statements in the verification or declaration and who also have actual or implied authority to act on behalf of the applicant. However, a properly signed substitute verification or declaration must be submitted before the application will be approved for publication or registration, as the case may be.

(d)(1) No amendment to the dates of use will be permitted unless the amendment is supported by applicant's affidavit or declaration in accordance with §2.20 and by such showing as may be required.

(2) In an application under section 1(a) of the Act, no amendment to specify a date of use which is subsequent to the filing date of the application will be permitted.

(3) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act, after the filing of a statement of use under §2.88, no amendment will be permitted to the statement of use to recite dates of use which are subsequent to the expiration of the time allowed to applicant for filing a statement of use.

[54 FR 37592, Sept. 11, 1989]

§2.72 Amendments to description or drawing of the mark.

(a) Amendments may not be made to the description or drawing of the mark if the character of the mark is materially altered. The determination of whether a proposed amendment materially alters the character of the mark will be made by comparing the proposed amendment with the description or drawing of the mark as originally filed.

(b) In applications under section 1(a) of the Act, amendments to the description or drawing of the mark may be permitted only if warranted by the specimens (or facsimiles) as originally filed, or supported by additional specimens (or facsimiles) and a supplemental affidavit or declaration in accordance with §2.20 alleging that the mark shown in the amended drawing was in use prior to the filing date of the application.

(c) In applications under section 1(b) of the Act, amendments to the description or drawing of the mark, which are filed after submission of an amendment to allege use under §2.76 or a statement of use under §2.88, may be permitted only if warranted by the specimens (or facsimiles) filed, or supported by additional specimens (or facsimiles) and a supplemental affidavit or declaration in accordance with §2.20 alleging that the mark shown in the amended drawing is in use in commerce. In the case of a statement of use under §2.88, applicant must verify that the mark shown in the amended drawing was in use in commerce prior to the filing of the statement of use or prior to the expiration of the time allowed to applicant for filing a statement of use.

(d) In applications under section 44 of the Act, amendments to the description or drawing of the mark may be permitted only if warranted by the description or drawing of the mark in the foreign registration certificate.

[54 FR 37593, Sept. 11, 1989]

§2.73 Amendment to recite concurrent use.

(a) An application under section 1(a) of the Act may be amended so as to be treated as an application for a concurrent registration, provided the application as amended satisfies the requirements of §2.42. The examiner will determine whether the application, as amended, is acceptable.

(b) An application under section 1(b) of the Act may not be amended so as to be treated as an application for a concurrent registration until an acceptable amendment to allege use under §2.76 or statement of use under §2.88 has been filed in the application, after which time such an amendment may be made, provided the application as amended satisfies the requirements of §2.42. The examiner will determine

whether the application, as amended, is acceptable.

[54 FR 37593, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.74 Form of amendment.

(a) In every amendment the exact word or words to be stricken out or inserted in the application must be specified and the precise point indicated where the deletion or insertion is to be made. Erasures, additions, insertions, or mutilations of the papers and records must not be made by the applicant or his attorney or agent.

(b) When an amendatory clause is amended, it must be wholly rewritten so that no interlineation or erasure will appear in the clause, as finally amended, when the application is passed to registration. If the number or nature of the amendments shall render it otherwise difficult to consider the case or to arrange the papers for printing or copying, or when otherwise desired to clarify the record, the examiner may require the entire statement to be rewritten.

§ 2.75 Amendment to change application to different register.

(a) An application for registration on the Principal Register under section 1(a) or 44 of the Act may be changed to an application for registration on the Supplemental Register and vice versa by amending the application to comply with the rules relating to the appropriate register, as the case may be.

(b) An application under section 1(b) of the Act may be amended to change the application to a different register only after submission of an acceptable amendment to allege use under § 2.76 or statement of use under § 2.88. When such an application is changed from the Principal Register to the Supplemental Register, the effective filing date of the application is the date of the filing of the allegation of use under section 1(c) or 1(d) of the Act.

[54 FR 37593, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.76 Amendment to allege use.

(a) An application under section 1(b) of the Act may be amended to allege use of the mark in commerce under section 1(c) of the Act at any time between the filing of the application and the date the examiner approves the mark for publication or the date of expiration of the six-month response period after issuance of a final action. Thereafter, an allegation of use may be submitted only as a statement of use under § 2.88 after the issuance of a notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act. If an amendment to allege use is filed outside the time period specified in this paragraph, it will be returned to the applicant.

(b) A complete amendment to allege use must include:

(1) A verified statement that the applicant is believed to be the owner of the mark sought to be registered and that the mark is in use in commerce, specifying the date of the applicant's first use of the mark and first use of the mark in commerce, the type of commerce, those goods or services specified in the application on or in connection with which the mark is in use in commerce and the mode or manner in which the mark is used on or in connection with such goods or services;

(2) Three specimens or facsimiles, conforming to the requirements of §§ 2.56, 2.57 and 2.58, of the mark as used in commerce; and

(3) The fee prescribed in § 2.6.

(c) An amendment to allege use may be filed only when the applicant has made use of the mark in commerce on or in connection with all of the goods or services, as specified in the application, for which applicant will seek registration in that application unless the amendment to allege use is accompanied by a request in accordance with § 2.87 to divide out from the application the goods or services to which the amendment pertains. If more than one item of goods or services is specified in the amendment to allege use, the dates of use required in paragraph (b)(1) of this section need be for only one of the items specified in each class, provided the particular item to which the dates apply is designated.

(d) The title ''Amendment to allege use under § 2.76'' should appear at the top of the first page of the paper.

(e) The Office will review a timely filed amendment to allege use to determine whether it meets the following minimum requirements:

(1) The fee prescribed in § 2.6;

(2) At least one specimen or facsimile of the mark as used in commerce; and

(3) A verification or declaration signed by the applicant stating that the mark is in use in commerce.

(f) A timely filed amendment to allege use which meets the minimum requirements specified in paragraph (e) of this section will be examined in accordance with §§2.61 through 2.69. If, as a result of the examination of the amendment to allege use, applicant is found not entitled to registration for any reason not previously stated, applicant will be so notified and advised of the reasons and of any formal requirements or refusals. The notification shall restate or incorporate by reference all unresolved refusals or requirements previously stated. The amendment to allege use may be amended in accordance with §§2.59 and 2.71 through 2.75. If the amendment to allege use is acceptable in all respects, the applicant will be notified of its acceptance. The filing of such an amendment shall not constitute a response to any outstanding action by the Trademark Examining Attorney.

(g) If the amendment to allege use is filed within the permitted time period but does not meet the minimum requirements specified in paragraph (e) of this section, applicant will be notified of the deficiency. The deficiency may be corrected provided the mark has not been approved for publication or the six-month response period after issuance of a final action has not expired. If an acceptable amendment to correct the deficiency is not filed prior to approval of the mark for publication or prior to the expiration of the six-month response period after issuance of a final action, the amendment will not be examined.

(h) An amendment to allege use may be withdrawn for any reason prior to approval of a mark for publication or expiration of the six-month response period after issuance of a final action.

[54 FR 37593, Sept. 11, 1989]

§2.77 Amendments between notice of allowance and statement of use.

An application under section 1(b) of the Act may not be amended during the period between the issuance of the notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act and the filing of a statement of use under §2.88, except to delete specified goods or services. Other amendments filed during this period will be placed in the application file and considered when the statement of use is examined.

[54 FR 37594, Sept. 11, 1989]

PUBLICATION AND POST PUBLICATION

§2.80 Publication for opposition.

If, on examination or reexamination of an application for registration on the Principal Register, it appears that the applicant is entitled to have his mark registered, the mark will be published in the *Official Gazette* for opposition. The mark will also be published in the case of an application to be placed in interference or concurrent use proceedings, if otherwise registrable.

[41 FR 758, Jan. 5, 1976]

§2.81 Post publication.

(a) Except in an application under section 1(b) of the Act for which no amendment to allege use under §2.76 has been submitted and accepted, if no opposition is filed within the time permitted or all oppositions filed are dismissed, and if no interference is declared and no concurrent use proceeding is instituted, the application will be prepared for issuance of the certificate of registration as provided in §2.151.

(b) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act for which no amendment to allege use under §2.76 has been submitted and accepted, if no opposition is filed within the time permitted or all oppositions filed are dismissed, and if no interference is declared, a notice of allowance will issue. The notice of allowance will state the serial number of the application, the name of the applicant, the correspondence address, the mark, the identification of goods or services, and the issue date of the notice of allowance. The mailing date that appears on the notice of allowance will be the issue date of the notice of allowance. Thereafter, the applicant shall submit a statement of use as provided in §2.88.

[54 FR 37594, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.82 Marks on Supplemental Register published only upon registration.

In the case of an application for registration on the Supplemental Register the mark will not be published for opposition but if it appears, after examination or reexamination, that the applicant is entitled to have the mark registered, a certificate of registration will issue as provided in § 2.151. The mark will be published in the ''Official Gazette'' when registered.

[54 FR 37594, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.83 Conflicting marks.

(a) Whenever an application is made for registration of a mark which so resembles another mark or marks pending registration as to be likely to cause confusion or mistake or to deceive, the mark with the earliest effective filing date will be published in the ''Official Gazette'' for opposition if eligible for the Principal Register, or issued a certificate of registration if eligible for the Supplemental Register.

(b) In situations in which conflicting applications have the same effective filing date, the application with the earliest date of execution will be published in the ''Official Gazette'' for opposition or issued on the Supplemental Register.

(c) Action on the conflicting application which is not published in the *Official Gazette* for opposition or not issued on the Supplemental Register will be suspended by the Examiner of Trademarks until the published or issued application is registered or abandoned.

[37 FR 2880, Feb. 9, 1972, as amended at 54 FR 37594, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.84 Jurisdiction over published applications.

(a) The examiner may exercise jurisdiction over an application up to the date the mark is published in the ''Official Gazette.'' After publication of an application under section 1(a) or 44 of the Act the examiner may, with the permission of the Commissioner, exercise jurisdiction over the application. After publication of an application under section 1(b) of the Act, the examiner may exercise jurisdiction over the application after the issuance of the notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act. After publication, and prior to issuance of a notice of allowance in an application under section 1(b), the examiner may, with the permission of the Commissioner, exercise jurisdiction over the application.

(b) After publication, but before the printing of the certificate of registration in an application under section 1(a) or 44 of the Act, or before the printing of the notice of allowance in an application under section 1(b) of the Act, an application which is not the subject of an *inter partes* proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board may be amended if the amendment does not necessitate republication of the mark or issuance of an Office action. Otherwise, an amendment to such an application may be submitted only upon petition to the Commissioner to restore jurisdiction of the application to the examiner for consideration of the amendment and further examination. The amendment of an application which is the subject of an *inter partes* proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board is governed by § 2.133.

[54 FR 37594, Sept. 11, 1989]

CLASSIFICATION

§ 2.85 Classification schedules.

(a) Section 6.1 of part 6 of this chapter specifies the system of classification for goods and services which applies for all statutory purposes to trademark applications filed in the Patent and Trademark Office on or after September 1, 1973, and to registrations issued on the basis of such applications. It shall not apply to applications filed on or before August 31, 1973, nor to registrations issued on the basis of such applications.

(b) With respect to applications filed on or before August 31, 1973, and registrations issued thereon, including older registrations issued prior to that date, the classification system under which the application was filed will govern for all statutory purposes, including, inter alia, the filing of petitions to revive, appeals, oppositions, petitions for cancellation, affidavits under section 8 and renewals, even

though such petitions to revive, appeals, etc., are filed on or after September 1, 1973.

(c) Section 6.2 of part 6 of this chapter specifies the system of classification for goods and services which applies for all statutory purposes to all trademark applications filed in the Patent and Trademark Office on or before August 31, 1973, and to registrations issued on the basis of such applications, except when the registration may have been issued under a classification system prior to that set forth in §6.2. Moreover, this classification will also be utilized for facilitating trademark searches until all pending and registered marks in the search file are organized on the basis of the international system of classification.

(d) Renewals filed on registrations issued under a prior classification system will be processed on the basis of that system.

(e) Where the amount of the fee received on filing an appeal in connection with an application or on an application for renewal or in connection with a petition for cancellation is sufficient for at least one class of goods or services but is less than the required amount because multiple classes in an application or registration are involved, the appeal or renewal application or petition for cancellation will not be refused on the ground that the amount of the fee was insufficient if the required additional amount of the fee is received in the Patent and Trademark Office within the time limit set forth in the notification of this defect by the Office, or if action is sought only for the number of classes equal to the number of fees submitted.

(f) Sections 6.3 and 6.4 specify the system of classification which applies to certification marks and collective membership marks.

(g) Classification schedules shall not limit or extend the applicant's rights.

(35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[38 FR 14681, June 4, 1973, as amended at 39 FR 16885, May 10, 1974; 47 FR 41282, Sept. 17, 1982]

§2.86 Application may include multiple goods or services comprised in single class or multiple classes.

(a) An application may recite more than one item of goods, or more than one service, comprised in a single class, provided the goods or services are specifically identified and the applicant either has used the mark on or in connection with all of the specified goods or services, or has a bona fide intention to use the mark on or in connection with all of the specified goods or services.

(b) An application also may be filed to register the same mark for goods and/or services comprised in multiple classes, provided the goods or services are specifically identified; a fee equaling the sum of the fees for filing an application in each class is submitted; and the application includes either dates of use and three specimens for each class, or a statement of a bona fide intention to use the mark on or in connection with all of the goods or services specified in each class. An amendment to allege use under §2.76 or a statement of use under §2.88, filed in a multiple class application under section 1(b) of the Act, must include, for each class, the required fee, dates of use and three specimens. A single certificate of registration for the mark shall be issued, unless the application is divided pursuant to §2.87.

(c) The applicant may not allege use as to certain goods or services and a bona fide intention to use as to other goods or services in the same application, regardless of the number of classes contained therein.

[54 FR 37594, Sept. 11, 1989]

§2.87 Dividing an application.

(a) An application may be physically divided into two or more separate applications upon the payment of a fee for each new application created and submission by the applicant of a request in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section.

(b) In the case of a request to divide out one or more entire classes from an

application, only the fee under paragraph (a) of this section will be required. However, in the case of a request to divide out some, but not all, of the goods or services in a class, an application filing fee for each new separate application to be created by the division must be submitted, together with the fee under paragraph (a) of this section. Any outstanding time period for action by the applicant in the original application at the time of the division will be applicable to each new separate application created by the division.

(c) A request to divide an application may be filed at any time between the filing of the application and the date the Trademark Examining Attorney approves the mark for publication or the date of expiration of the six-month response period after issuance of a final action; or during an opposition, upon motion granted by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. Additionally, a request to divide an application under section 1(b) of the Act may be filed with a statement of use under § 2.88 or at any time between the filing of a statement of use and the date the Trademark Examining Attorney approves the mark for registration or the date of expiration of the six-month response period after issuance of a final action.

(d) A request to divide an application should be made in a separate paper from any other amendment or response in the application. The title ''Request to divide application.'' should appear at the top of the first page of the paper.

[57 FR 38196, Aug. 21, 1992; 57 FR 40493, Sept. 3, 1992]

POST NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE

§ 2.88 Filing statement of use after notice of allowance.

(a) In an application under section 1(b) of the Act, a statement of use, required under section 1(d) of the Act, must be filed within six months after issuance of a notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act, or within an extension of time granted under § 2.89. A statement of use that is filed prior to issuance of a notice of allowance is premature, will not be considered, and will be returned to the applicant.

(b) A complete statement of use must include:

(1) A verified statement that the applicant is believed to be the owner of the mark sought to be registered and that the mark is in use in commerce, specifying the date of the applicant's first use of the mark and first use of the mark in commerce, the type of commerce, those goods or services specified in the notice of allowance on or in connection with which the mark is in use in commerce and the mode or manner in which the mark is used on or in connection with such goods or services;

(2) Three specimens or facsimiles, conforming to the requirements of §§ 2.56, 2.57 and 2.58, of the mark as used in commerce; and

(3) The fee prescribed in § 2.6.

(c) The statement of use may be filed only when the applicant has made use of the mark in commerce on or in connection with all of the goods or services, as specified in the notice of allowance, for which applicant will seek registration in that application, unless the statement of use is accompanied by a request in accordance with § 2.87 to divide out from the application the goods or services to which the statement of use pertains. If more than one item of goods or services is specified in the statement of use, the dates of use required in paragraph (b)(1) of this section need be for only one of the items specified in each class, provided the particular item to which the dates apply is designated.

(d) The title ''Statement of use under § 2.88.'' should appear at the top of the first page of the paper.

(e) The Office will review a timely filed statement of use to determine whether it meets the following minimum requirements:

(1) The fee prescribed in § 2.6;

(2) At least one specimen or facsimile of the mark as used in commerce;

(3) A verification or declaration signed by the applicant stating that the mark is in use in commerce.

(f) A timely filed statement of use which meets the minimum requirements specified in paragraph (e) of this section will be examined in accordance with §§ 2.61 through 2.69. If, as a result of the examination of the statement of

use, applicant is found not entitled to registration, applicant will be notified and advised of the reasons and of any formal requirements or refusals. The statement of use may be amended in accordance with §§2.59 and 2.71 through 2.75. If the statement of use is acceptable in all respects, the applicant will be notified of its acceptance.

(g) If the statement of use does not meet the minimum requirements specified in paragraph (e) of this section, applicant will be notified of the deficiency. If the time permitted for applicant to file a statement of use has not expired, applicant may correct the deficiency. After the filing of a statement of use during a permitted time period for such filing, the applicant may not withdraw the statement to return to the previous status of awaiting submission of a statement of use, regardless of whether it is in compliance with paragraph (e) of this section.

(h) The failure to timely file a statement of use which meets the minimum requirements specified in paragraph (e) of this section shall result in the abandonment of the application.

(i)(1) The goods or services specified in a statement of use must conform to those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance. An applicant may specify the goods or services by stating ''those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance'' or, if appropriate, ''those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance except * * *'' followed by an identification of the goods or services to be deleted.

(2) If any goods or services specified in the notice of allowance are omitted from the identification of goods or services in the statement of use, the Trademark Examining Attorney shall inquire about the discrepancy and permit the applicant to amend the statement of use to include any omitted goods or services, provided that the amendment is supported by a verification that the mark was in use in commerce, on or in connection with each of the goods or services sought to be included, prior to the expiration of the time allowed to applicant for filing a statement of use.

(3) The statement of use may be accompanied by a separate request to amend the identification of goods or services in the application, as stated in the notice of allowance, in accordance with §2.71(b).

(j) The statement of use may be accompanied by a separate request to amend the drawing in the application, in accordance with §§2.51 and 2.72.

[54 FR 37595, Sept. 11, 1989]

§2.89 Extensions of time for filing a statement of use.

(a) The applicant may request a six-month extension of time to file the statement of use required under §2.88 by submitting:

(1) A written request, before the expiration of the six-month period following the issuance of a notice of allowance under section 13(b)(2) of the Act;

(2) The fee prescribed in §2.6; and

(3) A verified statement by the applicant that the applicant has a continued bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce, specifying those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance on or in connection with which the applicant has a continued bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce.

(b) The applicant may request further six-month extensions of time for filing the statement of use by submitting:

(1) A written request, prior to the expiration of a previously granted extension of time;

(2) The fee prescribed in §2.6;

(3) A verified statement by the applicant that the applicant has a continued bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce, specifying those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance on or in connection with which the applicant has a continued bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce; and

(4) A showing of good cause, as specified in paragraph (d) of this section.

(c) Extensions of time under paragraph (b) of this section will be granted only in six-month increments and may not aggregate more than 24 months.

(d) The showing required by paragraph (b)(4) of this section must include:

(1) An allegation that the applicant has not yet made use of the mark in commerce on all the goods or services

specified in the notice of allowance on or in connection with which the applicant has a continued bona fide intention to use the mark in commerce, and

(2) A statement of applicant's ongoing efforts to make use of the mark in commerce on or in connection with each of the goods or services specified in the verified statement of continued bona fide intention to use required under paragraph (b) of this section. Those efforts may include, without limitation, product or service research or development, market research, manufacturing activities, promotional activities, steps to acquire distributors, steps to obtain required governmental approval, or other similar activities. In the alternative, a satisfactory explanation for the failure to make such efforts must be submitted.

(e)(1) At the time of the filing of a statement of use, or during any time remaining in the existing six-month period in which a statement of use is filed, applicant may file one request, in accordance with paragraph (a) or (b) of this section, for a six-month extension of time for filing a statement of use, provided that the time requested would not extend beyond 36 months from the issuance of the notice of allowance. Thereafter, applicant may not request any further extensions of time.

(2) A request for an extension of time that is filed at the time of the filing of a statement of use, or during any time remaining in the existing six-month period in which a statement of use is filed, must comply with all the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section, if it is applicant's first extension request, or paragraph (b) of this section, if it is a second or subsequent extension request. However, in a request under paragraph (b) of this section, applicant may satisfy the requirement for a showing of good cause by asserting that applicant believes that it has made valid use of the mark in commerce, as evidenced by the submitted statement of use, but that if the statement of use is found by the Patent and Trademark Office to be fatally defective, applicant will need additional time in which to file a new statement of use.

(f) The goods or services specified in a request for an extension of time for filing a statement of use must conform to those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance. Any goods or services specified in the notice of allowance which are omitted from the identification of goods or services in the request for extension of time will be presumed to be deleted and the applicant may not thereafter request that the deleted goods or services be reinserted in the application. If appropriate, an applicant may specify the goods or services by stating ''those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance'' or ''those goods or services identified in the notice of allowance except * * *'' followed by an identification of the goods or services to be deleted.

(g) The applicant will be notified of the grant or denial of a request for an extension of time, and of the reasons for a denial. Failure to notify the applicant of the grant or denial of the request prior to the expiration of the existing period or requested extension does not relieve the applicant of the responsibility of timely filing a statement of use under § 2.88. If, after denial of an extension request, there is time remaining in the existing six-month period for filing a statement of use, applicant may submit a substitute request for extension of time. Otherwise, the only recourse available after denial of a request for an extension of time is a petition to the Commissioner in accordance with §§ 2.66 or 2.146. A petition from the denial of a request for an extension of time to file a statement of use shall be filed within one month from the date of mailing of the denial of the request. If the petition is granted, the term of the requested six-month extension which was the subject of the petition will run from the date of the expiration of the previously existing six-month period for filing a statement of use.

[54 FR 37595, Sept. 11, 1989]

INTERFERENCES AND CONCURRENT USE PROCEEDINGS

AUTHORITY: Secs. 2.91 to 2.99 also issued under secs. 16, 17, 60 Stat. 434; 15 U.S.C. 1066, 1067.

§2.91 Declaration of interference.

(a) An interference will not be declared between two applications or between an application and a registration except upon petition to the Commissioner. Interferences will be declared by the Commissioner only upon a showing of extraordinary circumstances which would result in a party being unduly prejudiced without an interference. In ordinary circumstances, the availability of an opposition or cancellation proceeding to the party will be deemed to remove any undue prejudice.

(b) Registrations and applications to register on the Supplemental Register, registrations under the Act of 1920, and registrations of marks the right to use of which has become incontestable are not subject to interference.

[37 FR 2881, Feb. 9, 1972, as amended at 54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]

§2.92 Preliminary to interference.

An interference which has been declared by the Commissioner will not be instituted by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board until the Examiner of Trademarks has determined that the marks which are to form the subject matter of the controversy are registrable, and all of the marks have been published in the Official Gazette for opposition.

[54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]

§2.93 Institution of interference.

An interference is instituted by the mailing of a notice of interference to the parties. The notice shall be sent to each applicant, in care of the applicant's attorney or other representative of record, if any, and if one of the parties is a registrant, the notice shall be sent to the registrant or the registrant's assignee of record. The notice shall give the name and address of every adverse party and of the adverse party's attorney or other authorized representative, if any, together with the serial number and date of filing and publication of each of the applications, or the registration number and date of issuance of each of the registrations, involved.

[54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]

§§2.94—2.95 [Reserved]

§2.96 Issue; burden of proof.

The issue in an interference between applications is normally priority of use, but the rights of the parties to registration may also be determined. The party whose application involved in the interference has the latest filing date is the junior party and has the burden of proof. When there are more than two parties to an interference, a party shall be a junior party to and shall have the burden of proof as against every other party whose application involved in the interference has an earlier filing date. If the involved applications of any parties have the same filing date, the application with the latest date of execution will be deemed to have the latest filing date and that applicant will be the junior party. The issue in an interference between an application and a registration shall be the same, but in the event the final decision is adverse to the registrant, a registration to the applicant will not be authorized so long as the interfering registration remains on the register.

[48 FR 23135, May 23, 1983; 48 FR 27225, June 14, 1983]

§2.97 [Reserved]

§2.98 Adding party to interference.

A party may be added to an interference only upon petition to the Commissioner by that party. If an application which is or might be the subject of a petition for addition to an interference is not added, the examiner may suspend action on the application pending termination of the interference proceeding.

[48 FR 23135, May 23, 1983]

§2.99 Application to register as concurrent user.

(a) An application for registration as a lawful concurrent user will be examined in the same manner as other applications for registration.

(b) When it is determined that the mark is ready for publication, the applicant may be required to furnish as many copies of his application, specimens and drawing as may be necessary

for the preparation of notices for each applicant, registrant or user specified as a concurrent user in the application for registration.

(c) Upon receipt of the copies required by paragraph (b) of this section, the examiner shall forward the application for concurrent use registration for publication in the *Official Gazette* as provided by § 2.80. If no opposition is filed, or if all oppositions that are filed are dismissed or withdrawn, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board shall prepare a notice for the applicant for concurrent use registration and for each applicant, registrant or user specified as a concurrent user in the application. The notices for the specified parties shall state the name and address of the applicant and of the applicant's attorney or other authorized representative, if any, together with the serial number and filing date of the application.

(d)(1) The notices shall be sent to each applicant, in care of his attorney or other authorized representative, if any, to each user, and to each registrant. A copy of the application shall be forwarded with the notice to each party specified in the application.

(2) An answer to the notice is not required in the case of an applicant or registrant whose application or registration is specified as a concurrent user in the application, but a statement, if desired, may be filed within forty days after the mailing of the notice; in the case of any other party specified as a concurrent user in the application, an answer must be filed within forty days after the mailing of the notice.

(3) If an answer, when required, is not filed, judgment will be entered precluding the specified user from claiming any right more extensive than that acknowledged in the application(s) for concurrent use registration, but the applicant(s) will remain with the burden of proving entitlement to registration(s).

(e) The applicant for a concurrent use registration has the burden of proving entitlement thereto. If there are two or more applications for concurrent use registration involved in a proceeding, the party whose application has the latest filing date is the junior party. A party whose application has a filing date between the filing dates of the earliest involved application and the latest involved application is a junior party to every party whose involved application has an earlier filing date. If any applications have the same filing date, the application with the latest date of execution will be deemed to have the latest filing date and that applicant will be the junior party. A person specified as an excepted user in a concurrent use application but who has not filed an application shall be considered a party senior to every party that has an application involved in the proceeding.

(f) When a concurrent use registration is sought on the basis that a court of competent jurisdiction has finally determined that the parties are entitled to use the same or similar marks in commerce, a concurrent use registration proceeding will not be instituted if all of the following conditions are fulfilled:

(1) The applicant is entitled to registration subject only to the concurrent lawful use of a party to the court proceeding; and

(2) The court decree specifies the rights of the parties; and

(3) A true copy of the court decree is submitted to the examiner; and

(4) The concurrent use application complies fully and exactly with the court decree; and

(5) The excepted use specified in the concurrent use application does not involve a registration, or any involved registration has been restricted by the Commissioner in accordance with the court decree.

If any of the conditions specified in this paragraph is not satisfied, a concurrent use registration proceeding shall be prepared and instituted as provided in paragraphs (a) through (e) of this section.

(g) Registrations and applications to register on the Supplemental Register and registrations under the Act of 1920 are not subject to concurrent use registration proceedings. Applications to register under section 1(b) of the Act of 1946 are subject to concurrent use registration proceedings only after an acceptable amendment to allege use under § 2.76 or statement of use under § 2.88 has been filed.

(h) The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will consider and determine concurrent use rights only in the context of a concurrent use registration proceeding.

[48 FR 23135, May 23, 1983; 48 FR 27225, 27226, June 14, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 37596, Sept. 11, 1989]

OPPOSITION

AUTHORITY: Secs. 2.101 to 2.106 also issued under secs. 13, 17, 60 Stat. 433, 434; 15 U.S.C. 1063, 1067.

§2.101 Filing an opposition.

(a) An opposition proceeding is commenced by the filing of an opposition in the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) Any entity which believes that it would be damaged by the registration of a mark on the Principal Register may oppose the same by filing an opposition, which should be addressed to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. The opposition need not be verified, and may be signed by the opposer or the opposer's attorney or other authorized representative.

(c) The opposition must be filed within thirty days after publication (§2.80) of the application being opposed or within an extension of time (§2.102) for filing an opposition.

(d)(1) The opposition must be accompanied by the required fee for each party joined as opposer for each class in the application for which registration is opposed (see §2.6(1)). If no fee, or a fee insufficient to pay for one person to oppose the registration of a mark in at least one class, is submitted within thirty days after publication of the mark to be opposed or within an extension of time for filing an opposition, the opposition will not be refused if the required fee(s) is submitted to the Patent and Trademark Office within the time limit set in the notification of this defect by the Office.

(2) If the fees submitted are sufficient to pay for one person to oppose registration in at least one class but are insufficient for an opposition against all of the classes in the application, and the particular class or classes against which the opposition is filed are not specified, the Office will issue a written notice allowing opposer until a set time in which to submit the required fee(s) or to specify the class or classes opposed. If the required fee(s) is not submitted, or the specification made, within the time set in the notice, the opposition will be presumed to be against the class or classes in ascending order, beginning with the lowest numbered class and including the number of classes in the application for which the fees submitted are sufficient to pay the fee due for each class.

(3) If persons are joined as party opposers, and the fees submitted are sufficient to pay for one person to oppose registration in at least one class but are insufficient for each named party opposer, the Office will issue a written notice allowing the named party opposers until a set time in which to submit the required fee(s) or to specify the opposer(s) to which the submitted fees apply. If the required fee(s) is not submitted, or the specification made, within the time set in the notice, the first named party will be presumed to be the party opposer and additional parties will be deemed to be party opposers to the extent that the fees submitted are sufficient to pay the fee due for each party opposer. If persons are joined as party opposers against the registration of a mark in more than one class, the fees submitted are insufficient, and no specification of opposers and classes is made within the time set in the written notice issued by the Office, the fees submitted will be applied first on behalf of the first-named opposer against as many of the classes in the application as the submitted fees are sufficient to pay, and any excess will be applied on behalf of the second-named party to the opposition against the classes in the application in ascending order.

[48 FR 3976, Jan. 28, 1983, as amended at 51 FR 28709, Aug. 11, 1986; 54 FR 37596, Sept. 11, 1989]

§2.102 Extension of time for filing an opposition.

(a) Any person who believes that he would be damaged by the registration of a mark on the Principal Register may file a written request to extend the time for filing an opposition. The written request may be signed by the potential opposer or by an attorney at

law or other person authorized, in accordance with § 2.12 (b) and (c) and § 2.17(b), to represent the potential opposer.

(b) The written request to extend the time for filing an opposition must identify the potential opposer with reasonable certainty. Any opposition filed during an extension of time should be in the name of the person to whom the extension was granted, but an opposition may be accepted if the person in whose name the extension was requested was misidentified through mistake or if the opposition is filed in the name of a person in privity with the person who requested and was granted the extension of time.

(c) The written request to extend the time for filing an opposition must be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office before the expiration of thirty days from the date of publication or within any extension of time previously granted, should specify the period of extension desired, and should be addressed to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. A first extension of time for not more than thirty days will be granted upon request. Further extensions of time may be granted by the Board for good cause. In addition, extensions of time to file an opposition aggregating more than 120 days from the date of publication of the application will not be granted except upon (1) a written consent or stipulation signed by the applicant or its authorized representative, or (2) a written request by the potential opposer or its authorized representative stating that the applicant or its authorized representative has consented to the request, or (3) a showing of extraordinary circumstances, it being considered that a potential opposer has an adequate alternative remedy by a petition for cancellation.

(d) Every request to extend the time for filing a notice of opposition should be submitted in triplicate (original plus two copies).

[48 FR 3976 Jan. 28, 1983, as amended at 61 FR 36825, July 15, 1996.]

§ 2.104 Contents of opposition.

(a) The opposition must set forth a short and plain statement showing why the opposer believes it would be damaged by the registration of the opposed mark and state the grounds for opposition. A duplicate copy of the opposition, including exhibits, shall be filed with the opposition.

(b) Oppositions to different applications owned by the same party may be joined in a consolidated opposition when appropriate, but the required fee must be included for each party joined as opposer for each class in which registration is opposed in each application against which the opposition is filed.

[54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.105 Notification of opposition proceeding(s).

When an opposition in proper form has been filed and the correct fee(s) have been submitted, a notification shall be prepared by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, which shall identify the title and number of the proceeding and the application involved and shall designate a time, not less than thirty days from the mailing date of the notification, within which an answer must be filed. A copy of the notification shall be forwarded to the attorney or other authorized representative of the opposer, if any, or to the opposer. The duplicate copy of the opposition and exhibits shall be forwarded with a copy of the notification to the attorney or other authorized representative of the applicant, if any, or to the applicant.

[48 FR 23136, May 23, 1983]

§ 2.106 Answer.

(a) If no answer is filed within the time set, the opposition may be decided as in case of default.

(b)(1) An answer shall state in short and plain terms the applicant's defenses to each claim asserted and shall admit or deny the averments upon which the opposer relies. If the applicant is without knowledge or information sufficient to form a belief as to the truth of an averment, applicant shall so state and this will have the effect of a denial. Denials may take any of the forms specified in Rule 8(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. An answer may contain any defense, including the affirmative defenses of unclean hands, laches, estoppel, acquiescence, fraud, mistake, prior judgment, or any

other matter constituting an avoidance or affirmative defense. When pleading special matters, the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure shall be followed. A reply to an affirmative defense need not be filed. When a defense attacks the validity of a registration pleaded in the opposition, paragraph (b)(2) of this section shall govern. A pleaded registration is a registration identified by number and date of issuance in an original notice of opposition or in any amendment thereto made under Rule 15, Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(2)(i) A defense attacking the validity of any one or more of the registrations pleaded in the opposition shall be a compulsory counterclaim if grounds for such counterclaim exist at the time when the answer is filed. If grounds for a counterclaim are known to the applicant when the answer to the opposition is filed, the counterclaim shall be pleaded with or as part of the answer. If grounds for a counterclaim are learned during the course of the opposition proceeding, the counterclaim shall be pleaded promptly after the grounds therefor are learned. A counterclaim need not be filed if it is the subject of another proceeding between the same parties or anyone in privity therewith.

(ii) An attack on the validity of a registration pleaded by an opposer will not be heard unless a counterclaim or separate petition is filed to seek the cancellation of such registration.

(iii) The provisions of §§2.111 through 2.115, inclusive, shall be applicable to counterclaims. A time, not less than thirty days, will be designated within which an answer to the counterclaim must be filed.

(iv) The times for pleading, discovery, testimony, briefs or oral argument will be reset or extended when necessary, upon motion by a party, to enable a party fully to present or meet a counterclaim or separate petition for cancellation of a registration.

(c) The opposition may be withdrawn without prejudice before the answer is filed. After the answer is filed, the opposition may not be withdrawn without prejudice except with the written consent of the applicant or the applicant's attorney or other authorized representative.

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 46 FR 6940, Jan. 22, 1981; 48 FR 23136, May 23, 1983; 54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]

§2.107 Amendment of pleadings in an opposition proceeding.

Pleadings in an opposition proceeding may be amended in the same manner and to the same extent as in a civil action in a United States district court.

[48 FR 23136, May 23, 1983]

CANCELLATION

AUTHORITY: Secs. 2.111 to 2.114 also issued under secs. 14, 17, 24, 60 Stat. 433, 434, 436; 15 U.S.C. 1064, 1067, 1092.

§2.111 Filing petition for cancellation.

(a) A cancellation proceeding is commenced by the timely filing of a petition for cancellation, together with the required fee, in the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) Any entity which believes that it is or will be damaged by a registration may file a petition, which should be addressed to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, to cancel the registration in whole or in part. The petition need not be verified, and may be signed by the petitioner or the petitioner's attorney or other authorized representative. The petition may be filed at any time in the case of registrations on the Supplemental Register or under the Act of 1920, or registrations under the Act of 1881 or the Act of 1905 which have not been published under section 12(c) of the Act, or on any ground specified in section 14 (c) or (e) of the Act. In all other cases the petition and the required fee must be filed within five years from the date of registration of the mark under the Act or from the date of publication under section 12(c) of the Act.

(c)(1) The petition must be accompanied by the required fee for each class in the registration for which cancellation is sought (see §§2.6(l) and 2.85(e)). If the fees submitted are insufficient for a cancellation against all of the classes in the registration, and the particular class or classes against which the cancellation is filed are not

specified, the Office will issue a written notice allowing petitioner until a set time in which to submit the required fee(s) (provided that the five-year period, if applicable, has not expired) or to specify the class or classes sought to be cancelled. If the required fee(s) is not submitted, or the specification made, within the time set in the notice, the cancellation will be presumed to be against the class or classes in ascending order, beginning with the lowest numbered class, and including the number of classes in the registration for which the fees submitted are sufficient to pay the fee due for each class.

(2) If persons are joined as party petitioners, each must submit a fee for each class for which cancellation is sought. If the fees submitted are insufficient for each named party petitioner, the Office will issue a written notice allowing the named party petitioners until a set time in which to submit the required fee(s) (provided that the five-year period, if applicable, has not expired) or to specify the petitioner(s) to which the submitted fees apply. If the required fee(s) is not submitted, or the specification made, within the time set in the notice, the first named party will be presumed to be the party petitioner and additional parties will be deemed to be party petitioners to the extent that the fees submitted are sufficient to pay the fee due for each party petitioner. If persons are joined as party petitioners against a registration sought to be cancelled in more than one class, the fees submitted are insufficient, and no specification of parties and classes is made within the time set in the written notice issued by the Office, the fees submitted will be applied first on behalf of the first-named petitioner against as many of the classes in the registration as the submitted fees are sufficient to pay, and any excess will be applied on behalf of the second-named party to the petition against the classes in the registration in ascending order.

(3) The filing date of the petition is the date of receipt in the Patent and Trademark Office of the petition together with the required fee. If the amount of the fee filed with the petition is sufficient to pay for at least one person to petition to cancel one class of goods or services but is less than the required amount because multiple party petitioners and/or multiple classes in the registration for which cancellation is sought are involved, and the required additional amount of the fee is filed within the time limit set in the notification of the defect by the Office, the filing date of the petition with respect to the additional party petitioners and/or classes is the date of receipt in the Patent and Trademark Office of the additional fees.

[48 FR 3976 Jan. 28, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 37596, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.112 Contents of petition for cancellation.

(a) The petition to cancel must set forth a short and plain statement showing why the petitioner believes it is or will be damaged by the registration, state the grounds for cancellation, and indicate, to the best of petitioner's knowledge, the name and address of the current owner of the registration. A duplicate copy of the petition, including exhibits, shall be filed with the petition.

(b) Petitions to cancel different registrations owned by the same party may be joined in a consolidated petition when appropriate, but the required fee must be included for each party joined as petitioner for each class sought to be cancelled in each registration against which the petition to cancel is filed.

[48 FR 3977 Jan. 28, 1983, as amended at 51 FR 28710, Aug. 11, 1986; 54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.113 Notification of cancellation proceeding.

When a petition for cancellation has been filed in proper form (see §§ 2.111 and 2.112), a notification shall be prepared by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, which shall identify the title and number of the proceeding and the registration or registrations involved and shall designate a time, not less than thirty days from the mailing date of the notification, within which an answer must be filed. A copy of the notification shall be forwarded to the attorney or other authorized representative of the petitioner, if any, or to the petitioner. The duplicate copy of the petition for cancellation and exhibits

shall be forwarded with a copy of the notification to the respondent (see §2.118), who shall be the party shown by the records of the Patent and Trademark Office to be the current owner of the registration or registrations sought to be cancelled, except that the Board, in its discretion, may join or substitute as respondent a party who makes a showing of a current ownership interest in such registration or registrations. When the party identified by the petitioner, pursuant to §2.112(a), as the current owner of the registration or registrations is not the record owner thereof, a courtesy copy of the petition for cancellation shall be forwarded with a copy of the notification to the alleged current owner, which may file a motion to be joined or substituted as respondent. If the petition is found to be defective as to form, the party filing the petition shall be so advised and allowed a reasonable time for correcting the informality.

[54 FR 34897, Aug. 22, 1989; 54 FR 38041, Sept. 14, 1989]

§2.114 Answer.

(a) If no answer is filed within the time set, the petition may be decided as in case of default.

(b)(1) An answer shall state in short and plain terms the respondent's defenses to each claim asserted and shall admit or deny the averments upon which the petitioner relies. If the respondent is without knowledge or information sufficient to form a belief as to the truth of an averment, respondent shall so state and this will have the effect of a denial. Denials may take any of the forms specified in Rule 8(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. An answer may contain any defense, including the affirmative defenses of unclean hands, laches, estoppel, acquiescence, fraud, mistake, prior judgment, or any other matter constituting an avoidance or affirmative defense. When pleading special matters, the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure shall be followed. A reply to an affirmative defense need not be filed. When a defense attacks the validity of a registration pleaded in the petition, paragraph (b)(2) of this section shall govern. A pleaded registration is a registration identified by number and date of issuance in an original petition for cancellation or in any amendment thereto made under Rule 15, Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(2)(i) A defense attacking the validity of any one or more of the registrations pleaded in the petition shall be a compulsory counterclaim if grounds for such counterclaim exist at the time when the answer if filed. If grounds for a counterclaim are known to respondent when the answer to the petition is filed, the counterclaim shall be pleaded with or as part of the answer. If grounds for a counterclaim are learned during the course of the cancellation proceeding, the counterclaim shall be pleaded promptly after the grounds therefor are learned. A counterclaim need not be filed if it is the subject of another proceeding between the same parties or anyone in privity therewith.

(ii) An attack on the validity of a registration pleaded by a petitioner for cancellation will not be heard unless a counterclaim or separate petition is filed to seek the cancellation of such registration.

(iii) The provisions of §§2.111 through 2.115, inclusive, shall be applicable to counterclaims. A time, not less than thirty days, will be designated within which an answer to the counterclaim must be filed.

(iv) The times for pleading, discovery, testimony, briefs, or oral argument will be reset or extended when necessary, upon motion by a party, to enable a party fully to present or meet a counterclaim or separate petition for cancellation of a registration.

(c) The petition for cancellation may be withdrawn without prejudice before the answer is filed. After the answer is filed, the petition may not be withdrawn without prejudice except with the written consent of the registrant or the registrant's attorney or other authorized representative.

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 46 FR 6940, Jan. 22, 1981; 46 FR 11548, Feb. 9, 1981; 51 FR 28710, Aug. 11, 1986; 54 FR 34898, Aug. 22, 1989]

§2.115 Amendment of pleadings in a cancellation proceeding.

Pleadings in a cancellation proceeding may be amended in the same manner and to the same extent as in a civil

action in a United States district court.

[48 FR 23136, May 23, 1983]

PROCEDURE IN INTER PARTES PROCEEDINGS

AUTHORITY: Secs. 2.116 to 2.136 also issued under sec. 17, 60 Stat. 434; 15 U.S.C. 1067.

§ 2.116 Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(a) Except as otherwise provided, and wherever applicable and appropriate, procedure and practice in inter partes proceedings shall be governed by the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(b) The opposer in an opposition proceeding or the petitioner in a cancellation proceeding shall be in the position of plaintiff, and the applicant in an opposition proceeding or the respondent in a cancellation proceeding shall be in the position of defendant. A party that is a junior party in an interference proceeding or in a concurrent use registration proceeding shall be in the position of plaintiff against every party that is senior, and the party that is a senior party in an interference proceeding or in a concurrent use registration proceeding shall be a defendant against every party that is junior.

(c) The opposition or the petition for cancellation and the answer correspond to the complaint and answer in a court proceeding.

(d) The assignment of testimony periods corresponds to setting a case for trial in court proceedings.

(e) The taking of depositions during the assigned testimony periods corresponds to the trial in court proceedings.

(f) Oral hearing corresponds to oral summation in court proceedings.

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965. Redesignated and amended at 37 FR 7606, Apr. 18, 1972; 48 FR 23136, May 23, 1983]

§ 2.117 Suspension of proceedings.

(a) Whenever it shall come to the attention of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that parties to a pending case are engaged in a civil action which may be dispositive of the case, proceedings before the Board may be suspended until termination of the civil action.

(b) Whenever there is pending, at the time when the question of the suspension of proceedings is raised, a motion which is potentially dispositive of the case, the motion may be decided before the question of suspension is considered.

(c) Proceedings may also be suspended, for good cause, upon motion or a stipulation of the parties approved by the Board.

[48 FR 23136, May 23, 1983]

§ 2.118 Undelivered Office notices.

When the notices sent by the Patent and Trademark Office to any registrant are returned to the Office undelivered, or when one of the parties resides abroad and his representative in the United States is unknown, additional notice may be given by publication in the *Official Gazette* for such period of time as the Commissioner may direct.

§ 2.119 Service and signing of papers.

(a) Every paper filed in the Patent and Trademark Office in inter partes cases, including notice of appeal, must be served upon the other parties except the notice of interference (§ 2.93), the notification of opposition (§ 2.105), the petition for cancellation (§ 2.113), and the notice of a concurrent use proceeding (§ 2.99), which are mailed by the Patent and Trademark Office. Proof of such service must be made before the paper will be considered by the Office. A statement signed by the attorney or other authorized representative, attached to or appearing on the original paper when filed, clearly stating the date and manner in which service was made will be accepted as prima facie proof of service.

(b) Service of papers must be on the attorney or other authorized representative of the party if there be such or on the party if there is no attorney or other authorized representative, and may be made in any of the following ways:

(1) By delivering a copy of the paper to the person served;

(2) By leaving a copy at the usual place of business of the person served, with someone in the person's employment;

(3) When the person served has no usual place of business, by leaving a

copy at the person's residence, with a member of the person's family over 14 years of age and of discretion;

(4) Transmission by the ''Express Mail Post Office to Addressee'' service of the United States Postal Service or by first-class mail, which may also be certified or registered;

(5) Transmission by overnight courier.

Whenever it shall be satisfactorily shown to the Commissioner that none of the above modes of obtaining service or serving the paper is practicable, service may be by notice published in the *Official Gazette.*

(c) When service is made by first-class mail, ''Express Mail,'' or overnight courier, the date of mailing or of delivery to the overnight courier will be considered the date of service. Whenever a party is required to take some action within a prescribed period after the service of a paper upon the party by another party and the paper is served by first-class mail, ''Express Mail,'' or overnight courier, 5 days shall be added to the prescribed period.

(d) If a party to an inter partes proceeding is not domiciled in the United States and is not represented by an attorney or other authorized representative located in the United States, the party must designate by written document filed in the Patent and Trademark Office the name and address of a person resident in the United States on whom may be served notices or process in the proceeding. In such cases, official communications of the Patent and Trademark Office will be addressed to the domestic representative unless the proceeding is being prosecuted by an attorney at law or other qualified person duly authorized under §10.14(c) of this subchapter. The mere designation of a domestic representative does not authorize the person designated to prosecute the proceeding unless qualified under §10.14(a), or qualified under paragraph (b) or (c) of §10.14 and authorized under §2.17(b).

(e) Every paper filed in an inter partes proceeding, and every request for an extension of time to file an opposition, must be signed by the party filing it, or by the party's attorney or other authorized representative, but an unsigned paper will not be refused consideration if a signed copy is submitted to the Patent and Trademark Office within the time limit set in the notification of this defect by the Office.

[37 FR 7606, Apr. 18, 1972, as amended at 41 FR 760, Jan. 5, 1976; 54 FR 34898, Aug. 22, 1989; 54 FR 38041, Sept. 14, 1989]

§2.120 Discovery.

(a) *In general.* The provisions of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure relating to discovery shall apply in opposition, cancellation, interference and concurrent use registration proceedings except as otherwise provided in this section. The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will specify the closing date for the taking of discovery. The opening of discovery is governed by the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(b) *Discovery deposition within the United States.* The deposition of a natural person shall be taken in the Federal judicial district where the person resides or is regularly employed or at any place on which the parties agree by stipulation. The responsibility rests wholly with the party taking discovery to secure the attendance of a proposed deponent other than a party or anyone who, at the time set for the taking of the deposition, is an officer, director, or managing agent of a party, or a person designated under Rule 30(b)(6) or Rule 31(a) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. See 35 U.S.C. 24.

(c) *Discovery deposition in foreign countries.* (1) The discovery deposition of a natural person residing in a foreign country who is a party or who, at the time set for the taking of the deposition, is an officer, director, or managing agent of a party, or a person designated under Rule 30(b)(6) or Rule 31(a) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, shall, if taken in a foreign country, be taken in the manner prescribed by §2.124 unless the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, upon motion for good cause, orders or the parties stipulate, that the deposition be taken by oral examination.

(2) Whenever a foreign party is or will be, during a time set for discovery, present within the United States or any territory which is under the control and jurisdiction of the United States, such party may be deposed by oral examination upon notice by the

party seeking discovery. Whenever a foreign party has or will have, during a time set for discovery, an officer, director, managing agent, or other person who consents to testify on its behalf, present within the United States or any territory which is under the control and jurisdiction of the United States, such officer, director, managing agent, or other person who consents to testify in its behalf may be deposed by oral examination upon notice by the party seeking discovery. The party seeking discovery may have one or more officers, directors, managing agents, or other persons who consent to testify on behalf of the adverse party, designated under Rule 30(b)(6) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. The deposition of a person under this paragraph shall be taken in the Federal judicial district where the witness resides or is regularly employed, or, if the witness neither resides nor is regularly employed in a Federal judicial district, where the witness is at the time of the deposition. This paragraph does not preclude the taking of a discovery deposition of a foreign party by any other procedure provided by paragraph (c)(1) of this section.

(d) *Interrogatories; request for production.* (1) The total number of written interrogatories which a party may serve upon another party pursuant to Rule 33 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, in a proceeding, shall not exceed seventy-five, counting subparts, except that the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, in its discretion, may allow additional interrogatories upon motion therefor showing good cause, or upon stipulation of the parties. A motion for leave to serve additional interrogatories must be filed and granted prior to the service of the proposed additional interrogatories; and must be accompanied by a copy of the interrogatories, if any, which have already been served by the moving party, and by a copy of the interrogatories proposed to be served. If a party upon which interrogatories have been served believes that the number of interrogatories served exceeds the limitation specified in this paragraph, and is not willing to waive this basis for objection, the party shall, within the time for (and instead of) serving answers and specific objections to the interrogatories, serve a general objection on the ground of their excessive number. If the inquiring party, in turn, files a motion to compel discovery, the motion must be accompanied by a copy of the set(s) of interrogatories which together are said to exceed the limitation, and must otherwise comply with the requirements of paragraph (e) of this section.

(2) The production of documents and things under the provisions of Rule 34 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure will be made at the place where the documents and things are usually kept, or where the parties agree, or where and in the manner which the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, upon motion, orders.

(e) *Motion for an order to compel discovery.* If a party fails to designate a person pursuant to Rule 30(b)(6) or Rule 31(a) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, or if a party, or such designated person, or an officer, director or managing agent of a party fails to attend a deposition or fails to answer any question propounded in a discovery deposition, or any interrogatory, or fails to produce and permit the inspection and copying of any document or thing, the party seeking discovery may file a motion before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board for an order to compel a designation, or attendance at a deposition, or an answer, or production and an opportunity to inspect and copy. The motion shall include a copy of the request for designation or of the relevant portion of the discovery deposition; or a copy of the interrogatory with any answer or objection that was made; or a copy of the request for production, any proffer of production or objection to production in response to the request, and a list and brief description of the documents or things that were not produced for inspection and copying. The motion must be supported by a written statement from the moving party that such party or the attorney therefor has made a good faith effort, by conference or correspondence, to resolve with the other party or the attorney therefor the issues presented in the motion and has

been unable to reach agreement. If issues raised in the motion are subsequently resolved by agreement of the parties, the moving party should inform the Board in writing of the issues in the motion which no longer require adjudication.

(f) *Motion for a protective order.* Upon motion by a party from whom discovery is sought, and for good cause, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board may make any order which justice requires to protect a party from annoyance, embarrassment, oppression, or undue burden or expense, including one or more of the types of orders provided by clauses (1) through (8), inclusive, of Rule 26(c) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. If the motion for a protective order is denied in whole or in part, the Board may, on such conditions (other than an award of expenses to the party prevailing on the motion) as are just, order that any party provide or permit discovery.

(g) *Sanctions.* (1) If a party fails to comply with an order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board relating to discovery, including a protective order, the Board may make any appropriate order, including any of the orders provided in Rule 37(b)(2) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, except that the Board does not have authority to hold any person in contempt or to award any expenses to any party. The Board may impose against a party any of the sanctions provided by this subsection in the event that said party or any attorney, agent, or designated witness of that party fails to comply with a protective order made pursuant to Rule 26(c) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(2) If a party, or an officer, director, or managing agent of a party, or a person designated under Rule 30(b)(6) or 31(a) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure to testify on behalf of a party, fails to attend the party's or person's discovery deposition, after being served with proper notice, or fails to provide any response to a set of interrogatories or to a set of requests for production of documents and things, and such party or the party's attorney or other authorized representative informs the party seeking discovery that no response will be made thereto, the Board may make any appropriate order, as specified in paragraph (g)(1) of this section.

(h) *Request for admissions.* Requests for admissions shall be governed by Rule 36 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure except that the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board does not have authority to award any expenses to any party. A motion by a party to determine the sufficiency of an answer or objection to a request made by that party for an admission shall include a copy of the request for admission and any exhibits thereto and of the answer or objection. The motion must be supported by a written statement from the moving party that such party or the attorney therefor has made a good faith effort, by conference or correspondence, to resolve with the other party or the attorney therefor the issues presented in the motion and has been unable to reach agreement. If issues raised in the motion are subsequently resolved by agreement of the parties, the moving party should inform the Board in writing of the issues in the motion which no longer require adjudication.

(i) *Telephone and pre-trial conferences.* (1) Whenever it appears to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that a motion filed in an inter partes proceeding is of such nature that its resolution by correspondence is not practical, the Board may, upon its own initiative or upon request made by one or both of the parties, resolve the motion by telephone conference.

(2) Whenever it appears to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that questions or issues arising during the interlocutory phase of an inter partes proceeding have become so complex that their resolution by correspondence or telephone conference is not practical and that resolution would be likely to be facilitated by a conference in person of the parties or their attorneys with a Member or Attorney-Examiner of the Board, the Board may, upon its own initiative or upon motion made by one or both of the parties, request that the parties or their attorneys, under circumstances which will not result in undue hardship for any party, meet with the Board at its offices for a pre-trial conference.

(j) *Use of discovery deposition, answer to interrogatory, or admission.* (1) The discovery deposition of a party or of anyone who at the time of taking the deposition was on officer, director or managing agent of a party, or a person designated by a party pursuant to Rule 30(b)(6) or Rule 31(a) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, may be offered in evidence by an adverse party.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (j)(1) of this section, the discovery deposition of a witness, whether or not a party, shall not be offered in evidence unless the person whose deposition was taken is, during the testimony period of the party offering the deposition, dead; or out of the United States (unless it appears that the absence of the witness was procured by the party offering the deposition); or unable to testify because of age, illness, infirmity, or imprisonment; or cannot be served with a subpoena to compel attendance at a testimonial deposition; or there is a stipulation by the parties; or upon a showing that such exceptional circumstances exist as to make it desirable, in the interest of justice, to allow the deposition to be used. The use of a discovery deposition by any party under this paragraph will be allowed only by stipulation of the parties approved by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, or by order of the Board on motion, which shall be filed at the time of the purported offer of the deposition in evidence, unless the motion is based upon a claim that such exceptional circumstances exist as to make it desirable, in the interest of justice, to allow the deposition to be used, in which case the motion shall be filed promptly after the circumstances claimed to justify use of the deposition became known.

(3)(i) A discovery deposition, an answer to an interrogatory, or an admission to a request for admission, which may be offered in evidence under the provisions of paragraph (j) of this section may be made of record in the case by filing the deposition or any part thereof with any exhibit to the part that is filed, or a copy of the interrogatory and answer thereto with any exhibit made part of the answer, or a copy of the request for admission and any exhibit thereto and the admission (or a statement that the party from which an admission was requested failed to respond thereto), together with a notice of reliance. The notice of reliance and the material submitted thereunder should be filed during the testimony period of the party which files the notice of reliance. An objection made at a discovery deposition by a party answering a question subject to the objection will be considered at final hearing.

(ii) A party which has obtained documents from another party under Rule 34 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure may not make the documents of record by notice of reliance alone, except to the extent that they are admissible by notice of reliance under the provisions of § 2.122(e).

(4) If only part of a discovery deposition is submitted and made part of the record by a party, an adverse party may introduce under a notice of reliance any other part of the deposition which should in fairness be considered so as to make not misleading what was offered by the submitting party. A notice of reliance filed by an adverse party must be supported by a written statement explaining why the adverse party needs to rely upon each additional part listed in the adverse party's notice, failing which the Board, in its discretion, may refuse to consider the additional parts.

(5) An answer to an interrogatory, or an admission to a request for admission, may be submitted and made part of the record by only the inquiring party except that, if fewer than all of the answers to interrogatories, or fewer than all of the admissions, are offered in evidence by the inquiring party, the responding party may introduce under a notice of reliance any other answers to interrogatories, or any other admissions, which should in fairness be considered so as to make not misleading what was offered by the inquiring party. The notice of reliance filed by the responding party must be supported by a written statement explaining why the responding party needs to rely upon each of the additional discovery responses listed in the responding party's notice, failing which the Board, in its discretion, may

refuse to consider the additional responses.

(6) Paragraph (j) of this section will not be interpreted to preclude the reading or the use of a discovery deposition, or answer to an interrogatory, or admission as part of the examination or cross-examination of any witness during the testimony period of any party.

(7) When a discovery deposition, or a part thereof, or an answer to an interrogatory, or an admission, has been made of record by one party in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (j)(3) of this section, it may be referred to by any party for any purpose permitted by the Federal Rules of Evidence.

(8) Requests for discovery, responses thereto, and materials or depositions obtained through the discovery process should not be filed with the Board except when submitted with a motion relating to discovery, or in support of or response to a motion for summary judgment, or under a notice of reliance during a party's testimony period. Papers or materials filed in violation of this paragraph may be returned by the Board.

[48 FR 23136, May 23, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 34898, Aug. 22, 1989; 54 FR 38041, Sept. 14, 1989; 56 FR 46379, Sept. 12, 1991; 56 FR 54917, Oct. 23, 1991]

§2.121 Assignment of times for taking testimony.

(a)(1) The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will issue a trial order assigning to each party the time for taking testimony. No testimony shall be taken except during the times assigned, unless by stipulation of the parties approved by the Board, or, upon motion, by order of the Board. Testimony periods may be rescheduled by stipulation of the parties approved by the Board, or upon motion granted by the Board, or by order of the Board. The resetting of the closing date for discovery will result in the rescheduling of the testimony periods without action by any party. The resetting of a party's time to respond to an outstanding request for discovery will not result in the automatic rescheduling of the discovery and/or testimony periods; such dates will be rescheduled only upon stipulation of the parties approved by the Board, or upon motion granted by the Board, or by order of the Board.

(2) The initial trial order will be mailed by the Board after issue is joined.

(b)(1) The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will schedule a testimony period for the plaintiff to present its case in chief, a testimony period for the defendant to present its case and to meet the case of the plaintiff, and a testimony period for the plaintiff to present evidence in rebuttal.

(2) When there is a counterclaim, or when proceedings have been consolidated and one party is in the position of plaintiff in one of the involved proceedings and in the position of defendant in another of the involved proceedings, or when there is an interference or a concurrent use registration proceeding involving more than two parties, the Board will schedule testimony periods so that each party in the position of plaintiff will have a period for presenting its case in chief against each party in the position of defendant, each party in the position of defendant will have a period for presenting its case and meeting the case of each plaintiff, and each party in the position of plaintiff will have a period for presenting evidence in rebuttal.

(c) A testimony period which is solely for rebuttal will be set for fifteen days. All other testimony periods will be set for thirty days. The periods may be extended by stipulation of the parties approved by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, or upon motion granted by the Board, or by order of the Board.

(d) When parties stipulate to the rescheduling of testimony periods or to the rescheduling of the closing date for discovery and the rescheduling of testimony periods, a stipulation presented in the form used in a trial order, signed by the parties, or a motion in said form signed by one party and including a statement that every other party has agreed thereto, and submitted in one original plus as many photocopies as there are parties, will, if approved, be so stamped, signed, and dated, and the

copies will be promptly returned to the parties.

[48 FR 23138, May 23, 1983; 48 FR 27226, June 14, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 34899, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.122 Matters in evidence.

(a) *Rules of evidence.* The rules of evidence for proceedings before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board are the Federal Rules of Evidence, the relevant provisions of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, the relevant provisions of Title 28 of the United States Code, and the provisions of this part of title 37 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

(b) *Application files.* (1) The file of each application or registration specified in a declaration of interference, of each application or registration specified in the notice of a concurrent use registration proceeding, of the application against which a notice of opposition is filed, or of each registration against which a petition or counterclaim for cancellation is filed forms part of the record of the proceeding without any action by the parties and reference may be made to the file for any relevant and competent purpose.

(2) The allegation in an application for registration, or in a registration, of a date of use is not evidence on behalf of the applicant or registrant; a date of use of a mark must be established by competent evidence. Specimens in the file of an application for registration, or in the file of a registration, are not evidence on behalf of the applicant or registrant unless identified and introduced in evidence as exhibits during the period for the taking of testimony.

(c) *Exhibits to pleadings.* Except as provided in paragraph (d)(1) of this section, an exhibit attached to a pleading is not evidence on behalf of the party to whose pleading the exhibit is attached unless identified and introduced in evidence as an exhibit during the period for the taking of testimony.

(d) *Registrations.* (1) A registration of the opposer or petitioner pleaded in an opposition or petition to cancel will be received in evidence and made part of the record if the opposition or petition is accompanied by two copies of the registration prepared and issued by the Patent and Trademark Office showing both the current status of and current title to the registration. For the cost of a copy of a registration showing status and title, see § 2.6(n).

(2) A registration owned by any party to a proceeding may be made of record in the proceeding by that party by appropriate identification and introduction during the taking of testimony or by filing a notice of reliance, which shall be accompanied by a copy of the registration prepared and issued by the Patent and Trademark Office showing both the current status of and current title to the registration. The notice of reliance shall be filed during the testimony period of the party that files the notice.

(e) *Printed publications and official records.* Printed publications, such as books and periodicals, available to the general public in libraries or of general circulation among members of the public or that segment of the public which is relevant under an issue in a proceeding, and official records, if the publication of official record is competent evidence and relevant to an issue, may be introduced in evidence by filing a notice of reliance on the material being offered. The notice shall specify the printed publication (including information sufficient to identify the source and the date of the publication) or the official record and the pages to be read; indicate generally the relevance of the material being offered; and be accompanied by the official record or a copy thereof whose authenticity is established under the Federal Rules of Evidence, or by the printed publication or a copy of the relevant portion thereof. A copy of an official record of the Patent and Trademark Office need not be certified to be offered in evidence. The notice of reliance shall be filed during the testimony period of the party that files the notice.

(f) *Testimony from other proceedings.* By order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, on motion, testimony taken in another proceeding, or testimony taken in a suit or action in a court, between the same parties or those in privity may be used in a proceeding, so far as relevant and material, subject, however, to the right of any adverse party to recall or demand the recall for examination or cross-examination of any witness whose prior

testimony has been offered and to rebut the testimony.

[48 FR 23138, May 23, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 34899, Aug. 22, 1989; 54 FR 38041, Sept. 14, 1989]

§2.123 Trial testimony in inter partes cases.

(a)(1) The testimony of witnesses in inter partes cases may be taken by depositions upon oral examination as provided by this section or by depositions upon written questions as provided by §2.124. If a party serves notice of the taking of a testimonial deposition upon written questions of a witness who is, or will be at the time of the deposition, present within the United States or any territory which is under the control and jurisdiction of the United States, any adverse party may, within fifteen days from the date of service of the notice, file a motion with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, for good cause, for an order that the deposition be taken by oral examination.

(2) A testimonial deposition taken in a foreign country shall be taken by deposition upon written questions as provided by §2.124, unless the Board, upon motion for good cause, orders that the deposition be taken by oral examination, or the parties so stipulate.

(b) *Stipulations.* If the parties so stipulate in writing, depositions may be taken before any person authorized to administer oaths, at any place, upon any notice, and in any manner, and when so taken may be used like other depositions. By agreement of the parties, the testimony of any witness or witnesses of any party, may be submitted in the form of an affidavit by such witness or witnesses. The parties may stipulate what a particular witness would testify to if called, or the facts in the case of any party may be stipulated.

(c) *Notice of examination of witnesses.* Before the depositions of witnesses shall be taken by a party, due notice in writing shall be given to the opposing party or parties, as provided in §2.119(b), of the time when and place where the depositions will be taken, of the cause or matter in which they are to be used, and the name and address of each witness to be examined; if the name of a witness is not known, a general description sufficient to identify the witness or the particular class or group to which the witness belongs, together with a satisfactory explanation, may be given instead. Depositions may be noticed for any reasonable time and place in the United States. A deposition may not be noticed for a place in a foreign country except as provided in paragraph (a)(2) of this section. No party shall take depositions in more than one place at the same time, nor so nearly at the same time that reasonable opportunity for travel from one place of examination to the other is not available.

(d) *Persons before whom depositions may be taken.* Depositions may be taken before persons designated by Rule 28 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(e) *Examination of witnesses.* (1) Each witness before testifying shall be duly sworn according to law by the officer before whom his deposition is to be taken.

(2) The deposition shall be taken in answer to questions, with the questions and answers recorded in their regular order by the officer, or by some other person (who shall be subject to the provisions of Rule 28 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure) in the presence of the officer except when the officer's presence is waived on the record by agreement of the parties. The testimony shall be taken stenographically and transcribed, unless the parties present agree otherwise. In the absence of all opposing parties and their attorneys or other authorized representatives, depositions may be taken in longhand, typewriting, or stenographically. Exhibits which are marked and identified at the deposition will be deemed to have been offered into evidence, without any formal offer thereof, unless the intention of the party marking the exhibits is clearly expressed to the contrary.

(3) Every adverse party shall have full opportunity to cross-examine each witness. If the notice of examination of witnesses which is served pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section is improper or inadequate with respect to any witness, an adverse party may

cross-examine that witness under protest while reserving the right to object to the receipt of the testimony in evidence. Promptly after the testimony is completed, the adverse party, if he wishes to preserve the objection, shall move to strike the testimony from the record, which motion will be decided on the basis of all of the relevant circumstances. A motion to strike the testimony of a witness for lack of proper or adequate notice of examination must request the exclusion of the entire testimony of that witness and not only a part of that testimony.

(4) All objections made at the time of the examination to the qualifications of the officer taking the deposition, or to the manner of taking it, or to the evidence presented, or to the conduct of any party, and any other objection to the proceedings, shall be noted by the officer upon the deposition. Evidence objected to shall be taken subject to the objections.

(5) When the deposition has been transcribed, the deposition shall be carefully read over by the witness or by the officer to him, and shall then be signed by the witness in the presence of any officer authorized to administer oaths unless the reading and the signature be waived on the record by agreement of all parties.

(f) *Certification and filing by officer.* The officer shall annex to the deposition his certificate showing:

(1) Due administration of the oath by the officer to the witness before the commencement of his deposition;

(2) The name of the person by whom the deposition was taken down, and whether, if not taken down by the officer, it was taken down in his presence;

(3) The presence or absence of the adverse party;

(4) The place, day, and hour of commencing and taking the deposition;

(5) The fact that the officer was not disqualified as specified in Rule 28 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

If any of the foregoing requirements are waived, the certificate shall so state. The officer shall sign the certificate and affix thereto his seal of office, if he has such a seal. Unless waived on the record by an agreement, he shall then, without delay, securely seal in an envelope all the evidence, notices, and paper exhibits, inscribe upon the envelope a certificate giving the number and title of the case, the name of each witness, and the date of sealing, address the package, and forward the same to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks. If the weight or bulk of an exhibit shall exclude it from the envelope, it shall, unless waived on the record by agreement of all parties, be authenticated by the officer and transmitted in a separate package marked and addressed as provided in this section.

(g) *Form of deposition.* (1) The pages of each deposition must be numbered consecutively, and the name of the witness plainly and conspicuously written at the top of each page. The deposition may be written on legal-size or letter-size paper, with a wide margin on the left-hand side of the page, and with the writing on one side only of the sheet. The questions propounded to each witness must be consecutively numbered unless paper with numbered lines is used, and each question must be followed by its answer.

(2) Exhibits must be numbered or lettered consecutively and each must be marked with the number and title of the case and the name of the party offering the exhibit. Entry and consideration may be refused to improperly marked exhibits.

(3) Each deposition must contain an index of the names of the witnesses, giving the pages where their examination and cross-examination begin, and an index of the exhibits, briefly describing their nature and giving the pages at which they are introduced and offered in evidence.

(h) *Depositions must be filed.* All depositions which are taken must be duly filed in the Patent and Trademark Office. On refusal to file, the Office at its discretion will not further hear or consider the contestant with whom the refusal lies; and the Office may, at its discretion, receive and consider a copy of the withheld deposition, attested by such evidence as is procurable.

(i) *Inspection of depositions.* After the depositions are filed in the Office, they may be inspected by any party to the case, but they cannot be withdrawn for the purpose of printing. They may be

printed by someone specially designated by the Office for that purpose, under proper restrictions.

(j) *Effect of errors and irregularities in depositions.* Rule 32(d) (1), (2), and (3) (A) and (B) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure shall apply to errors and irregularities in depositions. Notice will not be taken of merely formal or technical objections which shall not appear to have wrought a substantial injury to the party raising them; and in case of such injury it must be made to appear that the objection was raised at the time specified in said rule.

(k) *Objections to admissibility:* Subject to the provisions of paragraph (j) of this section, objection may be made to receiving in evidence any deposition, or part thereof, or any other evidence, for any reason which would require the exclusion of the evidence from consideration. Objections to the competency of a witness or to the competency, relevancy, or materiality of testimony must be raised at the time specified in Rule 32(d)(3)(A) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. Such objections will not be considered until final hearing.

(l) *Evidence not considered.* Evidence not obtained and filed in compliance with these sections will not be considered.

[37 FR 7607, Apr. 18, 1972, as amended at 41 FR 760, Jan. 5, 1976; 48 FR 23139, May 23, 1983; 54 FR 34899, Aug. 22, 1989; 54 FR 38041, Sept. 14, 1989]

§2.124 Depositions upon written questions.

(a) A deposition upon written questions may be taken before any person before whom depositions may be taken as provided by Rule 28 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(b)(1) A party desiring to take a testimonial deposition upon written questions shall serve notice thereof upon each adverse party within ten days from the opening date of the testimony period of the party who serves the notice. The notice shall state the name and address of the witness. A copy of the notice, but not copies of the questions, shall be filed with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.

(2) A party desiring to take a discovery deposition upon written questions shall serve notice thereof upon each adverse party and shall file a copy of the notice, but not copies of the questions, with the Board. The notice shall state the name and address, if known, of the person whose deposition is to be taken. If the name of the person is not known, a general description sufficient to identify him or the particular class or group to which he belongs shall be stated in the notice, and the party from whom the discovery deposition is to be taken shall designate one or more persons to be deposed in the same manner as is provided by Rule 30(b)(6) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

(c) Every notice given under the provisions of paragraph (b) of this section shall be accompanied by the name or descriptive title of the officer before whom the deposition is to be taken.

(d)(1) Every notice served on any adverse party under the provisions of paragraph (b) of this section shall be accompanied by the written questions to be propounded on behalf of the party who proposes to take the deposition. Within twenty days from the date of service of the notice, any adverse party may serve cross questions upon the party who proposes to take the deposition; any party who serves cross questions shall also serve every other adverse party. Within ten days from the date of service of the cross questions, the party who proposes to take the deposition may serve redirect questions on every adverse party. Within ten days from the date of service of the redirect questions, any party who served cross questions may serve recross questions upon the party who proposes to take the deposition; any party who serves recross questions shall also serve every other adverse party. Written objections to questions may be served on a party propounding questions; any party who objects shall serve a copy of the objections on every other adverse party. In response to objections, substitute questions may be served on the objecting party within ten days of the date of service of the objections; substitute questions shall be served on every other adverse party.

(2) Upon motion for good cause by any party, or upon its own initiative, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board may extend any of the time periods

provided by paragraph (d)(1) of this section. Upon receipt of written notice that one or more testimonial depositions are to be taken upon written questions, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board shall suspend or reschedule other proceedings in the matter to allow for the orderly completion of the depositions upon written questions.

(e) Within ten days after the last date when questions, objections, or substitute questions may be served, the party who proposes to take the deposition shall mail a copy of the notice and copies of all the questions to the officer designated in the notice; a copy of the notice and of all the questions mailed to the officer shall be served on every adverse party. The officer designated in the notice shall take the testimony of the witness in response to the questions and shall record each answer immediately after the corresponding question. The officer shall then certify the transcript and mail the transcript and exhibits to the party who took the deposition.

(f) The party who took the deposition shall promptly serve a copy of the transcript, copies of documentary exhibits, and duplicates or photographs of physical exhibits on every adverse party. It is the responsibility of the party who takes the deposition to assure that the transcript is correct (see § 2.125(b)). If the deposition is a discovery deposition, it may be made of record as provided by § 2.120(j). If the deposition is a testimonial deposition, the original, together with copies of documentary exhibits and duplicates or photographs of physical exhibits, shall be filed promptly with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.

(g) Objections to questions and answers in depositions upon written questions may be considered at final hearing.

[48 FR 23139, May 23, 1983]

§ 2.125 Filing and service of testimony.

(a) One copy of the transcript of testimony taken in accordance with § 2.123, together with copies of documentary exhibits and duplicates or photographs of physical exhibits, shall be served on each adverse party within thirty days after completion of the taking of that testimony. If the transcript with exhibits is not served on each adverse party within thirty days or within an extension of time for the purpose, any adverse party which was not served may have remedy by way of a motion to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board to reset such adverse party's testimony and/or briefing periods, as may be appropriate. If the deposing party fails to serve a copy of the transcript with exhibits on an adverse party after having been ordered to do so by the Board, the Board, in its discretion, may strike the deposition, or enter judgment as by default against the deposing party, or take any such other action as may be deemed appropriate.

(b) The party who takes testimony is responsible for having all typographical errors in the transcript and all errors of arrangement, indexing and form of the transcript corrected, on notice to each adverse party, prior to the filing of one certified transcript with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. The party who takes testimony is responsible for serving on each adverse party one copy of the corrected transcript or, if reasonably feasible, corrected pages to be inserted into the transcript previously served.

(c) One certified transcript and exhibits shall be filed promptly with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board. Notice of such filing shall be served on each adverse party and a copy of each notice shall be filed with the Board.

(d) Each transcript shall comply with § 2.123(g) with respect to arrangement, indexing and form.

(e) Upon motion by any party, for good cause, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board may order that any part of a deposition transcript or any exhibits that directly disclose any trade secret or other confidential research, development, or commercial information may be filed under seal and kept confidential under the provisions of § 2.27(e). If any party or any attorney or agent of a party fails to comply with an order made under this paragraph, the Board may impose any of the sanctions authorized by § 2.120(g).

[48 FR 23140, May 23, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 34900, Aug. 22, 1989]

§2.126 [Reserved]

§2.127 Motions.

(a) Every motion shall be made in writing, shall contain a full statement of the grounds, and shall embody or be accompanied by a brief. A brief in response to a motion shall be filed within fifteen days from the date of service of the motion unless another time is specified by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board or the time is extended by order of the Board on motion for good cause. When a party fails to file a brief in response to a motion, the Board may treat the motion as conceded. An oral hearing will not be held on a motion except on order by the Board.

(b) Any request for reconsideration or modification of an order or decision issued on a motion must be filed within thirty days from the date thereof. A brief in response must be filed within fifteen days from the date of service of the request.

(c) Interlocutory motions, requests, and other matters not actually or potentially dispositive of a proceeding may be acted upon by a single Member of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board or by an Attorney-Examiner of the Board to whom authority so to act has been delegated.

(d) When any party files a motion to dismiss, or a motion for judgment on the pleadings, or a motion for summary judgment, or any other motion which is potentially dispositive of a proceeding, the case will be suspended by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board with respect to all matters not germane to the motion and no party should file any paper which is not germane to the motion. If the case is not disposed of as a result of the motion, proceedings will be resumed pursuant to an order of the Board when the motion is decided.

(e)(1) A motion for summary judgment should be filed prior to the commencement of the first testimony period, as originally set or as reset, and the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, in its discretion, may deny as untimely any motion for summary judgment filed thereafter.

(2) For purposes of summary judgment only, a discovery deposition, or an answer to an interrogatory, or a document or thing produced in response to a request for production, or an admission to a request for admission, will be considered by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board if any party files, with the party's brief on the summary judgment motion, the deposition or any part thereof with any exhibit to the part that is filed, or a copy of the interrogatory and answer thereto with any exhibit made part of the answer, or a copy of the request for production and the documents or things produced in response thereto, or a copy of the request for admission and any exhibit thereto and the admission (or a statement that the party from which an admission was requested failed to respond thereto).

(f) The Board does not have authority to hold any person in contempt, or to award attorneys' fees or other expenses to any party.

[48 FR 23140, May 23, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 34900, Aug. 22, 1989]

§2.128 Briefs at final hearing.

(a)(1) The brief of the party in the position of plaintiff shall be due not later than sixty days after the date set for the close of rebuttal testimony. The brief of the party in the position of defendant, if filed, shall be due not later than thirty days after the due date of the first brief. A reply brief by the party in the position of plaintiff, if filed, shall be due not later than fifteen days after the due date of the defendant's brief.

(2) When there is a counterclaim, or when proceedings have been consolidated and one party is in the position of plaintiff in one of the involved proceedings and in the position of defendant in another of the involved proceedings, or when there is an interference or a concurrent use registration proceeding involving more than two parties, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will set the due dates for the filing of the main brief, and the answering brief, and the rebuttal brief by the parties.

(3) When a party in the position of plaintiff fails to file a main brief, an order may be issued allowing plaintiff until a set time, not less than fifteen days, in which to show cause why the Board should not treat such failure as

a concession of the case. If plaintiff fails to file a response to the order, or files a response indicating that he has lost interest in the case, judgment may be entered against plaintiff.

(b) Briefs shall be submitted in typewritten or printed form, double spaced, in at least pica or eleven-point type, on letter-size paper. Each brief shall contain an alphabetical index of cases cited therein. Without prior leave of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, a main brief on the case shall not exceed fifty-five pages in length in its entirety, including the table of contents, index of cases, description of the record, statement of the issues, recitation of facts, argument, and summary; and a reply brief shall not exceed twenty-five pages in its entirety. Three legible copies, on good quality paper, of each brief shall be filed.

[48 FR 23140, May 23, 1983; 48 FR 27226, June 14, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 34900, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.129 Oral argument; reconsideration.

(a) If a party desires to have an oral argument at final hearing, the party shall request such argument by a separate notice filed not later than ten days after the due date for the filing of the last reply brief in the proceeding. Oral arguments will be heard by at least three Members of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board at the time specified in the notice of hearing. If any party appears at the specified time, that party will be heard. If the Board is prevented from hearing the case at the specified time, a new hearing date will be set. Unless otherwise permitted, oral arguments in an inter partes case will be limited to thirty minutes for each party. A party in the position of plaintiff may reserve part of the time allowed for oral argument to present a rebuttal argument.

(b) The date or time of a hearing may be reset, so far as is convenient and proper, to meet the wishes of the parties and their attorneys or other authorized representatives.

(c) Any request for rehearing or reconsideration or modification of a decision issued after final hearing must be filed within one month from the date of the decision. A brief in response must be filed within fifteen days from the date of service of the request. The times specified may be extended by order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board on motion for good cause.

(d) When a party to an inter partes proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board cannot prevail without establishing constructive use pursuant to section 7(c) of the Act in an application under section 1(b) of the Act, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will enter a judgment in favor of that party, subject to the party's establishment of constructive use. The time for filing an appeal or for commencing a civil action under section 21 of the Act shall run from the date of the entry of the judgment.

[48 FR 23141, May 23, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 29554, July 13, 1989; 54 FR 34900, Aug. 22, 1989; 54 FR 37597, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.130 New matter suggested by Examiner of Trademarks.

If, during the pendency of an inter partes case, facts appear which, in the opinion of the Examiner of Trademarks, render the mark of any applicant involved unregistrable, the attention of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board shall be called thereto. The Board may suspend the proceeding and refer the application to the Examiner of Trademarks for his determination of the question of registrability, following the final determination of which the application shall be returned to the Board for such further inter partes action as may be appropriate. The consideration of such facts by the Examiner of Trademarks shall be ex parte, but a copy of the action of the examiner will be furnished to the parties to the inter partes proceeding.

§ 2.131 Remand after decision in inter partes proceeding.

If, during an inter partes proceeding, facts are disclosed which appear to render the mark of an applicant unregistrable, but such matter has not been tried under the pleadings as filed by the parties or as they might be deemed to be amended under Rule 15(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure to conform to the evidence, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, in lieu of determining the matter in the decision

on the proceeding, may refer the application to the examiner for reexamination in the event the applicant ultimately prevails in the inter partes proceeding. Upon receiving the application, the examiner shall withhold registration pending reexamination of the application in the light of the reference by the Board. If, upon reexamination, the examiner finally refuses registration to the applicant, an appeal may be taken as provided by §§2.141 and 2.142.

[48 FR 23141, May 23, 1983]

§2.132 Involuntary dismissal for failure to take testimony.

(a) If the time for taking testimony by any party in the position of plaintiff has expired and that party has not taken testimony or offered any other evidence, any party in the position of defendant may, without waiving the right to offer evidence in the event the motion is denied, move for dismissal on the ground of the failure of the plaintiff to prosecute. The party in the position of plaintiff shall have fifteen days from the date of service of the motion to show cause why judgment should not be rendered against him. In the absence of a showing of good and sufficient cause, judgment may be rendered against the party in the position of plaintiff. If the motion is denied, testimony periods will be reset for the party in the position of defendant and for rebuttal.

(b) If no evidence other than a copy or copies of Patent and Trademark Office records is offered by any party in the position of plaintiff, any party in the position of defendant may, without waiving the right to offer evidence in the event the motion is denied, move for dismissal on the ground that upon the law and the facts the party in the position of plaintiff has shown no right to relief. The party in the position of plaintiff shall have fifteen days from the date of service of the motion to file a brief in response to the motion. The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board may render judgment against the party in the position of plaintiff, or the Board may decline to render judgment until all of the evidence is in the record. If judgment is not rendered, testimony periods will be reset for the party in the position of defendant and for rebuttal.

(c) A motion filed under paragraph (a) or (b) of this section must be filed before the opening of the testimony period of the moving party, except that the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board may in its discretion grant a motion under paragraph (a) even if the motion was filed after the opening of the testimony period of the moving party.

[48 FR 23141, May 23, 1983, as amended at 51 FR 28710, Aug. 11, 1986]

§2.133 Amendment of application or registration during proceedings.

(a) An application involved in a proceeding may not be amended in substance nor may a registration be amended or disclaimed in part, except with the consent of the other party or parties and the approval of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, or except upon motion.

(b) If, in an inter partes proceeding, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board finds that a party whose application or registration is the subject of the proceeding is not entitled to registration in the absence of a specified restriction to the involved application or registration, the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will allow the party time in which to file a request that the application or registration be amended to conform to the findings of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, failing which judgment will be entered against the party.

(c) Geographic limitations will be considered and determined by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board only in the context of a concurrent use registration proceeding.

(d) A plaintiff's pleaded registration will not be restricted in the absence of a counterclaim to cancel the registration in whole or in part, except that a counterclaim need not be filed if the registration is the subject of another proceeding between the same parties or anyone in privity therewith.

[54 FR 37597, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.134 Surrender or voluntary cancellation of registration.

(a) After the commencement of a cancellation proceeding, if the respondent applies for cancellation of the involved registration under section 7(d) of the Act of 1946 without the written consent of every adverse party to the proceeding, judgment shall be entered against the respondent. The written consent of an adverse party may be signed by the adverse party or by the adverse party's attorney or other authorized representative.

(b) After the commencement of a cancellation proceeding, if it comes to the attention of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that the respondent has permitted his involved registration to be cancelled under section 8 of the Act of 1946 or has failed to renew his involved registration under section 9 of the Act of 1946, an order may be issued allowing respondent until a set time, not less than fifteen days, in which to show cause why such cancellation or failure to renew should not be deemed to be the equivalent of a cancellation by request of respondent without the consent of the adverse party and should not result in entry of judgment against respondent as provided by paragraph (a) of this section. In the absence of a showing of good and sufficient cause, judgment may be entered against respondent as provided by paragraph (a) of this section.

[48 FR 23141, May 23, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 34900, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.135 Abandonment of application or mark.

After the commencement of an opposition, concurrent use, or interference proceeding, if the applicant files a written abandonment of the application or of the mark without the written consent of every adverse party to the proceeding, judgment shall be entered against the applicant. The written consent of an adverse party may be signed by the adverse party or by the adverse party's attorney or other authorized representative.

[54 FR 34900, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.136 Status of application on termination of proceeding.

On termination of a proceeding involving an application, the application, if the judgment is not adverse, returns to the status it had before the institution of the proceedings. If the judgment is adverse to the applicant, the application stands refused without further action and all proceedings thereon are considered terminated.

APPEALS

§ 2.141 Ex parte appeals from the Examiner of Trademarks.

Every applicant for the registration of a mark may, upon final refusal by the Examiner of Trademarks, appeal to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board upon payment of the prescribed fee for each class in the application for which an appeal is taken. An appeal which includes insufficient fees to cover all classes in the application should specify the particular class or classes in which an appeal is taken. A second refusal on the same grounds may be considered as final by the applicant for purpose of appeal.

[41 FR 760, Jan. 5, 1976]

§ 2.142 Time and manner of ex parte appeals.

(a) Any appeal filed under the provisions of §2.141 must be filed within six months from the date of final refusal or the date of the action from which the appeal is taken. An appeal is taken by filing a notice of appeal and paying the appeal fee.

(b)(1) The brief of appellant shall be filed within sixty days from the date of appeal. If the brief is not filed within the time allowed, the appeal may be dismissed. The examiner shall, within sixty days after the brief of appellant is sent to the examiner, file with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board a written brief answering the brief of appellant and shall mail a copy of the brief to the appellant. The appellant may file a reply brief within twenty days from the date of mailing of the brief of the examiner.

(2) Briefs shall be submitted in typewritten or printed form, double spaced, in at least pica or eleven-point type, on letter-size paper. Without prior leave

of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, a brief shall not exceed twenty-five pages in length in its entirety.

(c) All requirements made by the examiner and not the subject of appeal shall be complied with prior to the filing of an appeal.

(d) The record in the application should be complete prior to the filing of an appeal. The Trademark Trial and Appeal Board will ordinarily not consider additional evidence filed with the Board by the appellant or by the examiner after the appeal is filed. After an appeal is filed, if the appellant or the examiner desires to introduce additional evidence, the appellant or the examiner may request the Board to suspend the appeal and to remand the application for further examination.

(e)(1) If the appellant desires an oral hearing, a request therefor should be made by a separate notice filed not later than ten days after the due date for a reply brief. Oral argument will be heard by at least three Members of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board at the time specified in the notice of hearing, which may be reset if the Board is prevented from hearing the argument at the specified time or, so far as is convenient and proper, to meet the wish of the appellant or his attorney or other authorized representative.

(2) If the appellant requests an oral argument, the examiner who issued the refusal of registration or the requirement from which the appeal is taken, or in lieu thereof another examiner from the same examining division as designated by the supervisory attorney thereof, shall present an oral argument. If no request for an oral hearing is made by the appellant, the appeal will be decided on the record and briefs.

(3) Oral argument will be limited to twenty minutes by the appellant and ten minutes by the examiner. The appellant may reserve part of the time allowed for oral argument to present a rebuttal argument.

(f)(1) If, during an appeal from a refusal of registration, it appears to the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board that an issue not previously raised may render the mark of the appellant unregistrable, the Board may suspend the appeal and remand the application to the examiner for further examination to be completed within thirty days.

(2) If the further examination does not result in an additional ground for refusal of registration, the examiner shall promptly return the application to the Board, for resumption of the appeal, with a written statement that further examination did not result in an additional ground for refusal of registration.

(3) If the further examination does result in an additional ground for refusal of registration, the examiner and appellant shall proceed as provided by §§2.61, 2.62, 2.63 and 2.64. If the ground for refusal is made final, the examiner shall return the application to the Board, which shall thereupon issue an order allowing the appellant sixty days from the date of the order to file a supplemental brief limited to the additional ground for the refusal of registration. If the supplemental brief is not filed by the appellant within the time allowed, the appeal may be dismissed.

(4) If the supplemental brief of the appellant is filed, the examiner shall, within sixty days after the supplemental brief of the appellant is sent to the examiner, file with the Board a written brief answering the supplemental brief of appellant and shall mail a copy of the brief to the appellant. The appellant may file a reply brief within twenty days from the date of mailing of the brief of the examiner.

(5) If an oral hearing on the appeal had been requested prior to the remand of the application but not yet held, an oral hearing will be set and heard as provided in paragraph (e) of this section. If an oral hearing had been held prior to the remand or had not been previously requested by the appellant, an oral hearing may be requested by the appellant by a separate notice filed not later than ten days after the due date for a reply brief on the additional ground for refusal of registration. If the appellant files a request for an oral hearing, one will be set and heard as provided in paragraph (e) of this section.

(6) If, during an appeal from a refusal of registration, it appears to the examiner that an issue not involved in the

appeal may render the mark of the appellant unregistrable, the examiner may, by written request, ask the Board to suspend the appeal and to remand the application to the examiner for further examination. If the request is granted, the examiner and appellant shall proceed as provided by §§ 2.61, 2.62, 2.63 and 2.64. After the additional ground for refusal of registration has been withdrawn or made final, the examiner shall return the application to the Board, which shall resume proceedings in the appeal and take further appropriate action with respect thereto.

(g) An application which has been considered and decided on appeal will not be reopened except for the entry of a disclaimer under section 6 of the Act of 1946 or upon order of the Commissioner, but a petition to the Commissioner to reopen an application will be considered only upon a showing of sufficient cause for consideration of any matter not already adjudicated.

[48 FR 23141, May 23, 1983, as amended at 54 FR 34901, Aug. 22, 1989]

§ 2.144 Reconsideration of decision on ex parte appeal.

Any request for rehearing or reconsideration, or modification of the decision, must be filed within one month from the date of the decision. Such time may be extended by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board upon a showing of sufficient cause.

[54 FR 29554, July 13, 1989]

§ 2.145 Appeal to court and civil action.

(a) *Appeal to U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.* An applicant for registration, or any party to an interference, opposition, or cancellation proceeding or any party to an application to register as a concurrent user, hereinafter referred to as inter partes proceedings, who is dissatisfied with the decision of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board and any registrant who has filed an affidavit or declaration under section 8 of the Act or who has filed an application for renewal and is dissatisfied with the decision of the Commissioner (§§ 2.165, 2.184), may appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit. The appellant must take the following steps in such an appeal:

(1) In the Patent and Trademark Office give written notice of appeal to the Commissioner (see paragraphs (b) and (d) of this section);

(2) In the court, file a copy of the notice of appeal and pay the fee for appeal, as provided by the rules of the Court.

(b) *Notice of appeal.* (1) When an appeal is taken to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, the appellant shall give notice thereof in writing to the Commissioner, which notice shall be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office, within the time specified in paragraph (d) of this section. The notice shall specify the party or parties taking the appeal and shall designate the decision or part thereof appealed from.

(2) In inter partes proceedings, the notice must be served as provided in § 2.119.

(3) The notice, if mailed to the Office, shall be addressed as follows: Box 8, Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, DC 20231.

(c) *Civil action.* (1) Any person who may appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (paragraph (a) of this section), may have remedy by civil action under section 21(b) of the Act. Such civil action must be commenced within the time specified in paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) Any applicant or registrant in an ex parte case who takes an appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit waives any right to proceed under section 21(b) of the Act.

(3) Any adverse party to an appeal taken to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit by a defeated party in an inter partes proceeding may file a notice with the Commissioner within twenty days after the filing of the defeated party's notice of appeal to the court (paragraph (b) of this section), electing to have all further proceedings conducted as provided in section 21(b) of the Act. The notice of election must be served as provided in § 2.119.

(4) A party to a proceeding before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board which commences a civil action, pursuant to section 21(b) of the Act, seeking review of a decision of the Board

should file written notice thereof in the Patent and Trademark Office, addressed to the Board, within one month after the expiration of the time for appeal or civil action, in order to avoid premature termination of the Board proceeding.

(d) *Time for appeal or civil action.* (1) The time for filing the notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (paragraph (b) of this section), or for commencing a civil action (paragraph (c) of this section), is two months from the date of the decision of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board or the Commissioner, as the case may be. If a request for rehearing or reconsideration or modification of the decision is filed within the time specified in §2.127(b), 2.129(c) or 2.144, or within any extension of time granted thereunder, the time for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action shall expire two months after action on the request. In inter partes cases, the time for filing a cross-action or a notice of a cross-appeal expires

(i) 14 days after service of the notice of appeal or the summons and complaint; or

(ii) Two months from the date of the decision of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board or the Commissioner, whichever is later.

(2) The times specified in this section in days are calendar days. The times specified herein in months are calendar months except that one day shall be added to any two-month period which includes February 28. If the last day of time specified for an appeal, or commencing a civil action falls on a Saturday, Sunday or Federal holiday in the District of Columbia, the time is extended to the next day which is neither a Saturday, Sunday nor a Federal holiday.

(3) If a party to an inter partes proceeding has taken an appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit and an adverse party has filed notice under section 21(a)(1) of the Act electing to have all further proceedings conducted under section 21(b) of the Act, the time for filing a civil action thereafter is specified in section 21(a)(1) of the Act. The time for filing a cross-action expires 14 days after service of the summons and complaint.

(e) *Extensions of time to commence judicial review.* The Commissioner may extend the time for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action (1) for good cause shown if requested in writing before the expiration of the period for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action, or (2) upon written request after the expiration of the period for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action upon a showing that the failure to act was the result of excusable neglect.

[47 FR 47382, Oct. 26, 1982, as amended at 53 FR 16414, May 9, 1988; 54 FR 29554, July 13, 1989; 54 FR 34901, Aug. 22, 1989; 58 FR 54503, Oct. 22, 1993]

PETITIONS AND ACTIONS BY THE COMMISSIONER

§2.146 Petitions to the Commissioner.

(a) Petition may be taken to the Commissioner:

(1) From any repeated or final formal requirement of the examiner in the ex parte prosecution of an application if permitted by §2.63(b);

(2) In any case for which the Act of 1946, or title 35 of the United States Code, or this part of title 37 of the Code of Federal Regulations specifies that the matter is to be determined directly or reviewed by the Commissioner;

(3) To invoke the supervisory authority of the Commissioner in appropriate circumstances;

(4) In any case not specifically defined and provided for by this part of title 37 of the Code of Federal Regulations;

(5) In an extraordinary situation, when justice requires and no other party is injured thereby, to request a suspension or waiver of any requirement of the rules not being a requirement of the Act of 1946.

(b) Questions of substance arising during the ex parte prosecution of applications, including, but not limited to, questions arising under sections 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 23 of the Act of 1946, are not considered to be appropriate subject matter for petitions to the Commissioner.

(c) Every petition to the Commissioner shall include a statement of the facts relevant to the petition, the

points to be reviewed, the action or relief that is requested, and the requisite fee (see § 2.6). Any brief in support of the petition shall be embodied in or accompany the petition. When facts are to be proved in ex parte cases (as in a petition to revive an abandoned application), the proof in the form of affidavits or declarations in accordance with § 2.20, and any exhibits, shall accompany the petition.

(d) A petition on any matter not otherwise specifically provided for shall be filed within sixty days from the date of mailing of the action from which relief is requested.

(e)(1) A petition from the denial of a request for an extension of time to file a notice of opposition shall be filed within fifteen days from the date of mailing of the denial of the request and shall be served on the attorney or other authorized representative of the applicant, if any, or on the applicant. Proof of service of the petition shall be made as provided by § 2.119(a). The applicant may file a response within fifteen days from the date of service of the petition and shall serve a copy of the response on the petitioner, with proof of service as provided by § 2.119(a). No further paper relating to the petition shall be filed.

(2) A petition from an interlocutory order of the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board shall be filed within thirty days after the date of mailing of the order from which relief is requested. Any brief in response to the petition shall be filed, with any supporting exhibits, within fifteen days from the date of service of the petition. Petitions and responses to petitions, and any papers accompanying a petition or response, under this subsection shall be served on every adverse party pursuant to § 2.119(a).

(f) An oral hearing will not be held on a petition except when considered necessary by the Commissioner.

(g) The mere filing of a petition to the Commissioner will not act as a stay in any appeal or inter partes proceeding that is pending before the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board nor stay the period for replying to an Office action in an application except when a stay is specifically requested and is granted or when §§ 2.63(b) and 2.65 are applicable to an ex parte application.

(h) Authority to act on petitions, or on any petition, may be delegated by the Commissioner.

[48 FR 23142, May 23, 1983; 48 FR 27226, June 14, 1983]

§ 2.147 [Reserved]

§ 2.148 Commissioner may suspend certain rules.

In an extraordinary situation, when justice requires and no other party is injured thereby, any requirement of the rules in this part not being a requirement of the statute may be suspended or waived by the Commissioner.

CERTIFICATE

§ 2.151 Certificate.

When the requirements of the law and of the rules have been complied with, and the Patent and Trademark Office has adjudged a mark registrable, a certificate will be issued to the effect that the applicant has complied with the law and that he is entitled to registration of his mark on the Principal Register or on the Supplemental Register, as the case may be. The certificate will state the date on which the application for registration was filed in the Patent and Trademark Office, the act under which the mark is registered, the date of issue and the number of the certificate. Attached to the certificate and forming a part thereof will be a reproduction of the mark and pertinent data from the application. A notice of the affidavit or declaration requirements of section 8(a) of the Act (§ 2.161) will be printed on the certificate.

PUBLICATION OF MARKS REGISTERED UNDER 1905 ACT

AUTHORITY: Secs. 2.153 to 2.156 also issued under sec. 12, 60 Stat. 432; 15 U.S.C. 1062.

§ 2.153 Publication requirements.

A registrant of a mark registered under the provisions of the Acts of 1881 or 1905 may at any time prior to the expiration of the period for which the registration was issued or renewed, upon the payment of the prescribed fee, file an affidavit or declaration in accordance with § 2.20 setting forth those

goods stated in the registration on which said mark is in use in commerce, specifying the nature of such commerce, and stating that the registrant claims the benefits of the Trademark Act of 1946.

[31 FR 5262, Apr. 1, 1966]

§2.154 Publication in Official Gazette.

A notice of the claim of benefits under the Act of 1946 and a reproduction of the mark will then be published in the *Official Gazette* as soon as practicable. The published mark will retain its original registration number.

§2.155 Notice of publication.

A notice of such publication of the mark and of the requirement for the affidavit or declaration specified in section 8(b) of the Act (§2.161) will be sent to the registrant.

§2.156 Not subject to opposition; subject to cancellation.

The published mark is not subject to opposition on such publication in the *Official Gazette*, but is subject to petitions to cancel as specified in §2.111 and to cancellation for failure to file the affidavit or declaration specified in §2.161.

REREGISTRATION OF MARKS REGISTERED UNDER PRIOR ACTS

§2.158 Reregistration of marks registered under Acts of 1881, 1905, and 1920.

Trademarks registered under the Act of 1881, the Act of 1905 or the Act of 1920 may be reregistered under the Act of 1946, either on the Principal Register, if eligible, or on the Supplemental Register, but a new complete application for registration must be filed complying with the rules relating thereto, and such application will be subject to examination and other proceedings in the same manner as other applications filed under the Act of 1946. See §2.26 for use of old drawing.

CANCELLATION FOR FAILURE TO FILE AFFIDAVIT OR DECLARATION DURING SIXTH YEAR

AUTHORITY: Secs. 2.161 to 2.165 also issued under sec. 8, 60 Stat. 431; 15 U.S.C. 1058.

§2.161 Cancellation for failure to file affidavit or declaration during sixth year.

Any registration under the provisions of the Act and any registration published under the provisions of section 12(c) of the Act (§2.153) shall be cancelled as to any goods or services recited in the registration at the end of six years following the date of registration or the date of such publication, unless within one year next preceding the expiration of such six years the registrant shall file in the Patent and Trademark Office an affidavit or declaration in accordance with §2.20 setting forth those goods or services recited in the registration on or in connection with which the mark is in use in commerce and attaching a specimen or facsimile showing current use of the mark, or an affidavit or declaration under §2.20 showing that its nonuse as to any goods or services recited in the registration is due to special circumstances which excuse such nonuse and is not due to any intention to abandon the mark as to those goods or services.

[54 FR 37597, Sept. 11, 1989]

§2.162 Requirements for affidavit or declaration during sixth year.

The affidavit or declaration required by §2.161 must:

(a) Be executed by the registrant after expiration of the five-year period following the date of registration or of publication under section 12(c) of the Act;

(b) Be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office before the expiration of the sixth year following the date of registration or of publication under section 12(c) of the Act;

(c) Identify the certificate of registration by the registration number and date of registration;

(d) Include the required fee for each class to which the affidavit or declaration pertains in the registration. If no fee, or a fee insufficient to cover at least one class, is filed before the expiration of the sixth year following the date of registration or of publication under Section 12(c) of the Act, the affidavit or declaration will not be refused if the required fee(s) (See §2.6) are filed in the Patent and Trademark Office

within the time limit set forth in the notification of this defect by the Office. If insufficient fees are included to cover all classes in the registration, the particular class or classes to which the affidavit or declaration pertains should be specified.

(e) State that the registered mark is in use in commerce, list the goods or services recited in the registration on or in connection with which the mark is in use in commerce, and specify the nature of such commerce (except under paragraph (f) of this section). The statement must be accompanied by a specimen or facsimile, for each class of goods or services, showing current use of the mark. If the specimen or facsimile is found to be deficient, a substitute specimen or facsimile may be submitted and considered even though filed after the sixth year has expired, provided it is supported by an affidavit or declaration pursuant to § 2.20 verifying that the specimen or facsimile was in use in commerce prior to the expiration of the sixth year;

(f) If the registered mark is not in use in commerce on or in connection with the goods or services recited in the registration, recite facts to show that nonuse as to those goods or services is due to special circumstances which excuse such nonuse and is not due to any intention to abandon the mark as to those goods or services. If the facts recited are found insufficient, further evidence or explanation may be submitted and considered even though filed after the sixth year has expired; and

(g) Contain the statement of use in commerce or statement as to nonuse and appropriate specimen or facsimile, as required in paragraphs (e) and (f) of this section, for each class to which the affidavit or declaration pertains in this registration.

(Secs. 8 and 9, Pub. L. 97–247 (96 Stat. 320); 35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[41 FR 761, Jan. 5, 1976, as amended at 47 FR 41282, Sept. 17, 1982; 48 FR 3977, Jan. 28, 1983; 54 FR 37597, Sept. 11, 1989]

§ 2.163 Notice to registrant.

If no affidavit or declaration is filed within a reasonable time prior to expiration of the sixth year, the registrant may be notified that the registration will be cancelled by the Commissioner at the end of such sixth year unless the owner files in the Patent and Trademark Office the affidavit or declaration of use or excusable nonuse required by section 8. Failure to notify the registrant does not, however, relieve the registrant of the responsibility of filing the affidavit or declaration within the period required by statute.

§ 2.164 Acknowledgment of receipt of affidavit or declaration.

The registrant will be notified by the Examiner of Trademarks of the receipt of the affidavit or declaration and, if satisfactory, of its acceptance.

§ 2.165 Reconsideration of affidavit or declaration.

(a)(1) If the affidavit or declaration filed pursuant to § 2.162 is insufficient or defective, the affidavit or declaration will be refused and the registrant will be notified of the reason. Reconsideration of the refusal may be requested within six months from the date of the mailing of the action. The request for reconsideration must state the grounds for the request. A supplemental or substitute affidavit or declaration required by section 8 of the Act of 1946 cannot be considered unless it is filed before the expiration of six years from the date of the registration or from the date of publication under section 12(c) of the Act.

(2) A request for reconsideration shall be a condition precedent to a petition to the Commissioner to review the refusal of the affidavit or declaration unless the first action refusing the affidavit or declaration directs the registrant to petition the Commissioner for relief, in which event the petition must be filed within six months from the date of mailing of the action.

(b) If the refusal of the affidavit or declaration is adhered to, the registrant may petition the Commissioner to review the action under § 2.146(a)(2). The petition to the Commissioner requesting review of the action adhering to the refusal of the affidavit or declaration must be filed within six months from the date of mailing of the action which denied reconsideration.

(c) The decision of the Commissioner on the petition will constitute the final

action of the Patent and Trademark Office. If there is no petition to the Commissoner, the Commissioner will notify the registrant of the refusal of the affidavit or declaration after the expiration of six years from the date of registration or from the date of publication under section 12(c) of the Act of 1946, and such notice will constitute the final action of the Office.

(d) A petition to the Commissioner for review of the action shall be a condition precedent to an appeal to or action for review by any court.

[48 FR 23143, May 23, 1983, as amended at 58 FR 54503, Oct. 22, 1993; 61 FR 56448, Nov. 1, 1996]

§2.166 Time of cancellation.

If no affidavit or declaration is filed within the sixth year following registration or publication under section 12(c) of the Act, the registration will be cancelled forthwith by the Commissioner. If the affidavit or declaration is filed but is refused, cancellation of the registration will be withheld pending further proceedings.

AFFIDAVIT OR DECLARATION UNDER SECTION 15

§2.167 Affidavit or declaration under section 15.

The affidavit or declaration in accordance with §2.20 provided by section 15 of the Act for acquiring incontestability for a mark registered on the Principal Register or a mark registered under the Act of 1881 or 1905 and published under section 12(c) of the Act (§2.153) must:

(a) Be signed by the registrant;

(b) Identify the certificate of registration by the certificate number and date of registration;

(c) Recite the goods or services stated in the registration on or in connection with which the mark has been in continuous use in commerce for a period of five years subsequent to the date of registration or date of publication under section 12(c) of the Act, and is still in use in commerce, specifying the nature of such commerce;

(d) Specify that there has been no final decision adverse to registrant's claim of ownership of such mark for such goods or services, or to registrant's right to register the same or to keep the same on the register;

(e) Specify that there is no proceeding involving said rights pending in the Patent and Trademark Office or in a court and not finally disposed of;

(f) Be filed within one year after the expiration of any five-year period of continuous use following registration or publication under section 12(c).

The registrant will be notified of the receipt of the affidavit or declaration.

(g) Include the required fee for each class to which the affidavit or declaration pertains in the registration. If no fee, or a fee insufficient to cover at least one class, is filed at an appropriate time, the affidavit or declaration will not be refused if the required fee(s) (see §2.6) are filed in the Patent and Trademark Office within the time limit set forth in the notification of this defect by the Office. If insufficient fees are included to cover all classes in the registration, the particular class or classes to which the affidavit or declaration pertains should be specified.

(Sec. 15, 60 Stat. 433; 15 U.S.C. 1065; 35 U.S.C. 6; 15 U.S.C. 1113, 1123)

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 47 FR 41282, Sept. 17, 1982]

§2.168 Combined with other affidavits or declarations.

(a) The affidavit or declaration filed under section 15 of the Act may also be used as the affidavit or declaration required by section 8, provided it also complies with the requirements and is filed within the time limit specified in §§2.161 and 2.162.

(b) In appropriate circumstances the affidavit or declaration filed under section 15 of the Act may be combined with the affidavit or declaration required for renewal of a registration (see §2.183).

CORRECTION, DISCLAIMER, SURRENDER, ETC.

§2.171 New certificate on change of ownership.

In case of change of ownership of a registered mark, upon request of the assignee, a new certificate of registration may be issued in the name of the assignee for the unexpired part of the original period. The assignment must

be recorded in the Patent and Trademark Office, and the request for the new certificate must be signed by the assignee and accompanied by the required fee. The original certificate of registration, if available, must also be submitted.

(Sec. 7, 60 Stat. 430 as amended; 15 U.S.C. 1057)

[31 FR 5262, Apr. 1, 1966]

§ 2.172 Surrender for cancellation.

Upon application by the registrant, the Commissioner may permit any registration to be surrendered for cancellation. Application for such action must be signed by the registrant and must be accompanied by the original certificate of registration, if not lost or destroyed. When there is more than one class in a registration, one or more entire class but less than the total number of classes may be surrendered as to the specified class or classes. Deletion of less than all of the goods or services in a single class constitutes amendment of registration as to that class (see § 2.173).

(Sec. 7, 60 Stat. 430 as amended; 15 U.S.C. 1057)

[41 FR 761, Jan. 5, 1976]

§ 2.173 Amendment and disclaimer in part.

(a) Upon application by the registrant, the Commissioner may permit any registration to be amended or any registered mark to be disclaimed in part. Application for such action must specify the amendment or disclaimer and be signed by the registrant and verified or include a declaration in accordance with § 2.20, and must be accompanied by the required fee. If the amendment involves a change in the mark, new specimens showing the mark as used in connection with the goods or services, and a new drawing of the amended mark must be submitted. The certificate of registration or, if said certificate is lost or destroyed, a certified copy thereof, must also be submitted in order that the Commissioner may make appropriate entry thereon and in the records of the Office. The registration when so amended must still contain registrable matter and the mark as amended must be registrable as a whole, and such amendment or disclaimer must not involve such changes in the registration as to alter materially the character of the mark.

(b) No amendment in the identification of goods or services in a registration will be permitted except to restrict the identification or otherwise to change it in ways that would not require republication of the mark. No amendment seeking the elimination of a disclaimer will be permitted.

(c) A printed copy of the amendment or disclaimer shall be attached to each printed copy of the registration.

(Sec. 7, 60 Stat. 430, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 1057)

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 31 FR 5262, Apr. 1, 1966; 48 FR 23143, May 23, 1983]

§ 2.174 Correction of Office mistake.

Whenever a material mistake in a registration, incurred through the fault of the Patent and Trademark Office, is clearly disclosed by the records of the Office, a certificate stating the fact and nature of such mistake, signed by the Commissioner or by an employee designated by the Commissioner and sealed with the seal of the Patent and Trademark Office, shall be issued without charge and recorded, and a printed copy thereof shall be attached to each printed copy of the registration certificate. Such corrected certificate shall thereafter have the same effect as if the same had been originally issued in such corrected form, or in the discretion of the Commissioner a new certificate of registration may be issued without charge. The certificate of registration or, if said certificate is lost or destroyed, a certified copy thereof, must be submitted in order that the Commissioner may make appropriate entry thereon.

(Sec. 7, 60 Stat. 430, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 1057)

§ 2.175 Correction of mistake by registrant.

(a) Whenever a mistake has been made in a registration and a showing has been made that such mistake occurred in good faith through the fault of the applicant, the Commissioner

may issue a certificate of correction, or in his discretion, a new certificate upon the payment of the required fee, provided that the correction does not involve such changes in the registration as to require republication of the mark.

(b) Application for such action must specify the mistake for which correction is sought and the manner in which it arose, show that it occurred in good faith, be signed by the applicant and verified or include a declaration in accordance with §2.20, and be accompanied by the required fee. The certificate of registration or, if said certificate is lost or destroyed, a certified copy thereof, must also be submitted in order that the Commissioner may make appropriate entry thereon.

(c) A printed copy of the certificate of correction shall be attached to each printed copy of the registration.

(Sec. 7, 60 Stat. 430, as amended; 15 U.S.C. 1057)

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 31 FR 5262, Apr. 1, 1966]

§2.176 Consideration of above matters.

The matters in §§2.171 to 2.175 will be considered in the first instance by the Examiner of Trademarks. If the action of the Examiner of Trademarks is adverse, registrant may request the Commissioner to review the action under §2.146. If response to an adverse action of the Examiner is not made by the registrant within six months, the matter will be considered abandoned.

TERM AND RENEWAL

AUTHORITY: Secs. 2.181 to 2.184 also issued under sec. 9, 60 Stat. 431; 15 U.S.C. 1059.

§2.181 Term of original registrations and renewals.

(a)(1) Registrations issued or renewed under the Act, prior to November 16, 1989, whether on the Principal Register or on the Supplemental Register, remain in force for twenty years from their date of issue or expiration, and may be renewed for periods of ten years from the expiring period unless previously cancelled or surrendered.

(2) Registrations issued or renewed under the Act on or after November 16, 1989, whether on the Principal Register or on the Supplemental Register, remain in force for ten years from their date of issue or expiration, and may be renewed for periods of ten years from the expiring period unless previously cancelled or surrendered.

(b) Registrations issued under the Acts of 1905 and 1881 remain in force for their unexpired terms and may be renewed in the same manner as registrations under the Act of 1946.

(c) Registrations issued under the Act of 1920 cannot be renewed unless renewal is required to support foreign registrations and in such case may be renewed on the Supplemental Register in the same manner as registrations under the Act of 1946.

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 54 FR 37597, Sept. 11, 1989]

§2.182 Period within which application for renewal must be filed.

An application for renewal may be filed by the registrant at any time within six months before the expiration of the period for which the certificate of registration was issued or renewed, or it may be filed within three months after such expiration on payment of the additional fee required.

§2.183 Requirements of application for renewal.

(a) The application for renewal must include a statement which is verified or which includes a declaration in accordance with §2.20 by the registrant setting forth the goods or services recited in each class for which renewal is sought in the registration on or in connection with which the mark is still in use in commerce, specifying the nature of such commerce (except under paragraph (c) of this section). This statement must be executed not more than six months before the expiration of the registration and must:

(1) Be accompanied by a specimen or facsimile specimen for each class for which renewal is sought in the registration showing current use of the mark.

(2) Include the required fee for each class for which renewal is sought in the registration, and an additional fee for each class in the case of a delayed application for renewal. If the application for renewal includes insufficient fees to

cover all classes in the registration, the particular class or classes for which renewal is sought should be specified.

(b) The declaration or verified statement, specimen or facsimile specimen and the fee for each class for which renewal is sought in the registration must be filed within the period prescribed for applying for renewal. If defective or insufficient, they cannot be completed after the period for applying for renewal has passed; if completed after the initial six month period has expired but before the expiration of the three month delay period, the application can be considered only as a delayed application for renewal.

(c) If the mark is not in use in commerce at the time of filing of the declaration or verified statement as to any class for which renewal is sought, facts must be recited to show that nonuse is due to special circumstances which excuse such nonuse and is not due to any intention to abandon the mark. There must be a recitation of facts as to nonuse for each class for which renewal is sought or it must be clear that the facts recited apply to each class sought to be renewed. If the facts recited require amplification, or explanation, in order to show excusable nonuse, further evidence may be submitted and considered even though filed after the period for applying for renewal has passed.

(d) If the applicant is not domiciled in the United States, the application for renewal must include the designation of some person resident in the United States on whom may be served notices or process in proceedings affecting the mark.

(e) If the mark is registered under the Act of 1920, the application for renewal must include a showing which is verified or which includes a declaration in accordance with § 2.20 that renewal is required to support foreign registrations.

[30 FR 13193, Oct. 16, 1965, as amended at 31 FR 5262, Apr. 1, 1966; 41 FR 761, Jan. 5, 1976]

§ 2.184 Refusal of renewal.

(a) If the application for renewal is incomplete or defective, the renewal will be refused. The application may be completed or amended in response to a refusal, subject to the provisions of § 2.183. If a response to a refusal of renewal is not filed within six months from the date of mailing of the action, the application for renewal will be considered abandoned. A request to reconsider a refusal of renewal shall be a condition precedent to a petition to the Commissioner to review the refusal of renewal.

(b) If the refusal of renewal is adhered to, the registrant may petition the Commissioner to review the action under § 2.146(a)(2). The petition to the Commissioner requesting review of the action adhering to the refusal of the renewal must be filed within six months from the date of mailing of the action which adhered to the refusal. If a timely petition to the Commissioner is not filed, the application for renewal will be considered abandoned.

(c) The decision of the Commissioner on the petition will constitute the final action of the Patent and Trademark Office.

(d) A petition to the Commissioner for review of the action shall be a condition precedent to an appeal to or action for review by any court.

[48 FR 23143, May 23, 1983]

§ 2.185—2.187 [Reserved]

PART 3—ASSIGNMENT, RECORDING AND RIGHTS OF ASSIGNEE

EDITORIAL NOTE: Part 3 pertaining to both patents and trademarks is placed following part 1. It appears on page 178 of this volume.

PART 4 [RESERVED]

PART 5—SECRECY OF CERTAIN INVENTIONS AND LICENSES TO EXPORT AND FILE APPLICATIONS IN FOREIGN COUNTRIES

EDITORIAL NOTE: Part 5 is placed in a separate grouping of parts pertaining to patents. It appears on page 182 of this volume.

PART 6—CLASSIFICATION OF GOODS AND SERVICES UNDER THE TRADEMARK ACT

Sec.

6.1 International schedule of classes of goods and services.

6.2 Prior U.S. schedule of classes of goods and services.
6.3 Schedule for certification marks.
6.4 Schedule for collective membership marks.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 30, 41, 60 Stat. 436, 440; 15 U.S.C. 1112, 1123.

§6.1 International schedule of classes of goods and services.

GOODS

1. Chemical products used in industry, science, photography, agriculture, horticulture, forestry; artificial and synthetic resins; plastics in the form of powders, liquids or pastes, for industrial use; manures (natural and artificial); fire extinguishing compositions; tempering substances and chemical preparations for soldering; chemical substances for preserving foodstuffs; tanning substances; adhesive substances used in industry.

2. Paints, varnishes, lacquers; preservatives against rust and against deterioration of wood; colouring matters, dyestuffs; mordants; natural resins; metals in foil and powder form for painters and decorators.

3. Bleaching preparations and other substances for laundry use; cleaning, polishing, scouring and abrasive preparations; soaps; perfumery, essential oils, cosmetics, hair lotions; dentifrices.

4. Industrial oils and greases (other than oils and fats and essential oils); lubricants; dust laying and absorbing compositions; fuels (including motor spirit) and illuminants; candles, tapers, night lights and wicks.

5. Pharmaceutical, veterinary, and sanitary substances; infants' and invalids' foods; plasters, material for bandaging; material for stopping teeth, dental wax, disinfectants; preparations for killing weeds and destroying vermin.

6. Unwrought and partly wrought common metals and their alloys; anchors, anvils, bells, rolled and cast building materials; rails and other metallic materials for railway tracks; chains (except driving chains for vehicles); cables and wires (nonelectric); locksmiths' work; metallic pipes and tubes; safes and cash boxes; steel balls; horseshoes; nails and screws; other goods in nonprecious metal not included in other classes; ores.

7. Machines and machine tools; motors (except for land vehicles); machine couplings and belting (except for land vehicles); large size agricultural implements; incubators.

8. Hand tools and instruments; cutlery, forks, and spoons; side arms.

9. Scientific, nautical, surveying and electrical apparatus and instruments (including wireless), photographic, cinematographic, optical, weighing, measuring, signalling, checking (supervision), life-saving and teaching apparatus and instruments; coin or counterfreed apparatus; talking machines; cash registers; calculating machines; fire extinguishing apparatus.

10. Surgical, medical, dental, and veterinary instruments and apparatus (including artificial limbs, eyes, and teeth).

11. Installations for lighting, heating, steam generating, cooking, refrigerating, drying, ventilating, water supply, and sanitary purposes.

12. Vehicles; apparatus for locomotion by land, air, or water.

13. Firearms; ammunition and projectiles; explosive substances; fireworks.

14. Precious metals and their alloys and goods in precious metals or coated therewith (except cutlery, forks and spoons); jewelry, precious stones, horological and other chronometric instruments.

15. Musical instruments (other than talking machines and wireless apparatus).

16. Paper and paper articles, cardboard and cardboard articles; printed matter, newspaper and periodicals, books; bookbinding material; photographs; stationery, adhesive materials (stationery); artists' materials; paint brushes; typewriters and office requisites (other than furniture); instructional and teaching material (other than apparatus); playing cards; printers' type and cliches (stereotype).

17. Gutta percha, india rubber, balata and substitutes, articles made from these substances and not included in other classes; plastics in the form of sheets, blocks and rods, being for use in manufacture; materials for packing, stopping or insulating; asbestos, mica and their products; hose pipes (nonmetallic).

18. Leather and imitations of leather, and articles made from these materials and not included in other classes; skins, hides; trunks and travelling bags; umbrellas, parasols and walking sticks; whips, harness and saddlery.

19. Building materials, natural and artificial stone, cement, lime, mortar, plaster and gravel; pipes of earthenware or cement; roadmaking materials; asphalt, pitch and bitumen; portable buildings; stone monuments; chimney pots.

20. Furniture, mirrors, picture frames; articles (not included in other classes) of wood, cork, reeds, cane, wicker, horn, bone, ivory, whalebone, shell, amber, mother-of-pearl, meerschaum, celluloid, substitutes for all these materials, or of plastics.

21. Small domestic utensils and containers (not of precious metals, or coated therewith); combs and sponges; brushes (other than paint brushes); brushmaking materials; instruments and material for cleaning purposes, steel wool; unworked or semi-worked glass (excluding glass used in building);

glassware, procelain and earthenware, not included in other classes.

22. Ropes, string, nets, tents, awnings, tarpaulins, sails, sacks; padding and stuffing materials (hair, kapok, feathers, seaweed, etc.); raw fibrous textile materials.

23. Yarns, threads.

24. Tissues (piece goods); bed and table covers; textile articles not included in other classes.

25. Clothing, including boots, shoes and slippers.

26. Lace and embroidery, ribands and braid; buttons, press buttons, hooks and eyes, pins and needles; artificial flowers.

27. Carpets, rugs, mats and matting; linoleums and other materials for covering existing floors; wall hangings (nontextile).

28. Games and playthings; gymnastic and sporting articles (except clothing); ornaments and decorations for Christmas trees.

29. Meats, fish, poultry and game; meat extracts; preserved, dried and cooked fruits and vegetables; jellies, jams; eggs, milk and other dairy products; edible oils and fats; preserves, pickles.

30. Coffee, tea, cocoa, sugar, rice, tapioca, sago, coffee substitutes; flour, and preparations made from cereals; bread, biscuits, cakes, pastry and confectionary, ices; honey, treacle; yeast, baking powder; salt, mustard, pepper, vinegar, sauces, spices; ice.

31. Agricultural, horticultural and forestry products and grains not included in other classes; living animals; fresh fruits and vegetables; seeds; live plants and flowers; foodstuffs for animals, malt.

32. Beer, ale and porter; mineral and aerated waters and other nonalcoholic drinks; syrups and other preparations for making beverages.

33. Wines, spirits and liqueurs.

34. Tobacco, raw or manufactured; smokers' articles; matches.

SERVICES

35. Advertising and business.
36. Insurance and financial.
37. Construction and repair.
38. Communication.
39. Transportation and storage.
40. Material treatment.
41. Education and entertainment.
42. Miscellaneous.

[38 FR 14681, June 4, 1973]

§ 6.2 Prior U.S. schedule of classes of goods and services.

Class	Title
	GOODS
1	Raw or partly prepared materials.
2	Receptacles.
3	Baggage, animal equipments, portfolios, and pocket books.
4	Abrasives and polishing materials.
5	Adhesives.
6	Chemicals and chemical compositions.
7	Cordage.
8	Smokers' articles, not including tobacco products.
9	Explosives, firearms, equipments, and projectiles.
10	Fertilizers.
11	Inks and inking materials.
12	Construction materials.
13	Hardware and plumbing and steamfitting supplies.
14	Metals and metal castings and forgings.
15	Oils and greases.
16	Protective and decorative coatings.
17	Tobacco products.
18	Medicines and pharmaceutical preparations.
19	Vehicles.
20	Linoleum and oiled cloth.
21	Electrical apparatus, machines, and supplies.
22	Games, toys, and sporting goods.
23	Cutlery, machinery, and tools, and parts thereof.
24	Laundry appliances and machines.
25	Locks and safes.
26	Measuring and scientific appliances.
27	Horological instruments.
28	Jewelry and precious-metal ware.
29	Brooms, brushes, and dusters.
30	Crockery, earthenware, and porcelain.
31	Filters and refrigerators.
32	Furniture and upholstery.
33	Glassware.
34	Heating, lighting, and ventilating apparatus.
35	Belting, hose, machinery packing, and nonmetallic tires.
36	Musical instruments and supplies.
37	Paper and stationery.
38	Prints and publications.
39	Clothing.
40	Fancy goods, furnishings, and notions.
41	Canes, parasols, and umbrellas.
42	Knitted, netted, and textile fabrics, and substitutes therefor.
43	Thread and yarn.
44	Dental, medical, and surgical appliances.
45	Soft drinks and carbonated waters.
46	Foods and ingredients of foods.
47	Wines.
48	Malt beverages and liquors.
49	Distilled alcoholic liquors.
50	Merchandise not otherwise classified.
51	Cosmetics and toilet preparations.
52	Detergents and soaps.
	SERVICES
100	Miscellaneous.
101	Advertising and business.
102	Insurance and financial.
103	Construction and repair.
104	Communication.
105	Transportation and storage.
106	Material treatment.
107	Education and entertainment.

[24 FR 10383, Dec. 22, 1959. Redesignated at 38 FR 14681, June 4, 1973]

§ 6.3 Schedule for certification marks.

In the case of certification marks, all goods and services are classified in two classes as follows:

A. Goods.

B. Services.

[24 FR 10383, Dec. 22, 1959. Redesignated at 38 FR 14681, June 4, 1973]

§6.4 Schedule for collective membership marks.

All collective membership marks are classified as follows:

Class	Title
200	Collective Membership.

[24 FR 10383, Dec. 22, 1959. Redesignated at 38 FR 14681, June 4, 1973]

PART 7—REGISTER OF GOVERNMENT INTERESTS IN PATENTS

EDITORIAL NOTE: Part 7 is placed in a separate grouping of parts pertaining to patents. It appears on page 190 of this volume.

INDEX II—RULES RELATING TO TRADEMARKS

EDITORIAL NOTE: This listing is provided for information purposes only. It is compiled and kept up-to-date by the Department of Commerce.

Section

A

Abandonment of application or mark:
- Drawing of abandoned application used in new application 2.26
- During inter partes proceeding 2.135
- Express abandonment 2.68
- For failure to respond or to respond completely to official action ..... 2.65(a)
- For failure to timely file a statement of use ..... 2.65(c)
- Opportunity to explain incomplete response ..... 2.65(b)
- Petition to Commissioner may avoid abandonment ..... 2.63(b), 2.65(a)
- Revival of abandoned application 2.66

Acceptance of affidavit under sec. 8 ..... 2.164

Access:
- To applications, and all proceedings relating thereto, after publication or registration ..... 2.27(d)
- To applications prior to publication ..... 2.27(b)
- To assignment records 1.12
- To decisions of Commissioner and the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ..... 2.27(c)
- To pending trademark application index ..... 2.27(a)

Acknowledgment of receipt of affidavit or declaration:
- Filed under sec. 8 ..... 2.164
- Filed under sec. 15 ..... 2.167

Act, The, defined ..... 2.2(a)

Action by assignee of record or owner 3.71, 3.73

Action by Examiner on application 2.61

Adding party to an interference 2.98

Address for correspondence with Patent and Trademark Office 1.1

Admissions, request for (discovery):
- In general ..... 2.120(h)
- Motion to determine sufficiency of response ..... 2.120(h)
- Use of answer ..... 2.120(j)
- When to file copy of request with Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ..... 2.120(j)(8)

Advertising by attorneys and others, restricted 10.32

Affidavit or declaration:
- Claiming benefits of Act of 1946 under sec. 12(c) 2.153
- Combined secs. 8 and 15 ..... 2.168(a)
- Combined secs. 9 and 15 ..... 2.168(b)
- For incontestability under sec. 15 ..... 2.167
- For renewal application under sec. 9 ..... 2.183
- Of use in commerce or excusable nonuse under sec. 8 ..... 2.162
- Reconsideration of, under sec. 8 ..... 2.165
- To avoid cancellation of registration under sec. 8 ..... 2.162

Agent. *See* Attorneys and other representatives.

Allegations in application or registration not evidence on behalf of applicant or registrant in inter partes proceeding ..... 2.122(b)(2)
Allowance, notice of ..... 2.81(b), 2.88
Amendment of application:
After final action ..... 2.64(b)
After publication ..... 2.84(b)
Between notice of allowance and statement of use 2.77
Description or drawing of mark 2.72
Form of amendment 2.74
In general 2.71–2.77
Involved in inter partes proceedings 2.133
To allege use 2.76
To change to different register 2.75
To correct informalities 2.71
To seek concurrent use registration 2.73
Use application under sec. 1(a) may not be amended to intent-to-use application under sec. 1(b) ..... 2.33(d)
Amendment of pleadings in inter partes proceedings:
Cancellation 2.115
Opposition 2.107
Amendment of registration:
During inter partes proceedings 2.133
Requirements for, in general 2.173
Amendment of rules 2.189
Amendment to allege use 2.76
Amendments to description or drawing of mark after filing ..... 2.72(c)
Fee for filing ..... 2.6(a)(2)
Filed during final action response period ..... 2.64(c)
Minimum requirements for filing ..... 2.76(e)
Requirements for ..... 2.76(b)
Time for filing ..... 2.76(a)
Withdrawal of ..... 2.76(h)
Answer to pleadings in opposition and cancellation proceedings 2.106, 2.114
Contents of answer ..... 2.106(b)(1), 2.114(b)(1)
Corresponds to answer in court proceeding ..... 2.116(c)
Counterclaim ..... 2.106(b)(2), 2.114(b)(2)
Failure to timely answer ..... 2.106(a), 2.114(a)
Answer to notice instituting concurrent use proceeding ..... 2.99(d)
Failure to answer ..... 2.99(d)(3)
Who needs to answer and when ..... 2.99(d)(2)
Appeal to Court and civil action 2.145
Appeal to Court from decision of Commissioner 2.145
Appeal to Court from decision of Trademark Trial and Appeal Board 2.145
Appeal to U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit ..... 2.145(a)
Civil action ..... 2.145(c)
Notice of election by appellee to proceed by civil action after appeal to U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal circuit ..... 2.145(c)(3)
Time for appeal or civil action ..... 2.145(d)
Appeal to Trademark Trial and Appeal Board:
Appropriate response to final refusal or second refusal on the same grounds ..... 2.64(a), 2.141
Briefs on appeal ..... 2.142(b)
Compliance with requirements not on appeal ..... 2.142(c)
Failure of appellant to file brief ..... 2.142(b)
In multiple class applications 2.141
Introduction of new evidence after filing of appeal ..... 2.142(d)
Oral hearing on appeal ..... 2.142(e)

Index II

Reconsideration of decision on appeal 2.144
Remand to Examiner re new issue prior to decision ..... 2.142(f)
Reopening of examination of application after decision on appeal ..... 2.142(g)
Time and manner of filing appeal ..... 2.142(a)
Applicant:
Foreign 2.24, 2.39
May be represented by an attorney 2.11
Name of ..... 2.21, 2.32(c)
Signature and oath or declaration ..... 2.21(a)(6), 2.32
Application for registration 2.21–2.47
Access to pending applications 2.27
Authorization for representation; U.S. representative 2.37
Basis for filing ..... 2.21(a)(5)
Certification mark 2.45
Collective mark 2.44
Concurrent use 2.42, 2.73, 2.99
Conflicting marks, co-pending applications for 2.83
Description of mark 2.35
Different classes may be combined 2.86
Different goods or services may be combined 2.86
Dividing of applications 2.87
Drawing required 2.51
Filing-date requirements 2.21
Form of application 2.31–2.47
Must be in English 2.31
Must be signed ..... 2.21(a)(6)
Principal Register 2.46
Priority claim based on foreign application 2.39
Prior registrations should be identified 2.36
Requirements for drawings 2.52
Requirements for written application 2.33
Service mark 2.43
Specimens filed with 2.56–2.59
Supplemental Register 2.47
Assignee:
Certificate of registration may be issued to 3.85
New certificate of registration may be issued to 2.171
Not domiciled in U.S 3.61
Right to take action when assignment is recorded or proof of assignment has been submitted 3.71, 3.73
Assignment of registered marks or marks subject to pending applications 3.1–3.85
Effect of recording 3.54
Recording in Patent and Trademark Office of assignments or other instruments relating to such marks 3.11
Records open to public inspection 1.12
Requirements for recording 3.24–3.31, 3.41
Assignment of trial dates in inter partes proceedings ..... 2.120(a), 2.121
After issue is joined ..... 2.121(a)(2)
Consolidated proceedings ..... 2.121(b)(2)
Counterclaim ..... 2.121(b)(2)
Discovery period ..... 2.120(a)
Rescheduling ..... 2.121(a)(1), (c)
Stipulation to extend ..... 2.121(d)
Testimony periods 2.121
Attorney conflict of interest ..... 2.61(c), 10.61–10.68
Attorneys and other representatives 2.11, 2.17–2.19, 10.1–10.170
Authentication of copies of registrations and records ..... 1.13(b)

B

Basis for filing an application ..... 2.21(a)(5)
Bona fide intention to use ..... 2.21(a)(5)(ii)–(iv), 2.33(b)(2), 2.89(a)(3), (b)(3), (d)(1)
Briefs:
  At final hearing in inter partes case 2.128
  Failure of appellant to file brief on appeal ..... 2.142(b)
  Failure of inter partes plaintiff to file brief at final hearing ..... 2.128(a)(3)
  Failure to file brief on inter partes motion ..... 2.127(a)
  On appeal to Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ..... 2.142(b)
  On motions in inter partes cases 2.127
  On petitions to Commissioner ..... 2.146(c), (e)(2)
Burden of proof in an interference 2.96
Business with Patent and Trademark Office to be conducted with decorum and courtesy 1.3
Business with Patent and Trademark Office transacted in writing 1.2

C

Cancellation of registrations:
  By cancellation proceeding—pleadings and procedure ..... 2.111 et seq. (*See also* Petition for Cancellation)
  By registrant 2.134, 2.172
  For failure to file affidavit or declaration of use under sec. 8 ..... 2.161–2.166
  During cancellation proceeding ..... 2.134(b)
Cases not specifically defined in rules, petition to the Commissioner ..... 2.146(a)(4)
Certificate of correction of registration 2.174, 2.175
Certificate of mailing by first class mail 1.8
Certificate of registration:
  As evidence in inter partes proceeding ..... 2.122 (b), (d), (e)
  Contents 2.151
  Issuance of new certificate to assignee 2.171
  When and how issued 2.81, 2.82, 2.151
Certificate of transmission 1.8
Certification mark 2.45
Certified copies of registrations and records 1.13
Citizenship of applicant 2.33
Civil action:
  From decision of Commissioner ..... 2.145(c)
  From decision of Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ..... 2.145(c)(3)
  Notice of election by appellee to proceed by civil action after appeal to U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit ..... 2.145(c)(3)
  Notice of election to commerce civil action to Trademark Trial and Appeal
  Board after decision ..... 2.145(c)(4)
  Suspension of action in application pending outcome 2.67
  Suspension of inter partes proceedings pending outcome 2.117
  Time for commencing civil action from decision of Commissioner or Trademark
  Trial and Appeal Board ..... 2.145(d)
  Waiver of right to proceed by civil action in ex parte case ..... 2.145(c)(2)
Civil procedure, Federal rules of, applied to inter partes proceedings ..... 2.116(a)
Claim of benefits of Act of 1946 for marks registered under prior Acts 2.153–2.156
Classification of goods and serves 2.85
  Application limited to single class ..... 2.86(a)
  Combined applications ..... 2.86(b)

Index II

Schedules of classes 6.1–6.4
Code of Professional Responsibility 10.20–10.112
Collective mark 2.44
Color of authority to sign verification or declaration ..... 2.71(c)
Combined applications 2.86, 2.87
Intent-to-use applications under sec. 1(b) and use applications under sec. 1(a) may not be combined ..... 2.33(d), 2.86(c)
Commencement of cancellation ..... 2.111(a)
Commencement of opposition ..... 2.101(a)
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks:
May suspend certain rules ..... 2.146(a)(5), 2.148
Petition to 2.146
Communication with attorney or other representative 2.18
Complaints against Patent and Trademark Office employees 1.3
Compliance of applicant with other laws 2.69
Compliance with discovery order of Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ..... 2.120(g)
Compulsory counterclaim ..... 2.106(b)(2)(i), 2.114(b)(2)(i)
Concurrent use registration 2.42, 2.99
Amendment to seek 2.73
Answer to notice of concurrent use proceeding, by whom and when ..... 2.99(d)
Application requirements 2.42
Based upon court determination ..... 2.99(f)
Burden of proving entitlement to ..... 2.99(e)
Consideration and determination by Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ..... 2.99(h)
Examination by Examiner ..... 2.99(a), (b)
Intent-to-use applications, when subject to ..... 2.73(b).2.99(g)
Mark must first be published for opposition purposes ..... 2.99(c)
Notice of concurrent use proceeding ..... 2.99(c), (d)
Registrations and applications to register on Supplemental Register and registrations under Act of 1920 not subject to ..... 2.99(g)
Conduct of practitioners 10.20–10.170
Conference, pre-trial, in inter partes cases ..... 2.120(i)(2)
Conference telephone. in inter partes cases ..... 2.120(i)(1)
Conflict of interest, attorney ..... 2.61(c), 10.61–10.68
Conflicting marks, co-pending applications for 2.83, 2.91
Consent of applicant or authorized representative to withdrawal of opposition after answer ..... 2.106(c)
Consent of opposer to abandonment of application or mark 2.135
Consent of petitioner to surrender or voluntary cancellation of registration 2.134
Consent of registrant or authorized representative to withdrawal of cancellation after answer ..... 2.114(c)
Consolidated inter partes proceedings:
Times for filing briefs ..... 2.128(a)(2)
Times for taking testimony ..... 2.121(b)(2)
Constructive use, establishment of in inter partes proceedings ..... 2.129(d),
Contested or inter partes cases ..... 2.116 et seq.
Copies of registrations and records 1.13, 2.6
Correction of informalities by amendment 2.71
Correction of mistake in certificate of registration:
Mistake by Patent and Trademark Office 2.174
Mistake by registrant 2.175
Correspondence held with applicant, attorney or other representative 2.18
Counterclaim in opposition and cancellation ..... 2.106(b)(2)(i), 2.114(b)(2)(i)

Coupons, for certain payments 1.24
Court determination as basis for concurrent use registration ..... 2.99(f)
Courtesy and decorum in dealing with Patent and Trademark Office 1.3
Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, U.S., appeal to 2.145

D

Date of first use and first use in commerce:
  Amendment of ..... 2.71(b)
  Required in amendment to allege use ..... 2.76(b)(1), (c)
  Required in statement of use ..... 2.88(b)(1), (c)
  Required in use applications under sec. l(a) ..... 2.33(a)(1)(vii), (a)(2)
Date of use allegation in application or registration not evidence on behalf of applicant or registrant in inter partes case ..... 2.122(b)(2)
Declaration in lieu of oath or verification 2.20
Declaration of interference 2.91
Default judgment for failure to offer evidence in inter partes proceeding ..... 2.132(a)
Definitions, ''The Act'' and ''Entity'' 2.2
Delay in responding to official action 2.65, 2.66
Deposit accounts for paying fees 1.25
Depositions, discovery, in inter partes cases:
  Domestic party ..... 2.120(b)
  Foreign party or representative ..... 2.120(c)
  Motion to compel attendance ..... 2.120(e)
  Other than a party ..... 2.120(b)
  Use of ..... 2.120(j)
  When to file with Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ..... 2.120(j)(8)
Depositions, discovery or trial testimony, upon written questions 2.124
Depositions, trial testimony 2.123
  Before whom taken ..... 2.123(d)
  Certification and filing ..... 2.123(f)
  Corresponds to the trial in court proceedings ..... 2.116(e)
  Effect of errors and irregularities ..... 2.123(j)
  Examination of witnesses ..... 2.123(e)
  Filing and service of testimony 2.125
  Form of depositions ..... 2.123(g)
  Inspection of depositions ..... 2.27(d), 2.123(i)
  Manner of taking ..... 2.123(a)
  Must be filed ..... 2.123(h)
  Notice of taking ..... 2.123(c)
  Protective order relating to transcript or exhibits ..... 2.125(e)
  Raising of objections ..... 2.123(e), (j), (k)
  Stipulations concerning ..... 2.123(b)
  Taken in foreign country ..... 2.123(a)(2)
  Timing 2.121
Description of mark in application 2.35
  Amendment to 2.72
Designation of representative by foreign applicant or registrant:
  Application 2.24, 2.37
  Assignment 3.61
  Renewal ..... 2.183(d)
Disciplinary proceedings 10.130–10.170
Disclaimer
  During inter partes cases 2.133
  In part, of registered mark 2.173
Discovery depositions. *See* Depositions, discovery, in inter partes cases.
Discovery procedure 2.120

Closing date for taking of discovery ..... 2.120(a)
Discovery deposition of domestic party ..... 2.120(b)
Discovery deposition of foreign party ..... 2.120(c)
Discovery provisions of Federal Rules of Civil Procedure apply except as otherwise provided ..... 2.120(a)
Failure to comply with discovery order of Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ..... 2.120(g)
Interrogatories ..... 2.120(d)(1)
Motion for order to compel discovery ..... 2.120(d)(1), 2.120(e)
Motion for a protective order ..... 2.120(f)
Place of production of documents and things ..... 2.120(d)(2)
Pre-trial conference ..... 2.120(i)(2)
Request for admissions ..... 2.120(h)
Sanctions for failure to comply with discovery order of Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ..... 2.120(g)
Telephone conference ..... 2.120(i)(1)
Use of discovery deposition, answer to interrogatory, of admission ..... 2.120(j)
When to file discovery materials with Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ..... 2.120(j)(8)
Distinctiveness under sec. 2(f), proof of 2.41
Dividing an application 2.87
Domestic representative of foreign applicant or registrant:
Application 2.24, 2.37
Assignment 3.61
Renewal ..... 2.183(d)
Domicile of applicant ..... 2.33(a)(1)(iii)
Drawing 2.51–2.53
Amendment to mark in 2.72
Drawings required 2.51
Linings for color in ..... 2.52(e)
Requirements for drawing 2.52
Transfer from abandoned to new application 2.26
Transmission of drawing 2.53
Typed drawing ..... 2.51(e)
Duration of registration:
Cancellation for failure to file affidavit or declaration of use under sec. 8 during sixth year 2.161
Renewal 2.181–2.184
Term of original registrations and renewals 2.181

E

Emergencies or interruptions in United States Postal Service ..... 1.6(e)
''Entity'', defined ..... 2.2(b)
Evidence in ex parte appeal after notice of appeal ..... 2.142(d)
Evidence in inter partes proceeding 2.122–2.125
Affidavits, stipulated testimony, and stipulated facts ..... 2.123(b)
Allegations of use and specimens in applications and registrations ..... 2.122(b)(2)
Exhibits attached to pleadings ..... 2.122(c)
Files of applications or registrations which are subject matter of proceeding ..... 2.122(b)(1)
Official records ..... 2.122(e)
Printed publications ..... 2.122(e)
Registration owned by any party to proceeding ..... 2.122(d)(2)
Registration pleaded by opposer or petitioner ..... 2.122(d)(2)
Rules of evidence ..... 2.122(a)
Testimony from other proceedings between parties ..... 2.122(f)
Testimony upon oral examination 2.123

Testimony upon written questions 2.124
Evidence of distinctiveness 2.41
Examination of applications 2.61
Examination of witnesses in inter partes proceeding ..... 2.123(e)
Examiner's appearance at ex parte appeal oral hearing ..... 2.142(e)(2)
Examiner's brief on appeal ..... 2.142(b)
Examiner's jurisdiction over an application 2.84
Exhibits attached to pleadings:
As evidence ..... 2.122(c)
Duplicate copies shall be filed ..... 2.104(a), 2.112(a)
Forwarded to defendant by Trademark Trial and Appeal Board 2.105, 2.113
Exhibits, testimony, filing and service of 2.125
Ex parte appeal. *See* Appeal to Trademark Trial and Appeal Board.
Ex parte matter disclosed in inter partes case 2.131
Express abandonment of application or mark:
During examination procedure 2.68
During inter partes proceeding 2.135
''Express Mail'' procedure for filing of papers and fees 1.10
Express surrender or cancellation of registration 2.172
During inter partes proceeding 2.134
Extension of time for discovery and testimony ..... 2.121(a)(1), (c), (d)
Extension of time for filing opposition 2.102
Extension of time for filing statement of use 2.89
Fee for filing request for ..... 2.6(a)(4)
Good cause showing, when necessary ..... 2.89(b)(4), (d)
Mark ''Box ITU'' on request for ..... 1.1(h)
Request filed with statement of use ..... 2.89(e)

F

Facsimile transmission, certificate of 1.8
Facsimile transmission of certain correspondence to Patent and Trademark Office ..... 1.6(a)(3), (d)
Facsimiles as specimens 2.57, 2.58
Failure by appellant to file brief on ex parte appeal ..... 2.142(b)(1)
Failure by Plaintiff to file brief at final hearing in inter partes proceeding ..... 2.128(a)(3)
Failure to answer opposition ..... 2.106(a)
Failure to answer petition for cancellation ..... 2.114(a)
Failure to comply with discovery order ..... 2.120(g)
Failure to file affidavit of use under sec. 8 or renewal application for registration in inter partes proceeding ..... 2.134(b)
Failure to file brief on motion ..... 2.127(a)
Failure to respond to official action 2.65
Failure to take testimony or offer other evidence ..... 2.132(a)
Failure to timely file a statement of use ..... 2.88(h)
Fax transmission, certificate of 1.8
Fax transmission of certain correspondence to Patent and Trademark Office ..... 1.6(a)(3), (d)
Federal Rules of Civil Procedure ..... 2.116(a), 2.122(a)
Federal Rules of Evidence ..... 2.122(a)
Fees and charges ..... 1.22, 2.6, 2.85(e)
Fees, insufficient amount submitted:
For petition for cancellation ..... 2.85(e), 2.111(c)
For ex parte appeal ..... 2.85(e)
For opposition ..... 2.101(d)
For renewal application ..... 2.183(b)
Fees, payment of 1.22, 1.23

Filing an amendment to allege use 2.76
Filing an opposition 2.101
Filing and service of trial testimony 2.125
Filing date, effective, after amendment of sec. l(b) application to Supplemental Register ..... 2.75(b)
Filing date of application 2.21
Filing of papers and fees by ''Express Mail'' 1.10
Filing petition for cancellation 2.111
Filing requests for extensions of time for filing statement of use 2.89
  Mark ''Box ITU'' ..... 1.1(h)
Filing statement of use after notice of allowance 2.88
  Mark ''Box ITU'' ..... 1.1(h)
Filing substitute specimens 2.59
Final refusal of application ..... 2.64(a)
  Filing amendment to allege use during final action response period ..... 2.64(c)
  Reconsideration of ..... 2.64(a)
Final hearing, briefs at (inter partes proceeding) 2.128
Foreign applicant, designation of domestic representative ..... 2.24, 2.37, 2.183(d), 3.61
Foreign application, priority claim based on 2.39
Foreign registration:
  Application based on, under sec. 44 ..... 2.21, 2.33, 2.47(b)
  Certified copy of ..... 2.21(a)(5)(ii)
  Necessary before publication ..... 2.39(b)
Form of amendment to application 2.74

G

General information and correspondence 1.1–1.10
Goods and/or services identification of:
  Additions not permitted ..... 2.71(b)
  Amendment of ..... 2.71(b)
  Amendment of, filed with statement of use ..... 2.88(i)(3)
  In affidavit or declaration filed during sixth year 2.161, 2.162
  In written application ..... 2.33(a)(1)(v)
  Multiple goods or services comprised in single class or multiple classes 2.33, 2.86
  Required in amendment to allege use ..... 2.76(b)(1), (c)
  Required in request for extension of time to file statement of use ..... 2.89(f)
  Required in statement of use ..... 2.88(b)(1), (c), (i)
Good cause, showing necessary for extension of time to file statement of use ..... 2.89(b)(4), (d)

H

Hearing, oral:
  At final hearing in inter partes proceeding 2.129
  On appeal to Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ..... 2.142(e)
  On motion in inter partes proceedings ..... 2.127(a)
  On petition to Commissioner ..... 2.146(f)

I

Identification of goods and/or services: *See* Goods and/or services identification of.
Identification of pending application or registered mark in correspondence 1.5
Identification of prior registrations 2.36
Incontestability of right to use mark:

Affidavit under sec. 15 ..... 2.167
Freedom from interference proceeding ..... 2.91(b)
Informalities, amendment to correct 2.71
Inquiries directed to Patent and Trademark Office 1.4
Intent-to-use applications under sec. 1(b):
Abandonment for failure to timely file a statement of use ..... 2.65(c)
Amendment to allege use 2.76
Amendments between notice of allowance and statement of use 2.77
Basis for filing application ..... 2.21(a)(5)
Bona fide intention to use mark in commerce necessary ..... 2.21(a)(5)
Certification mark 2.45
Collective mark 2.44
Dividing 2.87
Drawing required ..... 2.51(a)(2), (b)(2)
Extensions of time for filing statement of use 2.89
Filing-date requirements 2.21
Notice of allowance ..... 2.81(b)
Requirements for written application 2.33
Revival of application abandoned for failure to timely file a statement of use 2.66
Specimens filed with amendment to allege use or statement of use 2.56, 2.76, 2.88
Statement of use 2.88
When eligible for concurrent use ..... 2.73(b), 2.99(g)
When eligible for amendment to Supplemental Register ..... 2.47(c)
Interlocutory motions, inter partes proceeding 2.127
Interference 2.91–2.93, 2.96, 2.98
Adding Party to interference 2.98
Burden of proof 2.96
Conflicting marks, co-pending applications for 2.83
Declaration of interference 2.91
Declared only on petition to Commissioner ..... 2.91(a)
Institution of interference 2.93
Issue 2.96
Marks must otherwise be deemed registrable 2.92
Notice of interference 2.93
Preliminary to interference 2.92
Registrations and applications on the Supplemental Register, registrations under the Act of 1920, and registrations of incontestable marks not subject to interference ..... 2.91(b)
Inter partes procedure 2.116–2.136
Inter partes proceedings 2.91–2.136
Cancellation 2.111–2.115
Concurrent use 2.99
Constructive use ..... 2.129(d)
Failure of plaintiff to file brief at final hearing ..... 2.128(a)(3)
Failure of plaintiff to take testimony 2.132
Interference 2.91–2.93, 2.96, 2.98
Opposition 2.101–2.107
Procedure in 2.116–2.136
Interrogatories (discovery) 2.120
Motion for an order to compel answer ..... 2.120(d)(1), 2.120(e)
Use of answers ..... 2.120(j)
When to file copy of interrogatories and answers there to with Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ..... 2.120(j)(8)
Interruptions or emergencies in United States Postal Service ..... 1.6(e)
Issue date of the notice of allowance ..... 2.81(b)

J

Judgment by default:
Failure by plaintiff to file brief at final hearing ..... 2.128(a)(3)
Failure to answer cancellation ..... 2.114(a)
Failure to answer notice of concurrent use proceeding ..... 2.99(d)(3)
Failure to answer opposition ..... 2.106(a)
Failure to take testimony or offer other evidence 2.132
Jurisdiction over published applications 2.84
Amendment after publication of mark ..... 2.84(b)
Remand to Examiner by Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ..... 2.142(f)

L

Label approval, compliance with other laws 2.69
Lawyers. *See* Attorneys.
Letter, separate for each distinct subject of inquiry ..... 1.4(c)
Letters, address for mailing to Patent and Trademark Office 1.1

M

Mailing, certificate of 1.8
Mailing address for correspondence with Patent and Trademark Office 1.1
Marks on Supplemental Register published only upon registration 2.82
Marks registered under 1905 Act claiming benefits of 1946 Act 2.153–2.156
Marks under sec. 12(c) not subject to opposition; subject to cancellation 2.156
Matters in evidence in inter partes cases 2.122
Mistake in registration incurred through fault of applicant 2.175
Mistake in registration incurred through fault of Patent and Trademark Office 2.174
Money, payment of 1.22, 1.23
Motions in inter partes proceedings:
Contents ..... 2.127(a)
Failure to respond to motion ..... 2.127(a)
For a protective order ..... 2.120(f)
For judgment for failure to take testimony 2.132
For summary judgment ..... 2.127(e)
Interlocutory motions and requests, who may act on ..... 2.127(c)
Request for reconsideration of decision on motion ..... 2.127(b)
Suspension pending determination of motion potentially dispositive of proceeding ..... 2.127(d)
To add application to interference 2.98
To compel discovery ..... 2.120(d)(1), 2.120(e)
To extend times for taking testimony upon written questions ..... 2.124(d)(2)
To extend trial periods ..... 2.121(a)(1), (c)
To suspend 2.117
To take oral deposition abroad ..... 2.120(c)(1), 2.123(a)(2)
To use testimony from another proceeding between parties ..... 2.122(f)
Multiple class applications ..... 2.86(b)
Dividing of 2.87
Multiple goods or services comprised in single class or multiple classes 2.86
Dividing of 2.87

N

New certificate on change of ownership 2.171

Notice by publication, undelivered Office notices 2.118
Notice of allowance ..... 2.81(b)
Filing statement of use after 2.88
Issue date of ..... 2.81(b)
Notice of appeal to court and civil action 2.145
Notice of appeal to Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ..... 2.142(a)
Notice of concurrent use proceeding ..... 2.99(c), (d)
Notice of claim of benefits of 1946 Act 2.153–2.156
Notice of election by appellee to proceed by civil action after appeal to U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit ..... 2.145(c)(3)
Notice of interference 2.93
Notice of publication under sec. 12(c) 2.155
Notice of reliance on discovery ..... 2.120(j)
Notice of reliance on printed publications and official records ..... 2.122(e)
Notice to Trademark Trial and Appeal Board of civil action ..... 2.145(c)(4)
Notice, where address of registrant in cancellation proceeding is unknown 2.118
Notification of acceptance of or deficiency in amendment to allege use ..... 2.76(f), (g)
Notification of acceptance of or deficiency in statement of use ..... 2.88(f), (g)
Notification of filing of petition for cancellation 2.113
Notification of grant or denial of request for an extension of time to file a statement of use ..... 2.89(g)
Notification of opposition 2.105

O

Oath, declaration in lieu of 2.20
Oaths, before whom and when made in testimonial deposition ..... 2.123(e)(5)
Official Gazette contents:
Claim of benefits under sec. 12(c) for marks registered under 1905 Act 2.154
First filed of applications for conflicting marks 2.83
Marks on Principal Register published for opposition 2.80
Marks on Supplemental Register published when registered 2.82
Official records, reliance on in inter partes proceeding ..... 2.122(e)
Omission of matter from response to Examiner's action ..... 2.65(b)
Opposition to registration of mark on Principal Register: 2.101–2.107
Amendment of opposition 2.107
Answer 2.106
Commencement of opposition ..... 2.101(a)
Consolidated oppositions ..... 2.104(b)
Contents of opposition 2.104
Corresponds to compliant in a court proceeding ..... 2.116(c)
Extension of time for filing an opposition 2.102
Failure to timely answer ..... 2.106(a)
Filing an opposition 2.101
Insufficient fees ..... 2.101(d)
Notification of opposition 2.105
Procedure, inter partes 2.116–2.136
Time for filing opposition ..... 2.101(c)
Who may file opposition ..... 2.101(b)
Withdrawal of opposition ..... 2.106(c)
Oral argument at final hearing in inter partes proceeding 2.129
Oral hearings ..... 2.116(f)
Ex parte appeal ..... 2.142(e)
Inter partes proceedings ..... 2.127(a), 2.129
On petition to Commissioner ..... 2.146(f)

Index II

Oral promise, stipulation, or understanding 1.2
Ownership, prior registrations, identification in application 2.36

P

Papers, size and margins of application 2.31
Papers of application not returnable 2.25
Patent Rules, applicable 2.1
Payment of money 1.22, 1.23
Pending application index 2.27
Period for response to Office actions 2.62
Personal appearance unnecessary 1.2
Persons who may practice before the Patent and Trademark Office in trademark cases 10.14
Petition for cancellation 2.111–2.115
  Amendment of petition 2.115
  Answer 2.114
  Commencement of cancellation proceeding ..... 2.111(a)
  Contents of petition 2.112
  Corresponds to complaint in a court proceeding ..... 2.116(c)
  Failure to timely answer ..... 2.114(a)
  Filing petition for cancellation 2.111
  Insufficient fees ..... 2.85(e), 2.111(c)
  Notification of cancellation proceeding 2.113
  Procedure, inter partes 2.116–2.136
  Time for filing petition ..... 2.111(b)
  Who may file petition ..... 2.111(b)
  Withdrawal of petition ..... 2.114(c)
Petition for rehearing, reconsideration or modification of decision:
  Decision in inter partes proceeding ..... 2.129(c)
  Decision on ex parte appeal 2.144
  Decision on interlocutory motion in inter partes proceeding ..... 2.127(b)
Petition to revive abandoned application 2.66
Petition to the Commissioner 2.146
  Any case not specifically defined and provided for by rules ..... 2.146(a)(4)
  Contents of petition ..... 2.146(c)
  Delegation of authority to act on petitions ..... 2.146(h)
  Extraordinary situation requiring suspension or waiver of requirement of rules ..... 2.146(a)(5)
  Fee 2.6
  From denial of request for extension of time to file statement of use ..... 2.89(g)
  From denial of request for extension of time to oppose ..... 2.146(e)(1)
  From interlocutory order of Trademark Trial and Appeal Board ..... 2.146(e)(2)
  Invoke supervisory authority ..... 2.146(a)(3)
  Oral hearing on petition ..... 2.146(f)
  Reconsideration of refusal to accept sec. 8 affidavit or declaration ..... 2.165(b)
  Refusal of renewal of registration ..... 2.184(b)
  Relief from repeated formal requirement of Examiner ..... 2.63(b)
  Repeated action or requirement of Examiner regarding subject matter appropriate for petition ..... 2.146(a)(1)
  Review of adverse action on correction, disclaimer, surrender, etc. of registration 2.176
  Stays time in appeal, inter partes proceeding, or reply to Office action only when stay is specifically requested and granted ..... 2.146(g)
  Subject matter for petitions ..... 2.146(a), (b)
  Time to file petition ..... 2.146(d), (e)
  To accord filing date as of date of deposit as Express Mail ..... 1.10(c)–(e)

Pleading, amendment of 2.107, 2.115
Position of parties in inter partes proceedings ..... 2.96, 2.99(e), 2.116(b)
Postal Service, United States, interruptions or emergencies in ..... 1.6(e)
Post notice of allowance 2.88, 2.89
Post publication 2.81
Power of attorney or authorization of other representative 2.17, 2.19
Practice before the Patent and Trademark Office, individuals entitled to 10.14
Predecessor in title or related company, use by 2.38
Pre-trial conference, inter partes proceeding ..... 2.120(i)(2)
Principal Register 2.46
  Amendment to or from Supplemental Register 2.75
Printed publications, as evidence in inter partes proceedings ..... 2.122(e)
Prior acts, status of prior registrations 2.158
Priority claim based on foreign application 2.39
Prior registrations, ownership, identification in application 2.36
Procedure in inter partes cases 2.116–2.136
Production of documents and things, request for (discovery) 2.120
  Place of production ..... 2.120(d)(2)
  Motion for an order to compel production ..... 2.120(e)
Professional conduct of attorneys 10.20–10.129
Proof of distinctiveness under sec. 2(f) 2.41
Proof of service ..... 2.119(a)
Protective order:
  Motion for ..... 2.120(f)
  Sanctions for violation ..... 2.120(g)
Publication and post publication 2.80–2.84
Publication in Official Gazette:
  Jurisdiction over published applications 2.84
  Of claim of benefits under sec. 12(c) for marks registered under 1905 Act 2.154
  Of first filed of applications for conflicting marks 2.83
  Of mark on Principal Register for opposition after approval 2.80
  Of marks on Supplemental Register when registered 2.82
Publication of amendments to rules 2.189
Publication, notice by, undelivered Office notices to registrant in inter partes proceeding 2.118

R

Rebuttal testimony ..... 2.121(c)
Receipt of papers and fees 1.6, 1.8, 1.10
Recognition of attorneys or other authorized person 2.17, 10.14
Reconsideration:
  Of affidavit or declaration of use under sec. 8 ..... 2.165
  Of decision after final hearing in inter partes proceeding ..... 2.129(c)
  Of decision on ex parte appeal 2.144
  Of final action ..... 2.64(b)
  Of order or decision on interlocutory motion ..... 2.127(b)
Records of documents in Assignment Division of Patent and Trademark Office 3.11–3.56
Records and files of the Patent and Trademark Office 1.12, 1.15, 2.27
Reexamination of application ..... 2.63(a)
Reexamination of application after remand by the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board 2.131, 2.142
Refund of money paid to Patent and Trademark Office 1.26
Refusal of affidavit or declaration of use under sec. 8 ..... 2.165(a)
Refusal of registration 2.61

Refusal of renewal 2.184
Refusal of request for extension of time to file a statement of use ..... 2.89(g)
Registrability of marks in plurality of classes (combined applications) 2.86
Registrant claiming benefits of 1946 Act 2.153–2.156
Registration as evidence in inter partes proceeding:
  File of registration which is the subject of the proceeding ..... 2.122(b)(1)
  Registration owned by any party to proceeding ..... 2.122(d)(2)
  Registration pleaded by opposer or petitioner ..... 2.122(d)(1)
Registration files open to public inspection ..... 2.27(d)
Registrations, printed copies available 1.13
Related company or predecessor, use by 2.38
Remand to Examiner:
  After decision in inter partes case 2.131
  During appeal from refusal of registration ..... 2.142(f)
Renewal of registration 2.181–2.184
  Application for renewal, requirements 2.183
  Failure to renew registration involved in inter partes proceeding ..... 2.134(b)
  Period in which to file 2.182
  Refusal of renewal ..... 2.184(a)
  Review of Examiner's refusal by commissioner ..... 2.184(b)
  Term of original registrations and renewals 2.181
Representation by attorney 2.11
Representation of others before the Patent and Trademark Office 2.11, 10.14
Representative, domestic or U.S. *See* Domestic representative.
Representation, recognition for 2.17, 10.14
Republication of marks registered under prior acts 2.153–2.156
Request for admissions (discovery). *See* Admissions, request for.
Request for extension of time to file statement of use. *See* Extension of time to file statement of use.
Request for information and exhibits by Examiner ..... 2.61(b)
Request for production (discovery). *See* Production of documents and things, request for.
Request for reconsideration. *See* Reconsideration.
Request for records 1.15
Request for registration 2.33
Request to divide an application 2.87
Requirements for receiving a filing date 2.21
Requirements for written application 2.33
Registration of marks registered under prior acts 2.158
Response to official action 2.62
Review by Commissioner:
  For relief from repeated formal requirement by Examiner ..... 2.63(b)
  Of adverse action on correction, disclaimer, surrender, etc. of registration 2.176
  Of refusal of affidavit or declaration of use under sec. 8 ..... 2.165(b)
  Of refusal of renewal application 2.184
  Petitions to the Commissioner 2.146
Revival of abandoned applications 2.66
Revocation of power of attorney 2.19
Rules of evidence in inter partes cases ..... 2.122(a)
Rules of practice in trademark cases:
  Amendment 2.189
  Suspension, petition to Commissioner ..... 2.146(a)(5), 2.148
  Waiver, petition to Commissioner ..... 2.146(a)(5), 2.148

S

Sanction for failure to comply with discovery order ..... 2.120(g)

Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday, time for taking action expiring on ..... 1.6(a)(1), (2), 1.7
Schedule of classes of goods and services 2.85, 6.1–6.4
Schedule of time for discovery and trial periods 2.121
Sec. 2(f), proof of distinctiveness 2.41
Sec. 8 affidavit or declaration of use 2.161–2.166
Sec. 44, application based on:
  Amendment to change application to different register ..... 2.75(a)
  Amendment to description or drawing in mark ..... 2.72(d)
  Basis for filing ..... 2.21(a)(5)(ii)–(iii)
  Certification mark ..... 2.45(b)
  Collective mark ..... 2.44(b)
  Drawing required ..... 2.51(a)(3), (b)(3)
  Filing-date requirements 2.21
  Goods or services identified may not exceed scope of those in foreign application or registration ..... 2.33(a)(1)(v)
  Priority claim 2.39
  Requirements for drawings 2.52
  Requirements for written application 2.33
  Supplemental Register ..... 2.47(b)
Separate letters 1.4
Serial number 2.23
Service charge for handling later filed fees in connection with a renewal ..... 2.6(a)(6), 2.182, 2.183(a)(2)
Services marks 2.43
  Drawings ..... 2.51(b)
  Specimens or facsimiles 2.58
Service of copies of testimony 2.125
Service and signing of papers 2.119
Signature and certificate of attorney 10.18
Signature of applicant ..... 2.21(a)(6), 2.32
Single certificate for one mark registered in a plurality of classes 2.87
Specimens 2.56–2.59
  Facsimiles in lieu of specimens 2.57
  Not evidence in behalf of applicant or registrant in inter partes proceeding ..... 2.122(b)(2)
  Of service mark 2.58
  Requirement of filing with affidavit or declaration of use under sec. 8 ..... 2.161, 2.162(e)
  Requirement of filing with amendment to allege use ..... 2.76(b)(2), (e)(2)
  Requirement of filing with statement of use ..... 2.88(b)(2), (e)(2)
  Support of amendment to application 2.71, 2.72
  Support of amendment to registration 2.173
Statement of use 2.88
  Amendments to description or drawing of mark after filing ..... 2.72(c)
  Amendments to dates of use after filing ..... 2.71(d)(3)
  Extensions of time to file 2.89
  Fee for filing ..... 2.6(a)(3)
  Mark ''Box ITU'' ..... 1.1(h)
  May not be withdrawn ..... 2.88(g)
  Minimum requirements for filing ..... 2.88(e)
  Requirements for ..... 2.88(b)
  Time for filing ..... 2.88(a)
Status of application after ex parte appeal ..... 2.142(d)
Status of application on termination of inter partes proceedings 2.136
Stipulated evidence, inter partes cases ..... 2.123(b)
Stipulation to extend discovery and/or trial periods 2.121
Substitute specimens, filing of 2.59

Sunday, Saturday, or Federal holiday, time for taking action expiring
on ..... 1.6(a)(1), (2), 1.7
Supplemental Register:
Amendment from Principal Register ..... 2.47(c), 2.75
Application requirements 2.47
Approval 2.82
Cancellation 2.111
Certificate of registration 2.82
Intent-to-use applications, when eligible ..... 2.47(c)
Marks published when registered 2.82
Surrender of certificate of registration 2.172
During inter partes proceeding 2.134
Suspension of action in application by Patent and Trademark Office 2.67
Suspension from practice before Patent and Trademark Office 10.130–10.170
Suspension of later filed conflicting application 2.83
Suspension of inter partes proceedings by Trademark Trial and Appeal Board:
For good cause upon motion or stipulation ..... 2.117(c)
Pending disposition of motion potentially dispositive of case ..... 2.127(d)
Suspension of rules, Commissioner ..... 2.146(a)(5), 2.148

T

Term of original registrations and renewals 2.181
Testimony in inter partes cases:
Assignment and resetting of times 2.121
By oral examination 2.123
By written questions 2.124
Failure to take 2.132
Filing and service of testimony ..... 2.124(f), 2.125
Arrangement, indexing, and form of transcript ..... 2.123(g); 2.125 (b), (d)
Corrections to ..... 2.124(f), 2.125(b)
Filing under seal ..... 2.125(e)
Time and filing in Patent and Trademark Office ..... 2.124(f), 2.125(c)
Time and service on adverse party ..... 2.124(f), 2.125(a)
From another proceeding ..... 2.122(f)
In foreign countries ..... 2.123(a)(2)
Objections to ..... 2.123 (e), (j), (k); 2.124(d), (g)
Stipulated testimony ..... 2.123(b)
Time:
For amendment 2.62
For ex parte appeal 2.142
For filing affidavit or declaration to avoid cancellation 2.161
For filing amendment to allege use ..... 2.76(a)
For filing appeal to court or civil action ..... 2.145(d)
For filing extension of time to oppose 2.102
For filing petition for cancellation 2.111
For filing request for extension of time to file statement of use 2.89
For filing request to divide application ..... 2.87(c)
For filing statement of use ..... 2.88(a)
For response to Patent and Trademark Office action 2.62
For taking testimony 2.121
Translation of assignment 3.26
Transmission, certificate of 1.8
Transmission of drawings 2.53

U

Undelivered Office notices, to registrant 2.118
Unprofessional conduct, attorneys 10.20–10.129
Unprovided for and extraordinary circumstances, petition to Commissioner ..... 2.146(a)(4), (5)
U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, appeal to 2.145
Use:
  Allegation of use in commerce 2.21, 2.33, 2.76, 2.88
  Amendment to allege use in commerce 2.76
  Bona fide intention to use in commerce 2.21, 2.33, 2.89
  By predecessor or by related companies 2.38
  Dates of first use and first use in commerce 2.21, 2.33
  Statement of use 2.88
Use of discovery ..... 2.120(j)

V

Verification:
  Color of Authority to sign ..... 2.71(c)
  Declaration in lieu of oath or verification 2.20
  Of application ..... 2.21(a)(6), 2.32, 2.33(b)
  Required with amendment to allege use ..... 2.76(b)(1), (e)(3)
  Required with statement of use ..... 2.88(b)(1), (e)(3)
  Required with substitute specimens 2.59
  Substitute or supplemental verification ..... 2.71(c)
  In support of amendments to descriptions or drawings of the mark 2.72
  In support of amendments to dates of use ..... 2.71(d)
  In support of petition to revive abandoned application ..... 2.66(b), (c)
  In support of request for extension of time to file statement of use 2.89

W

Waiver of rule, petition to Commissioner ..... 2.146(a)(5), 2.148
Willful false statements. declaration 2.20
Withdrawal from employment, practitioners 2.19, 10.40, 10.63
Withdrawal of amendment to allege use ..... 2.76(h)
Withdrawal of application 2.68
  Involved in inter partes proceeding 2.135
Withdrawal of opposition with or without consent ..... 2.106(c)
Withdrawal of cancellation with or without consent ..... 2.114(c)
Withdrawal of registration by voluntary surrender by registrant 2.172
Withdrawal of statement of use prohibited ..... 2.88(g)
Witnesses:
  Examination by oral deposition 2.123
  Examination by written questions 2.124
  Foreign ..... 2.123(a)(2)
Written application 2.31–2.47

PRACTICE BEFORE THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

PART 10—REPRESENTATION OF OTHERS BEFORE THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Sec.
10.1 Definitions.
10.2 Director of Enrollment and Discipline.
10.3 Committee on Enrollment.
10.4 Committee on Discipline.

INDIVIDUALS ENTITLED TO PRACTICE BEFORE THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

10.5 Register of attorneys and agents in patent cases.
10.6 Registration of attorneys and agents.
10.7 Requirements for registration.
10.8 Oath and registration fee.
10.9 Limited recognition in patent cases.
10.10 Restrictions on practice in patent cases.
10.11 Removing names from the register.
10.12—10.13 [Reserved]
10.14 Individuals who may practice before the Office in trademark and other nonpatent cases.
10.15 Refusal to recognize a practitioner.
10.16—10.17 [Reserved]
10.18 Signature and certificate of practitioner.
10.19 [Reserved]

PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE CODE OF PROFESSIONAL RESPONSIBILITY

10.20 Canons and Disciplinary Rules.
10.21 Canon 1.
10.22 Maintaining integrity and competence of the legal profession.
10.23 Misconduct.
10.24 Disclosure of information to authorities.
10.25—10.29 [Reserved]
10.30 Canon 2.
10.31 Communications concerning a practitioner's services.
10.32 Advertising.
10.33 Direct contact with prospective clients.
10.34 Communication of fields of practice.
10.35 Firm names and letterheads.
10.36 Fees for legal services.
10.37 Division of fees among practitioners.
10.38 Agreements restricting the practice of a practitioner.
10.39 Acceptance of employment.
10.40 Withdrawal from employment.
10.41—10.45 [Reserved]
10.46 Canon 3.
10.47 Aiding unauthorized practice of law.
10.48 Sharing legal fees.
10.49 Forming a partnership with a nonpractitioner.
10.50—10.55 [Reserved]
10.56 Canon 4.
10.57 Preservation of confidences and secrets of a client.
10.58—10.60 [Reserved]
10.61 Canon 5.
10.62 Refusing employment when the interest of the practitioner may impair the practitioner's independent professional judgment.
10.63 Withdrawal when the practitioner becomes a witness.
10.64 Avoiding acquisition of interest in litigation or proceeding before the Office.
10.65 Limiting business relations with a client.
10.66 Refusing to accept or continue employment if the interests of another client may impair the independent professional judgment of the practitioner.
10.67 Settling similar claims of clients.
10.68 Avoiding influence by others than the client.
10.69—10.75 [Reserved]
10.76 Canon 6.
10.77 Failing to act competently.
10.78 Limiting liability to client.
10.79—10.82 [Reserved]
10.83 Canon 7.
10.84 Representing a client zealously.
10.85 Representing a client within the bounds of the law.
10.86 [Reserved]
10.87 Communicating with one of adverse interest.
10.88 Threatening criminal prosecution.
10.89 Conduct in proceedings.
10.90—10.91 [Reserved]
10.92 Contact with witnesses.
10.93 Contact with officials.
10.94—10.99 [Reserved]
10.100 Canon 8.
10.101 Action as a public official.
10.102 Statements concerning officials.
10.103 Practitioner candidate for judicial office.
10.104—10.109 [Reserved]
10.110 Canon 9.
10.111 Avoiding even the appearance of impropriety.
10.112 Preserving identity of funds and property of client.
10.113—10.129 [Reserved]

INVESTIGATIONS AND DISCIPLINARY PROCEEDINGS

10.130 Reprimand, suspension or exclusion.
10.131 Investigations.
10.132 Initiating a disciplinary proceeding; reference to an administrative law judge.
10.133 Conference between Director and practitioner; resignation.
10.134 Complaint.
10.135 Service of complaint.
10.136 Answer to complaint.

10.137 Supplemental complaint.
10.138 Contested case.
10.139 Administrative law judge; appointment; responsibilities; review of interlocutory orders; stays.
10.140 Representative for Director or respondent.
10.141 Filing of papers.
10.142 Service of papers.
10.143 Motions.
10.144 Hearings.
10.145 Proof; variance; amendment of pleadings.
10.146—10.148 [Reserved]
10.149 Burden of proof.
10.150 Evidence.
10.151 Depositions.
10.152 Discovery.
10.153 Proposed findings and conclusions; post-hearing memorandum.
10.154 Initial decision of administrative law judge.
10.155 Appeal to the Commissioner.
10.156 Decision of the Commissioner.
10.157 Review of Commissioner's final decision.
10.158 Suspended or excluded practitioner.
10.159 Notice of suspension or exclusion.
10.160 Petition for reinstatement.
10.161 Savings clause.
10.162—10.169 [Reserved]
10.170 Suspension of rules.

AUTHORITY: 5 U.S.C. 500; 15 U.S.C. 1123; 35 U.S.C. 6, 31, 32, 41.

SOURCE: 50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985, unless otherwise noted.

§ 10.1 Definitions.

This part governs solely the practice of patent, trademark, and other law before the Patent and Trademark Office. Nothing in this part shall be construed to preempt the authority of each State to regulate the practice of law, except to the extent necessary for the Patent and Trademark Office to accomplish its Federal objectives. Unless otherwise clear from the context, the following definitions apply to this part:

(a) *Affidavit* means affidavit, declaration under 35 U.S.C. 25 (see §§1.68 and 2.20 of this subchapter), or statutory declaration under 28 U.S.C. 1746.

(b) *Application* includes an application for a design, plant, or utility patent, an application to reissue any patent, and an application to register a trademark.

(c) *Attorney* or *lawyer* means an individual who is a member in good standing of the bar of any United States court or the highest court of any State. A ''non-lawyer'' is a person who is not an attorney or lawyer.

(d) *Canon* is defined in §10.20(a).

(e) *Confidence* is defined in §10.57(a).

(f) *Differing interests* include every interest that may adversely affect either the judgment or the loyalty of a practitioner to a client, whether it be a conflicting, inconsistent, diverse, or other interest.

(g) *Director* means the Director of Enrollment and Discipline.

(h) *Disciplinary Rule* is defined in §10.20(b).

(i) *Employee of a tribunal* includes all employees of courts, the Office, and other adjudicatory bodies.

(j) *Giving information* within the meaning of §10.23(c)(2) includes making (1) a written statement or representation or (2) an oral statement or representation.

(k) *Law firm* includes a professional legal corporation or a partnership.

(l) *Legal counsel* means practitioner.

(m) *Legal profession* includes the individuals who are lawfully engaged in practice of patent, trademark, and other law before the Office.

(n) *Legal service* means any legal service which may lawfully be performed by a practitioner before the Office.

(o) *Legal System* includes the Office and courts and adjudicatory bodies which review matters on which the Office has acted.

(p) *Office* means Patent and Trademark Office.

(q) *Person* includes a corporation, an association, a trust, a partnership, and any other organization or legal entity.

(r) *Practitioner* means (1) an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Office in patent cases or (2) an individual authorized under 5 U.S.C. 500(b) or otherwise as provided by this subchapter, to practice before the Office in trademark cases or other non-patent cases. A ''suspended or excluded practitioner'' is a practitioner who is suspended or excluded under §10.156. A ''non-practitioner'' is an individual who is not a practitioner.

(s) A *proceeding before the Office* includes an application, a reexamination, a protest, a public use proceeding, a patent interference, an *inter partes* trademark proceeding, or any other

proceeding which is pending before the Office.

(t) *Professional legal corporation* means a corporation authorized by law to practice law for profit.

(u) *Registration* means registration to practice before the Office in patent cases.

(v) *Respondent* is defined in §10.134(a)(1).

(w) *Secret* is defined in §10.57(a).

(x) *Solicit* is defined in §10.33.

(y) *State* includes the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, and other Federal territories and possessions.

(z) *Tribunal* includes courts, the Office, and other adjudicatory bodies.

(aa) *United States* means the United States of America, its territories and possessions.

§10.2 Director of Enrollment and Discipline.

(a) *Appointment.* The Commissioner shall appoint a Director of Enrollment and Discipline. In the event of the absence of the Director or a vacancy in the Office of the Director, the Commissioner may designate an employee of the Office to serve as acting Director of Enrollment and Discipline. The Director and any acting Director shall be an active member in good standing of the bar of a State.

(b) *Duties.* The Director shall:

(1) Receive and act upon applications for registration, prepare and grade the examination provided for in §10.7(b), maintain the register provided for in §10.5, and perform such other duties in connection with enrollment and recognition of attorneys and agents as may be necessary.

(2) Conduct investigations into possible violations by practitioners of Disciplinary Rules, with the consent of the Committee on Discipline initiate disciplinary proceedings under §10.132(b), and perform such other duties in connection with investigations and disciplinary proceedings as may be necessary.

(c) *Review of Director's decision.* Any final decision of the Director refusing to register an individual under §10.6, recognize an individual under §10.9 or §10.14(c), or reinstate a suspended or excluded petitioner under §10.160, may be reviewed by petition to the Commissioner upon payment of the fee set forth in §1.21(a)(5). A petition filed more than 30 days after the date of the decision of the Director may be dismissed as untimely. Any petition shall contain (1) a statement of the facts involved and the points to be reviewed and (2) the action requested. Briefs or memoranda, if any, in support of the petition shall accompany or be embodied therein. The petition will be decided on the basis of the record made before the Director and no new evidence will be considered by the Commissioner in deciding the petition. Copies of documents already of record before the Director shall not be submitted with the petition. An oral hearing on the petition will not be granted except when considered necessary by the Commissioner.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651–0012)

§10.3 Committee on Enrollment.

(a) The Commissioner may establish a Committee on Enrollment composed of one or more employees of the Office.

(b) The Committee on Enrollment shall, as necessary, advise the Director in connection with the Director's duties under §10.2(b)(1).

§10.4 Committee on Discipline.

(a) The Commissioner shall appoint a Committee on Discipline. The Committee on Discipline shall consist of at least three employees of the Office, none of whom reports directly or indirectly to the Director or the Solicitor. Each member of the Committee on Discipline shall be a member in good standing of the bar of a State.

(b) The Committee on Discipline shall meet at the request of the Director and after reviewing evidence presented by the Director shall, by majority vote, determine whether there is probable cause to bring charges under §10.132 against a practitioner. When charges are brought against a practitioner, no member of the Committee on Discipline, employee under the direction of the Director, or associate solicitor or assistant solicitor in the Office of the Solicitor shall participate in rendering a decision on the charges.

(c) No discovery shall be authorized of, and no member of the Committee on

Discipline shall be required to testify about, deliberations of the Committee on Discipline.

INDIVIDUALS ENTITLED TO PRACTICE BEFORE THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

§ 10.5 Register of attorneys and agents in patent cases.

A register of attorneys and agents is kept in the Office on which are entered the names of all individuals recognized as entitled to represent applicants before the Office in the preparation and prosecution of applications for patent. Registration in the Office under the provisions of this part shall only entitle the individuals registered to practice before the Office in patent cases.

§ 10.6 Registration of attorneys and agents.

(a) *Attorneys.* Any citizen of the United States who is an attorney and who fulfills the requirements of this part may be registered as a patent attorney to practice before the Office. When appropriate, any alien who is an attorney, who lawfully resides in the United States, and who fulfills the requirements of this part may be registered as a patent attorney to practice before the Office, *provided:* Registration is not inconsistent with the terms upon which the alien was admitted to, and resides in, the United States and *further provided:* The alien may remain registered only (1) if the alien continues to lawfully reside in the United States and registration does not become inconsistent with the terms upon which the alien continues to lawfully reside in the United States or (2) if the alien ceases to reside in the United States, the alien is qualified to be registered under paragraph (c) of this section. See also § 10.9(b).

(b) *Agents.* Any citizen of the United States who is not an attorney and who fulfills the requirements of this part may be registered as a patent agent to practice before the Office. When appropriate, any alien who is not an attorney, who lawfully resides in the United States, and who fulfills the requirements of this part may be registered as a patent agent to practice before the Office, *provided:* Registration is not inconsistent with the terms upon which the alien was admitted to, and resides in, the United States, and *further provided:* The alien may remain registered only (1) if the alien continues to lawfully reside in the United States and registration does not become inconsistent with the terms upon which the alien continues to lawfully reside in the United States or (2) if the alien ceases to reside in the United States, the alien is qualified to be registered under paragraph (c) of this section. See also § 10.9(b).

NOTE: All individuals registered prior to November 15, 1938, were registered as attorneys, whether they were attorneys or not, and such registrations have not been changed.

(c) *Foreigners.* Any foreigner not a resident of the United States who shall file proof to the satisfaction of the Director that he or she is registered and in good standing before the patent office of the country in which he or she resides and practices and who is possessed of the qualifications stated in § 10.7, may be registered as a patent agent to practice before the Office for the limited purpose of presenting and prosecuting patent applications of applicants located in such country, *provided:* The patent office of such country allows substantially reciprocal privileges to those admitted to practice before the United States Patent and Trademark Office. Registration as a patent agent under this paragraph shall continue only during the period that the conditions specified in this paragraph obtain.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651–0012)

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985, as amended at 53 FR 38950, Oct. 4, 1988]

§ 10.7 Requirements for registration.

(a) No individual will be registered to practice before the Office unless he or she shall:

(1) Apply to the Commissioner in writing on a form supplied by the Director and furnish all requested information and material and

(2) Establish to the satisfaction of the Director that he or she is:

(i) Of good moral character and repute;

(ii) Possessed of the legal, scientific, and technical qualifications necessary to enable him or her to render applicants for patents valuable service; and

(iii) Is otherwise competent to advise and assist applicants for patents in the presentation and prosecution of their applications before the Office.

(b) In order that the Director may determine whether an individual seeking to have his or her name placed upon the register has the qualifications specified in paragraph (a) of this secion, satisfactory proof of good moral character and repute and of sufficient basic training in scientific and technical matters must be submitted to the Director. Except as provided in this paragraph, each applicant for registration must take and pass an examination which is held from time to time. Each application for admission to take the examination for registration must be accompanied by the fee set forth in §1.21(a)(1) of this subchapter. The taking of an examination may be waived in the case of any individual who has actively served for at least four years in the patent examining corps of the Office. The examination will not be administered as a mere academic exercise.

(c) Within two months from the date an applicant is notified that he or she failed an examination, the applicant may request regrading of the examination upon payment of the fee set forth in §1.21(a)(6). Any applicant requesting regrading shall particularly point out the errors which the applicant believed occurred in the grading of his or her examination.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651–0012)

§10.8 Oath and registration fee.

Before an individual may have his or her name entered on the register of attorneys and agents, the individual must, after his or her application is approved, subscribe and swear to an oath or make a declaration prescribed by the Commissioner and pay the registration fee set forth in §1.21(a)(2) of this subchapter.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651–0012)

§10.9 Limited recognition in patent cases.

(a) Any individual not registered under §10.6 may, upon a showing of circumstances which render it necessary or justifiable, be given limited recognition by the Director to prosecute as attorney or agent a specified application or specified applications, but limited recognition under this paragraph shall not extend further than the application or applications specified.

(b) When registration of a resident alien under paragraph (a) or (b) of §10.6 is not appropriate, the resident alien may be given limited recognition as may be appropriate under paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) An individual not registered under §10.6 may, if appointed by applicant to do so, prosecute an international application only before the U.S. International Searching Authority and the U.S. International Preliminary Examining Authority, provided: The individual has the right to practice before the national office with which the international application is filed (PCT Art. 49, Rule 90 and §1.455) or before the International Bureau when acting as Receiving Office pursuant to PCT Rules 83.1^{bis} and 90.1.

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985, as amended at 58 FR 4348, Jan. 14, 1993; 60 FR 21440, May 2, 1995]

§10.10 Restrictions on practice in patent cases.

(a) Only practitioners who are registered under §10.6 or individuals given limited recognition under §10.9 will be permitted to prosecute patent applications of others before the Office.

(b) No individual who has served in the patent examining corps of the Office may practice before the Office after termination of his or her service, unless he or she signs a written undertaking,

(1) Not to prosecute or aid in any manner in the prosecution of any patent application pending in any patent examining group during his or her period of service therein and

(2) Not to prepare or prosecute or to assist in any manner in the preparation or prosecution of any patent application of another (i) assigned to such group for examination and (ii) filed within two years after the date he or

she left such group, without written authorization of the Director. Associated and related classes in other patent examining groups may be required to be included in the undertaking or designated classes may be excluded from the undertaking. When an application for registration is made after resignation from the Office, the applicant will not be registered if he or she has prepared or prosecuted or assisted in the preparation or prosecution of any patent application as indicated in the paragraph. Knowingly preparing or prosecuting or providing assistance in the preparation or prosecution of any patent application contrary to the provisions of this paragraph shall constitute misconduct under § 10.23(c)(13) of this part.

(c) A practitioner who is an employee of the Office cannot prosecute or aid in any manner in the prosecution of any patent application before the Office.

(d) Practice before the Office by Government employees is subject to any applicable conflict of interest laws, regulations or codes of professional responsibility.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651–0012)

[53 FR 38950, Oct. 4, 1988; 53 FR 41278, Oct. 20, 1988]

§ 10.11 Removing names from the register.

(a) Registered attorneys and agents shall notify the Director of any change of address. Any notification to the Director of any change of address shall be separate from any notice of change of address filed in individual applications.

(b) A letter may be addressed to any individual on the register, at the address of which separate notice was last received by the Director, for the purpose of ascertaining whether such individual desires to remain on the register. The name of any individual failing to reply and give any information requested by the Director within a time limit specified will be removed from the register and the names of individuals so removed will be published in the Official Gazette. The name of any individual so removed may be reinstated on the register as may be appropriate and upon payment of the fee set forth in § 1.21(a)(3) of this subchapter.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651–0012)

§§ 10.12—10.13 [Reserved]

§ 10.14 Individuals who may practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases.

(a) *Attorneys.* Any individual who is an attorney may represent others before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases. An attorney is not required to apply for registration or recognition to practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases.

(b) *Non-lawyers.* Individuals who are not attorneys are not recognized to practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases, except that individuals not attorneys who were recognized to practice before the Office in trademark cases under this chapter prior to January 1, 1957, will be recognized as agents to continue practice before the Office in trademark cases.

(c) *Foreigners.* Any foreign attorney or agent not a resident of the United States who shall prove to the satisfaction of the Director that he or she is registered or in good standing before the patent or trademark office of the country in which he or she resides and practices, may be recognized for the limited purpose of representing parties located in such country before the Office in the presentation and prosecution of trademark cases, *provided:* The patent or trademark office of such country allows substantially reciprocal privileges to those permitted to practice in trademark cases before the United States Patent and Trademark Office. Recognition under this paragraph shall continue only during the period that the conditions specified in this paragraph obtain.

(d) Recognition of any individual under this section shall not be construed as sanctioning or authorizing the performance of any act regarded in the jurisdiction where performed as the unauthorized practice of law.

(e) No individual other than those specified in paragraphs (a), (b), and (c) of this section will be permitted to practice before the Office in trademark

cases. Any individual may appear in a trademark or other non-patent case in his or her own behalf. Any individual may appear in a trademark case for (1) a firm of which he or she is a member or (2) a corporation or association of which he or she is an officer and which he or she is authorized to represent, if such firm, corporation, or association is a party to a trademark proceeding pending before the Office.

§10.15 Refusal to recognize a practitioner.

Any practitioner authorized to appear before the Office may be suspended or excluded in accordance with the provisions of this part. Any practitioner who is suspended or excluded under this subpart or removed under §10.11(b) shall not be entitled to practice before the Office.

§§10.16—10.17 [Reserved]

§10.18 Signature and certificate of practitioner.

(a) Except where a copy, including a photocopy or facsimile transmission, of a personally signed piece of correspondence is permitted to be filed pursuant to §1.4 of this chapter, every piece of correspondence filed by a practitioner on behalf of himself or herself or representing an applicant or a party to a proceeding in the Patent and Trademark Office must bear an original signature personally signed in permanent ink by such practitioner except for correspondence which is required to be signed by the applicant or party. The signature of a practitioner on correspondence filed by the practitioner, regardless of whether the correspondence has an original signature or is a copy, including a photocopy or facsimile transmission, of correspondence bearing an original signature, constitutes a certificate that:

(1) The correspondence has been read by the practitioner;

(2) The filing of the correspondence is authorized;

(3) To the best of practitioner's knowledge, information, and belief, there is good ground to support the correspondence, including any allegations of improper conduct contained or alleged therein; and

(4) The correspondence is not interposed for delay.

(b) Any practitioner knowingly violating the provisions of this section is subject to disciplinary action. See §10.23(c)(15).

[58 FR 54503, Oct. 22, 1993]

§10.19 [Reserved]

PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE CODE OF PROFESSIONAL RESPONSIBILITY

§10.20 Canons and Disciplinary Rules.

(a) Canons are set out in §§10.21, 10.30, 10.46, 10.56, 10.61, 10.76, 10.83, 10.100, and 10.110. Canons are statements of axiomatic norms, expressing in general terms the standards of professional conduct expected of practitioners in their relationships with the public, with the legal system, and with the legal profession.

(b) Disciplinary Rules are set out in §§10.22—10.24, 10.31—10.40, 10.47—10.57, 10.62—10.68, 10.77, 10.78, 10.84, 10.85, 10.87—10.89, 10.92, 10.93, 10.101—10.103, 10.111, and 10.112. Disciplinary Rules are mandatory in character and state the minimum level of conduct below which no practitioner can fall without being subjected to disciplinary action.

§10.21 Canon 1.

A practitioner should assist in maintaining the integrity and competence of the legal profession.

§10.22 Maintaining integrity and competence of the legal profession.

(a) A practitioner is subject to discipline if the practitioner has made a materially false statement in, or if the practitioner has deliberately failed to disclose a material fact requested in connection with, the practitioner's application for registration or membership in the bar of any United States court or any State court or his or her authority to otherwise practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases.

(b) A practitioner shall not further the application for registration or membership in the bar of any United States court, State court, or administrative agency of another person

known by the practitioner to be unqualified in respect to character, education, or other relevant attribute.

§ 10.23 Misconduct.

(a) A practitioner shall not engage in disreputable or gross misconduct.

(b) A practitioner shall not:

(1) Violate a Disciplinary Rule.

(2) Circumvent a Disciplinary Rule through actions of another.

(3) Engage in illegal conduct involving moral turpitude.

(4) Engage in conduct involving dishonesty, fraud, deceit, or misrepresentation.

(5) Engage in conduct that is prejudicial to the administration of justice.

(6) Engage in any other conduct that adversely reflects on the practitioner's fitness to practice before the Office.

(c) Conduct which constitutes a violation of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section includes, but is not limited to:

(1) Conviction of a criminal offense involving moral turpitude, dishonesty, or breach of trust.

(2) Knowingly giving false or misleading information or knowingly participating in a material way in giving false or misleading information, to:

(i) A client in connection with any immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office.

(ii) The Office or any employee of the Office.

(3) Misappropriation of, or failure to properly or timely remit, funds received by a practitioner or the practitioner's firm from a client to pay a fee which the client is required by law to pay to the Office.

(4) Directly or indirectly improperly influencing, attempting to improperly influence, offering or agreeing to improperly influence, or attempting to offer or agree to improperly influence an official action of any employee of the Office by:

(i) Use of threats, false accusations, duress, or coercion,

(ii) An offer of any special inducement or promise of advantage, or

(iii) Improperly bestowing of any gift, favor, or thing of value.

(5) Suspension or disbarment from practice as an attorney or agent on ethical grounds by any duly constituted authority of a State or the United States or, in the case of a practitioner who resides in a foreign country or is registered under § 10.6(c), by any duly constituted authority of:

(i) A State,

(ii) The United States, or

(iii) The country in which the practitioner resides.

(6) Knowingly aiding or abetting a practitioner suspended or excluded from practice before the Office in engaging in unauthorized practice before the Office under § 10.158.

(7) Knowingly withholding from the Office information identifying a patent or patent application of another from which one or more claims have been copied. See §§ 1.604(b) and 1.607(c) of this subchapter.

(8) Failing to inform a client or former client or failing to timely notify the Office of an inability to notify a client or former client of correspondence received from the Office or the client's or former client's opponent in an *inter partes* proceeding before the Office when the correspondence (i) could have a significant effect on a matter pending before the Office, (ii) is received by the practitioner on behalf of a client or former client and (iii) is correspondence of which a reasonable practitioner would believe under the circumstances the client or former client should be notified.

(9) Knowingly misusing a ''Certificate of Mailing or Transmission'' under § 1.8 of this chapter.

(10) Knowingly violating or causing to be violated the requirements of § 1.56 or § 1.555 of this subchapter.

(11) Knowingly filing or causing to be filed an application containing any material alteration made in the application papers after the signing of the accompanying oath or declaration without identifying the alteration at the time of filing the application papers.

(12) Knowingly filing, or causing to be filed, a frivolous complaint alleging a violation by a practitioner of the Patent and Trademark Office Code of Professional Responsibility.

(13) Knowingly preparing or prosecuting or providing assistance in the preparation or prosecution of a patent application in violation of an undertaking signed under § 10.10(b).

(14) Knowingly failing to advise the Director in writing of any change which would preclude continued registration under § 10.6.

(15) Knowingly signing a paper filed in the Office in violation of the provisions of § 10.18 or making a scandalous or indecent statement in a paper filed in the Office.

(16) Willfully refusing to reveal or report knowledge or evidence to the Director contrary to § 10.24 or paragraph (b) of § 10.131.

(17) Representing before the Office in a patent case either a joint venture comprising an inventor and an invention developer or an inventor referred to the registered practitioner by an invention developer when (i) the registered practitioner knows, or has been advised by the Office, that a formal complaint filed by a Federal or State agency, based on any violation of any law relating to securities, unfair methods of competition, unfair or deceptive acts or practices, mail fraud, or other civil or criminal conduct, is pending before a Federal or State court or Federal or State agency, or has been resolved unfavorably by such court or agency, against the invention developer in connection with invention development services and (ii) the registered practitioner fails to fully advise the inventor of the existence of the pending complaint or unfavorable resolution thereof prior to undertaking or continuing representation of the joint venture or inventor. ''Invention developer'' means any person, and any agent, employee, officer, partner, or independent contractor thereof, who is not a registered practitioner and who advertises invention development services in media of general circulation or who enters into contracts for invention development services with customers as a result of such advertisement. ''Invention development services'' means acts of invention development required or promised to be performed, or actually performed, or both, by an invention developer for a customer. ''Invention development'' means the evaluation, perfection, marketing, brokering, or promotion of an invention on behalf of a customer by an invention developer, including a patent search, preparation of a patent application, or any other act done by an invention developer for consideration toward the end of procuring or attempting to procure a license, buyer, or patent for an invention. ''Customer'' means any individual who has made an invention and who enters into a contract for invention development services with an invention developer with respect to the invention by which the inventor becomes obligated to pay the invention developer less than $5,000 (not to include any additional sums which the invention developer is to receive as a result of successful development of the invention). ''Contract for invention development services'' means a contract for invention development services with an invention developer with respect to an invention made by a customer by which the inventor becomes obligated to pay the invention developer less than $5,000 (not to include any additional sums which the invention developer is to receive as a result of successful development of the invention).

(18) In the absence of information sufficient to establish a reasonable belief that fraud or inequitable conduct has occurred, alleging before a tribunal that anyone has committed a fraud on the Office or engaged in inequitable conduct in a proceeding before the Office.

(19) Action by an employee of the Office contrary to the provisions set forth in § 10.10(c).

(20) Knowing practice by a Government employee contrary to applicable Federal conflict of interest laws, or regulations of the Department, agency or commission employing said individual.

(d) A practitioner who acts with reckless indifference to whether a representation is true or false is chargeable with knowledge of its falsity. Deceitful statements of half-truths or concealment of material facts shall be deemed actual fraud within the meaning of this part.

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985; 50 FR 25073, June 17, 1985; 50 FR 25980, June 24, 1985, as amended at 53 FR 38950, Oct. 4, 1988; 53 FR 41278, Oct. 20, 1988; 57 FR 2036, Jan. 17, 1992; 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993; 61 FR 56448, Nov. 1, 1996]

§ 10.24 Disclosure of information to authorities.

(a) A practitioner possessing unprivileged knowledge of a violation of a Disciplinary Rule shall report such knowledge to the Director.

(b) A practitioner possessing unprivileged knowledge or evidence concerning another practitioner, employee of the Office, or a judge shall reveal fully such knowledge or evidence upon proper request of a tribunal or other authority empowered to investigate or act upon the conduct of practitioners, employees of the Office, or judges.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651–0017)

§§ 10.25—10.29 [Reserved]

§ 10.30 Canon 2.

A practitioner should assist the legal profession in fulfilling its duty to make legal counsel available.

§ 10.31 Communications concerning a practitioner's services.

(a) No practitioner shall with respect to any prospective business before the Office, by word, circular, letter, or advertising, with intent to defraud in any manner, deceive, mislead, or threaten any prospective applicant or other person having immediate or prospective business before the Office.

(b) A practitioner may not use the name of a Member of either House of Congress or of an individual in the service of the United States in advertising the practitioner's practice before the Office.

(c) Unless authorized under § 10.14(b), a non-lawyer practitioner shall not hold himself or herself out as authorized to practice before the Office in trademark cases.

(d) Unless a practitioner is an attorney, the practitioner shall not hold himself or herself out:

(1) To be an attorney or lawyer or

(2) As authorized to practice before the Office in non-patent and trademark cases.

§ 10.32 Advertising.

(a) Subject to § 10.31, a practitioner may advertise services through public media, including a telephone directory, legal directory, newspaper, or other periodical, radio, or television, or through written communications not involving solicitation as defined by § 10.33.

(b) A practitioner shall not give anything of value to a person for recommending the practitioner's services, except that a practitioner may pay the reasonable cost of advertising or written communication permitted by this section and may pay the usual charges of a not-for-profit lawyer referral service or other legal service organization.

(c) Any communication made pursuant to this section shall include the name of at least one practitioner responsible for its content.

§ 10.33 Direct contact with prospective clients.

A practitioner may not solicit professional employment from a prospective client with whom the practitioner has no family or prior professional relationship, by mail, in-person or otherwise, when a significant motive for the practitioner's doing so is the practitioner's pecuniary gain under circumstances evidencing undue influence, intimidation, or overreaching. The term ''solicit'' includes contact in person, by telephone or telegraph, by letter or other writing, or by other communication directed to a specific recipient, but does not include letters addressed or advertising circulars distributed generally to persons not specifically known to need legal services of the kind provided by the practitioner in a particular matter, but who are so situated that they might in general find such services useful.

§ 10.34 Communication of fields of practice.

A registered practitioner may state or imply that the practitioner is a specialist as follows:

(a) A registered practitioner who is an attorney may use the designation ''Patents,'' ''Patent Attorney,'' ''Patent Lawyer,'' ''Registered Patent Attorney,'' or a substantially similar designation.

(b) A registered practitioner who is not an attorney may use the designation ''Patents,'' ''Patent Agent,'' ''Registered Patent Agent,'' or a substantially similar designation, except that any practitioner who was registered prior to November 15, 1938, may refer to himself or herself as a ''patent attorney.''

§10.35 Firm names and letterheads.

(a) A practitioner shall not use a firm name, letterhead, or other professional designation that violates §10.31. A trade name may be used by a practitioner in private practice if it does not imply a current connection with a government agency or with a public or charitable legal services organization and is not otherwise in violation of §10.31.

(b) Practitioners may state or imply that they practice in a partnership or other organization only when that is the fact.

§10.36 Fees for legal services.

(a) A practitioner shall not enter into an agreement for, charge, or collect an illegal or clearly excessive fee.

(b) A fee is clearly excessive when, after a review of the facts, a practitioner of ordinary prudence would be left with a definite and firm conviction that the fee is in excess of a reasonable fee. Factors to be considered as guides in determining the reasonableness of a fee include the following:

(1) The time and labor required, the novelty and difficulty of the questions involved, and the skill requisite to perform the legal service properly.

(2) The likelihood, if apparent to the client, that the acceptance of the particular employment will preclude other employment by the practitioner.

(3) The fee customarily charged for similar legal services.

(4) The amount involved and the results obtained.

(5) The time limitations imposed by the client or by the circumstances.

(6) The nature and length of the professional relationship with the client.

(7) The experience, reputation, and ability of the practitioner or practitioners performing the services.

(8) Whether the fee is fixed or contingent.

§10.37 Division of fees among practitioners.

(a) A practitioner shall not divide a fee for legal services with another practitioner who is not a partner in or associate of the practitioner's law firm or law office, unless:

(1) The client consents to employment of the other practitioner after a full disclosure that a division of fees will be made.

(2) The division is made in proportion to the services performed and responsibility assumed by each.

(3) The total fee of the practitioners does not clearly exceed reasonable compensation for all legal services rendered to the client.

(b) This section does not prohibit payment to a former partner or associate pursuant to a separation or retirement agreement.

§10.38 Agreements restricting the practice of a practitioner.

(a) A practitioner shall not be a party to or participate in a partnership or employment agreement with another practitioner that restricts the right of a practitioner to practice before the Office after the termination of a relationship created by the agreement, except as a condition to payment of retirement benefits.

(b) In connection with the settlement of a controversy or suit, a practitioner shall not enter into an agreement that restricts the practitioner's right to practice before the Office.

§10.39 Acceptance of employment.

A practitioner shall not accept employment on behalf of a person if the practitioner knows or it is obvious that such person wishes to:

(a) Bring a legal action, commence a proceeding before the Office, conduct a defense, assert a position in any proceeding pending before the Office, or otherwise have steps taken for the person, merely for the purpose of harassing or maliciously injuring any other person.

(b) Present a claim or defense in litigation or any proceeding before the Office that is not warranted under existing law, unless it can be supported by good faith argument for an extension,

modification, or reversal of existing law.

§ 10.40 Withdrawal from employment,

(a) A practitioner shall not withdraw from employment in a proceeding before the Office without permission from the Office (see §§ 1.36 and 2.19 of this subchapter). In any event, a practitioner shall not withdraw from employment until the practitioner has taken reasonable steps to avoid foreseeable prejudice to the rights of the client, including giving due notice to his or her client, allowing time for employment of another practitioner, delivering to the client all papers and property to which the client is entitled, and complying with applicable laws and rules. A practitioner who withdraws from employment shall refund promptly any part of a fee paid in advance that has not been earned.

(b) *Mandatory withdrawal.* A practitioner representing a client before the Office shall withdraw from employment if:

(1) The practitioner knows or it is obvious that the client is bringing a legal action, commencing a proceeding before the Office, conducting a defense, or asserting a position in litigation or any proceeding pending before the Office, or is otherwise having steps taken for the client, merely for the purpose of harassing or maliciously injuring any person;

(2) The practitoner knows or it is obvious that the practitoner's continued employment will result in violation of a Disciplinary Rule;

(3) The practitioner's mental or physical condition renders it unreasonably difficult for the practitioner to carry out the employment effectively; or

(4) The practitioner is discharged by the client.

(c) *Permissive withdrawal.* If paragraph (b) of this section is not applicable, a practitioner may not request permission to withdraw in matters pending before the Office unless such request or such withdrawal is because:

(1) The petitioner's client:

(i) Insists upon presenting a claim or defense that is not warranted under existing law and cannot be supported by good faith argument for an extension, modification, or reversal of existing law;

(ii) Personally seeks to pursue an illegal course of conduct;

(iii) Insists that the practitioner pursue a course of conduct that is illegal or that is prohibited under a Disciplinary Rule;

(iv) By other conduct renders it unreasonably difficult for the practitioner to carry out the employment effectively;

(v) Insists, in a matter not pending before a tribunal, that the practitioner engage in conduct that is contrary to the judgment and advice of the practitioner but not prohibited under the Disciplinary Rule; or

(vi) Has failed to pay one or more bills rendered by the practitioner for an unreasonable period of time or has failed to honor an agreement to pay a retainer in advance of the performance of legal services.

(2) The practitioner's continued employment is likely to result in a violation of a Disciplinary Rule;

(3) The practitioner's inability to work with co-counsel indicates that the best interests of the client likely will be served by withdrawal;

(4) The practitioner's mental or physical condition renders it difficult for the practitioner to carry out the employment effectively;

(5) The practitioner's client knowingly and freely assents to termination of the employment; or

(6) The practitioner believes in good faith, in a proceeding pending before the Office, that the Office will find the existence of other good cause for withdrawal.

§§ 10.41—10.45 [Reserved]

§ 10.46 Canon 3.

A practitioner should assist in preventing the unauthorized practice of law.

§ 10.47 Aiding unauthorized practice of law.

(a) A practitioner shall not aid a nonpractitioner in the unauthorized practice of law before the Office.

(b) A practitioner shall not aid a suspended or excluded practitioner in the practice of law before the Office.

(c) A practitioner shall not aid a nonlawyer in the unauthorized practice of law.

§10.48 Sharing legal fees.

A practitioner or a firm of practitioners shall not share legal fees with a non-practitioner except that:

(a) An agreement by a practitioner with the practitioner's firm, partner, or associate may provide for the payment of money, over a reasonable period of time after the practitioner's death, to the practitioner's estate or to one or more specified persons.

(b) A practitioner who undertakes to complete unfinished legal business of a deceased practitioner may pay to the estate of the deceased practitioner that proportion of the total compensation which fairly represents the services rendered by the deceased practitioner.

(c) A practitioner or firm of practitioners may include non-practitioner employees in a compensation or retirement plan, even though the plan is based in whole or in part on a profit-sharing arrangement, providing such plan does not circumvent another Disciplinary Rule.

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985, as amended at 58 FR 54511, Oct. 22, 1993]

§10.49 Forming a partnership with a non-practitioner.

A practitioner shall not form a partnership with a non-practitioner if any of the activities of the partnership consist of the practice of patent, trademark, or other law before the Office.

§§10.50—10.55 [Reserved]

§10.56 Canon 4.

A practitioner should preserve the confidences and secrets of a client.

§10.57 Preservation of confidences and secrets of a client.

(a) ''Confidence'' refers to information protected by the attorney-client or agent-client privilege under applicable law. ''Secret'' refers to other information gained in the professional relationship that the client has requested be held inviolate or the disclosure of which would be embarrassing or would be likely to be detrimental to the client.

(b) Except when permitted under paragraph (c) of this section, a practitioner shall not knowingly:

(1) Reveal a confidence or secret of a client.

(2) Use a confidence or secret of a client to the disadvantage of the client.

(3) Use a confidence or secret of a client for the advantage of the practitioner or of a third person, unless the client consents after full disclosure.

(c) A practitioner may reveal:

(1) Confidences or secrets with the consent of the client affected but only after a full disclosure to the client.

(2) Confidences or secrets when permitted under Disciplinary Rules or required by law or court order.

(3) The intention of a client to commit a crime and the information necessary to prevent the crime.

(4) Confidences or secrets necessary to establish or collect the practitioner's fee or to defend the practitioner or the practitioner's employees or associates against an accusation of wrongful conduct.

(d) A practitioner shall exercise reasonable care to prevent the practitioner's employees, associates, and others whose services are utilized by the practitioner from disclosing or using confidences or secrets of a client, except that a practitioner may reveal the information allowed by paragraph (c) of this section through an employee.

§§10.58—10.60 [Reserved]

§10.61 Canon 5.

A practitioner should exercise independent professional judgment on behalf of a client.

§10.62 Refusing employment when the interest of the practitioner may impair the practitioner's independent professional judgment.

(a) Except with the consent of a client after full disclosure, a practitioner shall not accept employment if the exercise of the practitioner's professional judgment on behalf of the client will be or reasonably may be affected by the practitioner's own financial, business, property, or personal interests.

(b) A practitioner shall not accept employment in a proceeding before the Office if the practitioner knows or it is

obvious that the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm ought to sign an affidavit to be filed in the Office or be called as a witness, except that the practitioner may undertake the employment and the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm may testify:

(1) If the testimony will relate solely to an uncontested matter.

(2) If the testimony will relate solely to a matter of formality and there is no reason to believe that substantial evidence will be offered in opposition to the testimony.

(3) If the testimony will relate solely to the nature and value of legal services rendered in the case by the practitioner or the practitioner's firm to the client.

(4) As to any matter, if refusal would work a substantial hardship on the client because of the distinctive value of the practitioner or the practitioner's firm as counsel in the particular case.

§ 10.63 Withdrawal when the practitioner becomes a witness.

(a) If, after undertaking employment in a proceeding in the Office, a practitioner learns or it is obvious that the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm ought to sign an affidavit to be filed in the Office or be called as a witness on behalf of a practitioner's client, the practitioner shall withdraw from the conduct of the proceeding and the practitioner's firm, if any, shall not continue representation in the proceeding, except that the practitioner may continue the representation and the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm may testify in the circumstances enumerated in paragraphs (1) through (4) of § 10.62(b).

(b) If, after undertaking employment in a proceeding before the Office, a practitioner learns or it is obvious that the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm may be asked to sign an affidavit to be filed in the Office or be called as a witness other than on behalf of the practitioner's client, the practitioner may continue the representation until it is apparent that the practitioner's affidavit or testimony is or may be prejudicial to the practitioner's client.

§ 10.64 Avoiding acquisition of interest in litigation or proceeding before the Office.

(a) A practitioner shall not acquire a proprietary interest in the subject matter of a proceeding before the Office which the practitioner is conducting for a client, except that the practitioner may:

(1) Acquire a lien granted by law to secure the practitioner's fee or expenses; or

(2) Contract with a client for a reasonable contingent fee; or

(3) In a patent case, take an interest in the patent as part or all of his or her fee.

(b) While representing a client in connection with a contemplated or pending proceeding before the Office, a practitioner shall not advance or guarantee financial assistance to a client, except that a practitioner may advance or guarantee the expenses of going forward in a proceeding before the Office including fees required by law to be paid to the Office, expenses of investigation, expenses of medical examination, and costs of obtaining and presenting evidence, provided the client remains ultimately liable for such expenses. A practitioner may, however, advance any fee required to prevent or remedy an abandonment of a client's application by reason of an act or omission attributable to the practitioner and not to the client, whether or not the client is ultimately liable for such fee.

§ 10.65 Limiting business relations with a client.

A practitioner shall not enter into a business transaction with a client if they have differing interests therein and if the client expects the practitioner to exercise professional judgment therein for the protection of the client, unless the client has consented after full disclosure.

§ 10.66 Refusing to accept or continue employment if the interests of another client may impair the independent professional judgment of the practitioner.

(a) A practitioner shall decline proffered employment if the exercise of the practitioner's independent professional

judgment in behalf of a client will be or is likely to be adversely affected by the acceptance of the proffered employment, or if it would be likely to involve the practitioner in representing differing interests, except to the extent permitted under paragraph (c) of this section.

(b) A practitioner shall not continue multiple employment if the exercise of the practitioner's independent professional judgment in behalf of a client will be or is likely to be adversely affected by the practitoner's representation of another client, or if it would be likely to involve the practitioner in representing differing interests, except to the extent permitted under paragraph (c) of this section.

(c) In the situations covered by paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section a practitioner may represent multiple clients if it is obvious that the practitioner can adequately represent the interest of each and if each consents to the representation after full disclosure of the possible effect of such representation on the exercise of the practitioner's independent professional judgment on behalf of each.

(d) If a practitioner is required to decline employment or to withdraw from employment under a Disciplinary Rule, no partner, or associate, or any other practitioner affiliated with the practitioner or the practitioner's firm, may accept or continue such employment unless otherwise ordered by the Director or Commissioner.

§10.67 Settling similar claims of clients.

A practitioner who represents two or more clients shall not make or participate in the making of an aggregate settlement of the claims of or against the practitioner's clients, unless each client has consented to the settlement after being advised of the existence and nature of all the claims involved in the proposed settlement, of the total amount of the settlement, and of the participation of each person in the settlement.

§10.68 Avoiding influence by others than the client.

(a) Except with the consent of the practitioner's client after full disclosure, a practitioner shall not:

(1) Accept compensation from one other than the practitioner's client for the practitioner's legal services to or for the client.

(2) Accept from one other than the practitioner's client any thing of value related to the practitioner's representation of or the practitioner's employment by the client.

(b) A practitioner shall not permit a person who recommends, employs, or pays the practitioner to render legal services for another, to direct or regulate the practitioner's professional judgment in rendering such legal services.

(c) A practitioner shall not practice with or in the form of a professional corporation or association authorized to practice law for a profit, if a nonpractitioner has the right to direct or control the professional judgment of a practitioner.

§§10.69—10.75 [Reserved]

§10.76 Canon 6.

A practitioner should represent a client competently.

§10.77 Failing to act competently.

A practitioner shall not:

(a) Handle a legal matter which the practitioner knows or should know that the practitioner is not competent to handle, without associating with the practitioner another practitioner who is competent to handle it.

(b) Handle a legal matter without preparation adequate in the circumstances.

(c) Neglect a legal matter entrusted to the practitioner.

§10.78 Limiting liability to client.

A practitioner shall not attempt to exonerate himself or herself from, or limit his or her liability to, a client for his or her personal malpractice.

§§ 10.79—10.82 [Reserved]

§ 10.83 Canon 7.

A practitioner should represent a client zealously within the bounds of the law.

§ 10.84 Representing a client zealously.

(a) A practitioner shall not intentionally:

(1) Fail to seek the lawful objectives of a client through reasonably available means permitted by law and the Disciplinary Rules, except as provided by paragraph (b) of this section. A practitioner does not violate the provisions of this section, however, by acceding to reasonable requests of opposing counsel which do not prejudice the rights of the client, by being punctual in fulfilling all professional commitments, by avoiding offensive tactics, or by treating with courtesy and consideration all persons involved in the legal process.

(2) Fail to carry out a contract of employment entered into with a client for professional services, but a practitioner may withdraw as permitted under §§ 10.40, 10.63, and 10.66.

(3) Prejudice or damage a client during the course of a professional relationship, except as required under this part.

(b) In representation of a client, a practitioner may:

(1) Where permissible, exercise professional judgment to waive or fail to assert a right or position of the client.

(2) Refuse to aid or participate in conduct that the practitioner believes to be unlawful, even though there is some support for an argument that the conduct is legal.

§ 10.85 Representing a client within the bounds of the law.

(a) In representation of a client, a practitioner shall not:

(1) Initiate or defend any proceeding before the Office, assert a position, conduct a defense, delay a trial or proceeding before the Office, or take other action on behalf of the practitioner's client when the practitioner knows or when it is obvious that such action would serve merely to harass or maliciously injure another.

(2) Knowingly advance a claim or defense that is unwarranted under existing law, except that a practitioner may advance such claim or defense if it can be supported by good faith argument for an extension, modification, or reversal of existing law.

(3) Conceal or knowingly fail to disclose that which the practitioner is required by law to reveal.

(4) Knowingly use perjured testimony or false evidence.

(5) Knowingly make a false statement of law or fact.

(6) Participate in the creation or preservation of evidence when the practitioner knows or it is obvious that the evidence is false.

(7) Counsel or assist a client in conduct that the practitioner knows to be illegal or fraudulent.

(8) Knowingly engage in other illegal conduct or conduct contrary to a Disciplinary Rule.

(b) A practitioner who receives information clearly establishing that:

(1) A client has, in the course of the representation, perpetrated a fraud upon a person or tribunal shall promptly call upon the client to rectify the same, and if the client refuses or is unable to do so the practitioner shall reveal the fraud to the affected person or tribunal.

(2) A person other than a client has perpetrated a fraud upon a tribunal shall promptly reveal the fraud to the tribunal.

§ 10.86 [Reserved]

§ 10.87 Communicating with one of adverse interest.

During the course of representation of a client, a practitioner shall not:

(a) Communicate or cause another to communicate on the subject of the representation with a party the practitioner knows to be represented by another practitioner in that matter unless the practitioner has the prior consent of the other practitioner representing such other party or is authorized by law to do so. It is not improper, however, for a practitioner to encourage a client to meet with an opposing party for settlement discussions.

(b) Give advice to a person who is not represented by a practitioner other

than the advice to secure counsel, if the interests of such person are or have a reasonable possibility of being in conflict with the interests of the practitioner's client.

§10.88 Threatening criminal prosecution.

A practitioner shall not present, participate in presenting, or threaten to present criminal charges solely to obtain an advantage in any prospective or pending proceeding before the Office.

§10.89 Conduct in proceedings.

(a) A practitioner shall not disregard or advise a client to disregard any provision of this Subchapter or a decision of the Office made in the course of a proceeding before the Office, but the practitioner may take appropriate steps in good faith to test the validity of such provision or decision.

(b) In presenting a matter to the Office, a practitioner shall disclose:

(1) Controlling legal authority known to the practitioner to be directly adverse to the position of the client and which is not disclosed by opposing counsel or an employee of the Office.

(2) Unless privileged or irrelevant, the identities of the client the practitioner represents and of the persons who employed the practitioner.

(c) In appearing in a professional capacity before a tribunal, a practitioner shall not:

(1) State or allude to any matter that the practitioner has no reasonable basis to believe is relevant to the case or that will not be supported by admissible evidence.

(2) Ask any question that the practitioner has no reasonable basis to believe is relevant to the case and that is intended to degrade a witness or other person.

(3) Assert the practitioner's personal knowledge of the facts in issue, except when testifying as a witness.

(4) Assert the practitioner's personal opinion as to the justness of a cause, as to the credibility of a witness, as to the culpability of a civil litigant, or as to the guilt or innocence of an accused; but the practitioner may argue, on the practitioner's analysis of the evidence, for any position or conclusion with respect to the matters stated herein.

(5) Engage in undignified or discourteous conduct before the Office (see §1.3 of the subchapter).

(6) Intentionally or habitually violate any provision of this subchapter or established rule of evidence.

§§10.90—10.91 [Reserved]

§10.92 Contact with witnesses.

(a) A practitioner shall not suppress any evidence that the practitioner or the practitioner's client has a legal obligation to reveal or produce.

(b) A practitioner shall not advise or cause a person to be secreted or to leave the jurisdiction of a tribunal for the purpose of making the person unavailable as a witness therein.

(c) A practitioner shall not pay, offer to pay, or acquiesce in the payment of compensation to a witness contingent upon the content of the witness' affidavit, testimony or the outcome of the case. But a practitioner may advance, guarantee, or acquiesce in the payment of:

(1) Expenses reasonably incurred by a witness in attending, testifying, or making an affidavit.

(2) Reasonable compensation to a witness for the witness' loss of time in attending, testifying, or making an affidavit.

(3) A reasonable fee for the professional services of an expert witness.

§10.93 Contact with officials.

(a) A practitioner shall not give or lend anything of value to a judge, official, or employee of a tribunal under circumstances which might give the appearance that the gift or loan is made to influence official action.

(b) In an adversary proceeding, including any *inter partes* proceeding before the Office, a practitioner shall not communicate, or cause another to communicate, as to the merits of the cause with a judge, official, or Office employee before whom the proceeding is pending, except:

(1) In the course of official proceedings in the cause.

(2) In writing if the practitioner promptly delivers a copy of the writing to opposing counsel or to the adverse

party if the adverse party is not represented by a practitioner.

(3) Orally upon adequate notice to opposing counsel or to the adverse party if the adverse party is not represented by a practitioner.

(4) As otherwise authorized by law.

§§ 10.94—10.99 [Reserved]

§ 10.100 Canon 8.

A practitioner should assist in improving the legal system.

§ 10.101 Action as a public official.

(a) A practitioner who holds public office shall not:

(1) Use the practitioner's public position to obtain, or attempt to obtain, a special advantage in legislative matters for the practitioner or for a client under circumstances where the practitioner knows or it is obvious that such action is not in the public interest.

(2) Use the practitioner's public position to influence, or attempt to influence, a tribunal to act in favor of the practitioner or of a client.

(3) Accept any thing of value from any person when the practitioner knows or it is obvious that the offer is for the purpose of influencing the practitioner's action as a public official.

(b) A practitioner who is an officer or employee of the United States shall not practice before the Office in patent cases except as provided in § 10.10(c) and (d).

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985, as amended at 54 FR 6520, Feb. 13, 1989]

§ 10.102 Statements concerning officials.

(a) A practitioner shall not knowingly make false statements of fact concerning the qualifications of a candidate for election or appointment to a judicial office or to a position in the Office.

(b) A practitioner shall not knowingly make false accusations against a judge, other adjudicatory officer, or employee of the Office.

§ 10.103 Practitioner candidate for judicial office.

A practitioner who is a candidate for judicial office shall comply with applicable provisions of law.

§§ 10.104—10.109 [Reserved]

§ 10.110 Canon 9.

A practitioner should avoid even the appearance of professional impropriety.

§ 10.111 Avoiding even the appearance of impropriety.

(a) A practitioner shall not accept private employment in a matter upon the merits of which he or she has acted in a judicial capacity.

(b) A practitioner shall not accept private employment in a matter in which he or she had personal responsibility while a public employee.

(c) A practitioner shall not state or imply that the practitioner is able to influence improperly or upon irrelevant grounds any tribunal, legislative body, or public official.

§ 10.112 Preserving identity of funds and property of client.

(a) All funds of clients paid to a practitioner or a practitioner's firm, other than advances for costs and expenses, shall be deposited in one or more identifiable bank accounts maintained in the United States or, in the case of a practitioner having an office in a foreign country or registered under § 10.6(c), in the United States or the foreign country.

(b) No funds belonging to the practitioner or the practitioner's firm shall be deposited in the bank accounts required by paragraph (a) of this section except as follows:

(1) Funds reasonably sufficient to pay bank charges may be deposited therein.

(2) Funds belonging in part to a client and in part presently or potentially to the practitioner or the practitioner's firm must be deposited therein, but the portion belonging to the practitioner or the practitioner's firm may be withdrawn when due unless the right of the practitioner or the practitioner's firm to receive it is disputed by the client, in which event the disputed portion shall not be withdrawn until the dispute is finally resolved.

(c) A practitioner shall:

(1) Promptly notify a client of the receipt of the client's funds, securities, or other properties.

(2) Identify and label securities and properties of a client promptly upon receipt and place them in a safe deposit box or other place of safekeeping as soon as practicable.

(3) Maintain complete records of all funds, securities, and other properties of a client coming into the possession of the practitioner and render appropriate accounts to the client regarding the funds, securities, or other properties.

(4) Promptly pay or deliver to the client as requested by a client the funds, securities, or other properties in the possession of the practitioner which the client is entitled to receive.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0651–0017)

§§10.113—10.129 [Reserved]

INVESTIGATIONS AND DISCIPLINARY PROCEEDINGS

§10.130 Reprimand, suspension or exclusion.

(a) The Commissioner may, after notice and opportunity for a hearing, (1) reprimand or (2) suspend or exclude, either generally or in any particular case, any individual, attorney, or agent shown to be incompetent or disreputable, who is guilty of gross misconduct, or who violates a Disciplinary Rule.

(b) Petitions to disqualify a practitioner in *ex parte* or *inter partes* cases in the Office are not governed by §§10.130 through 10.170 and will be handled on a case-by-case basis under such conditions as the Commissioner deems appropriate.

§10.131 Investigations.

(a) The Director is authorized to investigate possible violations of Disciplinary Rules by practitioners. See §10.2(b)(2).

(b) Practitioners shall report and reveal to the Director any knowledge or evidence required by §10.24. A practitioner shall cooperate with the Director in connection with any investigation under paragraph (a) of this section and with officials of the Office in connection with any disciplinary proceeding instituted under §10.132(b).

(c) Any non-practitioner possessing knowledge or information concerning a violation of a Disciplinary Rule by a practitioner may report the violation to the Director. The Director may require that the report be presented in the form of an affidavit.

§10.132 Initiating a disciplinary proceeding; reference to an administrative law judge.

(a) If after conducting an investigation under §10.131(a) the Director is of the opinion that a practitioner has violated a Disciplinary Rule, the Director shall, after complying where necessary with the provisions of 5 U.S.C. 558(c), call a meeting of the Committee on Discipline. The Committee on Discipline shall then determine as specified in §10.4(b) whether a disciplinary proceeding shall be instituted under paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) If the Committee on Discipline determines that probable cause exists to believe that a practitioner has violated a Disciplinary Rule, the Director shall institute a disciplinary proceeding by filing a complaint under §10.134. The complaint shall be filed in the Office of the Director. A disciplinary proceeding may result in:

(1) A reprimand, or

(2) Suspension or exclusion of a practitioner from practice before the Office.

(c) Upon the filing of a complaint under §10.134, the Commissioner will refer the disciplinary proceeding to an administrative law judge.

§10.133 Conference between Director and practitioner; resignation.

(a) *General.* The Director may confer with a practitioner concerning possible violations by the practitioner of a Disciplinary Rule whether or not a disciplinary proceeding has been instituted.

(b) *Resignation.* Any practitioner who is the subject of an investigation under §10.131 or against whom a complaint has been filed under §10.134 may resign from practice before the Office only by submitting with the Director an affidavit stating his or her desire to resign.

(c) If filed prior to the date set by the administrative law judge for a hearing, the affidavit shall state that:

(1) The resignation is freely and voluntarily proffered;

(2) The practitioner is not acting under duress or coercion from the Office;

(3) The practitioner is fully aware of the implications of filing the resignation;

(4) The practitioner is aware (i) of a pending investigation or (ii) of charges arising from the complaint alleging that he or she is guilty of a violation of the Patent and Trademark Office Code of Professional Responsibility, the nature of which shall be set forth by the practitioner to the satisfaction of the Director;

(5) The practitioner acknowledges that, if and when he or she applies for reinstatement under § 10.160, the Director will conclusively presume, for the limited purpose of determining the application for reinstatement, that:

(i) The facts upon which the complaint is based are true and

(ii) The practitioner could not have successfully defended himself or herself against (A) charges predicated on the violation under investigation or (B) charges set out in the complaint filed against the practitioner.

(d) If filed on or after the date set by the administrative law judge for a hearing, the affidavit shall make the statements required by paragraphs (b)(1) through (4) of this section and shall state that:

(1) The practitioner acknowledges the facts upon which the complaint is based are true; and

(2) The resignation is being submitted because the practitioner could not successfully defend himself or herself against (i) charges predicated on the violation under investigation or (ii) charges set out in the complaint.

(e) When an affidavit under paragraph (b) or (c) of this section is received while an investigation is pending, the Commissioner shall enter an order excluding the practitioner ''on consent.'' When an affidavit under paragraph (b) or (c) of this section is received after a complaint under § 10.134 has been filed, the Director shall notify the administrative law judge. The administrative law judge shall enter an order transferring the disciplinary proceeding to the Commissioner and the Commissioner shall enter an order excluding the practitioner ''on consent.''

(f) Any practitioner who resigns from practice before the Office under this section and who intends to reapply for admission to practice before the Office must comply with the provisions of § 10.158.

(g) *Settlement.* Before or after a complaint is filed under § 10.134, a settlement conference may occur between the Director and a practitioner for the purpose of settling any disciplinary matter. If an offer of settlement is made by the Director or the practitioner and is not accepted by the other, no reference to the offer of settlement or its refusal shall be admissible in evidence in the disciplinary proceeding unless both the Director and the practitioner agree in writing.

§ 10.134 Complaint.

(a) A complaint instituting a disciplinary proceeding shall:

(1) Name the practitioner, who may then be referred to as the ''respondent.''

(2) Give a plain and concise description of the alleged violations of the Disciplinary Rules by the practitioner.

(3) State the place and time for filing an answer by the respondent.

(4) State that a decision by default may be entered against the respondent if an answer is not timely filed.

(5) Be signed by the Director.

(b) A complaint will be deemed sufficient if it fairly informs the respondent of any violation of the Disciplinary Rules which form the basis for the disciplinary proceeding so that the respondent is able to adequately prepare a defense.

§ 10.135 Service of complaint.

(a) A complaint may be served on a respondent in any of the following methods:

(1) By handing a copy of the complaint personally to the respondent, in which case the individual handing the complaint to the respondent shall file an affidavit with the Director indicating the time and place the complaint was handed to the respondent.

(2) By mailing a copy of the complaint by ''Express Mail'' or first-class mail to:

(i) A registered practitioner at the address for which separate notice was last received by the Director or

(ii) A non-registered practitioner at the last address for the respondent known to the Director.

(3) By any method mutually agreeable to the Director and the respondent.

(b) If a complaint served by mail under paragraph (a)(2) of this section is returned by the U.S. Postal Service, the Director shall mail a second copy of the complaint to the respondent. If the second copy of the complaint is also returned by the U.S. Postal Service, the Director shall serve the respondent by publishing an appropriate notice in the *Official Gazette* for four consecutive weeks, in which case the time for answer shall be at least thirty days from the fourth publication of the notice.

(c) If a respondent is a registered practitioner, the Director may serve simultaneously with the complaint a letter under §10.11(b). The Director may require the respondent to answer the §10.11(b) letter within a period of not less than 15 days. An answer to the §10.11(b) letter shall constitute proof of service. If the respondent fails to answer the §10.11(b) letter, his or her name will be removed from the register as provided by §10.11(b).

(d) If the respondent is represented by an attorney under §10.140(a), a copy of the complaint shall also be served on the attorney.

§10.136 Answer to complaint.

(a) *Time for answer.* An answer to a complaint shall be filed within a time set in the complaint which shall be not less than thirty days.

(b) *With whom filed.* The answer shall be filed in writing with the administrative law judge. The time for filing an answer may be extended once for a period of no more than thirty days by the administrative law judge upon a showing of good cause provided a motion requesting an extension of time is filed within thirty days after the date the complaint is filed by the Director. A copy of the answer shall be served on the Director.

(c) *Content.* The respondent shall include in the answer a statement of the facts which constitute the grounds of defense and shall specifically admit or deny each allegation set forth in the complaint. The respondent shall not deny a material allegation in the complaint which the respondent knows to be true or state that respondent is without sufficient information to form a belief as to the truth of an allegation when in fact the respondent possesses that information. The respondent shall also state affirmatively special matters of defense.

(d) *Failure to deny allegations in complaint.* Every allegation in the complaint which is not denied by a respondent in the answer is deemed to be admitted and may be considered proven. No further evidence in respect of that allegation need be received by the administrative law judge at any hearing. Failure to timely file an answer will constitute an admission of the allegations in the complaint.

(e) *Reply by Director.* No reply to an answer is required by the Director and any affirmative defense in the answer shall be deemed to be denied. The Director may, however, file a reply if he or she chooses or if ordered by the administrative law judge.

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985; 50 FR 25073, June 17, 1985]

§10.137 Supplemental complaint.

False statements in an answer may be made the basis of a supplemental complaint.

§10.138 Contested case.

Upon the filing of an answer by the respondent, a disciplinary proceeding shall be regarded as a contested case within the meaning of 35 U.S.C. 24. Evidence obtained by a subpoena issued under 35 U.S.C. 24 shall not be admitted into the record or considered unless leave to proceed under 35 U.S.C. 24 was previously authorized by the administrative law judge.

§ 10.139 Administrative law judge; appointment; responsibilities; review of interlocutory orders; stays.

(a) *Appointment.* An administrative law judge, appointed under 5 U.S.C. 3105, shall conduct disciplinary proceedings as provided by this part.

(b) *Responsibilities.* The administrative law judge shall have authority to:

(1) Administer oaths and affirmations;

(2) Make rulings upon motions and other requests;

(3) Rule upon offers of proof, receive relevant evidence, and examine witnesses;

(4) Authorize the taking of a deposition of a witness in lieu of personal appearance of the witness before the administrative law judge;

(5) Determine the time and place of any hearing and regulate its course and conduct;

(6) Hold or provide for the holding of conferences to settle or simplify the issues;

(7) Receive and consider oral or written arguments on facts or law;

(8) Adopt procedures and modify procedures from time to time as occasion requires for the orderly disposition of proceedings;

(9) Make initial decisions under § 10.154; and

(10) Perform acts and take measures as necessary to promote the efficient and timely conduct of any disciplinary proceeding.

(c) *Time for making initial decision.* The administrative law judge shall set times and exercise control over a disciplinary proceeding such that an initial decision under § 10.154 is normally issued within six months of the date a complaint is filed. The administrative law judge may, however, issue an initial decision more than six months after a complaint is filed if in his or her opinion there exist unusual circumstances which preclude issuance of an initial decision within six months of the filing of the complaint.

(d) *Review of interlocutory orders.* An interlocutory order of an administrative law judge will not be reviewed by the Commissioner except:

(1) When the administrative law judge shall be of the opinion (i) that the interlocutory order involves a controlling question of procedure or law as to which there is a substantial ground for a difference of opinion and (ii) that an immediate decision by the Commissioner may materially advance the ultimate termination of the disciplinary proceeding or

(2) In an extraordinary situation where justice requires review

(e) *Stays pending review of interlocutory order.* If the Director or a respondent seeks review of an interlocutory order of an administrative law judge under paragraph (b)(2) of this section, any time period set for taking action by the administrative law judge shall not be stayed unless ordered by the Commissioner or the administrative law judge.

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985; 50 FR 25073, June 17, 1985]

§ 10.140 Representative for Director or respondent.

(a) A respondent may be represented before the Office in connection with an investigation or disciplinary proceeding by an attorney. The attorney shall file a written declaration that he or she is an attorney within the meaning of § 10.1(c) and shall state:

(1) The address to which the attorney wants correspondence related to the investigation or disciplinary proceeding sent and

(2) A telephone number where the attorney may be reached during normal business hours.

(b) The Commissioner shall designate at least two associate solicitors in the Office of the Solicitor to act as representatives for the Director in disciplinary proceedings. In prosecuting disciplinary proceedings, the designated associate solicitors shall not involve the Solicitor or the Deputy Solicitor. The Solicitor and the Deputy Solicitor shall remain insulated from the investigation and prosecution of all disciplinary proceedings in order that they shall be available as counsel to the Commissioner in deciding disciplinary proceedings.

§ 10.141 Filing of papers.

(a) The provisions of § 1.8 of this subchapter do not apply to disciplinary proceedings.

(b) All papers filed after the complaint and prior to entry of an initial decision by the administrative law judge shall be filed with the administrative law judge at an address or place designated by the administrative law judge. All papers filed after entry of an initial decision by the administrative law judge shall be filed with the Director. The Director shall promptly forward to the Commissioner any paper which requires action under this part by the Commissioner.

(c) The administrative law judge or the Director may provide for filing papers and other matters by hand or by ''Express Mail.''

§10.142 Service of papers.

(a) All papers other than a complaint shall be served on a respondent represented by an attorney by:

(1) Delivering a copy of the paper to the office of the attorney; or

(2) Mailing a copy of the paper by first-class mail or ''Express Mail'' to the attorney at the address provided by the attorney under §10.140(a)(1); or

(3) Any other method mutually agreeable to the attorney and a representative for the Director.

(b) All papers other than a complaint shall be served on a respondent who is not represented by an attorney by:

(1) Delivering a copy of the paper to the respondent; or

(2) Mailing a copy of the paper by first-class mail or ''Express Mail'' to the respondent at the address to which a complaint may be served or such other address as may be designated in writing by the respondent; or

(3) Any other method mutually agreeable to the respondent and a representative of the Director.

(c) A respondent shall serve on the representative for the Director one copy of each paper filed with the administrative law judge or the Director. A paper may be served on the representative for the Director by:

(1) Delivering a copy of the paper to the representative; or

(2) Mailing a copy of the paper by first-class mail or ''Express Mail'' to an address designated in writing by the representative; or

(3) Any other method mutually agreeable to the respondent and the representative.

(d) Each paper filed in a disciplinary proceeding shall contain therein a certificate of service indicating:

(1) The date on which service was made and

(2) The method by which service was made.

(e) The administrative law judge or the Commissioner may require that a paper be served by hand or by ''Express Mail.''

(f) Service by mail is completed when the paper mailed in the United States is placed into the custody of the U.S. Postal Service.

§10.143 Motions.

Motions may be filed with the administrative law judge. The administrative law judge will determine on a case-by-case basis the time period for response to a motion and whether replies to responses will be authorized. No motion shall be filed with the administrative law judge unless such motion is supported by a written statement by the moving party that the moving party or attorney for the moving party has conferred with the opposing party or attorney for the opposing party in an effort in good faith to resolve by agreement the issues raised by the motion and has been unable to reach agreement. If issues raised by a motion are resolved by the parties prior to a decision on the motion by the administrative law judge, the parties shall promptly notify the administrative law judge.

§10.144 Hearings.

(a) The administrative law judge shall preside at hearings in disciplinary proceedings. Hearings will be stenographically recorded and transcribed and the testimony of witnesses will be received under oath or affirmation. The administrative law judge shall conduct hearings in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 556. A copy of the transcript of the hearing shall become part of the record. A copy of the transcript shall be provided to the Director and the respondent at the expense of the Office.

(b) If the respondent to a disciplinary proceeding fails to appear at the hearing after a notice of hearing has been given by the administrative law judge, the administrative law judge may deem the respondent to have waived the right to a hearing and may proceed with the hearing in the absence of the respondent.

(c) A hearing under this section will not be open to the public except that the Director may grant a request by a respondent to open his or her hearing to the public and make the record of the disciplinary proceeding available for public inspection, *provided,* Agreement is reached in advance to exclude from public disclosure information which is privileged or confidential under applicable laws or regulations. If a disciplinary proceeding results in disciplinary action against a practitioner, and subject to § 10.159(c), the record of the entire disciplinary proceeding, including any settlement agreement, will be available for public inspection.

§ 10.145 Proof; variance; amendment of pleadings.

In case of a variance between the evidence and the allegations in a complaint, answer, or reply, if any, the administrative law judge may order or authorize amendment of the complaint, answer, or reply to conform to the evidence. Any party who would otherwise be prejudiced by the amendment will be given reasonable opportunity to meet the allegations in the complaint, answer, or reply, as amended, and the administrative law judge shall make findings on any issue presented by the complaint, answer, or reply as amended.

§§ 10.146—10.148 [Reserved]

§ 10.149 Burden of proof.

In a disciplinary proceeding, the Director shall have the burden of proving his or her case by clear and convincing evidence and a respondent shall have the burden of proving any affirmative defense by clear and convincing evidence.

§ 10.150 Evidence.

(a) *Rules of evidence.* The rules of evidence prevailing in courts of law and equity are not controlling in hearings in disciplinary proceedings. However, the administrative law judge shall exclude evidence which is irrelevant, immaterial, or unduly repetitious.

(b) *Depositions.* Depositions of witnesses taken pursuant to § 10.151 may be admitted as evidence.

(c) *Government documents.* Official documents, records, and papers of the Office are admissible without extrinsic evidence of authenticity. These documents, records and papers may be evidenced by a copy certified as correct by an employee of the Office.

(d) *Exhibits.* If any document, record, or other paper is introduced in evidence as an exhibit, the administrative law judge may authorize the withdrawal of the exhibit subject to any conditions the administrative law judge deems appropriate.

(e) *Objections.* Objections to evidence will be in short form, stating the grounds of objection. Objections and rulings on objections will be a part of the record. No exception to the ruling is necessary to preserve the rights of the parties.

§ 10.151 Depositions.

(a) Depositions for use at the hearing in lieu of personal appearance of a witness before the administrative law judge may be taken by respondent or the Director upon a showing of good cause and with the approval of, and under such conditions as may be deemed appropriate by, the administrative law judge. Depositions may be taken upon oral or written questions, upon not less than ten days written notice to the other party, before any officer authorized to administer an oath or affirmation in the place where the deposition is to be taken. The requirement of ten days notice may be waived by the parties and depositions may then be taken of a witness and at a time and place mutually agreed to by the parties. When a deposition is taken upon written questions, copies of the written questions will be served upon the other party with the notice and copies of any written cross-questions will be served by hand or ''Express Mail'' not less than five days before the date of the taking of the deposition unless the parties mutually agree otherwise. A party

on whose behalf a deposition is taken shall file a copy of a transcript of the deposition signed by a court reporter with the administrative law judge and shall serve one copy upon the opposing party. Expenses for a court reporter and preparing, serving, and filing depositions shall be borne by the party at whose instance the deposition is taken.

(b) When the Director and the respondent agree in writing, a deposition of any witness who will appear voluntarily may be taken under such terms and condition as may be mutually agreeable to the Director and the respondent. The deposition shall not be filed with the administrative law judge and may not be admitted in evidence before the administrative law judge unless he or she orders the deposition admitted in evidence. The admissibility of the deposition shall lie within the discretion of the administrative law judge who may reject the deposition on any reasonable basis including the fact that demeanor is involved and that the witness should have been called to appear personally before the administrative law judge.

§10.152 Discovery.

Discovery shall not be authorized except as follows:

(a) After an answer is filed under §10.136 and when a party establishes in a clear and convincing manner that discovery is necessary and relevant, the administrative law judge, under such conditions as he or she deems appropriate, may order an opposing party to:

(1) Answer a reasonable number of written requests for admission or interrogatories;

(2) Produce for inspection and copying a reasonable number of documents; and

(3) Produce for inspection a reasonable number of things other than documents.

(b) Discovery shall not be authorized under paragraph (a) of this section of any matter which:

(1) Will be used by another party solely for impeachment or cross-examination;

(2) Is not available to the party under 35 U.S.C. 122;

(3) Relates to any disciplinary proceeding commenced in the Patent and Trademark Office prior to March 8, 1985;

(4) Relates to experts except as the administrative law judge may require under paragraph (e) of this section.

(5) Is privileged; or

(6) Relates to mental impressions, conclusions, opinions, or legal theories of any attorney or other representative of a party.

(c) The administrative law judge may deny discovery requested under paragraph (a) of this section if the discovery sought:

(1) Will unduly delay the disciplinary proceeding;

(2) Will place an undue burden on the party required to produce the discovery sought; or

(3) Is available (i) generally to the public, (ii) equally to the parties; or (iii) to the party seeking the discovery through another source.

(d) Prior to authorizing discovery under paragraph (a) of this section, the administrative law judge shall require the party seeking discovery to file a motion (§10.143) and explain in detail for each request made how the discovery sought is necessary and relevant to an issue actually raised in the complaint or the answer.

(e) The administrative law judge may require parties to file and serve, prior to any hearing, a pre-hearing statement which contains:

(1) A list (together with a copy) of all proposed exhibits to be used in connection with a party's case-in-chief,

(2) A list of proposed witnesses,

(3) As to each proposed expert witness:

(i) An identification of the field in which the individual will be qualified as an expert;

(ii) A statement as to the subject matter on which the expert is expected to testify; and

(iii) A statement of the substance of the facts and opinions to which the expert is expected to testify,

(4) The identity of government employees who have investigated the case, and

(5) Copies of memoranda reflecting respondent's own statements to administrative representatives.

(f) After a witness testifies for a party, if the opposing party requests, the party may be required to produce, prior to cross-examination, any written statement made by the witness.

§ 10.153 Proposed findings and conclusions; post-hearing memorandum.

Except in cases when the respondent has failed to answer the complaint, the administrative law judge, prior to making an initial decision, shall afford the parties a reasonable opportunity to submit proposed findings and conclusions and a post-hearing memorandum in support of the proposed findings and conclusions.

§ 10.154 Initial decision of administrative law judge.

(a) The administrative law judge shall make an initial decision in the case. The decision will include (1) a statement of findings and conclusions, as well as the reasons or basis therefore with appropriate references to the record, upon all the material issues of fact, law, or discretion presented on the record, and (2) an order of suspension or exclusion from practice, an order of reprimand, or an order dismissing the complaint. The administrative law judge shall file the decision with the Director and shall transmit a copy to the representative of the Director and to the respondent. In the absence of an appeal to the Commissioner, the decision of the administrative law judge will, without further proceedings, become the decision of the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks thirty (30) days from the date of the decision of the administrative law judge.

(b) The initial decision of the administrative law judge shall explain the reason for any penalty or reprimand, suspension or exclusion. In determining any penalty, the following should normally be considered:

(1) The public interest;

(2) The seriousness of the violation of the Disciplinary Rule;

(3) The deterrent effects deemed necessary;

(4) The integrity of the legal profession; and

(5) Any extenuating circumstances.

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985; 50 FR 25073, June 17, 1985]

§ 10.155 Appeal to the Commissioner.

(a) Within thirty (30) days from the date of the initial decision of the administrative law judge under § 10.154, either party may appeal to the Commissioner. If an appeal is taken, the time for filing a cross-appeal expires 14 days after the date of service of the appeal pursuant to § 10.142 or 30 days after the date of initial decision of the administrative law judge, whichever is later. An appeal or cross-appeal by the respondent will be filed and served with the Director in duplicate and will include exceptions to the decisions of the administrative law judge and supporting reasons for those exceptions. If the Director files the appeal or cross-appeal, the Director shall serve on the other party a copy of the appeal or cross-appeal. The other party to an appeal or cross-appeal may file a reply brief. A respondent's reply brief shall be filed and served in duplicate with the Director. The time for filing any reply brief expires thirty (30) days after the date of service pursuant to § 10.142 of an appeal, cross-appeal or copy thereof. If the Director files a reply brief, the Director shall serve on the other party a copy of the reply brief. Upon the filing of an appeal, cross-appeal, if any, and reply briefs, if any, the Director shall transmit the entire record to the Commissioner.

(b) The appeal will be decided by the Commissioner on the record made before the administrative law judge.

(c) The Commissioner may order reopening of a disciplinary proceeding in accordance with the principles which govern the granting of new trials. Any request to reopen a disciplinary proceeding on the basis of newly discovered evidence must demonstrate that the newly discovered evidence could not have been discovered by due diligence.

(d) In the absence of an appeal by the Director, failure by the respondent to appeal under the provisions of this section shall be deemed to be both acceptance by the respondent of the initial decision and waiver by the respondent

of the right to further administrative or judicial review.

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985, as amended at 54 FR 26026, June 21, 1989; 60 FR 64126, Dec. 14, 1995]

§10.156 Decision of the Commissioner.

(a) An appeal from an initial decision of the administrative law judge shall be decided by the Commissioner. The Commissioner may affirm, reverse or modify the initial decision or remand the matter to the administrative law judge for such further proceedings as the Commissioner may deem appropriate. Subject to paragraph (c) of this section, a decision by the Commissioner does not become a final agency action in a disciplinary proceeding until 20 days after it is entered. In making a final decision, the Commissioner shall review the record or those portions of the record as may be cited by the parties in order to limit the issues. The Commissioner shall transmit a copy of the final decision to the Director and to the respondent.

(b) A final decision of the Commissioner may dismiss a disciplinary proceeding, reprimand a practitioner, or may suspend or exclude the practitioner from practice before the Office.

(c) A single request for reconsideration or modification of the Commissioner's decision may be made by the respondent or the Director if filed within 20 days from the date of entry of the decision. Such a request shall have the effect of staying the effective date of the decision. The decision by the Commissioner on the request is a final agency action in a disciplinary proceeding and is effective on its date of entry.

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985, as amended at 54 FR 6660, Feb. 14, 1989]

§10.157 Review of Commissioner's final decision.

(a) Review of the Commissioner's final decision in a disciplinary case may be had, subject to §10.155(d), by a petition filed in the United States District Court for the District of Columbia. See 35 U.S.C. 32 and Local Rule 213 of the United States District Court for the District of Columbia.

(b) The Commissioner may stay a final decision pending review of the Commissioner's final decision.

[50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985; 53 FR 13120, Apr. 21, 1988, as amended at 54 FR 26027, June 21, 1989]

§10.158 Suspended or excluded practitioner.

(a) A practitioner who is suspended or excluded from practice before the Office under §10.156(b) shall not engage in unauthorized practice of patent, trademark and other non-patent law before the Office.

(b) Unless otherwise ordered by the Commissioner, any practitioner who is suspended or excluded from practice before the Office under §10.156(b) shall:

(1) Within 30 days of entry of the order of suspension or exclusion, notify all bars of which he or she is a member and all clients of the practitioner for whom he or she is handling matters before the Office in separate written communications of the suspension or exclusion and shall file a copy of each written communication with the Director.

(2) Within 30 days of entry of the order of suspension or exclusion, surrender a client's active Office case files to (i) the client or (ii) another practitioner designated by the client.

(3) Not hold himself or herself out as authorized to practice law before the Office.

(4) Promptly take any necessary and appropriate steps to remove from any telephone, legal, or other directory any advertisement, statement, or representation which would reasonably suggest that the practitioner is authorized to practice patent, trademark or other non-patent law before the Office, and within 30 days of taking those steps, file with the Director an affidavit describing the precise nature of the steps taken.

(5) Not advertise the practitioner's availability or ability to perform or render legal services for any person having immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office.

(6) Not render legal advice or services to any person having immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office as to that business.

(7) Promptly take steps to change any sign identifying a practitioner's or the practitioner's firm's office and the

practitioner's or the practitioner's firm's stationery to delete therefrom any advertisement, statement, or representation which would reasonably suggest that the practitioner is authorized to practice law before the Office.

(8) Within 30 days, return to any client any unearned funds, including any unearned retainer fee, and any securities and property of the client.

(c) A practitioner who is suspended or excluded from practice before the Office and who aids another practitioner in any way in the other practitioner's practice of law before the Office, may, under the direct supervision of the other practitioner, act as a paralegal for the other practitioner or perform other services for the other practitioner which are normally performed by lay-persons, *Provided:*

(1) The practitioner who is suspended or excluded is:

(i) A salaried employee of:

(A) The other practitioner;

(B) The other practitioner's law firm; or

(C) A client-employer who employs the other practitioner as a salaried employee;

(2) The other practitioner assumes full professional responsibility to any client and the Office for any work performed by the suspended or excluded practitioner for the other practitioner;

(3) The suspended or excluded practitioner, in connection with any immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office, does not:

(i) Communicate directly in writing, orally, or otherwise with a client of the other practitioner;

(ii) Render any legal advice or any legal services to a client of the other practitioner; or

(iii) Meet in person or in the presence of the other practitioner with:

(A) Any Office official in connection with the prosecution of any patent, trademark, or other case;

(B) Any client of the other practitioner, the other practitioner's law firm, or the client-employer of the other practitioner;

(C) Any witness or potential witness which the other practitioner, the other practitioner's law firm, or the other practitioner's client-employer may or intends to call as a witness in any proceeding before the Office. The term ''witness'' includes individuals who will testify orally in a proceeding before, or sign an affidavit or any other document to be filed in, the Office.

(d) When a suspended or excluded practitioner acts as a para-legal or performs services under paragraph (c) of this section, the suspended or excluded practitioner shall not thereafter be reinstated to practice before the Office unless:

(1) The suspended or excluded practitioner shall have filed with the Director an affidavit which (i) explains in detail the precise nature of all paralegal or other services performed by the suspended or excluded practitioner and (ii) shows by clear and convincing evidence that the suspended or excluded practitioner has complied with the provisions of this section and all Disciplinary Rules, and

(2) The other practitioner shall have filed with the Director a written statement which (i) shows that the other practitioner has read the affidavit required by subparagraph (d)(1) of this section and that the other practitioner believes every statement in the affidavit to be true and (ii) states why the other practitioner believes that the suspended or excluded practitioner has complied with paragraph (c) of this section.

§ 10.159 Notice of suspension or exclusion.

(a) Upon issuance of a final decision reprimanding a practitioner or suspending or excluding a practitioner from practice before the Office, the Director shall give notice of the final decision to appropriate employees of the Office and to interested departments, agencies, and courts of the United States. The Director shall also give notice to appropriate authorities of any State in which a practitioner is known to be a member of the bar and any appropriate bar association.

(b) The Director shall cause to be published in the *Official Gazette* the name of any practitioner suspended or excluded from practice. Unless otherwise ordered by the Commissioner, the Director shall publish in the *Official Gazette* the name of any practitioner reprimanded by the Commissioner.

(c) The Director shall maintain records, which shall be available for public inspection, of every disciplinary proceeding where a practitioner is reprimanded, suspended, or excluded unless the Commissioner orders that the proceeding be kept confidential.

§10.160 Petition for reinstatement.

(a) A petition for reinstatement of a practitioner suspended for a period of less than five years will not be considered until the period of suspension has passed.

(b) A petition for reinstatement of a practitioner excluded from practice will not be considered until five years after the effective date of the exclusion.

(c) An individual who has resigned under §10.133 or who has been suspended or excluded may file a petition for reinstatement. The Director may grant a petition for reinstatement when the individual makes a clear and convincing showing that the individual will conduct himself or herself in accordance with the regulations of this part and that granting a petition for reinstatement is not contrary to the public interest. As a condition to reinstatement, the Director may require the individual to:

(1) Meet the requirements of §10.7, including taking and passing an examination under §10.7(b) and

(2) Pay all or a portion of the costs and expenses, not to exceed $1,500, of the disciplinary proceeding which led to suspension or exclusion.

(d) Any suspended or excluded practitioner who has violated the provisions of §10.158 during his or her period of suspension or exclusion shall not be entitled to reinstatement until such time as the Director is satisfied that a period of suspension equal in time to that ordered by the Commissioner or exclusion for five years has passed during which the suspended or excluded practitioner has complied with the provisions of §10.158.

(e) Proceedings on any petition for reinstatement shall be open to the public. Before reinstating any suspended or excluded practitioner, the Director shall publish in the *Official Gazette* a notice of the suspended or excluded practitioner's petition for reinstatement and shall permit the public a reasonable opportunity to comment or submit evidence with respect to the petition for reinstatement.

§10.161 Savings clause.

(a) A disciplinary proceeding based on conduct engaged in prior to the effective date of these regulations may be instituted subsequent to such effective date, if such conduct would continue to justify suspension or exclusion under the provisions of this part.

(b) No practitioner shall be subject to a disciplinary proceeding under this part based on conduct engaged in before the effective date hereof if such conduct would not have been subject to disciplinary action before such effective date.

§§10.162—10.169 [Reserved]

§10.170 Suspension of rules.

(a) In an extraordinary situation, when justice requires, any requirement of the regulations of this part which is not a requirement of the statutes may be suspended or waived by the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee, *sua sponte*, or on petition of any party, including the Director or the Director's representative, subject to such other requirements as may be imposed.

(b) Any petition under this section will not stay a disciplinary proceeding unless ordered by the Commissioner or an administrative law judge.

PART 15 [RESERVED]

PART 15a [RESERVED]

INDEX III—RULES RELATING TO PRACTICE BEFORE THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

EDITORIAL NOTE: This listing is provided for information purposes only. It is compiled and kept up-to-date by the Department of Commerce.

A

Section

Address change 10.11
Advertising 10.31, 10.32
Agreements restricting practice 10.38
Aliens 10.6, 10.9
Applicant for patent, representation of 1.31, 10.10
Applicant for trademark, representation of 2.11
Attorneys, recognition of to practice in trademark cases 10.14
Attorneys, registration of to practice in patent cases 10.6, 10.7

B

Breach of trust 10.23
Business transactions or relations with client 10.65

C

Candidate for judicial office 10.103
Canons and Disciplinary Rules 10.20–10.112
Certificate of mailing 1.8, 10.23. 10.141
Circumventing a disciplinary rule, amendment 10.23
Code of Professional Responsibility 10.20–10.112
Coercion, use of 10.23
Committee on Discipline 10.4
Committee on Enrollment 10.3
Communicating with person having adverse interest 10.67
Communications concerning practitioner's service 10.31
Compensation for legal services 10.68
Competence 10.76, 10.77
Complaint instituting disciplinary proceedings 10.134
Concealment of material information 10.23
Conduct in proceeding before Office 10.89
Conduct prejudicial to the administration of justice 10.23
Conflict of interest 10.66
Conviction of criminal offense 10.23

D

Deceit 10.23
Decisions of the Commissioner 10.156, 10.157
Definitions:
  Affidavit 10.1

Agent 10.6
Application 10.1
Canon 10.20
Confidence 10.57
Differing interests 10.1
Director of Enrollment and Discipline 10.1
Disciplinary rule 10.20
Employee of a tribunal 10.1
Excessive legal fees 10.36
Excluded practitioner 10.1
Giving information 10.1
Invention development services 10.23
Law firm 10.1
Lawyer 10.1
Legal counsel 10.1
Legal profession 10.1
Legal service 10.1
Legal system 10.1
Non-practitioner 10.1
Office 10.1
Person 10.1
Practitioner 10.1
Proceeding before the Office 10.1
Professional legal corporation 10.1
Registration 10.1
Respondent 10.134
Secret 10.33, 10.57
Service of Process 15.2
State 10.1
Suspended practitioner 10.1
Testimony by employees 15a.2
Tribunal 10.1
United States 10.1
Designation as registered attorney or agent 10.34
Direct contact with prospective clients 10.33
Director of Enrollment and Discipline:
Appointment 10.2
Duties 10.2
Review of decisions of the Director 10.2
Disbarment from practice on ethical grounds 10.130
Discharge of attorney or agent by client 10.40
Disciplinary Proceedings and Investigations:
Administrative Law Judge 10.139
Administrative Procedures Act 10.132, 10.144
Review of interlocutory orders by Administrative Law Judge 10.139
Amendment of complaint 10.145
Amendment of pleadings 10.145
Answer to complaint 10.136
Appeal of initial decision of Administrative Law Judge 10.155
Burden of proof 10.149
Certificate of mailing 1.8, 10.141
Complaint 10.134
Contested case 10.138
Deliberations of Committee on Discipline 10.4
Discovery (see also Discovery in Disciplinary Proceedings) 10.152
Exception to ruling 10.150
Filing papers after complaint filed 10.141

Hearings before Administrative Law Judge 10.144
Initial decision of Administrative Law Judge 10.139, 10.154
Initiating disciplinary proceeding 10.132
Investigations of violations of disciplinary rules 10.131
Notice of suspension or exclusion of practitioner 10.159
Objections to evidence 10.150
Post hearing memorandum 10.153
Pre-hearing statement 10.153
Reinstatement of suspended or excluded practitioner 10.160
Reprimand of registered attorney or agent 10.130, 10.132
Resignation of practitioner 10.133
Review of Commissioner's final decision 10.157
Review of decision denying reinstatement of practitioner 10.2
Savings clause 10.161
Service of complaint 10.135
Settlement of complaint 10.133
Stay pending review of interlocutory order 10.139
Supplemental complaint 10.137
Disciplinary rule violation, disclosure of 10.23, 10.24, 10.84, 10.85, 10.131
Discourteous conduct 10.89
Discovery in Disciplinary Proceedings:
Copying of documents 10.152
Cross-examination 10.152
Deliberations of Committee on Enrollment 10.4
Depositions 10.151
Evidence 10.150, 10.152
Impeachment 10.152
Inspection of documents 10.152
Interrogatories 10.152
Motions filed with Administrative Law Judge 10.143, 10.152
Privileged information 10.152
Undue delay in proceedings 10.152
Division of legal fees 10.37
Durees, use of 10.23
Duty to make counsel available 10.30

E

Employee testimony (See Testimony by Office employee)
Employment:
Acceptance 10.39
Failure to carry out contract 10.84
Refusing employment 10.62, 10.63
Withdrawal from employment 10.40, 10.63
Exception to ruling 10.151
Excessive legal fees 10.36
Exclusion of practitioner 10.130, 10.132, 10.158

F

Failure to disclose material fact with regard to registration 10.22
Failure to notify client 10.23
False accusations 10.23
False statements concerning officials 10.102
Favors, improperly bestowing 10.23
Fees:
In general 1.21

Petition to review decision of Director of Enrollment and Discipline 10.2
Registration 10.8
Registration examination 10.7
Reinstatement 10.11
Request regard of examination 10.6
Fees for legal services 10.36
Firm name, use of 10.35
Fitness to practice before the Office 10.23
Foreigners 10.6, 10.9, 10.14
Former Patent and Trademark Office employees 10.6, 10.23
Fraud or inequitable conduct 10.23, 10.85
Frivolous complaint 10.23
Funds of client, preserving identity of 10.112

G

Gift, improperly bestowing 10.23
Government employees, registration of to practice in patent cases 10.10

I

Illegal conduct involving moral turpitude 10.23
Illegal fees for services 10.36
Improper alteration of patent application 10.23
Improper execution of oath or declaration 10.23
Improper influence 10.23
Improper signature 10.18, 10.23
Improperly bestowing thing of value 10.23
Incompetence 10.77, 10.78
Indecent statement, making of 10.23
Independent professional judgment, exercise of 10.61, 10.62, 10.66, 10.68
Individual unqualified in respect to character, education, etc 10.7, 10.22
Influence by others than client 10.68
Information precluding registration, failure to disclose 10.23
Initial decision of Administrative Law Judge 10.139, 10.154
Integrity and competence of the legal profession, maintaining of 10.22
Interest in litigation or proceeding before Office, acquiring of 10.64
Investigations of violations of disciplinary rules 10.131

J

Joint venture 10.23
Judicial office, candidate for 10.103

L

Legal Fees:
Division of 10.37
Failure to pay 10.40
Sharing of 10.48
Legal system, assistance in improving the 10.100
Letterheads, use of 10.35
Limited recognition to practice in patent cases 10.9

M

Malpractice, limiting client's liability 10.78

Materially false statements in application for registration 10.22
Misappropriation of funds 10.23
Misconduct 10.23
Misrepresentations 10.22, 10.23
Multiple employment 10.66

N

Neglecting legal matters 10.77
Non-practitioner, formation of partnership with 10.49
Notice of suspension or exclusion 10.159

O

Oath requirement 10.8
Officials, contact with 10.93

P

Petitions:
  Fees in general 1.21
  Regrade of examination ..... 10.7(c)
  Reinstatement 10.160
  Review decision of Commissioner 10.157
  Review decision of Director of Enrollment and Discipline 10.2
  Suspension of rules 10.170
Preserve secrets and confidence of client 10.56, 10.57
Pro-se applicant 1.31, 2.11
Professional impropriety, avoiding appearance of 1.110, 10.111
Promise of advantage, offer of 10.23
Property of client 10.112
Proprietary interest in subject matter 10.64
Publication in *Official Gazette* 10.11, 10.159, 10.160

R

Recogntion to Practice Before the Patent and Trademark Office:
  Agents 10.6, 10.7, 10.14
  Aliens 10.6, 10.9, 10.14
  Attorneys 10.6, 10.7, 10.14
  Change of address, requirement to notify Director 10.11
    Person not suspended or excluded 10.2
    Suspended or excluded practitioner 10.160
  Examination of registration in patent cases 10.7
  Examination fee 10.7
  Foreigners 10.6, 10.9, 10.14
  Former Patent and Trademark Office employees 10.10, 10.23
  Government employees 10.10, 10.23
  Limited recognition in patent cases 10.9
  Non-lawyers, recognition in trademark cases 10.10
  Patent cases 10.6–10.10
  Recogntion for representation 1.34, 2.17, 10.14
  Recognition to practice 10.6–10.18
  Refusal to recognize practitioner 10.15
  Register of attorneys and agents in patent cases 10.5
  Registration fee 10.8
  Registration number 1.34

Removal of attorneys and agents from the register 10.11
Representation by registered attorney or agent in patent cases 1.31
Request for regrade of examination 10.6
Requirements for registration 10.7
Review of Director's decision refusing registration 10.2
Trademark cases 10.14
Unauthorized representation by an agent 10.10, 10.31
Records, property and funds of client, maintaining of 10.112
Reinstatement after removal from the register 10.2, 10.11
Reinstatement of suspended or excluded non–practitioner 10.160
Representing client within bounds of the law 10.85
Reprimand of registered attorney or agent 10.130, 10.132
Resignation 10.133
Revocation of power of attorney in trademark case 2.19

S

Scandalous statements, making of 10.23
Secrets and confidence, preservation of clients 10.56, 10.57
Service of process
Acceptance of service of process 15.3
Definition
Scope and purpose 15.2
Settlement of claims of clients 10.67
Sharing legal fees 10.48
Signature and certificate of practitioner 10.18
Solicitation 10.32, 10.33
Statement concerning officials, making false 10.102
Suspension of practitioner 10.23, 10.130, 10.132, 10.158
Suspension of rules 10.170

T

Testimony of Office employees
Definition 15a.2
General rule 15a.4
Office policy 15a.3
Private litigation 15a.6
Proceedings involving the United States 15a.5
Production of documents 15a.4
Scope 15a.1
Subpoena of Office employees 15a.7
Threats of criminal prosecution 10.88
Threats, use of 10.23

U

Unauthorized practice 10.14, 10.23, 10.31, 10.46, 10.47
Undignified conduct 10.89

V

Violating duty of candor and good faith 10.23
Violation of disciplinary rule, misconduct 10.23

W

Withdrawal from employment 10.40
Withdrawal material information 10.22, 10.23
Witnesses 10.63, 10.92

Z

Zealously representing the client 10.83, 10.84

SUBCHAPTER B—GOVERNMENT INVENTIONS JURISDICTION

PART 100 [RESERVED]

PART 101 [RESERVED]

PART 102 [RESERVED]

SUBCHAPTER C—PROTECTION OF FOREIGN MASK WORKS

PART 150—REQUESTS FOR PRESIDENTIAL PROCLAMATIONS PURSUANT TO 17 U.S.C. 902(a)(2)

Sec.
150.1 Definitions.
150.2 Initiation of evaluation.
150.3 Submission of requests.
150.4 Evaluation.
150.5 Duration of proclamation.
150.6 Mailing address.

AUTHORITY: 35 U.S.C. 6; E.O. 12504, 50 FR 4849, 3 CFR, 1985 Comp., p. 335.

SOURCE: 53 FR 24447, June 29, 1988, unless otherwise noted.

§150.1 Definitions.

(a) *Commissioner* means Assistant Secretary and Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks.

(b) *Foreign government* means the duly-constituted executive of a foreign nation, or an international or regional intergovernmental organization which has been empowered by its member states to request issuance of Presidential proclamations on their behalf under this part.

(c) *Interim order* means an order issued by the Secretary of Commerce under 17 U.S.C. 914.

(d) *Mask work* means a series of related images, however fixed or encoded—

(1) Having or representing the predetermined, three-dimensional pattern of metallic, insulating, or semiconductor material present or removed from the layers of a semiconductor chip product; and

(2) In which series the relation of the images to one another is that each image has the pattern of the surface of one form of the semiconductor chip product.

(e) *Presidential proclamation* means an action by the President extending to foreign nationals, domiciliaries and sovereign authorities the privilege of applying for registrations for mask works pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 902.

(f) *Request* means a request by a foreign government for the issuance of a Presidential proclamation.

(g) *Proceeding* means a proceeding to issue a interim order extending protection to foreign nationals, domiciliaries and sovereign authorities under 17 U.S.C. Chapter 9.

(h) *Secretary* means the Secretary of Commerce.

§150.2 Initiation of evaluation.

(a) The Commissioner independently or as directed by the Secretary, may initiate an evaluation of the propriety of recommending the issuance, revision, suspension or revocation of a section 902 proclamation.

(b) The Commissioner shall initiate an evaluation of the propriety of recommending the issuance of a section 902 proclamation upon receipt of a request from a foreign government.

§150.3 Submission of requests.

(a) Requests for the issuance of a section 902 proclamation shall be submitted by foreign governments for review by the Commissioner.

(b) Requests for issuance of a proclamation shall include:

(1) A copy of the foreign law or legal rulings that provide protection for U.S. mask works which provide a basis for the request.

(2) A copy of any regulations or administrative orders implementing the protection.

(3) A copy of any laws, regulations or administrative orders establishing or regulating the registration (if any) of mask works.

(4) Any other relevant laws, regulations or administrative orders.

(5) All copies of laws, legal rulings, regulations or administrative orders submitted must be in unedited, full-text form, and if possible, must be reproduced from the original document.

(6) All material submitted must be in the original language, and if not in English, must be accompanied by a certified English translation.

§150.4 Evaluation.

(a) Upon submission of a request by a foreign government for the issuance of a section 902 proclamation, if an interim order under section 914 has not been issued, the Commissioner may initiate a section 914 proceeding if additional information is required.

(b) If an interim order under section 914 has been issued, the information obtained during the section 914 proceeding will be used in evaluating the request for a section 902 proclamation.

(c) After the Commissioner receives the request of a foreign government for a section 902 proclamation, or after a determination is made by the Commissioner to initiate independently an evaluation pursuant to § 150.2(a) of this part, a notice will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER to request relevant and material comments on the adequacy and effectiveness of the protection afforded U.S. mask works under the system of law described in the notice. Comments should include detailed explanations of any alleged deficiencies in the foreign law or any alleged deficiencies in its implementation. If the alleged deficiencies include problems in administration such as registration, the respondent should include as specifically as possible full detailed explanations, including dates for and the nature of any alleged problems. Comments shall be submitted to the Commissioner within sixty (60) days of publication of the FEDERAL REGISTER notice.

(d) The Commissioner shall notify the Register of Copyrights and the Committees on the Judiciary of the Senate and the House of Representatives of the initiation of an evaluation under these regulations.

(e) If the written comments submitted by any party present relevant and material reasons why a proclamation should not issue, the Commissioner will:

(1) Contact the party raising the issue for verification and any needed additional information;

(2) Contact the requesting foreign government to determine if the issues raised by the party can be resolved; and,

(i) If the issues are resolved, continue with the evaluation; or,

(ii) If the issues cannot be resolved on this basis, hold a public hearing to gather additional information.

(f) The comments, the section 902 request, information obtained from a section 914 proceeding, if any, and information obtained in a hearing held pursuant to paragraph (e)(ii) of this section, if any, will be evaluated by the Commissioner.

(g) The Commissioner will forward the information to the Secretary, together with an evaluation and a draft recommendation.

(h) The Secretary will forward a recommendation regarding the issuance of a section 902 proclamation to the President.

§ 150.5 Duration of proclamation.

(a) The recommendation for the issuance of a proclamation may include terms and conditions regarding the duration of the proclamation.

(b) Requests for the revision, suspension or revocation of a proclamation may be submitted by any interested party. Requests for revision, suspension or revocation of a proclamation will be considered in substantially the same manner as requests for the issuance of a section 902 proclamation.

§ 150.6 Mailing address.

Requests and all correspondence submitted pursuant to these guidelines shall be addressed to: Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Box 4, Washington, DC 20231.

CHAPTER II—COPYRIGHT OFFICE, LIBRARY OF CONGRESS

SUBCHAPTER A—COPYRIGHT OFFICE AND PROCEDURES

Part		*Page*
201	General provisions	334
202	Registration of claims to copyright	402
203	Freedom of Information Act: Policies and procedures	436
204	Privacy Act: Policies and procedures	442
211	Mask work protection	444

SUBCHAPTER B—COPYRIGHT ARBITRATION ROYALTY PANEL RULES AND PROCEDURES

251	Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel rules of procedure	450
252	Filing of claims to cable royalty fees	471
253	Use of certain copyrighted works in connection with noncommercial educational broadcasting	473
254	Adjustment of royalty rate for coin-operated phonorecord players	479
255	Adjustment of royalty payable under compulsory license for making and distributing phonorecords	480
256	Adjustment of royalty fee for cable compulsory license	481
257	Filing of claims to satellite carrier royalty fees	483
258	Adjustment of royalty fee for secondary transmissions by satellite carriers	484
259	Filing of claims to digital audio recording devices and media royalty payments	484
	Index to Chapter II—Copyright Office, Library of Congress	489

SUBCHAPTER A—COPYRIGHT OFFICE AND PROCEDURES

PART 201—GENERAL PROVISIONS

Sec.
201.1 Communications with the Copyright Office.
201.2 Information given by the Copyright Office.
201.3 [Reserved]
201.4 Recordation of transfers and certain other documents.
201.5 Corrections and amplifications of copyright registrations; applications for supplementary registration.
201.6 Payment and refund of Copyright Office fees.
201.7 Cancellation of completed registrations.
201.8 [Reserved]
201.9 Recordation of agreements between copyright owners and public broadcasting entities.
201.10 Notices of termination of transfers and licenses covering extended renewal term.
201.11 Satellite carrier statements of account covering statutory licenses for secondary transmissions for private home viewing.
201.12 Recordation of certain contracts by cable systems located outside of the forty-eight contiguous States.
201.13 Notices of objection to certain noncommercial performances of non-dramatic literary or musical works.
201.14 Warnings of copyright for use by certain libraries and archives.
201.15 Voluntary license to permit reproduction of nondramatic literary works solely for use of the blind and physically handicapped.
201.16 [Reserved]
201.17 Statements of Account covering compulsory licenses for secondary transmissions by cable systems.
201.18 Notice of intention to obtain a compulsory license for making and distributing phonorecords of non-dramatic musical works.
201.19 Royalties and statements of account under compulsory license for making and distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical works.
201.20 Methods of affixation and positions of the copyright notice on various types of works.
201.21 [Reserved]
201.22 Advance notices of potential infringement of works consisting of sounds, images, or both.
201.23 Transfer of unpublished copyright deposits to the Library of Congress.
201.24 Warning of copyright for software lending by nonprofit libraries.
201.25 Visual Arts Registry.
201.26 Recordation of documents pertaining to computer shareware and donation of public domain computer software.
201.27 Initial notice of distribution of digital recording devices or media.
201.28 Statements of Account for digital audio recording devices or media.
201.29 Access to, and confidentiality of, Statements of Account, Verification Auditor's Reports, and other verification information filed in the Copyright Office for digital audio recording devices or media.
201.30 Verification of Statements of Account.
201.31 Procedures for copyright restoration in the United States for certain motion pictures and their contents in accordance with the North American Free Trade Agreement.
201.32 Fees for Copyright Office special services.
201.33 Procedures for filing Notices of Intent to Enforce a restored copyright under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act.

AUTHORITY: 17 U.S.C. 702.

§ 201.1 Communications with the Copyright Office.

(a) *In general.* Mail and other communications shall be addressed to the Register of Copyrights, Library of Congress, Copyright Office, 101 Independence Avenue, S.E., Washington, DC 20559-6000.

(b) *Inquiries to Licensing Division.* Inquiries about filings related to the four compulsory licenses (17 U.S.C. 111, 115, 118, and 119) should be addressed to the Licensing Division, LM–454, Library of Congress, Copyright Office, 101 Independence Avenue, S.E., Washington, DC 20559-6000.

(c) *Copies of records or deposits.* Requests for copies of records or deposits should be addressed to the Certifications and Documents Section, LM–402, Library of Congress, Copyright Office, 101 Independence Avenue, S.E., Washington, DC 20559-6000.

(d) *Search of records.* Requests for searches of registrations and recordations in the completed catalogs, indexes, and other records of the Copyright Office should be addressed to the Reference and Bibliography Section,

LM–450, Library of Congress, Copyright Office, 101 Independence Avenue, S.E., Washington, DC 20559-6000.

[50 FR 30170, July 24, 1985, as amended at 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995; 62 FR 35420, July 1, 1997]

§ 201.2 Information given by the Copyright Office.

(a) *In general.* (1) Information relative to the operations of the Copyright Office is supplied without charge. A search of the records, indexes, and deposits will be made for such information as they may contain relative to copyright claims upon application and payment of the statutory fee. The Copyright Office, however, does not undertake the making of comparisons of copyright deposits to determine similarity between works.

(2) The Copyright Office does not furnish the names of copyright attorneys, publishers, agents, or other similar information.

(3) In the administration of the Copyright Act in general, the Copyright Office interprets the Act. The Copyright Office, however, does not give specific legal advice on the rights of persons, whether in connection with particular uses of copyrighted works, cases of alleged foreign or domestic copyright infringement, contracts between authors and publishers, or other matters of a similar nature.

(b) *Inspection and copying of records.* (1) Inspection and copying of completed records and indexes relating to a registration or a recorded document, and inspection of copies or identifying material deposited in connection with a completed copyright registration may be undertaken in the Certifications and Documents Section. Since some of these materials are not stored on the immediate premises of the Copyright Office, it is advisable to consult the Certifications and Documents Section to determine the length of time necessary to produce the requested materials.

(2) It is the general policy of the Copyright Office to deny direct public access to in-process files and to any work (or other) areas where they are kept. However, direct public use of computers intended to access the automated equivalent of limited portions of these files is permitted on a specified terminal in the Records Maintenance Unit, LM B–14, 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m., Monday through Friday, upon payment of applicable fees.

(3) Information contained in Copyright Office in-process files may be obtained by anyone upon payment of applicable fees and request to the Information and Reference Division, in accordance with the following procedures:

(i) In general, all requests by the public for information in the in-process and open unfinished business files should be made to the Certifications and Documents Section, which upon receipt of applicable fees will give a report that provides the following for each request:

(A) The date(s) of receipt of:

(*1*) The application(s) for registration that may have been submitted and is (are) in process;

(*2*) The document(s) that may have been submitted for recordation and is (are) in process;

(*3*) The copy or copies (or phonorecords) that may have been submitted;

(B) The title of the work(s); and

(C) The name of the remitter.

(ii) Such searches of the in-process files will be given priority to the extent permitted by the demands of normal work flow of the affected sections of the Copyright Office.

(4) Access will be afforded as follows to pending applications for registration, the deposit material accompanying them, and pending documents for recordation that were submitted within the twelve month period immediately preceding the request for access:

(i) In the case of applications for registration and deposits accompanying them, upon the request of the copyright claimant or his/her authorized representative, and

(ii) In the case of documents, upon the request of at least one of the persons who executed the document or by an authorized representative of that person.

These requests should be made to the Public Information Office, and the review of the materials will be permitted

there. No charge will be made for this service.

(5) In exceptional circumstances, the Register of Copyrights may allow inspection of pending applications and open correspondence files by someone other than the copyright claimant, upon submission of a written request which is deemed by the Register to show good cause for such access and establishes that the person making the request is one properly and directly concerned. The written request should be addressed to Copyright GC/I&R, P.O. Box 70400, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024.

(6) In no case will direct public access be permitted to any financial or accounting records.

(7) The Copyright Office maintains administrative staff manuals referred to as its ''Compendium of Office Practices I'' and ''Compendium of Office Practices II'' for the general guidance of its staff in making registrations and recording documents. The manuals, as amended and supplemented from time to time, are available for purchase from the National Technical Information Service (Compendium I) and the Government Printing Office (Compendium II). They are also available for public inspection and copying in the Certifications and Documents Section.

(c) *Correspondence.* (1) Official correspondence, including preliminary applications, between copyright claimants or their agents and the Copyright Office, and directly relating to a completed registration, a recorded document, a rejected application for registration, or a document for which recordation was refused is available for public inspection. Included in the correspondence available for public inspection is that portion of the file directly relating to a completed registration, recorded document, a rejected application for registration, or a document for which recordation was refused which was once open to public inspection as a closed case, even if the case is subsequently reopened. Public inspection is available only for the correspondence contained in the file during the time it was closed because of one of the aforementioned actions. Correspondence relating to the reopening of the file and reconsideration of the case is considered part of an in-process file until final action is taken, and public inspection of that correspondence is governed by § 201.2(b). Requests for reproductions of the correspondence shall be made pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) Correspondence, application forms, and any accompanying material forming a part of a pending application are considered in-process files and access to them is governed by paragraph (b) of this section.

(3) Correspondence, memoranda, reports, opinions, and similar material relating to internal matters of personnel and procedures, office administration, security matters, and internal consideration of policy and decisional matters including the work product of an attorney, are not open to public inspection.

(4) The Copyright Office will return unanswered any abusive or scurrilous correspondence.

(d) *Requests for copies.* (1) Requests for copies of records should include the following:

(i) A clear identification of the type of records desired (for example, additional certificates of registration, copies of correspondence, copies of deposits).

(ii) A specification of whether the copies are to be certified or uncertified.

(iii) A clear identification of the specific records to be copied. Requests should include the following specific information, if possible:

(A) The type of work involved (for example, novel, lyrics, photograph);

(B) The registration number;

(C) The year date or approximate year date of registration;

(D) The complete title of the work;

(E) The author(s) including any pseudonym by which the author may be known; and

(F) The claimant(s); and

(G) If the requested copy is of an assignment, license, contract, or other recorded document, the volume and page number of the recorded document.

(iv) If the copy requested is an additional certificate of registration, include the fee. The Certifications and Documents Section will review requests for copies of other records and quote fees for each.

(v) The telephone number and address of the requestor.

(2) Requests for certified or uncertified reproductions of the copies, phonorecords, or identifying material deposited in connection with a copyright registration of published or unpublished works in the custody of the Copyright Office will be granted only when one of the following three conditions has been met:

(i) The Copyright Office receives written authorization from the copyright claimant of record or his or her designated agent, or from the owner of any of the exclusive rights in the copyright as long as this ownership can be demonstrated by written documentation of the transfer of ownership.

(ii) The Copyright Office receives a written request from an attorney on behalf of either the plaintiff or defendant in connection with litigation, actual or prospective, involving the copyrighted work. The following information must be included in such a request:

(A) The names of all the parties involved and the nature of the controversy;

(B) The name of the court in which the actual case is pending or, in the case of a prospective proceeding, a full statement of the facts of the controversy in which the copyrighted work is involved; and

(C) Satisfactory assurance that the requested reproduction will be used only in connection with the specified litigation.

(iii) The Copyright Office receives a court order for reproduction of the deposited copies, phonorecords, or identifying material of a registered work which is the subject of litigation. The order must be issued by a court having jurisdiction of the case in which the reproduction is to be submitted as evidence.

(3) When a request is made for a reproduction of a phonorecord, such as an audiotape or cassette, in which either a sound recording or the underlying musical, dramatic, or literary work is embodied, the Copyright Office will provide proximate reproduction. The Copyright Office reserves the right to substitute a monaural reproduction for a stereo, quadraphonic, or any other type of fixation of the work accepted for deposit.

[50 FR 30170, July 24, 1985, as amended at 51 FR 30062, Aug. 22, 1986; 62 FR 35421, July 1, 1997]

§ 201.3 [Reserved]

§ 201.4 Recordation of transfers and certain other documents.

(a) *General.* (1) This section prescribes conditions for the recordation of transfers of copyright ownership and other documents pertaining to a copyright under section 205 of Title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553. The filing or recordation of the following documents is not within the provisions of this section:

(i) Certain contracts entered into by cable systems located outside of the 48 contiguous States (17 U.S.C. 111(e); see 37 CFR 201.12);

(ii) Notices of identity and signal carriage complement, and statements of account, of cable systems (17 U.S.C. 111(d); see 37 CFR 201.11; 201.17);

(iii) Original, signed notices of intention to obtain compulsory license to make and distribute phonorecords of nondramatic musical works (17 U.S.C. 115(b); see 37 CFR 201.18);

(iv) License agreements, and terms and rates of royalty payments, voluntarily negotiated between one or more public broadcasting entities and certain owners of copyright (17 U.S.C 118; see 37 CFR 201.9);

(v) Notices of termination (17 U.S.C. 203, 304(c); see 37 CFR 201.10); and

(vi) Statements regarding the identity of authors of anonymous and pseudonymous works, and statements relating to the death of authors (17 U.S.C. 302).

(2) A *transfer of copyright ownership* has the meaning set forth in section 101 of Title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553. A document shall be considered to ''pertain to a copyright'' if it has a direct or indirect relationship to the existence, scope, duration, or identification of a copyright, or to the ownership, division, allocation, licensing, transfer, or exercise of rights under a copyright. That relationship may be past, present, future, or potential.

(3) For purposes of this section:

(i) A *sworn certification* is an affidavit under the official seal of any officer authorized to administer oaths within the United States, or if the original is located outside of the United States, under the official seal of any diplomatic or consular officer of the United States or of a person authorized to administer oaths whose authority is proved by the certificate of such an officer, or a statement in accordance with section 1746 of Title 28 of the United States Code; and

(ii) An *official certification* is a certification, by the appropriate Government official, that the original of the document is on file in a public office and that the reproduction is a true copy or the original.

(b) *Forms.* The Copyright Office does not provide forms for the use of persons recording documents.

(c) *Recordable documents.* Any transfer of copyright ownership (including any instrument of conveyance, or note or memorandum of the transfer), or any other document pertaining to a copyright, may be recorded in the Copyright Office if it is accompanied by the fee set forth in paragraph (d) of this section, and if the requirements of this paragraph with respect to signatures, completeness, and legibility are met.

(1) To be recordable, the document must bear the actual signature or signatures of the person or persons who executed it. Alternatively, the document may be recorded if it is a legible photocopy or other legible facsimile reproduction of the signed document, accompanied by a sworn certification or an official certification that the reproduction is a true copy of the signed document. Any sworn certification accompanying a reproduction shall be signed by at least one of the parties to the signed document, or by an authorized representative of that person.

(2) To be recordable, the document must be complete by its own terms.

(i) A document that contains a reference to any schedule, appendix, exhibit, addendum, or other material as being attached to the document or made a part of it shall be recordable only if the attachment is also submitted for recordation with the document or if the reference is deleted by the parties to the document. If a document has been submitted for recordation and has been returned by the Copyright Office at the request of the sender for deletion of the reference to an attachment, the document will be recorded only if the deletion is signed or initialed by the persons who executed the document or by their authorized representatives. In exceptional cases a document containing a reference to an attachment will be recorded without the attached material and without deletion of the reference if the person seeking recordation submits a written request specifically asserting that:

(A) The attachment is completely unavailable for recordation; and

(B) The attachment is not essential to the identification of the subject matter of the document; and

(C) It would be impossible or wholly impracticable to have the parties to the document sign or initial a deletion of the reference.

In such exceptional cases, the Copyright Office records of the document will be annotated to show that recordation was made in response to a specific request under this paragraph.

(ii) If a document otherwise recordable under this indicates on its face that it is a self-contained part of a larger instrument (for example: if it is designated ''Attachment A'' or ''Exhibit B''), the Copyright Office will raise the question of completeness, but will record the document if the person requesting recordation asserts that the document is sufficiently complete as it stands.

(iii) When the document submitted for recordation merely identifies or incorporates by reference another document, or certain terms of another document, the Copyright Office will raise no question of completeness, and will not require recordation of the other document.

(3) To be recordable, the document must be legible and capable of being reproduced in legible microform copies.

(d) *Fees.* For a document covering not more than one title, the basic recordation fee is $20. For additional titles, a charge of $10 is added for each group of not more than 10 titles.

(e) *Recordation.* The date of recordation is the date when a proper document under paragraph (c) of this section and a proper fee under paragraph (d) of this section are all received in the Copyright Office. After recordation the document is returned to the sender with a certificate of record.

(17 U.S.C. 205, 702, 708)

[43 FR 35044, Aug. 8, 1978, as amended at 53 FR 123, Jan. 5, 1988; 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991]

§201.5 Corrections and amplifications of copyright registrations; applications for supplementary registration.

(a) *General.* (1) This section prescribes conditions relating to the filing of an application for supplementary registration, to correct an error in a copyright registration or to amplify the information given in a registration, under section 408(d) of Title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553. For the purposes of this section:

(i) A *basic registration* means any of the following:

(A) A copyright registration made under sections 408, 409, and 410 of Title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553;

(B) A renewal registration made under section 304 of Title 17 of the United States Code, as so amended;

(C) A registration of claim to copyright made under Title 17 of the United States Code as it existed before January 1, 1978; or

(D) A renewal registration made under Title 17 of the United States Code as it existed before January 1, 1978; and

(ii) A *supplementary registration* means a registration made upon application under section 408(d) of Title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553, and the provisions of this section.

(2) No correction or amplification of the information in a basic registration will be made except pursuant to the provisions of this §201.5. As an exception, where it is discovered that the record of a basic registration contains an error that the Copyright Office itself should have recognized at the time registration was made, the Office will take appropriate measures to rectify its error.

(b) *Persons entitled to file an application for supplementary registration; grounds of application.* (1) Supplementary registration can be made only if a basic copyright registration for the same work has already been completed. After a basic registration has been completed, any author or other copyright claimant of the work, or the owner of any exclusive right in the work, or the duly authorized agent of any such author, other claimant, or owner, who wishes to correct or amplify the information given in the basic registration for the work may file an application for supplementary registration.[1]

(2) Supplementary registration may be made either to correct or to amplify the information in a basic registration. For the purposes of this section:

(i) A *correction* is appropriate if information in the basic registration was incorrect at the time that basic registration was made, and the error is not one that the Copyright Office itself should have recognized;

(ii) An *amplification* is appropriate:

(A) To reflect additional information that could have been given, but was omitted, at the time basic registration was made; or

(B) To reflect changes in facts, other than those relating to transfer, license, or ownership of rights in the work, that have occurred since the basic registration was made; or

(C) To clarify information given in the basic registration;

(iii) Supplementary registration is not appropriate:

(A) As an amplification, to reflect the ownership, division, allocation, licensing, or transfer of rights in a work, whether at the time basic registration was made or thereafter; or

(B) To correct errors in statements or notices on the copies of phonorecords of a work, or to reflect changes in the content of a work; and

[1] If the person who, or on whose behalf, an application for supplementary registration is submitted is the same as the person identified as the copyright claimant in the basic registration, the Copyright Office will place a note referring to the supplementary registration on its records of the basic registration.

(iv) Where a basic renewal registration has been made for a work during the last year of the relevant first-term copyright, supplementary registration to correct the renewal claimant or basis of claim or to add a renewal claimant is ordinarily possible only if the application for supplementary registration and fee are received in the Copyright Office within the last year of the relevant first-term copyright. If the error or omission in a basic renewal registration is extremely minor, and does not involve the identity of the renewal claimant or the legal basis of the claim, supplementary registration may be made at any time. In an exceptional case, however, supplementary registration may be made to correct the name of the renewal claimant and the legal basis of the claim at any time if clear, convincing, objective documentation is submitted to the Copyright Office which proves that an inadvertent error was made in failing to designate the correct living statutory renewal claimant in the basic renewal registration.

(c) *Form and content of application for supplementary registration*. (1) An application for supplementary registration shall be made on a form prescribed by the Copyright Office, shall be accompanied by a fee of $20,[2] and shall contain the following information:

(i) The title of the work as it appears in the basic registration, including previous or alternative titles if they appear;

(ii) The registration number of the basic registration;

(iii) The year when the basic registration was completed;

(iv) The name or names of the author or authors of the work, and the copyright claimant or claimants in the work, as they appear in the basic registration;

(v) In the case of a correction:

(A) The line number and heading or description of the part of the basic registration where the error occurred;

(B) A transcription of the erroneous information as it appears in the basic registration;

(C) A statement of the correct information as it should have appeared; and

(D) If desired, an explanation of the error or its correction;

(vi) In the case of an amplification:

(A) The line number and heading or description of the part of the basic registration where the information to be amplified appears;

(B) A clear and succinct statement of the information to be added; and

(C) If desired, an explanation of the amplification;

(vii) The name and address:

(A) To which correspondence concerning the application should be sent; and

(B) To which the certificate of supplementary registration should be mailed; and

(viii) A certification. The certification shall consist of:

(A) The handwritten signature of the author, other copyright claimant, or owner of exclusive right(s) in the work, or of the duly authorized agent of such author, other claimant or owner (who shall also be identified);

(B) The typed or printed name of the person whose signature appears, and the date of signature; and

(C) A statement that the person signing the application is the author, other copyright claimant or owner of exclusive right(s) in the work, or the authorized agent of such author, other claimant, or owner, and that the statements made in the application are correct to the best of that person's knowledge.

(2) The form prescribed by the Copyright Office for the foregoing purposes is designated ''Application for Supplementary Copyright Registration (Form CA)''. Copies of the form are available free upon request to the Public Information Office, Library of Congress, Copyright Office, 101 Independence Avenue, S.E., Washington, DC 20559-6000.

(3) Copies, phonorecords or supporting documents cannot be made part of the record of a supplementary registration and should not be submitted with the application.

(d) *Effect of supplementary registration*. (1) When a supplementary registration is completed, the Copyright Office will assign it a new registration number in

[2] The $20 fee applies to all applications for supplementary registration, including those made to correct or amplify the information in a renewal registration.

the appropriate class, and issue a certificate of supplementary registration under that number.

(2) As provided in section 408(d) of title 17, the information contained in a supplementary registration augments but does not supersede that contained in the basic registration. The basic registration will not be expunged or cancelled.

(Pub. L. 94–553; 17 U.S.C. 205, 408(d), 601(b), 702, 708)

[43 FR 773, Jan. 4, 1978, as amended at 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991; 57 FR 60482, Dec. 21, 1992; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995; 62 FR 35421, July 1, 1997]

§ 201.6 Payment and refund of Copyright Office fees.

(a) *In general.* All fees sent to the Copyright Office should be in the form of a money order, check or bank draft payable to the Register of Copyrights. Coin or currency sent to the Office in letters or packages will be at the remitter's risk. Remittances from foreign countries should be in the form of an International Money Order or Bank Draft payable and immediately negotiable in the United States for the full amount of the fee required. Uncertified checks are accepted subject to collection. Where the statutory fee is submitted in the form of a check, the registration of the copyright claim or other record made by the Office is provisional until payment in money is received. In the event the fee is not paid, the registration or other record shall be expunged.

(b) *Deposit accounts.* Persons or firms having a considerable amount of business with the Copyright Office may, for their own convenience, prepay copyright expenses by establishing a Deposit Account.

(c) *Refunds.* Money remitted to the Copyright Office for original, basic, supplementary or renewal registration will not be refunded if the claim is rejected because the material deposited does not constitute copyrightable subject matter or because the claim is invalid for any other reason. Payments made by mistake or in excess of the statutory fee will be refunded, but amounts of $50 or less will not be refunded unless specifically requested, and refunds of less than $2 may be made in postage stamps. Before making any refund for fees remitted in relation to nonregistration copyright services, the Copyright Office shall deduct an administrative processing fee in an amount equivalent to one hour of the requested service, or the minimum fee set by statute for the service.

(d) *Return of deposit copies.* Copies of works deposited in the Copyright Office pursuant to law are either retained in the Copyright Office, transferred for the permanent collections or other uses of the Library of Congress, or disposed of according to law. When an application is rejected, the Copyright Office reserves the right to retain the deposited copies.

(17 U.S.C. 702, 708(c))

[24 FR 4955, June 18, 1959, as amended at 46 FR 25442, May 7, 1981; 56 FR 7813, Feb. 26, 1991; 59 FR 38371, July 28, 1994]

§ 201.7 Cancellation of completed registrations.

(a) *Definition.* Cancellation is an action taken by the Copyright Office whereby either the registration is eliminated on the ground that the registration is invalid under the applicable law and regulations, or the registration number is eliminated and a new registration is made under a different class and number.

(b) *General policy.* The Copyright Office will cancel a completed registration only in those cases where:

(1) It is clear that no registration should have been made because the work does not constitute copyrightable subject matter or fails to satisfy the other legal and formal requirements for obtaining copyright;

(2) Registration may be authorized but the application, deposit material, or fee does not meet the requirements of the law and Copyright Office regulations, and the Office is unable to get the defect corrected; or

(3) An existing registration in the wrong class is to be replaced by a new registration in the correct class.

(c) *Circumstances under which a registration will be cancelled.* (1) Where the Copyright Office becomes aware after registration that a work is not copyrightable, either because the authorship is de minimis or the work does not

contain authorship subject to copyright, the registration will be cancelled. The copyright claimant will be notified by correspondence of the proposed cancellation and the reasons therefor, and be given 30 days, from the date the Copyright Office letter is mailed, to show cause in writing why the cancellation should not be made. If the claimant fails to respond within the 30 day period, or if the Office after considering the response, determines that the registration was made in error and not in accordance with title 17 U.S.C., Chapters 1 through 8, the registration will be cancelled.

(2) When a check received in payment of a registration fee is returned to the Copyright Office marked ''insufficient funds'' or is otherwise uncollectible the Copyright Office will immediately cancel any registration(s) for which the dishonored check was submitted and will notify the remitter the registration has been cancelled because the check was returned as uncollectible.

(3) Where registration is made in the wrong class, the Copyright Office will cancel the first registration, replace it with a new registration in the correct class, and issue a corrected certificate.

(4) Where registration has been made for a work which appears to be copyrightable but after registration the Copyright Office becomes aware that, on the administrative record before the Office, the statutory requirements have apparently not been satisfied, or that information essential to registration has been omitted entirely from the application or is questionable, or correct deposit material has not been deposited, the Office will correspond with the copyright claimant in an attempt to secure the required information or deposit material or to clarify the information previously given on the application. If the Copyright Office receives no reply to its correspondence within 30 days of the date the letter is mailed, or the response does not resolve the substantive defect, the registration will be cancelled. The correspondence will include the reason for the cancellation. The following are instances where a completed registration will be cancelled unless the substantive defect in the registration can be cured:

(i) Eligibility for registration has not been established;

(ii) A work published before March 1, 1989, was registered more than 5 years after the date of first publication and the deposit copy or phonorecord does not contain a statutory copyright notice;

(iii) The deposit copies or phonorecords of a work published before January 1, 1978 do not contain a copyright notice or the notice is defective;

(iv) A renewal claim was registered after the statutory time limits for registration had apparently expired;

(v) The application and copy(s) or phonorecord(s) do not match each other and the Office cannot locate a copy or phonorecord as described in the application elsewhere in the Copyright Office or the Library of Congress;

(vi) The application for registration does not identify a copyright claimant or it appears from the transfer statement on the application or elsewhere that the ''claimant'' named in the application does not have the right to claim copyright;

(vii) A claim to copyright is based on material added to a preexisting work and a reading of the application in its totality indicates that there is no copyrightable new material on which to base a claim;

(viii) A work subject to the manufacturing provisions of the Act of 1909 was apparently published in violation of those provisions;

(ix) For a work published after January 1, 1978 the only claimant given on the application was deceased on the date the application was certified;

(x) A work is not anonymous or pseudonymous and statements on the application and/or copy vary so much that the author cannot be identified; and

(xi) Statements on the application conflict or are so unclear that the claimant cannot be adequately identified.

(d) *Minor substantive errors.* Where a registration includes minor substantive errors or omissions which would generally have been rectified before registration, the Copyright Office will attempt to rectify the error

through correspondence with the remitter. Except in those cases enumerated in paragraph (c) of this section, if the Office is unable for any reason to obtain the correct information or deposit copy the registration record will be annotated to state the nature of the informality and show that the Copyright Office attempted to correct the registration.

[50 FR 40835, Oct. 7, 1985, as amended at 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995]

§ 201.8 [Reserved]

§ 201.9 Recordation of agreements between copyright owners and public broadcasting entities.

(a) License agreements voluntarily negotiated between one or more owners of copyright in published nondramatic musical works and published pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works, and one or more public broadcasting entities, and terms and rates of royalty payments agreed to among owners of copyright in nondramatic literary works and public broadcasting entities will be filed in the Copyright Office by recordation upon payment of the fee prescribed by this section. The document submitted for recordation shall meet the following requirements:

(1) It shall be an original instrument of agreement; or it shall be a legible photocopy or other full-size facsimile reproduction of an original, accompanied by a certification signed by at least one of the parties to the agreement, or an authorized representative of that party, that the reproduction is a true copy;

(2) It shall bear the signatures of all persons identified as parties to the agreement, or of their authorized agents or representatives;

(3) It shall be complete on its face, and shall include any schedules, appendixes, or other attachments referred to in the instrument as being part of it; and

(4) It shall be clearly identified, in its body or a covering transmittal letter, as being submitted for recordation under 17 U.S.C. 118.

(b) For a document covering not more than one title the basic recordation fee is $20. For additional titles, a charge of $10 is added for each group of not more than 10 titles.

(c) The date of recordation is the date when all of the elements required for recordation, including the prescribed fee, have been received in the Copyright Office. A document is filed in the Copyright Office, and a filing in the Copyright Office takes place on the date of recordation. After recordation the document is returned to the sender with a certificate of record.

(17 U.S.C. 207 and 17 U.S.C. 118, 702, 708(11), as amended by Pub. L. 94–553)

[42 FR 16777, Mar. 30, 1977, as amended at 46 FR 33249, June 29, 1981; 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991]

§ 201.10 Notices of termination of transfers and licenses covering extended renewal term.

(a) *Form.* The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons serving notices of termination.

(b) *Contents.* (1) A notice of termination must include a clear identification of each of the following:

(i) The name of each grantee whose rights are being terminated, or the grantee's successor in title, and each address at which service of the notice is being made;

(ii) The title and the name of at least one author of, and the date copyright was originally secured in, each work to which the notice of termination applies; and, if possible and practicable, the original copyright registration number;

(iii) A brief statement reasonably identifying the grant to which the notice of termination applies;

(iv) The effective date of termination; and

(v) In the case of a termination of a grant executed by a person or persons other than the author, a listing of the surviving person or persons who executed the grant. In the case of a termination of a grant executed by one or more of the authors of the work where the termination is exercised by the successors of a deceased author, a listing of the names and relationships to that deceased author of all of the following, together with specific indication of the person or persons executing the notice who constitute more than one-half of that aurhor's termination

interest: That author's surviving widow or widower; and all of that author's surviving children; and, where any of that author's children are dead, all of the surviving children of any such deceased child of that author; however, instead of the information required by this paragraph (v), the notice may contain both of the following:

(A) A statement of as much of such information as is currently available to the person or persons signing the notice, with a brief explanation of the reasons why full information is or may be lacking; together with

(B) A statement that, to the best knowledge and belief of the person or persons signing the notice, the notice has been signed by all persons whose signature is necessary to terminate the grant under section 304(c) of Title 17, U.S.C., or by their duly authorized agents.

(2) Clear identification of the information specified by paragraph (b)(1) of this section requires a complete and unambiguous statement of facts in the notice itself, without incorporation by reference of information in other documents or records.

(c) *Signature.* (1) In the case of a termination of a grant executed by a person or persons other than the author, the notice shall be signed by all of the surviving person or persons who executed the grant, or by their duly authorized agents.

(2) In the case of a termination of a grant executed by one or more of the authors of the work, the notice as to any one author's share shall be signed by that author or by his or her duly authorized agent. If that author is dead, the notice shall be signed by the number and proportion of the owners of that author's termination interest required under clauses (1) and (2) of section 304(c) of title 17, U.S.C., or by their duly authorized agents, and shall contain a brief statement of their relationship or relationships to that author.

(3) Where a signature is by a duly authorized agent, it shall clearly identify the person or persons on whose behalf the agent is acting.

(4) The handwritten signature of each person effecting the termination shall either be accompanied by a statement of the full name and address of that person, typewritten or printed legibly by hand, or shall clearly correspond to such a statement elswhere in the notice.

(d) *Service.* (1) The notice of termination shall be served upon each grantee whose rights are being terminated, or the grantee's successor in title, by personal service, or by first-class mail sent to an address which, after a reasonable investigation, is found to be the last known address of the grantee or successor in title.

(2) The service provision of section 304(c)(4) of Title 17, U.S.C., will be satisfied if, before the notice of termination is served, a reasonable investigation is made by the person or persons executing the notice as to the current ownership of the rights being terminated, and based on such investigation:

(i) If there is no reason to believe that such rights have been transferred by the grantee to a successor in title, the notice is served on the grantee; or

(ii) If there is reason to believe that such rights have been transferred by the grantee to a particular successor in title, the notice is served on such successor in title.

(3) For purposes of paragraph (d)(2) of this section, a *reasonable investigation* includes, but is not limited to, a search of the records in the Copyright Office; in the case of a musical composition with respect to which performing rights are licensed by a performing rights society, a ''reasonable investigation'' also includes a report from that performing rights society identifying the person or persons claiming current ownership of the rights being terminated.

(4) Compliance with the provisions of clauses (2) and (3) of this paragraph (d) will satisfy the service requirements of section 304(c)(4) of Title 17, U.S.C. However, as long as the statutory requirements, have been met, the failure to comply with the regulatory provisions of paragraph (d) (2) or (3) of this section will not affect the validity of the service.

(e) *Harmless errors.* (1) Harmless errors in a notice that do not materially affect the adequacy of the information

required to serve the purposes of section 304(c) of Title 17, U.S.C., shall not render the notice invalid.

(2) Without prejudice to the general rule provided by paragraph (e)(1) of this section (e), errors made in giving the date or registration number referred to in paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section, or in complying with the provisions of paragraph (b)(1)(v) of this section, or in describing the precise relationships under clause (2) of paragraph (c) of this section, shall not affect the validity of the notice if the errors were made in good faith and without any intention to deceive, mislead, or conceal relevant information.

(f) *Recordation.* (1) A copy of the notice of termination will be recorded in the Copyright Office upon payment of the fee prescribed by paragraph (2) of this paragraph (f) and upon compliance with the following provisions:

(i) The copy submitted for recordation shall be a complete and exact duplicate of the notice of termination as served and shall include the actual signature or signatures, or a reproduction of the actual signature or signatures, appearing on the notice; where separate copies of the same notice were served on more than one grantee or successor in title, only one copy need be submitted for recordation; and

(ii) The copy submitted for recordation shall be accompanied by a statement setting forth the date on which the notice was served and the manner of service, unless such information is contained in the notice.

(2) For a document covering not more than one title the basic recordation fee is $20. For additional titles, a charge of $10 is made for each group of not more than 10 titles.

(3) The date of recordation is the date when all of the elements required for recordation, including the prescribed fee and, if required, the statement referred to in paragraph (f)(1)(ii) of this section, have been received in the Copyright Office. After recordation the document, including any accompanying statement, is returned to the sender with a certificate of record.

(4) Recordation of a notice of termination by the Copyright Office is without prejudice to any party claiming that the legal and formal requirements for issuing a valid notice have not been met.

(Pub. L. 94–553; 17 U.S.C. 304(c), 702, 708(11))

[42 FR 45920, Sept. 13, 1977, as amended at 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995]

§ 201.11 Satellite carrier statements of account covering statutory licenses for secondary transmissions for private home viewing.

(a) *General.* This section prescribes rules pertaining to the deposit of Statements of Account and royalty fees in the Copyright Office as required by the satellite carrier license of section 119(b)(1) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 103–369, in order that certain secondary transmissions by satellite carriers for private home viewing be subject to statutory licensing.

(b) *Definitions.* (1) The terms *distributor, network station, private home viewing, satellite carrier, subscriber, superstation,* and *unserved household* have the meanings set forth in section 119(d) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 103–369.

(2) The terms *primary transmission* and *secondary transmission* have the meanings set forth in section 111(f) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(c) *Accounting periods and deposit.* (1) Statements of Account shall cover semiannual accounting periods of January 1 through June 30, and July 1 through December 31, and shall be deposited in the Copyright Office, together with the total statutory royalty fee or the confirmed arbitration royalty fee for such accounting periods as prescribed by section 119(b)(1)(B) and (c)(3) of title 17, by not later than July 30, if the Statement of Account covers the January 1 through June 30 accounting period, and by not later than the immediately following January 30, if the Statement of Account covers the July 1 through December 31 accounting period.

(2) Upon receiving a Statement of Account and royalty fee, the Copyright Office will make an official record of the actual date when such statement and fee were physically received in the Copyright Office. Thereafter, the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office will examine the statement and fee

for obvious errors or omissions appearing on the face of the documents, and will require that any such obvious errors or omissions be corrected before final processing of the documents is completed. If, as the result of communications between the Copyright Office and the satellite carrier, an additional fee is deposited or changes or additions are made in the Statement of Account, the date that additional deposit or information was actually received in the Office will be added to the official record of the case. However, completion by the Copyright Office of the final processing of a Statement of Account and royalty fee deposit shall establish only the fact of such completion and the date or dates of receipt shown in the official record. It shall in no case be considered a determination that the Statement of Account was, in fact, properly prepared and accurate, that the correct amount of the royalty fee had been deposited, that the statutory time limits for filing had been met, or that any other requirements to qualify for a statutory license have been satisfied.

(3) Statements of Account and royalty fees received before the end of the particular accounting period they purport to cover will not be processed by the Copyright Office. Statements of Account and royalty fees received after the filing deadlines of July 30 or January 30, respectively, will be accepted for whatever legal effect they may have, if any.

(4) In the Register's discretion, four years after the close of any calendar year, the Register may close out the royalty payments account for that calendar year, and may treat any funds remaining in such account and any subsequent deposits that would otherwise be attributable to that calendar year as attributable to the succeeding calendar year.

(d) *Forms.* (1) Each Statement of Account shall be furnished on an appropriate form prescribed by the Copyright Office, and shall contain the information required by that form and its accompanying instructions. Computation of the copyright royalty fee shall be in accordance with the procedures set forth in the forms. Copies of Statement of Account forms are available free upon request to the Licensing Division, United States Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20557.

(2) The form prescribed by the Copyright Office is designated ''Statement of Account for Secondary Transmissions by Satellite Carriers to Home Viewers.''

(e) *Contents.* Each Statement of Account shall contain the following information:

(1) A clear designation of the accounting period covered by the Statement.

(2) The designation ''Owner'' followed by:

(i) The full legal name of the satellite carrier. If the owner is a partnership, the name of the partnership is to be followed by the name of at least one individual partner;

(ii) Any other name or names under which the owner conducts the business of the satellite carrier; and

(iii) The full mailing address of the owner. Ownership, other names under which the owner conducts the business of the satellite carrier, and the owner's mailing address shall reflect facts existing on the last day of the accounting period covered by the Statement of Account.

(3) The designation ''Primary Transmitters,'' followed by the call signs, broadcast channel numbers, station locations (city and state of license), and a notation whether that primary transmitter is a ''super station'' or ''network station'' transmitted to any or all of the subscribers of the satellite carrier during any portion of the period covered by the Statement of Account.

(4) The designation ''Superstations,'' followed by:

(i) The call sign of each superstation signal carried for each month of the period covered by the Statement, and

(ii) The total number of subscribers to each superstation for each month of the period covered by the Statement. This number is the number of subscribers to each superstation receiving the retransmission on the last day of each month.

(5) The designation ''Network Stations,'' followed by:

(i) The call sign of each network station carried for each month of the period covered by the Statement, and

(ii) The total number of subscribers to each network station for each month of the period covered by the Statement. This number is the number of subscribers to each network station receiving the retransmission on the last day of each month.

(6) The total number of subscribers to each superstation for the six-month period covered by the Statement multiplied by the statutory royalty rate of 17.5 cents per subscriber, or in the case of syndex-proof superstations as defined in 37 CFR 258.2, 14 cents (or in lieu thereof, the arbitrated rate, if applicable).

(7) The total number of subscribers to each network station for the six-month period covered by the Statement multiplied by the statutory royalty rate of six (6) cents per subscriber (or, in lieu thereof, the arbitrated rate, if applicable).

(8) The name, address, business title, and telephone number of the individual or individuals to be contacted for information or questions concerning the content of the Statement of Account.

(9) The handwritten signature of:

(i) The owner of the satellite carrier or a duly authorized agent of the owner, if the owner is not a partnership or a corporation; or

(ii) A partner, if the owner is a partnership; or

(iii) An officer of the corporation, if the owner is a corporation. The signature shall be accompanied by:

(A) The printed or typewritten name of the person signing the Statement of Account;

(B) The date of signature;

(C) If the owner of the satellite carrier is a partnership or a corporation, by the title or official position held in the partnership or corporation by the person signing the Statement of Account;

(D) A certification of the capacity of the person signing; and

(E) The following statement:

I, the undersigned Owner or Agent of the Satellite Carrier, or Officer or Partner, if the Satellite Carrier is a Corporation or Partnership, have examined this Statement of Account and hereby declare under penalty of law that all statements of fact contained herein are true, complete, and correct to the best of my knowledge, information, and belief, and are made in good faith.

(18 U.S.C., section 1001 (1986))

(f) *Royalty fee payment.* All royalty fees may be paid by electronic transfer of funds, provided the payment is received in the designated United States Federal Reserve Bank by the filing deadline for the relevant accounting period. Except in the case of an electronic payment, the royalty fee payable for the period covered by the Statement of Account shall accompany that Statement of Account and shall be deposited at the Copyright Office with it. Payment must be in the form of a certified check, cashier's check, or a money order, payable to: Register of Copyrights; or a United States Treasury electronic payment.

(g) *Corrections, supplemental payments, and refunds.* (1) Upon compliance with the procedures and within the time limits set forth in paragraph (g)(3) of this section, corrections to Statements of Account will be placed on record, supplemental royalty fee payments will be received for deposit, or refunds will be issued, in the following cases:

(i) Where, with respect to the accounting period covered by a Statement of Account, any of the information given in the Statement filed in the Copyright Office is incorrect or incomplete; or

(ii) Where calculation of the royalty fee payable for a particular accounting period was incorrect, and the amount deposited in the Copyright Office for that period was either too high or too low.

(2) Corrections to Statements of Account will not be placed on record, supplemental royalty fee payments will not be received for deposit, and refunds will not be issued, where the information in the Statements of Account, the royalty fee calculations, or the payments were correct as of the date on which the accounting period ended, but changes (for example, addition or deletion of a signal) took place later.

(3) Requests that corrections to a Statement of Account be placed on record, that fee payments be accepted, or requests for the issuance of refunds,

shall be made only in the cases mentioned in paragraph (g)(1) of this section. Such requests shall be addressed to the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office, and shall meet the following conditions:

(i) The request must be in writing, must clearly identify its purpose, and, in the case of a request for a refund, must be received in the Copyright Office before the expiration of 30 days from the last day of the applicable Statement of Account filing period, or before the expiration of 30 days from the date of receipt at the Copyright Office of the royalty payment that is the subject of the request, whichever time period is longer. A telegraphic or similar unsigned communication will be considered to meet this requirement if it clearly identifies the basis of the request, if it is received in the Copyright Office within the required 30-day period, and if a written request meeting all the conditions of this paragraph (g)(3) is also received in the Copyright Office within 14 days after the end of such 30-day period:

(ii) The Statement of Account to which the request pertains must be sufficiently identified in the request (by inclusion of the name of the owner of the satellite carrier and the accounting period in question) so that it can be readily located in the records of the Copyright Office;

(iii) The request must contain a clear statement of the facts on which it is based and provide a clear basis on which a refund may be granted, in accordance with the following procedures:

(A) In the case of a request filed under paragraph (g)(1)(i) of this section, where the information given in the Statement of Account is incorrect or incomplete, the request must clearly identify the erroneous or incomplete information and provide the correct or additional information:

(B) In the case of a request filed under paragraph (g)(1)(ii) of this section, where the royalty fee was miscalculated and the amount deposited in the Copyright Office was either too high or too low, the request must be accompanied by an affidavit under the official seal of any officer authorized to administer oaths within the United States, or a statement in accordance with section 1746 of title 28 of the United States Code, made and signed in accordance with paragraph (e)(9) of this section. The affidavit or statement shall describe the reasons why the royalty fee was improperly calculated and include a detailed analysis of the proper royalty calculation.

(iv)(A) All requests filed under this paragraph (g) must be accompanied by a filing fee in the amount of $15 for each Statement of Account involved. Payment of this fee may be in the form of a personal or company check, or of a certified check, cashier's check or money order, payable to: Register of Copyrights. No request will be processed until the appropriate filing fees are received.

(B) All requests that a supplemental royalty fee payment be received for deposit under this paragraph (g) must be accompanied by a remittance in the full amount of such fee. Payment of the supplemental royalty fee must be in the form of certified check, cashier's check, or money order, payable to: Register of Copyrights; or electronic payment. No such request will be processed until an acceptable remittance in the full amount of the supplemental royalty fee has been received.

(v) All requests submitted under this paragraph (g) must be signed by the satellite carrier owner named in the Statement of Account, or the duly authorized agent of the owner, in accordance with paragraph (e)(9) of this section.

(vi) A request for a refund is not necessary where the Licensing Division, during its examination of a Statement of Account or related document, discovers an error that has resulted in a royalty overpayment. In this case, the Licensing Division will forward the royalty refund to the satellite carrier owner named in the Statement of Account without regard to the time limitations provided for in paragraph (g)(3)(i) of this section.

(4) Following final processing, all requests submitted under this paragraph (g) will be filed with the original Statement of Account in the records of the Copyright Office. Nothing contained in this paragraph shall be considered to relieve satellite carriers from their full

obligations under title 17 of the United States Code, and the filing of a correction or supplemental payment shall have only such effect as may be attributed to it by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(h) *Interest.* (1) Royalty fee payments submitted as a result of late or amended filings will include interest. Interest will begin to accrue beginning on the first day after the close of the period for filing statements of account for all underpayments or late payments of royalties for the satellite carrier statutory license for secondary transmissions for private home viewing occurring within that accounting period. The accrual period will end on the date appearing on the certified check, cashier's check, money order, or electronic payment submitted by a satellite carrier, provided that such payment is received by the Copyright Office within five business days of that date. If the payment is not received by the Copyright Office within five business days of its date, the accrual period will end on the date of actual receipt by the Copyright Office.

(2)(i) The interest rate applicable to a specific accounting period beginning with the 1992/2 period shall be the Current Value of Funds Rate, as established by section 8025.40 of the Treasury Financial Manual and published in the FEDERAL REGISTER, in effect on the first business day after the close of the filing deadline for that accounting period. Cable operators wishing to obtain the interest rate for a specific accounting period may do so by consulting the FEDERAL REGISTER for the applicable Current Value of Funds Rate, or by contacting the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office.

(ii) The interest rate applicable to a specific accounting period earlier than the 1992/2 period shall be the rate fixed by the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office pursuant to 37 CFR 201.11(h) in effect on June 30, 1992.

(3) Interest is not required to be paid on any royalty underpayment or late payment from a particular accounting period if the interest charge is less than or equal to five dollars ($5.00).

[54 FR 27877, July 3, 1989, as amended at 55 FR 49998, Dec. 4, 1990; 56 FR 29589, June 28, 1991; 57 FR 61834, Dec. 29, 1992; 59 FR 67635, Dec. 30, 1994; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995; 60 FR 57937, Nov. 24, 1995]

§ 201.12 Recordation of certain contracts by cable systems located outside of the forty-eight contiguous states.

(a) Written, nonprofit contracts providing for the equitable sharing of costs of videotapes and their transfer, as identified in section 111(e)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code as amended by Pub. L. 94–553, will be filed in the Copyright Office by recordation upon payment of the fee prescribed by this section. The document submitted for recordation shall meet the following requirements:

(1) It shall be an original instrument of contract; or it shall be a legible photocopy or other full-size facsimile reproduction of an original, accompanied by a certification signed by at least one of the parties to the contract, or an authorized representative of that party, that the reproduction is a true copy;

(2) It shall bear the signatures of all persons identified as parties to the contract, or of their authorized agents or representatives;

(3) It shall be complete on its face, and shall include any schedules, appendixes, or other attachments referred to in the instrument as being part of it; and

(4) It shall be clearly identified, in its body or a covering transmittal letter, as being submitted for recordation under 17 U.S.C. 111(e).

(b) For a document covering not more than one title the basic recordation fee is $20. For additional titles, a charge of $10 is added for each group of not more than 10 titles.

(c) The date of recordation is the date when all of the elements required for recordation, including the prescribed fee, have been received in the Copyright Office. A document is filed in the Copyright Office and a filing in the Copyright Office takes place on the

date of recordation. After recordation the document is returned to the sender with a certificate of record.

(Pub. L. 94–553; 17 U.S.C. 111, 702, 708(11))

[42 FR 53961, Oct. 4, 1977, as amended at 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991]

§ 201.13 Notices of objection to certain noncommercial performances of nondramatic literary or musical works.

(a) *Definitions.* (1) A *Notice of Objection* is a notice, as required by section 110(4) of title 17 of the United States Code as amended by Pub. L. 94–553, to be served as a condition of preventing the noncommercial performance of a nondramatic literary or musical work under certain circumstances.

(2) For purposes of this section, the *copyright owner* of a nondramatic literary or musical work is the author of the work (including, in the case of a work made for hire, the employer or other person for whom the work was prepared), or a person or organization that has obtained ownership of the exclusive right, initially owned by the author of performance of the type referred to in 17 U.S.C. 110(4). If the other requirements of this section are met, a Notice of Objection may cover the works of more than one copyright owner.

(b) *Form.* The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons serving Notices of Objection.

(c) *Contents.* (1) A Notice of Objection must clearly state that the copyright owner objects to the performance, and must include all of the following:

(i) Reference to the statutory authority on which the Notice of Objection is based, either by citation of 17 U.S.C. 110(4) or by a more general characterization or description of that statutory provision;

(ii) The date and place of the performance to which an objection is being made; however, if the exact date or place of a particular performance, or both, are not known to the copyright owner, it is sufficient if the Notice describes whatever information the copyright owner has about the date and place of a particular performance, and the source of that information unless the source was considered private or confidential;

(iii) Clear identification, by title and at least one author, of the particular nondramatic literary or musical work or works, to the performance of which the copyright owner thereof is lodging objection; a Notice may cover any number of separately identified copyrighted works owned by the copyright owner or owners serving the objection. Alternatively, a blanket notice, with or without separate identification of certain copyrighted works, and purporting to cover one or more groups of copyrighted works not separately identified by title and author, shall have effect if the conditions specified in paragraph (c)(2) of this section are met; and

(iv) A concise statement of the reasons for the objection.

(2) A blanket notice purporting to cover one or more groups of copyrighted works not separately identified by title and author shall be valid only if all of the following conditions are met:

(i) The Notice shall identify each group of works covered by the blanket notice by a description of any common characteristics distinguishing them from other copyrighted works, such as common author, common copyright owner, common publisher, or common licensing agent;

(ii) The Notice shall identify a particular individual whom the person responsible for the performance can contact for more detailed information about the works covered by the blanket notice and to determine whether a particular work planned for performance is in fact covered by the Notice. Such identification shall include the full name and business and residence addresses of the individual, telephone numbers at which the individual can be reached throughout the period between service of the notice and the performance, and name, addresses, and telephone numbers of another individual to contact during that period in case the first cannot be reached.

(iii) If the copyright owner or owners of all works covered by the blanket notice is not identified in the Notice, the Notice shall include an offer to identify, by name and last known address, the owner or owners of any and all such

works, upon request made to the individual referred to in paragraph (c)(2)(ii) of this section.

(3) A Notice of Objection must also include clear and prominent statements explaining that:

(i) A failure to exclude the works identified in the Notice from the performance in question may subject the person responsible for the performance to liability for copyright infringement; and

(ii) The objection is without legal effect if there is no direct or indirect admission charge for the performance, and if the other conditions of 17 U.S.C. 110(4) are met.

(d) *Signature and identification.* (1) A Notice of Objection shall be in writing and signed by each copyright owner, or such owner's duly authorized agent, as required by 17 U.S.C. 110(4)(B)(i).

(2) The signature of each owner or agent shall be an actual handwritten signature of an individual, accompanied by the date of signature and the full name, address, and telephone number of that person, typewritten or printed legibly by hand.

(3) If a Notice of Objection is initially served in the form of a telegram or similar communication, as provided by paragraph (e) of this section, the requirement for an individual's handwritten signature shall be considered waived if the further conditions of said paragraph (e) are met.

(e) *Service.* (1) A Notice of Objection shall be served on the person responsible for the performance at least seven days before the date of the performance, as provided by 17 U.S.C. 110 (4)(B)(ii).

(2) Service of the Notice may be effected by any of the following methods:

(i) Personal service;

(ii) First-class mail;

(iii) Telegram, cablegram, or similar form of communication, if:

(A) The Notice meets all of the other conditions provided by this section; and

(B) Before the performance takes place, the person responsible for the performance receives written confirmation of the Notice, bearing the actual handwritten signature of each copyright owner or duly authorized agent.

(3) The date of service is the date the Notice of Objection is received by the person responsible for the performance or any agent or employee of that person.

(Pub. L. 94–553; 17 U.S.C. 110(4), 702)

[42 FR 64684, Dec. 28, 1977]

§ 201.14 Warnings of copyright for use by certain libraries and archives.

(a) *Definitions.* (1) A *Display Warning of Copyright* is a notice under paragraphs (d)(2) and (e)(2) of section 108 of title 17 of the United States Code as amended by Pub. L. 94–553. As required by those sections the ''Display Warning of Copyright'' is to be displayed at the place where orders for copies or phonorecords are accepted by certain libraries and archives.

(2) An *Order Warning of Copyright* is a notice under paragraphs (d)(2) and (e)(2) of section 108 of title 17 of the United States Code as amended by Pub. L. 94–553. As required by those sections the ''Order Warning of Copyright'' is to be included on printed forms supplied by certain libraries and archives and used by their patrons for ordering copies or phonorecords.

(b) *Contents.* A Display Warning of Copyright and an Order Warning of Copyright shall consist of a verbatim reproduction of the following notice, printed in such size and form and displayed in such manner as to comply with paragraph (c) of this section:

NOTICE WARNING CONCERNING COPYRIGHT RESTRICTIONS

The copyright law of the United States (title 17, United States Code) governs the making of photocopies or other reproductions of copyrighted material.

Under certain conditions specified in the law, libraries and archives are authorized to furnish a photocopy or other reproduction. One of these specific conditions is that the photocopy or reproduction is not to be ''used for any purpose other than private study, scholarship, or research.'' If a user makes a request for, or later uses, a photocopy or reproduction for purposes in excess of ''fair use,'' that user may be liable for copyright infringement.

This institution reserves the right to refuse to accept a copying order if, in its judgment, fulfillment of the order would involve violation of copyright law.

(c) *Form and manner of use.* (1) A Display Warning of Copyright shall be printed on heavy paper or other durable material in type at least 18 points in size, and shall be displayed prominently, in such manner and location as to be clearly visible, legible, and comprehensible to a casual observer within the immediate vicinity of the place where orders are accepted.

(2) An Order Warning of Copyright shall be printed within a box located prominently on the order form itself, either on the front side of the form or immediately adjacent to the space calling for the name or signature of the person using the form. The notice shall be printed in type size no smaller than that used predominantly throughout the form, and in no case shall the type size be smaller than 8 points. The notice shall be printed in such manner as to be clearly legible, comprehensible, and readily apparent to a casual reader of the form.

(Pub. L. 94–553; 17 U.S.C. 108, 702)

[42 FR 59265, Nov. 16, 1977]

§ 201.15 Voluntary license to permit reproduction of nondramatic literary works solely for use of the blind and physically handicapped.

(a) *General.* (1) The *blind and physically handicapped* are persons eligible for special loan services of the Library of Congress, as designated by section 135a of title 2 of the United States Code as amended by Pub. L. 89–552 and regulations of the Library of Congress issued under that section.

(2) This section, and any license granted or exercised under this section, applies only to nondramatic literary works that have previously been published with the consent of the copyright owner.

(b) *Form.* The Copyright Office provides the following form as part of the applications for registration of claims to copyright in nondramatic literary works (Form TX):

REPRODUCTION FOR USE OF BLIND OR PHYSICALLLY HANDICAPPED PERSONS

Signature of this form at space 10, and a check in one of the boxes here in space 8, constitutes a nonexclusive grant of permission to the Library of Congress to reproduce and distribute solely for the blind and physically handicapped and under the conditions and limitations prescribed by the regulations of the Copyright Office: (1) copies of the work identified in space 1 of this application in Braille (or similar tactile symbols); or (2) phonorecords embodying a fixation of a reading of that work; or (3) both.

a ☐ Copies and phonorecords; b ☐ Copies only; c ☐ Phonorecords only.

(c) *Terms and conditions.* A copyright owner who consents to the use of a copyrighted work by the Library of Congress for the use of the blind and physically handicapped may accomplish this purpose by checking the appropriate box on the application form, by signing the application form as a whole, and by submitting the application for copyright registration to the Copyright Office. The copyright owner thereby grants a nonexclusive license to the Library of Congress with respect to the work identified in the application, under the terms and conditions set forth in this section.

(1) The work may be reproduced only by or on behalf of the Library of Congress.

(2) The work may not be reproduced in any other form than Braille (or similar tactile symbols), or by a fixation of a reading of the work in phonorecords specifically designed for use of the blind and physically handicapped, or both, as designated by the copyright owner on the application form.

(3) Such copies and phonorecords of the work may be distributed by the Library of Congress solely for the use of the blind and physically handicapped under conditions and guidelines provided by the National Library Service for the Blind and Physically Handicapped of the Library of Congress.

(4) In the case of any conflict with any other right or license given by the copyright owner to the Library of Congress pertaining to the work, the terms and conditions most favorable to the Library of Congress for the benefit of the blind and physically handicapped shall govern.

(5) Copies and phonorecords reproduced and distributed under this license will contain identification of the author and publisher of the work, and copyright notice, as they appear on the copies or phonorecords deposited with the application.

(6) This license is nonexclusive, and the copyright owner is in no way precluded from granting other nonexclusive licenses with respect to reproduction for the use of the blind and physically handicapped, or exclusive licenses for the same purpose on condition they are subject to the nonexclusive license granted to the Library of Congress, or other exclusive or nonexclusive licenses or transfers with respect to reproduction or distribution for other purposes.

(7) All responsibility for the clearing and exercise of the rights granted is that of the Library of Congress.

(d) *Duration of license.* (1) The license is effective upon the effective date of registration for the work and, subject to the conditions and procedures stated in paragraph (d)(2) of this section, continues for the full term of copyright in the work provided in section 302 of title 17 of the United States Code as amended by Pub. L. 94–553.

(2) Termination of the license may be accomplished by the copyright owner at any time by submitting a written statement of intent to terminate, signed by the copyright owner or by the duly authorized agent of the copyright owner, to the National Library Service for the Blind and Physically Handicapped of the Library of Congress. Termination will become effective 90 days after receipt of the written statement, or at a later time set forth in the statement. Upon the effective date of termination the Library of Congress will be prohibited from reproducing additional copies or phonorecords of the work, or both, without the consent of the copyright owner, but copies or phonorecords, or both, reproduced under authority of the license before the effective date of termination may continue to be utilized and distributed under the terms of the license after its termination.

(17 U.S.C. 408, 702, 710)

[45 FR 13073, Feb. 28, 1980, as amended at 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995]

§ 201.16 [Reserved]

§ 201.17 Statements of Account covering compulsory licenses for secondary transmissions by cable systems.

(a) *General.* This section prescribes rules pertaining to the deposit of Statements of Account and royalty fees in the Coypright Office as required by section 111(d)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code in order for secondary transmissions of cable systems to be subject to compulsory licensing.

(b) *Definitions.* (1) Gross receipts for the ''basic service of providing secondary transmissions of primary broadcast transmitters'' include the full amount of monthly (or other periodic) service fees for any and all services or tiers of services which include one or more secondary transmissions of television or radio broadcast signals, for additional set fees, and for converter fees. In no case shall gross receipts be less than the cost of obtaining the signals of primary broadcast transmitters for subsequent retransmission. All such gross receipts shall be aggregated and the DSE calculations shall be made against the aggregated amount. Gross receipts for secondary transmission services do not include installation (including connection, relocation, disconnection, or reconnection) fees, separate charges for security, alarm or facsimile services, charges for late payments, or charges for pay cable or other program origination services: *Provided* That, the origination services are not offered in combination with secondary transmission service for a single fee.

(2) A *cable system* is a facility, located in any State, Territory, Trust Territory, or Possession, that in whole or in part receives signals transmitted or programs broadcast by one or more television broadcast stations licensed by the Federal Communications Commission, and makes secondary transmissions of such signals or programs by wires, cables, microwave, or other communications channels to subscribing members of the public who pay for such service. A system that meets this

definition is considered a ''cable system'' for copyright purposes, even if the FCC excludes it from being considered a ''cable system'' because of the number or nature of its subscribers or the nature of its secondary transmissions. The statements of account and royalty fees to be deposited under § 201.17 of these regulations, shall be recorded and deposited by each individual cable system desiring its secondary transmissions to be subject to compulsory licensing. The owner of each individual cable system on the last day of the accounting period covered by a Statement of Account is responsible for depositing the Statement of Account and remitting the copyright royalty fees. For these purposes, and the purpose of § 201.17 of these regulations, an ''individual'' cable system is each cable system recognized as a distinct entity under the rules, regulations, and practices of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on the last day of the accounting period covered by a Statement of Account, in the case of the preparation and deposit of a Statement of Account and copyright royalty fee. For these purposes, two or more cable facilities are considered as one individual cable system if the facilities are either:

(i) In contiguous communities under common ownership or control or

(ii) Operating from one headend.

(3) *FCC* means the Federal Communications Commission.

(4) In the case of cable systems which make secondary transmissions of all available FM radio signals, which signals are not electronically processed by the system as separate and discrete signals, an FM radio signal is ''generally receivable'' if:

(i) It is usually carried by the system whenever it is received at the system's headend, and

(ii) As a result of monitoring at reasonable times and intervals, it can be expected to be received at the system's headend, with the system's FM antenna, at least three consecutive hours each day at the same time each day, five or more days a week, for four or more weeks during any calendar quarter, with a strength of not less than fifty microvolts per meter measured at the foot of the tower or pole to which the antenna is attached.

(5) The terms *primary transmission, secondary transmission, local service area of a primary transmitter, distant signal equivalent, network station, independent station,* and *noncommercial educational station* have the meanings set forth in section 111(f) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553 and Pub. L. 103–369.

(6) A primary transmitter is a ''distant'' station, for purposes of this section, if the programming of such transmitter is carried by the cable system in whole or in part beyond the local service area of such primary transmitter.

(7) A translator station is, with respect to programs both originally transmitted and retransmitted by it, a primary transmitter for the purposes of this section. A translator station which retransmits the programs of a network station will be considered a network station; a translator station which retransmits the programs of an independent station shall be considered an independent station; and a translator station which retransmits the programs of a noncommercial educational station shall be considered a noncommercial educational station. The determination of whether a translator station should be identified as a ''distant'' station depends on the local service area of the translator station.

(8) For purposes of this section, the ''rules and regulations of the FCC in effect on October 19, 1976,'' which permitted a cable system, at its election, to omit the retransmission of a particular program and substitute another program in its place, refers to that portion of former 47 CFR 76.61(b)(2), revised June 25, 1981, and § 76.63 (referring to § 76.61(b)(2)), deleted June 25, 1981, concerning the substitution of a program that is primarily of local interest to the distant community (e.g., a local news or public affairs program).

(9) For purposes of this section, the ''rules and regulations of the FCC'', which require a cable system to omit the retransmission of a particular program and substitute another program in its place, refers to 47 CFR 76.67.

(10) For purposes of this section, a cable system ''lacks the activated channel capacity to retransmit on a

full-time basis all signals which it is authorized to carry'' only if:

(i) All of its activated television channels are used exclusively for the secondary transmission of television signals; and

(ii) The number of primary television transmitters secondarily transmitted by the cable system exceeds the number of its activated television channels.

(c) *Accounting periods and deposit.* (1) Statements of Account shall cover semiannual accounting periods of (i) January 1 through June 30, and (ii) July 1 through December 31, and shall be deposited in the Copyright Office, together with the total royalty fee for such accounting periods as prescribed by section 111(d)(1) (B), (C), or (D) of title 17, by not later than the immediately following August 29, if the Statement of Account covers the January 1 through June 30 accounting period, and by not later than the immediately following March 1, if the Statement of Account covers the July 1 through December 31 accounting period.

(2) Upon receiving a Statement of Account and royalty fee, the Copyright Office will make an official record of the actual date when such Statement and fee were physically received in the Copyright Office. Thereafter, the Office will examine the Statement and fee for obvious errors or omissions appearing on the face of the documents, and will require that any such obvious errors or omissions be corrected before final processing of the documents is completed. If, as the result of communications between the Copyright Office and the cable system, an additional fee is deposited or changes or additions are made in the Statement of Account, the date that additional deposit or information was actually received in the Office will be added to the official record of the case. However, completion by the Copyright Office of the final processing of a Statement of Account and royalty fee deposit shall establish only the fact of such completion and the date or dates of receipt shown in the official record. It shall in no case be considered a determination that the Statement of Account was, in fact, properly prepared and accurate, that the correct amount of the royalty fee had been deposited, that the statutory time limits for filing had been met, or that any other requirements to qualify for a compulsory license have been satisfied.

(3) Statements of Account and royalty fees received before the end of the particular accounting period they purport to cover will not be processed by the Copyright Office. Statements of Account and royalty fees received after the filing deadlines of August 29 or March 1, respectively, will be accepted for whatever legal effect they may have, if any.

(4) In the Register's discretion, four years after the close of any calendar year, the Register may, close out the royalty payments account for that calendar year, and may treat any funds remaining in such account and any subsequent deposits that would otherwise be attributable to that calendar year as attributable to the succeeding calendar year.

(d) *Forms.* (1) Each Statement of Account shall be furnished on an appropriate form prescribed by the Copyright Office, and shall contain the information required by that form and its accompanying instructions. Computation of distant signal equivalents and the copyright royalty fee shall be in accordance with the procedures set forth in the forms. Copies of Statement of Account forms are available free upon request to the Licensing Division, United States Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. 20557.

(2) The forms prescribed by the Copyright Office are designated ''Statement of Account for Secondary Transmissions By Cable Systems'':

(i) Form SA1–2—''Short Form'' for use by cable systems whose semiannual gross receipts for secondary transmission total less than $292,000; and

(ii) Form SA3—''Long Form'' for use by cable systems whose semiannual gross receipts for secondary transmission total $292,000 or more.

(e) *Contents.* Each Statement of Account shall contain the following information:

(1) A clear designation of the accounting period covered by the Statement.

(2) The designation ''Owner,'' followed by:

(i) The full legal name of the owner of the cable system. The ≥owner≥ of the cable system is the individual or entity that provides the retransmission service and collects payment from the end user either directly or indirectly through a third party. If the owner is a partnership, the name of the partnership is to be followed by the name of at least one individual partner;

(ii) Any other name or names under which the owner conducts the business of the cable system; and

(iii) The full mailing address of the owner.

Ownership, other names under which the owner conducts the business of the cable system, and the owner's mailing address shall reflect facts existing on the last day of the accounting period covered by the Statement of Account.

(3) The designation ''System,'' followed by:

(i) Any business or trade names used to identify the business and operation of the system, unless these names have already been given under the designation ''Owner''; and

(ii) The full mailing address of the system, unless such address is the same as the address given under the designation ''Owner''.

Business or trade names used to identify the business and operation of the system, and the system's mailing address, shall reflect the facts existing on the last day of the accounting period covered by the Statement of Account.

(4) The designation ''Area Served'', followed by the name of the community or communities served by the system. For this purpose a ''community'' is the same as a ''community unit'' as defined in FCC rules and regulations.

(5) The designation ''Channels,'' followed by:

(i) The number of channels on which the cable system made secondary transmissions to its subscribers, and

(ii) The cable system's total activated channel capacity, in each case during the period covered by the Statement.

(6) The designation ''Secondary Transmission Service: Subscribers and Rates'', followed by:

(i) A brief description of each subscriber category for which a charge is made by the cable system for the basic service of providing secondary transmissions of primary broadcast transmitters;

(ii) The number of subscribers to the cable system in each such subscriber category; and

(iii) The charge or charges made per subscriber to each such subscriber category for the basic service of providing such secondary transmissions. Standard rate variations within a particular category should be summarized; discounts allowed for advance payment should not be included. For these purposes:

(A) The description, the number of subscribers, and the charge or charges made shall reflect the facts existing on the last day of the period covered by the Statement; and

(B) Each entity (for example, the owner of a private home, the resident of an apartment, the owner of a motel, or the owner of an apartment house) which is charged by the cable system for the basic service of providing secondary transmissions shall be considered one subscriber.

(7) The designation ''Gross Receipts'', followed by the gross amount paid to the cable system by subscribers for the basic service of providing secondary transmissions of primary broadcast transmissions during the period covered by the Statement of Account. If the cable system maintains its revenue accounts on an accrual basis, gross receipts for any accounting period includes all such amounts accrued for secondary transmission service furnished during that period, regardless of when accrued:

(i) Less the amount of any bad debts actually written-off during that accounting period, excluding bad debts for secondary transmission service furnished before January 1, 1978;

(ii) Plus the amount of any previously written-off bad debts for secondary transmission service which were actually recovered during that accounting period, excluding bad debt recoveries for secondary transmission service furnished before January 1, 1978.

If the cable system maintains its revenue accounts on a cash basis, gross receipts for any accounting period includes all such amounts actually received by the cable system during that accounting period, excluding amounts paid for secondary transmission service furnished before January 1, 1978; however, amounts received before January 1, 1978, for secondary transmission service furnished after that date, are to be considered as if they had been received during the accounting period in which the service covered by such payments was furnished.

(8) The designation ''Services Other Than Secondary Transmissions: Rates,'' followed by a description of each package of service which consists solely of services other than secondary transmission services, for which a separate charge was made or established, and which the cable system furnished or made available to subscribers during the period covered by the Statement of Account, together with the amount of such charge. However, no information need be given concerning services furnished at cost. Specific amounts charged for pay cable programming need not be given if the rates are on a variable, per-program basis. (The fact of such variable charge shall be indicated.)

(9) The designation ''Primary Transmitters: Television'', followed by an identification of all primary television transmitters whose signals were carried by the cable system during the period covered by the Statement of Account, other than primary transmitters of programs carried by the cable system exclusively pursuant to rules, regulations, or authorizations of the FCC in effect on October 19, 1976, permitting the substitution of signals under certain circumstances, and required to be specially identified by paragraph (e)(11) of this section, together with the information listed below:

(i) The station call sign of the primary transmitter.

(ii) The name of the community to which that primary transmitter is licensed by the FCC (in the case of domestic signals) or with which that primary transmitter is identified (in the case of foreign signals).

(iii) The number of the channel upon which that primary transmitter broadcasts in the community to which that primary transmitter is licensed by the FCC (in the case of domestic signals) or with which that primary transmitter is identified (in the case of foreign signals).

(iv) A designation as to whether that primary transmitter is a ''network station'', an ''independent station'', or a ''noncommercial educational station''.

(v) A designation as to whether that primary transmitter is a ''distant'' station.

(vi) If that primary transmitter is a ''distant'' station, a specification of whether the signals of that primary transmitter are carried:

(A) On a part-time basis where full-time carriage is not possible because the cable system lacks the activated channel capacity to retransmit on a full-time basis all signals which it is authorized to carry; or

(B) On any other basis.

If the signals of that primary transmitter are carried on a part-time basis because of lack of activated channel capacity, the Statement shall also include a log showing the dates on which such carriage occurred, and the hours during which such carriage occurred on those dates. Hours of carriage shall be accurate to the nearest quarter-hour, except that, in any case where such part-time carriage extends to the end of the broadcast day of the primary transmitter, an approximate ending hour may be given if it is indicated as an estimate.

(vii) The information indicated by paragraph (e)(9), subclauses (v) and (vi) of this section, is not required to be given by any cable system that appropriately completed Form SA1–2 for the period covered by the Statement.

(viii) Notwithstanding the requirements of this section, where a cable system carried a distant primary transmitter under FCC rules and regulations in effect on October 19, 1976 which permitted carriage of specific network programs on a part-time basis in certain circumstances (former 47 CFR 76.59 (d) (2) and (4), 76.61(e) (2) and (4), and 76.63, referring to § 76.61(e) (2) and (4), all of which were deleted June 25, 1981), carriage of that primary

transmitter on that basis need not be reported, and that carriage is to be excluded in computing the distant signal equivalent of that primary transmitter.

(10) The designation ''Primary Transmitters: Radio'', followed by an identification of primary radio transmitters whose signals were carried by the cable system during the period covered by the Statement of Account, together with the information listed below:

(i) A designation as to whether each primary transmitter was electronically processed by the system as a separate and discrete signal.

(ii) The station call sign of each:

(A) AM primary transmitter;

(B) FM primary transmitter, the signals of which were electronically processed by the system as separate and discrete signals; and

(C) FM primary transmitter carried on an all-band retransmission basis, the signals of which were generally receivable by the system.

(iii) A designation as to whether the primary transmitter is AM or FM.

(iv) The name of the community to which that primary transmitter is licensed by the FCC (in the case of domestic signals) or with which that primary transmitter is identified (in the case of foreign signals).

(11) A special statement and program log, which shall consist of the information indicated below for all nonnetwork television programming that, during the period covered by the Statement, was carried in whole or in part beyond the local service area of the primary transmitter of such programming under (i) rules or regulations of the FCC requiring a cable system to omit the further transmission of a particular program and permitting the substitution of another program in place of the omitted transmission; or (ii) rules, regulations, or authorizations of the FCC in effect on October 19, 1976, permitting a cable system, at its election, to omit the further transmission of a particular program and permitting the substitution of another program in place of the omitted transmission:

(A) The name or title of the substitute program.

(B) Whether the substitute program was transmitted live by its primary transmitter.

(C) The station call sign of the primary transmitter of the substitute program.

(D) The name of the community to which the primary transmitter of the substitute program is licensed by the FCC (in the case of domestic signals) or with which that primary transmitter is identified (in the case of foreign signals).

(E) The date when the secondary transmission of the substitute program occurred, and the hours during which such secondary transmission occurred on that date accurate to the nearest 5 minutes.

(F) A designation as to whether deletion of the omitted program was permitted by the rules, regulations, or authorizations of the FCC in effect on October 19, 1976, or was required by the rules, regulations, or authorizations of the FCC.

(12) A statement of the total royalty fee payable for the period covered by the Statement of Account, together with a royalty fee analysis which gives a clear, complete, and detailed presentation of the determination of such fee. This analysis shall present in appropriate sequence all facts, figures, and mathematical processes used in determining such fee, and shall do so in such manner as required in the appropriate form so as to permit the Copyright Office to verify readily, from the face of the Statement of Account, the accuracy of such determination and fee. The royalty fee analysis is not required to be given by any cable system whose gross receipts from subscribers for the period covered by the Statement of Account, for the basic service of providing secondary transmissions of primary broadast transmissions, total $75,800 or less.

(13) The name, address, and telephone number of an individual who may be contacted by the Copyright Office for further information about the Statement of Account.

(14) The handwritten signature of:

(i) The owner of the cable system or a duly authorized agent of the owner, if the owner is not a partnership or a corporation; or

(ii) A partner, if the owner is a partnership; or

(iii) An officer of the corporation, if the owner is a corporation. The signature shall be accompanied by:

(A) The printed or typewritten name of the person signing the Statement of Account;

(B) The date of signature;

(C) If the owner of the cable system is a partnership or a corporation, by the title or official position held in the partnership or corporation by the person signing the Statement of Account;

(D) A certification of the capacity of the person signing; and

(E) A declaration of the veracity of the statements of fact contained in the Statement of Account and the good faith of the person signing in making such statement of fact.

(f) *Computation of distant signal equivalents.* (1) A cable system that elects to delete a particular television program and substitute for that program another television program (''substitute program'') under rules, regulations, or authorizations of the FCC in effect on October 19, 1976, which permit a cable system, at its election, to omit the retransmission of a particular program and substitute another program in its place shall compute the distant signal equivalent (''DSE'') of each primary transmitter that broadcasts one or more substitute programs by dividing:

(i) The number of the primary transmitter's live, nonnetwork, substitute programs that were carried by the cable system, during the period covered by the Statement of Account, in substitution for programs deleted at the option of the system; by

(ii) The number of days in the year in which the substitution occurred.

(2)(i) Where a cable system carries a primary transmitter on a full-time basis during any portion of an accounting period, the system shall compute a DSE for that primary transmitter as if it was carried full-time during the entire accounting period.

(ii) Where a cable system carries a primary transmitter solely on a substitute or part-time basis, in accordance with paragraph (f)(3) of this section, the system shall compute a DSE for that primary transmitter based on its cumulative carriage on a substitute or part-time basis. If that primary transmitter is carried on a full-time basis as well as on a substitute or part-time basis, the full DSE for that primary transmitter shall be the full DSE type value for that primary transmitter, for the entire accounting period.

(3)(i) In computing the DSE of a primary transmitter in a particular case of carriage before July 1, 1981, the cable system may make no prorated adjustments other than those specified as permissible ''exceptions and limitations'' in the definition of ''distant signal equivalent'' in the fifth paragraph of section 111(f) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553. Four prorated adjustments, as prescribed in the fourth and fifth sentences of said definition, are permitted under certain conditions where:

(A) A station is carried pursuant to the late-night programming rules of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on the date of carriage;

(B) A station is carried pursuant to the specialty programming rules of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on the date of carriage;

(C) A station is carried on a part-time basis where full-time carriage is not possible because the cable system lacks the activated channel capacity to retransmit on a full-time basis all signals which it is authorized to carry; and

(D) A station is carried on a ''substitute'' basis under rules, regulations, or authorizations of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on October 19, 1976.

(ii) In computing the DSE of a primary transmitter in a particular case of carriage on or after July 1, 1981, the cable system may make no prorated adjustments other than those specified as permissible ''exceptions and limitations'' in the definition of ''distant signal equivalent'' in the fifth paragraph of section 111(f) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553, and which remain in force under that provision. Two prorated adjustments, as prescribed in the fourth and fifth sentences of said definition, are permitted under certain conditions where:

(A) A station is carried on a part-time basis where full-time carriage is not possible because the cable system lacks the activated channel capacity to retransmit on a full-time basis all signals which it is authorized to carry; and

(B) A station is carried on a ''substitute'' basis under rules, regulations, or authorizations of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on October 19, 1976, which permitted a cable system, at its election, to omit the retransmission of a particular program and substitute another program in its place.

(4) In computing a DSE, a cable system may round off to the third decimal point. If a DSE is rounded off in any case in a Statement of Account, it must be rounded off throughout the Statement. Where a cable system has chosen to round off, and the fourth decimal point for a particular DSE value would, without rounding off, have been 1, 2, 3, or 4, the third decimal point remains unchanged; if, in such a case, the fourth decimal point would, without rounding off, be 5, 6, 7, 8, or 9, the third decimal point must be rounded off the next higher number.

(5) For the purposes of computing DSE values, specialty primary television transmitters in the United States and all Canadian and Mexican primary television transmitters shall be assigned a value of one.

(g) *Computation of the copyright royalty fee: Partially distant stations.* A cable system located partly within and partly without the local service area of a primary television transmitter (''partially distant station'') computes the royalty fee specified in section 111(d)(1)(B) (ii), (iii), and (iv) of the Copyright Act (''DSE fee'') by excluding gross receipts from subscribers located within that station's local service area from total gross receipts. A cable system which carries two or more partially distant stations with local service areas that do not exactly coincide shall compute a separate DSE fee for each group of subscribers who are located outside of the local service areas of exactly the same complement of distant stations. Computation of the DSE fee for each subscriber group is to be based on:

(1) The total distant signal equivalents of that group's complement of distant stations, and

(2) The total gross receipts from that group of subscribers. The copyright royalty fee for that cable system is:

(i) The total of the subscriber group royalty fees thus computed, or

(ii) 0.893 of 1 percent of the system's gross receipts from all subscribers, whichever is larger.

(h) *Computation of the copyright royalty fee pursuant to the 1982 cable rate adjustment.* (1) For the purposes of this paragraph, in addition to the definitions of paragraph (b) of this section, the following definitions shall also apply:

(i) *Current base rate* means the applicable royalty rates in effect on December 31, 1982, as reflected in 37 CFR 256.2(a).

(ii) If the 3.75% rate does not apply to certain DSE's in the case of a cable system located wholly or in part within a top 100 television market, the current base rate together with the surcharge shall apply. However, the surcharge shall not apply for carriage of a particular signal first carried prior to March 31, 1972. With respect to statements of account covering the filing period beginning January 1, 1990, and subsequent filing periods, the current base rate together with the surcharge shall apply only to those DSE's that represent commercial VHF signals which place a predicted Grade B contour, in whole or in part, over a cable system. The surcharge will not apply if the signal is exempt from the syndicated exclusivity rules in effect on June 24, 1981.

(iii) The *3.75% rate* means the rate established by 37 CFR 256.2(c), in effect on March 15, 1983.

(iv) *Top 100 television market* means a television market defined or interpreted as being within either the ''top 50 television markets'' or ''second 50 television markets'' in accordance with 47 CFR 76.51, in effect on June 24, 1981.

(v) The *1982 cable rate adjustment* means the rate adjustment adopted by the Copyright Royalty Tribunal on October 20, 1982 (CRT Docket No. 81–2, 47 FR 52146, November 19, 1982).

(vi) The terms *DSE* or *DSE's* mean ''distant signal equivalent(s)'' as defined in 17 U.S.C. 111(f) and any fraction thereof.

(2) A cable system filing Form SA3 shall compute its royalty fee in the following manner:

(i) The cable system shall first determine those DSE's to which the 3.75% rate established by 37 CFR 256.2(c) applies.

(ii) If the 3.75% rate does not apply to certain DSE's in the case of a cable system located wholly or in part within a top 100 television market, the current base rate together with the surcharge shall apply. However, the surcharge shall not apply for carriage of a particular signal first carried prior to March 31, 1972. With respect to statements of account covering the filing period beginning January 1, 1990, and subsequent filing periods, the current base rate together with the surcharge shall apply only to those DSE's that represent commercial VHF signals which place a predicted Grade B contour, in whole or in part, over a cable system. The surcharge will not apply if the signal is exempt from the syndicated exclusivity rules in effect on June 24, 1981.

(iii) If the 3.75% rate does not apply to certain DSE's, in the case of a cable system located wholly outside a top 100 television market, the current base rate shall apply.

(iv) Commencing with the semiannual accounting period of January 1, 1998, through June 30, 1998, the 3.75% rate applies to certain DSE's with respect to the communities within the cable system where carriage would not have been permitted under the rules and regulations of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on June 24, 1981, but in all other communities within the cable system, the current base rate shall apply. Such computation shall be made as provided for on Form SA3.

(3) A cable system whose semiannual gross receipts for secondary transmissions totalled $214,000 or more during the period January 1, 1983, through June 30, 1983, shall compute its royalty fee for carriage during that period in the following manner:

(i) Copyright royalty fees must be paid on the basis of carriage for the entire accounting period except where proration of the DSE is permitted as described in paragraph (f)(3) of this section.

(ii) Where a distant signal was carried at any time only between January 1, 1983, and March 14, 1983;

(A) In the case of a cable system located wholly or in part within a top 100 television market, the current base rate, together with the surcharge shall apply. However, the surcharge shall not apply for carriage of a particular signal first carried prior to March 31, 1972.

(B) In case of a cable system located wholly outside a top 100 television market, the current base rate shall apply.

(iii) Where a distant signal was carried at any time after March 14, 1983;

(A) The cable system shall first determine those DSE's to which the 3.75% rate established by 37 CFR 256.2(c) applies.

(B) If the 3.75% rate is applicable to a particular DSE, it shall be applied against the per centum .5967 (representing the number of days from March 15, 1983, through June 30, 1983, inclusive, in relation to the entire accounting period); and either

(*1*) In the case of cable system located wholly or in part within a top 100 television market, the current base rate, together with the surcharge, applied against the per centum .4033 (representing the number of days from January 1, 1983, through March 14, 1983, inclusive, in relation to the entire accounting period); however, the surcharge shall not apply for carriage of a particular signal first carried prior to March 31, 1972; or

(*2*) In the case of a cable system located wholly outside a top 100 television market, the current base rate applied against the per centum .4033.

(C) If the 3.75% rate does not apply to certain DSE's, in the case of a cable system located wholly or in part within a top 100 television market, the current base rate together with the surcharge shall apply. However, the surcharge shall not apply for carriage of a particular signal first carried prior to March 31, 1972.

(D) If the 3.75% rate does not apply to certain DSE's, in the case of a cable system located wholly outside a top 100 television market, the current base rate shall apply.

(4)(i) Separate Supplemental DSE Schedules as prescribed by the Copyright Office shall be completed and filed by a cable system affected by the 1982 cable rate adjustment for the accounting periods January 1, 1983, through June 30, 1983 (83–1), and July 1, 1983, through December 31, 1983 (83–2). Each Supplemental DSE schedule shall contain the information required by that form and its accompanying instructions.

(ii) The Supplemental DSE Schedule will be mailed to all cable systems whose gross receipts for secondary transmissions total $214,000 or more either for accounting period 83–1 or for 83–2, and shall be completed and returned to the Copyright Office with the supplemental royalty fee due, if any, within sixty-five (65) days from the date of mailing by the Copyright Office.

(iii) Cable systems located wholly outside all major and smaller television markets as defined by the FCC are not affected by the 1982 cable rate adjustment. Such systems shall complete a certifying statement provided in the Supplemental DSE Schedule and return it within sixty-five days from the date of mailing by the Copyright Office.

(5)(i) It shall be presumed that the 3.75% rate of 37 CFR 308.2(c) applies to DSE's accruing from newly added distant signals, carried for the first time by a cable system after June 24, 1981.

(ii) The presumption of paragraph (h)(5)(i) of this section can be rebutted in whole or in part:

(A) By actual carriage of a particular distant signal prior to June 25, 1981, as reported in Statements of Account duly filed with the Copyright Office (''actual carriage''), unless the prior carriage was not permitted by the FCC; or

(B) By carriage of no more than the number of distant signals which was or would have been allotted to the cable system under the FCC's quota for importation of network and nonspecialty independent stations (47 CFR 76.59(b), 76.61 (b) and (c) and 76.63, referring to 76.61 (b) and (c), in effect on June 24, 1981).

(6) To qualify as an FCC-permitted signal on the ground of individual waiver of the FCC rules (47 CFR 76.7 in effect on June 24, 1981), the waiver must have actually been granted by the FCC, and the signal must have been first carried by the cable system after April 15, 1976.

(7) Expanded geographic carriage after June 24, 1981, of a signal previously carried within only certain parts of a cable system is governed by the current base rate and the surcharge, if applicable.

(8) In cases of expanded temporal carriage of the same signal, previously carried pursuant to the FCC's former part-time or substitute carriage rules (47 CFR 76.61(b)(2), 76.61 (e)(1) and (e)(3), and 76.63, referring to 76.61 (e)(1) and (e)(3), in effect on June 24, 1981), the 3.75% rate shall be applied to any additional fraction of a DSE accruing from the expanded temporal carriage of that signal. To identify such additional DSE's, a comparison shall be made of DSE's reported for that signal in any single accounting period prior to the July 1, 1981, to December 31, 1981, period (81–2), as designated by the cable system, with the DSE's for that same signal reported in the current relevant accounting period.

(9) Substitution of like signals pursuant to 37 CFR 308.2(c) is possible at the relevant non-3.75% rate (the surcharge together with the current base rate, or the current base rate alone) only if the substitution does not exceed the number of distant signals which was or would have been allotted to the cable system under the FCC's television market quota for importation of network and nonspecialty independent stations (47 CFR 76.59(b), 76.61 (b) and (c), and 76.63, referring to 76.61 (b) and (c), in effect on June 24, 1981.

(i) *Royalty fee payment.* (1) All royalty fees may be paid by electronic transfer of funds, provided the payment is received in the designated United States Federal Reserve Bank by the filing deadline for the relevant accounting period. Except in the case of an electronic payment, the royalty fee payable for the period covered by the

Statement of Account shall accompany that Statement of Account and shall be deposited at the Copyright Office with it. Payment must be in the form of a certified check, cashier's check, or a money order, payable to: Register of Copyrights; or a United States Treasury electronic payment.

(2) Royalty fee payments submitted as a result of late or amended filings shall include interest. Interest shall begin to accrue beginning on the first day after the close of the period for filing statements of account for all underpayments of royalties for the cable compulsory license occurring within that accounting period. The accrual period shall end on the date appearing on the certified check, cashier's check, money order or electronic payment submitted by a cable system, provided that such payment is received by the Copyright Office within five business days of that date. If the payment is not received by the Copyright Office within five business days of its date, then the accrual period shall end on the date of actual receipt by the Copyright Office.

(i) The interest rate applicable to a specific accounting period beginning with the 1992/2 period shall be the Current Value of Funds Rate, as established by section 8025.40 of the Treasury Financial Manual and published in the FEDERAL REGISTER, in effect on the first business day after the close of the filing deadline for that accounting period. Cable operators wishing to obtain the interest rate for a specific accounting period may do so by consulting the FEDERAL REGISTER for the applicable Current Value of Funds Rate, or by contacting the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office.

(ii) The interest rate applicable to a specific accounting period earlier than the 1992/2 period shall be the rate fixed by the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office pursuant to 37 CFR 201.17(i) in effect on June 30, 1992.

(iii) Interest is not required to be paid on any royalty underpayment or late payment from a particular accounting period if the interest charge is less than or equal to five dollars ($5.00).

(j) *Corrections, supplemental payments, and refunds.* (1) Upon compliance with the procedures and within the time limits set forth in paragraph (j)(3) of this section, corrections to Statements of Account will be placed on record, supplemental royalty fee payments will be received for deposit, or refunds will be issued, in the following cases:

(i) Where, with respect to the accounting period covered by a Statement of Account, any of the information given in the Statement filed in the Copyright Office is incorrect or incomplete;

(ii) Where, for any reason except that mentioned in paragraph (j)(1)(iii) of this section, calculation of the royalty fee payable for a particular accounting period was incorrect, and the amount deposited in the Copyright Office for that period was either too high or too low; or

(iii) Where, for the semiannual accounting period of January 1, 1978, through June 30, 1978, the total royalty fee deposited was incorrect because the cable operator failed to compute royalties attributable to carriage of late-night, specialty, or part-time programming between January 1, 1978, and February 9, 1978.

(2) Corrections to Statements of Account will not be placed on record, supplemental royalty fee payments will not be received for deposit, and refunds will not be issued, where the information in the Statements of Account, the royalty fee calculations, or the payments were correct as of the date on which the accounting period ended, but changes (for example, addition or deletion of a distant signal) took place later.

(3) Requests that corrections to a Statement of Account be placed on record, that fee payments be accepted, or requests for the issuance of refunds, shall be made only in the cases mentioned in paragraph (j)(1) of this section. Such requests shall be addressed to the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office, and shall meet the following conditions:

(i) The request must be in writing, must clearly identify its purpose, and, in the case of a request for a refund, must be received in the Copyright Office before the expiration of 60 days from the last day of the applicable Statement of Account filing period, or before the expiration of 60 days from

the date of receipt at the Copyright Office of the royalty payment that is the subject of the request, whichever time period is longer. A request made by telephone or by telegraphic or similar unsigned communication, will be considered to meet this requirement if it clearly identifies the basis of the request, if it is received in the Copyright Office within the required 60-day period, and if a written request meeting all the conditions of this paragraph (j)(3) is also received in the Copyright Office within 14 days after the end of such 60-day period;

(ii) The Statement of Account to which the request pertains must be sufficiently identified in the request (by inclusion of the name of the owner of the cable system, the community or communities served, and the accounting period in question) so that it can be readily located in the records of the Copyright Office;

(iii) The request must contain a clear statement of the facts on which it is based and provide a clear basis on which a refund may be granted, in accordance with the following procedures:

(A) In the case of a request filed under paragraph (j)(1)(i) of this section, where the information given in the Statement of Account is incorrect or incomplete, the request must clearly identify the erroneous or incomplete information and provide the correct or additional information;

(B) In the case of a request filed under paragraph (j)(1)(ii) of this section, where the royalty fee was miscalculated and the amount deposited in the Copyright Office was either too high or too low, the request must be accompanied by an affidavit under the official seal of any officer authorized to administer oaths within the United States, or a statement in accordance with section 1746 of title 28 of the United States Code, made and signed in accordance with paragraph (e)(14) of this section. The affidavit or statement shall describe the reasons why the royalty fee was improperly calculated and include a detailed analysis of the proper royalty calculations;

(C) In the case of a request filed under paragraph (j)(1)(iii) of this section, the request shall be identified as ''Transitional and Supplemental Royalty Fee Payment'' and include a detailed analysis of the proper royalty calculations;

(iv)(A) All requests filed under this paragraph (j) (except those filed under subparagraph (1)(iii) of this paragraph must be accompanied by a filing fee in the amount of $15 for each Statement of Account involved. Payment of this fee may be in the form of a personal or company check, or of a certified check, cashier's check or money order, payable to: Register of Copyrights. No request will be processed until the appropriate filing fees are received.

(B) All requests that a supplemental royalty fee payment be received for deposit under this paragraph (j), must be accompanied by a remittance in the full amount of such fee. Payment of the supplemental royalty fee must be in the form of a certified check, cashier's check, or money order, payable to: Register of Copyrights; or an electronic payment. No such request will be processed until an acceptable remittance in the full amount of the supplemental royalty fee has been received.

(v) All requests submitted under this paragraph (j) must be signed by the cable system owner named in the Statement of Account, or the duly authorized agent of the owner, in accordance with paragraph (e)(14) of this section.

(vi) A request for a refund is not necessary where the Licensing Division, during its examination of a Statement of Account or related document, discovers an error that has resulted in a royalty overpayment. In this case, the Licensing Division will forward the royalty refund to the cable system owner named in the Statement of Account without regard to the time limitations provided for in paragraph (j)(3)(i) of this section.

(4) Following final processing, all requests submitted under this paragraph (j) will be filed with the original Statement of Account in the records of the Copyright Office. Nothing contained in this paragraph shall be considered to relieve cable systems from their full obligations under title 17 of the United States Code, and the filing of a correction or supplemental payment shall

have only such effect as may be attributed to it by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(k) *Satellite carriers not eligible.* Satellite carriers and satellite resale carriers are not eligible for the cable compulsory license based upon an interpretation of the whole of section 111 of title 17 of the United States Code. Any such entity who paid copyright royalties into the Copyright Office in an attempt to comply with 17 U.S.C. 111 may obtain a refund of such royalties by submitting a written request to the Chief, Licensing Division, Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington DC 20557 no later than March 1, 1995.

(17 U.S.C. 111, 702, 708)

[43 FR 27832, June 27, 1978]

EDITORIAL NOTE: For FEDERAL REGISTER citations affecting § 201.17, see the List of CFR Sections Affected in the Finding Aids section of this volume.

§ 201.18 Notice of intention to obtain a compulsory license for making and distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical works.

(a) *General.* (1) A ''Notice of Intention'' is a notice identified in section 115(b) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553, and required by that section to be served on a copyright owner, or in certain cases to be filed in the Copyright Office, to obtain a compulsory license to make and distribute phonorecords of nondramatic musical works.

(2) A separate Notice of Intention shall be served or filed for each nondramatic musical work embodied, or intended to be embodied, in phonorecords made under the compulsory license.

(3) For the purposes of this section, the term *copyright owner,* in the case of any work having more than one copyright owner, means any one of the co-owners. In such cases, the service of a Notice of Intention on any one of the coowners under paragraph (e)(2) of this section shall be sufficient with respect to all co–owners.

(b) *Form.* The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons serving or filing Notices of Intention.

(c) *Content.* (1) A Notice of Intention shall be clearly and prominently designated, at the head of the notice, as a ''Notice of Intention to Obtain a Compulsory License for Making and Distributing Phonorecords,'' and shall include a clear statement of the following information:

(i) The full legal name of the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license, together with all fictitious or assumed names used by such person or entity for the purpose of conducting the business of making and distributing phonorecords;

(ii) The full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the place of business of the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license. A post office box or similar designation will not be sufficient for this purpose except where it is the only address that can be used in that geographic location;

(iii) A statement of the nature of each and every business organization that the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license will use for the purpose of conducting the business of making and distributing phonorecords under the license (for example, a corporation, a partnership, or an individual proprietorship); additionally:

(A) If the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license is a corporation registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 12 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, the Notice shall so state.

(B) If the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license is a corporation that is not registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 12 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, the Notice shall include a list of the names of the corporation's directors and officers, and the names of each beneficial owner of twenty-five percent (25%) or more of the outstanding securities of the corporation.

(C) In all other cases, the Notice shall include the names of each entity or individual owning a beneficial interest of twenty-five percent (25%) or more in the entity intending to exercise the compulsory license. If a corporate entity is named in response to

this paragraph (C), then: If that corporation is registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 12 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, the Notice shall so state; if that corporation is not so registered, the Notice shall include a list of the names of the corporation's directors and officers, and the names of each beneficial owner of twenty-five percent (25%) or more of the outstanding securities of that corporation;

(iv) The fiscal year of the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license. If that fiscal year is a calendar year, the Notice shall state that this is the case;

(v) The title of the nondramatic musical work embodied or intended to be embodied in phonorecords made under the compulsory license, and the names of the author or authors of such work if known;

(vi) The types of all phonorecord configurations already made (if any) and expected to be made under the compulsory license (for example: Single disk, long-playing disk, cassette, cartridge, reel-to-reel, or a combination of them);

(vii) The expected date of initial distribution of phonorecords already made (if any) or expected to be made under the compulsory license;

(viii) The name of the principal recording artist or group actually engaged or expected to be engaged in rendering the performances fixed on phonorecords already made (if any) or expected to be made under the compulsory license;

(ix) The catalog number or numbers, and label name or names, used or expected to be used on phonorecords already made (if any) or expected to be made under the compulsory license; and

(x) In the case of phonorecords already made (if any) under the compulsory license, the date or dates of such manufacture.

(2) A ''clear statement'' of the information listed in paragraph (c)(1) of this section requires a clearly intelligible, legible, and unambiguous statement in the Notice itself and (subject to paragraph (c)(1)(iii)(A) of this section) without incorporation by reference of facts or information contained in other documents or records.

(3) Where information is required to be given by paragraph (c)(1) of this section ''if known'' or as ''expected'', such information shall be given in good faith and on the basis of the best knowledge, information, and belief of the person signing the Notice. If so given, later developments affecting the accuracy of such information shall not affect the validity of the Notice.

(d) *Signature.* The Notice shall be signed by the person or entity intending to obtain the compulsory license. If that person or entity is a corporation, the signature shall be that of a duly authorized officer of the corporation; if that person or entity is a partnership, the signature shall be that of a partner. The signature shall be accompanied by the printed or typewritten name of the person signing the Notice, and by the date of signature.

(e) *Filing and service.* (1) If, with respect to the nondramatic musical work named in the Notice of Intention, the registration or other public records of the Copyright Office do not identify the copyright owner of such work and include an address for such owner, the Notice shall be filed in the Copyright Office. Notices of Intention submitted for filing shall be accompanied by a fee of $12. Notices of Intention will be filed by being placed in the appropriate public records of the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office. The date of filing will be the date when a proper Notice and fee are both received in the Copyright Office. A written acknowledgement of receipt and filing will be provided to the sender. Upon request and payment of an additional fee of $8, a Certificate of Filing will be provided to the sender.

(2) If the registration or other public records of the Copyright Office do identify the copyright owner of the nondramatic musical work named in the Notice of Intention and include an address for such owner, the Notice shall be served on such owner by certified mail or by registered mail sent to the last address for such owner shown by the records of the Office; it shall not be necessary to file a copy of the Notice in the Copyright Office in this case.

(3) If the Notice is sent by certified or registered mail to the last address for the copyright owner shown by the

records of the Copyright Office and is returned to the sender because the copyright owner is no longer located at the address or has refused to accept delivery, the original Notice as sent shall be filed in the Copyright Office. Notices of Intention submitted for filing under this paragraph (e)(3) shall be submitted to the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office, and shall be accompanied by a brief statement that the Notice was sent to the last address for the copyright owner shown by the records of the Copyright Office but was returned, and by appropriate evidence that it was sent by certified or registered mail to that address. In these cases, the Copyright Office will specially mark its records to consider the date the original Notice was mailed, as shown by the evidence mentioned above, as the date of filing. A written acknowledgement of receipt and filing will be provided to the sender. No filing fee will be required in the case of Notices filed under this paragraph (e)(3). Upon request and payment of a fee of $8, a Certificate of Filing will be provided to the sender.

(17 U.S.C. 115, 702, 708)

[45 FR 79045, Nov. 28, 1980, as amended at 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991]

§ 201.19 Royalties and statements of account under compulsory license for making and distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical works.

(a) *Definitions.* (1) A *Monthly Statement of Account* is a statement accompanying monthly royalty payments identified in section 115(c)(3) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553, and required by that section to be made under the compulsory license to make and distribute phonorecords of nondramatic musical works.

(2) An *Annual Statement of Account* is a statement identified in section 115(c)(3) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553, and required by that section to be filed for every compulsory license to make and distribute phonorecords of nondramatic musical works.

(3) For the purposes of this section, the term *copyright owner,* in the case of any work having more than one copyright owner means any one of the co-owners. In such cases, the service of a Statement of Account, on one coowner under paragraph (e)(7) or (f)(7) of this section shall be sufficient with respect to all coowners.

(4) For the purposes of this section, a *compulsory licensee* is a person or entity exercising the compulsory license to make and distribute phonorecords of nondramatic musical works as provided under section 115 of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553.

(5) A phonorecord is considered *voluntarily distributed* if the compulsory licensee has voluntarily and permanently parted with possession of the phonorecord. For this purpose, and subject to the provisions of paragraph (d) of this section, a compulsory licensee shall be considered to have ''permanently parted with possession'' of a phonorecord made under the license:

(i) In the case of phonorecords relinquished from possession for purposes other than sale, at the time at which the compulsory licensee actually first parts with possession;

(ii) In the case of phonorecords relinquished from possession for purposes of sale without a privilege of returning unsold phonorecords for credit or exchange, at the time at which the compulsory licensee actually first parts with possession;

(iii) In the case of phonorecords relinquished from possession for purposes of sale accompanied by a privilege of returning unsold phonorecords for credit or exchange:

(A) At the time when revenue from a sale of the phonorecord is ''recognized'' by the compulsory licensee; or

(B) Nine months from the month in which the compulsory licensee actually first parted with possession, whichever occurs first.

For these purposes, a compulsory licensee shall be considered to ''recognize'' revenue from the sale of a phonorecord when sales revenue would be recognized in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles as expressed by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants or the Financial Accounting Standards Board, whichever would cause sales revenue to be recognized first.

(6) A *phonorecord reserve* comprises the number of phonorecords, if any, that have been relinquished from possession for purposes of sale in a given month accompanied by a privilege of return, as described in paragraph (a)(5)(iii) of this section, and that have not been considered voluntarily distributed during the month in which the compulsory licensee actually first parted with their possession. The initial number of phonorecords comprising a phonorecord reserve shall be determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles as expressed by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants or the Financial Accounting Standards Board.

(7) A *negative reserve balance* comprises the aggregate number of phonorecords, if any, that have been relinquished from possession for purposes of sale accompanied by a privilege of return, as described in paragraph (a)(5)(iii) of this section, and that have been returned to the compulsory licensee, but because all available phonorecord reserves have been eliminated, have not been used to reduce a phonorecord reserve.

(b) *Accounting requirements where sales revenue is ''recognized''.* Where under paragraph (a)(5)(iii)(A) of this section, revenue from the sale of phonorecords is ''recognized'' during any month after the month in which the compulsory licensee actually first parted with their possession, said compulsory licensee shall reduce particular phonorecord reserves by the number of phonorecords for which revenue is being ''recognized,'' as follows:

(1) If the number of phonorecords for which revenue is being ''recognized'' is smaller than the number of phonorecords comprising the earliest eligible phonorecord reserve, this phonorecord reserve shall be reduced by the number of phonorecords for which revenue is being ''recognized.'' Subject to the time limitations of subparagraph (B) of this § 201.19(a)(5)(iii), the number of phonorecords remaining in this reserve shall be available for use in subsequent months.

(2) If the number of phonorecords for which revenue is being ''recognized'' is greater than the number of phonorecords comprising the earliest eligible phonorecord reserve but less than the total number of phonorecords comprising all eligible phonorecord reserves, the compulsory licensee shall first eliminate those phonorecord reserves, beginning with the earliest eligible phonorecord reserve and continuing to the next succeeding phonorecord reserves, that are completely offset by phonorecords for which revenue is being ''recognized.'' Said licensee shall then reduce the next succeeding phonorecord reserve by the number of phonorecords for which revenue is being ''recognized'' that have not been used to eliminate a phonorecord reserve. Subject to the time limitations of subparagraph (B) of this § 201.19(a)(5)(iii), the number of phonorecords remaining in this reserve shall be available for use in subsequent months.

(3) If the number of phonorecords for which revenue is being ''recognized'' equals the number of phonorecords comprising all eligible phonorecord reserves, the person or entity exercising the compulsory license shall eliminate all of the phonorecord reserves.

(c) *Accounting requirements for offsetting phonorecord reserves with returned phonorecords.* (1) In the case of a phonorecord that has been relinquished from possession for purposes of sale accompanied by a privilege of return, as described in paragraph (a)(5)(iii) of this section, where the phonorecord is returned to the compulsory licensee for credit or exchange before said compulsory licensee is considered to have ''permanently parted with possession'' of the phonorecord under paragraph (a)(5) of this section, the compulsory licensee may use such phonorecord to reduce a ''phonorecord reserve,'' as defined in paragraph (a)(6) of this section.

(2) In such cases, the compulsory licensee shall reduce particular phonorecord reserves by the number of phonorecords that are returned during the month covered by the Monthly Statement of Account in the following manner:

(i) If the number of phonorecords that are returned during the month covered by the Monthly Statement is smaller than the number comprising

the earliest eligible phonorecord reserve, the compulsory licensee shall reduce this phonorecord reserve by the total number of returned phonorecords. Subject to the time limitations of paragraph (B) of § 201.19(a)(5)(iii), the number of phonorecords remaining in this reserve shall be available for use in subsequent months.

(ii) If the number of phonorecords that are returned during the month covered by the Monthly Statement is greater than the number of phonorecords comprising the earliest eligible phonorecord reserve but less than the total number of phonorecords comprising all eligible phonorecord reserves, the compulsory licensee shall first eliminate those phonorecord reserves, beginning with the earliest eligible phonorecord reserve, and continuing to the next succeeding phonorecord reserves, that are completely offset by returned phonorecords. Said licensee shall then reduce the next succeeding phonorecord reserve by the number of returned phonorecords that have not been used to eliminate a phonorecord reserve. Subject to the time limitations of paragraph (B) of § 201.19(a)(5)(iii), the number of phonorecords remaining in this reserve shall be available for use in subsequent months.

(iii) If the number of phonorecords that are returned during the month covered by the Monthly Statement is equal to or is greater than the total number of phonorecords comprising all eligible phonorecord reserves, the compulsory licensee shall eliminate all eligible phonorecord reserves. Where said number is greater than the total number of phonorecords comprising all eligible phonorecord reserves, said compulsory licensee shall establish a ''negative reserve balance,'' as defined in paragraph (a)(7) of this section.

(3) Except where a negative reserve balance exists, a separate and distinct phonorecord reserve shall be established for each month during which the compulsory licensee relinquishes phonorecords from possession for purposes of sale accompanied by a privilege of return, as described in paragraph (a)(5)(iii) of this section. In accordance with paragraph (B) of § 201.19(a)(5)(iii), any phonorecord remaining in a particular phonorecord reserve nine months from the month in which the particular reserve was established shall be considered ''voluntarily distributed''; at that point, the particular monthly phonorecord reserve shall lapse and royalties for the phonorecords remaining in it shall be paid as provided in paragraph (e)(4)(ii) of this section.

(4) Where a negative reserve balance exists, the aggregate total of phonorecords comprising it shall be accumulated into a single balance rather than being separated into distinct monthly balances. Following the establishment of a negative reserve balance, any phonorecords relinquished from possession by the compulsory licensee for purposes of sale or otherwise, shall be credited against such negative balance, and the negative reserve balance shall be reduced accordingly. The nine month limit provided by paragraph (B) of § 201.19(a)(5)(iii) shall have no effect upon a negative reserve balance; where a negative reserve balance exists, relinquishment from possession of a phonorecord by the compulsory licensee at any time shall be used to reduce such balance, and shall not be considered a ''voluntary distribution'' within the meaning of paragraph (a)(5) of this section.

(5) In no case shall a phonorecord reserve be established while a negative reserve balance is in existence; conversely, in no case shall a negative reserve balance be established before all available phonorecord reserves have been eliminated.

(d) *Situations in which a compulsory licensee is barred from maintaining reserves.* Notwithstanding any other provisions of this section, in any case where, within three years before the phonorecord was relinquished from possession, the compulsory licensee has had final judgment entered against it for failure to pay royalties for the reproduction of copyrighted music on phonorecords, or within such period has been definitively found in any proceeding involving bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, assignment for the benefit of creditors, or similar action, to have failed to pay such royalties, that compulsory licensee shall be considered to have ''Permanently parted

with possession'' of a phonorecord made under the license at the time at which that licensee actually first parts with possession. For these purposes the ''compulsory licensee,'' as defined in § 201.19(a)(4), shall include:

(1) In the case of any corporation, the corporation or any director, officer, or beneficial owner of twenty-five percent (25%) or more of the outstanding securities of the corporation;

(2) In all other cases, any entity or individual owning a beneficial interest of twenty-five percent (25%) or more in the entity exercising the compulsory license.

(e) *Monthly statements of account*—(1) *Forms.* The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons serving Monthly Statements of Account.

(2) *General content.* A Monthly Statement of Account shall be clearly and prominently identified as a ''Monthly Statement of Account Under Compulsory License for Making and Distributing Phonorecords,'' and shall include a clear statement of the following information:

(i) The period (month and year) covered by the Monthly Statement;

(ii) The full legal name of the compulsory licensee, together with all fictitious or assumed names used by such person or entity for the purpose of conducting the business of making and distributing phonorecords;

(iii) The full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the place of business of the compulsory licensee. A post office box or similar designation will not be sufficient for this purpose, except where it is the only address that can be used in that geographic location;

(iv) The title or titles of the nondramatic musical work or works embodied in phonorecords made under the compulsory license and owned by the copyright owner being served with the Monthly Statement and the name of the author or authors of such work or works, if known;

(v) For each nondramatic musical work that is owned by the same copyright owner being served with the Monthly Statement and that is embodied in phonorecords covered by the compulsory license, a detailed statement of all of the information called for in paragraph (e)(3) of this section;

(vi) The total royalty payable for the month covered by the Monthly Statement, computed in accordance with the requirements of this section and the formula specified in paragraph (e)(4) of this section, together with a statement of account showing in detail how the royalty was computed; and

(vii) In any case where the compulsory licensee falls within the provisions of paragraph (d) of this section, a clear description of the action or proceeding involved, including the date of the final judgment or definitive finding described in that paragraph.

(3) *Specific content of monthly statements: Identification and accounting of phonorecords.* (i) The information called for by paragraph (e)(2)(v) of this section shall, with respect to each nondramatic musical work, include a separate listing of each of the following items of information:

(A) The number of phonorecords made during the month covered by the Monthly Statement;

(B) The number of phonorecords that, during the month covered by the Monthly Statement and regardless of when made, were either:

Relinquished from possession for purposes other than sale;

Relinquished from possession for purposes of sale without any privilege of returning unsold phonorecords for credit or exchange;

Relinquished from possession for purposes of sale accompanied by a privilege of returning unsold phonorecords for credit or exchange;

Returned to the compulsory licensee for credit or exchange; or

Placed in a phonorecord reserve (except that if a negative reserve balance exists give either the number of phonorecords added to the negative reserve balance, or the number of phonorecords relinquished from possession that have been used to reduce the negative reserve balance);

(C) The number of phonorecords, regardless of when made, that were relinquished from possession during a month earlier than the month covered by the Monthly Statement but that, during the month covered by the Monthly Statement either have had revenue from their sale ''recognized''

under paragraph (a)(5)(iii) of this section, or were comprised in a phonorecord reserve that lapsed after nine months under paragraph (B) of § 201.19(a)(5)(iii).

(ii) Each of the items of information called for by paragraph (e)(3)(i) of this section shall also include, and if necessary shall be broken down to identify separately, the following:

(A) The catalog number or numbers and label name or names, used on the phonorecords;

(B) The names of the principal recording artist or group engaged in rendering the performances fixed on the phonorecords;

(C) The playing time on the phonorecords of each nondramatic musical work covered by the statement; and

(D) Each phonorecord configuration involved (for example: single disk, long-playing disk, cartridge, cassette, reel-to-reel).

(4) *Royalty payment and accounting.* (i) The total royalty called for by paragraph (e)(2)(vi) of this section shall, as specified in section 115(c)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553, be payable for every phonorecord ''voluntarily distributed'' during the month covered by the Monthly Statement.

(ii) The amount of the royalty payment shall be calculated in accordance with the following formula:

Step 1: Compute the number of phonorecords shipped for sale with a privilege of return. This is the total of phonorecords that, during the month covered by the Monthly Statement, were relinquished from possession by the compulsory licensee, accompanied by the privilege of returning unsold phonorecords to the compulsory licensee for credit or exchange. This total does *not* include: (1) Any phonorecords relinquished from possession by the compulsory licensee for purposes of sale without the privilege of return; and (2) any phonorecords relinquished from possession for purposes other than sale.

Step 2: Subtract the number of phonorecords reserved. This involves deducting, from the subtotal arrived at in Step 1, the number of phonorecords that have been placed in the phonorecord reserve for the month covered by the Monthly Statement. The number of phonorecords reserved is determined by multiplying the subtotal from Step 1 by the percentage reserve level established under GAAP. This step should be skipped by a compulsory licensee barred from maintaining reserves under paragraph (d) of this section.

Step 3: Add the total of all phonorecords that were shipped during the month and were not counted in Step 1. This total is the sum of two figures: (1) The number of phonorecords that, during the month covered by the Monthly Statement, were relinquished from possession by the compulsory licensee for purposes of sale, without the privilege of returning unsold phonorecords to the compulsory licensee for credit or exchange; and (2) the number of phonorecords relinquished from possession by the compulsory licensee, during the month covered by the Monthly Statement, for purposes other than sale.

Step 4: Make any necessary adjustments for sales revenue ''recognized,'' lapsed reserves, or reduction of negative reserve balance during the month. If necessary, this step involves adding to or subtracting from the subtotal arrived at in Step 3 on the basis of three possible types of adjustments:

(a) Sales revenue ''recognized.'' If, in the month covered by the Monthly Statement, the compulsory licensee ''recognized'' revenue from the sale of phonorecords that had been relinquished from possession in an earlier month, the number of such phonorecords is *added* to the Step 3 subtotal;

(b) Lapsed reserves. If, in the month covered by the Monthly Statement, there are any phonorecords remaining in the phonorecord reserve for the ninth previous month (that is, any phonorecord reserves from the ninth previous month that have not been offset under FOFI, the first-out-first-in accounting convention, by actual returns during the intervening months), the reserve lapses and the number of phonorecords in it is *added* to the Step 3 subtotal.

(*c*) *Reduction of negative reserve balance.* If, in the month covered by the Monthly Statement, the aggregate reserve balance for all previous months is a negative amount, the number of phonorecords relinquished from possession by the compulsory licensee during that month and used to reduce the negative reserve balance is *subtracted* from the Step 3 subtotal.

Step 5: Multiply by the statutory royalty rate. The total monthly royalty payment is obtained by multiplying the subtotal from Step 3, as adjusted if necessary by Step 4, by the statutory royalty rate of 5.7 cents or 1.1 cents per minute or fraction of playing time, whichever is larger.

(iii) Each step in computing the monthly payment, including the arithmetical calculations involved in each step, shall be set out in detail in the Monthly Statement.

(5) *Clear statements.* The information required by paragraphs (e) (2) and (3) of

this section involves intelligible, legible, and unambiguous statements in the Monthly Statements of Account itself and without incorporation of facts or information contained in other documents or records.

(6) *Oath and signature.* Each Monthly Statement of Account shall include the handwritten signature of the compulsory licensee. If that compulsory licensee is a corporation, the signature shall be that of a duly authorized officer of the corporation; if that compulsory licensee is a partnership, the signature shall be that of a partner. The signature shall be accompanied by:

(i) The printed or typewritten name of the person signing the Monthly Statement of Account;

(ii) The date of signature;

(iii) If the compulsory licensee is a partnership or a corporation, by the title or official position held in the partnership or corporation by the person signing the Monthly Statement of Account;

(iv) A certification of the capacity of the person signing; and

(v) The following statement:

I certify that I have examined this Monthly Statement of Account and that all statements of fact contained herein are true, complete, and correct to the best of my knowledge, information, and belief, and are made in good faith.

(7) *Service.* (i) Each Monthly Statement of Account shall be served on the copyright owner to whom or which it is directed, together with the total royalty for the month covered by the Monthly Statement, by certified mail, or by registered mail on or before the 20th day of the immediately succeeding month. It shall not be necessary to file a copy of the Monthly Statement in the Copyright Office.

(ii)(A) In any case where a Monthly Statement of Account is sent by certified mail or registered mail and is returned to the sender because the copyright owner is not located at that address or has refused to accept delivery, or in any case where an address for the copyright owner is not known, the Monthly Statement of Account, together with any evidence of mailing, may be filed in the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office. Any Monthly Statement of Account submitted for filing in the Copyright Office shall be accompanied by a brief statement of the reason why it was not served on the copyright owner. A written acknowledgement of receipt and filing will be provided to the sender.

(B) The Copyright Office will not accept any royalty fees submitted with Monthly Statements of Account under § 202.19(e)(7)(ii).

(C) Neither the filing of a Monthly Statement of Account in the Copyright Office, nor the failure to file such Monthly Statement, shall have effect other than that which may be attributed to it by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(D) No filing fee will be required in the case of Monthly Statements of Account submitted to the Copyright Office under this § 201.19(e)(7)(ii). Upon request and payment of a fee of $8, a Certificate of Filing will be provided to the sender.

(iii) A separate Monthly Statement of Account shall be served for each month during which there is any activity relevant to the payment of royalties under section 115 of Title 17, United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553, and under this section. The Annual Statement of Account identified in paragraph (f) of this section does not replace any Monthly Statement of Account.

(f) *Annual statements of account*—(1) *Forms.* The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons serving Annual Statements of Account.

(2) *Annual period.* Any Annual Statement of Account shall cover the full fiscal year of the compulsory licensee.

(3) *General content.* An Annual Statement of Account shall be clearly and prominently identified as an ''Annual Statement of Account Under Compulsory License for Making and Distributing Phonorecords,'' and shall include a clear statement of the following information:

(i) The fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement;

(ii) The full legal name of the compulsory licensee, together with all fictitious or assumed names used by such person or entity for the purpose of conducting the business of making and distributing phonorecords;

(iii) A statement of the nature of the business organization used by the compulsory licensee in connection with the making and distribution of phonorecords (for example, a corporation, a partnership, or an individual proprietorship); additionally:

(A) If the compulsory licensee is a corporation registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 12 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, the Annual Statement shall state that this is the case.

(B) If the compulsory licensee is a corporation that is not registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 12 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, the Annual Statement shall include a list of the names of the corporation's directors and officers, and the names of each beneficial owner of twenty-five percent (25%) or more of the outstanding securities of the corporation.

(C) In all other cases, the Annual Statement shall include the names of each entity or individual owning a beneficial interest of twenty-five percent (25%) or more in the entity exercising the compulsory license. If a corporate entity is named in response to this paragraph (C), then: If that corporation is registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 12 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, the Annual Statement shall so state; if that corporation is not so registered, the Annual Statement shall include a list of the corporation's directors and officers, and the names of each beneficial owner of twenty-five percent (25%) or more of the outstanding securities of that corporation;

(iv) The full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, or the place of business of the compulsory licensee. A post office box or similar designation will not be sufficient for this purpose except where it is the only address that can be used in that geographic location;

(v) The title or titles of the nondramatic musical work or works embodied in phonorecords made under the compulsory license and owned by the copyright owner being served with the Annual Statement and the name of the author or authors of such work or works, if known;

(vi) The playing time of each nondramatic musical work on such phonorecords;

(vii) For each nondramatic musical work that is owned by the same copyright owner being served with the Annual Statement and that is embodied in phonorecords covered by the compulsory license, a detailed statement of all of the information called for in paragraph (f)(4) of this section;

(viii) The total royalty payable for the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement computed in accordance with the requirements of this section, together with a statement of account showing in detail how the royalty was computed. For these purposes, the applicable royalty as specified in section 115(c)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553, shall be payable for every phonorecord ''voluntarily distributed'' during the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement;

(ix) The total sum paid under Monthly Statements of Account by the compulsory licensee to the copyright owner being served with the Annual Statement during the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement; and

(x) In any case where the compulsory license falls within the provisions of paragraph (d) of this section, a clear description of the action or proceeding involved, including the date of the final judgment or definitive finding described in that paragraph.

(4) *Specific content of annual statements: Identification and accounting of phonorecords.* (i) The information called for by paragraph (f)(3)(vii) of this section shall, with respect to each nondramatic musical work, include a separate listing of each of the following items of information separately stated and identified for each phonorecord configuration (for example, single disk, long playing disk, cartridge, cassette, or reel-to-reel) made:

(A) The number of phonorecords made through the end of the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement, including any made during earlier years;

(B) The number of phonorecords which have never been relinquished from possession of the compulsory licensee through the end of the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement;

(C) The number of phonorecords involuntarily relinquished from possession (as through fire or theft) of the compulsory licensee during the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement and any earlier years, together with a description of the facts of such involuntary relinquishment;

(D) The number of phonorecords ''voluntarily distributed'' by the compulsory licensee during all years before the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement;

(E) The number of phonorecords relinquished from possession of the compulsory licensee for purposes of sale during the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement accompanied by a privilege of returning unsold records for credit or exchange, but not ''voluntarily distributed'' by the end of that year;

(F) The number of phonorecords ''voluntarily distributed'' by the compulsory licensee during the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement, together with:

(*1*) The catalog number or numbers, and label name or names, used on such phonorecords; and

(*2*) The names of the principal recording artists or groups engaged in rendering the performances fixed on such phonorecords.

(ii) If the information given under paragraphs (A) through (F) of this § 201.19(f)(4)(i) does not reconcile, the Annual Statement shall also include a clear and detailed explanation of the difference. For these purposes, the information given under such paragraphs shall be considered not to reconcile if, after the number of phonorecords given under paragraphs (B), (C), (D), and (E) are added together and that sum is deducted from the number of phonorecords given under paragraph (A), the result is different from the amount given under paragraph (F).

(5) *Clear statement.* The information required by paragraph (f)(3) of this section involves intelligible, legible, and unambiguous statements in the Annual Statement of Account itself and [subject to paragraph (f)(3)(iii)(A)] without incorporation by reference of facts or information contained in other documents or records.

(6) *Signature and certification.* (i) Each Annual Statement of Account shall include the handwritten signature of the compulsory licensee. If that compulsory licensee is a corporation, the signature shall be that of a duly authorized officer of the corporation; if that compulsory licensee is a partnership, the signature shall be that of a partner. The signature shall be accompanied by: (A) The printed or typewritten name of the person signing the Annual Statement of Account; (B) the date of signature; (C) if the compulsory licensee is a partnership or a corporation, by the title or official position held in the partnership or corporation by the person signing the Annual Statement of Account; and (D) a certification of the capacity of the person signing.

(ii)(A) Each Annual Statement of Account shall also be certified by a licensed Certified Public Accountant. Such certification shall consist of the following statement:

We have examined the attached ''Annual Statement of Account Under Compulsory License For Making and Distributing Phonorecords'' for the fiscal year ended (date) of (name of the compulsory licensee) applicable to phonorecords embodying (title or titles of nondramatic musical works embodied in phonorecords made under the compulsory license) made under the provisions of section 115 of Title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553, and applicable regulations of the United States Copyright Office. Our examination was made in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and accordingly, included tests of the accounting records and such other auditing procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances.

In our opinion the Annual Statement of Account referred to above presents fairly the number of phonorecords embodying each of the above-identified nondramatic musical works made under compulsory license and voluntarily distributed by (name of the compulsory licensee) during the fiscal year ending (date), and the amount of royalties applicable thereto under such compulsory license, on a consistent basis and in accordance with the above cited law and applicable regulations published thereunder.

(City and State of Execution)

(Signature of Certified Public Accountant or CPA Firm)

Certificate Number

Jurisdiction of Certificate

(Date of Opinion)

(B) The certificate shall be signed by an individual, or in the name of a partnership or a professional corporation with two or more shareholders. The certificate number and jurisdiction are not required if the certificate is signed in the name of a partnership or a professional corporation with two or more shareholders.

(7) *Service.* (i) Each Annual Statement of Account shall be served on the copyright owner to whom or which it is directed by certified mail or by registered mail on or before the twentieth day of the third month following the end of the fiscal year covered by the Annual Statement. It shall not be necessary to file a copy of the Annual Statement in the Copyright Office. An Annual Statement of Account shall be served for each fiscal year during which at least one Monthly Statement of Account was required to have been served under paragraph (e)(7) of this section.

(ii) In any case where the amount required to be stated in the Annual Statement of Account under paragraph (f)(3)(viii) of this section is greater than the amount stated in that Annual Statement under paragraph (f)(3)(ix) of this section, the difference between such amounts shall be delivered to the copyright owner together with the service of the Annual Statement. The delivery of such sum does not require the copyright owner to accept such sum, or to forego any right, relief, or remedy which may be available under law.

(iii)(A) In any case where an Annual Statement of Account is sent by certified mail or registered mail and is returned to the sender because the copyright owner is not located at that address or has refused to accept delivery, or in any case where an address for the copyright owner is not known, the Annual Statement of Account, together with any evidence of mailing, may be filed in the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office. Any Annual Statement of Account submitted for filing shall be accompanied by a brief statement of the reason why it was not served on the copyright owner. A written acknowledgment of receipt and filing will be provided to the sender.

(B) The Copyright Office will not accept any royalty fees submitted with Annual Statements of Account under § 202.19(f)(7)(iii).

(C) Neither the filing of an Annual Statement of Account in the Copyright Office, nor the failure to file such Annual Statement, shall have any effect other than that which may be attributed to it by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(D) No filing fee will be required in the case of Annual Statements of Account submitted to the Copyright Office under this § 201.19(f)(7)(iii). Upon request and payment of a fee of $8, a Certificate of Filing will be provided to the sender.

(g) *Documentation.* All compulsory licensees shall, for a period of at least three years from the date of service of an Annual Statement of Account, keep and retain in their possession all records and documents necessary and appropriate to support fully the information set forth in such Annual Statement and in Monthly Statements served during the fiscal year covered by such Annual Statement.

(17 U.S.C. 115, 702, 708)

[45 FR 79046, Nov. 28, 1980, as amended at 56 FR 7813, Feb. 26, 1991; 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991]

§ 201.20 Methods of affixation and positions of the copyright notice on various types of works.

(a) *General.* (1) This section specifies examples of methods of affixation and positions of the copyright notice on various types of works that will satisfy the notice requirement of section 401(c) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553. A notice considered ''acceptable'' under this regulation shall be considered to satisfy the requirement of that section that it be ''affixed to the copies in such manner and location as to give reasonable notice of the claim of copyright.'' As provided by that section, the examples specified in this regulation shall not be

considered exhaustive of methods of affixation and positions giving reasonable notice of the claim of copyright.

(2) The provisions of this section are applicable to copies publicly distributed on or after December 1, 1981. This section does not establish any rules concerning the form of the notice or the legal sufficiency of particular notices, except with respect to methods of affixation and positions of notice. The adequacy or legal sufficiency of a copyright notice is determined by the law in effect at the time of first publication of the work.

(b) *Definitions.* For the purposes of this section:

(1) The terms *audiovisual works, collective works, copies, device, fixed, machine, motion picture, pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works,* and their variant forms, have the meanings given to them in section 101 of Title 17.

(2) *Title 17* means title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553.

(3) In the case of a work consisting preponderantly of leaves on which the work is printed or otherwise reproduced on both sides, a ''page'' is one side of a leaf; where the preponderance of the leaves are printed on one side only, the terms ''page'' and ''leaf'' mean the same.

(4) A work is published in *book form* if the copies embodying it consist of multiple leaves bound, fastened, or assembled in a predetermined order, as, for example, a volume, booklet, pamphlet, or multipage folder. For the purpose of this section, a work need not consist of textual matter in order to be considered published in ''book form.''

(5) A *title page* is a page, or two consecutive pages facing each other, appearing at or near the front of the copies of a work published in book form, on which the complete title of the work is prominently stated and on which the names of the author or authors, the name of the publisher, the place of publication, or some combination of them, are given.

(6) The meaning of the terms *front, back, first, last,* and *following,* when used in connection with works published in book form, will vary in relation to the physical form of the copies, depending upon the particular language in which the work is written.

(7) In the case of a work published in book form with a hard or soft cover, the *front page* and *back page* of the copies are the outsides of the front and back covers; where there is no cover, the ''front page,'' and ''back page'' are the pages visible at the front and back of the copies before they are opened.

(8) A *masthead* is a body of information appearing in approximately the same location in most issues of a newspaper, magazine, journal, review, or other periodical or serial, typically containing the title of the periodical or serial, information about the staff, periodicity of issues, operation, and subscription and editorial policies, of the publication.

(9) A *single-leaf work* is a work published in copies consisting of a single leaf, including copies on which the work is printed or otherwise reproduced on either one side or on both sides of the leaf, and also folders which, without cutting or tearing the copies, can be opened out to form a single leaf. For the purpose of this section, a work need not consist of textual matter in order to be considered a ''single-leaf work.''

(c) *Manner of affixation and position generally.* (1) In all cases dealt with in this section, the acceptability of a notice depends upon its being permanently legible to an ordinary user of the work under normal conditions of use, and affixed to the copies in such manner and position that, when affixed, it is not concealed from view upon reasonable examination.

(2) Where, in a particular case, a notice does not appear in one of the precise locations prescribed in this section but a person looking in one of those locations would be reasonably certain to find a notice in another somewhat different location, that notice will be acceptable under this section.

(d) *Works published in book form.* In the case of works published in book form, a notice reproduced on the copies in any of the following positions is acceptable:

(1) The title page, if any;

(2) The page immediately following the title page, if any;

(3) Either side of the front cover, if any; or, if there is no front cover, either side of the front leaf of the copies;

(4) Either side of the back cover, if any; or, if there is no back cover, either side of the back leaf of the copies;

(5) The first page of the main body of the work;

(6) The last page of the main body of the work;

(7) Any page between the front page and the first page of the main body of the work, if:

(i) There are no more than ten pages between the front page and the first page of the main body of the work; and

(ii) The notice is reproduced prominently and is set apart from other matter on the page where it appears;

(8) Any page between the last page of the main body of the work and back page, if:

(i) There are no more than ten pages between the last page of the main body of the work and the back page; and

(ii) The notice is reproduced prominently and is set apart from the other matter on the page where it appears.

(9) In the case of a work published as an issue of a periodical or serial, in addition to any of the locations listed in paragraphs (d) (1) through (8) of this section, a notice is acceptable if it is located:

(i) As a part of, or adjacent to, the masthead;

(ii) On the page containing the masthead if the notice is reproduced prominently and is set apart from the other matter appearing on the page; or

(iii) Adjacent to a prominent heading, appearing at or near the front of the issue, containing the title of the periodical or serial and any combination of the volume and issue number and date of the issue.

(10) In the case of a musical work, in addition to any of the locations listed in paragraphs (d) (1) through (9) of this section, a notice is acceptable if it is located on the first page of music.

(e) *Single-leaf works.* In the case of single-leaf works, a notice reproduced on the copies anywhere on the front or back of the leaf is acceptable.

(f) *Contributions to collective works.* For a separate contribution to a collective work to be considered to ''bear its own notice of copyright,'' as provided by 17 U.S.C. 404, a notice reproduced on the copies in any of the following positions is acceptable:

(1) Where the separate contribution is reproduced on a single page, a notice is acceptable if it appears:

(i) Under the title of the contribution on that page;

(ii) Adjacent to the contribution; or

(iii) On the same page if, through format, wording, or both, the application of the notice to the particular contribution is made clear;

(2) Where the separate contribution is reproduced on more than one page of the collective work, a notice is acceptable if it appears:

(i) Under a title appearing at or near the beginning of the contribution;

(ii) On the first page of the main body of the contribution;

(iii) Immediately following the end of the contribution; or

(iv) On any of the pages where the contribution appears, if:

(A) The contribution is reproduced on no more than twenty pages of the collective work;

(B) The notice is reproduced prominently and is set apart from other matter on the page where it appears; and

(C) Through format, wording, or both, the application of the notice to the particular contribution is made clear;

(3) Where the separate contribution is a musical work, in addition to any of the locations listed in paragraphs (f) (1) and (2) of this section, a notice is acceptable if it is located on the first page of music of the contribution;

(4) As an alternative to placing the notice on one of the pages where a separate contribution itself appears, the contribution is considered to ''bear its own notice'' if the notice appears clearly in juxtaposition with a separate listing of the contribution by title, or if the contribution is untitled, by a description reasonably identifying the contribution:

(i) On the page bearing the copyright notice for the collective work as a whole, if any; or

(ii) In a clearly identified and readily-accessible table of contents or listing of acknowledgements appearing near the front or back of the collective work as a whole.

(g) *Works reproduced in machine-readable copies.* For works reproduced in machine-readable copies (such as magnetic tapes or disks, punched cards, or the like, from which the work cannot ordinarily be visually perceived except with the aid of a machine or device,[1] each of the following constitute examples of acceptable methods of affixation and position of notice:

(1) A notice embodied in the copies in machine-readable form in such a manner that on visually perceptible printouts it appears either with or near the title, or at the end of the work;

(2) A notice that is displayed at the user's terminal at sign on;

(3) A notice that is continuously on terminal display; or

(4) A legible notice reproduced durably, so as to withstand normal use, on a gummed or other label securely affixed to the copies or to a box, reel, cartridge, cassette, or other container used as a permanent receptacle for the copies.

(h) *Motion pictures and other audiovisual works.* (1) The following constitute examples of acceptable methods of affixation and positions of the copyright notice on motion pictures and other audiovisual works: A notice that is embodied in the copies by a photomechanical or electronic process, in such a position that it ordinarily would appear whenever the work is performed in its entirety, and that is located:

(i) With or near the title;

(ii) With the cast, credits, and similar information;

(iii) At or immediately following the beginning of the work; or

(iv) At or immediately preceding the end of the work.

(2) In the case of an untitled motion picture or other audiovisual work whose duration is sixty seconds or less, in addition to any of the locations listed in paragraph (h)(1) of this section, a notice that is embodied in the copies by a photomechanical or electronic process, in such a position that it ordinarily would appear to the projectionist or broadcaster when preparing the work for performance, is acceptable if it is located on the leader of the film or tape immediately preceding the beginning of the work.

(3) In the case of a motion picture or other audiovisual work that is distributed to the public for private use, the notice may be affixed, in addition to the locations specified in paragraph (h)(1) of this section, on the housing or container, if it is a permanent receptacle for the work.

(i) *Pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works.* The following constitute examples of acceptable methods of affixation and positions of the copyright notice on various forms of pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works:

(1) Where a work is reproduced in two-dimensional copies, a notice affixed directly or by means of a label cemented, sewn, or otherwise attached durably, so as to withstand normal use, of the front or back of the copies, or to any backing, mounting, matting, framing, or other material to which the copies are durably attached, so as to withstand normal use, or in which they are permanently housed, is acceptable.

(2) Where a work is reproduced in three-dimensional copies, a notice affixed directly or by means of a label cemented, sewn, or otherwise attached durably, so as to withstand normal use, to any visible portion of the work, or to any base, mounting, framing, or other material on which the copies are durably attached, so as to withstand normal use, or in which they are permanently housed, is acceptable.

(3) Where, because of the size or physical characteristics of the material in which the work is reproduced in copies, it is impossible or extremely impracticable to affix a notice to the copies directly or by means of a durable label, a notice is acceptable if it appears on a tag that is of durable material, so as to withstand normal use, and that is attached to the copy with sufficient durability that it will remain with the copy while it is passing through its normal channels of commerce.

(4) Where a work is reproduced in copies consisting of sheet-like or strip

[1] Works published in a form requiring the use of a machine or device for purposes of optical enlargement (such as film, filmstrips, slide films, and works published in any variety of microform) and works published in visually perceptible form but used in connection with optical scanning devices, are not within this category.

material bearing multiple or continuous reproductions of the work, the notice may be applied:

(i) To the reproduction itself;

(ii) To the margin, selvage, or reverse side of the material at frequent and regular intervals; or

(iii) If the material contains neither a selvage nor a reverse side, to tags or labels, attached to the copies and to any spools, reels, or containers housing them in such a way that a notice is visible while the copies are passing through their normal channels of commerce.

(5) If the work is permanently housed in a container, such as a game or puzzle box, a notice reproduced on the permanent container is acceptable.

(17 U.S.C. 401, 702)

[46 FR 58312, Dec. 1, 1981]

§ 201.21 [Reserved]

§ 201.22 Advance notices of potential infringement of works consisting of sounds, images, or both.

(a) *Definitions.* (1) An *Advance Notice of Potential Infringement* is a notice which, if served in accordance with section 411(b) of title 17 of the United States Code, and in accordance with the provisions of this section, enables a copyright owner to institute an action for copyright infringement either before or after the first fixation of a work consisting of sounds, images, or both that is first fixed simultaneously with its transmission, and to enjoy the full remedies of said title 17 for copyright infringement, provided registration for the work is made within three months after its first transmission.

(2) For purposes of this section, the *copyright owner* of a work consisting of sounds, images, or both, the first fixation of which is made simultaneously with its transmission, is the person or entity that will be considered the author of the work upon its fixation (including, in the case of a work made for hire, the employer or other person or entity for whom the work was prepared), or a person or organization that has obtained ownership of an exclusive right, initially owned by the person or entity that will be considered the author of the work upon its fixation.

(3) A *transmission program* is a body of material that, as an aggregate, has been produced for the sole purpose of transmission to the public in sequence and as a unit.

(b) *Form.* The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons serving Advance Notices of Potential Infringement.

(c) *Contents.* (1) An Advance Notice of Potential Infringement shall be clearly and prominently captioned ''ADVANCE NOTICE OF POTENTIAL INFRINGEMENT'' and must clearly state that the copyright owner objects to the relevant activities of the person responsible for the potential infringement, and must include all of the following:

(i) Reference to Title 17 U.S.C. section 411(b) as the statutory authority on which the Advance Notice of Potential Infringement is based;

(ii) The date, specific time, and expected duration of the intended first transmission of the work or works contained in the specific transmission program;

(iii) The source of the intended first transmission of the work or works;

(iv) Clear identification, by title, of the work or works. A single Advance Notice of Potential Infringement may cover all of the works of the copyright owner embodied in a specific transmission program. If any work is untitled, the Advance Notice of Potential Infringement shall include a detailed description of that work;

(v) The name of at least one person or entity that will be considered the author of the work upon its fixation;

(vi) The identity of the copyright owner, as defined in paragraph (a)(2) of this section. If the copyright owner is not the person or entity that will be considered the author of the work upon its fixation, the Advance Notice of Potential Infringement also shall include a brief, general statement summarizing the means by which the copyright owner obtained ownership of the copyright and the particular rights that are owned; and

(vii) A description of the relevant activities of the person responsible for the potential infringement which would, if carried out, result in an infringement of the copyright.

(2) An Advance Notice of Potential Infringement must also include clear and prominent statements:

(i) Explaining that the relevant activities may, if carried out, subject the person responsible to liability for copyright infringement; and

(ii) Declaring that the copyright owner intends to secure copyright in the work upon its fixation.

(d) *Signature and identification.* (1) An Advance Notice of Potential Infringement shall be in writing and signed by the copyright owner, or such owner's duly authorized agent.

(2) The signature of the owner or agent shall be an actual handwritten signature of an individual, accompanied by the date of signature and the full name, address, and telephone number of that person, typewritten or printed legibly by hand.

(3) If an Advance Notice of Potential Infringement is initially served in the form of a telegram or similar communication, as provided by paragraph (e)(2)(iii) of this section, the requirement for an individual's handwritten signature shall be considered waived if the further conditions of said paragraph (e) are met.

(e) *Service.* (1) An Advance Notice of Potential Infringement shall be served on the person responsible for the potential infringement at least ten days but not more than thirty days before the first fixation and simultaneous transmission of the work as provided by 17 U.S.C. 411(b)(1).

(2) Service of the Advance Notice may be effected by any of the following methods:

(i) Personal service;

(ii) First-class mail; or

(iii) Telegram, cablegram, or similar form of communication, if:

(A) The Advance Notice meets all of the other conditions provided by this section; and

(B) Before the first fixation and simultaneous transmission take place, the person responsible for the potential infringement receives written confirmation of the Advance Notice, bearing the actual handwritten signature of the copyright owner or duly authorized agent.

(3) The date of service is the date the Advance Notice of Potential Infringement is received by the person responsible for the potential infringement or by any agent or employee of that person.

(17 U.S.C. 411, 702)

[46 FR 28849, May 29, 1981]

§ 201.23 Transfer of unpublished copyright deposits to the Library of Congress.

(a) *General.* This section prescribes rules governing the transfer of unpublished copyright deposits in the custody of the Copyright Office to the Library of Congress. The copyright deposits may consist of copies, phonorecords, or identifying material deposited in connection with registration of claims to copyright under section 408 of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553, 90 Stat. 2541, effective January 1, 1978. These rules establish the conditions under which the Library of Congress is entitled to select deposits of unpublished works for its collections or for permanent transfer to the National Archives of the United States or to a Federal records center in accordance with section 704(b) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553.

(b) *Selection by the Library of Congress.* The Library of Congress may select any deposits of unpublished works for the purposes stated in paragraph (a) of this section at the time of registration or at any time thereafter; *Provided,* That:

(1) A facsimile reproduction of the entire copyrightable content of the deposit shall be made a part of the Copyright Office records before transfer to the Library of Congress as provided by section 704(c) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553, unless, within the discretion of the Register of Copyrights, it is considered impractical or too expensive to make the reproduction;

(2) All unpublished copyright deposits retained by the Library of Congress in its collections shall be maintained under the control of the Library of Congress with appropriate safeguards against unauthorized copying or other unauthorized use of the deposits which would be contrary to the rights of the copyright owner in the work under

title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553; and

(3) At the time selection is made a request for full term retention of the deposit under the control of the Copyright Office has not been granted by the Register of Copyrights, in accordance with section 704(e) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553.

(17 U.S.C. 702, 704)

[45 FR 41414, June 19, 1980]

§ 201.24 Warning of copyright for software lending by nonprofit libraries.

(a) *Definition*. A Warning of Copyright for Software Rental is a notice under paragraph (b)(2)(A) of section 109 of the Copyright Act, title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by the Computer Software Rental Amendments Act of 1990, Public Law 101–650. As required by that paragraph, the ''Warning of Copyright for Software Rental'' shall be affixed to the packaging that contains the computer program which is lent by a nonprofit library for nonprofit purposes.

(b) *Contents.* A Warning of Copyright for Software Rental shall consist of a verbatim reproduction of the following notice, printed in such size and form and affixed in such manner as to comply with paragraph (c) of this section.

Notice: Warning of Copyright Restrictions

The copyright law of the United States (Title 17, United States Code) governs the reproduction, distribution, adaptation, public performance, and public display of copyrighted material.

Under certain conditions specified in law, nonprofit libraries are authorized to lend, lease, or rent copies of computer programs to patrons on a nonprofit basis and for nonprofit purposes. Any person who makes an unauthorized copy or adaptation of the computer program, or redistributes the loan copy, or publicly performs or displays the computer program, except as permitted by title 17 of the United States Code, may be liable for copyright infringement.

This institution reserves the right to refuse to fulfill a loan request if, in its judgement, fulfillment of the request would lead to violation of the copyright law.

(c) *Form and manner of use.* A Warning of Copyright for Software Rental shall be affixed to the packaging that contains the copy of the computer program, which is the subject of a library loan to patrons, by means of a label cemented, gummed, or otherwise durably attached to the copies or to a box, reel, cartridge, cassette, or other container used as a permanent receptacle for the copy of the computer program. The notice shall be printed in such manner as to be clearly legible, comprehensible, and readily apparent to a casual user of the computer program.

[56 FR 7812, Feb. 26, 1991]

§ 201.25 Visual Arts Registry.

(a) *General.* This section prescribes the procedures relating to the submission of Visual Arts Registry Statements by visual artists and owners of buildings, or their duly authorized representatives, for recordation in the Copyright Office under section 113(d)(3) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Public Law 101–650, effective June 1, 1991. Statements recorded in the Copyright Office under this regulation will establish a public record of information relevant to an artist's integrity right to prevent destruction or injury to works of visual art incorporated in or made part of a building.

(b) *Forms.* The Copyright Office does not provide forms for the use of persons recording statements regarding works of visual art that have been incorporated in or made part of a building.

(c) *Recordable statements*—(1) *General.* Any statement designated as a ''Visual Arts Regulatory Statement'' and which pertains to a work of visual art that has been incorporated in or made part of a building may be recorded in the Copyright Office provided the statement is accompanied by the fee for recordation of documents specified in section 708(a)(4) of title 17 of the United States Code. Upon their submission, the statements and an accompanying documentation or photographs become the property of the United States Government and will not be returned. Photocopies are acceptable if they are clear and legible. Information contained in the Visual Arts Registry Statement should be as complete as possible since the information may affect the enforceability of valuable rights under the copyright law. Visual Arts Registry Statements which are illegible or fall outside of the scope of

section 113(d)(3) of title 17 may be refused recordation by the Copyright Office.

(2) *Statements by artists.* Statements by artists regarding a work of visual art incorporated or made part of a building should be filed in a document containing the head: ''Registry of Visual Art Incorporated in a Building—Artist's Statement.'' The statement should contain the following information:

(i) Identification of the artist, including name, current address, age, and telephone number, if publicly listed.

(ii) Identification of the work or works, including the title, dimensions, and physical description of the work and the copyright registration number, if known. Additionally, it is recommended that one or more 8 x 10 photographs of the work on good quality photographic paper be included in the submission; the images should be clear and in focus.

(iii) Identification of the building, including its name and address. This identification may additionally include 8 x 10 photographs of the building and the location of the artist's work in the building.

(iv) Identification of the owner of the building, if known.

(3) *Statements by the owner of the building.* Statements of owners of a building which incorporates a work of visual art should be filed in a document containing the heading: ''Registry of Visual Art Incorporated in a Building—Building Owner's Statement.'' The statement should contain the following information:

(i) Identification of the ownership of the building, the name of a person who represents the owner, and a telephone number, if publicly listed.

(ii) Identification of the building, including the building's name and address. This identification may additionally include 8 x 10 photographs of the building and of the works of visual art which are incorporated in the building.

(iii) Identification of the work or works of visual art incorporated in the building, including the works' title(s), if known, and the dimensions and physical description of the work(s). This identification may include one or more 8 x 10 photographs of the work(s) on high quality photographic paper; the images should be clear and in focus.

(iv) Identification of the artist(s) who have works incorporated in the building, including the current address of each artist, if known.

(v) Photocopy of contracts, if any, between the artist and owners of the building regarding the rights of attribution and integrity.

(vi) Statement as to the measures taken by the owner to notify the artist(s) of the removal or pending removal of the work of visual art, and photocopies of any accompanying documents.

(4) *Updating statements.* Either the artist or owner of the building or both may record statements updating previously recorded information by submitting an updated statement and paying the recording fee specified in paragraph (d) of this section. Such statements should repeat the information disclosed in the previous filing as regarding the name of the artist(s), the name of the work(s) of visual art, the name and address of the building, and the name of the owner(s) of the building. The remaining portion of the statement should correct or supplement the information disclosed in the previously recorded statement.

(d) *Fee.* For a statement covering no more than one title, the basic recording fee is $20. An additional charge of $10.00 is made for each group of not more than 10 titles. For these purposes the term ''title'' refers to an identification of the work of visual art which is covered by the statement.

(e) *Date of recordation.* The date of recordation is the date when all of the elements required for recordation, including the prescribed fee have been received in the Copyright Office. After recordation of the statement, the sender will receive a certificate of record from the Copyright Office. Any documentation or photographs accompanying any submission will be retained and filed by the Copyright Office. They may also be transferred to the Library of Congress, or destroyed after preparing suitable copies, in accordance with usual procedures.

(f) The Copyright Office will record statements in the Visual Arts Registry

without examination or verification of the accuracy or completeness of the statement, if the statement is designated as a ''Visual Arts Registry Statement'' and pertains to a work of visual art incorporated in or made part of a building. Recordation of the statement and payment of the recording fee shall establish only the fact of recordation in the official record. Acceptance for recordation shall not be considered a determination that the statement is accurate, complete, and otherwise in compliance with section 113(d), title 17, U.S. Code. The accuracy and completeness of the statement is the responsibility of the artist or building owner who submits it for recordation. Artists and building owners are encouraged to submit accurate and complete statements. Omission of any information, however, shall not itself invalidate the recordation, unless a court of competent jurisdiction finds the statement is materially deficient and fails to meet the minimum requirements of section 113(d) of title 17, U.S. Code.

[56 FR 38341, Aug. 13, 1991]

§ 201.26 Recordation of documents pertaining to computer shareware and donation of public domain computer software.

(a) *General.* This section prescribes the procedures for submission of legal documents pertaining to computer shareware and the deposit of public domain computer software under section 805 of Public Law 101–650, 104 Stat. 5089 (1990). Documents recorded in the Copyright Office under this regulation will be included in the Computer Shareware Registry. Recordation in this Registry will establish a public record of licenses or other legal documents governing the relationship between copyright owners of computer shareware and persons associated with the dissemination or other use of computer shareware. Documents transferring the ownership of some or all rights under the copyright law of computer shareware and security interests in such software should be recorded under 17 U.S.C. 205, as implemented by § 201.4.

(b) *Definitions*—(1) The term *computer shareware* is accorded its customary meaning within the software industry. In general, shareware is copyrighted software which is distributed for the purposes of testing and review, subject to the condition that payment to the copyright owner is required after a person who has secured a copy decides to use the software.

(2) A *document designated as pertaining to computer shareware* means licenses or other legal documents governing the relationship between copyright owners of computer shareware and persons associated with the dissemination or other use of computer shareware.

(3) *Public domain computer software* means software which has been publicly distributed with an explicit disclaimer of copyright protection by the copyright owner.

(c) *Forms.* The Copyright Office does not provide forms for the use of persons recording documents designated as pertaining to computer shareware or for the deposit of public domain computer software.

(d) *Recordable Documents*—(1) Any document clearly designated as a ''Document Pertaining to Computer Shareware'' and which governs the legal relationship between owners of computer shareware and persons associated with the dissemination or other use of computer shareware may be recorded in the Computer Shareware Registry.

(2) Submitted documents may be a duplicate original, a legible photocopy, or other legible facsimile reproduction of the document, and must be complete on its face.

(3) Submitted documents will not be returned, and the Copyright Office requests that if the document is considered valuable, that only copies of that document be submitted for recordation.

(4) The Copyright Office encourages the submission of a machine-readable copy of the document in the form of an IBM–PC compatible disk, in addition to a copy of the document itself.

(e) *Fee.* For a document covering no more than one title, the basic recording fee is $20. An additional charge of $10 is made for each group of not more than 10 titles. For these purposes the term ''title'' refers to each computer shareware program covered by the document.

(f) *Date of recordation.* The date of recordation is the date when all of the elements required for recordation, including the prescribed fee have been received in the Copyright Office. After recordation of the statement, the sender will receive a certificate of record from the Copyright Office. The submission will be retained and filed by the Copyright Office, and may be destroyed at a later date after preparing suitable copies, in accordance with usual procedures.

(g) *Donation of public domain computer software.* (1) Any person may donate a copy of public domain computer software for the benefit of the Machine-Readable Collections Reading Room of the Library of Congress. Decision as to whether any public domain computer software is suitable for accession to the collections rests solely with the Library of Congress. Materials not selected will be disposed of in accordance with usual procedures, including transfer to other libraries, sale, or destruction. Donation of public domain software may be made regardless of whether a document has been recorded pertaining to the software.

(2) In order to donate public domain software, the following conditions must be met:

(i) The copy of the public domain software must contain an explicit disclaimer of copyright protection from the copyright owner.

(ii) The submission should contain documentation regarding the software. If the documentation is in machine-readable form, a print-out of the documentation should be included in the donation.

(iii) If the public domain software is marketed in a box or other packaging, the entire work as distributed, including the packaging, should be deposited.

(iv) If the public domain software is copy protected, two copies of the software must be submitted.

(3) Donations of public domain software with an accompanying letter of explanation must be sent to the following address: Gift Section, Exchange & Gift Division, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20540.

[58 FR 29107, May 19, 1993, as amended at 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995]

§ 201.27 Initial notice of distribution of digital audio recording devices or media.

(a) *General.* This section prescribes rules pertaining to the filing of an Initial Notice of Distribution in the Copyright Office as required by section 1003(b) of the Audio Home Recording Act of 1992, Public Law 102–563, title 17 of the United States Code, to obtain a statutory license to import and distribute, or manufacture and distribute, any digital audio recording device or digital audio recording medium in the United States.

(b) *Definitions*—(1) *An Initial Notice of Distribution of Digital Audio Recording Devices or Media or Initial Notice* is a notice under section 1003(b) of the Audio Home Recording Act of 1992, Public Law 102–563, title 17 of the United States Code, which is required by that section to be filed in the Copyright Office by an importer or manufacturer of a digital audio recording device or digital audio recording medium who has not previously filed notice of the importation or manufacture for distribution of such device or medium in the United States.

(2) The *product category* of a device or medium is a general class of products made up of functionally equivalent digital audio recording devices or media with substantially the same use in substantially the same environment, including, for example, hand-held portable integrated combination units (''boomboxes''); portable personal recorders; stand-alone home recorders (''tape decks''); home combination systems (''rack systems''); automobile recorders; configurations of tape media (standard cassettes or microcassettes); and configurations of disc media such as 2½,″ 3″ and 5″ discs.

(3) The *technology* of a device or medium is a product type distinguished by different technical processes for digitally recording musical sounds, such as digital audio tape recorders (DAT), digital compact cassette, (DCC), or recordable compact discs, including minidiscs (MD).

(4) The terms *digital audio recording device, digital audio recording medium, distribute, manufacture,* and *transfer price,* have the meanings of the same terms as they are used in section 1001

of the Copyright Act, title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Public Law 102–563.

(c) *Forms.* An Initial Notice form may be obtained from the Copyright Office free of charge, by contacting the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office, Washington, DC 20557.

(d) *Filing Deadline.* Initial Notices shall be filed in the Copyright Office no later than 45 days after the commencement of the first distribution of digital audio recording devices or digital audio recording media in the United States, on or after October 28, 1992. A manufacturer or importer shall file an Initial Notice within 45 days of the first distribution for each new product category and each new technology that the manufacturer or importer has not reported in a previous Initial Notice.

(e) *Content of Initial Notices.* An Initial Notice of Distribution of Digital Audio Recording Devices or Media shall be identified as such by prominent caption or heading, and shall include the following:

(1) The designation ''Importer'' or ''Manufacturer,'' or both, whichever is applicable, followed by the full legal name of the importer or manufacturer of the digital audio recording device or medium, of or the party named is a partnership, the name of the partnership followed by the name of at least one individual partner;

(2) Any trade or business name or names, trademarks, or other indicia of origin that the importer or manufacturer uses or intends to use in connection with the importation, manufacture, or distribution of such digital audio recording device or medium in the United States;

(3) The full United States mailing address of the importer or manufacturer, and the full business address, if different;

(4) The product category and technology of the devices or media imported or manufactured;

(5) The first date (day, month, and year) that distribution commenced, or is to commence;

(6) The signature of an appropriate officer, partner, or agent of the importer or manufacturer, as specified by the Initial Notice form; and

(7) Other information relevant to the importation or manufacture for distribution of digital audio recording devices or media as prescribed on the Initial Notice form provided by the Copyright Office.

(f) *Amendments.* (1) The Copyright Office will record amendments to Initial Notices submitted to correct an error or omission in the information given in an earlier Initial Notice. An amendment is not appropriate to reflect developments or changes in facts occurring after the date of signature of an Initial Notice.

(2) An amendment shall:

(i) Be clearly and prominently identified as an ''Amendment to an Initial Notice of Distribution of Digital Audio Recording Devices or Media;''

(ii) Identify the specific Initial Notice intended to be amended so that it may be readily located in the records of the Copyright Office;

(iii) Clearly specify the nature of the amendment to be made; and

(iv) Be signed and dated in accordance with this section.

(3) The recordation of an amendment under this paragraph shall have only such effect as may be attributed to it by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(g) *Recordation.* (1) The Copyright Office will record the Initial Notices and amendments submitted in accordance with this section by placing them in the appropriate public files of the Office. The Copyright Office will advise manufacturers and importers of errors or omissions appearing on the face of documents submitted to it, and will require that any such obvious errors or omissions be corrected before the documents will be recorded. However, recordation by the Copyright Office shall establish only the fact and date thereof; such recordation shall in no case be considered a determination that the document was, in fact, properly prepared or that all of the regulatory requirements to satisfy section 1003 of title 17 have been met.

(2) No fee shall be required for the recording of Initial Notices. A fee of $20 payable by personal or company check to the Register of Copyrights shall accompany any Amendment permitted by paragraph (f) of this section.

[57 FR 55465, Nov. 25, 1992]

§ 201.28 Statements of Account for digital audio recording devices or media.

(a) *General.* This section prescribes rules pertaining to the filing of Statements of Account and royalty fees in the Copyright Office as required by 17 U.S.C. 1003(c) and 1004, in order to import and distribute, or manufacture and distribute, in the United States any digital audio recording device or digital audio recording medium.

(b) *Definitions.* For purposes of this section, the following definitions apply:

(1) *Annual statement of account* is the statement required under 17 U.S.C. 1003, to be filed no later than two months after the close of the accounting period covered by the annual statement.

(2) *Device* and *medium* have the same meaning as *digital audio recording device* and *digital audio recording medium,* respectively, have in 17 U.S.C. 1001.

(3) *Digital audio recording product* means digital audio recording devices and digital audio recording media.

(4) *Generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS),* means the auditing standards promulgated by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants.

(5) *Manufacturing or importing party* refers to any person or entity that manufactures and distributes, and/or imports and distributes, any digital audio recording device or digital audio recording medium in the United States, and is required under 17 U.S.C. 1003 to file with the Copyright Office quarterly and annual Statements of Account.

(6) *Product category of a device or medium* is a general class of products made up of functionally equivalent digital audio recording products with substantially the same use in substantially the same environment, including, for example, hand-held portable integrated combination units (''boomboxes''); portable personal recorders; stand-alone home recorders (''tape decks''); home combination systems (''rack systems''); automobile recorders; configurations of tape media (standard cassettes or microcassettes); and configurations of disc media, such as 2½ inch, 3 inch, or 5 inch discs.

(7) *Primary auditor* is the certified public accountant retained by the manufacturing or importing party to audit the amounts reported in the annual Statement of Account submitted to the Copyright Office. The primary auditor may be the certified public accountant engaged by the manufacturing or importing party to perform the annual audit of the party's financial statement.

(8) *Quarterly statement of account* is the statement accompanying royalty payments required under 17 U.S.C. 1003, to be filed for each of the first three quarters of the accounting year, and no later than 45 days after the close of the quarterly period covered by the statement.

(9) *Technology of a device or medium* is a digital audio recording product-type distinguished by different technical processes for digitally recording musical sounds, such as digital audio tape recorders (DAT), digital compact cassettes (DCC), or recordable compact discs, including minidiscs (MD).

(10) *Distribute, manufacture, transfer price,* and *serial copying* have the meanings set forth in 17 U.S.C. 1001.

(c) *Accounting periods and filing deadlines*—(1) *Election of filing basis.* Statements of Account may be filed on either a calendar or fiscal year basis at the election of the manufacturing party. The election of a calendar or fiscal year basis must be made when the manufacturing or importing party files its first quarterly Statement of Account by appropriate designation on the Form DART/Q submitted. Thereafter the specific calendar or fiscal-year accounting period must be designated on each quarterly Statement of Account. The filing basis may be changed at any time upon notification in writing to the Register of Copyrights, accompanied by a statement of reasons as to why the change is to be made and a statement that such change will not affect the aggregate royalties due under the earlier basis. The notification of change in filing basis must be made at least two months before the date the next quarterly Statement of Account is due to be filed.

(2) *Quarterly filings.* Quarterly Statements of Account shall be filed on

Form DART/Q and shall cover a three-month period corresponding to the calendar or fiscal year of the filing party. A quarterly statement shall be filed no later than 45 days after the close of the period it covers.

(3) *Annual filings.* Annual Statements of Account shall be filed on Form DART/A and shall cover both the fourth quarter of an accounting year and the aggregate of the entire year corresponding to the calendar or fiscal accounting year elected. An annual statement shall be filed no later than two months after the close of the period it covers. As a transitional measure, however, the first annual Statement of Account filed after October 28, 1992, is not due until March 1, 1994, or two months after the end of the calendar or fiscal year in which the manufacturing or importing party first filed a quarterly Statement of Account, whichever is later. The first annual Statement of Account shall cover the entire period from October 28, 1992, to the end of the full accounting year. The appropriate royalty payment, calculated according to the instructions contained in Form DART/A, shall accompany the annual Statement of Account covering royalties due for the filing year: that is, royalties for the fourth quarter and any additional royalties that are due because of adjustments in the aggregate amounts of devices or media distributed.

(4) *Early or late filings.* Statements of Account and royalty fees received before the end of the particular accounting period covered by the statement will not be processed by the Office. The statement must be filed after the close of the relevant accounting period. Statements of Account and royalty fees received after the 45-day deadline for quarterly statements or the two month deadline for annual statements will be accepted for whatever legal effect they may have and will be assessed the appropriate interest charge for the late filing.

(d) *Forms.* (1) Each quarterly or annual Statement of Account shall be submitted on the appropriate form prescribed by the Copyright Office. Computation of the royalty fee shall be in accordance with the procedures set forth in the forms and this section. Statement of Account forms are available from the Licensing Division, Library of Congress. Forms and other information may be requested from the Licensing Division by facsimile transmission (FAX), but copies of Statement of Account forms transmitted to the Office by FAX will not be accepted.

(2) Forms prescribed by the Copyright Office are designated Quarterly Statement of Account for Digital Audio Recording Products (Form DART/Q) and Annual Statement of Account for Digital Audio Recording Products (Form DART/A).

(e) *Contents of quarterly Statements of Account.* (1) *Quarterly period and filing.* Any quarterly Statement of Account shall cover the full quarter of the calendar or fiscal accounting year for the particular quarter for which it is filed. A separate quarterly statement shall be filed for each quarter of the first three quarters of the accounting year during which there is any activity relevant to the payment of royalties under 17 U.S.C. 1004. The annual Statement of Account identified in paragraph (f) of this section incorporates the fourth quarter of the accounting year.

(2) *General content.* Each quarterly Statement of Account shall be filed on Form DART/Q, the ''Quarterly Statement of Account for Digital Audio Recording Products,'' and shall include a clear statement of the following information:

(i) A designation of the calendar or fiscal year of the annual reporting period;

(ii) A designation of the period, including the beginning and ending day, month, and year of the period covered by the quarter;

(iii) The full legal name of the manufacturing and/or importing party, together with any ''doing-business-as'' names used by such person or entity for the purpose of conducting the business of manufacturing, importing, or distributing digital audio recording products;

(iv) The full mailing address of the manufacturing or importing party, including a specific number and street name, or rural route and box number, of the place of business of the person or

entity. A post office box or similar designation will not be sufficient for this purpose except where it is the only address that can be used in that geographic location;

(v) A designation of the manufacturing or importing party status, i.e., ''Manufacturer,'' ''Importer,'' or ''Manufacturer and Importer;''

(vi) The designation ''Product Categories'' together with the product categories of the digital audio recording products manufactured or imported and distributed during the quarter covered by the statement;

(vii) The designation ''Technologies'' together with the technologies of the digital audio recording products manufactured or imported and distributed under the AHRA during the quarter covered by the statement;

(viii) The designation ''Series or Model Number'' followed by the model or series numbers of the digital audio recording products manufactured or imported and distributed under the AHRA during the quarter covered by the statement;

(ix) The ''fee code'' associated with the product;

(x) The ''source code'' for the product category;

(xi) The ''transfer price'' of the product;

(xii) The ''number of units distributed'' for each product;

(xiii) The ''minimum fee per unit'' for each product;

(xiv) The statutory royalty ''rate'' for digital audio recording devices or media;

(xv) The ''rate fee'' for each product;

(xvi) The appropriate ''maximum fee per unit'' for each product;

(xvii) The ''maximum fee'' for each product; and

(xviii) A computation of the total royalty payable for the quarter covered by the statement. Filing parties may not round off the figures they list in Space C, the computation section of the form, except for the figure representing the total royalty fee due; in that case, numbers ending in 50 to 99 cents may be rounded up to the next dollar, and numbers ending in one to 49 cents may be rounded down to the next dollar;

(3) *Royalty payments and accounting.* (i) The royalty specified in 17 U.S.C. 1004 shall accompany the quarterly and annual Statements of Account. No royalty is payable for redistribution of the same product item unless a credit has been taken for such items. Where royalties are payable for the period covered by the statement, the Statement of Account shall contain the following information for each unique combination of product category, technology, series or model number, fee code, source code, and transfer price:

(A) The total number of digital audio recording media distributed, multiplied by the statutory royalty rate of three percent (3%) of the transfer price;

(B) The total number of digital audio recording devices distributed for which the statutory royalty rate of two percent (2%) of the transfer price is payable, multiplied by such percentage rate of the transfer price;

(C) The total number of digital audio recording devices distributed for which the statutory maximum royalty is limited to eight dollars ($8.00), multiplied by such eight dollar amount;

(D) The total number of digital audio recording devices distributed for which the statutory maximum royalty is limited to twelve dollars ($12.00), multiplied by such twelve dollar amount; and

(E) The total number of digital audio recording devices distributed for which the statutory minimum royalty is limited to one dollar ($1.00), multiplied by such one dollar amount.

(ii) The amount of the royalty payment shall be calculated in accordance with the instructions specified in the quarterly Statement of Account form. Payment of the royalty fee must be in the form of a certified check, cashier's check, money order, or electronic payment payable to the Register of Copyrights.

(4) *Reduction of royalty fee.* (i) Section 1004(a)(2)(A) of title 17 U.S. Code, provides an instance in which royalty payments may be reduced if the digital audio recording device and such other devices are part of a physically integrated unit, the royalty payment shall be based on the transfer price of the unit, but shall be reduced by any royalty payment made on any digital

audio recording device included within the unit that was not first distributed in combination with the unit.

(ii) Notice of this provision together with directions for possible application to a product is contained in the DART/Q Form.

(5) *Contact party.* Each Statement of Account shall include the name, address, and telephone and facsimile (FAX) numbers of an individual whom the Copyright Office can write or call about the Statement of Account.

(6) *Credits for returned or exported products.* When digital audio recording products first distributed in the United States for ultimate transfer to United States consumers are returned to the manufacturer or importer as unsold or defective merchandise, or are exported, the manufacturing or importing party may take a credit to be deducted from the royalties payable for the period when the products were returned or exported. The credit may be taken only for returns or exports made within two years following the date royalties were paid for the products. This credit must be reflected in the manufacturing or importing party's quarterly or annual Statement of Account. If the manufacturer or importer later redistributes in the United States any products for which a credit has been taken, these products must be listed on the Statement of Account, and a new computation of the royalty fee must be made based on the transfer price of the products at the time of the new distribution.

(7) *Oath and signature.* Each Statement of Account shall include the handwritten signature of an authorized officer, principal, or agent of the filing party. The signature shall be accompanied by:

(i) The printed or typewritten name of the person signing the quarterly Statement of Account;

(ii) The date the document is signed;

(iii) The following certification:

> I, the undersigned, hereby certify that I am an authorized officer, principal, or agent of the ''manufacturing or importing party'' identified in Space B.

Penalties for fraud and false statements are provided under 18 U.S.C. 1001 *et. seq.*

(f) *Contents of annual Statements of Account*—(1) *General contents.* Each annual Statement of Account shall be filed on form DART/A, ''Annual Statement of Account for Digital Audio Recording Products.'' It must be filed by any importer or manufacturer that distributed in the United States, during a given calendar or fiscal year, any digital audio recording device or digital audio recording medium. The annual statement shall cover the aggregate of the distribution of devices and media for the entire year corresponding to the calendar or fiscal year elected. The annual Statement of Account shall contain the information, oath, and certification prescribed in paragraphs (e)(2)(i) through (e)(7)(iii) of this section, and shall cover the entire accounting year, including the fourth quarter distribution, and shall also provide for the reconciliation of the aggregated accounting of digital audio recording devices and media for the reported accounting year.

(2) *Reconciliation.* Any royalty payment due under sections 1003 and 1004 of title 17 that was not previously paid with the filing party's first three quarterly Statements of Account, shall be reconciled in the annual statement. Reconciliation in the annual Statement of Account provides for adjustments for reductions, refunds, underpayments, overpayments, credits, and royalty payments paid in Quarters 1, 2, and 3, and shall be computed in accordance with the instructions included in the annual Statement of Account. Errors that require reconciliation shall be corrected immediately upon discovery.

(3) *Accountant's opinion.* Each annual Statement of Account or any amended annual Statement of Account shall be audited by the primary auditor as defined in paragraph (b)(7) of this section. An amendment may be submitted to the Office either as a result of responses to questions raised by a Licensing Division examiner or on the initiative of the manufacturing or importing party to correct an error in the original Statement of Account.

(i) The audit shall be performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS). The audit may be performed in conjunction with

an annual audit of the manufacturing or importing party's financial statements.

(ii) The CPA shall issue a report, the ''primary auditor's report,'' reflecting his or her opinion as to whether the annual statement presents fairly, in all material respects, the number of digital audio recording devices and media that were imported and distributed, or manufactured and distributed, by the manufacturing or importing party during the relevant year, and the amount of royalty payments applicable to them under 17 U.S.C. chapter 10, in accordance with that law and these regulations.

(iii) The primary auditor's report shall be filed with the Copyright Office together with the annual Statement of Account, within two months after the end of the annual period for which the annual Statement of Account is prepared. The report may be qualified to the extent necessary and appropriate.

(iv) The Copyright Office does not provide a specific form, or require a specific format, for the CPA's review; however, in addition to the above, certain items must be named as audited items. These include the variables necessary to complete Space C of the Statement of Account form. The CPA may place his or her opinion, which will serve as the ''primary auditor's report,'' in the space provided on Form DART/A, or may attach a separate sheet or sheets containing the opinion.

(v) The auditor's report shall be signed by an individual, or in the name of a partnership or a corporation, and shall include city and state of execution, certificate number, jurisdiction of certificate, and date of opinion. The certificate number and jurisdiction are not required if the report is signed in the name of a partnership or a corporation.

(g) *Documentation.* All filing parties shall keep and retain in their possession, for at least three years from the date of filing, all records and documents necessary and appropriate to support fully the information set forth in quarterly and annual statements that they file.

(h) *Corrections, supplemental payments, and refunds*—(1) *General.* Upon compliance with the procedures and within the time limits set forth in this paragraph (h), corrections to quarterly and annual Statements of Account will be placed on record, and supplemental royalty fee payments will be received for deposit, or refunds without interest will be issued, in the following cases:

(i) Where, with respect to the accounting period covered by the quarterly or annual Statement of Account, any of the information given in the statement filed in the Copyright Office is incorrect or incomplete; or

(ii) Where, for any reason except that mentioned in paragraph (h)(2) of this section, calculation of the royalty fee payable for a particular accounting period was incorrect, and the amount deposited in the Copyright Office for that period was either too high or too low.

(2) Corrections to quarterly or annual Statements of Account will not be placed on file, supplemental royalty fee payments will not be received for deposit, and refunds will not be issued, where the information in the Statements of Account, the royalty fee calculations, or the payments were correct as of the date on which the accounting period ended, but changes (for example, cases where digital audio recording media were exported) took place later.

(3) Requests that corrections to annual or quarterly Statements of Account be accepted, that fee payments be accepted, or that refunds be issued shall be addressed to the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office, and shall meet the following conditions:

(i) The request shall be made in writing and must clearly identify the manufacturing or importing party making the request, the accounting period in question, and the purpose of the request. A request for a refund must be received in the Copyright Office before the expiration of two months from the last day of the applicable Statement of Account filing period. A request made by telephone or by telegraphic or similar unsigned communication will be considered to meet this requirement if it clearly identifies the basis of the request, is received in the Copyright Office within the two-month period, and a written request meeting all the conditions of this paragraph (h)(3) is also received in the Copyright Office within

14 days after the end of such two-month period.

(ii) The request must clearly identify the incorrect or incomplete information formerly filed and must provide the correct or additional information.

(iii) In the case where a royalty fee was miscalculated and the amount deposited with the Copyright Office was too large or too small, the request must be accompanied by an affidavit under the official seal of any officer authorized to administer oaths within the United States, or a statement in accordance with 28 U.S.C. 1746, made and signed in accordance with paragraph (e)(7) of this section. The affidavit or statement shall describe the reasons why the royalty fee was improperly calculated and include a detailed analysis of the proper royalty calculation.

(iv) Following final processing, all requests will be filed with the original Statement of Account in the records of the Copyright Office. Nothing contained in this paragraph shall be considered to relieve manufacturing or importing parties of their full obligations under title 17 of the United States Code, and the filing of a correction or supplemental payment shall have only such effect as may be attributed to it by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(v)(A) The request must be accompanied by a filing fee in the amount of $20 for each Statement of Account involved. Payment of this fee may be in the form of a personal or company check, or a certified check, cashier's check, or money order, payable to the Register of Copyrights. No request will be processed until the appropriate filing fees are received.

(B) Requests that a supplemental royalty fee payment be deposited must be accompanied by a remittance in the full amount of such fee. Payment of the supplemental royalty fee must be in the form of a certified check, cashier's check, money order, or electronic payment payable to the Register of Copyrights. No such request will be processed until an acceptable remittance in the full amount of the supplemental royalty fee has been received.

(vi) All requests submitted under paragraph (h) of this section must be signed by the manufacturing or importing party named in the Statement of Account, or the duly authorized agent of that party in accordance with paragraph (e)(7) of this section.

(vii) A request for a refund is not necessary where the Licensing Division, during its examination of a Statement of Account or related document, discovers an error that has resulted in a royalty overpayment. In this case, the Licensing Division will forward the royalty refund to the manufacturing or importing party named in the Statement of Account. The Copyright Office will not pay interest on any royalty refunds.

(i) *Examination of Statements of Account by the Copyright Office.* (1) Upon receiving a Statement of Account and royalty fee, the Copyright Office will make an official record of the actual date when such statement and fee were physically received in the Copyright Office. Thereafter, the Licensing Division will examine the statement for obvious errors or omissions appearing on the face of the documents and will require that any such obvious errors or omissions be corrected before final processing of the document is completed. If, as the result of communications between the Copyright Office and the manufacturer or importer, an additional fee is deposited or changes or additions are made in the Statement of Account, the date that additional deposit or information was actually received in the Office will be added to the official record.

(2) Completion by the Copyright Office of the final processing of a Statement of Account and royalty fee deposit shall establish only the fact of such completion and the date or dates of receipt shown in the official record. It shall not be considered a determination that the Statement of Account was, in fact, properly prepared and accurate, that the correct amount of the royalty was deposited, that the statutory time limits for filing had been met, or that any other requirements of 17 U.S.C. 1001 *et. seq.* were fulfilled.

(j) *Interest on late payments or underpayments.* (1) Royalty payments submitted as a result of late payments or underpayments shall include interest, which shall begin to accrue on the first day after the close of the period for filing Statements of Account for all late

payments or underpayments of royalties occurring within that accounting period. The accrual period for interest shall end on the date appearing on the certified check, cashier's check, money order, or electronic payment submitted by the manufacturing or importing party, if the payment is received by the Copyright Office within five business days of that date. If the payment is not received by the Copyright Office within five business days of its date, the accrual period shall end on the date of actual receipt by the Copyright Office.

(2) The interest rate applicable to a specific accounting period shall be the Current Value of Funds rate in accordance with the Treasury Financial Manual, at 1 TFM 6–8025.40, in effect on the first business day after the close of the filing deadline for the relevant accounting period. The interest rate for a particular accounting period may be obtained by consulting the FEDERAL REGISTER for the applicable Current Value of Funds Rate, or by contacting the Licensing Division of the Copyright Office.

(3) Interest is not required to be paid on any royalty underpayment or late payment from a particular accounting period if the interest charge is five dollars ($5.00) or less.

(k) *Confidentiality of Statements of Account.* Public access to the Copyright Office files of Statements of Account for digital audio recording products shall not be provided. Access will only be granted to interested copyright parties in accordance with regulations prescribed by the Register of Copyrights pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 1003(c).

[59 FR 4589, Feb. 1, 1994]

§ 201.29 Access to, and confidentiality of, Statements of Account, Verification Auditor's Reports, and other verification information filed in the Copyright Office for digital audio recording devices or media.

(a) *General.* This section prescribes rules covering access to DART Statements of Account, including the Primary Auditor's Reports, filed under 17 U.S.C. 1003(c) and access to a Verifying Auditor's Report or other information that may be filed in the Office in a DART verification procedure as set out in § 201.30. It also prescribes rules to ensure confidential disclosure of these materials to appropriate parties.

(b) *Definitions.*

(1) *Access* includes inspection of and supervised making of notes on information contained in Statements of Account including Primary Auditor's Reports, Verification Auditor's Reports, and any other verification information.

(2) *Audit and Verification Information* means the reports of the Primary Auditor and Verifying Auditor filed with the Copyright Office under §§ 201.28 and 201.30, and all information relating to a manufacturing or importing party.

(3) *DART Access Form* means the form provided by the Copyright Office that must be completed and signed by any appropriate party seeking access to DART confidential material.

(4) *DART confidential material* means the Quarterly and Annual Statements of Account, including the Primary Auditor's Report that is part of the Annual Statements of Account, and the Verifying Auditor's Report and any other verification information filed with the Copyright Office. It also includes photocopies of notes made by requestors who have had access to these materials that are retained by the Copyright Office.

(5) *Interested copyright party* means a party as defined in 17 U.S.C. 1001(7).

(6) *A Representative* is someone, such as a lawyer or accountant, who is not an employee or officer of an interested copyright party or a manufacturing or importing party but is authorized to act on that party's behalf.

(7) *Statements of Account* means Quarterly and Annual Statements of Account as required under 17 U.S.C. 1003(c) and defined in § 201.28.

(c) *Confidentiality.* The Copyright Office will keep all DART confidential materials in locked files and disclose them only in accordance with this section. Any person or entity provided with access to DART confidential material by the Copyright Office shall receive such information in confidence and shall use and disclose it only as authorized in 17 U.S.C. 1001 *et. seq.*

(d) *Persons allowed access to DART confidential material.* Access to DART Statements of Account filed under 17

U.S.C. 1003(c) and to Verification Auditor's Reports or other verification information is limited to:

(1) An interested copyright party as defined in § 201.29(b)(5) or an authorized representative of an interested copyright party, who has been qualified for access pursuant to paragraph (f)(2) of this section;

(2) The Verifying Auditor authorized to conduct verification procedures under § 201.30;

(3) The manufacturing or importing party who filed that Statement of Account or that party's authorized representative(s); and

(4) Staff of the Copyright Office or the Library of Congress who require access in the performance of their duties under title 17 U.S.C. 1001 *et seq.;*

(e) *Requests for access.* An interested copyright party, manufacturing party, importing party, representative, or Verifying Auditor seeking access to any DART confidential material must complete and sign a ''DART Access Form.'' The requestor must submit a copy of the completed DART Access Form to the Licensing Specialist, Licensing Division. The form must be received in the Licensing Division at least 5 working days before the date an appointment is requested. The form may be faxed to the Licensing Division to expedite scheduling, but a copy of the form with the original signature must be filed with the Office.

(1) A representative of an interested copyright party, a manufacturing party or an importing party shall submit an affidavit of his or her authority (e.g., in the form of a letter of authorization from the interested copyright party or the manufacturing or importing party).

(2) An auditor selected to conduct a verification procedure under § 201.30 shall submit an affidavit of his or her selection to conduct the verification procedure.

(3) DART Access Forms may be requested from, and upon completion returned to: Licensing Division, Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20557–6400. They may also be requested or submitted in person at the Licensing Division, room LM–458, James Madison Memorial Building, First and Independence Avenue, SE., Washington, DC, between 8:30 a.m. and 5 p.m.

(f) *Criteria for access to DART confidential material.* (1) A Verifying Auditor will be allowed access to any particular Statement of Account and Primary Auditor's Report required to perform his or her verification function;

(2) Interested copyright parties as defined in paragraph (b)(5) of this section will be allowed access to any DART confidential material as defined in paragraph (b)(4) of this section for verification purposes, except that no interested copyright party owned or controlled by a manufacturing or importing party subject to royalty payment obligations under the Audio Home Recording Act, or who owns or controls such a manufacturing or importing party, may have access to DART confidential material relating to any other manufacturing or importing party. In such cases, a representative of the interested copyright party as defined in paragraph (b)(6) of this section may have access for that party, provided that these representatives do not disclose the confidential information contained in the Statement of Account or Primary Auditor's Report to his or her client.

(3) Access to a Verifying Auditor's Report and any other verification material filed in the Office shall be limited to the interested copyright party(s) requesting the verification procedure and to the manufacturing or importing party whose Statement of Account was the subject of the verification procedure.

(g) *Denial of access.* Any party who does not meet the criteria described in § 201.29(f) shall be denied access.

(h) *Content of DART Access Form.* The DART Access Form shall include the following information:

(1) Identification of the Statement of Account and Primary Auditor's Report, the Verification Auditor's Report and other verification materials, or notes prepared by requestors who earlier accessed the same items, to be accessed, by both the name (of the manufacturing party or importing party) and the quarter(s) and year(s) to be accessed.

(2) The name of the interested copyright party, manufacturing party, importing party, or verification auditor on whose behalf the request is made, plus this party's complete address, including a street address (not a post office box number), a telephone number, and a telefax number, if any.

(3) If the request for access is by or for an interested copyright party, a statement indicating whether the copyright party is owned or controlled by a manufacturing or importing party subject to a royalty payment obligation, or whether the interested copyright party owns or controls a manufacturing or importing party subject to royalty payments.

(4) The name, address, and telephone number of the person making the request for access and his/her relationship to the party on whose behalf the request is made.

(5) The specific purpose for the request for access, for example, access is requested in order to verify a Statement of Account; in order to review the results of a verification audit; for the resolution of a dispute arising from such an audit; or in order for a manufacturing or importing party to review its own Statement of Account, Primary Auditor's Report, Verification Auditor's Report, or related information.

(6) A statement that the information obtained from access to Statements of Account, Primary Auditor's Report, Verification Auditor's Report, and any other verification audit filings will be used only for a purpose permitted under the Audio Home Recording Act (AHRA) and the DART regulations.

(7) The actual signature of the party or the representative of the party requesting access certifying that the information will be held in confidence and used only for the purpose specified by the Audio Home Recording Act and these regulations.

[60 FR 25998, May 16, 1995]

§ 201.30 Verification of Statements of Account.

(a) *General.* This section prescribes rules pertaining to the verification of information contained in the Statements of Account by interested copyright parties pursuant to section 1003(c) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(b) *Definitions*—(1) *Annual Statement of Account, generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS),* and *primary auditor* have the same meaning as the definition in § 201.28 of this part.

(2) *Filer* is a manufacturer or importer of digital devices or media who is required by 17 U.S.C. 1003 to file with the Copyright Office Quarterly and Annual Statements of Account and a primary auditor's report on the Annual Statement of Account.

(3) *Interested copyright party* has the same meaning as the definition in § 201.29 of this part.

(4) *Verifying auditor* is the person retained by interested copyright parties to perform a verification procedure. He or she is independent and qualified as defined in paragraphs (j)(2) and (j)(3) of this section.

(5) *Verification procedure* is the process followed by the verifying auditor to verify the information reported on an Annual Statement of Account.

(c) *Purpose of verification.* The purpose of verification is to determine whether there was any failure of the primary auditor to conduct the primary audit properly or to obtain a reliable result, or whether there was any error in the Annual Statement of Account.

(d) *Timing of verification procedure*—(1) *Requesting a verification procedure.* No sooner than three months nor later than three years after the filing deadline of the Annual Statement of Account to be verified, any interested copyright party shall notify the Register of Copyrights of its interest in instituting a verification procedure. Such notification of interest shall also be served at the same time on the filer and the primary auditor identified in the Annual Statement of Account. Such notification shall include the year of the Annual Statement of Account to be verified, the name of the filer, information on how other interested copyright parties may contact the party interested in the verification including name, address, telephone number, facsimile number and electronic mail address, if any, and a statement establishing the party filing the notification as an interested copyright party. The notification of interest may

apply to more than one Annual Statement of Account and more than one filer.

(2) *Coordination and selection of verifying auditor.* The Copyright Office will publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER notice of having received a notification of interest to institute a verification procedure. Interested copyright parties have one month from the date of publication of the FEDERAL REGISTER notice to notify the party interested in instituting the verification procedure of their intent to join with it and to participate in the selection of the verifying auditor. Any dispute about the selection of the verifying auditor shall be resolved by the parties themselves.

(3) *Notification of the filer and primary auditor.* As soon as the verifying auditor has been selected, and in no case later than two months after the publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER of the notice described in paragraph (d)(2) of this section, the joint interested copyright parties shall notify the Register of Copyrights, the filer, and the primary auditor identified in the Annual Statement of Account to be verified, that they intend or do not intend to initiate a verification procedure.

(4) *Commencement of the verification procedure.* The verification procedure shall begin no sooner than one month after notice of intent to initiate a verification procedure was given to the filer and the primary auditor by the joint interested copyright parties. The joint interested copyright parties shall grant the filer or the primary auditor a postponement of the beginning of the verification procedure of up to one additional month if either one requests it. Verification procedures shall be conducted at reasonable times during normal business hours.

(5) *Anti-duplication rules.* A filer shall be subject to no more than one verification procedure per calendar year. An Annual Statement of Account shall be subject to a verification procedure only once.

(e) *Scope of verification.* The verifying auditor shall limit his or her examination to verifying the information required in the Annual Statement of Account. To the extent possible, the verifying auditor shall inspect the information contained in the primary auditor's report and the primary auditor's working papers. If the verifying auditor believes that access to the records, files, or other materials in the control of the filer is required according to GAAS, he or she may, after consultation with the primary auditor, require the production of these documents as well. The verifying auditor and the primary auditor shall act in good faith using reasonable professional judgment, with the intention of reaching a reasonable accommodation as to the necessity and scope of examination of any additional documents, but the decision to require the production of additional documents is solely that of the verifying auditor.

(f) *Verification report.* Upon concluding the verification procedure, the verifying auditor shall render a report enumerating in reasonable detail the procedures performed by the verifying auditor and his or her findings. Such findings shall state whether there was any failure of the primary auditor to conduct properly the primary audit or obtain a reliable result, and whether there was any error in the Annual Statement of Account, itemized by amount and by the filer's elected fiscal year. If there was such failure or error, the report shall specify all evidence from which the verifying auditor reached such conclusions. Such evidence shall be listed and identified in an appendix to the report in sufficient detail to enable a third party to reasonably understand or interpret the evidence on which the verifying auditor based his or her conclusion. If there was no such failure or error, the report shall so state.

(g) *Distribution of report.* Copies of the verifying auditor's report shall be subject to the confidentiality provisions of § 201.29 and shall be distributed as follows:

(1) One copy, excluding the appendix, if applicable, shall be filed with the Register of Copyrights.

(2) One copy, with the appendix, if applicable, shall be submitted to each of the interested copyright parties who retained the services of the verifying auditor and who are authorized to receive such information according to § 201.29.

(3) One copy, with the appendix, if applicable, shall be submitted to the filer of the Annual Statement of Account.

(4) One copy, with the appendix, if applicable, shall be submitted to the primary auditor.

(h) *Retention of report.* The Register of Copyrights will retain his or her copy of the verifying auditor's report for three years following the date the copy of the verifying auditor's report is filed.

(i) *Costs of verification.* The joint interested copyright parties who requested the verification procedure shall pay the fees of the verifying auditor and the primary auditor for their work performed in connection with the verification procedure, except, if the verification procedure results in a judicial determination or the filer's agreement that royalty payments were understated on the Annual Statement of Account, then,

(1) if the amount is less than five percent (5%) of the amount stated on the Annual Statement of Account, that amount shall first be used to pay the fees of the verifying auditor and the primary auditor, and any remaining amount plus any applicable interest on the total amount shall be deposited, allocated by the filer's elected fiscal year, with the Register of Copyrights, or

(2) if the amount is equal to or greater than five percent (5%) of the amount stated on the Annual Statement of Account, the filer shall pay the fees of the verifying auditor and the primary auditor, and, in addition, shall deposit the amount found to be due plus any applicable interest on the total amount, allocated by the filer's elected fiscal year, with the Register of Copyrights.

(j) *Independence and qualifications of verifying auditor.* (1) The verifying auditor shall be qualified and independent as defined in this section. If the filer has reason to believe that the verifying auditor is not qualified or independent, it shall raise the matter with the joint interested copyright parties before the commencement of the verification procedure, and if the matter is not resolved, it may raise the issue with the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants' Professional Ethics Division and/or the verifying auditor's State Board of Accountancy while the verification procedure is being performed.

(2) A verifying auditor shall be considered qualified if he or she is a certified public accountant or works under the supervision of a certified public accounting firm.

(3) A verifying auditor shall be considered independent if:

(i) He or she is independent as that term is used in the Code of Professional Conduct of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, including the Principles, Rules and Interpretations of such Code applicable generally to attest engagements (collectively, the ''AICPA Code''); and

(ii) He or she is independent as that term is used in the Statements on Auditing Standards promulgated by the Auditing Standards Board of the AICPA and Interpretations thereof issued by the Auditing Standards Division of the AICPA.

[61 FR 30813, June 18, 1996]

§ 201.31 Procedures for copyright restoration in the United States for certain motion pictures and their contents in accordance with the North American Free Trade Agreement.

(a) *General.* This section prescribes the procedures for submission of Statements of Intent pertaining to the restoration of copyright protection in the United States for certain motion pictures and works embodied therein as required by the North American Free Trade Agreement Implementation Act of December 8, 1993, Public Law No. 103–182. On or after January 3, 1995, the Copyright Office will publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a list of works for which potential copyright owners have filed a complete and timely Statement of Intent with the Copyright Office.

(b) *Definitions.* For purposes of this section, the following definitions apply:

(1) *Effective filing.* To be effective a Statement of Intent must be complete and timely.

(2) *Eligible work* means any motion picture that was first fixed or published in Mexico or Canada, and any work included in such motion picture that was first fixed or published with

this motion picture, if the work entered the public domain in the United States because it was first published on or after January 1, 1978, and before March 1, 1989, without the notice required by 17 U.S.C. 401, 402, or 403, the absence of which has not been excused by the operation of 17 U.S.C. 405, as such sections were in effect during that period.

(3) *Fixed* means a work 'fixed' in a tangible medium of expression when its embodiment in a copy or phonorecord, by or under the authority of the author, is sufficiently permanent or stable to permit it to be perceived, reproduced, or otherwise communicated for a period of more than transitory duration. A work consisting of sounds, images, or both, that are being transmitted, is 'fixed' for purposes of this title if a fixation of the work is being made simultaneously with its transmission. 17 U.S.C. 101

(4) *Potential copyright owner* means the person who would have owned any of the exclusive rights comprised in a copyright in the United States in a work eligible for copyright restoration under NAFTA, if the work had not fallen into the public domain for failure to comply with the statutory notice requirements in effect at the time of first publication, or any successor in interest to such a person.

(5) *Published* means distribution of copies of a work to the public by sale or other transfer of ownership, or by rental, lease, or lending. The offering to distribute copies to a group of persons for purposes of further distribution, public performance, or public display, constitutes publication. A public performance or display of a work does not of itself constitute publication.

(c) *Forms.* The Copyright Office does not provide Statement of Intent forms for the use of potential copyright owners who want to restore copyright protection in eligible works.

(d) *Requirements for effective Statements of Intent.* (1) The document should be clearly designated as a ''Statement of Intent to restore copyright protection in the United States in accordance with the North American Free Trade Agreement''.

(2) Statements of Intent must include:

(i) The title(s) of the work(s) for which copyright restoration is sought, including any underlying work(s) that has a title(s) different from the title of the motion picture, provided all works are owned by the same potential copyright owner;

(ii) The nation of first fixation;

(iii) The nation of first publication;

(iv) The date of first publication;

(v) The name and mailing address (and telephone and telefax, if applicable) of the potential copyright owner of the work;

(vi) The following certification (in its entirety); signed and dated by the potential copyright owner or authorized agent:

Certification and Signature: I hereby certify that each of the above titled works was first fixed or first published in

_____

(insert Mexico or Canada) and understand that the work(s) have entered the public domain in the United States of America because of first publication on or after January 1, 1978, and before March 1, 1989, without the notice required by U.S. copyright law. I certify that the information given herein is true and correct to the best of my knowledge, and understand that any knowing or willful falsification of material facts may result in criminal liability under 18 U.S.C. 1001.

Signature: _____

Name (Printed or Typed): _____

Date: _____

(3) If copyright restoration is sought for an underlying work only, the Statement of Intent must specify the kind of underlying work covered and give the title if different from the title of the motion picture.

(4) More than one motion picture may be included in a single Statement of Intent provided the potential copyright owner is the same for all the motion pictures. The information required in § 201.31 (d)(2)(i) through (d)(2)(iv) must be given for each work.

(5) Sports programs that do not have a title can be identified in a Statement of Intent by giving the sporting event, the team names and the date (month, day and year).

(6) Statements of Intent must be received in the Copyright Office on or before December 31, 1994.

(7) Statements of Intent must be in English and either typed or legibly

printed by hand, on 8 1/2 inch by 11 inch white paper.

(e) *Fee.* The Copyright Office is not requiring a fee for the processing of Statements of Intent.

(f) *Effective date of restoration of copyright protection.* (1) Potential copyright owners of eligible works who file a complete and timely Statement of Intent with the Copyright Office will have copyright protection restored in these works effective January 1, 1995.

(2) The new section 17 U.S.C. 104A(c) created by the NAFTA Implementation Act gives a one year exemption to U.S. nationals or domiciliaries who made or acquired copies of a motion picture or its contents before December 8, 1993, the date of enactment of the implementing act. These individuals or entities may continue to sell, distribute, or perform publicly such works without liability for a period of one year following the Copyright Office's publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER of the list of the works determined to be properly qualified for protection and for which complete and timely Statements of Intent have been filed.

(g) *Registration of works whose copyright has been restored.* After January 1, 1995, the Copyright Office encourages potential copyright owners to make voluntary copyright registration in accordance with 17 U.S.C. 408 for works that have had copyright restored in accordance with NAFTA.

[59 FR 12164, Mar. 16, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 58789, Nov. 15, 1994; 60 FR 50420, Sept. 29, 1995]

§ 201.32 Fees for Copyright Office special services.

The Copyright Office has established the following fees for the special services indicated:

Special services	Fees
1. Special handling fee	$330.
2. Full-term storage fee	270.
3. Surcharge for expedited Certifications and Documents Section services (per hour)	
a. Additional certificates	50.
b. In-process searches	50.
c. Copy of assignment	50.
d. Certification	50.
e. Copy of deposit (stored off-site)	70 (first hour). 50 (each additional hour).
f. Copy of correspondence file (stored in Madison Building) or at an off-site storage facility.	70 (first hour). 50 (each additional hour).
g. Copy of deposit or correspondence file (stored at Federal Records Center)	135 (first hour). 50 (each additional hour).
4. Surcharge for expedited Reference and Bibliography searches:	
a. First hour	100.
b. Each additional hour	50.

[59 FR 38371, July 28, 1994]

§ 201.33 Procedures for filing Notices of Intent to Enforce a restored copyright under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act.

(a) *General.* This section prescribes the procedures for submission of Notices of Intent to Enforce a Restored Copyright under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act, as required in 17 U.S.C. 104A(a). On or before May 1, 1996, and every four months thereafter, the Copyright Office will publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a list of works for which Notices of Intent to Enforce have been filed. It will maintain a list of these works. The Office will also make a more complete version of the information contained in the Notice of Intent to Enforce available on its automated database, which can be accessed over the Internet.

(b) *Definitions*—(1) *NAFTA work* means a work restored to copyright on January 1, 1995, as a result of compliance with procedures contained in the North American Free Trade Agreement Implementation Act of December 8, 1993, Public Law No. 103–182.

(2) *Reliance party* means any person who—

(i) With respect to a particular work, engages in acts, before the source country of that work becomes an eligible country under the URAA, which would

have violated 17 U.S.C. 106 if the restored work had been subject to copyright protection and who, after the source country becomes an eligible country, continues to engage in such acts;

(ii) Before the source country of a particular work becomes an eligible country, makes or acquires one or more copies or phonorecords of that work; or

(iii) As the result of the sale or other disposition of a derivative work, covered under the new 17 U.S.C. 104A(d)(3), or of significant assets of a person, described in the new 17 U.S.C. 104 A(d)(3)(A) or (B), is a successor, assignee or licensee of that person.

(3) *Restored work* means an original work of authorship that—

(i) Is protected under 17 U.S.C. 104A(a);

(ii) Is not in the public domain in its source country through expiration of term of protection;

(iii) Is in the public domain in the United States due to—

(A) Noncompliance with formalities imposed at any time by United States copyright law, including failure of renewal, lack of proper notice, or failure to comply with any manufacturing requirements;

(B) Lack of subject matter protection in the case of sound recordings fixed before February 15, 1972; or

(C) Lack of national eligibility; and

(iv) Has at least one author or rightholder who was, at the time the work was created, a national or domiciliary of an eligible country, and if published, was first published in an eligible country and not published in the United States during the 30-day period following publication in such eligible country.

(4) *Source country* of a restored work is—

(i) A nation other than the United States; and

(ii) In the case of an unpublished work—

(A) The eligible country in which the author or rightholder is a national or domiciliary, or, if a restored work has more than one author or rightholder, the majority of foreign authors or rightholders are nationals or domiciliaries of eligible countries; or

(B) If the majority of authors or rightholders are not foreign, the nation other than the United States which has the most significant contacts with the work; and

(iii) In the case of a published work—

(A) The eligible country in which the work is first published; or

(B) If the restored work is published on the same day in two or more eligible countries, the eligible country which has the most significant contacts with the work.

(c) *Forms.* The Copyright Office does not provide forms for Notices of Intent to Enforce filed with the Copyright Office. It requests that filers of such notices follow the format set out in Appendix A of this section and give all of the information listed in paragraph (d) of this section. Notices of Intent to Enforce must be in English, and should be typed or printed by hand legibly in dark, preferably black, ink, on 8½ by 11 inch white paper of good quality, with at least a one inch (or three cm) margin.

(d) *Requirements for Notice of Intent to Enforce a Copyright Restored under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act.* (1) Notices of Intent to Enforce should be sent to the following address: URAA/GATT, NIEs and Registrations, P.O. Box 72400, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, USA.

(2) The document should be clearly designated as ''Notice of Intent to Enforce a Copyright Restored under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act''.

(3) Notices of Intent to Enforce must include:

(i) Required information:

(A) The title of the work, or if untitled, a brief description of the work;

(B) An English translation of the title if title is in a foreign language;

(C) Alternative titles if any;

(D) Name of the copyright owner of the restored work, or of an owner of an exclusive right therein;

(E) The address and telephone number where the owner of copyright or the exclusive right therein can be reached; and

(F) The following certification signed and dated by the owner of copyright, or the owner of an exclusive right therein, or the owner's authorized agent:

I hereby certify that for each of the work(s) listed above, I am the copyright owner, or the owner of an exclusive right, or the owner's authorized agent, the agency relationship having been constituted in a writing signed by the owner before the filing of this notice, and that the information given herein is true and correct to the best of my knowledge.

Signature _____

Name (printed or typed) _____

As agent for (if applicable) _____

Date: _____

(ii) Optional but essential information:

(A) Type of work (painting, sculpture, music, motion picture, sound recording, book, etc.);

(B) Name of author(s);

(C) Source country;

(D) Approximate year of publication;

(E) Additional identifying information (*e.g.* for movies: director, leading actors, screenwriter, animator; for photographs or books: subject matter; for books: editor, publisher, contributors);

(F) Rights owned by the party on whose behalf the Notice of Intent to Enforce is filed (e.g., the right to reproduce/distribute/publicly display/publicly perform the work, or to prepare a derivative work based on the work, etc.); and

(G) Telefax number at which owner, exclusive rights holder, or agent thereof can be reached.

(4) Notices of Intent to Enforce may cover multiple works provided that each work is identified by title, all the works are by the same author, all the works are owned by the identified copyright owner or owner of an exclusive right, and the rights owned by the party on whose behalf the Notice of Intent is filed are the same. In the case of Notices of Intent to Enforce covering multiple works, the notice must separately designate for each work covered the title of the work, or if untitled, a brief description of the work; an English translation of the title if the title is in a foreign language; alternative titles, if any; the type of work; the source country; the approximate year of publication; and additional identifying information.

(5) Notices of Intent to Enforce works restored on January 1, 1996, may be submitted to the Copyright Office on or after January 1, 1996, through December 31, 1997.

(e) *Fee*—(1) *Amount.* The filing fee for recording Notices of Intent to Enforce is 30 U.S. dollars for notices covering one work. For notices covering multiple works as described in paragraph (d)(4) of this section, the fee is 30 U.S. dollars, plus one dollar for each additional work covered beyond the first designated work. For example, the fee for a Notice of Intent to Enforce covering three works would be $32. This fee includes the cost of an acknowledgement of recordation.

(2) *Method of Payment*—(i) *Checks, money orders, or bank drafts.* The Copyright Office will accept checks, money orders, or bank drafts made payable to the Register of Copyrights. Remittances must be redeemable without service or exchange fees through a United States institution, must be payable in United States dollars, and must be imprinted with American Banking Association routing numbers. International money orders, and postal money orders that are negotiable only at a post office are not acceptable. CURRENCY WILL NOT BE ACCEPTED.

(ii) *Copyright Office Deposit Account.* The Copyright Office maintains a system of Deposit Accounts for the convenience of those who frequently use its services. The system allows an individual or firm to establish a Deposit Account in the Copyright Office and to make advance deposits into that account. Deposit Account holders can charge copyright fees against the balance in their accounts instead of sending separate remittances with each request for service. For information on Deposit Accounts please write: Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20559–6000, and request a copy of Circular 5, ''How to Open and Maintain a Deposit Account in the Copyright Office.''

(iii) *Credit cards.* For URAA filings the Copyright Office will accept VISA, MasterCard and American Express. Debit cards cannot be accepted for payment. With the NIE, a filer using a credit card must submit a separate cover letter stating the name of the credit card, the credit card number, the expiration date of the credit card, the

total amount, and a signature authorizing the Office to charge the fees to the account. To protect the security of the credit card number, the filer must not write the credit card number on the Notice of Intent to Enforce.

(f) *Public online access.* (1) Almost all of the information contained in the Notice of Intent to Enforce is available online in the Copyright Office History Documents (COHD) file through the Library of Congress electronic information system LC MARVEL through the Internet. Except on Federal holidays, this information may be obtained on terminals in the Copyright Office at the Library of Congress Monday through Friday 8:30 a.m. - 5:00 p.m. U.S. Eastern Time or over the Internet Monday - Friday 6:30 a.m. - 9:30 p.m. U.S. Eastern Time, Saturday 8:00 a.m. - 5 p.m., and Sunday 1:00 p.m. - 5:00 p.m.

(2) Alternative ways to connect through Internet are: (i) use the Copyright Office Home Page on the World Wide Web at: http://lcweb.loc.gov/copyright, (ii) telnet to locis.loc.gov or the numeric address 140.147.254.3, or (iii) telnet to marvel.loc.gov, or the numeric address 140.147.248.7 and log in as marvel, or (iv) use a Gopher Client to connect to marvel.loc.gov.

(3) Information available online includes: the title or brief description if untitled; an English translation of the title; the alternative titles if any; the name of the copyright owner or owner of an exclusive right; the author; the type of work; the date of receipt of the NIE in the Copyright Office; the date of publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER; the rights covered by the notice; and the address, telephone and telefax number (if given) of the copyright owner.

(4) Online records of Notices of Intent to Enforce are searchable by the title, the copyright owner or owner of an exclusive right, and the author.

(g) *NAFTA work.* The copyright owner of a work restored under NAFTA by the filing of a NAFTA Statement of Intent to Restore with the Copyright Office prior to January 1, 1995, is not required to file a Notice of Intent to Enforce under this regulation.

APPENDIX A TO § 201.33—NOTICE OF INTENT TO ENFORCE A COPYRIGHT RESTORED UNDER THE URUGUAY ROUND AGREEMENTS ACT (URAA)

1. Title: _____

(If this work does not have a title, state ''No title.'') OR

Brief description of work (for untitled works only): _____

_____

2. English translation of title (if applicable):
3. Alternative title(s) (if any): _____
4. Type of work: _____

(e.g. painting, sculpture, music, motion picture, sound recording, book)

5. Name of author(s): _____
6. Source country: _____
7. Approximate year of publication: _____
8. Additional identifying information: _____

(e.g. for movies; director, leading actors, screenwriter, animator, for photographs: subject matter; for books; editor, publisher, contributors, subject matter).

9. Name of copyright owner: _____

(Statements may be filed in the name of the owner of the restored copyright or the owner of an exclusive right therein.)

10. If you are not the owner of all rights, specify the rights you own:

_____

(e.g. the right to reproduce/distribute publicly display/publicly perform the work, or to prepare a derivative work based on the work)

11. Address at which copyright owner may be contacted:

_____

_____

(Give the complete address, including the country and an ''attention'' line, or ''in care of'' name, if necessary.)

12. Telephone number of owner: _____
13. Telefax number of owner: _____
14. Certification and Signature:

I hereby certify that, for each of the work(s) listed above, I am the copyright owner, or the owner of an exclusive right, or the owner's authorized agent, the agency relationship having been constituted in a writing signed by the owner before the filing of this notice, and that the information given herein is true and correct to the best of my knowledge.

Signature: _____

Name (printed or typed): _____

As agent for (if applicable): _____

Date: _____

NOTE: Notices of Intent to Enforce must be in English, except for the original title, and either typed or printed by hand legibly in dark, preferably black, ink. They should be on 8½″ by 11″ white paper of good quality, with at least a 1-inch (or 3 cm) margin.

[60 FR 50420, Sept. 29, 1995]

PART 202—REGISTRATION OF CLAIMS TO COPYRIGHT

Sec.
202.1 Material not subject to copyright.
202.2 Copyright notice.
202.3 Registration of copyright.
202.4 Effective date of registration.
202.5—202.9 [Reserved]
202.10 Pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works.
202.11 Architectural works
202.12 Restored copyrights.
202.13—202.16 [Reserved]
202.17 Renewals.
202.18 [Reserved]
202.19 Deposit of published copies or phonorecords for the Library of Congress.
202.20 Deposit of copies and phonorecords for copyright registration.
202.21 Deposit of identifying material instead of copies.
202.22 Acquisition and deposit of unpublished television transmission programs.
202.23 Full-term retention of copyright deposits.
APPENDIX A TO PART 202—TECHNICAL GUIDELINES REGARDING SOUND PHYSICAL CONDITION
APPENDIX B TO PART 202—''BEST EDITION'' OF PUBLISHED COPYRIGHTED WORKS FOR THE COLLECTIONS OF THE LIBRARY OF CONGRESS

AUTHORITY: 17 U.S.C. 702.

§ 202.1 Material not subject to copyright.

The following are examples of works not subject to copyright and applications for registration of such works cannot be entertained:

(a) Words and short phrases such as names, titles, and slogans; familiar symbols or designs; mere variations of typographic ornamentation, lettering or coloring; mere listing of ingredients or contents;

(b) Ideas, plans, methods, systems, or devices, as distinguished from the particular manner in which they are expressed or described in a writing;

(c) Blank forms, such as time cards, graph paper, account books, diaries, bank checks, scorecards, address books, report forms, order forms and the like, which are designed for recording information and do not in themselves convey information;

(d) Works consisting entirely of information that is common property containing no original authorship, such as, for example: Standard calendars, height and weight charts, tape measures and rulers, schedules of sporting events, and lists or tables taken from public documents or other common sources.

(e) Typeface as typeface.

[24 FR 4956, June 18, 1959, as amended at 38 FR 3045, Feb. 1, 1973; 57 FR 6202, Feb. 21, 1992]

§ 202.2 Copyright notice.

(a) *General.* (1) With respect to a work published before January 1, 1978, copyright was secured, or the right to secure it was lost, except for works seeking ad interim copyright, at the date of publication, i.e., the date on which copies are first placed on sale, sold, or publicly distributed, depending upon the adequacy of the notice of copyright on the work at that time. The adequacy of the copyright notice for such a work is determined by the copyright statute as it existed on the date of first publication.

(2) If before January 1, 1978, publication occurred by distribution of copies or in some other manner, without the statutory notice or with an inadequate notice, as determined by the copyright statute as it existed on the date of first publication, the right to secure copyright was lost. In such cases, copyright cannot be secured by adding the notice to copies distributed at a later date.

(3) Works first published abroad before January 1, 1978, other than works for which ad interim copyright has been obtained, must have borne an adequate copyright notice. The adequacy of the copyright notice for such works is determined by the copyright statute as it existed on the date of first publication abroad.

(b) *Defects in notice.* Where the copyright notice on a work published before January 1, 1978, does not meet the requirements of title 17 of the United States Code as it existed on December 31, 1977, the Copyright Office will reject an application for copyright registration. Common defects in the notice include, among others the following:

(1) The notice lacks one or more of the necessary elements (i.e., the word ''Copyright,'' the abbreviation ''Copr.'', or the symbol ©, or, in the case of a sound recording, the symbol ℗; the

name of the copyright proprietor, or, in the case of a sound recording, the name, a recognizable abbreviation of the name, or a generally known alternative designation, of the copyright owner; and, when required, the year date of publication);

(2) The elements of the notice are so dispersed that a necessary element is not identified as a part of the notice; in the case of a sound recording, however, if the producer is named on the label or container, and if no other name appears in conjunction with the notice, his name will be considered a part of the notice;

(3) The notice is not in one of the positions prescribed by law;

(4) The notice is in a foreign language;

(5) The name in the notice is that of someone who had no authority to secure copyright in his name;

(6) The year date in the copyright notice is later than the date of the year in which copyright was actually secured, including the following cases:

(i) Where the year date in the notice is later than the date of actual publication;

(ii) Where copyright was first secured by registration of a work in unpublished form, and copies of the same work as later published without change in substance bear a copyright notice containing a year date later than the year of unpublished registration;

(iii) Where a book or periodical published abroad, for which ad interim copyright has been obtained, is later published in the United States without change in substance and contains a year date in the copyright notice later than the year of first publication abroad:

Provided, however, That in each of the three foregoing types of cases, if the copyright was actually secured not more than one year earlier than the year date in the notice, registration may be considered as a doubtful case.

(7) A notice is permanently covered so that it cannot be seen without tearing the work apart;

(8) A notice is illegible or so small that it cannot be read without the aid of a magnifying glass: *Provided, however,* That where the work itself requires magnification for its ordinary use (e.g., a microfilm, microcard or motion picture) a notice which will be readable when so magnified, will not constitute a reason for rejection of the claim;

(9) A notice is on a detachable tag and will eventually be detached and discarded when the work is put in use;

(10) A notice is on the wrapper or container which is not a part of the work and which will eventually be removed and discarded when the work is put to use; the notice may be on a container which is designed and can be expected to remain with the work;

(11) The notice is restricted or limited exclusively to an uncopyrightable element, either by virtue of its position on the work, by the use of asterisks, or by other means.

[24 FR 4956, June 18, 1959; 24 FR 6163, July 31, 1959, as amended at 37 FR 3055, Feb. 11, 1972; 46 FR 33249, June 29, 1981; 46 FR 34329, July 1, 1981; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995]

§ 202.3 Registration of copyright.

(a) *General.* (1) This section prescribes conditions for the registration of copyright, and the application to be made for registration under sections 408 and 409 of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553.

(2) For the purposes of this section, the terms *audiovisual work, compilation, copy, derivative work, device, fixation, literary work, motion picture, phonorecord, pictorial, graphic and sculptural works, process, sound recording,* and their variant forms, have the meanings set forth in section 101 of title 17. The term *author* includes an employer or other person for whom a work is ''made for hire'' under section 101 of title 17.

(3) For the purposes of this section, a copyright *claimant* is either:

(i) The author of a work;

(ii) A person or organization that has obtained ownership of all rights under the copyright initially belonging to the author.[1]

[1] This category includes a person or organization that has obtained, from the author or from an entity that has obtained ownership of all rights under the copyright initially belonging to the author, the contractual right to claim legal title to the copyright in an application for copyright registration.

(b) *Administrative classification and application forms*—(1) *Classes of works.* For the purpose of registration, the Register of Copyrights has prescribed the classes of works in which copyright may be claimed. These classes, and examples of works which they include, are as follows:

(i) *Class TX: Nondramatic literary works.* This class includes all published and unpublished nondramatic literary works. Examples: Fiction; nonfiction; poetry; textbooks; reference works; directories; catalogs; advertising copy; and compilations of information.

(ii) *Class PA: Works of the performing arts.* This class includes all published and unpublished works prepared for the purpose of being performed directly before an audience or indirectly by means of a device or process. Examples: Musical works, including any accompanying words; dramatic works, including any accompanying music; pantomimes and choreographic works; and motion pictures and other audiovisual works.

(iii) *Class VA: Works of the visual arts.* This class includes all published and unpublished pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works. Examples: Two dimensional and three dimensional works of the fine, graphic, and applied arts; photographs; prints and art reproductions; maps, globes, and charts; technical drawings, diagrams, and models; and pictorial or graphic labels and advertisements.

(iv) *Class SR: Sound recordings.* This class includes all published and unpublished sound recordings fixed on and after February 15, 1972. Claims to copyright in literary, dramatic, and musical works embodied in phonorecords may also be registered in this class under paragraph (b)(3) of this section if:

(A) Registration is sought on the same application for both a recorded literary, dramatic, or musical work and a sound recording;

(B) The recorded literary, dramatic, or musical work and the sound recording are embodied in the same phonorecord; and

(C) The same claimant is seeking registration of both the recorded literary, dramatic, or musical work and the sound recording.

(v) Class SE: Serials. A serial is a work issued or intended to be issued in successive parts bearing numerical or chronological designations and intended to be continued indefinitely. This class includes periodicals; newspapers; annuals; and the journals, proceedings, transactions, etc. of societies.

(2) *Application forms.* For the purpose of registration, The Register of Copyrights has prescribed the basic forms to be used for all applications submitted on and after January 1, 1978. Each form corresponds to a class set forth in paragraph (b)(1) of this section and is so designated (''Form TX''; ''Form PA''; ''Form VA''; ''Form SR''; ''Form SE''; and ''Form SE/Group''). Copies of the forms are available free upon request to the Public Information Office, Library of Congress, Copyright Office, 101 Independence Avenue, S.E., Washington, DC 20559-6000. Applications should be submitted in the class most appropriate to the nature of the authorship in which copyright is claimed. In the case of contributions to collective works, applications should be submitted in the class representing the copyrightable authorship in the contribution. In the case of derivative works, applications should be submitted in the class most appropriately representing the copyrightable authorship involved in recasting, transforming, adapting, or otherwise modifying the preexisting work. In cases where a work contains elements of authorship in which copyright is claimed which fall into two or more classes, the application should be submitted in the class most appropriate to the type of authorship that predominates in the work as a whole. However, in any case where registration is sought for a work consisting of or including a sound recording in which copyright is claimed[2] the application shall be submitted on Form SR.

[2] A *sound recording* does not include the sounds accompanying a motion picture or other audiovisual work (17 U.S.C. 101). For this purpose, ''accompanying'' does not require physical integration in the same copy. Accordingly, registration may be made for a motion picture or audiovisual kit in Class PA and that registration will cover the sounds embodied in the ''sound track'' of the motion picture or on disks, tapes, or the like included in the kit. Separate application in

(3) *Registration as a single work.* (i) For the purpose of registration on a single application and upon payment of a single registration fee, the following shall be considered a single work:

(A) In the case of published works: All copyrightable elements that are otherwise recognizable as self-contained works, that are included in a single unit of publication, and in which the copyright claimant is the same; and

(B) In the case of unpublished works: all copyrightable elements that are otherwise recognizable as self-contained works, and are combined in a single unpublished ''collection.'' For these purposes, a combination of such elements shall be considered a ''collection'' if:

(1) The elements are assembled in an orderly form;

(2) The combined elements bear a single title identifying the collection as a whole;

(3) The copyright claimant in all of the elements, and in the collection as a whole, is the same; and

(4) All of the elements are by the same author, or, if they are by different authors, at least one of the authors has contributed copyrightable authorship to each element.

Registration of an unpublished ''collection'' extends to each copyrightable element in the collection and to the authorship, if any, involved in selecting and assembling the collection.

(ii) In the case of applications for registration made under paragraphs (b)(3) through (b)(8) of this section, the ''year in which creation of this work was completed'', as called for by the application, means the latest year in which the creation of any copyrightable element was completed.

(4) *Group registration of related works: Automated databases.* (i) Pursuant to the authority granted by section 408(c)(1) of title 17 of the United States Code, the Register of Copyrights has determined that, on the basis of a single application, deposit, and filing fee, a single registration may be made for automated databases and their updates or other derivative versions that are original works of authorship, if, where a database (or updates or other revisions thereof), if unpublished, is (or are) fixed, or if published is (or are) published only in the form of machine-readable copies, all of the following conditions are met:

(A) All of the updates or other revisions are owned by the same copyright claimant;

(B) All of the updates or other revisions have the same general title;

(C) All of the updates or other revisions are similar in their general content, including their subject;

(D) All of the updates or other revisions are similar in their organization;

(E) Each of the updates or other revisions as a whole, if published before March 1, 1989, bears a statutory copyright notice as first published and the name of the owner of copyright in each work (or an abbreviation by which the name can be recognized, or a generally known alternative designation of the owner) was the same in each notice;

(F) Each of the updates or other revisions if published was first published, or if unpublished was first created, within a three-month period in a single calendar year; and

(G) The deposit accompanying the application complies with § 202.20(c)(2)(vii)(D).

(ii) A single registration may be made on one application for both a database published on a single date, or if unpublished, created on a single date, and also for its copyrightable revisions, including updates covering a three-month period in a single calendar year. An application for group registration of automated databases under section 408(c)(1) of title 17 and this subsection shall consist of:

(A) A Form TX, completed in accordance with the basic instructions on the form and the Special Instructions for Group Registration of an Automated Database and its Updates or Revisions;

(B) A filing fee of $20; and

(C) The deposit required by § 202.20(c)(2)(vii)(D).

(5) *Group registration of related serials.* (i) Pursuant to the authority granted by section 408(c)(1) of title 17 of the United States Code, the Register of Copyrights has determined that, on the basis of a single application, deposit,

---

Class SR is not appropriate for these elements.

and filing fee, a single registration may be made for a group of serials published at intervals of a week or longer if all the following conditions are met:

(A) The Library of Congress receives two complimentary copies promptly after publication of each issue of the serial.

(B) The single application covers no more than the issues published in a given three month period.

(C) The claim to copyright for which registration is sought is in the collective work.

(D) The collective work authorship is essentially new material that is being published for the first time.

(E) The collective work is a work made for hire.

(F) The author(s) and claimant(s) of the collective work are the same person(s) or organization(s).

(G) Each issue must have been created no more than one year prior to publication and all issues included in the group registration must have been published in the same calendar year.

(ii) To be eligible for group registration of serials, publishers must submit a letter affirming that two complimentary subscriptions to the particular serial have been entered for the Library of Congress. The letter should be sent to: Office of the General Counsel, Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Department 17, Washington, DC 20540.

(iii) The complimentary subscription copies must be addressed to: Group Periodicals Registration Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20540.

(iv) The Register of Copyrights may revoke the privilege of group registration of serials for any publisher who fails to submit the required complimentary subscription copies promptly after publication of each issue. Notice of revocation of the group registration of serials privilege shall be given in writing and shall be sent to the individual person or organization applying for group registration of serials, at the last address shown in the records of the Copyright Office. A notice of revocation may be given at any time if the requirements of the regulation are not satisfied, but it shall state a specific date of revocation that is at least 30 days later than the date the notice is mailed.

(v) To apply for group registration of serials under section 408(c)(1) of title 17 and this subsection, the following items must be sent together in the same package:

(A) A completed Form SE/Group giving the requested information.

(B) A filing fee of $10 for each issue covered by the group registration.

(C) A deposit consisting of one complete copy of the best edition of each issue included in the group registration.

(6) *Group registration of daily newspapers.* (i) Pursuant to the authority granted by 17 U.S.C. 408(c)(1), the Register of Copyrights has determined that, on the basis of a single application, microfilm deposit, and filing fee, a single registration may be made for a group of daily newspapers published in a microfilm format if the following conditions are met:

(A) Registration covers a full month of issues of the same newspaper title published with issue dates in one calendar month.

(B) A completed GDN application form is submitted.

(C) A publication date is specified designating the first and last day that issues in the group were published.

(D) A deposit is made of positive, 35mm silver halide microfilm meeting the Library's best edition criteria that includes all issues published as final editions in the designated calendar month. In addition to the final edition of the daily newspaper, the claim to copyright and the deposit may also include earlier editions published the same day in a given metropolitan area served by the newspaper, but may not include national or regional editions distributed beyond a given metropolitan area.

(E) A nonrefundable filing fee of $40 is included with the submission, or charged to an active deposit account.

(F) Registration is sought within three months after the publication date of the last issue included in the group.

(ii) As used in this regulation, newspapers means serials which are classified as newspapers under the policy document ''Newspapers Received Currently in the Library of Congress,''which is administered by the

Newspaper Section of the Serials & Government Publications Division of the Library of Congress. In general, serials classified as newspapers are serials mainly designed to be a primary source of written information on current events, either local, national, or international in scope. A newspaper contains a broad range of news on all subjects and activities and is not limited to any specific subject matter. Newspapers are intended either for the general public or for a particular ethnic, cultural, or national group.

(7) *Group registration of contributions to periodicals.* (i) As provided by section 408(c)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553, a single registration, on the basis of a single application, deposit, and registration fee, may be made for a group of works if all of the following conditions are met:

(A) All of the works are by the same author;

(B) The author of each work is an individual, and not an employer or other person for whom the work was made for hire;

(C) Each of the works first published as a contribution to a periodical (including newspapers) within a twelve-month period;[3]

(D) Each of the works, if first published before March 1, 1989, bore a separate copyright notice, and the name of the owner of copyright in each work (or an abbreviation by which the name can be recognized, or a generally known alternative designation of the owner) was the same in each notice; and

(E) The deposit accompanying the application consists of one copy of the entire issue of the periodical, or of the entire section in the case of a newspaper, in which each contribution was first published.

(ii) An application for group registration under section 408(c)(2) of title 17 and this § 202.3(b)(7) shall consist of:

(A) A basic application for registration on Form TX, Form PA, or Form VA,[4] which shall contain the information required by the form and its accompanying instructions;

(B) An adjunct form prescribed by the Copyright Office and designated ''Adjunct Application for Copyright Registration for a Group of Contributions to Periodicals (Form GR/CP)'', which shall contain the information required by the form and its accompanying instructions; and

(C) A fee of $20 and the deposit required by paragraph (b)(7)(i)(E) of this section.

(8) *Group registration of daily newsletters.* Pursuant to the authority granted by 17 U.S.C. 408(c)(1), the Register of Copyrights has determined that, on the basis of a single application, deposit, and filing fee, a single registration may be made for a group of two or more issues of a daily newsletter if the following conditions are met:

(i) As used in this regulation, daily newsletter means a serial published and distributed by mail or electronic media (online, telefacsimile, cassette tape, diskette or CD–ROM). Publication must occur at least two days per week and the newsletter must contain news or information of interest chiefly to a special group (for example, trade and professional associations, corporate house organs, schools, colleges, and churches).

(ii) The works must be essentially all new collective works or all new issues that have not been published before.

(iii) Each issue must be a work made for hire.

(iv) The author(s) and claimant(s) must be the same person(s) or organization(s) for all of the issues.

(v) All the items in the group must bear issue dates within a single calendar month under the same continuing title.

[3] This does not require that each of the works must have been first published during the same calendar year; it does require that, to be grouped in a single application, the earliest and latest contributions must not have been first published more than twelve months apart.

[4] The basic application should be filed in the class appropriate to the nature of authorship in the majority of the contributions. However, if any of the contributions consists preponderantly of nondramatic literary material that is in the English language, the basic application for the entire group should be submitted on Form TX.

(vi) If requested in writing by the Copyright Acquisitions Division of the Library of Congress, the publisher of the newsletter must give the Library of Congress up to two complimentary subscriptions of the newsletter in the edition most suitable to the Library's needs. Subscription copies must be mailed or transmitted to the separate address specified by the Copyright Acquisitions Division in its request. Subscription copies are not required unless expressly requested by the Library of Congress.

(vii) A Form SE/Group shall be submitted for daily newsletters bearing issue dates within a single month, together with one copy of each issue, and a filing fee of $10 for each issue included in the group registration.

(9) *One registration per work.* As a general rule only one copyright registration can be made for the same version of a particular work. However:

(i) Where a work has been registered as unpublished, another registration may be made for the first published edition of the work, even if it does not represent a new version;

(ii) Where someone other than the author is identified as copyright claimant in a registration, another registration for the same version may be made by the author in his or her own name as copyright claimant;[5]

(iii) Where an applicant for registration alleges that an earlier registration for the same version is unauthorized and legally invalid, a registration may be made by that applicant; and

(iv) Supplementary registrations may be made, under the conditions of § 201.5 of these regulations, to correct or amplify the information in a registration made under this section.

(c) *Application for registration.* (1) An application for copyright registration may be submitted by any author or other copyright claimant of a work, or the owner of any exclusive right in a work, or the duly authorized agent of any such author, other claimant, or owner.

(2) An application for copyright registration shall be submitted on the appropriate form prescribed by the Register of Copyrights under paragraph (b) of this section, and shall be accompanied by a fee of $20 and the deposit required under 17 U.S.C. 408 and § 202.20 of these regulations.[6] The application shall contain the information required by the form and its accompanying instructions, and shall include a certification. The certification shall consist of:

(i) A designation of whether the applicant is the author of, or other copyright claimant or owner of exclusive rights in, the work, or the duly authorized agent of such author, other claimant, or owner (whose identity shall also be given);

(ii) The handwritten signature of such author, other claimant, owner, or agent, accompanied by the typed or printed name of that person;

(iii) A declaration that the statements made in the application are correct to the best of that person's knowledge; and

(iv) The date of certification.

An application for registration of a published work will not be accepted if the date of certification is earlier than the date of publication given in the application.

(Pub. L. 94–553; secs. 408, 409, 410, 702)

[43 FR 966, Jan. 5, 1978; as amended at 54 FR 13181, Mar. 31, 1989; 54 FR 21059, May 16, 1989; 55 FR 50557, Dec. 7, 1990; 56 FR 7813, 7815 Feb. 26, 1991; 56 FR 27197, June 13, 1991; 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991; 56 FR 65190, Dec. 16, 1991; 57 FR 39616, Sept. 1, 1992; 58 FR 17778, Apr. 6, 1993; 60 FR 15875, Mar. 28, 1995; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995]

§ 202.4 Effective date of registration.

The effective date of registration for claims received in the Copyright Office on or after January 3, 1991, and through

[5] An *author* includes an employer or other person for whom a work is ''made for hire'' under 17 U.S.C. 101. This paragraph does not permit an employee or other person working ''for hire'' under that section to make a later registration in his or her own name. In the case of authors of a joint work, this paragraph does permit a later registration by one author in his or her own name as copyright claimant, where an earlier registration identifies only another author as claimant.

[6] In the case of applications for group registration of newspapers, contributions to periodicals, and newsletters, under paragraphs (b)(6), (b)(7), and (b)(8) of this section, the deposits and fees shall comply with those specified in the respective paragraphs.

December 31, 1991, with a short fee of $10 is the date on which the application, deposit, and $10 fee have all been received in the Copyright Office, provided, the claim is later determined to be acceptable for registration by the Register of Copyrights and a supplementary fee of $10 is received in the Copyright Office. If the supplementary fee is not received promptly after notification of the short fee, the Copyright Office will initiate a proceeding to cancel the copyright registration. If the supplementary fee of $10 is not received in the Copyright Office before the cancellation proceeding is completed, the cancellation will become final and will result in the loss of the effective date of registration. After cancellation, registration could be obtained only by submitting a new application, deposit, and filing fee.

[55 FR 50001, Dec. 4, 1990]

§§ 202.5—202.9 [Reserved]

§ 202.10 Pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works.

(a) In order to be acceptable as a pictorial, graphic, or sculptural work, the work must embody some creative authorship in its delineation or form. The registrability of such a work is not affected by the intention of the author as to the use of the work or the number of copies reproduced. The availability of protection or grant of protection under the law for a utility or design patent will not affect the registrability of a claim in an original work of pictorial, graphic, or sculptural authorship.

(b) A claim to copyright cannot be registered in a print or label consisting solely of trademark subject matter and lacking copyrightable matter. While the Copyright Office will not investigate whether the matter has been or can be registered at the Patent and Trademark Office, it will register a properly filed copyright claim in a print or label that contains the requisite qualifications for copyright even though there is a trademark on it. However, registration of a claim to copyright does not give the claimant rights available by trademark registrations at the Patent and Trademark Office.

[46 FR 33249, June 29, 1981, as amended at 60 FR 15606, Mar. 24, 1995; 61 FR 5445, Feb. 12, 1996]

§ 202.11 Architectural works.

(a) *General.* This section prescribes rules pertaining to the registration of architectural works, as provided for in the amendment of title 17 of the United States Code by the Judicial Improvements Act of 1990, Public Law 101-650.

(b) *Definitions.* (1) For the purposes of this section, the term *architectural work* has the same meaning as set forth in section 101 of title 17, as amended.

(2) The term *building* means humanly habitable structures that are intended to be both permanent and stationary, such as houses and office buildings, and other permanent and stationary structures designed for human occupancy, including but not limited to churches, museums, gazebos, and garden pavilions.

(c) *Registration*—(1) *Original design.* In general, an original design of a building embodied in any tangible medium of expression, including a building, architectural plans, or drawings, may be registered as an architectural work.

(2) *Registration limited to single architectural work.* For published and unpublished architectural works, a single application may cover only a single architectural work. A group of architectural works may not be registered on a single application form. For works such as tract housing, a single work is one house model, with all accompanying floor plan options, elevations, and styles that are applicable to that particular model.

(3) *Application form.* Registration should be sought on Form VA. Line one of the form should give the title of the building. The date of construction of the building, if any, should also be designated. If the building has not yet been constructed, the notation ''not yet constructed'' should be given following the title.

(4) *Separate registration for plans.* Where dual copyright claims exist in technical drawings and the architectural work depicted in the drawings,

any claims with respect to the technical drawings and architectural work must be registered separately.

(5) *Publication.* Publication of an architectural work occurs when underlying plans or drawings of the building or other copies of the building design are distributed or made available to the general public by sale or other transfer of ownership, or by rental, lease, or lending. Construction of a building does not itself constitute publication for purposes of registration, unless multiple copies are constructed.

(d) *Works excluded.* The following structures, features, or works cannot be registered:

(1) *Structures other than buildings.* Structures other than buildings, such as bridges, cloverleafs, dams, walkways, tents, recreational vehicles, mobile homes, and boats.

(2) *Standard features.* Standard configurations of spaces, and individual standard features, such as windows, doors, and other staple building components.

(3) *Pre-December 1, 1990 building designs.* The designs of buildings where the plans or drawings of the building were published before December 1, 1990, or the buildings were constructed or otherwise published before December 1, 1990.

[57 FR 45310, Oct. 1, 1992]

§ 202.12 Restored copyrights.

(a) *General.* This section prescribes rules pertaining to the registration of foreign copyright claims which have been restored to copyright protection under section 104A of 17 U.S.C., as amended by the Uruguay Round Agreements Act, Public Law 103–465.

(b) *Definitions.* (1) For the purposes of this section, restored work and source country, have the definition given in the URAA and § 201.33(b) of this chapter.

(2) *Descriptive statement for a work embodied solely in machine-readable format* is a separate written statement giving the title of the work, nature of the work (for example: computer program, database, videogame, etc.), plus a brief description of the contents or subject matter of the work.

(c) *Registration*—(1) *General.* Application, deposit, and filing fee for registering a copyright claim in a restored work under section 104A, as amended, may be submitted to the Copyright Office on or after January 1, 1996. The application, filing fee, and deposit should be sent in a single package to the following address: URAA/GATT, NIEs and Registration, P.O. Box 72400, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, USA.

(2) *GATT forms.* Application for registration for single works restored to copyright protection under URAA should be made on Form GATT. Application for registration for a group of works published under a single series title and published within the same calendar year should also be made on Form GATT. Application for a group of at least two and up to ten individual and related works as described in paragraph (c)(5)(ii) of this section should be made on Form GATT/GRP. GATT/URAA forms may be obtained by writing or calling the Copyright Office Hotline at (202) 707–9100. In addition, legible photocopies of these forms are acceptable if reproduced on good quality, 8½ by 11 inch white paper, and printed head to head so that page two is printed on the back of page one.

(3) *Fee*—(i) *Amount.* The filing fee for registering a copyright claim in a restored work is 20 U.S. dollars. The filing fee for registering a group of multiple episodes under a series title under paragraph (c)(5)(i) of this section is also $20. The filing fee for registering a group of related works under paragraph (c)(5)(ii) of this section is 10 U.S. dollars per individual work.

(ii) *Method of payment*—(A) *Checks, money orders, or bank drafts.* The Copyright Office will accept checks, money orders, or bank drafts made payable to the Register of Copyrights. Remittances must be redeemable without service or exchange fees through a United States institution, must be payable in United States dollars, and must be imprinted with American Banking Association routing numbers. In addition, international money orders, and postal money orders that are negotiable only at a post office are not acceptable. CURRENCY WILL NOT BE ACCEPTED.

(B) *Copyright Office Deposit Account.* The Copyright Office maintains a system of Deposit Accounts for the convenience of those who frequently use its services. The system allows an individual or firm to establish a Deposit Account in the Copyright Office and to make advance deposits into that account. Deposit Account holders can charge copyright fees against the balance in their accounts instead of sending separate remittances with each request for service. For information on Deposit Accounts please write: Register of Copyrights, Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20559, and request a copy of Circular 5, ''How to Open and Maintain a Deposit Account in the Copyright Office.''

(C) *Credit cards.* For URAA registrations the Copyright Office will accept VISA, MasterCard, and American Express. Debit cards cannot be accepted for payment. With the registration application, an applicant using a credit card must submit a separate cover letter stating the name of the credit card, the credit card number, the expiration date of the credit card, the total amount authorized and a signature authorizing the Office to charge the fees to the account. To protect the security of the credit card number, the applicant must not write the credit card number on the registration application.

(4) *Deposit*—(i) *General.* The deposit for a work registered as a restored work under the amended section 104A, except for those works listed in paragraphs (c)(4) (ii) through (iv) of this section, should consist of one copy or phonorecord which best represents the copyrightable content of the restored work. In descending order of preference, the deposit should be:

(A) The work as first published;

(B) A reprint or re-release of the work as first published;

(C) A photocopy or identical reproduction of the work as first published; or

(D) A revised version which includes a substantial amount of the copyrightable content of the restored work with an indication in writing of the percentage of the restored work appearing in the revision.

(ii) *Previously registered works.* No deposit is needed for works previously registered in the Copyright Office.

(iii) *Works embodied solely in machine-readable format.* For works embodied only in machine-readable formats, the deposit requirements are as follows:

(A) One machine-readable copy and a descriptive statement of the work; or

(B) Representative excerpts of the work, such as printouts; or, if the claim extends to audiovisual elements in the work, a videotape of what appears on the screen.

(iv) *Pictorial, graphic and sculptural works.* With the exception of 3-dimensional works of art, the general deposit preferences specified under paragraph (c)(4)(i) of this section shall govern. For 3-dimensional works of art, the preferred deposit is one or more photographs of the work, preferably in color.

(v) *Special relief.* An applicant who is unable to submit any of the preferred deposits may seek an alternative deposit under special relief (37 CFR 202.20(d)). In such a case, the applicant should indicate in writing why the deposit preferences cannot be met, and submit alternative identifying materials clearly showing some portion of the copyrightable contents of the restored work which is the subject of registration.

(vi) *Motion pictures.* If the deposit is a film print (16 or 35 mm), the applicant should contact the Performing Arts Section of the Examining Division for delivery instructions. The telephone number is: (202) 707–6040; the telefax number is: (202) 707–1236.

(5) *Group registration.* Copyright claims in more than one restored work may be registered as a group in the following circumstances:

(i) *Single series title.* Works published under a single series title in multiple episodes, installments, or issues during the same calendar year may be registered as a group, provided the owner of U.S. rights is the same for all episodes, installments, or issues. The Form GATT should be used and the number of episodes or installments should be indicated in the title line. The filing fee for registering a group of

such works is $20. In general, the deposit requirements applicable to restored works will be applied to the episodes or installments in a similar fashion. In the case of a weekly or daily television series, applicants should first contact the Performing Arts Section of the Examining Division. The telephone number is (202) 707–6040; the telefax number is (202) 707–1236.

(ii) *Group of related works.* A group of related works may be registered on the Form GATT/GRP, provided the following conditions are met: the author(s) is the same for all works in the group; the owner of all United States rights is the same for all works in the group; all works must have been published in the same calendar year; all works fit within the same subject matter category, i.e., literary works, musical works, motion pictures, etc.; and there are at least two and not more than ten individual works in the group submitted. Applicants registering a group of related works must file for registration on the Form GATT/GRP. The filing fee for registering a group of related works is ten dollars per individual work.

(d) *Works excluded.* Works which are not copyrightable subject matter under title 17 of the U.S. Code, other than sound recordings fixed before February 15, 1972, shall not be registered as restored copyrights.

[60 FR 50422, Sept. 29, 1995]

§§ 202.13—202.16 [Reserved]

§ 202.17 Renewals.

(a) *General.* This section prescribes rules pertaining to the application for renewal copyright under section 304(a) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Public Law 102-307.

(b) *Definition.* For purposes of this section, the term *posthumous work* means a work that was unpublished on the date of the death of the author and with respect to which no copyright assignment or other contract for exploitation of the work occurred during the author's lifetime.

(c) *Renewal registration optional.* For works originally copyrighted between January 1, 1964 and December 31, 1977 renewal registration is optional and not a condition for securing copyright for the new and extended forty-seven year second term. As provided in Public Law 102-307, 106 Stat. 264 (Act of June 26, 1992), however, renewal of copyright by registration during the last year of the original term and renewal registration during the forty-seven year extended term of a copyright renewed without registration by operation of Public Law 102-307 differ in legal effect. Among other effects, renewal of copyright by registration during the last year of the original term vests the renewal copyright in the statutory renewal claimant(s) living on the date of registration.

(d) *Original term registration.* (1) Registration of a claim to copyright in the original twenty-eight year term is not a pre-condition for making a renewal registration, provided the renewal application is accompanied by an Addendum to Form RE and the deposit copy, phonorecord, or identifying material specified in paragraph (h) of this section.

(2) Original term registration can only be made before the expiration of the original term of copyright in the work.

(e) *Renewal time limits.* (1) For works originally copyrighted between January 1, 1964, and December 31, 1977, claims to renewal copyright may be registered within the last year of the original term, which begins on December 31 of the 27th year of the copyright, and runs through December 31 of the 28th year of the copyright, or at anytime during the extended forty-seven year second term, if the second term is renewed by operation of Public Law 102-307, 106 Stat. 264. The original copyright term for a published work is computed from the date of first publication; the term for a work originally registered in unpublished form is computed from the date of registration in the Copyright Office. To vest the renewal copyright by registration, the required renewal application, fee, and, if original term registration has not been made, the Addendum specified in paragraph (h) of this section must be received in the Copyright Office during the prescribed period before the first term of copyright expires. The Copyright Office has no discretion to extend the renewal time limits for vesting of the renewal copyright by registration.

(2) The provisions of paragraph (e)(1) of this section are subject to the following qualification: In order to vest the renewal copyright by registration in any case where the year date in the notice on copies distributed by authority of the copyright owner is earlier than the year of first publication, claims to renewal copyright must be registered within the last year of the original copyright term, which begins on December 31 of the 27th year from the year contained in the notice, and runs through December 31 of the 28th year from the year contained in the notice.

(3) Whenever a renewal applicant has cause to believe that a formal application for renewal, which is intended to vest the renewal copyright by registration, and any accompanying Addendum relating to subsistence of first-term copyright, if sent to the Copyright Office by mail, might not be received in the Copyright Office before expiration of the time limits provided by 17 U.S.C. 304(a) for vesting of the renewal copyright by registration, he or she may apply for renewal registration by telegraphic, telefacsimile, or similar written communication. An application made by this method will be accepted only if:

(i) The message is received in the Copyright Office within the specified time limits for vesting by registration;

(ii) The applicant adequately identifies the work involved, the date of first publication or original registration, the name and address of the renewal claimant, and the statutory basis of the renewal claim;

(iii) The fee for renewal registration, if not already on deposit, is received in the Copyright Office before the time for renewal registration has expired; and

(iv) A formal application for renewal (Form RE) (or a fax copy) and in the case of works under paragraph (h) of this section, an accompanying Addendum relating to the subsistence of first-term copyright are also received in the Copyright Office before April 1 of the following year.

(f) *Renewal claimants.* (1) Except as otherwise provided by paragraphs (f) (2) and (3) of this section, renewal claims may be registered only in the name(s) of the eligible person(s) falling within one of the following classes of renewal claimants specified in section 304(a) of the copyright law. If the work was a new version of a previous work, renewal may be claimed only in the new matter. If the renewal claim is submitted during the last year of the original term of copyright, the renewal must be made in the name(s) of the statutory claimant(s) entitled to claim the renewal on the date the renewal claim is submitted to the Copyright Office for registration. If the renewal claim is submitted during the forty-seven year renewal term, the renewal claim can only be registered in the name(s) of the statutory claimant(s) entitled to claim the renewal on the last day (December 31st) of the original term of copyright.

(i) In the case of any posthumous work or of any periodical, encyclopedia, or other composite work upon which the copyright was originally secured by the proprietor thereof, the renewal claim may be registered in the name of the proprietor;

(ii) In the case of any work copyrighted by a corporate body (otherwise than as assignees or licensees of the individual author) or by an employer for whom such work is made for hire, the renewal claim may be registered in the name of the proprietor; and

(iii) In the case of any other copyrighted work, including a contribution by an individual author to a periodical or to a cyclopedic or other composite work, the renewal claim may be registered in the name(s) of the following person(s) in descending order of eligibility:

(A) The author of the work, if still living;

(B) The widow, widower, or children of the author, if the author is not living;

(C) The author's executors, if there is a will and neither the author nor any widow, widower, or child of the author is living;

(D) The author's next of kin, in the absence of a will and if neither the author nor any widow, widower, or child of the author is living.

(2) The provisions of paragraph (f)(1) are subject to the following qualification: Notwithstanding the definition of ''posthumous work'' in paragraph (b) of

this section, a renewal claim may be registered in the name of the proprietor of the work, as well as in the name of the appropriate claimant under paragraph (f)(1)(iii), in any case where a contract for exploitation of the work but no copyright assignment in the work has occurred during the author's lifetime. However, registration by the Copyright Office in this case should not be interpreted as evidencing the validity of the claim.

(3) The provisions of paragraphs (f)(1)(iii) (C) and (D) of this section are subject to the following qualifications:

(i) In any case where:

(A) The author has left a will which names no executor;

(B) The author has left a will which names an executor who cannot or will not serve in that capacity; or

(C) The author has left a will which names an executor who has been discharged upon settlement of the estate or removed before the estate has been completely administered, the renewal claim may be registered either in the name of an administrator cum testamento annexo (administrator c.t.a.) or an administrator de bonis non cum testamento annexo (administrator d.b.n.c.t.a.) so appointed by a court of competent jurisdiction.

(ii) In any case described in paragraph (f)(3)(i) of this section, except in the case where the author has left a will without naming an executor and a court appointed administrator c.t.a. or administrator d.b.n.c.t.a. is in existence at the time of renewal registration, the renewal claim also may be registered in the name of the author's next of kin. However, registration by the Copyright Office of the conflicting renewal claims in these cases should not be interpreted as evidencing the validity of either claim.

(g) *Application for renewal registration.* (1) Each application for renewal registration shall be submitted on Form RE. Copies of Form RE, and if applicable, the Addendum to Form RE, are available free upon request to the Public Information Office, United States Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20559.

(2)(i) An application for renewal registration may be submitted by any eligible statutory renewal claimant as specified in paragraph (f) of this section or by the duty authorized agent of any such claimant.

(ii) An application for renewal registration shall be accompanied by a fee of $20. The application shall contain the information required by the form and its accompanying instructions, and shall include a certification. The certification shall consist of:

(A) A designation of whether the applicant is the renewal claimant, or the duly authorized agent of such claimant (whose identity shall also be given);

(B) The handwritten signature of such claimant or agent, accompanied by the typewritten or printed name of that person;

(C) A declaration that the statements made in the application are correct to the best of that person's knowledge; and

(D) The date of certification.

(iii) In the case of an application for renewal registration of a work for which no original registration was made, the application shall be accompanied by an Addendum and deposit material in accordance with paragraph (h) of this section.

(3) Once a renewal registration has been made, the Copyright Office will not accept a duplicate application for renewal registration on behalf of the same renewal claimant.

(h) *Addendum for an unregistered work*—(1) *Content.* If original term registration is not timely made for a work, the renewal application Form RE must be accompanied by an Addendum to Form RE which must contain the following information:

(i) The title of the work;

(ii) The name of the author(s);

(iii) The date of first publication of the work;

(iv) The place of first publication of the work;

(v) The citizenship of the author(s) on the date of first publication of the work;

(vi) The domicile of the author(s) on the date of first publication of the work;

(vii) An averment that, at the time of first publication, all the copies of the work published under the authority

of the author or other copyright proprietor bore the copyright notice required by the Copyright Act of 1909, title 17 of the United States Code in effect on December 31, 1977, and that United States copyright subsists in the work; and

(viii) For works of United States origin which were subject to the manufacturing provisions of section 16 of the Copyright Act of 1909 as it existed at the time the work was published, the Addendum must also contain information about the country of manufacture and the manufacturing processes.

(2) *Signature.* The Addendum must contain the handwritten signature of the renewal claimant or the duly authorized agent of the renewal claimant. The signature shall (i) be accompanied by the printed typewritten name of the person signing the Addendum and by the date of the signature; and (ii) shall be immediately preceded by the following printed or typewritten statement in accordance with section 1746 of title 28 of the United States Code:

I certify under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States of America that the foregoing is true and correct.

(3) *Deposit requirement for an unregistered work.* In addition to the Addendum to Form RE, an application for renewal registration of a work for which no original term registration is made must be accompanied by one copy or phonorecord or identifying material of the work as first published in accordance with the deposit requirements set out in §§ 202.20 and 202.21 of the Copyright Office regulations for basic registration.

(4) *Waiver of the deposit requirement.* In a case where the renewal applicant asserts that it is either physically impossible or otherwise an undue hardship to satisfy the deposit requirements of §§ 202.20 and 202.21, the Copyright Office, at its discretion, may, upon receipt of an acceptable explanation of the inability to submit such copy or identifying material, permit the deposit of the following in the descending order of preference:

(i) A reprint, photocopy, or identifying reproduction of the work as first published; or

(ii)(A) A photocopy of the title page of the work as first published;

(B) A photocopy of the page of the work as first published bearing the copyright notice;

(C) A specification as to the location, relative to each other, of the title and notice pages of the work as first published, if the pages are different; and

(D) A brief description of the copyrightable content of the work, which is sufficient to enable the Copyright Office to examine the work. The Examining Division of the Copyright Office may request deposit of additional descriptive material if the original submission is inadequate.

[57 FR 60483, Dec. 21, 1992]

§ 202.18 [Reserved]

§ 202.19 Deposit of published copies or phonorecords for the Library of Congress.

(a) *General.* This section prescribes rules pertaining to the deposit of copies and phonorecords of published works for the Library of Congress under section 407 of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553. The provisions of this section are not applicable to the deposit of copies and phonorecords for purposes of copyright registration under section 408 of title 17, except as expressly adopted in § 202.20 of these regulations.

(b) *Definitions.* For the purposes of this section:

(1)(i) The *best edition* of a work is the edition, published in the United States at any time before the date of deposit, that the Library of Congress determines to be most suitable for its purposes.

(ii) Criteria for selection of the ''best edition'' from among two or more published editions of the same version of the same work are set forth in the statement entitled ''Best Edition of Published Copyrighted Works for the Collections of the Library of Congress'' (hereafter referred to as the ''Best Edition Statement'') in effect at the time of deposit. Copies of the Best Edition Statement are available upon request made to the Copyright Acquisitions Division.

(iii) Where no specific criteria for the selection of the ''best edition'' are established in the Best Edition Statement, that edition which, in the judgment of the Library of Congress, represents the highest quality for its purposes shall be considered the ''best edition''. In such cases:

(A) When the Copyright Office is aware that two or more editions of a work have been published it will consult with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress to obtain instructions as to the ''best edition'' and (except in cases for which special relief is granted) will require deposit of that edition; and

(B) When a potential depositor is uncertain which of two or more published editions comprises the ''best edition'', inquiry should be made to the Copyright Acquisitions Division.

(iv) Where differences between two or more ''editions'' of a work represent variations in copyrightable content, each edition is considered a separate version, and hence a different work, for the purpose of this section, and criteria of ''best edition'' based on such differences do not apply.

(2) A *complete* copy includes all elements comprising the unit of publication of the best edition of the work, including elements that, if considered separately, would not be copyrightable subject matter or would otherwise be exempt from mandatory deposit requirements under paragraph (c) of this section. In the case of sound recordings, a ''complete'' phonorecord includes the phonorecord, together with any printed or other visually perceptible material published with such phonorecord (such as textual or pictorial matter appearing on record sleeves or album covers, or embodied in leaflets or booklets included in a sleeve, album, or other container). In the case of a musical composition published in copies only, or in both copies and phonorecords:

(i) If the only publication of copies in the United States took place by the rental, lease, or lending of a full score and parts, a full score is a ''complete'' copy; and

(ii) If the only publication of copies in the United States took place by the rental, lease, or lending of a conductor's score and parts, a conductor's score is a ''complete'' copy.

In the case of a motion picture, a copy is ''complete'' if the reproduction of all of the visual and aural elements comprising the copyrightable subject matter in the work is clean, undamaged, undeteriorated, and free of splices, and if the copy itself and its physical housing are free of any defects that would interfere with the performance of the work or that would cause mechanical, visual, or audible defects or distortions.

(3) The terms *architectural works, copies, collective work, device, fixed, literary work, machine, motion picture, phonorecord, publication, sound recording, useful article,* and their variant forms, have the meanings given to them in 17 U.S.C. 101.

(c) *Exemptions from deposit requirements.* The following categories of material are exempt from the deposit requirements of section 407(a) of title 17:

(1) Diagrams and models illustrating scientific or technical works or formulating scientific or technical information in linear or three-dimensional form, such as an architectural or engineering blueprint, plan, or design, a mechanical drawing, or an anatomical model.

(2) Greeting cards, picture postcards, and stationery.

(3) Lectures, sermons, speeches, and addresses when published individually and not as a collection of the works of one or more authors.

(4) Literary, dramatic, and musical works published only as embodied in phonorecords. This category does not exempt the owner of copyright, or of the exclusive right of publication, in a sound recording resulting from the fixation of such works in a phonorecord from the applicable deposit requirements for the sound recording.

(5) Automated databases available only on-line in the United States. The exemption does not include the following: automated databases distributed in the form of machine-readable copies (such as magnetic tape or disks, CD-ROM formats, punch cards, or the like); computerized information works in the nature of statistical compendia, serials, and reference works; works published in a form requiring the use of

a machine or device for purposes of optical enlargement (such as film, filmstrips, slide films and works published in any variety of microform); works published in visually perceptible form but used in connection with optical scanning devices; and works reproduced in CD-ROM formats.

(6) Three-dimensional sculptural works, and any works published only as reproduced in or on jewelry, dolls, toys, games, plaques, floor coverings, wallpaper and similar commercial wall coverings, textiles and other fabrics, packaging material, or any useful article. Globes, relief models, and similar cartographic representations of area are not within this category and are subject to the applicable deposit requirements.

(7) Prints, labels, and other advertising matter, including catalogs, published in connection with the rental lease, lending, licensing, or sale of articles of merchandise, works of authorship, or services.

(8) Tests, and answer material for tests when published separately from other literary works.

(9) Works first published as individual contributions to collective works. This category does not exempt the owner of copyright, or of the exclusive right of publication, in the collective work as a whole, from the applicable deposit requirements for the collective work.

(10) Works first published outside the United States and later published in the United States without change in copyrightable content, if:

(i) Registration for the work was made under 17 U.S.C. 408 before the work was published in the United States; or

(ii) Registration for the work was made under 17 U.S.C. 408 after the work was published in the United States but before a demand for deposit is made under 17 U.S.C. 407(d).

(11) Works published only as embodied in a soundtrack that is an integral part of a motion picture. This category does not exempt the owner of copyright, or of the exclusive right of publication, in the motion picture, from the applicable deposit requirements for the motion picture.

(12) Motion pictures that consist of television transmission programs and that have been published, if at all, only by reason of a license or other grant to a nonprofit institution of the right to make a fixation of such programs directly from a transmission to the public, with or without the right to make further uses of such fixations.

(d) *Nature of required deposit.* (1) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (d)(2) of this section, the deposit required to satisfy the provisions of section 407(a) of title 17 shall consist of:

(i) In the case of published works other than sound recordings, two complete copies of the best edition; and

(ii) In the case of published sound recordings, two complete phonorecords of the best edition.

(2) In the case of certain published works not exempt from deposit requirements under paragraph (c) of this section, the following special provisions shall apply:

(i) In the case of published three-dimensional cartographic representations of area, such as globes and relief models, the deposit of one complete copy of the best edition of the work will suffice in lieu of the two copies required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section.

(ii) In the case of published motion pictures, the deposit of one complete copy of the best edition of the work will suffice in lieu of the two copies required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section. Any deposit of a published motion picture must be accompanied by a separate description of its contents, such as a continuity, pressbook, or synopsis. The Library of Congress may, at its sole discretion, enter into an agreement permitting the return of copies of published motion pictures to the depositor under certain conditions and establishing certain rights and obligations of the Library with respect to such copies. In the event of termination of such an agreement by the Library it shall not be subject to reinstatement, nor shall the depositor or any successor in interest of the depositor be entitled to any similar or subsequent agreement with the Library, unless at the sole discretion of the Library it would be in the best interests

of the Library to reinstate the agreement or enter into a new agreement.

(iii) In the case of any published work deposited in the form of a hologram, the deposit shall be accompanied by:

(A) Two sets of precise instructions for displaying the image fixed in the hologram; and

(B) Two sets of identifying material in compliance with § 202.21 of these regulations and clearly showing the displayed image.

(iv) In any case where an individual author is the owner of copyright in a published pictorial or graphic work and (A) less than five copies of the work have been published, or (B) the work has been published and sold or offered for sale in a limited edition consisting of no more than three hundred numbered copies, the deposit of one complete copy of the best edition of the work or, alternatively, the deposit of photographs or other identifying material in compliance with § 202.21 of these regulations, will suffice in lieu of the two copies required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section.

(v) In the case of a musical composition published in copies only, or in both copies and phonorecords, if the only publication of copies in the United States took place by rental, lease, or lending, the deposit of one complete copy of the best edition will suffice in lieu of the two copies required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section.

(vi) In the case of published multimedia kits, that include literary works, audiovisual works, sound recordings, or any combination of such works, the deposit of one complete copy of the best edition will suffice in lieu of the two copies required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section.

(vii) In the case of published computer programs and published computerized information works, such as statistical compendia, serials, and reference works that are not copy-protected, the deposit of one complete copy of the best edition as specified in the current Library of Congress Best Edition Statement will suffice in lieu of the two copies required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section. If the works are copy-protected, two copies of the best edition are required.

(viii) In the case of published architectural works, the deposit shall consist of the most finished form of presentation drawings in the following descending order of preference:

(A) Original format, or best quality form of reproduction, including offset or silk screen printing;

(B) Xerographic or photographic copies on good quality paper;

(C) Positive photostat or photodirect positive;

(D) Blue line copies (diazo or ozalid process). If photographs are submitted, they should be 8 x 10 inches and should clearly show several exterior and interior views. The deposit should disclose the name(s) of the architect(s) and draftsperson(s) and the building site.

(e) *Special relief.* (1) In the case of any published work not exempt from deposit under paragraph (c) of this section, the Register of Copyrights may, after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress and upon such conditions as the Register may determine after such consultation:

(i) Grant an exemption from the deposit requirements of section 407(a) of title 17 on an individual basis for single works or series or groups of works; or

(ii) Permit the deposit of one copy or phonorecord, or alternative identifying material, in lieu of the two copies or phonorecords required by paragraph (d)(1) of this section; or

(iii) Permit the deposit of incomplete copies or phonorecords, or copies or phonorecords other than those normally comprising the best edition; or

(iv) Permit the deposit of identifying material which does not comply with § 202.21 of these regulations.

(2) Any decision as to whether to grant such special relief, and the conditions under which special relief is to be granted, shall be made by the Register of Copyrights after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress, and shall be based upon the acquisition policies of the Library of Congress then in force.

(3) Requests for special relief under this paragraph shall be made in writing to the Chief, Examining Division, shall be signed by or on behalf of the owner of copyright or of the exclusive right of publication in the work, and shall set

forth specific reasons why the request should be granted.

(4) The Register of Copyrights may, after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress, terminate any ongoing or continuous grant of special relief. Notice of termination shall be given in writing and shall be sent to the individual person or organization to whom the grant of special relief had been given, at the last address shown in the records of the Copyright Office. A notice of termination may be given at any time, but it shall state a specific date of termination that is at least 30 days later than the date the notice is mailed. Termination shall not affect the validity of any deposit made earlier under the grant of special relief.

(f) *Submission and receipt of copies and phonorecords.* (1) All copies and phonorecords deposited in the Copyright Office will be considered to be deposited only in compliance with section 407 of title 17 unless they are accompanied by an application for registration of a claim to copyright in the work represented by the deposit, and either a registration fee or a deposit account number on the application. Copies or phonorecords deposited without such an accompanying application and either a fee or a deposit account notation will not be connected with or held for receipt of separate applications, and will not satisfy the deposit provisions of section 408 of title 17 or § 202.20 of these regulations.

(2) All copies and phonorecords deposited in the Copyright Office under section 407 of title 17, unless accompanied by written instructions to the contrary, will be considered to be deposited by the person or persons named in the copyright notice on the work.

(3) Upon request by the depositor made at the time of the deposit, the Copyright Office will issue a certificate of receipt for the deposit of copies or phonorecords of a work under this section. Certificates of receipt will be issued in response to requests made after the date of deposit only if the requesting party is identified in the records of the Copyright Office as having made the deposit. In either case, requests for a certificate of receipt must be in writing and accompanied by a fee of $4. A certificate of receipt will include identification of the depositor, the work deposited, and the nature and format of the copy or phonorecord deposited, together with the date of receipt.

[51 FR 6403, Feb. 24, 1986, as amended at 54 FR 42299, Oct. 16, 1989; 56 FR 47403, Sept. 19, 1991; 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991; 57 FR 45310, Oct. 1, 1992; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995]

§ 202.20 Deposit of copies and phonorecords for copyright registration.

(a) *General.* This section prescribes rules pertaining to the deposit of copies and phonorecords of published and unpublished works for the purpose of copyright registration under section 408 of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553. The provisions of this section are not applicable to the deposit of copies and phonorecords for the Library of Congress under section 407 of title 17, except as expressly adopted in § 202.19 of these regulations.

(b) *Definitions.* For the purposes of this section:

(1) The *best edition* of a work has the meaning set forth in § 202.19(b)(1) of these regulations.

(2) A *complete* copy or phonorecord means the following:

(i) *Unpublished works.* Subject to the requirements of paragraph (b)(2)(vi) of this section, a ''complete'' copy or phonorecord of an unpublished work is a copy or phonorecord representing the entire copyrightable content of the work for which registration is sought;

(ii) *Published works.* Subject to the requirements of paragraphs (b)(2) (iii) through (vi) of this section, a ''complete'' copy or phonorecord of a published work includes all elements comprising the applicable unit of publication of the work, including elements that, if considered separately, would not be copyrightable subject matter. However, even where certain physically separable elements included in the applicable unit of publication are missing from the deposit, a copy or phonorecord will be considered ''complete'' for purposes of registration where:

(A) The copy or phonorecord deposited contains all parts of the work for which copyright registration is sought; and

(B) The removal of the missing elements did not physically damage the copy or phonorecord or garble its contents; and

(C) The work is exempt from the mandatory deposit requirements under section 407 of title 17 of the United States Code and § 202.19(c) of these regulations, or the copy deposited consists entirely of a container, wrapper, or holder, such as an envelope, sleeve, jacket, slipcase, box, bag, folder, binder, or other receptacle acceptable for deposit under paragraph (c)(2) of this section;

(iii) *Contributions to collective works.* In the case of a published contribution to a collective work, a ''complete'' copy is one complete copy of the best edition of the entire collective work, the complete section containing the contribution if published in a newspaper, the contribution cut from the paper in which it appeared, or a photocopy of the contribution itself as it was published in the collective work.

(iv) *Sound recordings.* In the case of published sound recordings, a ''complete'' phonorecord has the meaning set forth in § 202.19(b)(2) of these regulations;

(v) *Musical scores.* In the case of a musical composition published in copies only, or in both copies and phonorecords:

(A) If the only publication of copies took place by the rental, lease, or lending of a full score and parts, a full score is a ''complete'' copy; and

(B) If the only publication of copies took place by the rental, lease, or lending of a conductor's score and parts, a conductor's score is a ''complete'' copy;

(vi) *Motion pictures.* In the case of a published or unpublished motion picture, a copy is ''complete'' if the reproduction of all of the visual and aural elements comprising the copyrightable subject matter in the work is clean, undamaged, undeteriorated, and free of splices, and if the copy itself and its physical housing are free of any defects that would interfere with the performance of the work or that would cause mechanical, visual, or audible defects or distortions.

(3) The terms *architectural works, copy, collective work, device, fixed, literary work, machine, motion picture, phonorecord, publication, sound recording, transmission program,* and *useful article,* and their variant forms, have the meanings given to them in 17 U.S.C. 101.

(4) A *secure test* is a nonmarketed test administered under supervision at specified centers on specific dates, all copies of which are accounted for and either destroyed or returned to restricted locked storage following each administration. For these purposes a test is not marketed if copies are not sold but it is distributed and used in such a manner that ownership and control of copies remain with the test sponsor or publisher.

(5) *Title 17* means title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553.

(6) For the purposes of determining the applicable deposit requirements under this § 202.20 only, the following shall be considered as unpublished motion pictures: motion pictures that consist of television transmission programs and that have been published, if at all, only by reason of a license or other grant to a nonprofit institution of the right to make a fixation of such programs directly from a transmission to the public, with or without the right to make further uses of such fixations.

(c) *Nature of required deposit.* (1) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (c)(2) of this section, the deposit required to accompany an application for registration of claim to copyright under section 408 of title 17 shall consist of:

(i) In the case of unpublished works, one complete copy or phonorecord.

(ii) In the case of works first published in the United States before January 1, 1978, two complete copies or phonorecords of the work as first published.

(iii) In the case of works first published in the United States on or after January 1, 1978, two complete copies or phonorecords of the best edition.

(iv) In the case of works first published outside of the United States, one complete copy or phonorecord of the work either as first published or of the best edition. For purposes of this section, any works simultaneously first published within and outside of the

United States shall be considered to be first published in the United States.

(2) In the case of certain works, the special provisions set forth in this clause shall apply. In any case where this clause specifies that one copy or phonorecord may be submitted, that copy or phonorecord shall represent the best edition, or the work as first published, as set forth in paragraph (c)(1) of this section.

(i) *General.* In the following cases the deposit of one complete copy or phonorecord will suffice in lieu of two copies or phonorecords:

(A) Published three-dimensional cartographic representations of area, such as globes and relief models;

(B) Published diagrams illustrating scientific or technical works or formulating scientific or technical information in linear or other two-dimensional form, such as an architectural or engineering blueprint, or a mechanical drawing;

(C) Published greeting cards, picture postcards, and stationery;

(D) Lectures, sermons, speeches, and addresses published individually and not as a collection of the works of one or more authors;

(E) Musical compositions published in copies only, or in both copies and phonorecords, if the only publication of copies took place by rental, lease, or lending;

(F) Published multimedia kits or any part thereof;

(G) Works exempted from the requirement of depositing identifying material under paragraph (c)(2)(xi)(B)(5) of this section;

(H) Literary, dramatic, and musical works published only as embodied in phonorecords, although this category does not exempt the owner of copyright in a sound recording;

(I) Choreographic works, pantomimes, literary, dramatic, and musical works published only as embodied in motion pictures;

(J) Published works in the form of two-dimensional games, decals, fabric patches or emblems, calendars, instructions for needle work, needle work and craft kits; and

(K) Works reproduced on three-dimensional containers such as boxes, cases, and cartons.

(ii) *Motion pictures.* In the case of published or unpublished motion pictures, the deposit of one complete copy will suffice. The deposit of a copy or copies for any published or unpublished motion picture must be accompanied by a separate description of its contents, such as a continuity, pressbook, or synopsis. In any case where the deposit copy or copies required for registration of a motion picture cannot be viewed for examining purposes on equipment in the Examining Division of the Copyright Office, the description accompanying the deposit must comply with § 202.21(h) of these regulations. The Library of Congress may, at its sole discretion, enter into an agreement permitting the return of copies of published motion pictures to the depositor under certain conditions and establishing certain rights and obligations of the Library of Congress with respect to such copies. In the event of termination of such an agreement by the Library, it shall not be subject to reinstatement, nor shall the depositor or any successor in interest of the depositor be entitled to any similar or subsequent agreement with the Library, unless at the sole discretion of the Library it would be in the best interests of the Library to reinstate the agreement or enter into a new agreement. In the case of unpublished motion pictures (including television transmission programs that have been fixed and transmitted to the public, but have not been published), the deposit of identifying material in compliance with § 202.21 of these regulations may be made and will suffice in lieu of an actual copy. In the case of colorized versions of motion pictures made from pre-existing black and white motion pictures, in addition to the deposit of one complete copy of the colorized motion picture and the separate description of its contents as specified above, the deposit shall consist of one complete print of the black and white version of the motion picture from which the colorized version was prepared. If special relief from this requirement is requested and granted, the claimant shall make a good faith effort to deposit the best available, near-archival quality black and white print, as a condition of any grant of special relief.

(iii) *Holograms.* In the case of any work deposited in the form of a three-dimensional hologram, the copy or copies shall be accompanied by:

(A) Precise instructions for displaying the image fixed in the hologram; and

(B) Photographs or other identifying material complying with § 202.21 of these regulations and clearly showing the displayed image.

The number of sets of instructions and identifying material shall be the same as the number of copies required. In the case of a work in the form of a two-dimensional hologram, the image of which is visible without the use of a machine or device, one actual copy of the work shall be deposited.

(iv) *Certain pictorial and graphic works.* In the case of any unpublished pictorial or graphic work, deposit of identifying material in compliance with § 202.21 of these regulations may be made and will suffice in lieu of deposit of an actual copy. In the case of a published pictorial or graphic work, deposit of one complete copy, or of identifying material in compliance with § 202.21 of these regulations, may be made and will suffice in lieu of deposit of two actual copies where an individual author is the owner of copyright, and either:

(A) Less than five copies of the work have been published; or

(B) The work has been published and sold or offered for sale in a limited edition consisting of no more than 300 numbered copies.

(v) *Commercial prints and labels.* In the case of prints, labels, and other advertising matter, including catalogs, published in connection with the rental, lease, lending, licensing, or sale of articles of merchandise, works of authorship, or services, the deposit of one complete copy will suffice in lieu of two copies. Where the print or label is published in a larger work, such as a newspaper or other periodical, one copy of the entire page or pages upon which it appears may be submitted in lieu of the entire larger work. In the case of prints or labels physically inseparable from a three-dimensional object, identifying material complying with § 202.21 of these regulations must be submitted rather than an actual copy or copies except under the conditions of paragraph (c)(2)(xi)(B)(*4*) of this section.

(vi) *Tests.* In the case of tests, and answer material for tests, published separately from other literary works, the deposit of one complete copy will suffice in lieu of two copies. In the case of any secure test the Copyright Office will return the deposit to the applicant promptly after examination: Provided, That sufficient portions, description, or the like are retained so as to constitute a sufficient archival record of the deposit.

(vii) *Computer programs and databases embodied in machine-readable copies other than CD-ROM format.* In cases where a computer program, database, compilation, statistical compendium, or the like, if unpublished is fixed, or if published is published only in the form of machine-readable copies (such as magnetic tape or disks, punched cards, semiconductor chip products, or the like) other than a CD-ROM format, from which the work cannot ordinarily be perceived except with the aid of a machine or device, the deposit shall consist of:

(A) For published or unpublished computer programs, one copy of identifying portions of the program, reproduced in a form visually perceptible without the aid of a machine or device, either on paper or in microform. For these purposes ''identifying portions'' shall mean one of the following:

(*1*) The first and last 25 pages or equivalent units of the source code if reproduced on paper, or at least the first and last 25 pages or equivalent units of the source code if reproduced in microform, together with the page or equivalent unit containing the copyright notice, if any. If the program is 50 pages or less, the required deposit will be the entire source code. In the case of revised versions of computer programs, if the revisions occur throughout the entire program, the deposit of the page containing the copyright notice and the first and last 25 pages of source code will suffice; if the revisions do not occur in the first and last 25 pages, the deposit should consist of the page containing the copyright notice and any 50 pages of source code representative of the revised material; or

(*2*) Where the program contains trade secret material, the page or equivalent unit containing the copyright notice, if any, plus one of the following: the first and last 25 pages or equivalent units of source code with portions of the source code containing trade secrets blocked-out, provided that the blocked-out portions are proportionately less than the material remaining, and the deposit reveals an appreciable amount of original computer code; or the first and last 10 pages or equivalent units of source code alone with no blocked-out portions; or the first and last 25 pages of object code, together with any 10 or more consecutive pages of source code with no blocked-out portions; or for programs consisting of, or less than, 50 pages or equivalent units, entire source code with the trade secret portions blocked-out, provided that the blocked-out portions are proportionately less than the material remaining, and the remaining portion reveals an appreciable amount of original computer code. If the copyright claim is in a revision not contained in the first and last 25 pages, the deposit shall consist of either 20 pages of source code representative of the revised material with no blocked-out portions, or any 50 pages of source code representative of the revised material with portions of the source code containing trade secrets blocked-out, provided that the blocked-out portions are proportinately less than the material remaining and the deposit reveals an appreciable amount of original computer code. Whatever method is used to block out trade secret material, at least an appreciable amount of original computer code must remain visible.

(B) Where registration of a program containing trade secrets is made on the basis of an object code deposit the Copyright Office will make registration under its rule of doubt and warn that no determination has been made concerning the existence of copyrightable authorship.

(C) Where the application to claim copyright in a computer program includes a specific claim in related computer screen displays, the deposit, in addition to the identifying portions specified in paragraph (c)(2)(vii)(A) of this section, shall consist of:

(*1*) Visual reproductions of the copyrightable expression in the form of printouts, photographs, or drawings no smaller than 3x3 inches and no larger than 9x12 inches; or

(*2*) If the authorship in the work is predominantly audiovisual, a one-half inch VHS format videotape reproducing the copyrightable expression, except that printouts, photographs, or drawings no smaller than 3x3 inches and no larger than 9x12 inches must be deposited in lieu of videotape where the computer screen material simply constitutes a demonstration of the functioning of the computer program.

(D) For published and unpublished automated databases, compilations, statistical compendia, and the like, so fixed or published, one copy of identifying portions of the work, reproduced in a form visually perceptible without the aid of a machine or device, either on paper or in microform. For these purposes:

(*1*) *Identifying portions* shall generally mean either the first and last 25 pages or equivalent units of the work if reproduced on paper or in microform.

(*2*) *Datafile* and *file* shall mean a group of data records pertaining to a common subject matter regardless of their size or the number of data items in them.

(*3*) In the case of individual registration of a revised version of the works identified in this paragraph (c)(2)(vii)(D), the identifying portions deposited shall contain 50 representative pages or data records which have been added or modified.

(*4*) If the work is an automated database comprising multiple separate or distinct data files, ''identifying portions'' shall instead consist of 50 complete data records from each data file or the entire data file, whichever is less, and the descriptive statement required by paragraph (c)(2)(vii)(D)(5).

(*5*) In the case of group registration for revised or updated versions of a database, the claimant shall deposit identifying portions that contain 50 representative pages or equivalent units, or representative data records which have been marked to disclose (or do in fact disclose solely) the new material added on one representative publication date if published, or on one

representative creation date, if unpublished, and shall also deposit a brief typed or printed descriptive statement containing the notice of copyright information required under (*6*) or (*7*) immediately below, if the work bears a notice, and;

(*i*) The title of the database;

(*ii*) A subtitle, date of creation or publication, or other information, to distinguish any separate or distinct data files for cataloging purposes;

(*iii*) The name and address of the copyright claimant;

(*iv*) For each separate file, its name and content, including its subject, the origin(s) of the data, and the approximate number of data records it contains; and

(*v*) In the case of revised or updated versions of an automated database, information as to the nature and frequency of changes in the database and some identification of the location within the database or the separate data files of the revisions.

(*6*) For a copyright notice embodied in machine-readable form, the statement shall describe exactly the visually perceptible content of the notice which appears in or with the database, and the manner and frequency with which it is displayed (e.g., at user's terminal only at sign-on, or continuously on terminal display, or on printouts, etc.).

(*7*) If a visually perceptible copyright notice is placed on any copies of the work (or on magnetic tape reels or containers therefor), a sample of such notice must also accompany the statement.

(viii) *Machine-readable copies of works other than computer programs, databases, and works fixed in a CD-ROM format.* Where a literary, musical, pictorial, graphic, or audiovisual work, or a sound recording, except for works fixed in a CD-ROM format and literary works which are computer programs, databases, compilations, statistical compendia or the like, if unpublished has been fixed or, if published, has been published only in machine-readable form, the deposit must consist of identifying material. The type of identifying material submitted should generally be appropriate to the type of work embodied in machine-readable form, but in all cases should be that which best represents the copyrightable content of the work. In all cases the identifying material must include the title of the work. A synopsis may also be requested in addition to the other deposit materials as appropriate in the discretion of the Copyright Office. In the case of any published work subject to this section, the identifying material must include a representation of the copyright notice, if one exists. Identifying material requirements for certain types of works are specified below. In the case of the types of works listed below, the requirements specified shall apply except that, in any case where the specific requirements are not appropriate for a given work the form of the identifying material required will be determined by the Copyright Office in consultation with the applicant, but the Copyright Office will make the final determination of the acceptability of the identifying material.

(A) For pictorial or graphic works, the deposit shall consist of identifying material in compliance with § 202.21 of these regulations;

(B) For audiovisual works, the deposit shall consist of either a videotape of the work depicting representative portions of the copyrightable content, or a series of photographs or drawings, depicting representative portions of the work, plus in all cases a separate synopsis of the work;

(C) For musical compositions, the deposit shall consist of a transcription of the entire work such as a score, or a reproduction of the entire work on an audiocassette or other phonorecord;

(D) For sound recordings, the deposit shall consist of a reproduction of the entire work on an audiocassette or other phonorecord;

(E) For literary works, the deposit shall consist of a transcription of representative portions of the work including the first and last 25 pages or equivalent units, and five or more pages indicative of the remainder.

(ix) *Copies containing both visually-perceptible and machine-readable material other than a CD-ROM format.* Where a published literary work is embodied in copies containing both visually-perceptible and machine-readable material,

except in the case of a CD-ROM format, the deposit shall consist of the visually-perceptible material and identifying portions of the machine-readable material.

(x) *Works reproduced in or on sheetlike materials.* In the case of any unpublished work that is fixed, or any published work that is published, only in the form of a two-dimensional reproduction on sheetlike materials such as textiles and other fabrics, wallpaper and similar commercial wall coverings, carpeting, floor tile, and similar commercial floor coverings, and wrapping paper and similar packaging material, the deposit shall consist of one copy in the form of an actual swatch or piece of such material sufficient to show all elements of the work in which copyright is claimed and the copyright notice appearing on the work, if any. If the work consists of a repeated pictorial or graphic design, the complete design and at least part of one repetition must be shown. If the sheetlike material in or on which a published work has been reproduced has been embodied in or attached to a three-dimensional object, such as furniture, or any other three-dimensional manufactured article, and the work has been published only in that form, the deposit must consist of identifying material complying with § 202.21 of these regulations instead of a copy. If the sheetlike material in or on which a published work has been reproduced has been embodied in or attached to a two-dimensional object such as wearing apparel, bed linen, or a similar item, and the work has been published only in that form, the deposit must consist of identifying material complying with § 202.21 of these regulations instead of a copy unless the copy can be folded for storage in a form that does not exceed four inches in thickness.

(xi) *Works reproduced in or on three-dimensional objects.* (A) In the following cases the deposit must consist of identifying material complying with § 201.21 of these regulations instead of a copy or copies:

(*1*) Any three-dimensional sculptural work, including any illustration or formulation of artistic expression or information in three-dimensional form. Examples of such works include statues, carvings, ceramics, moldings, constructions, models, and maquettes; and

(*2*) Any two-dimensional or three-dimensional work that, if unpublished, has been fixed, or, if published, has been published only in or on jewelry, dolls, toys, games, except as provided in paragraph (c)(2)(xi)(B)(*3*) below, or any three-dimensional useful article.

(B) In the following cases the requirements of paragraph (c)(2)(xi)(A) of this section for the deposit of identifying material shall not apply:

(*1*) Three-dimensional cartographic representations of area, such as globes and relief models;

(*2*) Works that have been fixed or published in or on a useful article that comprises one of the elements of the unit of publication of an educational or instructional kit which also includes a literary or audiovisual work, a sound recording, or any combination of such works;

(*3*) Published games consisting of multiple parts that are packaged and published in a box or similar container with flat sides and with dimensions of no more than 12x24x6 inches;

(*4*) Works reproduced on three-dimensional containers or holders such as boxes, cases, and cartons, where the container or holder can be readily opened out, unfolded, slit at the corners, or in some other way made adaptable for flat storage, and the copy, when flattened, does not exceed 96 inches in any dimension; or

(*5*) Any three-dimensional sculptural work that, if unpublished, has been fixed, or, if published, has been published only in the form of jewelry cast in base metal which does not exceed four inches in any dimension.

(xii) *Soundtracks.* For separate registration of an unpublished work that is fixed, or a published work that is published, only as embodied in a soundtrack that is an integral part of a motion picture, the deposit of identifying material in compliance with § 202.21 of these regulations will suffice in lieu of an actual copy of the motion picture.

(xiii) *Oversize deposits.* In any case where the deposit otherwise required by this section exceeds 96 inches in any dimension, identifying material complying with § 202.21 of these regulations

must be submitted instead of an actual copy or copies.

(xiv) *Pictorial advertising material.* In the case of published pictorial advertising material, except for advertising material published in connection with motion pictures, the deposit of either one copy as published or prepublication material consisting of camera-ready copy is acceptable.

(xv) *Contributions to collective works.* In the case of published contributions to collective works, the deposit of either one complete copy of the best edition of the entire collective work, the complete section containing the contribution if published in a newspaper, the entire page containing the contribution, the contribution cut from the paper in which it appeared, or a photocopy of the contribution itself as it was published in the collective work, will suffice in lieu of two complete copies of the entire collective work.

(xvi) *Phonorecords.* In any case where the deposit phonorecord or phonorecords submitted for registration of a claim to copyright is inaudible on audio playback devices in the Examining Division of the Copyright Office, the Office will seek an appropriate deposit in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section.

(xvii) *Group registration of serials.* For group registration of related serials, as specified in §202.3(b)(6), the deposit must consist of one complete copy of the best edition of each issue included in the group registration. In addition, two complimentary subscriptions to any serial for which group registration is sought must be entered and maintained in the name of the Library of Congress, and the copies must be submitted regularly and promptly after publication.

(xviii) *Architectural works.* (A) For designs of unconstructed buildings, the deposit must consist of one complete copy of an architectural drawing or blueprint in visually perceptible form showing the overall form of the building and any interior arrangements of spaces and/or design elements in which copyright is claimed. For archival purposes, the Copyright Office prefers that the drawing submissions consist of the following in descending order of preference:

(*1*) Original format, or best quality form of reproduction, including offset or silk screen printing;

(*2*) Xerographic or photographic copies on good quality paper;

(*3*) Positive photostat or photodirect positive;

(*4*) Blue line copies (diazo or ozalid process).

The Copyright Office prefers that the deposit disclose the name(s) of the architect(s) and draftsperson(s) and the building site, if known.

(B) For designs of constructed buildings, the deposit must consist of one complete copy of an architectural drawing or blueprint in visually perceptible form showing the overall form of the building and any interior arrangement of spaces and/or design elements in which copyright is claimed. In addition, the deposit must also include identifying material in the form of photographs complying with §202.21 of these regulations, which clearly discloses the architectural works being registered. For archival purposes, the Copyright Office prefers that the drawing submissions constitute the most finished form of presentation drawings and consist of the following in descending order of preference:

(*1*) Original format, or best quality form of reproduction, including offset or silk screen printing;

(*2*) Xerographic or photographic copies on good quality paper;

(*3*) Positive photostat or photodirect positive;

(*4*) Blue line copies (diazo or ozalid process).

With respect to the accompanying photographs, the Copyright Office prefers 8 x 10 inches, good quality photographs, which clearly show several exterior and interior views. The Copyright Office prefers that the deposit disclose the name(s) of the architect(s) and draftsperson(s) and the building site.

(xix) *Works fixed in a CD-ROM format.* (A) Where a work is fixed in a CD-ROM format, the deposit must consist of one complete copy of the entire CD-ROM package, including a complete copy of any accompanying operating software and instructional manual, and a printed version of the work embodied in the CD-ROM, if the work is fixed in print as well as a CD-ROM. A complete copy

of a published CD-ROM package includes all of the elements comprising the applicable unit of publication, including elements that if considered separately would not be copyrightable subject matter or could be the subject of a separate registration.

(B) In any case where the work fixed in a CD-ROM package cannot be viewed on equipment available in the Examining Division of the Copyright Office, the Office will seek an appropriate deposit in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section, in addition to the deposit of the CD-ROM package.

(d) *Special relief.* (1) In any case the Register of Copyrights may, after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress and upon such conditions as the Register may determine after such consultation:

(i) Permit the deposit of one copy or phonorecord, or alternative identifying material, in lieu of the one or two copies or phonorecords otherwise required by paragraph (c)(1) of this section;

(ii) Permit the deposit of incomplete copies or phonorecords, or copies or phonorecords other than those normally comprising the best edition; or

(iii) Permit the deposit of an actual copy or copies, in lieu of the identifying material otherwise required by this section; or

(iv) Permit the deposit of identifying material which does not comply with § 202.21 of these regulations.

(2) Any decision as to whether to grant such special relief, and the conditions under which special relief is to be granted, shall be made by the Register of Copyrights after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress, and shall be based upon the acquisition policies of the Library of Congress then in force and the archival and examining requirements of the Copyright Office.

(3) Requests for special relief under this paragraph may be combined with requests for special relief under § 202.19(e) of these regulations. Whether so combined or made solely under this paragraph, such requests shall be made in writing to the Chief, Examining Division of the Copyright Office, shall be signed by or on behalf of the person signing the application for registration, and shall set forth specific reasons why the request should be granted.

(4) The Register of Copyrights may, after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress, terminate any ongoing or continuous grant of special relief. Notice of termination shall be given in writing and shall be sent to the individual person or organization to whom the grant of special relief had been given, at the last address shown in the records of the Copyright Office. A notice of termination may be given at any time, but it shall state a specific date of termination that is at least 30 days later than the date the notice is mailed. Termination shall not affect the validity of any deposit or registration made earlier under the grant of special relief.

(e) *Use of copies and phonorecords deposited for the Library of Congress.* Copies and phonorecords deposited for the Library of Congress under section 407 of title 17 and § 202.19 of these regulations may be used to satisfy the deposit provisions of this section if they are accompanied by an application for registration of claim to copyright in the work represented by the deposit, and either a registration fee or a deposit account number on the application.

[51 FR 6405, Feb. 24, 1986, as amended at 53 FR 29890, Aug. 9, 1988; 54 FR 13176, 13181, Mar. 31, 1989; 54 FR 21059, May 16, 1989; 55 FR 50557, Dec. 7, 1990; 56 FR 47403, Sept. 19, 1991; 56 FR 55632, Oct. 29, 1991; 56 FR 60065, Nov. 27, 1991; 56 FR 65191, Dec. 16, 1991; 57 FR 45310, Oct. 1, 1992; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995; 62 FR 35421, July 1, 1997]

§ 202.21 Deposit of identifying material instead of copies.

(a) *General.* Subject to the specific provisions of paragraphs (f) and (g) of this section, and to §§ 202.19(e)(1)(iv) and 202.20(d)(1)(iv), in any case where the deposit of identifying material is permitted or required under § 202.19 or § 202.20 of these regulations for published or unpublished works, the material shall consist of photographic prints, transparencies, photostats, drawings, or similar two-dimensional reproductions or renderings of the work, in a form visually perceivable without the aid of a machine or device. In the case of pictorial or graphic works, such material should reproduce

the actual colors employed in the work. In all other cases, such material may be in black and white or may consist of a reproduction of the actual colors.

(b) *Completeness; number of sets.* As many pieces of identifying material as are necessary to show the entire copyrightable content in the ordinary case, but in no case less than an adequate representation of such content, of the work for which deposit is being made, or for which registration is being sought shall be submitted. Except in cases falling under the provisions of § 202.19(d)(2)(iii) or § 202.20(c)(2)(iii) with respect to holograms, only one set of such complete identifying material is required.

(c) *Size.* Photographic transparencies must be at least 35mm in size and, if such transparencies are 3x3 inches or less, must be fixed in cardboard, plastic, or similar mounts to facilitate identification, handling, and storage. The Copyright Office prefers that transparencies larger than 3x3 inches be mounted in a way that facilitates their handling and preservation, and reserves the right to require such mounting in particular cases. All types of identifying material other than photographic transparencies must be not less than 3x3 inches and not more than 9x12 inches, but preferably 8x10 inches. Except in the case of transparencies, the image of the work must be either lifesize or larger, or if less than lifesize must be large enough to show clearly the entire copyrightable content of the work.

(d) *Title and dimensions.* At least one piece of identifying material must, on its front, back, or mount, indicate the title of the work; and the indication of an exact measurement of one or more dimensions of the work is preferred.

(e) *Copyright notice.* In the case of works published with notice of copyright, the notice and its position on the work must be clearly shown on at least one piece of identifying material. Where necessary because of the size or position of the notice, a separate drawing or similar reproduction shall be submitted. Such reproduction shall be no smaller than 3×3 inches and no larger than 9×12 inches, and shall show the exact appearance and content of the notice, and its specific position on the work.

(f) For separate registration of an unpublished work that is fixed, or a published work that is published, only as embodied in a soundtrack that is an integral part of a motion picture, identifying material deposited in lieu of an actual copy of the motion picture shall consist of:

(1) A transcription of the entire work, or a reproduction of the entire work on a phonorecord; and

(2) Photographs or other reproductions from the motion picture showing the title of the motion picture, the soundtrack credits, and the copyright notice for the soundtrack, if any.

The provisions of paragraphs (b), (c), (d), and (e) of this section do not apply to identifying material deposited under this paragraph (f).

(g)(1) In the case of unpublished motion pictures (including transmission programs that have been fixed and transmitted to the public, but have not been published), identifying material deposited in lieu of an actual copy shall consist of either:

(i) An audio cassette or other phonorecord reproducing the entire soundtrack or other sound portion of the motion picture, and description of the motion picture; or

(ii) A set consisting of one frame enlargement or similar visual reproduction from each 10-minute segment of the motion picture, and a description of the motion picture.

(2) In either case the ''description'' may be a continuity, a pressbook, or a synopsis but in all cases it must include:

(i) The title or continuing title of the work, and the episode title, if any;

(ii) The nature and general content of the program;

(iii) The date when the work was first fixed and whether or not fixation was simultaneous with first transmission;

(iv) The date of first transmission, if any;

(v) The running time; and

(vi) The credits appearing on the work, if any.

(3) The provisions of paragraphs (b), (c), (d), and (e) of this section do not apply to identifying material submitted under this paragraph (g).

(h) In the case where the deposit copy or copies of a motion picture cannot be viewed for examining purposes on equipment in the Examining Division of the Copyright Office, the ''description'' required by §202.20(c)(2)(ii) of these regulations may be a continuity, a press-book, a synopsis, or a final shooting script but in all cases must be sufficient to indicate the copyrightable material in the work and include

(1) The continuing title of the work and the episode title, if any;

(2) The nature and general content of the program and of its dialogue or narration, if any;

(3) The running time; and

(4) All credits appearing on the work including the copyright notice, if any. The provisions of paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this section do not apply to identifying material submitted under this paragraph (h).

[51 FR 6409, Feb. 24, 1986]

§ 202.22 Acquisition and deposit of unpublished television transmission programs.

(a) *General.* This section prescribes rules pertaining to the acquisition of copies of unpublished television transmission programs by the Library of Congress under section 407(e) of title 17 of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553. It also prescribes rules pertaining to the use of such copies in the registration of claims to copywright, under section 408(b)(2).

(b) *Definitions.* For purposes of this section:

(1) The terms *copies, fixed, publication,* and *transmission program* and their variant forms, have the meanings given to them in section 101 of title 17. The term *network station* has the meaning given it in section 111(f) of title 17.

(2) *Title 17* means title of the United States Code, as amended by Pub. L. 94–553.

(c) *Off-the-air copying.* (1) Library of Congress employees acting under the general authority of the Librarian of Congress may make a fixation of an unpublished television transmission program directly from a transmission to the public in the United States, in accordance with section 407(e)(1) and (4) of Title 17 of the United States Code. The choice of programs selected for fixation shall be based on the Library of Congress acquisition policies in effect at the time of fixation. Specific notice of an intent to copy a transmission program off-the-air will ordinarily not be given. In general, the Library of Congress will seek to copy off-the-air a substantial portion of the programming transmitted by noncommercial educational broadcast stations as defined in section 397 of itle 47 of the United States Code, and will copy off-the-air selected programming transmitted by commercial broadcast stations, both network and independent.

(2) Upon written request addressed to the Chief, Motion Picture, Broadcasting and Recorded Sound Division by a broadcast station or other owner of the right of transmission, the Library of Congress will inform the requestor whether a particular transmission program has been copied off-the-air by the Library.

(3) The Library of Congress will not knowingly copy off-the-air any unfixed or published television transmission program under the copying authority of section 407(e) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(4) The Library of Congress is entitled under this paragraph (c) to presume that a television program transmitted to the public in the United States by a noncommercial educational broadcast station as defined in section 397 of title 47 of the United States Code has been fixed but not published.

(5) The presumption established by paragraph (c)(4) of this section may be overcome by written declaration and submission of appropriate documentary evidence to the Chief, Motion Picture, Broadcasting and Recorded Sound Division, either before or after off-the-air copying of the particular transmission program by the Library of Congress. Such written submission shall contain:

(i) The identification, by title and time of broadcast, of the transmission program in question;

(ii) A brief statement declaring either that the program was not fixed or that it was published at the time of transmission;

(iii) If it is declared that the program was published at the time of transmission, a brief statement of the facts of publication, including the date and place thereof, the method of publication, the name of the owner of the right of first publication, and whether the work was published in the United States with notice of copyright; and

(iv) The actual handwritten signature of an officer or other duly authorized agent of the organization which transmitted the program in question.

(6) A declaration that the program was unfixed at the time of transmission shall be accepted by the Library of Congress, unless the Library can cite evidence to the contrary, and the off-the-air copy will either be

(i) Erased; or

(ii) Retained, if requested by the owner of copyright or of any exclusive right, to satisfy the deposit provision of section 408 of title 17 of the United States Code.

(7) If it is declared that the program was published at the time of transmission, the Library of Congress is entitled under this section to retain the copy to satisfy the deposit requirement of section 407(a) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(8) The Library of Congress in making fixations of unpublished transmission programs transmitted by commercial broadcast stations shall not do so without notifying the transmitting organization or its agent that such activity is taking place. In the case of network stations, the notification will be sent to the particular network. In the case of any other commercial broadcasting station, the notification will be sent to the particular broadcast station that has transmitted, or will transmit, the program. Such notice shall, if possible, be given by the Library of Congress prior to the time of broadcast. In every case, the Library of Congress shall transmit such notice no later than fourteen days after such fixation has occurred. Such notice shall contain:

(i) The identification, by title and time of broadcast, of the transmission program in question;

(ii) A brief statement asserting the Library of Congress' belief that the transmission program has been, or will be by the date of transmission, fixed and is unpublished, together with language converting the notice to a demand for deposit under section 407 (a) and (b) of title 17 of the United States Code, if the transmission program has been published in the United States.

(9) The notice required by paragraph (c)(8) of this section shall not cover more than one transmission program except that the notice may cover up to thirteen episodes of one title if such episodes are generally scheduled to be broadcast at the same time period on a regular basis, or may cover all the episodes comprising the title if they are scheduled to be broadcast within a period of not more than two months.

(d) *Demands for deposit of a television transmission program.* (1) The Register of Copyrights may make a written demand upon the owner of the right of transmission in the United States to deposit a copy of a specific transmission program for the benefit of the Library of Congress under the authority of section 407(e)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(2) The Register of Copyrights is entitled to presume, unless clear evidence to the contrary is proffered, that the transmitting organization is the owner of the United States transmission right.

(3) Notices of demand shall be in writing and shall contain:

(i) The identification, by title and time of broadcast, of the work in question;

(ii) An explanation of the optional forms of compliance, including transfer of ownership of a copy to the Library, lending a copy to the Library for reproduction, or selling a copy to the Library at a price not to exceed the cost of reproducing and supplying the copy;

(iii) A ninety-day deadline by which time either compliance or a request for an extension of a request to adjust the scope of the demand or the method for fulfilling it shall have been received by the Register of Copyrights;

(iv) A brief description of the controls which are placed on the copies' use;

(v) A statement concerning the Register's perception of the publication status of the program, together with language converting this demand to a

demand for a deposit, under 17 U.S.C. 407 (a) and (c), if the recipient takes the position that the work is published; and

(vi) A statement that a *compliance copy* must be made and retained if the notice is received prior to transmission.

(4) With respect to paragraph (d)(3)(ii) of this section, the sale of a copy in compliance with a demand of this nature shall be at a price not to exceed the cost to the Library of reproducing and supplying the copy. The notice of demand should therefore inform the recipient of that cost and set that cost, plus reasonable shipping charges, as the maximum price for such a sale.

(5) Copies transferred, lent, or sold under paragraph (d) of this section shall be of sound physical condition as described in Appendix A to this section.

(6) *Special relief.* In the case of any demand made under paragraph (d) of this section the Register of Copyrights may, after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress and upon such conditions as the Register may determine after such consultation,

(i) Extend the time period provided in subparagraph (d)(3)(iii);

(ii) Make adjustments in the scope of the demand; or

(iii) Make adjustments in the method of fulfilling the demand. Any decision as to whether to allow such extension or adjustments shall be made by the Register of Copyrights after consultation with other appropriate officials of the Library of Congress and shall be made as reasonably warranted by the circumstances. Requests for special relief under paragraph (d) of this section shall be made in writing to the Copyright Acquisitions Division, shall be signed by or on behalf of the owner of the right of transmission in the United States and shall set forth the specific reasons why the request shall be granted.

(e) *Disposition and use of copies.* (1) All copies acquired under this section shall be maintained by the Motion Picture, Broadcasting and Recorded Sound Division of the Library of Congress. The Library may make one archival copy of a program which it has fixed under the provisions of section 407(e)(1) of title 17 of the United States Code and paragraph (c) of this section.

(2) All copies acquired or made under this section, except copies of transmission programs consisting of a regularly scheduled newscast or on-the-spot coverage of news events, shall be subject to the restrictions concerning copying and access found in Library of Congress Regulation 818–17, *Policies Governing the Use and Availability of Motion Pictures and Other Audiovisual Works in the Collections of the Library of Congress,* or its successors. Copies of transmission programs consisting of regularly scheduled newscasts or on-the-spot coverage of news events are subject to the provisions of the ''American Television and Radio Archives Act'' (section 170 of title 2 of the United States Code) and such regulations as the Librarian of Congress shall prescribe.

(f) *Registration of claims to copyright.* (1) Copies fixed by the Library of Congress under the provisions of paragraph (c) of this section may be used as the deposit for copyright registration provided that:

(i) The application and fee, in a form acceptable for registration, is received by the Copyright Office not later than ninety days after transmission of the program, and

(ii) Correspondence received by the Copyright Office in the envelope containing the application and fee states that a fixation of the instant work was made by the Library of Congress and requests that the copy so fixed be used to satisfy the registration deposit provisions.

(2) Copies transferred, lent, or sold to the Library of Congress under the provisions of paragraph (d) of this section may be used as the deposit for copyright registration purposes only when the application and fee, in a form acceptable for registration, accompany, in the same container, the copy lent, transferred, or sold, and there is an explanation that the copy is intended to satisfy both the demand issued under section 407(e)(2) of title 17 of the United States Code and the registration deposit provisions.

(g) *Agreements modifying the terms of this section.* (1) The Library of Congress

may, at its sole discretion, enter into an agreement whereby the provision of copies of unpublished television transmission programs on terms different from those contained in this section is authorized.

(2) Any such agreement may be terminated without notice by the Library of Congress.

(17 U.S.C. 407, 408, 702)

[48 FR 37208, Aug. 17, 1983, as amended at 56 FR 7815, Feb. 26, 1991; 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995]

§ 202.23 Full term retention of copyright deposits.

(a) *General.* (1) This section prescribes conditions under which a request for full term retention, under the control of the Copyright Office, of copyright deposits (copies, phonorecords, or identifying material) of published works may be made and granted or denied pursuant to section 704(e) of title 17 of the United States Code. Only copies, phonorecords, or identifying material deposited in connection with registration of a claim to copyright under title 17 of the United States Code are within the provisions of this section. Only the depositor or the copyright owner of record of the work identified by the copyright deposit, or a duly authorized agent of the depositor or copyright owner, may request full term retention. A fee for this service is fixed by this section pursuant to section 708(a)(11) of title 17 of the United States Code.

(2) For purposes of this section, *under the control of the Copyright Office* shall mean within the confines of Copyright Office buildings and under the control of Copyright Office employees, including retention in a Federal records center, but does not include transfer to the Library of Congress collections.

(3) For purposes of this section, *full term retention* means retention for a period of 75 years from the date of publication of the work identified by the particular copyright deposit which is retained.

(4) For purposes of this section, *copyright deposit* or its plural means the copy, phonorecord, or identifying material submitted to the Copyright Office in connection with a published work that is subsequently registered and made part of the records of the Office.

(b) *Form and content of request for full term retention*—(1) *Forms.* The Copyright Office does not provide printed forms for the use of persons requesting full term retention of copyright deposits.

(2) Requests for full term retention must be made in writing addressed to the Chief, Information and Reference Division of the Copyright Office, and shall (i) be signed by or on behalf of the depositor or copyright owner of record, and (ii) clearly indicate that full term retention is desired.

(3) The request for full term retention must adequately identify the particular copyright deposit to be retained, preferably by including the title used in the registration application, the name of the depositor or copyright owner of record, the publication date, and, if registration was completed earlier, the registration number.

(c) *Conditions under which requests will be granted or denied*—(1) *General.* A request that meets the requirements of paragraph (b) will generally be granted if the copyright deposit for which full term retention is requested has been continuously in the custody of the Copyright Office and the Library of Congress has not, by the date of the request, selected the copyright deposit for its collections.

(2) *Time of request.* The request for full term retention of a particular copyright deposit may be made at the time of deposit or at any time thereafter; however, the request will be granted only if at least one copy, phonorecord, or set of identifying material is in the custody of the Copyright Office at the time of the request. Where the request is made concurrent with the initial deposit of the work for registration, the requestor must submit one copy or phonorecord more than the number specified in § 202.20 of 37 CFR for the particular work.

(3) *One deposit retained.* The Copyright Office will retain no more than one copy, phonorecord, or set of identifying material for a given registered work.

(4) *Denial of request for full term retention.* The Copyright Office reserves the right to deny the request for full term retention where:

(i) The excessive size, fragility, or weight of the deposit would, in the sole discretion of the Register of Copyrights, constitute an unreasonable storage burden. The request may nevertheless be granted if, within 60 calendar days of the original denial of the request, the requestor pays the reasonable administrative costs, as fixed in the particular case by the Register of Copyrights, of preparing acceptable identifying materials for retention in lieu of the actual copyright deposit;

(ii) The Library of Congress has selected for its collections the single copyright deposit, or both, if two copies or phonorecords were deposited; or

(iii) Retention would result in a health or safety hazard, in the sole judgment of the Register of Copyrights. The request may nevertheless be granted if, within 60 calendar days of the original denial of the request, the requestor pays the reasonable administrative costs, as fixed in the particular case by the Register of Copyrights of preparing acceptable identifying materials for retention in lieu of the actual copyright deposit.

(d) *Form of copyright deposit.* If full term retention is granted, the Copyright Office will retain under its control the particular copyright deposit used to make registration for the work. Any deposit made on after September 19, 1978 shall satisfy the requirements of 37 CFR 202.20 and 202.21.

(e) *Fee for full term retention.* (1) Pursuant to section 708(a)(11) of title 17 of the United States Code, the Register of Copyrights has fixed the fee for full term retention at $270.00 for each copyright deposit granted full term retention.

(2) A check or money order in the amount of $270.00 payable to the Register of Copyrights, must be received in the Copyright Office within 60 calendar days from the date of mailing of the Copyright Office's notification to the requestor that full term retention has been granted for a particular copyright deposit.

(3) The Copyright Office will issue a receipt acknowledging payment of the fee and identifying the copyright deposit for which full term retention has been granted.

(f) *Selection by Library of Congress*—(1) *General.* All published copyright deposits are available for selection by the Library of Congress until the Copyright Office has formally granted a request for full term retention. Unless the requestor has deposited the additional copy or phonorecord specified by paragraph (c)(2) of this section, the Copyright Office will not process a request for full term retention submitted concurrent with a copyright registration application and deposit, until the Library of Congress has had a reasonable amount of time to make its selection determination.

(2) A request for full term retention made at the time of deposit of a published work does not affect the right of the Library to select one or both of the copyright deposits.

(3) If one copyright deposit is selected, the second deposit, if any, will be used for full term retention.

(4) If both copyright deposits are selected, or, in the case where the single deposit made is selected, full term retention will be granted only if the additional copy or phonorecord specified by paragraph (c)(2) was deposited.

(g) *Termination of full term storage.* Full term storage will cease 75 years after the date of publication of the work identified by the copyright deposit retained, and the copyright deposit will be disposed of in accordance with section 704, paragraphs (b) through (d), of title 17 of the United States Code.

[52 FR 28822, Aug. 4, 1987, as amended at 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995]

APPENDIX A TO PART 202—TECHNICAL GUIDELINES REGARDING SOUND PHYSICAL CONDITION

To be considered a copy ''of sound physical condition'' within the meaning of 37 CFR 202.22(d)(5), a copy shall conform to all the technical guidelines set out in this Appendix.

A. *Physical Condition.* All portions of the copy that reproduce the transmission program must be:

1. *Clean:* Free from dirt, marks, spots, fungus, or other smudges, blotches, blemishes, or distortions;

2. *Undamaged:* Free from burns, blisters, tears, cuts, scratches, breaks, erasure, or other physical damage. The copies must also be free from:

(i) Any damage that interferes with performance from the tape or other reproduction, including physical damage resulting from earlier mechanical difficulties such as cassette jamming, breaks, tangles, or tape overflow; and

(ii) Any erasures, damage causing visual or audible defects or distortions or any material remaining from incomplete erasure of previously recorded works.

3. *Unspliced:* Free from splices in any part of the copy reproducing the transmission program, regardless of whether the splice involves the addition or deletion of material or is intended to repair a break or cut.

4. *Undeteriorated:* Free from any visual or aural deterioration resulting from aging or exposure to climatic, atmospheric, or other chemical or physical conditions, including heat, cold, humidity, electromagnetic fields, or radiation. The copy shall also be free from excessive brittleness or stretching, from any visible flaking of oxide from the tape base or other medium, and from other visible signs of physical deterioration or excessive wear.

B. *Physical Appurtenances of Deposit Copy.*

1. *Physical Housing of Video Tape Copy.* (a) In the case of video tape reproduced for reel-to-reel performance, the deposit copy shall consist of reels of uniform size and length. The length of the reels will depend on both the size of the tape and its running time (the last reel may be shorter). (b) In the case of video tape reproduced for cassette, cartridge, or similar performance, the tape drive mechanism shall be fully operable and free from any mechanical defects.

2. *''Leader'' or Equivalent.* The copy, whether housed in reels, cassettes, or cartridges, shall have a leader segment both preceding the beginning and following the end of the recording.

C. *Visual and Aural Quality of Copy:*

1. *Visual Quality.* The copy should be equivalent to an evaluated first generation copy from an edited master tape and must reproduce a flawless and consistent electronic signal that meets industry standards for television screening.

2. *Aural Quality.* The sound channels or other portions must reproduce a flawless and consistent electronic signal without any audible defects.

(17 U.S.C. 407, 408, 702)

[48 FR 37209, Aug. 17, 1983, as amended at 60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995]

APPENDIX B TO PART 202—''BEST EDITION'' OF PUBLISHED COPYRIGHTED WORKS FOR THE COLLECTIONS OF THE LIBRARY OF CONGRESS

The copyright law (title 17, United States Code) requires that copies or phonorecords deposited in the Copyright Office be of the ''best edition'' of the work. The law states that ''The 'best edition' of a work is the edition, published in the United States at any time before the date of deposit, that the Library of Congress determines to be most suitable for its purposes.'' (For works first published only in a country other than the United States, the law requires the deposit of the best edition as first published.)

When two or more editions of the same version of a work have been published, the one of the highest quality is generally considered to be the best edition. In judging quality, the Library of Congress will adhere to the criteria set forth below in all but exceptional circumstances.

Where differences between editions represent variations in copyrightable content, each edition is a separate version and ''best edition'' standards based on such differences do not apply. Each such version is a separate work for the purpose of the copyright law.

The criteria to be applied in determining the best edition of each of several types of material are listed below in descending order of importance. In deciding between two editions, a criterion-by-criterion comparison should be made. The edition which first fails to satisfy a criterion is to be considered of inferior quality and will not be an acceptable deposit. Example: If a comparison is made between two hardbound editions of a book, one a trade edition printed on acid-free paper, and the other a specially bound edition printed on average paper, the former will be the best edition because the type of paper is a more important criterion than the binding.

Under regulations of the Copyright Office, potential depositors may request authorization to deposit copies or phonorecords of other than the best edition of a specific work (e.g., a microform rather than a printed edition of a serial), by requesting ''special relief'' from the deposit requirements. All requests for special relief should be in writing and should state the reason(s) why the applicant cannot send the required deposit and what the applicant wishes to submit instead of the required deposit.

I. Printed Textual Matter

A. Paper, Binding, and Packaging:

1. Archival-quality rather than less-permanent paper.
2. Hard cover rather than soft cover.
3. Library binding rather than commercial binding.
4. Trade edition rather than book club edition.
5. Sewn rather than glue-only binding.
6. Sewn or glued rather than stapled or spiral-bound.
7. Stapled rather than spiral-bound or plastic-bound.
8. Bound rather than looseleaf, except when future looseleaf insertions are to be issued. In the case of looseleaf materials, this

includes the submission of all binders and indexes when they are part of the unit as published and offered for sale or distribution. Additionally, the regular and timely receipt of all appropriate looseleaf updates, supplements, and releases including supplemental binders issued to handle these expanded versions, is part of the requirement to properly maintain these publications.

9. Slip-cased rather than nonslip-cased.

10. With protective folders rather than without (for broadsides).

11. Rolled rather than folded (for broadsides).

12. With protective coatings rather than without (except broadsides, which should not be coated).

B. Rarity:

1. Special limited edition having the greatest number of special features.

2. Other limited edition rather than trade edition.

3. Special binding rather than trade binding.

C. Illustrations:

1. Illustrated rather than unillustrated.

2. Illustrations in color rather than black and white.

D. Special Features:

1. With thumb notches or index tabs rather than without.

2. With aids to use such as overlays and magnifiers rather than without.

E. Size:

1. Larger rather than smaller sizes. (Except that large-type editions for the partially-sighted are not required in place of editions employing type of more conventional size.)

II. Photographs

A. Size and finish, in descending order of preference:

1. The most widely distributed edition.

2. 8 x 10-inch glossy print.

3. Other size or finish.

B. Unmounted rather than mounted.

C. Archival-quality rather than less-permanent paper stock or printing process.

III. Motion Pictures

A. Film rather than another medium. Film editions are listed below in descending order of preference.

1. Preprint material, by special arrangement.

2. Film gauge in which most widely distributed.

3. 35 mm rather than 16 mm.

4. 16 mm rather than 8 mm.

5. Special formats (e.g., 65 mm) only in exceptional cases.

6. Open reel rather than cartridge or cassette.

B. Videotape rather than videodisc. Videotape editions are listed below in descending order of preference.

1. Tape gauge in which most widely distributed.

2. Two-inch tape.

3. One-inch tape.

4. Three-quarter-inch tape cassette.

5. One-half-inch tape cassette.

IV. Other Graphic Matter

A. Paper and Printing:

1. Archival quality rather than less-permanent paper.

2. Color rather than black and white.

B. Size and Content:

1. Larger rather than smaller size.

2. In the case of cartographic works, editions with the greatest amount of information rather than those with less detail.

C. Rarity:

1. The most widely distributed edition rather than one of limited distribution.

2. In the case of a work published only in a limited, numbered edition, one copy outside the numbered series but otherwise identical.

3. A photographic reproduction of the original, by special arrangement only.

D. Text and Other Materials:

1. Works with annotations, accompanying tabular or textual matter, or other interpretative aids rather than those without them.

E. Binding and Packaging:

1. Bound rather than unbound.

2. If editions have different binding, apply the criteria in I.A.2–I.A.7, above.

3. Rolled rather than folded.

4. With protective coatings rather than without.

V. Phonorecords

A. Compact digital disc rather than a vinyl disc.

B. Vinyl disc rather than tape.

C. With special enclosures rather than without.

D. Open-reel rather than cartridge.

E. Cartridge rather than cassette.

F. Quadraphonic rather than stereophonic.

G. True stereophonic rather than monaural.

H. Monaural rather than electronically rechanneled stereo.

VI. Musical Compositions

A. Fullness of Score:

1. *Vocal music:*

a. With orchestral accompaniment—

i. Full score and parts, if any, rather than conductor's score and parts, if any. (In cases of compositions published only by rental, lease, or lending, this requirement is reduced to full score only.)

ii. Conductor's score and parts, if any, rather than condensed score and parts, if any. (In cases of compositions published only by rental, lease, or lending, this requirement is reduced to conductor's score only.)

b. Unaccompanied: Open score (each part on separate staff) rather than closed score (all parts condensed to two staves).

2. *Instrumental music:*

a. Full score and parts, if any, rather than conductor's score and parts, if any. (In cases of compositions published only by rental, lease, or lending, this requirement is reduced to full score only.)

b. Conductor's score and parts, if any, rather than condensed score and parts, if any. (In cases of compositions published only by rental, lease, or lending, this requirement is reduced to conductor's score only.)

B. Printing and Paper:

1. Archival-quality rather than less-permanent paper.

C. Binding and Packaging:

1. Special limited editions rather than trade editions.

2. Bound rather than unbound.

3. If editions have different binding, apply the criteria in I.A.2–I.A.12, above.

4. With protective folders rather than without.

VII. Microforms

A. Related Materials:

1. With indexes, study guides, or other printed matter rather than without.

B. Permanence and Appearance:

1. Silver halide rather than any other emulsion.

2. Positive rather than negative.

3. Color rather than black and white.

C. Format (newspapers and newspaper-formatted serials):

1. Reel microfilm rather than any other microform.

D. Format (all other materials):

1. Microfiche rather than reel microfilm.

2. Reel microfilm rather than microform cassetes.

3. Microfilm cassettes rather than micro-opaque prints.

E. Size:

1. 35 mm rather than 16 mm.

VIII. Machine-Readable Copies

A. Computer Programs

1. With documents and other accompanying material rather than without.

2. Not copy-protected rather than copy-protected (if copy-protected then with a backup copy of the disk(s)).

3. *Format:*

a. PC–DOS or MS–DOS (or other IBM compatible formats, such as XENIX):

(i) 5¼″ Diskette(s).

(ii) 3½″ Diskette(s).

(iii) Optical media, such as CD–ROM—best edition should adhere to prevailing NISO standards.

b. Apple Macintosh:

(i) 3½″ Diskette(s).

(ii) Optical media, such as CD–ROM—best edition should adhere to prevailing NISO standards.

B. Computerized Information Works, Including Statistical Compendia, Serials, or Reference Works:

1. With documentation and other accompanying material rather than without.

2. With best edition of accompanying program rather than without.

3. Not copy-protected rather than copy-protected (if copy-protected then with a backup copy of the disk(s)).

4. *Format*

a. PC–DOS or MS–DOS (or other IBM compatible formats, such as XENIX):

(i) Optical media, such as CD–ROM—best edition should adhere to prevailing NISO standards.

(ii) 5¼″ Diskette(s).

(iii) 3½″ Diskette(s).

b. Apple Macintosh:

(i) Optical media, such as CD–ROM—best edition should adhere to prevailing NISO standards.

(ii) 3½″ Diskette(s).

IX. Works Existing in More Than One Medium

Editions are listed below in descending order of preference.

A. Newspapers, dissertations and theses, newspaper-formatted serials:

1. Microform.

2. Printed matter.

B. All other materials:

1. Printed matter.

2. Microform.

3. Phonorecord.

[54 FR 42299, Oct. 16, 1989]

PART 203—FREEDOM OF INFORMATION ACT: POLICIES AND PROCEDURES

ORGANIZATION

Sec.
203.1 General.
203.2 Authority and functions.
203.3 Organization.

PROCEDURES

203.4 Methods of operation.

AVAILABILITY OF INFORMATION

203.5 Inspection and copying.

CHARGES FOR SEARCH FOR REPRODUCTION

203.6 Schedule of fees and methods of payment for services rendered.

AUTHORITY: 17 U.S.C. 702; and 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(1).

SOURCE: 43 FR 774, Jan. 4, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

ORGANIZATION

§ 203.1 General.

This information is furnished for the guidance of the public and in compliance with the requirements of section 552 of Title 5, United States Code, as amended.

§ 203.2 Authority and functions.

(a) The administration of the copyright law was entrusted to the Library of Congress by an act of Congress in 1870, and the Copyright Office has been a separate department of the Library since 1897. The statutory functions of the Copyright Office are contained in and carried out in accordance with the Copyright Act. Pub. L. 94–553 (90 Stat. 2541–2602), 17 U.S.C. 101–1101.

[43 FR 774, Jan. 4, 1978, as amended at 62 FR 35421, July 1, 1997]

§ 203.3 Organization.

(a) *In general.* The Office of the Register exercises overall direction of the work of the Copyright Office, including work in conjunction with copyright legislation and promulgation of copyright regulations. The Office of the Register of Copyrights includes the legal and administrative, and automation staff.

(b) The Associate Register of Copyright for Operations has oversight of the operating divisions of the Copyright Office. The operating divisions are:

(1) The Receiving and Processing Division, which receives incoming materials, dispatches outgoing materials and establishes control over fiscal accounts.

(2) The Examining Division, which examines all applications and material presented to the Copyright Office for registration of original and renewal copyright claims, and which determines whether the materials deposited constitute coyrightable subject matter and whether the other legal and formal requirements of title 17 have been met.

(3) The Cataloging Division, which prepares the bibliographic description of all copyrighted works registered in the Copyright Office, including the recording of legal facts of copyright pertaining to each work, in an on-line database in which copyright records can be searched; and which also examines and catalogs in an on-line database documents submitted for recordation.

(4) The Information and Reference Division, which provides a national copyright information service through the Public Information Office, educates the public on the copyright law, issues and distributes information materials, responds to reference requests regarding copyright matters, prepares search reports based upon copyright records, certifies copies of legal documents concerned with copyright, and maintains liaison with the United States Customs Service, the Department of the Treasury, and the United States Postal Service on certain matters. The Information and Reference Division also develops, services, stores, and preserves the official records and catalogs of the Copyright Office, including applications for registration, historical records, and materials deposited for copyright registration that are not selected by the Library of Congress for addition to its collections.

(5) The Licensing Division, which implements the sections of the Copyright Act dealing with secondary transmissions of radio and television programs, compulsory licenses for making and distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical, pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works in connection with noncommercial broadcasting. The Licensing Division is in charge of collecting the statutory royalties and distributing these royalties based on either a voluntary agreement among the interested parties or a determination of the Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels.

(c) The Copyright General Counsel is a principal legal officer of the Office. The General Counsel has overall supervisory responsibility for the legal staff and primary responsibility for providing liaison on legal matters between the Office and the Congress, the Department of Justice and other agencies of Government, the courts, the legal community, and a wide range of interests affected by the copyright law. The Copyright General Counsel has responsibility for overseeing all functions related to the administration of the compulsory licenses including oversight of

the Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels.

(d) The Associate Register of Copyrights for International Affairs and Policy is a principal legal adviser to the Register with primary responsibility for the international aspects of copyright protection, as well as legislative and policy matters.

(e) The Associate Register of Copyrights for National Programs is primarily responsible for initiating, planning, developing, and implementing projects and activities related to the Copyright Office electronic registration, recordations, and deposit system (CORDS).

(f) The Office has no field organization.

(g) The Office is located in The James Madison Memorial Building of the Library of Congress, 1st and Independence Avenue, SE., Washington, DC. 20559. The Public Information Office is located in room LM–401. Its hours are 8:30 a.m. to 5 p.m., Monday through Friday except legal holidays. The phone number of the Public Information Office is (202) 707–3000. Informational material regarding the copyright law, the registration process, fees, and related information about the Copyright Office and its functions may be obtained free of charge from the Public Information Office upon request.

(h) All Copyright Office forms may be obtained free of charge from the Public Information Office or by calling the Copyright Office Hotline anytime day or night at (202) 707–9100.

(i) Copyright Office records in machine-readable form cataloged from January 1, 1978, to the present including registration information and recorded documents are now available over Internet. Most Copyright Office circulars and all regulations and announcements are also available over Internet.

[60 FR 34168, June 30, 1995]

PROCEDURES

§ 203.4 Methods of operation.

(a) In accordance with section 552(a)(2) of the Freedom of Information Act, the Copyright Office makes available for public inspection and copying records of copyright registrations and of final refusals to register claims to copyright; statements of policy and interpretations which have been adopted but are not published in the FEDERAL REGISTER; and administrative staff manuals and instructions to the staff that affect a member of the public.

(b) The Copyright Office also maintains and makes available for public inspection and copying current indexes providing identifying information as to matters issued, adopted, or promulgated after July 4, 1967, that are within the scope of 5 U.S.C. 552(a)(2). The Copyright Office has determined that publication of these indexes is unnecessary and impractical. Copies of the indexes will be provided to any member of the public upon request at the cost of reproduction.

(c) The material and indexes referred to in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section are available for public inspection and copying at the Public Information Office of the Copyright Office, Room LM–401, The James Madison Memorial Building of the Library of Congress, 1st and Independence Avenue, SE., Washington, DC, between the hours of 8:30 a.m. and 5 p.m., Monday through Friday except legal holidays.

(d) The Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist is responsible for responding to all initial requests submitted under the Freedom of Information Act. Individuals desiring to obtain access to Copyright Office information under the Act should make a written request to that effect either by mail to the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist, Information and Publications Section, Information and Reference Division, Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20559, or in person between the hours of 8:30 a.m. and 5 p.m. on any working day except legal holidays at Room LM–401, The James Madison Memorial Building, 1st and Independence Avenue, SE., Washington, DC. If a request is made by mail, both the request and the envelope carrying it should be plainly marked Freedom of Information Act Request. Failure to so mark a mailed request may delay the Office response.

(e) Records must be reasonably described. A request reasonably describes

records if it enables the Office to identify the records requested by any process that is not unreasonably burdensome or disruptive of Office operations. The Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist will, upon request, aid members of the public to formulate their requests in such a manner as to enable the Office to respond effectively and reduce search costs for the requester.

(f) The Office will respond to all properly marked mailed requests and all personally delivered requests within 10 working days of receipt by the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist. The Office response will notify the requester whether or not the request will be granted. If the request is denied, the written notification will include the basis for the denial and also include the names of all individuals who participated in the determination and a description of procedures available to appeal the determination.

(g) In the event a request is denied and that denial is appealed, the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist will refer the appeal to the General Counsel. Appeals shall be set forth in writing and addressed to the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist at the address listed in paragraph (d) of this section. The appeal shall include a statement explaining the basis for the appeal. Determinations of appeals will be set forth in writing and signed by the General Counsel or his or her delegate within 20 working days. If, on appeal, the denial is in whole or in part upheld, the written determination will include the basis for the appeal denial and will also contain a notification of the provisions for judicial review and the names of the persons who participated in the determination.

(h) In unusual circumstances, the General Counsel may extend the time limits prescribed in paragraphs (f) and (g) of this section for not more than 10 working days. The extension period may be split between the initial request and the appeal but the total period of extension shall not exceed 10 working days. Extensions will be by written notice to the person making the request. The Copyright Office will advise the requester of the reasons for the extension and the date the determination is expected. As used in this paragraph ''unusual circumstances'' means:

(1) The need to search for and collect the requested records from establishments that are physically separate from the office processing the request;

(2) The need to search for, collect, and examine a voluminous amount of separate and distinct records which are demanded in a single request; or

(3) The need for consultation, which shall be conducted with all practical speed, with another agency having a substantial interest in the determination of the request or among two or more components of the Copyright Office which have a substantial subject matter interest therein.

[43 FR 774, Jan. 4, 1978, as amended at 47 FR 36820, Aug. 24, 1982]

AVAILABILITY OF INFORMATION

§203.5 Inspection and copying.

(a) When a request for information has been approved, the person making the request may make an appointment to inspect or copy the materials requested during regular business hours by writing or telephoning the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist at the address or telephone number listed in §203.4(d). Such material may be copied manually without charge, and reasonable facilities are available in the Public Information Office for that purpose. Also, copies of individual pages of such materials will be made available at the price per page specified in paragraphs (a) and (b) of §203.6.

CHARGES FOR SEARCH FOR REPRODUCTION

§203.6 Schedule of fees and methods of payment for services rendered.

(a) *General.* The fee schedule of this section does not apply with respect to the charging of fees for those records for which the Copyright Act of 1976, title 17 of the United States Code (Pub. L. 94–553) requires a fee to be charged. The fees required to be charged are contained in section 708 of title 17 U.S.C., or have been established by the Register of Copyrights or Library of Congress pursuant to the requirements of that section. If the Copyright Office

receives a request for copies or other services involving the public records or indexes of the Office or for copies of deposited articles for which a fee is required to be charged, the Office will notify the requester of t he procedure established to obtain the copies or services and the amount of the chargeable fees. Fees pursuant to title 5 U.S.C., section 552 for all other services not involving the public records of the Copyright Office will be assessed according to the schedule in paragraph (b) of this section. All fees so assessed shall be charged to the requester, except where the charge is limited under paragraph (c) of this section or where a waiver or reduction of fees is granted under paragraph (d) of this section. Requests by record subjects asking for copies of records about themseleves shall be processed under the Privacy Act fee schedule found in 37 CFR 204.6.

(b) *FOIA requests.* In responding to requests under this part the following fees shall be assessed, unless a waiver or reduction in fees has been granted pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section:

(1) For copies of certificates of copyright registration, $8.

(2) For copies of all other Copyright Office records not otherwise provided for in this section a minimum fee of $7 for up to 15 pages and $.45 per page over 15.

(3) For each hour or fraction of an hour spent in searching for a requested record, $20, except that no search fee shall be assessed with respect to requests by educational institutions, non-commercial scientific institutions, and representatives of the news media. Search fees shall be assessed with respect to all other requests, subject to the limitations of paragraph (c) of this section. Fees may be assessed for time spent searching even if the search fails to locate any responsive records or where the records located are subsequently determined to be entirely exempt from disclosure.

(4) For the issuance of any certification, $20 for each hour or fraction of an hour consumed in respect thereto.

(5) Other costs incurred by the Copyright Office in fulfilling a request will be chargeable at the actual cost of the Office.

(6) For computer searches of records, which may be undertaken through the use of existing programing, the actual direct costs of conducting the search including the cost of operating a central processing unit for that portion of operating time that is directly attributable to searching for records responsive to a request, as well as the direct costs of operator/programmer salary apportionable to search (at no more than $10.00 per hour or fraction thereof so spent).

(7) No review fees will be charged for time spent in resolving legal or policy issues affecting access to Office records. No charge will be made for the time involved in examining records to determine whether some or all such records may be withheld.

(c) *Fee limitations.* The following limitations on fees shall apply:

(1) Except for requesters seeking records for commercial use the following will be provided without charge—

(i) The first 100 pages of duplication (or its cost equivalent), and

(ii) The first two hours of search (or its cost equivalent).

(2) No fees will be charged for ordinary packaging and mailing costs.

(d) *Waiver or reduction of fees.* (1) Records responsive to a request under 5 U.S.C. 552 shall be furnished without charge or at a charge reduced below that established under paragraph (b) of this section where the Office determines, based upon information provided by a requester in support of a fee waiver request or otherwise made known to the Office, that disclosure of the requested information is in the public interest because it is likely to contribute significantly to public understanding of the operations or activities of the government and is not primarily in the commercial interest of the requester. Requests for a waiver or reduction of fees shall be considered on a case-by-case basis.

(2) In order to determine whether the first fee waiver requirement is met—i.e., that disclosure of the requested information is in the public interest because it is likely to contribute significantly to public understanding of the operations or activities of the government—the Office shall consider the following four factors in sequence:

(i) The subject of the request: Whether the subject of the requested records concerns ''the operations or activities of the government.''

(ii) The informative value of the information to be disclosed: Whether the disclosure is ''likely to contribute'' to an understanding of government operations or activities.

(iii) The contribution to an understanding of the subject by the public likely to result from disclosures: Whether disclosure of the requested information will contribute to ''public understanding.''

(iv) The significance of the contribution to public understanding: Whether the disclosure is likely to contribute ''significantly'' to public understanding of government operations or activities.

(3) In order to determine whether the second fee waiver requirement is met—i.e., that disclosure of the requested information is not primarily in the commercial interest of the requester—the Office shall consider the following two factors in sequence:

(i) The existence and magnitude of a commercial interest: Whether the requester has a commercial interest that would be furthered by the requested disclosure.

(ii) The primary interest in disclosure: Whether the magnitude of the identified commercial interest of the requester is sufficiently large, in comparison with the public interest in disclosure, that disclosure is ''primarily in the commercial interest of the requester.''

(4) Where only a portion of the requested records satisfies both of the requirements for a waiver or reduction of fees under this paragraph, a waiver or reduction shall be granted only as to that portion.

(e) *Notice of anticipated fees in excess of $25.00.* Where the Office determines or estimates that the fees to be assessed under this section may amoun t to more than $25.00, the Office shall notify the requester as soon as praticable of the actual or estimated amount of the fees, unless the requester has indicated in advance his willingness to pay fees as high as those anticipated. (If only a portion of the fee can be estimated readily, the Office shall advise the requester that the estimated fee may be only a portion of the total fee.) In cases where a requester has been notified that actual or estimated fees may amount to more than $25.00, the requests will be deemed not to have been received until the requester has agreed to pay the anticipated total fee. A notice to a requester pursuant to this paragraph shall offer him the opportunity to confer with Copyright Office personnel in order to reformulate his request to meet his needs at a lower cost.

(f) *Aggregation of requests.* Where the Office reasonably believes that a requester or a group of requesters acting in concert is attempting to divide a request into a series of requests for the purpose of evading the assessment of fees, the Office may aggregate any such requests and charge accordingly.

(g) *Advance payments.* (1) Where the Office estimates that a total fee to be assessed under this section is likely to exceed $250.00, it may require the requester to make an advance payment of an amount up to the entire estimated fee before beginning to process the request, except where it receives a satisfactory assurance of full payment from a requester with a history of prompt payment.

(2) Where a requester has previously failed to pay a records access fee within 30 days of the date of billing, the Office may require the requester to pay the full amount owed, plus any applicable interest (as provided for in paragraph (h) of this section), and to make an advance payment of the full amount of any estimated fee before the Office begins to process a new request or continues to process a pending request from that requester.

(3) For requests other than those described in paragraphs (g)(1) and (g)(2) of this section, the Office shall not require the requester to make an advance payment, i.e., a payment made before work is commenced or continued on a request. Payment owed for work already completed is not an advance payment.

(h) *Charging interest.* The Office may assess interest charges on an unpaid bill starting on the 31st day following the day on which the bill was sent to the requester. Once a fee payment has

been received by a component of the Office, even if not processed, the accrual of interest shall be stayed. Interest charges shall be assessed at the rate prescribed in section 3717 of Title 31 U.S.C. and shall accrue from the date of billing.

[53 FR 8456, Mar. 15, 1988, as amended at 56 FR 59885, Nov. 26, 1991]

PART 204—PRIVACY ACT: POLICIES AND PROCEDURES

Sec.

204.1 Purposes and scope.
204.2 Definitions.
204.3 General policy.
204.4 Procedure for notification of the existence of records pertaining to individuals.
204.5 Procedures for requesting access to records.
204.6 Fees.
204.7 Request for correction or amendment of records.
204.8 Appeal of refusal to correct or amend an individual's record.
204.9 Judicial review.

AUTHORITY: 17 U.S.C. 702; and 5 U.S.C. 552(a).

SOURCE: 43 FR 776, Jan. 4, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

§ 204.1 Purposes and scope.

The purposes of these regulations are:

(a) The establishment of procedures by which an individual can determine if the Copyright Office maintains a system of records in which there is a record pertaining to the individual; and

(b) The establishment of procedures by which an individual may gain access to a record or information maintained on that individual and have such record or information disclosed for the purpose of review, copying, correction, or amendment.

§ 204.2 Definitions.

For purposes of this part:

(a) The term *individual* means a citizen of the United States or an alien lawfully admitted for permanent residence;

(b) The term *maintain* includes maintain, collect, use, or disseminate;

(c) The term *record* means any item, collection, or grouping of information about an individual that is maintained by an agency, including, but not limited to, his education, financial transactions, medical history, and criminal or employment history, and that contains his or her name, or the identifying number, symbol, or other identifying particular assigned to the individual, such as a finger or voice print or a photograph;

(d) The term *system of records* means a group of any records under the control of any agency from which information is retrieved by the name of the individual; and

(e) The term *routine use* means, with respect to the disclosure of a record, the use of such record for a purpose which is compatible with the purpose for which it was collected.

§ 204.3 General policy.

The Copyright Office serves primarily as an office of public record. Section 705 of title 17, United States Code, requires the Copyright Office to open for public inspection all records of copyright deposits, registrations, recordations, and other actions taken under title 17. Therefore, a routine use of all Copyright Office systems of records created under section 705 of title 17 is disclosure to the public. All Copyright Office systems of records created under section 705 of title 17 are also available for public copying as required by section 706(a), with the exception of copyright deposits, whose reproduction is governed by section 706(b) and the regulations issued under that section. In addition to the records mandated by section 705 of title 17, the Copyright Office maintains other systems of records which are necessary for the Office effectively to carry out its mission. These systems of records are routinely consulted and otherwise used by Copyright Office employees in the performance of their duties. The Copyright Office will not sell, rent, or otherwise make publicly available any mailing list prepared by the Office.

[47 FR 36821, Aug. 24, 1982]

§ 204.4 Procedure for notification of the existence of records pertaining to individuals.

(a) The Copyright Office will publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER, upon the establishment or revision of the system

of records, notices of all Copyright Office systems of records subject to the Privacy Act, as provided by 5 U.S.C., section 552a(e)(4). Individuals desiring to know if a Copyright Office system of records contains a record pertaining to them should submit a written request to that effect either by mail to the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist, Information Section, Information and Reference Division, Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20559, or in person between the hours of 9 a.m. and 4 p.m. on any working day except legal holidays at room LM–401, The James Madison Memorial Building, 1st and Independence Avenue, S.E., Washington, DC.

(b) The written request should identify clearly the system of records which is the subject of inquiry, by reference, whenever possible, to the system number and title as given in the notices of systems of records in the FEDERAL REGISTER. Both the written request and the envelope carrying it should be plainly marked ''Privacy Act Request.'' Failure to so mark the request may delay the Office response.

(c) The Office will acknowledge all properly marked requests within ten working days of receipt and will notify the requester within 30 working days of receipt of the existence or non-existence of records pertaining to the requester.

(d) Since all Copyright Office Records created under section 705 of title 17 are open to public inspection, no identity verification is necessary for individuals who wish to know whether a system of records created under section 705 pertains to them.

[43 FR 776, Jan. 4, 1978, as amended at 47 FR 36821, Aug. 24, 1982; 50 FR 697, Aug. 14, 1985; 60 FR 34169, June 30, 1995]

§204.5 Procedures for requesting access to records.

(a) Individuals desiring to obtain access to Copyright Office information pertaining to them in a system of records other than those created under section 705 of title 17 should make a written request, signed by themselves or their duly authorized agent, to that effect either by mail to the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist, Information Section, Information and Reference Division, Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20559, or in person between the hours of 8:30 a.m. and 5 p.m. on any working day except legal holidays at room LM–401, The James Madison Memorial Building, 1st and Independence Avenue, S.E., Washington, DC.

(b) The written request should identify clearly the system of records which is the subject of inquiry, by reference, whenever possible, to the system number and title as given in the notices of systems of records in the FEDERAL REGISTER. Both the written request and the envelope carrying it should be plainly marked ''Privacy Act Request.'' Failure to so mark the request may delay the Office response.

(c) The Office will acknowledge all properly marked requests within ten working days of receipt; and will notify the requester within 30 working days of receipt when and where access to the record will be granted. If the individual requested a copy of the record, the copy will accompany such notification.

[43 FR 776, Jan. 4, 1978, as amended at 47 FR 36821, Aug. 24, 1982; 60 FR 34169, June 30, 1995]

§204.6 Fees.

(a) The Copyright Office will provide, free of charge, one copy to an individual of any record pertaining to that individual contained in a Copyright Office system of records, except where the request is for a copy of a record for which a specific fee is required under section 708 of title 17 of the United States Code, in which case that fee shall be charged. For additional copies of records not covered by section 708 the fee will be a minimum of $7 for up to 15 pages and $.45 per page over 15. The Office will require prepayment of fees estimated to exceed $25.00 and will remit any excess paid or bill an additional amount according to the differences between the final fee charged and the amount prepaid. When prepayment is required, a request is not deemed ''received'' until prepayment has been made.

(b) The Copyright Office may waive the fee requirement whenever it determines that such waiver would be in the public interest.

[43 FR 776, Jan. 4, 1978, as amended at 47 FR 36821, Aug. 24, 1982; 56 FR 59886, Nov. 26, 1991]

§ 204.7 Request for correction or amendment of records.

(a) Any individual may request the correction or amendment of a record pertaining to her or him. With respect to an error in a copyright registration, the procedure for correction and fee chargeable is governed by section 408(d) of title 17 of the United States Code, and the regulations issued as authorized by that section. With respect to an error in any other record, the request shall be in writing and delivered either by mail addressed to the Supervisory Copyright Information Specialist, Information Section, Information and Reference Division, Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. 20559, or in person between the hours of 8:30 a.m. and 5 p.m. on any working day except legal holidays, at room LM–401, The James Madison Memorial Building, 1st and Independence Avenue, S.E., Washington, D.C. The request shall explain why the individual believes the record to be incomplete, inaccurate, irrelevant, or untimely.

(b) With respect to an error in a copyright registration, the time limit for Office response to requests for correction is governed by section 408(d) of Pub. L. 94–553, and the regulations issued as authorized by that section. With respect to other requests for correction or amendment of records, the Office will respond within 10 working days indicating to the requester that the requested correction or amendment has been made or that it has been refused. If the requested correction or amendment is refused, the Office response will indicate the reason for the refusal and the procedure available to the individual to appeal the refusal.

[43 FR 776, Jan. 4, 1978, as amended at 47 FR 36821, Aug. 24, 1982; 60 FR 34169, June 30, 1995]

§ 204.8 Appeal of refusal to correct or amend an individual's record.

(a) An individual has 90 calendar days from receipt of the Copyright Office's response to appeal the refusal to correct or amend a record pertaining to the individual. The individual should submit a written appeal to the Register of Copyright, Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. 20559 for the final administrative determination. Appeals, and the envelopes carrying them, should be plainly marked ''Privacy Act Appeal''. Failure to so mark the appeal may delay the Register's response. An appeal should contain a copy of the request for amendment or correction and a copy of the record alleged to be untimely, inaccurate, incomplete or irrelevant.

(b) The Register will issue a written decision granting or denying the appeal within 30 working days after receipt of the appeal unless, after showing good cause, the Register extends the 30 day period. If the appeal is granted, the requested amendment or correction will be made promptly. If the appeal is denied, in whole or part, the Register's decision will set forth reasons for the denial. Additionally, the decision will advise the requester that he or she has the right to file with the Copyright Office a concise statement of his or her reasons for disagreeing with the refusal to amend the record and that such statement will be attached to the requester's record and included in any future disclosure of such record.

§ 204.9 Judicial review.

Within two years of the receipt of a final adverse administrative determination, an individual may seek judicial review of that determination as provided in 5 U.S.C. 552a(g)(1).

PART 211—MASK WORK PROTECTION

Sec.

211.1 General provisions.
211.2 Recordation of documents pertaining to mask works.
211.3 Mask work fees.
211.4 Registration of claims of protection in mask works.
211.5 Deposit of identifying material.
211.6 Methods of affixation and placement of mask work notice.

AUTHORITY: 17 U.S.C. 702 and 908.

SOURCE: 50 FR 26719, June 28, 1985, unless otherwise noted.

§211.1 General provisions.

(a) Mail and other communications with the Copyright Office concerning the Semiconductor Chip Protection Act of 1984, Pub. L. 98–620, chapter 9 of title 17 U.S.C., shall be addressed to: Library of Congress, Department MW, Washington, DC 20540.

(b) Section 201.2 of this chapter relating to the information given by the Copyright Office, and parts 203 and 204 of this chapter pertaining to the Freedom of Information Act and Privacy Act, shall apply, where appropriate, to the administration by the Copyright Office of the Semiconductor Chip Protection Act of 1984, Pub. L. 98–620.

(c) For purposes of this part, the terms *semiconductor chip product, mask work, fixed, commercially exploited,* and *owner,* shall have the meanings set forth in section 901 of title 17 U.S.C.

§211.2 Recordation of documents pertaining to mask works.

The conditions prescribed in §201.4 of this chapter for recordation of transfers of copyright ownership and other documents pertaining to copyright are applicable to the recordation of documents pertaining to mask works under section 903 of Title 17 U.S.C.

§211.3 Mask work fees.

(a) The following fees or charges are established by the Register of Copyrights for services relating to mask works:

(1) For filing an application for registration of a mask work claim, $20.00;

(2) For the recordation of a document covering not more than one title, the basic recordation fee is $20. For additional titles over one, a charge of $10 is added for each group of not more than 10 titles;

(3) For a certified copy of a certificate of registration, $8;

(4) For certifications of photocopies of other Copyright Office records, $20 for each hour or fraction of an hour consumed with respect thereto;

(5) For issuance of a receipt of deposit, $4;

(6) For each hour or fraction of an hour consumed in making and reporting a routine search, or for any related services, $20;

(7) For special handling of an application for registration of a claim, $330;

(8) For any special services not listed above requiring a substantial amount of time or expense, the fees will be fixed on the basis of the cost of providing the service.

(b) Section 201.6 of this chapter on the payment and refund of Copyright Office fees shall apply to mask work fees.

[50 FR 26719, June 28, 1985, as amended at 56 FR 59886, Nov. 26, 1991; 59 FR 38372, July 28, 1994]

§211.4 Registration of claims of protection in mask works.

(a) *General.* This section prescribes conditions for the registration of claims of protection in mask works pursuant to section 908 of Title 17 U.S.C.

(b) *Application for registration.* (1) For purposes of registration of mask work claims, the Register of Copyrights has designated ''Form MW'' to be used for all applications submitted on and after January 7, 1985. Copies of the form are available free upon request to the Public Information Office, U.S. Copyright Office, Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. 20559. Applications submitted before January 7, 1985 will be dated January 7, 1985.

(2) An application for registration of a mask work claim may be submitted by the owner of the mask work, or the duly authorized agent of any such owner.

(i) The owner of a mask work includes a party that has obtained the transfer of all of the exclusive rights in the work, but does not include the transferee of less than all of the exclusive rights, or the licensee of all or less than all of these rights.

(ii) For purposes of eligibility to claim mask work protection pursuant to section 902(a)(1)(A) of 17 U.S.C., the owner of the mask work must be either the initial owner or a person who has obtained by transfer the totality of rights in the mask work under the Act.

(3) An application for registration shall be submitted on Form MW prescribed by the Register under paragraph (b)(1) of this section, and shall be accompanied by the registration fee and deposit required under 17 U.S.C. 908

and §§ 211.3 and 211.5 of these regulations. The application shall contain the information required by the form and its accompanying instructions, and shall include a certification. The certification shall consist of:

(i) A declaration that the applicant is authorized to submit the application and that the statements made are correct to the best of that person's knowledge; and

(ii) The handwritten signature of the applicant, accompanied by the typed or printed name of that person.

(c) *One registration per mask work.* (1) Subject to the exception specified in paragraph (c)(2) of this section, only one registration can generally be made for the same version of a mask work fixed in an intermediate or final form of any semiconductor chip product. However, where an applicant for registration alleges that an earlier registration for the same version of the work is unauthorized and legally invalid and submits for recordation a signed affidavit, a registration may be made in the applicant's name.

(2) Notwithstanding the general rule permitting only one registration per work, owners of mask works in final forms of semiconductor chip products that are produced by adding metal-connection layers to unpersonalized gate arrays may separately register the entire unpersonalized gate array and the custom metallization layers. Applicants seeking to register separately entire unpersonalized gate arrays or custom metallization layers should make the nature of their claim clear at Space 8 of application Form MW. For these purposes, an ''unpersonalized gate array'' is an intermediate form chip product that includes a plurality of circuit elements that are adaptable to be personalized into a plurality of different final form chip products, in which some of the circuit elements are, or will be, connected as gates.

(d) *Registration as a single work.* Subject to the exception specified in paragraph (c)(2) of this section, for purposes of registration on a single application and upon payment of a single fee, the following shall be considered a single work.

(1) In the case of a mask work that has not been commercially exploited: All original mask work elements fixed in a particular form of a semiconductor chip product at the time an application for registration is filed and in which the owner or owners of the mask work is or are the same; and

(2) In the case of a mask work that has been commercially exploited. All original mask work elements fixed in a semiconductor chip product at the time that product was first commercially exploited and in which the owner or owners of the mask is or are the same.

(e) *Registration in most complete form.* Owners seeking registration of a mask work contribution must submit the entire original mask work contribution in its most complete form as fixed in a semiconductor chip product. The most complete form means the stage of the manufacturing process which is closest to completion. In cases where the owner is unable to register on the basis of the most complete form because he or she lacks control over the most complete form, an averment of this fact must be made at Space 2 of Form MW. Where such an averment is made, the owner may register on the basis of the most complete form in his or her possession. For applicants seeking to register an unpersonalized gate array or custom metallization layers under paragraph (c)(2), the most complete form is the entire chip on which the unpersonalized gate array or custom metallization layers reside(s), and registration covers those elements of the chip in which work protection is asserted.

(f) *Section 914 Orders.* (1) For purposes of this section, the terms *Commissioner* and *Order* shall have the meaning given them in the *Guidelines for the Submission of Applications for Interim Protection of Mask Works Under 17 U.S.C. 914* (49 FR 44517; Nov. 7, 1984) as follows:

(i) *Commissioner* means the Assistant Secretary of Commerce and Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks.

(ii) *Order* means an action by the Commissioner issuing or terminating an Order extending to foreign nationals, domiciliaries and sovereign authorities the privilege of making interim registrations for mask works pursuant to Chapter 9 of title 17, U.S.C.

(2) In the case of a mask work which is eligible for registration only after issuance of an Order of the Commissioner pursuant to section 914, 17 U.S.C., applications for registration under section 908 may be submitted, along with the proper identifying material and fee, if a request for issuance of an Order has been made in accordance with the *Guidelines*. The Copyright Office will process and examine the claims, but will not issue a certificate of registration unless and until an Order is issued pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 914.

(3) The effective date of any registration premised on a section 914, 17 U.S.C. Order shall not be earlier than the effective date of the Order.

(4) Registration premised on a section 914, 17 U.S.C. Order will be refused unless the Order is given an effective date before, and the proper application, deposit of identifying material, and fee are received in the Copyright Office before:

(i) July 1, 1985, in the case of mask works first commercially exploited between July 1, 1983, and November 8, 1984; or

(ii) The expiration of two years following first commercial exploitation, in the case of a mask work commercially exploited on or after November 8, 1984.

(5) Subject to paragraph (e)(4) of this section, registration of a claim premised on a section 914, 17 U.S.C. Order will be made even after the termination or expiration of an Order, provided that a proper application, deposit of identifying material, and fee are received in the Copyright Office while the Order is in effect, and the claim is otherwise entitled to registration under chapter 9 of title 17 U.S.C.

(g) *Corrections and amplifications of prior registration*. Except for errors or omissions made by the Copyright Office, no corrections or amplifications can be made to the information contained in the record of a completed registration after the effective date of the registration. A document purporting to correct or amplify the information in a completed registration may be recorded in the Copyright Office for whatever effect a court of competent jurisdiction may later give to it, if the document is signed by the owner of the mask work, as identified in the registration record, or by a duly authorized agent of the owner.

[50 FR 26719, June 28, 1985, as amended at 56 FR 7818, Feb. 26, 1991]

§211.5 Deposit of identifying material.

(a) *General*. This section prescribes rules pertaining to the deposit of identifying material for registration of a claim of protection in a mask work under section 908 of title 17 U.S.C.

(b) *Nature of required deposit*. Subject to the provisions of paragraph (c) of this section, the deposit of identifying material to accompany an application for registration of a mask work claim under §211.4 of these regulations shall consist of:

(1) In the case of a commercially exploited mask work, four reproductions of the mask work fixed in the form of the semiconductor chip product in which it was first commercially exploited. Defective chips may be deposited under this section provided that the mask work contribution would be revealed in reverse dissection of the chips. The four reproductions shall be accompanied by a visually perceptible representation of each layer of the mask work consisting of:

(i) Sets of plastic color overlay sheets;

(ii) Drawings or plots in composite form on a single sheet or on separate sheets; or

(iii) A photograph of each layer of the work fixed in a semiconductor chip product.

The visually perceptible representation of a mask work deposited under this section shall be reproduced on material which can be readily stored in an 8½ x 11 inch format, and shall be reproduced at a magnification sufficient to reveal the basic circuitry design of the mask work and which shall in all cases be at least 20 times magnification.

(2) In the case of a mask work that has not been commercially exploited, one of the following:

(i) Where the mask work contribution in which registration is sought represents twenty percent or more of the area of the intended final form, a visually perceptible representation of the work in accordance with paragraph

(b)(1) (i) or (ii) of this section. In addition to the deposit of visually perceptible representations of the work, an applicant may, at his or her option, deposit four reproductions in the most complete form of the mask work as fixed in a semiconductor product.

(ii) Where the mask work contribution in which registration is sought represents less than twenty percent of the area of the intended final form, a visually perceptible representation of the work which reveals the totality of the mask work contribution to a person trained in the state of the art. The visually perceptible representations may consist of any combination of plastic color overlay sheets, drawing or plots in composite form, or a photograph or photographs of the entire mask set. If the visually perceptible representation fails to identify all of the elements of the mask work contribution, they may be accompanied by additional explanatory material. The visually perceptible representation of a mask work deposited under this section shall be reproduced on material which can be readily stored in an 8½ x 11 inch format and shall be of sufficient magnification and completeness to reveal all elements of the mask work contribution. In addition to the deposit of visually perceptible representations of the work, an applicant may, at his or her option, deposit four reproductions in the most complete form of the mask work as fixed in a semiconductor chip product.

(c) *Trade secret protection*. Where specific layers of a mask work fixed in a semiconductor chip product contain information in which trade secret protection is asserted, certain material may be withheld as follows:

(1) *Mask works commercially exploited*. For commercially exploited mask works no more than two layers of each five or more layers in the work. In lieu of the visually perceptible representations required under paragraph (b)(1) of this section, identifying portions of the withheld material must be submitted. For these purposes, *identifying portions* shall mean (i) a printout of the mask work design data pertaining to each withheld layer, reproduced in microform, or (ii) visually perceptible representations in accordance with paragraph (b)(1) (i), (ii), or (iii) of this section with those portions containing sensitive information maintained under a claim of trade secrecy blocked out, provided that the portions remaining are greater than those which are blocked out.

(2) *Mask work not commercially exploited*. For mask works not commercially exploited falling under paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section, any layer may be withheld. In lieu of the visually perceptible representations required under paragraph (b)(2) of this section, ''identifying portions'' shall mean (i) a printout of the mask work design data pertaining to each withheld layer, reproduced in microform, in which sensitive information maintained under a claim of trade secrecy has been blocked out or stripped, or (ii) visually perceptible representations in accordance with paragraph (b)(2)(i) with those portions containing sensitive information maintained under a claim of trade secrecy blocked out, provided that the portions remaining are greater than those which are blocked out. The identifying portions shall be accompanied by a single photograph of the top or other visible layers of the mask work fixed in a semiconductor chip product in which the sensitive information maintained under a claim of trade secrecy has been blocked out, provided that the blocked out portions do not exceed the remaining portions.

(d) *Special relief*. The Register of Copyrights may decide to grant special relief from the deposit requirements of this section, and shall determine the conditions under which special relief is to be granted., Requests for special relief under this paragraph shall be made in writing to the Chief, Examining Division of the Copyright Office, Washington, D.C. 20559, shall be signed by the person signing the application for registration, shall set forth specific reasons why the request should be granted and shall propose an alternative form of deposit.

(e) *Retention and disposition of deposits*. (1) Any identifying material deposited under this section, including material deposited in connection with claims that have been refused registration, are the property of the United States Government.

(2) Where a claim of protection in a mask work is registered in the Copyright Office, the identifying material deposited in connection with the claim shall be retained under the control of the Copyright Office, including retention in Government storage facilities, during the period of protection. After that period, it is within the joint discretion of the Register of Copyrights and the Librarian of Congress to order its destruction or other disposition.

[50 FR 26719, June 28, 1985, as amended at 60 FR 34169, June 30, 1995]

§ 211.6 Methods of affixation and placement of mask work notice.

(a) *General.* (1) This section specifies methods of affixation and placement of the mask work notice that will satisfy the notice requirement in section 909 of title 17 U.S.C. A notice deemed ''acceptable'' under this regulation shall be considered to satisfy the requirement of that section that it be affixed ''in such manner and location as to give reasonable notice'' of protection. As provided in that section, the examples specified in this regulation shall not be considered exhaustive of the methods of affixation and positions giving reasonable notice of the claim of protection in a mask work.

(2) The acceptability of a mask work notice under these regulations shall depend upon its being legible under normal conditions of use, and affixed in such manner and position that, when affixed, it may be viewed upon reasonable examination.

(b) *Elements of mask work notice.* The elements of a mask work notice shall consist of:

(1) The words *mask work*, the symbol ''M'' or the symbol ''Ⓜ'' (the letter M in a circle); and

(2) The name of the owner or owners of the mask work or an abbreviation by which the name is recognized or is generally known.

(c) *Methods of affixation and placement of the notice.* In the case of a mask work fixed in a semiconductor chip product, the following locations are acceptable:

(1) A gummed or other label securely affixed or imprinted upon the package or other container used as a permanent receptacle for the product; or

(2) A notice imprinted or otherwise affixed in or on the top or other visible layer of the product.

[50 FR 26719, June 28, 1985, as amended at 60 FR 34169, June 30, 1995]

SUBCHAPTER B—COPYRIGHT ARBITRATION ROYALTY PANEL RULES AND PROCEDURES

EDITORIAL NOTE: For nomenclature changes to subchapter B, see 58 FR 67691, Dec. 22, 1993, 59 FR 23993, 23994, and 23995, May 9, 1994, as corrected at 59 FR 33201 and 33202, June 28, 1994.

PART 251—COPYRIGHT ARBITRATION ROYALTY PANEL RULES OF PROCEDURE

Subpart A—Organization

Sec.
251.1 Official addresses.
251.2 Purpose of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels.
251.3 Arbitrator lists.
251.4 Arbitrator lists: Objections.
251.5 Qualifications of the arbitrators.
251.6 Composition and selection of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels.
251.7 Actions of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels.
251.8 Suspension of proceedings.

Subpart B—Public Access to Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel Meetings

251.11 Open meetings.
251.12 Conduct of open meetings.
251.13 Closed meetings.
251.14 Procedure for closed meetings.
251.15 Transcripts of closed meetings.
251.16 Requests to open or close meetings.

Subpart C—Public Access to and Inspection of Records

251.21 Public records.
251.22 Public access.
251.23 FOIA and Privacy Act.

Subpart D—Standards of Conduct

251.30 Basic obligations of arbitrators.
251.31 Financial interests.
251.32 Financial disclosure statement.
251.33 Ex parte communications.
251.34 Gifts and other things of monetary value.
251.35 Outside employment and other activities.
251.36 Pre-arbitration and post-arbitration employment restrictions.
251.37 Use of nonpublic information.
251.38 Billing and commitment to standards.
251.39 Remedies.

Subpart E—Procedures of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels

251.40 Scope.
251.41 Formal hearings.
251.42 Suspension or waiver of rules.
251.43 Written cases.
251.44 Filing and service of written cases and pleadings.
251.45 Discovery and prehearing motions.
251.46 Conduct of hearings: Role of arbitrators.
251.47 Conduct of hearings: Witnesses and counsel.
251.48 Rules of evidence.
251.49 Transcript and record.
251.50 Rulings and orders.
251.51 Closing the record.
251.52 Proposed findings and conclusions.
251.53 Report to the Librarian of Congress.
251.54 Assessment of costs of arbitration panels.
251.55 Post-panel motions.
251.56 Order of the Librarian of Congress.
251.57 Effective date of order.
251.58 Judicial review.

Subpart F—Rate Adjustment Proceedings

251.60 Scope.
251.61 Commencement of adjustment proceedings.
251.62 Content of petition.
251.63 Consideration of petition; settlements.
251.64 Disposition of petition; initiation of arbitration proceeding.
251.65 Deduction of costs of rate adjustment proceedings.

Subpart G—Royalty Fee Distribution Proceedings

251.70 Scope.
251.71 Commencement of proceedings.
251.72 Declaration of controversy: Initiation of arbitration proceeding.
251.73 Deduction of costs of distribution proceedings.

AUTHORITY: 17 U.S.C. 801–803.

SOURCE: 59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—Organization

§ 251.1 Official addresses.

Claims, pleadings, and general correspondence should be addressed to:

Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel (CARP), P.O. Box 70977, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024

or, hand-delivered to:

Office of the Copyright General Counsel, Room 403, James Madison Building, 101 Independence Avenue, S.E., Washington, DC 20540

[61 FR 63717, Dec. 2, 1996]

§251.2 Purpose of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels.

The Librarian of Congress, upon the recommendation of the Register of Copyrights, may appoint and convene a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel (CARP) for the following purposes:

(a) To make determinations concerning royalty rates for the cable compulsory license, 17 U.S.C. 111;

(b) To make determinations concerning royalty rates and terms for the subscription digital audio transmissions compulsory license, 17 U.S.C. 114;

(c) To make determinations concerning royalty rates for making and distributing phonorecords, and royalty rates and terms for digital transmissions that constitute digital phonorecord deliveries, 17 U.S.C. 115;

(d) To make determinations concerning royalty rates for coin-operated phonorecord players (jukeboxes) whenever a negotiated license expires or is terminated and is not replaced by another such license agreement, 17 U.S.C. 116;

(e) To make determinations concerning royalty rates and terms for the use by noncommercial educational broadcast stations for certain copyrighted works, 17 U.S.C. 118;

(f) To make determinations concerning royalty rates for the satellite carrier compulsory license, 17 U.S.C. 119; and

(g) To make determinations concerning the distribution of cable and satellite carrier royalty fees and digital audio recording devices and media payments deposited with the Register of Copyrights, 17 U.S.C. 111, 119, and chapter 10, respectively.

[61 FR 37215, July 17, 1996]

§251.3 Arbitrator lists.

(a) Any professional arbitration association or organization may submit before January 1, 1988, and every two years thereafter, a list of persons qualified to serve as arbitrators on a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel. The list shall contain the following for each person:

(1) The full name, address, and telephone number of the person.

(2) The current position and name of the person's employer, if any, along with a brief summary of the person's employment history, including areas of expertise, and, if available, a description of the general nature of clients represented and the types of proceedings in which the person represented clients.

(3) A brief description of the educational background of the person, including teaching positions and membership in professional associations, if any.

(4) A statement of the facts and information which qualify the person to serve as an arbitrator under §251.5.

(5) A description or schedule detailing fees proposed to be charged by the person for service on a CARP.

(6) Any other information which the professional arbitration association or organization may consider relevant.

(b) After January 1, 1988, and every two years thereafter, the Librarian of Congress shall publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a list of at least 30, but not more than 75 persons, submitted to the Librarian from at least three professional arbitration associations or organizations. The persons so listed must satisfy the qualifications and requirements of this subchapter and can reasonably be expected to be available to serve as arbitrators on a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel during that calendar year. This list will constitute the ''arbitrator list'' referred to in this subchapter. With respect to persons on the arbitrator list, the Librarian will make available for copying and inspection the information provided under paragraph (a) of this section.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 63040, Dec. 7, 1994; 61 FR 63717, Dec. 2, 1996]

§251.4 Arbitrator lists: Objections.

(a) In the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, any party to a proceeding may, during the 45-day period specified in §251.45(b)(2)(i), file an objection with

the Librarian of Congress to one or more of the persons contained on the arbitrator list for that proceeding. Such objection shall plainly state the grounds and reasons for each person claimed to be objectionable.

(b) In the case of a royalty distribution proceeding, any party to the proceeding may, during the 45-day period specified in § 251.45(b)(1)(i), file an objection with the Librarian of Congress to one or more of the persons contained on the arbitrator list for the proceeding. Such objection shall plainly state the grounds and reasons for each person claimed to be objectionable.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 63040, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 251.5 Qualifications of the arbitrators.

In order to serve as an arbitrator to a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, a person must, at a minimum, have the following qualifications:

(a) Admitted to the practice of law in any state, territory, trust territory, or possession of the United States.

(b) Ten or more years of legal practice.

(c) Experience in conducting arbitration proceedings and facilitating the resolution and settlement of disputes.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 61 FR 63717, Dec. 2, 1996]

§ 251.6 Composition and selection of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels.

(a) Within ten days after publication of a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER initiating arbitration proceedings under this subchapter, the Librarian of Congress will, upon recommendation of the Register of Copyrights, select two arbitrators from the arbitrator list for that calendar year.

(b) The two arbitrators so selected shall, within 10 days of their selection, choose a third arbitrator from the same arbitrator list. The third arbitrator shall serve as the chairperson of the panel during the course of the proceedings.

(c) If the two arbitrators fail to agree upon the selection of the third, the Librarian will promptly select the third arbitrator from the same arbitrator list.

(d) The third arbitrator so chosen shall serve as the chairperson of the panel during the course of the proceeding. In all matters, procedural or substantive, the chairperson shall act according to the majority wishes of the panel.

(e) Two arbitrators shall constitute a quorum necessary to the determination of any proceeding.

(f) If, before the commencement of hearings in a proceeding, one or more of the arbitrators is unable to continue service on the CARP, the Librarian will suspend the proceeding as provided by § 251.8, and will inaugurate a procedure to bring the CARP up to the full complement of three arbitrators. Where one or two vacancies exist, and either or both of the vacant seats were previously occupied by arbitrators selected by the Librarian, the Librarian will select the necessary replacements from the current arbitrator list. If there is one vacancy, and it was previously occupied by the chairperson, the two remaining arbitrators shall select the replacement from the arbitrator list, and the person chosen shall serve as chairperson. If there are two vacant seats, and one of them was previously occupied by the chairperson, the Librarian will select one replacement from the arbitrator list, and that person shall join with the remaining arbitrator to choose the replacement, who shall serve as chairperson.

(g) After hearings have commenced, the Librarian will not suspend the proceedings or inaugurate a replacement procedure unless it is necessary in order for the CARP to have a quorum. If the hearing is underway and two arbitrators are unable to continue service, or if the hearing had been proceeding with two arbitrators and one of them is no longer able to serve, the Librarian will suspend the proceedings under § 251.8 and seek the unanimous written agreement of the parties to the proceeding for the Librarian to select a replacement. In the absence of such an agreement, the Librarian will terminate the proceeding. If such agreement is obtained, the Librarian will select one arbitrator from the arbitrator list.

(h) If, after hearings have commenced, the chairperson of the CARP

is no longer able to serve, the Librarian will ask the two remaining arbitrators, or the one remaining arbitrator and the newly-selected arbitrator, to agree between themselves which of them will serve as chairperson. In the absence of such an agreement, the Librarian will terminate the proceeding.

§251.7 Actions of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels.

Any action of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel requiring publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER according to 17 U.S.C. or the rules and regulations of this subchapter shall be published under the authority of the Librarian of Congress and the Register of Copyrights. Under no circumstances shall a CARP engage in rulemaking designed to amend, supplement, or supersede any of the rules and regulations of this subchapter, or seek to have any such action published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

§251.8 Suspension of proceedings.

(a) Where it becomes necessary to replace a selected arbitrator under §251.6 or to remove and replace a selected arbitrator under subpart D of this part, the Librarian will order a suspension of any ongoing hearing or other proceeding by notice in writing to all parties. Immediately after issuing the order of suspension, and without delay, the Librarian will take the necessary steps to replace the arbitrator or arbitrators, and upon such replacement will issue an order, by notice in writing to all parties, resuming the proceeding from the time and point at which it was suspended.

(b) Where, for any other reason, such as a serious medical or family emergency affecting an arbitrator, the Librarian considers a suspension of a proceeding necessary and fully justified, he may, with the unanimous written consent of all parties to the proceeding, order a suspension of the proceeding for a stated period not to exceed one month.

(c) Any suspension under this section shall result in a complete cessation of all aspects of the proceeding, including the running of any period provided by statute for the completion of the proceeding.

Subpart B—Public Access to Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel Meetings

§251.11 Open meetings.

(a) All meetings of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel shall be open to the public, with the exception of meetings that are listed in §251.13.

(b) At the beginning of each proceeding, the CARP shall develop the original schedule of the proceeding which shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER at least seven calendar days in advance of the first meeting. Such announcement shall state the times, dates, and place of the meetings, the testimony to be heard, whether any of the meetings, or any portion of a meeting, is to be closed, and, if so, which ones, and the name and telephone number of the person to contact for further information.

(c) If changes are made to the original schedule, they will be announced in open meeting and issued as orders to the parties participating in the proceeding, and the changes will be noted in the docket file of the proceeding.
In addition, the contact person for the proceeding shall make any additional efforts to publicize the change as are practicable.

(d) If it is decided that the publication of the original schedule must be made on shorter notice than seven days, that decision must be made by a recorded vote of the panel and included in the announcement.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 63040, Dec. 7, 1994]

§251.12 Conduct of open meetings.

Meetings of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel will be conducted in a manner to ensure the greatest degree of openness possible. Reasonable access for the public will be provided at all public sessions. Any person may take photographs, and make audio or video recordings of the proceedings, so long as the panel is informed in advance. The chairperson has the discretion to regulate the time, place, and manner of the taking of photographs or the audio or video recording of the proceedings to ensure the order and decorum of the proceedings. The right of the public to

be present does not include the right to participate or make comments.

§ 251.13 Closed meetings.

In the following circumstances, a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel may close meetings, or any portion of a meeting, or withhold information from the public:

(a) If the matter to be discussed has been specifically authorized to be kept secret by Executive Order, in the interests of national defense or foreign policy; or

(b) If the matter relates solely to the internal practices of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel; or

(c) If the matter has been specifically exempted from disclosure by statute (other than 5 U.S.C. 552) and there is no discretion on the issue; or

(d) If the matter involves privileged or confidential trade secrets or financial information; or

(e) If the result might be to accuse any person of a crime or formally censure him or her; or

(f) If there would be a clearly unwarranted invasion of personal privacy; or

(g) If there would be disclosure of investigatory records compiled for law enforcement, or information that if written would be contained in such records, and to the extent disclosure would:

(1) Interfere with enforcement proceedings; or

(2) Deprive a person of the right to a fair trial or impartial adjudication; or

(3) Constitute an unwarranted invasion of personal privacy; or

(4) Disclose the identity of a confidential source or, in the case of a criminal investigation or a national security intelligence investigation, disclose confidential information furnished only by a confidential source; or

(5) Disclose investigative techniques and procedures; or

(6) Endanger the life or safety of law enforcement personnel.

(h) If premature disclosure of the information would frustrate a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel's action, unless the panel has already disclosed the concept or nature of the proposed action, or is required by law to make disclosure before taking final action; or

(i) If the matter concerns a CARP's participation in a civil action or proceeding or in an action in a foreign court or international tribunal, or an arbitration, or a particular case of formal agency adjudication pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 554, or otherwise involving a determination on the record after opportunity for a hearing; or

(j) If a motion or objection has been raised in an open meeting and the panel determines that it is in the best interests of the proceeding to deliberate on such motion or objection in closed session.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 63040, Dec. 7, 1994; 60 FR 8197, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 251.14 Procedure for closed meetings.

(a) Meetings may be closed, or information withheld from the public, only by a recorded vote of a majority of arbitrators of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel. Each question, either to close a meeting or to withhold information, must be voted on separately, unless a series of meetings is involved, in which case the CARP may vote to keep the discussions closed for 30 days, starting from the first meetings. If the CARP feels that information about a closed meeting must be withheld, the decision to do so must also be the subject of a recorded vote.

(b) Before a discussion to close a meeting or withhold information, the chairperson of a CARP must certify that such an action is permissible, and the chairperson shall cite the appropriate exemption under § 251.13. This certification shall be included in the announcement of the meeting and be maintained as part of the record of proceedings of that CARP.

(c) Following such a vote, the following information shall be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER as soon as possible:

(1) The vote of each arbitrator; and

(2) The appropriate exemption under § 251.13; and

(3) A list of all persons expected to attend the meeting and their affiliation.

(d) The procedure for closed meetings in this section and in § 251.15 shall not apply to the internal deliberations of arbitrators carried out in furtherance

of their duties and obligations under this chapter.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 63040, Dec. 7, 1994]

§251.15 Transcripts of closed meetings.

(a) All meetings closed to the public shall be subject either to a complete transcript or, in the case of §251.13(h) and at the discretion of the Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, detailed minutes. Detailed minutes shall describe all matters discussed, identify all documents considered, summarize action taken as well as the reasons for it, and record all roll call votes as well as any views expressed.

(b) Such transcripts or minutes shall be kept by the Copyright Office for at least two years, or for at least one year after the conclusion of the proceedings, whichever is later. Any portion of transcripts of meetings which the chairperson of a CARP does not feel is exempt from disclosure under §251.13 will ordinarily be available to the public within 20 working days of the meeting. Transcripts or minutes of closed meetings will be reviewed by the chairperson at the end of the proceedings of the panel and, if at that time the chairperson determines that they should be disclosed, he or she will resubmit the question to the CARP to gain authorization for their disclosure.

§251.16 Requests to open or close meetings.

(a) Any person may request a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel to open or close a meeting or disclose or withhold information. Such request must be captioned ''Request to Open'' or ''Request to Close'' a meeting on a specified date concerning a specific subject. The person making the request must state his or her reasons, and include his or her name, address, and telephone number.

(b) In the case of a request to open a meeting that a CARP has previously voted closed, the panel must receive the request within 3 working days of the meeting's announcement. Otherwise the request will not be heeded, and the person making the request will be so notified. An original and three copies of the request must be submitted.

(c) For a CARP to act on a request to open or close a meeting, the question must be brought to a vote before the panel. If the request is granted, an amended meeting announcement will be issued and the person making the request notified. If a vote is not taken, or if after a vote the request is denied, said person will also be notified promptly.

Subpart C—Public Access to and Inspection of Records

§251.21 Public records.

(a) All official determinations of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER in accordance with §251.7 and include the relevant facts and reasons for those determinations.

(b) All records of a CARP, and all records of the Librarian of Congress assembled and/or created under 17 U.S.C. 801 and 802, are available for inspection and copying at the address provided in §251.1 with the exception of:

(1) Records that relate solely to the internal personnel rules and practices of the Copyright Office or the Library of Congress;

(2) Records exempted by statute from disclosure;

(3) Interoffice memoranda or correspondence not available by law except to a party in litigation with a CARP, the Copyright Office, or the Library of Congress;

(4) Personnel, medical, or similar files whose disclosure would be an invasion of personal privacy;

(5) Communications among arbitrators of a CARP concerning the drafting of decisions, opinions, reports, and findings on any CARP matter or proceeding;

(6) Communications among the Librarian of Congress and staff of the Copyright Office or Library of Congress concerning decisions, opinions, reports, selection of arbitrators, or findings on any matter or proceeding conducted under 17 U.S.C. chapter 8;

(7) Offers of settlement that have not been accepted, unless they have been made public by the offeror;

(8) Records not herein listed but which may be withheld as ''exempted'' if a CARP or the Librarian of Congress finds compelling reasons for such action.

§ 251.22 Public access.

(a) *Location of records.* All of the following records relating to rate adjustment and distribution proceedings under this subchapter shall be maintained at the Copyright Office:

(1) Records required to be filed with the Copyright Office; or

(2) Records submitted to or produced by the Copyright Office or Library of Congress under 17 U.S.C. 801 and 802, or

(3) Records submitted to or produced by a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel during the course of a concluded proceeding. In the case of records submitted to or produced by a CARP that is currently conducting a proceeding, such records shall be maintained by the chairperson of that panel at the location of the hearing or at a location specified by the panel. Upon conclusion of the proceeding, all records shall be delivered by the chairperson to the Copyright Office.

(b) *Requesting information.* Requests for information or access to records described in § 251.21 shall be directed to the Copyright Office at the address listed in § 251.1. No requests shall be directed to or accepted by a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel. In the case of records in the possession of a CARP, the Copyright Office shall make arrangements with the panel for access and copying by the person making the request.

(c) *Fees.* Fees for photocopies of CARP or Copyright Office records are the applicable Office charge. Fees for searching for records, certification of documents, and other costs incurred are as provided in 17 U.S.C. 705, 708.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63040, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 251.23 FOIA and Privacy Act.

Freedom of Information Act and Privacy Act provisions applicable to CARP proceedings can be found in parts 203 and 204 of subchapter A of this chapter.

Subpart D—Standards of Conduct

§ 251.30 Basic obligations of arbitrators.

(a) *Definitions.* For purposes of these regulations, the following terms shall have the meanings given in this subsection:

(1) A ''selected arbitrator'' is a person named by the Librarian of Congress, or by other selected arbitrators, for service on a particular CARP panel, in accordance with § 251.6 of these regulations;

(2) A ''listed arbitrator'' is a person named in the ''arbitration list'' published in accordance with § 251.3 of these regulations.

(b) *General principles applicable to arbitrators.* Selected arbitrators are persons acting on behalf of the United States, and the following general principles apply to them. Where a situation is not covered by standards set forth specifically in this subpart, selected arbitrators shall apply these general principles in all cases in determining whether their conduct is proper. Listed arbitrators shall apply these principles where applicable.

(1) Arbitrators are engaged in a matter of trust that requires them to place ethical and legal principles above private gain.

(2) Arbitrators shall not hold financial interests that conflict with the conscientious performance of their service.

(3) Arbitrators shall not engage in financial transactions using nonpublic information or allow the improper use of such information to further any private interest.

(4) Selected arbitrators shall not solicit or accept any gift or other item of monetary value from any person or entity whose interests may be affected by the arbitrators' decisions. Listed arbitrators may accept gifts of nominal value or gifts from friends and family as specified in § 251.34(b).

(5) Arbitrators shall put forth their honest efforts in the performance of their service.

(6) Arbitrators shall act impartially and not give preferential treatment to any individual, organization, or entity whose interests may be affected by the arbitrators' decisions.

(7) Arbitrators shall not engage in outside employment or activities, including seeking or negotiating for employment, that conflicts with the performance of their service.

(8) Arbitrators shall endeavor to avoid any actions creating the appearance that they are violating the law or the ethical standards set forth in this subpart.

(9) Arbitrators shall maintain order and decorum in the proceedings, be patient, dignified, and courteous to the parties, witnesses, and their representatives, and dispose promptly the business before them.

§ 251.31 Financial interests.

(a) No selected arbitrator shall have a direct or indirect financial interest—

(1) In the case of a distribution proceeding, in any claimant to the proceeding whether or not in a voluntary settlement agreement, or any copyright owner who receives royalties from such claimants because of their representation;

(2) In the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, in any individual, organization or entity that would be affected by the outcome of the proceeding.

(b) ''Direct or indirect financial interest'' shall include: Being employed by, being a consultant to, being a representative or agent for, being a member or affiliate of, being a partner of, holding any office in, owning any stocks, bonds, or other securities, or deriving any income from the prohibited entity.

(c) ''Direct or indirect financial interest'' shall not include—

(1) Owning shares in any stock or bond mutual fund or blind trust which might have an interest in a prohibited entity but whose decisions to invest or sell is not under the control of the selected arbitrator, or

(2) Receiving any post-employment benefit such as health insurance or a pension so long as the benefit would not be affected by the outcome of the proceeding.

(d) For the purposes of this section, the financial interests of the following persons will serve to disqualify the selected arbitrator to the same extent as if they were the arbitrator's own interests:

(1) The arbitrator's spouse;

(2) The arbitrator's minor child;

(3) The arbitrator's general partner, except that the personal financial holdings, including stock and bond investments, of such partner will not serve to disqualify the selected arbitrator; or

(4) An organization or entity for which the arbitrator serves as officer, director, trustee, general partner or employee.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63040, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 251.32 Financial disclosure statement.

(a) Within 45 days of their nomination, each nominated arbitrator shall file with the Librarian of Congress a confidential financial disclosure statement as provided by the Library of Congress, which statement shall be reviewed by the Librarian and designated Library staff to determine what conflicts of interest, if any, exist according to § 251.31.

(b) If any conflicts do exist, the Librarian shall not choose that person for the proceeding for which he or she has the financial conflict, except—

(1) The listed arbitrator may divest himself or herself of the interest that caused the disqualification, and become qualified to serve; or

(2) The listed arbitrator may offer to disclose on the record the conflict of interest causing disqualification. In such instances:

(i) The Librarian shall publish a list detailing the conflicts of interest the listed arbitrators have offered to disclose, and any other matters which, although outside of the scope of the restrictions of § 251.31, nevertheless, in the view of the Librarian, raise sufficient concerns to warrant disclosure to the affected parties;

(ii) Such list shall be included in an order issued no later than the commencement of the 45-day precontroversy discovery period;

(iii) Such list shall contain the matters of concern, but shall not contain the names of the listed arbitrators.

(iv) Any party to the proceeding for which the listed arbitrator is being considered may interpose within the 45-day period described in § 251.45(b) an

objection to that arbitrator being selected. If the objection is raised to a matter found to be within the scope of § 251.31, the objection will serve automatically to disqualify the arbitrator. If the objection is raised to a matter found to be outside the scope of § 251.31, the objection will be taken into account when the Librarian makes his or her selection, but will not serve automatically to disqualify the arbitrator.

(c) At such time as the two selected arbitrators choose a third arbitrator, they shall consult with the Librarian to determine if any conflicts of interest exist for the third arbitrator. If, in the opinion of the Librarian of Congress, any conflicts of interest do exist, the two selected arbitrators shall be asked to choose another arbitrator who has no conflict of interest.

(d) Within one week of the selection of the CARP panel, the three selected arbitrators shall file with the Librarian an updated confidential financial disclosure form or, if there are no changes in the arbitrator's financial interests, a statement to that effect. If any conflicts of interest are revealed on the updated form, the Librarian will suspend the proceeding and replace the selected arbitrator with another arbitrator from the arbitrator list in accordance with the provision of § 251.6.

(e) During the following periods of time, the selected arbitrators shall be obliged to inform the Librarian immediately of any change in their financial interests that would reasonably raise a conflict of interest—

(1) During the period beginning with the filing of the updated disclosure form or statement required by paragraph (d) of this section and ending with the submission of the panel's report to the Librarian, and

(2) If the same arbitrator or arbitrators are recalled to serve following a court-ordered remand, during the time the panel is reconvened.

(f) If the Librarian determines that an arbitrator has failed to give timely notice of a financial interest constituting a conflict of interest, or that the arbitrator in fact has a conflict of interest, the Librarian shall remove that arbitrator from the proceeding.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63040, Dec. 7, 1994; 60 FR 8197, Feb. 13, 1995; 61 FR 63717, Dec. 2, 1996]

§ 251.33 Ex parte communications.

(a) *Communications with Librarian or Register.* No person outside the Library of Congress shall engage in ex parte communication with the Librarian of Congress or the Register of Copyrights on the merit or status of any matter, procedural or substantive, relating to the distribution of royalty fees, the adjustment of royalty rates or the status of digital audio recording devices, at any time whatsoever. This prohibition shall not apply to statements concerning public policies related to royalty fee distribution and rate adjustment so long as they are unrelated to the merits of any particular proceeding.

(b) *Selected arbitrators.* No interested person shall engage in, or cause someone else to engage in, *ex parte* communications with the selected arbitrators in a proceeding for any reason whatsoever from the time of their selection to the time of the submission of their report to the Librarian, and, in the case of a remand, from the time of their reconvening to the time of their submission of their report to the Librarian. Incidental communications unrelated to any proceeding, such as an exchange of pleasantries, shall not be deemed to constitute an *ex parte* communication.

(c) *Listed arbitrators.* No interested person shall engage in, or cause someone else to engage in, ex parte communications with any person listed by the Librarian of Congress as qualified to serve as an arbitrator about the merits of any past, pending, or future proceeding relating to the distribution of royalty fees or the adjustment of royalty rates. This prohibition applies during any period when the individual appears on a current arbitrator list.

(d) *Library and Copyright Office personnel.* No person outside the Library of Congress (including the Copyright Office staff) shall engage in ex parte communications with any employee of the Library of Congress about the substantive merits of any past, pending, or

future proceeding relating to the distribution of royalty fees or the adjustment of royalty rates. This prohibition does not apply to procedural inquiries such as scheduling, filing requirements, status requests, or requests for public information.

(e) *Outside contacts.* The Librarian of Congress, the Register of Copyrights, the selected arbitrators, the listed arbitrators, and the employees of the Library of Congress described in paragraphs (a) through (d) of this section, shall not initiate or continue the prohibited communications that apply to them.

(f) *Responsibilities of recipients of communication.* (1) Whoever receives a prohibited communication shall immediately end it and place on the public record of the applicable proceeding:

(i) All such written or recorded communications;

(ii) Memoranda stating the substance of all such oral communications; and

(iii) All written responses, and memoranda stating the substance of all oral responses, to the materials described in paragraphs (f)(1) (i) and (ii) of this section.

(2) The materials described in this paragraph (f) shall not be considered part of the record for the purposes of decision unless introduced into evidence by one of the parties.

(g) *Action by Librarian.* When notice of a prohibited communication described in paragraphs (a) through (d) of this section has been placed in the record of a proceeding, either the Librarian of Congress or the CARP may require the party causing the prohibited communication to show cause why his or her claim or interest in the proceeding should not be dismissed, denied, or otherwise adversely affected.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63040, 63041, Dec. 7, 1994; 60 FR 8197, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 251.34 Gifts and other things of monetary value.

(a) *Selected arbitrators.* From the time of selection to the time of the submission of the arbitration panel's report, whether during the initial proceeding or during a court-ordered remand, no selected arbitrator shall solicit or accept, directly or indirectly, any gift, gratuity, favor, travel, entertainment, service, loan, or any other thing of monetary value from a person or organization that has an interest that would be affected by the outcome of the proceeding, regardless of whether the offer was intended to affect the outcome of the proceeding.

(b) *Listed arbitrators.* No listed arbitrator shall solicit or accept, directly or indirectly, any gift, gratuity, favor, travel, entertainment, service, loan, or any other thing of monetary value from a person or organization that has an interest in any proceeding for which the arbitrator might be selected, regardless of whether the offer was intended to affect the outcome of the proceeding, except—

(1) A listed arbitrator may accept unsolicited gifts having an aggregate market value of $20 or less per occasion, as long as the aggregate market value of individual gifts received from any one source does not exceed $50 in a calendar year, or

(2) A listed arbitrator may accept a gift given under circumstances in which it is clear that the gift is motivated by a family relationship or personal friendship rather than the potential of the listed arbitrator to decide a future proceeding.

(c) A gift that is solicited or accepted indirectly includes a gift—

(1) Given with the arbitrator's knowledge and acquiescence to the arbitrator's parent, sibling, spouse, child, or dependent relative because of that person's relationship to the arbitrator, or

(2) Given to any other person, including any charitable organization, on the basis of designation, recommendation, or other specification by the arbitrator.

§ 251.35 Outside employment and other activities.

(a) From the time of selection to the time when all possibility of being selected to serve on a court-ordered remand is ended, no arbitrator shall—

(1) Engage in any outside business or other activity that would cause a reasonable person to question the arbitrator's ability to render an impartial decision;

(2) Accept any speaking engagement, whether paid or unpaid, related to the

proceeding or sponsored by a party that would be affected by the outcome of the proceeding; or

(3) Accept any honorarium, whether directly or indirectly paid, for any appearance, speech, or article related to the proceeding or offered by a party who would be affected by the outcome of the proceeding.

(b) Honoraria indirectly paid include payments—

(1) Given with the arbitrator's knowledge and acquiescence to the arbitrator's parent, sibling, spouse, child, or dependent relative because of that person's relationship to the arbitrator, or

(2) Given to any other person, including any charitable organization, on the basis of designation, recommendation, or other specification by the arbitrator.

§ 251.36 Pre-arbitration and post-arbitration employment restrictions.

(a) The Librarian of Congress will not select any arbitrator who was employed at any time during the period of five years immediately preceding the date of that arbitrator's selection by any party to, or any person, organization or entity with a financial interest in, the proceeding for which he or she is being considered. However, a listed arbitrator may disclose on the record the past employment causing disqualification and may ask the parties to consider whether to allow him or her to serve in the proceeding, in which case any agreement by the parties to allow the listed arbitrator to serve shall be unanimous and shall be incorporated into the record of the proceeding.

(b) No arbitrator may arrange for future employment with any party to, or any person, organization, or entity with a financial interest in, the proceeding in which he or she is serving.

(c) For a period of three years from the date of submission of the arbitration panel's report to the Librarian, no arbitrator may enter into employment with any party to, or any person, organization, or entity with a financial interest in, the particular proceeding in which he or she served.

(d) For purposes of this section, ''employed'' or ''employment'' means any business relationship involving the provision of personal services including, but not limited to, personal services as an officer, director, employee, agent, attorney, consultant, contractor, general partner or trustee, but does not include serving as an arbitrator, mediator, or neutral engaged in alternative dispute resolution.

§ 251.37 Use of nonpublic information.

(a) Unless required by law, no arbitrator shall disclose in any manner any information contained in filings, pleadings, or evidence that the arbitration panel has ruled to be confidential in nature.

(b) Unless required by law, no arbitrator shall disclose in any manner—

(1) Intra-panel communications or communications between the Library of Congress and the panel intended to be confidential;

(2) Draft interlocutory rulings or draft decisions; or

(3) The CARP report before its submission to the Librarian of Congress.

(c) No arbitrator shall engage in a financial transaction using nonpublic information, or allow the improper use of nonpublic information, to further his or her private interest or that of another, whether through advice or recommendation, or by knowing unauthorized disclosure.

§ 251.38 Billing and commitment to standards.

(a) Arbitrators are bound by the hourly or daily fee they proposed to the Librarian of Congress when their names were submitted to be listed under § 251.3, and shall not bill in excess of their proposed charges.

(b) Arbitrators shall not charge the parties any expense in addition to their hourly or daily charge, except, in the case of an arbitrator who resides outside the Washington, DC metropolitan area, for travel, lodging, and meals not to exceed the government rate.

(c) When submitting their statement of costs to the parties under § 251.54, arbitrators shall include a detailed account of their charges, including the work performed during each hour or day charged.

(d) Except for support services provided by the Library of Congress, arbitrators shall perform their own work,

including research, analysis of the record, and decision-writing.

(e) At the time of selection, arbitrators shall sign an agreement stating that they will abide by all the terms therein, including all of the standards of conduct and billing restrictions specified in this subpart. Any arbitrator who does not sign the agreement will not be selected to serve.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 60 FR 8197, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 251.39 Remedies.

In addition to those provided above, remedies for the violation of the standards of conduct of this section may include, but are not limited to, the following—

(a) In the case of a selected arbitrator,

(1) Removal of the arbitrator from the proceeding;

(2) Permanent removal of the arbitrator's name from the current and any future list of available arbitrators published by the Librarian;

(3) Referral of the matter to the bar of which the arbitrator is a member.

(b) In the case of a listed but not selected arbitrator—

(1) Permanent removal of the arbitrator's name from the current and any future list of available arbitrators published by the Librarian;

(2) Referral of the matter to the bar of which the listed arbitrator is a member.

(c) In the case of an interested party or individual who engaged in the ethical violation—

(1) Referral of the matter to the bar or professional association of which the interested individual is a member;

(2) Barring the offending individual from current and/or future appearances before the CARP;

(3) Designation of an issue in the current or in a future proceeding as to whether the party's interest should not be dismissed, denied, or otherwise adversely affected.

(d) In all applicable matters of violations of standards of conduct, the Librarian may refer the matter to the Department of Justice, or other legal authority of competent jurisdiction, for criminal prosecution.

Subpart E—Procedures of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels

§ 251.40 Scope.

This subpart governs the proceedings of Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels convened under 17 U.S.C. 803 for the adjustment of royalty rates and distribution of royalty fees. This subpart does not apply to other arbitration proceedings specified by 17 U.S.C., or to actions or rulemakings of the Librarian of Congress or the Register of Copyrights, except where expressly provided in the provisions of this subpart.

§ 251.41 Formal hearings.

(a) The formal hearings that will be conducted under the rules of this subpart are rate adjustment hearings and royalty fee distribution hearings. All parties intending to participate in a hearing of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel must file a notice of their intention. A CARP may also, on its own motion or on the petition of an interested party, hold other proceedings it considers necessary to the exercise of its functions, subject to the provisions of § 251.7. All such proceedings will be governed by the rules of this subpart.

(b) During the 45-day period specified in § 251.45(b)(1)(i) for distribution proceedings, or during the 45-day period specified in § 251.45(b)(2)(i) for rate adjustment proceedings, as appropriate, any party may petition the Librarian of Congress to dispense with formal hearings, and have the CARP decide the controversy or rate adjustment on the basis of written pleadings. The petition may be granted if—

(1) The controversy or rate adjustment, as appropriate, does not involve any genuine issue of material fact; or

(2) All parties to the proceeding agree, in writing, that a grant of the petition is appropriate.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63041, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 251.42 Suspension or waiver of rules.

For purposes of an individual proceeding, the provisions of this subpart may be suspended or waived, in whole

or in part, by a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel upon a showing of good cause, subject to the provisions of § 251.7. Such suspension or waiver shall apply only to the proceeding of the CARP taking that action, and shall not be binding on any other panel or proceeding. Where procedures have not been specifically prescribed in this subpart, and subject to § 251.7, the panel shall follow procedures consistent with 5 U.S.C. chapter 5, subchapter II.

§ 251.43 Written cases.

(a) All parties who have filed a notice of intent to participate in the hearing shall file written direct cases with the Copyright Office, and with other parties in the manner in which the Librarian of Congress shall direct in accordance with § 251.45(b).

(b) The written direct case shall include all testimony, including each witness's background and qualifications, along with all the exhibits to be presented in the direct case.

(c) Each party may designate a portion of past records, including records of the Copyright Royalty Tribunal, that it wants included in its direct case. Complete testimony of each witness whose testimony is designated (i.e., direct, cross and redirect) must be referenced.

(d) In the case of a royalty fee distribution proceeding, each party must state in the written direct case its percentage or dollar claim to the fund. In the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, each party must state its requested rate. No party will be precluded from revising its claim or its requested rate at any time during the proceeding up to the filing of the proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law.

(e) No evidence, including exhibits, may be submitted in the written direct case without a sponsoring witness, except where the CARP panel has taken official notice, or in the case of incorporation by reference of past records, or for good cause shown.

(f) Written rebuttal cases of the parties shall be filed at a time designated by a CARP upon conclusion of the hearing of the direct case, in the same form and manner as the direct case, except that the claim or the requested rate shall not have to be included if it has not changed from the direct case.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63041, Dec. 7, 1994; 61 FR 63717, Dec. 2, 1996]

§ 251.44 Filing and service of written cases and pleadings.

(a) *Filing of pleadings.* In a royalty fee distribution proceeding or in a rate adjustment proceeding, the submitting party shall deliver an original and five copies of all filings to the Copyright Office at the address listed in § 251.1, unless otherwise instructed by the Librarian of Congress or the CARP. The Copyright Office will make further distribution to the CARP, as necessary. In no case shall a party tender any written case or pleading by facsimile transmission.

(b) *Exhibits.* All exhibits must be included with a party's case; however, in the case of exhibits whose bulk or whose cost of reproduction would unnecessarily encumber the record or burden the party, the Librarian of Congress or the CARP may reduce the number of required copies. Nevertheless, a complete copy must still be submitted to the Copyright Office.

(c) *English language translations.* In all filings with a CARP or the Librarian of Congress, each submission that is in a language other than English shall be accompanied by an English-language translation, duly verified under oath to be a true translation. Any other party to the proceeding may, in response, submit its own English-language translation, similarly verified.

(d) *Affidavits.* The testimony of each witness in a party's written case, direct or rebuttal, shall be accompanied by an affidavit or a declaration made pursuant to 28 U.S.C. 1746 supporting the testimony.

(e) *Subscription and verification.* (1) The original of all documents filed by any party represented by counsel shall be signed by at least one attorney of record and shall list the attorney's address and telephone number. All copies shall be conformed. Except for English-language translations, written cases, or when otherwise required, documents signed by the attorney for a party need not be verified or accompanied by an

affidavit. The signature of an attorney constitutes certification that to the best of his or her knowledge and belief there is good ground to support the document, and that it has not been interposed for purposes of delay.

(2) The original of all documents filed by a party not represented by counsel shall be signed by that party and list that party's address and telephone number.

(3) The original of a document that is not signed, or is signed with the intent to defeat the purpose of this section, may be stricken as sham and false, and the matter shall proceed as though the document had not been filed.

(f) The Librarian of Congress shall compile and distribute to those parties who have filed a notice of intent to participate, the official service list of the proceeding, which shall be composed of the names and addresses of the representatives of all the parties to the proceeding. In all filings, a copy shall be served upon counsel of all other parties identified in the service list, or, if the party is unrepresented by counsel, upon the party itself. Proof of service shall accompany the filing. Parties shall notify the Librarian of any change in the name or address to which service shall be made, and shall serve a copy of such notification on all parties and the CARP.

(g) *Oppositions and replies.* Except as otherwise provided in this part or by the Librarian of Congress or a CARP, oppositions to motions shall be filed within seven business days of the filing of the motion, and replies to oppositions shall be filed within five business days of the filing of the opposition. Each party must serve all motions, petitions, objections, oppositions, and replies on the other parties or their counsel by means no slower than overnight express mail on the same day the pleading is filed.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 60 FR 8197, Feb. 13, 1995; 61 FR 63717, Dec. 2, 1996]

§251.45 Discovery and prehearing motions.

(a) *Request for comment, notice of intention to participate.* In the case of a royalty fee distribution proceeding, the Librarian of Congress shall, after the time period for filing claims, publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a notice requesting each claimant on the claimant list to negotiate with each other a settlement of their differences, and to comment by a date certain as to the existence of controversies with respect to the royalty funds described in the notice. Such notice shall also establish a date certain by which parties wishing to participate in the proceeding must file with the Librarian a notice of intention to participate. In the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, the Librarian of Congress shall, after receiving a petition for rate adjustment filed under §251.62, or, in the case of noncommercial educational broadcasting and satellite carrier, prior to the commencement of proceedings, publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a notice requesting interested parties to comment on the petition for rate adjustment. Such notice shall also establish a date certain by which parties wishing to participate in the proceeding must file with the Librarian a notice of intention to participate.

(b) *Precontroversy discovery, filing of written cases, scheduling.* (1)(i) In the case of a royalty fee distribution proceeding, the Librarian of Congress shall, after the filing of comments and notices described in paragraph (a) of this section, designate a 45-day period for precontroversy discovery and exchange of documents. The period will begin with the exchange of written direct cases among the parties to the proceeding. Each party to the proceeding must effect actual delivery of a complete copy of its written direct case on each of the other parties to the proceeding no later than the first day of the 45-day period. At any time during the 45-day period, any party to the proceeding may file with the Librarian prehearing motions and objections, including petitions to dispense with formal hearings under §251.41(b) and objections to arbitrators appearing on the arbitrator list under §251.4. Responses to motions, petitions, and objections must be filed with the Librarian within seven business days from the filing of such motions, petitions,

and objections. Replies to the responses shall be filed within five business days from the filing of such responses with the Librarian. Each party must serve all motions, petitions, objections, oppositions, and replies on the other parties or their counsel by means no slower than overnight express mail on the same day the pleading is filed.

(ii) Subject to § 251.72, the Librarian shall establish, prior to the commencement of the 45-day period, the date on which arbitration proceedings will be initiated.

(2)(i) In the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, the Librarian of Congress shall, after the filing of comments and notices described in paragraph (a) of this section, designate a 45-day period for precontroversy discovery and exchange of documents. The period will begin with the exchange of written direct cases among the parties to the proceeding. Each party to the proceeding must effect actual delivery of a complete copy of its written direct case on each of the other parties to the proceeding no later than the first day of the 45-day period. At any time during the 45-day period, any party to the proceeding may file with the Librarian prehearing motions and objections, including petitions to dispense with formal hearings under § 251.41(b) and objections to arbitrators appearing on the arbitrator list under § 251.4. Responses to motions, petitions, and objections must be filed with the Librarian within seven business days from the filing of such motions, petitions, and objections. Replies to the responses shall be filed within five business days from the filing of such responses with the Librarian. Each party must serve all motions, petitions, objections, oppositions, and replies on the other parties or their counsel by means no slower than overnight express mail on the same day the pleading is filed.

(ii) Subject to § 251.64, the Librarian shall establish, prior to the commencement of the 45-day period, the date on which arbitration proceedings will be initiated.

(c) *Discovery and motions filed with a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel.* (1) A Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel shall designate a period following the filing of written direct and rebuttal cases with it in which parties may request of an opposing party nonprivileged underlying documents related to the written exhibits and testimony.

(2) After the filing of written cases with a CARP, any party may file with a CARP objections to any portion of another party's written case on any proper ground including, without limitation, relevance, competency, and failure to provide underlying documents. If an objection is apparent from the face of a written case, that objection must be raised or the party may thereafter be precluded from raising such an objection.

(d) *Amended filings and discovery.* In the case of objections filed with either the Librarian of Congress or a CARP, each party may amend its claim, petition, written case, or direct evidence to respond to the objections raised by other parties, or to the requests of either the Librarian or a panel. Such amendments must be properly filed with the Librarian or the CARP, wherever appropriate, and exchanged with all parties. All parties shall be given a reasonable opportunity to conduct discovery on the amended filings.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63041, Dec. 7, 1994; 61 FR 63718, Dec. 2, 1996]

§ 251.46 Conduct of hearings: Role of arbitrators.

(a) At the opening of a hearing conducted by a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, the chairperson shall announce the subject under consideration.

(b) Only the arbitrators of a CARP, or counsel as provided in this chapter, shall question witnesses.

(c) Subject to the vote of the CARP, the chairperson shall have responsibility for:

(1) Setting the order of presentation of evidence and appearance of witnesses;

(2) Administering oaths and affirmations to all witnesses;

(3) Announcing the CARP panel's ruling on objections and motions and all rulings with respect to introducing or excluding documentary or other evidence. In all cases, whether there are an even or odd number of arbitrators

sitting at the hearing, it takes a majority vote to grant a motion or sustain an objection. A split vote will result in the denial of the motion or the overruling of the objection;

(4) Regulating the course of the proceedings and the decorum of the parties and their counsel, and insuring that the proceedings are fair and impartial; and

(5) Announcing the schedule of subsequent hearings.

(d) Each arbitrator may examine any witness or call upon any party for the production of additional evidence at any time. Further examination, cross-examination, or redirect examination by counsel relevant to the inquiry initiated by an arbitrator may be allowed by a CARP panel, but only to the limited extent that it is directly responsive to the inquiry of the arbitrator.

§ 251.47 Conduct of hearings: Witnesses and counsel.

(a) With all due regard for the convenience of the witnesses, proceedings shall be conducted as expeditiously as possible.

(b) In each distribution or rate adjustment proceeding, each party may present its opening statement with the presentation of its direct case.

(c) All witnesses shall be required to take an oath or affirmation before testifying; however, attorneys who do not appear as witnesses shall not be required to do so.

(d) Witnesses shall first be examined by their attorney and by opposing attorneys for their competency to support their written testimony and exhibits (voir dire).

(e) Witnesses may then summarize, highlight or read their testimony. However, witnesses may not materially supplement or alter their written testimony except to correct it, unless the CARP panel expands the witness's testimony to complete the record.

(f) Parties are entitled to raise objections to evidence on any proper ground during the course of the hearing, including an objection that an opposing party has not furnished nonprivileged underlying documents. However, they may not raise objections that were apparent from the face of a written case and could have been raised before the hearing without leave from the CARP panel. See § 251.45(c).

(g) All written testimony and exhibits will be received into the record, except any to which the panel sustains an objection; no separate motion will be required.

(h) If the panel rejects or excludes testimony and an offer of proof is made, the offer of proof shall consist of a statement of the substance of the evidence which it is contended would have been adduced. In the case of documentary or written evidence, a copy of such evidence shall be marked for identification and shall constitute the offer of proof.

(i) The CARP panel shall discourage the presentation of cumulative evidence, and may limit the number of witnesses that may be heard on behalf of any one party on any one issue.

(j) Parties are entitled to conduct cross-examination and redirect examination. Cross-examination is limited to matters raised on direct examination. Redirect examination is limited to matters raised on cross-examination. The panel, however, may limit cross-examination and redirect examination if in its judgment this evidence or examination would be cumulative or cause undue delay. Conversely, this subsection does not restrict the discretion of the panel to expand the scope of cross-examination or redirect examination.

(k) Documents that have not been exchanged in advance may be shown to a witness on cross-examination. However, copies of such documents must be distributed to the CARP panel and to other participants or their counsel at hearing before being shown to the witness at the time of cross-examination, unless the panel directs otherwise. If the document is not, or will not be, supported by a witness for the cross-examining party, that document can be used solely to impeach the witness's direct testimony and cannot itself be relied upon in findings of fact as rebutting the witness's direct testimony. However, upon leave from the panel, the document may be admitted as evidence without a sponsoring witness if official notice is proper, or if, in the panel's view, the cross-examined witness is the proper sponsoring witness.

(l) A CARP will encourage individuals or groups with the same or similar interests in a proceeding to select a single representative to conduct their examination and cross-examination of any given witness. However, if there is no agreement on the selection of a representative, each individual or group will be allowed to conduct its own examination and cross-examination of any given witness, but only on issues affecting its particular interests, provided that the questioning is not repetitious or cumulative of the questioning of other parties within the group.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63041, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 251.48 Rules of evidence.

(a) *Admissibility*. In any public hearing before a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, evidence that is not unduly repetitious or cumulative and is relevant and material shall be admissible. The testimony of any witness will not be considered evidence in a proceeding unless the witness has been sworn.

(b) *Documentary evidence.* Evidence that is submitted in the form of documents or detailed data and information shall be presented as exhibits. Relevant and material matter embraced in a document containing other matter not material or relevant or not intended as evidence must be plainly designated as the matter offered in evidence, and the immaterial or irrelevant parts shall be marked clearly so as to show they are not intended as evidence. In cases where a document in which material and relevant matter occurs is of such bulk that it would unnecessarily encumber the record, it may be marked for identification and the relevant and material parts, once properly authenticated, may be read into the record. If the CARP panel desires, a true copy of the material and relevant matter may be presented in extract form, and submitted as evidence. Anyone presenting documents as evidence must present copies to all other participants at the hearing or their attorneys, and afford them an opportunity to examine the documents in their entirety and offer into evidence any other portion that may be considered material and relevant.

(c) *Documents filed with a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel or Copyright Office.* If the matter offered in evidence is contained in documents already on file with a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel or the Copyright Office, the documents themselves need not be produced, but may instead be referred to according to how they have been filed.

(d) *Public documents.* If a public document such as an official report, decision, opinion, or published scientific or economic data, is offered in evidence either in whole or in part, and if the document has been issued by an Executive Department, a legislative agency or committee, or a Federal administrative agency (Government-owned corporations included), and is proved by the party offering it to be reasonably available to the public, the document need not be produced physically, but may be offered instead by identifying the document and signaling the relevant parts.

(e) *Introduction of studies and analyses.* If studies or analyses are offered in evidence, they shall state clearly the study plan, all relevant assumptions, the techniques of data collection, and the techniques of estimation and testing. The facts and judgments upon which conclusions are based shall be stated clearly, together with any alternative courses of action considered. If requested, tabulations of input data shall be made available to the Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel.

(f) *Statistical studies.* Statistical studies offered in evidence shall be accompanied by a summary of their assumptions, their study plans, and their procedures. Supplementary details shall be included in appendices. For each of the following types of statistical studies the following should be furnished:

(1) *Sample surveys.* (i) A clear description of the survey design, the definition of the universe under consideration, the sampling frame and units, the validity and confidence limits on major estimates; and

(ii) An explanation of the method of selecting the sample and of the characteristics which were measured and counted.

(2) *Econometric investigations.* (i) A complete description of the econometric model, the reasons for each assumption, and the reasons for the statistical specification;

(ii) A clear statement of how any changes in the assumptions might affect the final result; and

(iii) Any available alternative studies that employ alternative models and variables, if requested.

(3) *Experimental analysis.* (i) A complete description of the design, the controlled conditions, and the implementation of controls; and

(ii) A complete description of the methods of observation and adjustment of observation.

(4) *Studies involving statistical methodology.* (i) The formula used for statistical estimates;

(ii) The standard error for each component;

(iii) The test statistics, the description of how the tests were conducted, related computations, computer programs, and all final results; and

(iv) Summarized descriptions of input data and, if requested, the input data themselves.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 60 FR 8197, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 251.49 Transcript and record.

(a) An official reporter for the recording and transcribing of hearings shall be designated by the Librarian of Congress. Anyone wishing to inspect or copy the transcript of a hearing may do so at a location specified by the chairperson of the Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel conducting the hearing.

(b) The transcript of testimony and all exhibits, papers, and requests filed in the proceeding, shall constitute the official written record. Such record shall accompany the report of the determination of the CARP to the Librarian of Congress required by 17 U.S.C. 802(e).

(c) The record, including the report of the determination of a CARP, shall be available at the Copyright Office for public inspection and copying in accordance with § 251.22.

§ 251.50 Rulings and orders.

In accordance with 5 U.S.C., subchapter II, a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel may issue rulings or orders, either on its own motion or that of an interested party, necessary to the resolution of issues contained in the proceeding before it; Provided, that no such rules or orders shall amend, supplement or supersede the rules and regulations contained in this subchapter. See § 251.7.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 60 FR 8197, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 251.51 Closing the record.

To close the record of hearing, the chairperson of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel shall make an announcement that the taking of testimony has concluded. In its discretion the panel may close the record as of a future specified date, and allow time for exhibits yet to be prepared to be admitted, provided that the parties to the proceeding stipulate on the record that they waive the opportunity to cross-examine or present evidence with respect to such exhibits. The record in any hearing that has been recessed may not be closed by the chairperson before the day on which the hearing is to resume, except upon ten days' notice to all parties.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63041, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 251.52 Proposed findings and conclusions.

(a) Any party to the proceeding may file proposed findings of fact and conclusions, briefs, or memoranda of law, or may be directed by the chairperson to do so. Such filings, and any replies to them, shall take place at such time after the record has been closed as the chairperson directs.

(b) Failure to file when directed to do so shall be considered a waiver of the right to participate further in the proceeding, unless good cause for the failure is shown.

(c) Proposed findings of fact shall be numbered by paragraph and include all basic evidentiary facts developed on the record used to support proposed conclusions, and shall contain appropriate citations to the record for each

evidentiary fact. Proposed findings submitted by someone other than a party in a proceeding shall be restricted to those issues specifically affecting that person.

(d) Proposed conclusions shall be stated separately.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63041, Dec. 7, 1994; 60 FR 8197, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 251.53 Report to the Librarian of Congress.

(a) At any time after the filing of proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law and any replies thereto specified in § 251.52, and not later than 180 days from publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER of notification of commencement of the proceeding, a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel shall deliver to the Librarian of Congress a report incorporating its written determination. Such determination shall be accompanied by the written record, and shall set forth the facts that the panel found relevant to its determination.

(b) The determination of the panel shall be certified by the chairperson and signed by all of the arbitrators. Any dissenting opinion shall be certified and signed by the arbitrator so dissenting.

(c) At the same time as the submission to the Librarian of Congress, the chairperson of the panel shall cause a copy of the determination to be delivered to all parties participating in the proceeding.

(d) The Librarian of Congress shall make the report of the CARP and the accompanying record available for public inspection and copying.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63041, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 251.54 Assessment of costs of arbitration panels.

(a) The panel may assess its ordinary and necessary costs, according to § 251.38, to the participants to the proceeding as follows:

(1) In the case of a rate adjustment proceeding, the parties to the proceeding shall bear the entire cost thereof in such manner and proportion as the panel shall direct.

(2) In the case of a royalty distribution proceeding, the parties to the proceeding shall bear the total cost of the proceeding in direct proportion to their share of the distribution.

(3) In the case of a change in the share of distribution because of the Librarian's substitution of a new determination, or a determination reached as a result of a court-ordered remand, the parties shall make restitution to each other for the difference in payments that resulted from the change.

(b) The chairperson of the panel shall cause to be delivered to each participating party a statement of the total costs of the proceeding, the party's share of the total cost, and the amount owed by the party to each arbitrator.

(c) All parties to a proceeding shall have 30 days from receipt of the statement of costs and bill for payment in which to tender payment to the arbitrators. Payment should be in the form of a money order, check, or bank draft.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 251.55 Post-panel motions.

(a) Any party to the proceeding may file with the Librarian of Congress a petition to modify or set aside the determination of a Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel within 14 days of the Librarian's receipt of the panel's report of its determination. Such petition shall state the reasons for modification or reversal of the panel's determination, and shall include applicable sections of the party's proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law.

(b) Replies to petitions to modify or set aside shall be filed within 14 days of the filing of such petitions.

§ 251.56 Order of the Librarian of Congress.

(a) After the filing of post-panel motions, see § 251.55, but within 60 days from receipt of the report of the determination of a panel, the Librarian of Congress shall issue an order accepting the panel's determination or substituting the Librarian's own determination. The Librarian shall adopt the determination of the panel unless he or she finds that the determination is arbitrary or contrary to the applicable provisions of 17 U.S.C.

(b) If the Librarian substitutes his or her own determination, the order shall set forth the reasons for not accepting the panel's determination, and shall set forth the facts which the Librarian found relevant to his or her determination.

(c) The Librarian shall cause a copy of the order to be delivered to all parties participating in the proceeding. The Librarian shall also publish the order, and the determination of the panel, in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

§ 251.57 Effective date of order.

An order of determination issued by the Librarian under § 251.56 shall become effective 30 days following its publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER, unless an appeal has been filed pursuant to § 251.58 and notice of the appeal has been served on all parties to the proceeding.

§ 251.58 Judicial review.

(a) Any order of determination issued by the Librarian of Congress under § 251.55 may be appealed, by any aggrieved party who would be bound by the determination, to the United States Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia Circuit, within 30 days after publication of the order in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(b) If no appeal is brought within the 30 day period, the order of determination of the Librarian is final, and shall take effect as set forth in the order.

(c) The pendency of any appeal shall not relieve persons obligated to make royalty payments under 17 U.S.C. 111, 114, 115, 116, 118, 119, or 1003, and who would be affected by the determination on appeal, from depositing statements of account and royalty fees by those sections.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 61 FR 37215, July 17, 1996]

Subpart F—Rate Adjustment Proceedings

§ 251.60 Scope.

This subpart governs only those proceedings dealing with royalty rate adjustments affecting cable (17 U.S.C. 111), subscription digital audio transmission (17 U.S.C. 114), the manufacture and distribution of phonorecords, including digital phonorecord deliveries (17 U.S.C. 115), performances on coin-operated phonorecord players (jukeboxes) (17 U.S.C. 116), noncommercial educational broadcasting (17 U.S.C. 118) and satellite carriers (17 U.S.C. 119). Those provisions of subpart E of this part generally regulating the conduct of proceedings shall apply to rate adjustment proceedings, unless they are inconsistent with the specific provisions of this subpart.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994; 61 FR 37215, July 17, 1996]

§ 251.61 Commencement of adjustment proceedings.

(a) In the case of cable, subscription digital audio transmissions, phonorecords, digital phonorecord deliveries, and coin-operated phonorecord players (jukeboxes), rate adjustment proceedings shall commence with the filing of a petition by an interested party according to the following schedule:

(1) Cable: During 1995, and each subsequent fifth calendar year.

(2) Subscription Digital Audio Transmissions: During a 60-day period prescribed by the Librarian in 1996, 2000, and each subsequent fifth calendar year.

(3) Phonorecords: During 1997 and each subsequent tenth calendar year.

(4) Digital Phonorecord Deliveries: During 1997 and each subsequent fifth calendar year except to the extent that different years may be determined by the parties to a negotiated settlement or by the copyright arbitration royalty panel.

(5) Coin-operated phonorecord players (jukeboxes): Within one year of the expiration or termination of a negotiated license authorized by 17 U.S.C. 116.

(b) Cable rate adjustment proceedings may also be commenced by the filing of a petition, according to 17 U.S.C. 801(b)(2)(B) and (C), if the Federal Communications Commission amends certain of its rules with respect to the carriage by cable systems of broadcast signals, or with respect to syndicated and sports programming exclusivity.

(c) In the case of noncommercial educational broadcasting, a petition is not necessary for the commencement of proceedings. Proceedings commence with the publication of a notice of the initiation of arbitration proceedings in the FEDERAL REGISTER on June 30, 1997, and at five year intervals thereafter.

(d) In the case of the satellite carrier compulsory license, rate adjustment proceedings shall commence on January 1, 1997, in accordance with 17 U.S.C. 119(c)(3)(A), for satellite carriers who are not parties to a voluntary agreement filed with the Copyright Office in accordance with 17 U.S.C. 119(c)(2).

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994; 61 FR 37215, July 17. 1996]

§ 251.62 Content of petition.

(a) In the case of a petition for rate adjustment proceedings for cable, subscription digital audio transmissions, phonorecords, digital phonorecord deliveries,and coin-operated phonorecord players (jukeboxes), the petition shall detail the petitioner's interest in the royalty rate sufficiently to permit the Librarian of Congress to determine whether the petitioner has a ''significant interest'' in the matter. The petition must also identify the extent to which the petitioner's interest is shared by other owners or users; owners or users with similar interests may file a petition jointly.

(b) In the case of a petition for rate adjustment proceedings as the result of a Federal Communications Commission rule change, the petition shall also set forth the actions of the Federal Communications Commission on which the petition for a rate adjustment is based.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 61 FR 37216, July 17, 1996]

§ 251.63 Consideration of petition; settlements.

(a) To allow time for the parties to settle their differences concerning cable, phonorecord, and jukebox rate adjustments, the Librarian of Congress shall, after the filing of the petition under § 251.62 and before the 45-day period specified in § 251.45(b)(2)(i), designate a 30-day period for negotiation of a settlement. The Librarian shall cause notice of the dates for that period to be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(b) In the case of a settlement among the parties to a proceeding, the Librarian may, upon the request of the parties, submit the agreed upon rate to the public in a notice-and-comment proceeding. The Librarian may adopt the rate embodied in the proposed settlement without convening an arbitration panel, provided that no opposing comment is received by the Librarian from a party with an intent to participate in a CARP proceeding.

[59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994, as amended at 61 FR 37216, July 17, 1996; 61 FR 63718, Dec. 2, 1996]

§ 251.64 Disposition of petition; initiation of arbitration proceeding.

After the end of the 45-day precontroversy discovery period, and after the Librarian has ruled on all motions and objections filed under § 251.45, the Librarian will determine the sufficiency of the petition, including, where appropriate, whether one or more of the petitioners' interests are ''significant.'' If the Librarian determines that a petition is significant, he or she will cause to be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER a declaration of a controversy accompanied by a notice of initiation of an arbitration proceeding. The same declaration and notice of initiation shall be made for noncommercial educational broadcasting and the satellite carrier compulsory license in accordance with 17 U.S.C. 118 and 119, respectively.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 251.65 Deduction of costs of rate adjustment proceedings.

In accordance with 17 U.S.C. 802(h)(1), the Librarian of Congress and the Register of Copyrights may assess the reasonable costs incurred by the Library of Congress and the Copyright Office as a result of the rate adjustment proceedings directly to the parties participating in the proceedings.

[59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994]

Subpart G—Royalty Fee Distribution Proceedings

§ 251.70 Scope.

This subpart governs only those proceedings dealing with distribution of royalty payments deposited with the Register of Copyrights for cable (17 U.S.C. 111), satellite carrier (17 U.S.C. 119), and digital audio recording devices and media (17 U.S.C. chapter 10). Those provisions of subpart E generally regulating the conduct of proceedings shall apply to royalty fee distribution proceedings, unless they are inconsistent with the specific provisions of this subpart.

§ 251.71 Commencement of proceedings.

(a) *Cable.* In the case of royalty fees collected under the cable compulsory license (17 U.S.C. 111), any person claiming to be entitled to such fees must file a claim with the Copyright Office during the month of July each year in accordance with the requirements of this subchapter.

(b) *Satellite carriers.* In the case of royalty fees collected under the satellite carrier compulsory license (17 U.S.C. 119), any person claiming to be entitled to such fees must file a claim with the Copyright Office during the month of July each year in accordance with the requirements of this subchapter.

(c) *Digital audio recording devices and media.* In the case of royalty payments for the importation and distribution in the United States, or the manufacture and distribution in the United States, of any digital recording device or medium, any person claiming to be entitled to such payments must file a claim with the Copyright Office during the month of January or February each year in accordance with the requirements of this subchapter.

§ 251.72 Declaration of controversy: Initiation of arbitration proceeding.

If the Librarian determines that a controversy exists among the claimants to either cable, satellite carrier, or digital audio recording devices and media royalties, the Librarian shall publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a declaration of controversy along with a notice of initiation of an arbitration proceeding. Such notice shall, to the extent feasible, describe the nature, general structure and schedule of the proceeding.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994. Redesignated at 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 251.73 Deduction of costs of distribution proceedings.

The Librarian of Congress and the Register of Copyrights may, before any distributions of royalty fees are made, deduct the reasonable costs incurred by the Library of Congress and the Copyright Office as a result of the distribution proceeding, from the relevant royalty pool.

[59 FR 23981, May 9, 1994. Redesignated at 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994]

PART 252—FILING OF CLAIMS TO CABLE ROYALTY FEES

Sec.
252.1 Scope.
252.2 Time of filing.
252.3 Content of claims.
252.4 Compliance with statutory dates.
252.5 Copies of claims.

AUTHORITY: 17 U.S.C. 111(d)(4), 801, 803.

SOURCE: 59 FR 23992, May 9, 1994, unless otherwise noted.

§ 252.1 Scope.

This part prescribes procedures under 17 U.S.C. 111(d)(4)(A), whereby parties claiming to be entitled to cable compulsory license royalty fees shall file claims with the Copyright Office.

[59 FR 23992, May 9, 1994, as amended at 60 FR 8198, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 252.2 Time of filing.

During the month of July each year, any party claiming to be entitled to cable compulsory license royalty fees for secondary transmissions of one or more of its works during the preceding calendar year shall file a claim to such fees with the Copyright Office. No royalty fees shall be distributed to a party for secondary transmissions during the specified period unless such party has timely filed a claim to such fees. Claimants may file claims jointly or as a single claim.

§ 252.3 Content of claims.

(a) Claims filed by parties claiming to be entitled to cable compulsory license royalty fees shall include the following information:

(1) The full legal name of the person or entity claiming royalty fees.

(2) The telephone number, facsimile number, if any, and full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the place of business of the person or entity.

(3) If the claim is a joint claim, a concise statement of the authorization for the filing of the joint claim, and the name of each claimant to the joint claim. For this purpose, a performing rights society shall not be required to obtain from its members or affiliates separate authorizations, apart from their standard membership affiliate agreements, or to list the name of each of its members or affiliates in the joint claim.

(4) For individual claims, a general statement of the nature of the claimant's copyrighted works and identification of at least one secondary transmission by a cable system of such works establishing a basis for the claim. For joint claims, a general statement of the nature of the joint claimants' copyrighted works and identification of at least one secondary transmission of one of the joint claimants' copyrighted works by a cable system establishing a basis for the joint claim.

(b) Claims shall bear the original signature of the claimant or of a duly authorized representative of the claimant.

(c) In the event that the legal name and/or address of the claimant changes after the filing of the claim, the claimant shall notify the Copyright Office of such change. If the good faith efforts of the Copyright Office to contact the claimant are frustrated because of failure to notify the Office of a name and/or address change, the claim may be subject to dismissal.

[59 FR 23992, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994]

§ 252.4 Compliance with statutory dates.

(a) Claims filed with the Copyright Office shall be considered timely filed only if:

(1) They are hand delivered, either by the claimant, the claimant's agent, or a private delivery carrier, to: Office of the Register of Copyrights, room 403, James Madison Memorial Building, 101 Independence Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20540, during normal business hours during the month of July; or

(2) They are addressed to: Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, P.O. Box 70977, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, and are deposited with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service and bear a July U.S. postmark.

(b) Notwithstanding subsection (a), in any year in which July 31 falls on a Saturday, Sunday, holiday, or other nonbusiness day within the District of Columbia or the Federal Government, claims received by the Copyright Office by the first business day in August, or properly addressed and deposited with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service and postmarked by the first business day in August, shall be considered timely filed.

(c) Claims dated only with a business meter that are received after July 31, will not be accepted as having been timely filed.

(d) No claim may be filed by facsimile transmission.

(e) In the event that a properly addressed and mailed claim is not timely received by the Copyright Office, a claimant may nonetheless prove that the claim was properly filed if it was sent by certified mail return receipt requested, and the claimant can provide a receipt bearing a July date stamp of the U.S. Postal Service, except where paragraph (b) of this section applies. No affidavit of an officer or employee of the claimant, or of a U.S. postal worker will be accepted in lieu of the receipt.

[59 FR 23992, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994; 61 FR 63718, Dec. 2, 1996]

§252.5 Copies of claims.

A claimant shall, for each claim submitted to the Copyright Office, file an original and two copies of the claim to cable royalty fees.

PART 253—USE OF CERTAIN COPYRIGHTED WORKS IN CONNECTION WITH NONCOMMERCIAL EDUCATIONAL BROADCASTING

253.1 General.
253.2 Definition of public broadcasting entity.
253.3 [Reserved]
253.4 Performance of musical compositions by PBS, NPR and other public broadcasting entities engaged in the activities set forth in 17 U.S.C. 118(d).
253.5 Performance of musical compositions by public broadcasting entities licensed to colleges and universities.
253.6 Performance of musical compositions by other public broadcasting entities.
253.7 Recording rights, rates and terms.
253.8 Terms and rates of royalty payments for the use of published pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works.
253.9 Unknown copyright owners.
253.10 Cost of living adjustment.
253.11 Notice of restrictions on use of reproductions of transmission programs.

AUTHORITY: 17 U.S.C. 118, 801(b)(1) and 803.

SOURCE: 57 FR 60954, Dec. 22, 1992, unless otherwise noted. Redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994.

§253.1 General.

This part 253 establishes terms and rates of royalty payments for certain activities using published nondramatic musical works and published pictorial, graphic and sculptural works during a period beginning on January 1, 1993, and ending on December 31, 1997. Upon compliance with 17 U.S.C. 118, and the terms and rates of this part, a public broadcasting entity may engage in the activities with respect to such works set forth in 17 U.S.C. 118(d).

§253.2 Definition of public broadcasting entity.

As used in this part, the term *public broadcasting entity* means a noncommercial educational broadcast station as defined in section 397 of title 47 and any nonprofit institution or organization engaged in the activities described in 17 U.S.C. 118(d)(2).

§253.3 [Reserved]

§253.4 Performance of musical compositions by PBS, NPR and other public broadcasting entities engaged in the activities set forth in 17 U.S.C. 118(d).

The following schedule of rates and terms shall apply to the performance by PBS, NPR and other public broadcasting entities engaged in the activities set forth in 17 U.S.C. 118(d) of copyrighted published nondramatic musical compositions, except for public broadcasting entities covered by §§253.5 and 253.6, and except for compositions which are the subject of voluntary license agreements, such as the PBS/NPR/ASCAP, the PBS/NPR/BMI and the PBS/NPR/SESAC license agreements.

(a) *Determination of royalty rate.* (1) For the performance of such a work in a feature presentation of PBS:

1993–1997 ..... $199.18

(2) For the performance of such a work as background or theme music in a PBS program:

1993–1997 ..... $50.46

(3) For the performance of such a work in a feature presentation of a station of PBS:

1993–1997 ..... $17.02

(4) For the performance of such a work as background or theme music in a program of a station of PBS:

1993–1997 ..... $3.59

(5) For the performance of such a work in a feature presentation of NPR:

1993–1997 ..... $20.19

(6) For the performance of such a work as background or theme music in an NPR program:

1993–1997 ..... $4.90

(7) For the performance of such a work in a feature presentation of a station of NPR:

1993–1997 ..... $1.43

(8) For the performance of such a work as background or theme music in a program of a station of NPR:

1993–1997 ..... $.51

(9) For the purposes of this schedule the rate for the performance of theme music in an entire series shall be double the single program theme rate.

(10) In the event the work is first performed in a program of a station of PBS or NPR, and such program is subsequently distributed by PBS or NPR, an additional royalty payment shall be made equal to the difference between the rate specified in this section for a program of a station of PBS or NPR, respectively, and the rate specified in this section for a PBS or NPR program, respectively.

(b) *Payment of royalty rate.* The required royalty rate shall be paid to each known copyright owner not later than July 31 of each calendar year for uses during the first six months of that calendar year, and not later than January 31 for uses during the last six months of the preceding calendar year.

(c) *Records of use.* PBS and NPR shall, upon the request of a copyright owner of a published musical work who believes a musical composition of such owner has been performed under the terms of this schedule, permit such copyright owner a reasonable opportunity to examine their standard cue sheets listing the nondramatic performances of musical compositions on PBS and NPR programs. Any local PBS and NPR station that is required by paragraph 4b of the PBS/NPR/ASCAP license agreement dated October 19, 1992, to prepare a music use report shall, upon request of a copyright owner who believes a musical composition of such owner has been performed under the terms of this schedule, permit such copyright owner to examine the report.

(d) *Terms of use.* The fees provided in this schedule for the performance of a musical work in a program shall cover performances of such work in such program for a period of three years following the first performance.

[57 FR 60954, Dec. 22, 1992. Redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994]

§ 253.5 Performance of musical compositions by public broadcasting entities licensed to colleges and universities.

(a) *Scope.* This section applies to the performance of copyrighted published nondramatic musical compositions by noncommercial radio stations which are licensed to colleges, universities, or other nonprofit educational institutions and which are not affiliated with National Public Radio.

(b) *Voluntary license agreements.* Notwithstanding the schedule of rates and terms established in this section, the rates and terms of any license agreements entered into by copyright owners and colleges, universities, and other nonprofit educational institutions concerning the performance of copyrighted musical compositions, including performances by noncommercial radio stations, shall apply in lieu of the rates and terms of this section.

(c) *Royalty rate.* A public broadcasting entity within the scope of this section may perform published nondramatic musical compositions subject to the following schedule of royalty rates:

(1) For all such compositions in the repertory of ASCAP, $217 annually.

(2) For all such compositions in the repertory of BMI, $217 annually.

(3) For all such compositions in the repertory of SESAC, $50 annually.

(4) For the performance of any other such compositions: $1.

(d) *Payment of royalty rate.* The public broadcasting entity shall pay the required royalty rate to ASCAP, BMI and SESAC not later than January 31 of each year.

(e) *Records of use.* A public broadcasting entity subject to this section shall furnish to ASCAP, BMI and SESAC, upon request, a music-use report during one week of each calendar year. ASCAP, BMI and SESAC shall not in any one calendar year request more than 10 stations to furnish such reports.

[57 FR 60954, Dec. 22, 1992, as amended at 58 FR 63294, Dec. 1, 1993; 60 FR 61655, Dec. 1, 1995; 61 FR 60613, Nov. 29, 1996]

§ 253.6 Performance of musical compositions by other public broadcasting entities.

(a) *Scope.* This section applies to the performance of copyrighted published nondramatic musical compositions by radio stations not licensed to colleges, universities, or other nonprofit educational institutions and which are not affiliated with National Public Radio.

(b) *Voluntary license agreements.* Notwithstanding the schedule of rates and terms established in this section, the rates and terms of any license agreements entered into by copyright owners and noncommercial radio stations within the scope of this section concerning the performance of copyrighted musical compositions, including performances by noncommercial radio stations, shall apply in lieu of the rates and terms of this section.

(c) *Royalty rate.* A public broadcasting entity within the scope of this section may perform published nondramatic musical compositions subject to the following schedule of royalty rates:

(1) For all such compositions in the repertory of ASCAP, in 1993, $295; in 1994, $310; in 1995, $325; in 1996, $340; in 1997, $360.

(2) For all such compositions in the repertory of BMI, in 1993, $295; in 1994, $310; in 1995, $325; in 1996, $340; in 1997, $360.

(3) For all such compositions in the repertory of SESAC, in 1993, $63; in 1994, $66; in 1995, $69; in 1996, $72; in 1997, $75.

(4) For the performance of any other such compositions, in 1993 through 1997, $1.

(d) *Payment of royalty rate.* The public broadcasting entity shall pay the required royalty rate to ASCAP, BMI and SESAC not later than January 31 of each year.

(e) *Records of use.* A public broadcasting entity subject to this section shall furnish to ASCAP, BMI and SESAC, upon request, a music-use report during one week of each calendar year. ASCAP, BMI and SESAC each shall not in any one calendar year request more than 5 stations to furnish such reports.

[57 FR 60954, Dec. 22, 1992. Redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994, and amended at 60 FR 8198, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 253.7 Recording rights, rates and terms.

(a) *Scope.* This section establishes rates and terms for the recording of nondramatic performances and displays of musical works, other than compositions subject to voluntary license agreements, on and for the radio and television programs of public broadcasting entities, whether or not in synchronization or timed relationship with the visual or aural content, and for the making, reproduction, and distribution of copies and phonorecords of public broadcasting programs containing such nondramatic performances and displays of musical works solely for the purpose of transmission by public broadcasting entities. The rates and terms established in this schedule include the making of the reproductions described in 17 U.S.C. 118(d)(3).

(b) *Royalty rate.* (1)(i) For uses described in paragraph (a) of this section of a musical work in a PBS-distributed program, the royalty fees shall be calculated by multiplying the following per-composition rates by the number of different compositions in that PBS-distributed program:

	1993–1997
Feature	$99.85
Concert feature (per minute)	29.98
Background	50.46
Theme:	
Single program or first series program	50.46
Other series program	20.48

(ii) For such uses other than in a PBS-distributed television program, the royalty fee shall be calculated by multiplying the following per-composition rates by the number of different compositions in that program:

	1993–1997
Feature	$8.25
Concert feature (per minute)	2.17
Background	3.59
Theme:	
Single program or first series program	3.59
Other series program	1.43

(iii) In the event the work is first recorded other than in a PBS-distributed program, and such program is subsequently distributed by PBS, an additional royalty payment shall be made equal to the difference between the rate specified in this section for other than a PBS-distributed program and the rate specified in this section for a PBS-distributed program.

(2) For uses licensed herein of a musical work in a NPR program, the royalty fees shall be calculated by multiplying the following per-composition rates by the number of different compositions in any NPR program distributed by NPR. For purposes of this schedule ''National Public Radio'' programs include all programs produced in whole or in part by NPR, or by any NPR station or organization under contract with NPR.

	1993–1997
Feature	$10.81
Concert feature (per half hour)	15.87
Background	5.41
Theme:	
Single program or first series program	5.41
Other series program	2.16

(3) For the purposes of this schedule, a ''Concert Feature'' shall be deemed to be the nondramatic presentation in a program of all or part of a symphony, concerto, or other serious work originally written for concert performance or the nondramatic presentation in a program of portions of a serious work originally written for opera performance.

(4) For such uses other than in a NPR-produced radio program:

Feature	.70
Feature (concert) (per half hour)	1.45
Background	.35

(5) The schedule of fees covers broadcast use for a period of three years following the first broadcast. Succeeding broadcast use periods will require the following additional payment: second three-year period—50 percent; each three-year period thereafter—25 percent; provided that a 100 percent additional payment prior to the expiration of the first three-year period will cover broadcast use during all subsequent broadcast use periods without limitation. Such succeeding uses which are subsequent to December 31, 1997 shall be subject to the royalty rates established in this schedule.

(c) *Payment of royalty rates.* The required royalty rates shall be paid to each known copyright owner not later than July 31 of each calendar year for uses during the first six months of that calendar year, and not later than January 31 for uses during the last six months of the preceding calendar year.

(d) *Records of use.* (1) Maintenance of cue sheets. PBS and its stations, NPR, or other television public broadcasting entities shall maintain and make available for examination pursuant to subsection (e) copies of their standard cue sheets or summaries of same listing the recording of the musical works of such copyright owners.

(2) Content of cue sheets or summaries. Such cue sheets or summaries shall include:

(i) The title, composer and author to the extent such information is reasonably obtainable.

(ii) The type of use and manner of performance thereof in each case.

(iii) For Concert Feature music, the actual recorded time period on the program, plus all distribution and broadcast information available to the public broadcasting entity.

(e) *Filing of use reports with the Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel and/or Librarian of Congress. Deposit of cue sheets or summaries.* PBS and its stations, NPR, or other television public broadcasting entity shall deposit with the CRT copies of their standard music cue sheets or summaries of same (which may be in the form of hard copy of computerized reports) listing the recording pursuant to this schedule of the musical works of copyright owners. Such cue sheets or summaries shall be deposited not later than July 31 of each calendar year for recordings during the first six months of the calendar year and not later than January 31 of each calendar year for recordings during the second six months of the preceding calendar year. PBS and NPR shall maintain at their offices copies of all standard music cue sheets from which such music use reports are prepared. Such music cue sheets shall be furnished to the CRT upon its request and also shall be available during regular business hours at the offices of PBS or NPR for examination by a copyright owner who believes a musical composition of such

owner has been recorded pursuant to this schedule.

[57 FR 60954, Dec. 22, 1992; 58 FR 7051, Feb. 4, 1993; 58 FR 8820, Feb. 17, 1993]

§ 253.8 Terms and rates of royalty payments for the use of published pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works.

(a) *Scope.* This section establishes rates and terms for the use of published pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works by public broadcasting entities for the activities described in 17 U.S.C. 118. The rates and terms established in this schedule include the making of the reproductions described in 17 U.S.C. 118(d)(3).

(b) *Royalty rate.* (1) The following schedule of rates shall apply to the use of works within the scope of this section:

(i) For such uses in a PBS-distributed program:

(A) For a featured display of a work.

1993–1997.....$61.00

(B) For background and montage display.

1993–1997.....$29.75

(C) For use of a work for program identification or for thematic use.

1993–1997.....$120.25

(D) For the display of an art reproduction copyrighted separately from the work of fine art from which the work was reproduced, irrespective of whether the reproduced work of fine art is copyrighted so as to be subject also to payment of a display fee under the terms of this schedule.

1993–1997.....$39.50

(ii) For such uses in other than PBS-distributed programs:

(A) For a featured display of a work.

1993–1997.....$39.50

(B) For background and montage display.

1993–1997.....$20.25

(C) For use of a work for program identification or for thematic use.

1993–1997.....$80.75

(D) For the display of an art reproduction copyrighted separately from the work of fine art from which the work was reproduced, irrespective of whether the reproduced work of fine art is copyrighted so as to be subject also to payment of a display fee under the terms of this schedule.

1993–1997.....$20.25

For the purposes of this schedule the rate for the thematic use of a work in an entire series shall be double the single program theme rate. In the event the work is first used other than in a PBS-distributed program, and such program is subsequently distributed by PBS, an additional royalty payment shall be made equal to the difference between the rate specified in this section for other than a PBS-distributed program and the rate specified in this section for a PBS-distributed program.

(2) ''Featured display'' for purposes of this schedule means a full-screen or substantially full-screen display appearing on the screen for more than three seconds. Any display less than full-screen or substantially full-screen, or full-screen for three seconds or less, is deemed to be a ''background or montage display''.

(3) ''Thematic use'' is the utilization of the works of one or more artists where the works constitute the central theme of the program or convey a story line.

(4) ''Display of an art reproduction copyrighted separately from the work of fine art from which the work was reproduced'' means a transparency or other reproduction of an underlying work of fine art.

(c) *Payment of royalty rate.* PBS or other public broadcasting entity shall pay the required royalty fees to each copyright owner not later than July 31 of each calendar year for uses during the first six months of that calendar year, and not later than January 31 for uses during the last six months of the preceding calendar year.

(d) *Records of use.* (1) PBS and its stations or other public broadcasting entity shall maintain and furnish either to copyright owners, or to the offices of generally recognized organizations representing the copyright owners of pictorial, graphic and sculptural works,

copies of their standard lists containing the pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works displayed on their programs. Such notice shall include the name of the copyright owner, if known, the specific source from which the work was taken, a description of the work used, the title of the program on which the work was used, and the date of the original broadcast of the program.

(2) Such listings shall be furnished not later than July 31 of each calendar year for displays during the first six months of the calendar year, and not later than January 31 of each calendar year for displays during the second six months of the preceding calendar year.

(e) *Filing of use reports with the Copyright Office.* (1) PBS and its stations or other public broadcasting entity shall deposit with the Copyright Office copies of their standard lists containing the pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works displayed on their programs. Such notice shall include the name of the copyright owner, if known, the specific source from which the work was taken, a description of the work used, the title of the program on which the work was used, and the date of the original broadcast of the program.

(2) Such listings shall be furnished not later than July 31 of each calendar year for displays during the first six months of the calendar year, and not later than January 31 of each calendar year for displays during the second six months of the preceding calendar year.

(f) *Terms of use.* (1) The rates of this schedule are for unlimited broadcast use for a period of three years from the date of the first broadcast use of the work under this schedule. Succeeding broadcast use periods will require the following additional payment: Second three-year period—50 percent; each three-year period thereafter—25 percent; provided that a 100 percent additional payment prior to the expiration of the first three-year period will cover broadcast use during all subsequent broadcast use periods without limitation. Such succeeding uses which are subsequent to December 31, 1997 shall be subject to the rates established in this schedule.

(2) Pursuant to the provisions of 17 U.S.C. 118 (f), nothing in this schedule shall be construed to permit, beyond the limits of fair use as provided in 17 U.S.C. 107, the production of a transmission program drawn to any substantial extent from a published compilation of pictorial, graphic, or sculptural works.

[58 FR 60954, Dec. 22, 1992; 58 FR 7051, Feb. 4, 1993. Redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994]

§ 253.9 Unknown copyright owners.

If PBS and its stations, NPR and its stations, or other public broadcasting entity is not aware of the identity of, or unable to locate, a copyright owner who is entitled to receive a royalty payment under this part, they shall retain the required fee in a segregated trust account for a period of three years from the date of the required payment. No claim to such royalty fees shall be valid after the expiration of the three year period. Public broadcasting entities may establish a joint trust fund for the purposes of this section. Public broadcasting entities shall make available to the Copyright Office, upon request, information concerning fees deposited in trust funds.

[57 FR 60954, Dec. 22, 1992. Redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994]

§ 253.10 Cost of living adjustment.

(a) On December 1, 1993, the Librarian of Congress shall publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a notice of the change in the cost of living as determined by the Consumer Price Index (all consumers, all items) during the period from the most recent Index published prior to December 1, 1992, to the most recent Index published prior to December 1, 1993. On each December 1 thereafter the Librarian of Congress shall publish a notice of the change in the cost of living during the period from the most recent index published prior to the previous notice, to the most recent Index published prior to December 1, of that year.

(b) On the same date of the notices published pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, the Librarian of Congress shall publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a revised schedule of rates for § 253.5 which shall adjust those royalty amounts established in dollar amounts

according to the change in the cost of living determined as provided in paragraph (a) of this section. Such royalty rates shall be fixed at the nearest dollar.

(c) The adjusted schedule of rates for §253.5 shall become effective thirty days after publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

[57 FR 60954, Dec. 22, 1992. Redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 63042, Dec. 7, 1994]

§253.11 Notice of restrictions on use of reproductions of transmission programs.

Any public broadcasting entity which, pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 118, supplies a reproduction of a transmission program to governmental bodies or nonprofit institutions shall include with each copy of the reproduction a warning notice stating in substance that the reproductions may be used for a period of not more than seven days from the specified date of transmission, that the reproductions must be destroyed by the user before or at the end of such period, and that a failure to fully comply with these terms shall subject the body or institution to the remedies for infringement of copyright.

PART 254—ADJUSTMENT OF ROYALTY RATE FOR COIN-OPERATED PHONORECORD PLAYERS

Sec.

254.1 General.
254.2 Definition of coin-operated phonorecord player.
254.3 Compulsory license fees for coin-operated phonorecord players.

AUTHORITY: 17 U.S.C. 116, 801(b)(1).

§254.1 General.

This part 254 establishes the compulsory license fees for coin-operated phonorecord players beginning on January 1, 1982, in accordance with the provisions of 17 U.S.C. 116.

[45 FR 890, Jan. 5, 1981. Redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994]

§254.2 Definition of coin-operated phonorecord player.

As used in this part, the term *coin-operated phonorecord player* is a machine or device that:

(a) Is employed solely for the performance of nondramatic musical works by means of phonorecords upon being activated by insertion of coins, currency, tokens, or other monetary units or their equivalent;

(b) Is located in an establishment making no direct or indirect charge for admission;

(c) Is accompanied by a list of the titles of all the musical works available for performance on it, which list is affixed to the phonorecord player or posted in the establishment in a prominent position where it can be readily examined by the public; and

(d) Affords a choice of works available for performance and permits the choice to be made by the patrons of the establishment in which it is located.

[60 FR 8198, Feb. 13, 1995]

§254.3 Compulsory license fees for coin-operated phonorecord players.

(a) Commencing January 1, 1982, the annual compulsory license fee for a coin-operated phonorecord player shall be $25.

(b) Commencing January 1, 1984, the annual compulsory license fee for a coin-operated phonorecord player shall be $50.

(c) Commencing January 1, 1987, the annual compulsory license fee for a coin-operated phonorecord player shall be $63.

(d) If performances are made available on a particular coin-operated phonorecord player for the first time after July 1 of any year, the compulsory license fee for the remainder of that year shall be one half of the annual rate of (a), (b), or (c) of this section, whichever is applicable.

(e) Commencing January 1, 1990, the annual compulsory license fee for a coin-operated phonorecord player is suspended through December 31, 1999, or until such earlier or later time as

the March 1990 license agreement between AMOA and ASCAP/BMI/SESAC is terminated.

[51 FR 27537, Aug. 1, 1986, as amended at 55 FR 28197, July 10, 1990. Redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994]

PART 255—ADJUSTMENT OF ROYALTY PAYABLE UNDER COMPULSORY LICENSE FOR MAKING AND DISTRIBUTING PHONORECORDS

Sec.
255.1 General.
255.2 Royalty payable under compulsory license.
255.3 Adjustment of royalty rate.
255.4 Definition of digital phonorecord delivery.
255.5 Royalty rate for digital phonorecord deliveries.

AUTHORITY: 17 U.S.C. 801(b)(1) and 803.

§ 255.1 General.

This part 255 adjusts the rates of royalties payable under the compulsory license for making and distributing phonorecords, including digital phonorecord deliveries, embodying nondramatic musical works, under 17 U.S.C. 115.

[60 FR 61657, Dec. 1, 1995]

§ 255.2 Royalty payable under compulsory license.

With respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord, the royalty payable shall be either four cents, or three-quarters of one cent per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, for every phonorecord made and distributed on or after July 1, 1981, subject to adjustment pursuant to § 255.3.

[46 FR 891, Jan. 5, 1981, as amended at 46 FR 62268, Dec. 23, 1981. Redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994]

§ 255.3 Adjustment of royalty rate.

(a) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1983, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 4.25 cents, or 0.8 cent per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (b), (c), (d), (e), (f), (g), and (h) of this section.

(b) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after July 1, 1984, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 4.5 cents, or 0.85 cent per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (c), (d), (e), (f), (g), and (h) of this section.

(c) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1986, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 5.0 cents, or 0.95 cent per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (d), (e), (f), (g), and (h) of this section.

(d) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1988, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 5.25 cents, or 1.0 cent per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (e), (f), (g), and (h) of this section.

(e) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1990, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 5.7 cents, or 1.1 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (f), (g), and (h) of this section.

(f) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1992, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 6.25 cents, or 1.2 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraphs (g), and (h) of this section.

(g) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1994, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 6.6 cents, or 1.25 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is

larger, subject to further adjustment pursuant to paragraph (h) of this section.

(h) For every phonorecord made and distributed on or after January 1, 1996, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 6.95 cents, or 1.3 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger.

[60 FR 55459, Nov. 1, 1995]

§ 255.4 Definition of digital phonorecord delivery.

A ''digital phonorecord delivery'' is each individual delivery of a phonorecord by digital transmission of a sound recording which results in a specifically identifiable reproduction by or for any transmission recipient of a phonorecord of that sound recording, regardless of whether the digital transmission is also a public performance of the sound recording or any nondramatic musical work embodied therein. A digital phonorecord delivery does not result from a real-time, non-interactive subscription transmission of a sound recording where no reproduction of the sound recording or the musical work embodied therein is made from the inception of the transmission through to its receipt by the transmission recipient in order to make the sound recording audible.

[60 FR 61657, Dec. 1, 1995]

§ 255.5 Royalty rate for digital phonorecord deliveries.

For every digital phonorecord delivery made on or before December 31, 1997, the royalty rate payable with respect to each work embodied in the phonorecord shall be either 6.95 cents, or 1.3 cents per minute of playing time or fraction thereof, whichever amount is larger.

[60 FR 61657, Dec. 1, 1995]

PART 256—ADJUSTMENT OF ROYALTY FEE FOR CABLE COMPULSORY LICENSE

Sec.

256.1 General.
256.2 Royalty fee for compulsory license for secondary transmission by cable systems.

AUTHORITY: 17 U.S.C. 702, 802.

§ 256.1 General.

This part establishes adjusted terms and rates for royalty payments in accordance with the provisions of 17 U.S.C. 111 and 801(b)(2)(A), (B), (C), and (D). Upon compliance with 17 U.S.C 111 and the terms and rates of this part, a cable system entity may engage in the activities set forth in 17 U.S.C. 111.

[47 FR 52159, Nov. 19, 1982. Redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994, and amended at 60 FR 8198, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 256.2 Royalty fee for compulsory license for secondary transmission by cable systems.

(a) Commencing with the first semiannual accounting period of 1985 and for each semiannual accounting period thereafter, the royalty rates established by 17 U.S.C. 111(d)(1)(B) shall be as follows:

(1) .893 of 1 per centum of such gross receipts for the privilege of further transmitting any nonnetwork programming of a primary transmitter in whole or in part beyond the local service area of such primary transmitter, such amount to be applied against the fee, if any, payable pursuant to paragraphs (a)(2) through (4);

(2) .893 of 1 per centum of such gross receipts for the first distant signal equivalent;

(3) .563 of 1 per centum of such gross receipts for each of the second, third and fourth distant signal equivalents; and

(4) .265 of 1 per centum of such gross receipts for the fifth distant signal equivalent and each additional distant signal equivalent thereafter.

(b) Commencing with the first semiannual accounting period of 1985 and for each semiannual accounting period thereafter, the gross receipts limitations established by 17 U.S.C. 111(d)(1)(C) and (D) shall be adjusted as follows:

(1) If the actual gross receipts paid by subscribers to a cable system for the period covered by the statement for the basic service of providing secondary transmission of primary broadcast transmitters total $146,000 or less, gross

receipts of the cable system for the purpose of this paragraph shall be computed by subtracting from such actual gross receipts the amount by which $146,000 exceeds such actual gross receipts, except that in no case shall a cable system's gross receipts be reduced to less than $5,600. The royalty fee payable under this paragraph shall be 0.5 of 1 per centum regardless of the number of distant signal equivalents, if any; and

(2) If the acutal gross receipts paid by the subscribers to a cable system for the period covered by the statement, for the basis service of providing secondary transmissions of primary broadcast transmitters, are more that $146,000 but less than $292,000, the royalty fee payable under this paragraph shall be:

(i) 0.5 of 1 per centum of any gross receipts up to $146,000 and

(ii) 1 per centum of any gross receipts in excess of $146,000 but less than $292,000, regardless of the number of distant signal equivalents, if any.

(c) Notwithstanding paragraphs (a) and (d) of this section, commencing with the first accounting period of 1983 and for each semiannual accounting period thereafter, for each distant signal equivalent or fraction thereof not represented by the carriage of:

(1) Any signal which was permitted (or, in the case of cable systems commencing operations after June 24, 1981, which would have been permitted) under the rules and regulations of the Federal Communications Commission in effect on June 24, 1981, or

(2) A signal of the same type (that is, independent, network, or non-commercial educational) substituted for such permitted signal, or

(3) A signal which was carried pursuant to an individual waiver of the rules and regulations of the Federal Communications Commission, as such rules were in effect on June 24, 1981;

the royalty rate shall be, in lieu of the royalty rates specified in paragraphs (a) and (d) of this section, 3.75 per centum of the gross receipts of the cable systems for each distant signal equivalent; any fraction of a distant signal equivalent shall be computed at its fractional value.

(d) Commencing with the first semiannual accounting period of 1990 and for each semiannual accounting period thereafter, in the case of a cable system located outside the 35-mile specified zone of a commercial VHF station that places a predicted Grade B contour, in whole or in part, over the cable system, and that is not significantly viewed or otherwise exempt from the FCC's syndicated exclusivity rules in effect on June 24, 1981, for each distant signal equivalent or fraction thereof represented by the carriage of such commercial VHF station, the royalty rate shall be, in addition to the amount specified in paragraph (a) of this section,

(1) For cable systems located wholly or in part within a top 50 television market,

(i) .599 per centum of such gross receipts for the first distant signal equivalent;

(ii) .377 per centum of such gross receipts for each of the second, third, and fourth distant signal equivalents; and

(iii) .178 per centum of such gross receipts for the fifth distant signal equivalent and each additional distant signal equivalent thereafter;

(2) For cable systems located wholly or in part within a second 50 television market,

(i) .300 per centum of such gross receipts for the first distant signal equivalent;

(ii) .189 per centum of such gross receipts for each of the second, third, and fourth distant signal equivalents; and

(iii) .089 per centum of such gross receipts for the fifth distant signal equivalent and each additional distant signal equivalent thereafter;

(3) For purposes of this section *top 50 television markets* and ''second 50 television markets'' shall be defined as the comparable terms are defined or interpreted in accordance with 47 CFR 76.51, as effective June 24, 1981.

[47 FR 52159, Nov. 19, 1982, as amended at 50 FR 18481, May 1, 1985; 54 FR 12619, Mar. 28, 1989; 55 FR 33613, Aug. 16, 1990; 56 FR 12122, Mar. 22, 1991. Redesignated at 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994]

PART 257—FILING OF CLAIMS TO SATELLITE CARRIER ROYALTY FEES

Sec.
257.1 General.
257.2 Time of filing.
257.3 Content of claims.
257.4 Compliance with statutory dates.
257.5 Copies of claims.
257.6 Separate claims required.

AUTHORITY: 17 U.S.C. 119(b)(4).

SOURCE: 59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994, unless otherwise noted.

§257.1 General.

This part prescribes the procedures under 17 U.S.C. 119(b)(4) whereby parties claiming to be entitled to compulsory license royalty fees for secondary transmissions by satellite carriers of television broadcast signals to the public for private home viewing shall file claims with the Copyright Office.

§257.2 Time of filing.

During the month of July each year, any party claiming to be entitled to compulsory license royalty fees for secondary transmissions by satellite carriers during the previous calendar year of television broadcast signals to the public for private home viewing shall file a claim to such fees with the Copyright Office. No royalty fees shall be distributed to any party during the specified period unless such party has timely filed a claim to such fees. Claimants may file claims jointly or as a single claim.

§257.3 Content of claims.

(a) Claims filed by parties claiming to be entitled to satellite carrier compulsory license royalty fees shall include the following information:

(1) The full legal name of the person or entity claiming royalty fees.

(2) The telephone number, facsimile number, if any, and full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the place of business of the person or entity.

(3) If the claim is a joint claim, a concise statement of the authorization of the filing of the joint claim, and the name of each claimant to the joint claim. For this purpose, a performing rights society shall not be required to obtain from its members or affiliates separate authorizations, apart from their standard membership or affiliate agreements, or to list the name of each of its members or affiliates in the joint claim.

(4) For individual claims, a general statement of the nature of the claimant's copyrighted works and identification of at least one secondary transmission by a satellite carrier of such works establishing a basis for the claim. For joint claims, a general statement of the nature of the joint claimants' copyrighted works and identification of at least one secondary transmission of one of the joint claimants' copyrighted works by a satellite carrier establishing a basis for the joint claim.

(b) Claims shall bear the original signature of the claimant or of a duly authorized representative of the claimant.

(c) In the event that the legal name and/or full address of the claimant changes after the filing of the claim, the claimant shall notify the Copyright Office of such change. If the good faith efforts of the Copyright Office to contact the claimant are frustrated because of failure to notify the Office of a name and/or address change, the claim may be subject to dismissal.

[59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63043, Dec. 7, 1994]

§257.4 Compliance with statutory dates.

(a) Claims filed with the Copyright Office shall be considered timely filed only if:

(1) They are hand delivered, either by the claimant, the claimant's agent, or a private delivery carrier, to: Office of the Register of Copyrights, room 403, James Madison Memorial Building, 101 Independence Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20540, during normal business hours during the month of July; or

(2) They are addressed to: Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, P.O. Box 70977, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, and are deposited with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service and bear a July U.S. postmark.

(b) Notwithstanding subsection (a), in any year in which July 31 falls on a Saturday, Sunday, holiday, or other

nonbusiness day within the District of Columbia or the Federal Government, claims received by the Copyright Office by the first business day in August, or properly addressed and deposited with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service and postmarked by the first business day in August, shall be considered timely filed.

(c) Claims dated only with a business meter that are received after July 31, will not be accepted as having been timely filed.

(d) No claim may be filed by facsimile transmission.

(e) In the event that a properly addressed and mailed claim is not timely received by the Copyright Office, a claimant may nonetheless prove that the claim was properly filed if it was sent by certified mail return receipt requested, and the claimant can provide a receipt bearing a July date stamp of the U.S. Postal Service, except where paragraph (b) of this section applies. No affidavit of an officer or employee of the claimant, or of a U.S. postal worker will be accepted in lieu of the receipt.

[59 FR 23993, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63043, Dec. 7, 1994; 61 FR 63718, Dec. 2, 1996]

§ 257.5 Copies of claims.

A claimant shall, for each claim submitted to the Copyright Office, file an original and two copies of the claim to satellite carrier royalty fees.

§ 257.6 Separate claims required.

If a party intends to file claims for both cable compulsory license and satellite carrier compulsory license royalty fees during the same month of July, that party must file separate claims with the Copyright Office. Any single claim which purports to file for both cable and satellite carrier royalty fees will be dismissed.

PART 258—ADJUSTMENT OF ROYALTY FEE FOR SECONDARY TRANSMISSIONS BY SATELLITE CARRIERS

Sec.

258.1 General.
258.2 Definition of syndex-proof signal.
258.3 Royalty fee for secondary transmission of broadcast stations by satellite carriers.

AUTHORITY: 17 U.S.C. 702, 802.

§ 258.1 General.

This part 258 adjusts the rates of royalties payable under compulsory license for the secondary transmission of broadcast stations under 17 U.S.C. 119.

[57 FR 19053, May 1, 1992. Redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994]

§ 258.2 Definition of syndex-proof signal.

A satellite retransmission of a broadcast signal shall be deemed ''syndex-proof'' for purposes of § 258.3(b) if, during any semiannual reporting period, the retransmission does not include any program which, if delivered by any cable system in the United States, would be subject to the syndicated exclusivity rules of the Federal Communications Commission.

[57 FR 19053, May 1, 1992. Redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994]

§ 258.3 Royalty fee for secondary transmission of broadcast stations by satellite carriers.

Commencing May 1, 1992, the royalty rate for the secondary transmission of broadcast stations for private home viewing by satellite carriers shall be as follows:

(a) 17.5 cents per subscriber per month for independent stations;

(b) 14 cents per subscriber per month for independent stations whose signals are syndex-proof; and

(c) 6 cents per subscriber per month for network stations and noncommercial educational stations.

[57 FR 19053, May 1, 1992. Redesignated at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994]

PART 259—FILING OF CLAIMS TO DIGITAL AUDIO RECORDING DEVICES AND MEDIA ROYALTY PAYMENTS

Sec.

259.1 General.
259.2 Time of filing.
259.3 Content of claim.
259.4 Content of notices regarding independent administrators.

259.5 Compliance with statutory dates.
259.6 Copies of claims.

AUTHORITY: 17 U.S.C. 1007(a)(1).

SOURCE: 58 FR 53826, Oct. 18, 1993, unless otherwise noted. Redesignated at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994.

§ 259.1 General.

This part prescribes procedures pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 1007(a)(1), whereby interested copyright parties, as defined in 17 U.S.C. 1001(7), claiming to be entitled to royalty payments made for the importation and distribution in the United States, or the manufacture and distribution in the United States, of digital audio recording devices and media pursuant to 17 U.S.C. 1006, shall file claims with the Copyright Office.

[58 FR 53826, Oct. 18, 1993. Redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 33202, June 28, 1994; 60 FR 8198, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 259.2 Time of filing.

(a) *General.* During January and February of each succeeding year, every interested copyright party claiming to be entitled to digital audio recording devices and media royalty payments made for quarterly periods ending during the previous calendar year shall file a claim with the Copyright Office. Claimants may file claims jointly or as a single claim.

(b) *Consequences of an untimely filing.* No royalty payments for the previous calendar year shall be distributed to any interested copyright party who has not filed a claim to such royalty payments during January or February of the following calendar year.

(c) *Authorization.* Any organization or association, acting as a common agent, shall be required to obtain from its members or affiliates separate, specific, and written authorization, signed by members, affiliates, or their representatives, to file claims to the Musical Works Fund or the Sound Recordings Fund, apart from their standard agreements, for purposes of royalties filing and fee distribution. Such written authorization, however, will not be required for claimants to the Musical Works Fund where either:

(1) The agreement between the organization or association and its members or affiliates specifically authorizes such entity to represent its members or affiliates before the Copyright Office and/or the Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels in royalty filing and fee distribution proceedings; or

(2) The agreement between the organization or association and its members or affiliates, as specified in a court order issued by a court with authority to interpret the terms of the contract, authorizes such entity to represent its members or affiliates before the Copyright Office and/or Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panels in royalty filing and fee distribution proceedings.

[60 FR 61660, Dec. 1, 1995, as amended at 61 FR 63718, Dec. 2, 1996]

§ 259.3 Content of claims.

(a) Claims filed by interested copyright parties for digital audio recording devices and media royalty payments shall include the following information:

(1) The full legal name of the person or entity claiming royalty payments.

(2) The telephone number, facsimile number, if any, and full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the place of business of the person or entity.

(3) A statement as to how the claimant fits within the definition of interested copyright party specified in 17 U.S.C. 1001(7).

(4) A statement as to whether the claim is being made against the Sound Recordings Fund or the Musical Works Fund, as set forth in 17 U.S.C. 1006(b) and as to which Subfund of the Sound Recordings Fund (i.e., the copyright owners or featured recording artists Subfund) or the Musical Works Fund (i.e., the music publishers or writers Subfund) the claim is being made against as set forth in 17 U.S.C. 1006(b)(1)–(2).

(5) Identification, establishing a basis for the claim, of at least one musical work or sound recording embodied in a digital musical recording or an analog musical recording lawfully made under title 17 of the United States Code that has been distributed (as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. 1001(6), and that, during the period to which the royalty payments claimed pertain, has been (i) Distributed (as that term is defined in 17 U.S.C. 1001(6) in the form of digital musical recordings or analog musical

recordings, or (ii) Disseminated to the public in transmissions.

(b) Claims shall bear the original signature of the claimant or of a duly authorized representative of the claimant.

(c) In the event that the legal name and/or address of the claimant changes after the filing of the claim, the claimant shall notify the Copyright Office of such change. If the good faith efforts of the Copyright Office to contact the claimant are frustrated because of failure to notify the Office of a name and/or address change, the claim may be subject to dismissal.

(d) If the claim is a joint claim, it shall include a concise statement of the authorization for the filing of the joint claim, and the name of each claimant to the joint claim.

(e) If an interested copyright party intends to file claims against more than one Subfund, each such claim must be filed separately with the Copyright Office. Any claim that purports to file against more than one subfund will be rejected.

[58 FR 53826, Oct. 18, 1993. Redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23994, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 33202, June 28, 1994; 59 FR 63043, Dec. 7, 1994; 60 FR 8198, 8199, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 259.4 Content of notices regarding independent administrators.

(a) The independent administrator jointly appointed by the interested copyright parties, as defined in 17 U.S.C. 1001 (7)(A), and the American Federation of Musicians (or any successor entity) for the purpose of managing, and ultimately distributing the royalty payments to nonfeatured musicians as defined in 17 U.S.C. 1006(b)(1), shall file a notice informing the Copyright Office of his/her name and address.

(b) The independent administrator jointly appointed by the interested copyright parties, as defined in 17 U.S.C. 1001(7)(A), and the American Federation of Television and Radio Artists (or any successor entity) for the purpose of managing, and ultimately distributing the royalty payments to nonfeatured vocalists as defined in 17 U.S.C. 1006(b)(1), shall file a notice informing the Copyright Office of his/her full name and address.

(c) A notice filed under paragraph (a) or (b) of this section shall include the following information:

(1) The full name of the independent administrator;

(2) The telephone number and facsimile number, if any, full address, including a specific number and street name or rural route, of the place of business of the independent administrator.

(d) Notice shall bear the original signature of the independent administrator or a duly authorized representative of the independent administrator, and shall be filed with the Copyright Office no later than March 31 of each year, commencing with March 31, 1994.

(e) No notice may be filed by facsimile transmission.

[58 FR 53826, Oct. 18, 1993. Redesignated and amended at 59 FR 23994, 23995, May 9, 1994; 59 FR 33202, June 28, 1994; 60 FR 8198, Feb. 13, 1995]

§ 259.5 Compliance with statutory dates.

(a) Claims filed with the Copyright Office shall be considered timely filed only if:

(1) They are hand delivered, either by the claimant, the claimant's agent, or a private delivery carrier, to: Office of the Register of Copyrights, room 403, James Madison Memorial Building, 101 Independence Avenue SE., Washington, DC 20540, during normal business hours during the month of January or February; or

(2) They are addressed to: Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel, P.O. Box 70977, Southwest Station, Washington, DC 20024, and are deposited with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service and bear a January or February U.S. postmark.

(b) Notwithstanding subsection (a), in any year in which the last day of February falls on Saturday, Sunday, a holiday, or other nonbusiness day within the District of Columbia or the Federal Government, claims received by the Copyright Office by the first business day in March, or properly addressed and deposited with sufficient postage with the United States Postal Service and postmarked by the first business day in March, shall be considered timely filed.

(c) Claims dated only with a business meter that are received after the last day of February, will not be accepted as having been timely filed.

(d) No claim may be filed by facsimile transmission.

(e) In the event that a properly addressed and mailed claim is not timely received by the Copyright Office, a claimant may nonetheless prove that the claim was properly filed if it was sent by certified mail return receipt requested, and the claimant can provide a receipt bearing a January or February date stamp of the U.S. Postal Service, except where paragraph (b) of this section applies. No affidavit of an officer or employee of the claimant, or of a U.S. postal worker will be accepted in lieu of the receipt.

[59 FR 23995, May 9, 1994, as amended at 59 FR 63043, Dec. 7, 1994; 61 FR 63718, Dec. 2, 1996]

§259.6 Copies of claims.

A claimant shall, for each claim submitted to the Copyright Office, file an original and two copies of the claim to digital audio recording devices and media royalty payments.

[59 FR 23995, May 9, 1994]

INDEX TO CHAPTER II—COPYRIGHT OFFICE, LIBRARY OF CONGRESS

Section

Access to, and confidentiality of, Statements of Account for digital audio recording devices or media 201.29
Auditor's Reports, and other verification information filed in the Copyright Office for digital audio recording devices or media 201.29
Access (public) to CARP[1] meetings ..... 251.11 to 251.16
Account (Statements of) for digital audio recording devices or media 201.28
Acquisition and deposit of unpublished television transmission programs 202.22
Addresses prescribed for communications with Copyright Office ... 201.1, 201.2, 201.5, 202.3
Adjustment (rate) proceedings (CARP)[1] ..... 251.60 to 251.65
Advance notices of potential infringement 201.22
Affixation (methods of) of copyright notice and positions on works 201.20
Agreements between copyright owners and public broadcasting entities, Recordation of 201.9
Amend or correct individual's record under Privacy Act, Appeal of refusal to 204.8
Amendment or correction of records under Privacy Act, Request for 204.7
Annual Statements of Account, Contents of ..... 201.28(f)
Arbitrators (CARP)[1], Financial disclosure statements of 251.32
Arbitrators (CARP)[1], Standards of conduct for ..... 251.30 to 251.39
Architectural works 202.11
Architectural works, Deposit of ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xviii)
Archives and libraries, Warnings of copyright for use by 201.14
Arts (visual), registration of (see Pictorial, graphic & sculptural works) 202.10, 202.20
Arts (visual) registry 201.25
Assessment of costs of (CARP)[1] panels 251.54
Audio (digital) recording devices or media, Initial notice of distribution of 201.27
Audio (digital) recording devices or media, Statements of Account for 201.28
Auditor's Reports filed in Copyright Office for digital audio recording devices or media (Access to, and confidentiality of) 201.29
Auditor's Reports (In general) 201.28, 201.29
Basic registration defined ..... 201.5(a)
Blind and physically handicapped,[2] Voluntary license to permit reproduction of nondramatic literary works solely for use of 201.15
Broadcasting entities and copyright owners, Recordation of agreements between 201.9
Broadcasting entities (public), Performance of musical compositions by 253.4, 253.5
Broadcasting entity (public) defined 253.2
Cable compulsory license, Adjustment of royalty fees for 256.1, 256.2
Cable contracts for systems outside 48 contiguous states, Recordation of 201.12
Cable royalty fees, Filing of claims for [under 17 U.S.C. 111(d)(4), 801, and

803] ..... 252.1 to 252.5
Cable systems, Statements of Account covering compulsory licenses for secondary transmissions by 201.17
Cancellation of completed registrations 201.7
CARP1 arbitrators, Financial disclosure statements of 251.32
CARP1 organization ..... 251.1 to 251.8
CARP1 meetings, Public access to ..... 251.11 to 251.16
CARP1 records, Inspection of ..... 251.21 to 251.23
Cartographic (three-dimensional) representations of area, such as globes and relief models ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xi)(B)
Certification and Documents Section, Information and Reference Division, as address for certain requests ..... 201.1(c)
Certification of copies or documents, Requests for ..... 201.2(d)
Certification (official) defined ..... 201.4(a)
Claims to cable royalty fees under 17 U.S.C. 111(d)(4), 801 and 803 ..... 252.1 to 252.5
Coin-operated phonorecord player defined 254.2
Coin-operated phonorecord players, Adjustment of royalty rate for ..... 254.1 to 254.3
Collective works, Deposit of contributions to ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xv)
Colleges and universities, Performance of nondramatic musical compositions by public broadcasting entities licensed to 253.5
Commercial prints and labels, Deposit of ..... 202.20(c)(2)(v)
Communications with Copyright Office, Addresses prescribed for 201.1
Complete copy defined for mandatory deposit only ..... 202.19(b)(2)
Complete copy for purposes of registration, Definition of ..... 202.20(b)(2)
Compulsory license for making/distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical works, Notice of intention to obtain 201.18
Compulsory license for making/distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical works, Royalties and statements of account under 201.19
Compulsory license for secondary transmissions by cable systems, Statements of Account covering 201.17
Computer programs and databases embodied in machine-readable copies other than CD-ROM format, Deposit of ..... 202.20(c)(2)(vii)
Computer shareware, Recordation of documents pertaining to 201.26
Computer software (public domain), Recordation of documents regarding donation of 201.26
Conduct standards for CARP1 arbitrators ..... 251.30 to 251.39
Confidentiality of, and access to, Statements of Account, Auditor's Reports, and other verification information filed in the Copyright Office for digital audio recording devices or media 201.29
Congress (Library of), Deposit of published copies or phonorecords for 202.19
Congress (Library of), Transfer of unpublished copyright deposits to 201.23
Contents of Statements of Account covering compulsory licenses for secondary cable transmissions ..... 201.17(e)
Contributions to collective works, Deposit of ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xv)
Copies and phonorecords, Deposit for copyright registration of 202.20
Copies containing both visually perceptible and machine-readable material other than a CD-ROM format, Deposit of ..... 202.20(c)(2)(ix)
Copies, Deposit of identifying material instead of 202.21
Copies deposited, Return of ..... 201.6(d)
Copies of records or deposits, Requests for ..... 201.1(c)
Copies or phonorecords (published) for the Library of Congress, Deposit of 202.19
Copy (complete) defined for mandatory deposit only ..... 202.19(b)(2)
Copying of records and indexes (Inspection and) ..... 201.2(b)
Copying of records under Freedom of Information Act [FOIA] (Inspection and) 203.5

Index

Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel (CARP)[1] Rules and Procedures
Access (public) to CARP meetings ..... 251.11 to 251.16
Conduct standards of CARP arbitrators ..... 251.30 to 251.39
Ex parte communications 251.33
Inspection of CARP records ..... 251.21 to 251.23
Organization of CARP ..... 251.1 to 251.8
Procedures of CARP panels ..... 251.40 to 251.58
Public access to CARP meetings ..... 251.11 to 251.16
Rate adjustment proceedings ..... 251.60 to 251.65
Records (CARP), Inspection of ..... 251.21 to 251.23
Royalty fee distribution proceedings ..... 251.70 to 251.73
Standards of conduct for CARP arbitrators ..... 251.30 to 251.39
Copyright deposits, Full-term retention of 202.23
Copyright deposits (unpublished), Transfer to Library of Congress of 201.23
Copyright, Material not subject to 202.1
Copyright notice, general 202.2
Copyright notice, Methods of affixation and position 201.20
Copyright Office (Fees for special services) 201.32
Copyright Office, Information given by 201.2
Copyright Office, Proper address for mail and other communications with 201.1
Copyright owners and broadcasting entities, Recordation of agreements between 201.9
Copyright, Registration of claims to 202.3
Copyright restoration for certain motion pictures and their contents under NAFTA, Procedures for 201.31
Copyright restoration under Uruguay Round Agreements Act 201.33
Copyright Warning for software lending by nonprofit libraries 201.24
Correction or amendment of records under Privacy Act, Request for 204.7
Corrections and amplifications of copyright registrations 201.5
Correspondence (official), Access and requests for copies of ..... 201.2(c) & (d)
Costs of CARP1 panels, Assessment of 251.54
Databases and computer programs embodied in machine-readable copies other than CD-ROM format, Deposit of ..... 202.20(c)(2)(vii)
Date (effective) of registration 202.4
Date of recordation defined ..... 201.4(a), 201.26(f)
Definitions:
Advance Notice of Potential Infringement ..... 201.22(a)(1)
Annual Statement of Account (compulsory license)201.19(a)(2)
Architectural works ..... 202.11(b)
Basic registration ..... 201.5(a)
Best edition ..... 202.19(b)(1), 202.20(b)(1)
Cable system ..... 201.17(b)(2)
Cancellation ..... 201.7(a)
Certification (official) ..... 201.4(e)
Coin-operated phonorecord player 254.2
Complete copy (deposit for registration) ..... 202.20(b)(2)
Complete copy (mandatory deposit) ..... 202.19(b)(2)
Computer shareware ..... 201.26(b)
Contributions to collective works ..... 202.20(b)(2)(iii)
Current base rate (cable systems) ..... 201.17(h)(1)(i)
Date of recordation ..... 201.4(e), 201.26(f)
Digital phonorecord delivery 255.4
Display Warning of Copyright ..... 201.14(a)(1)
Distant signal equivalent ..... 201.17(b)(5)
Distributor (satellite carrier) ..... 201.11(b)
Document designated as pertaining to computer shareware ..... 201.26(b)(2)

Gross receipts for basic service (cable systems)201.17(b)(1)
Individual (Privacy Act)....204.2(a)
Local service area of a primary transmitter....201.17(b)(5)
Masthead....201.20(b)(8)
Monthly Statement of Account (compulsory license)....201.19(a)(1)
Motion pictures....202.20(b)(2)(vi)
Musical scores....202.20(b)(2)(v)
NAFTA work....201.33(b)(1)
Network station (satellite carrier)....201.11(b)
Notice (initial) of Distribution of Digital Audio Recording Devices....201.27(b)
Notice of objection to certain noncommercial performances....201.13(a)
Off-the-air copying....202.22(c)
Order Warning of Copyright....201.14(a)(2)
Posthumous work (renewal)....202.17(b)
Potential copyright owner (NAFTA)....201.31(b)(4)
Primary transmission (satellite carrier)....201.11(b)(2)
Privacy Act....204.2
Private home viewing (satellite carrier)....201.11(b)
Public broadcasting entity....253.2
Public domain computer software....201.26(b)(3)
Publication (NAFTA)....201.31(b)(5)
Record (Privacy Act)....204.2(c)
Registration (supplementary)....201.5(a)
Reliance party....201.33(b)(2)
Renewal (posthumous work)....202.17(b)
Restored work....201.33(b)(3)
Routine use (Privacy Act)....204.2(e)
Satellite carrier....201.11(b)
Secondary transmission (satellite carrier)....201.11(b)(2)
Secure test....202.20(b)(4)
Single-leaf work....201.20(b)(9)
Sound recordings....202.20(b)(2)(iv)
Source country....201.33(b)(4)
Subscriber (satellite carrier)....201.11(b)
Superstation (satellite carrier)....201.11(b)
Supplementary registration....201.5(a)
Syndex-proof signal (satellite retransmission)....258.2
System of records (Privacy Act)....204.2(d)
Title page....201.20(b)(5)
Unserved household (satellite carrier)....201.11(b)
Warning of Copyright for Software Rental....201.24(a)
Deposit accounts....201.6(b)
Deposit (Acquisition and) of unpublished television transmission programs....202.22
Deposit (mandatory) of published copies or phonorecords for Library of Congress....202.19
Deposit, Nature of required....202.20(c)(1)
Deposit of copies for registration by category:
Architectural works....202.20(c)(2)(xviii)
Certain pictorial and graphic works....202.20(c)(2)(iv)
Commercial prints and labels....202.20(c)(2)(v)
Computer programs and databases embodied in machine-readable copies other than CD-ROM format....202.20(c)(2)(vii)
Contributions to collective works....202.20(c)(2)(xv)
Generally....202.20(c)(2)(i)
Group registration of serials....202.20(c)(2)(xvii)
Holograms....202.20(c)(2)(iii)

Index

Machine-readable copies of works other than computer programs, databases, and works fixed in a CD-ROM format ..... 202.20(c)(2)(viii)
Oversize deposits ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xiii)
Phonorecords ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xvi)
Pictorial advertising material ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xiv)
Soundtracks ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xii)
Tests ..... 202.20(c)(2)(vi)
Works fixed in a CD-ROM format ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xix)
Works reproduced in or on sheetlike materials ..... 202.20(c)(2)(x)
Works reproduced in or on three-dimensional objects ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xi)
Deposit of copies for registration (special relief) ..... 202.20(d)
Deposit of copies under 17 U.S.C. 407, Presumption as to ..... 202.19(f)
Deposit of identifying material instead of copies 202.21
Deposit of identifying material (Mask works) 211.5
Deposit of oversize material ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xiii)
Deposit requirements under 17 U.S.C. 407(a), Exemption from ..... 202.19(c)
Deposits (copyright), Full-term retention of 202.23
Deposits, Requests for copies of ..... 201.1(c)
Deposits (unpublished copyright), Transfer to Library of Congress of 201.23
Digital audio recording devices and media royalty payments, Filing of claims to ..... 259.1 to 259.6
Digital audio recording devices or media (Access to, and confidentiality of, Statements of Account, Auditor's Reports, and other verification information filed in the Copyright Office for) 201.29
Digital audio recording devices or media, Initial notice of distribution of 201.27
Digital audio recording devices or media, Statements of account for 201.28
Digital phonorecord delivery, definition of 255.4
Digital phonorecord delivery, royalty rate for 255.5
Disclosure (financial) statements of CARP1 arbitrators 251.32
Displays [and] nondramatic performances of musical works for public broadcasting entities 253.7
Distribution proceedings (CARP)[1] for royalty fees ..... 251.70 to 251.73
Documents pertaining to computer shareware, and public domain computer software, Recordation of 201.26
Effective date of registration 202.4
Errors corrected by supplementary registration 201.5
Errors (minor) or omissions in registration ..... 201.7(d)
Exemption from deposit requirements under 17 U.S.C. 407(a) ..... 202.19(c)
Extended renewal term, Notices of termination of transfers and licenses covering 201.10
Fee (Royalty) distribution proceedings (CARP)[1] ..... 251.70 to 251.73
Fees (Cable royalty), Filing of claims under 17 U.S.C. 111(d)(4), 801, 803 ..... 252.1 to 252.5
Fees for Copyright Office special services 201.32
Fees (Mask works) 211.3
Fees (payment and refund) 201.6
Fees (Privacy Act) 204.6
Filing and service of written cases and pleadings with CARP1 ..... 251.44
Financial disclosure statement of CARP1 arbitrators 251.32
FOIA and Privacy Act (CARP proceedings) 251.23
Forms for recordation unnecessary ..... 201.4(b)
Forms, Registration ..... 202.3(b)(2)
Forty-eight contiguous states, Recordation of certain contracts by cable systems located outside of 201.12
Freedom of Information Act (FOIA): Policies and Procedures ..... Part 203
Authority and functions 203.2

In general 203.1
Inspection and copying 203.5
Methods of operation 203.4
Organization [of the Copyright Office] 203.3
Schedule of fees and methods of payment for services rendered 203.6
Full-term retention of copyright deposits 202.23
Graphic works, Pictorial, sculptural, and 202.10
Group registration ..... 202.3(b)(4) to (8)
Group registration of serials ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xvii)
Handicapped physically or blind,[2] Voluntary license to permit reproduction of nondramatic literary works solely for use of those who are 201.15
Holograms, Deposit of ..... 202.20(c)(2)(iii)
Identifying material instead of copies, Deposit of 202.21
Identifying material for Mask works, Deposit of 211.5
Indexes. See Records.
Individual defined for purposes of Privacy Act ..... 204.2(a)
Information (Freedom of) Act. See Freedom of Information Act (FOIA).
Information given by Copyright Office 201.2
Infringement, Advance notices of potential 201.22
Initial notice of distribution of digital audio recording devices or media 201.27
Inquiries by mail, etc.; addresses 201.1
Inspection and copying of records ..... 201.2(b)
Inspection and copying of records under the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA) 203.5
Inspection of CARP1 records ..... 251.21 to 251.23
Judicial review of determinations by the Librarian of Congress in CARP1 proceedings 251.58
Labels, Deposit of commercial prints and ..... 202.20(c)(2)(v)
Lending of software by nonprofit libraries, Warning of copyright for 201.24
Library of Congress, Deposit of published copies or phonorecords for 202.19
Library of Congress, Transfer of unpublished copyright deposits to 201.23
Libraries and archives, Warning of copyright for use by 201.14
Libraries (Nonprofit), Warning of copyright for software lending by 201.24
License (compulsory) for making/distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical works, Notice of intention to obtain 201.18
License (voluntary) solely for use of blind and physically handicapped[2] 201.15
Licenses and transfers covering extended renewal term, Notices of termination of 201.10
Licenses (compulsory) for secondary transmissions by cable systems, Statements of account covering 201.17
Licenses (statutory) for secondary transmissions for private home viewing, Satellite carrier statements of account covering 201.11
Licensing Division; inquiries/address 201.1
Machine-readable copies of works other than computer programs, databases, and works fixed in a CD-ROM format, Deposit of ..... 202.20(c)(2)(viii)
Machine-readable copies other than CD-ROM format, Computer programs and databases embodied in ..... 202.20(c)(2)(vii)
Mail and other communications with Copyright Office, Proper address for 201.1
Mask Work Protection:
Deposit of identifying material 211.5
General provisions 211.1
Mask work fees 211.3
Methods of affixation and placement of mask work notice 211.6
Recordation of documents pertaining to mask works 211.2

Index

Registration of claims of protection for mask works 211.4
Material not subject to copyright 202.1
Media, Initial notice of distribution of digital audio recording devices or 201.27
Meetings of CARP1, Public access to ..... 251.11 to 251.16
Motion pictures and their contents, Procedures for copyright restoration in accordance with NAFTA[3] for certain 201.31
Motion pictures, Deposit of ..... 202.20(c)(2)(ii)
Musical compositions, Performance by public broadcasting entities of ..... 253.4 to 253.6
Musical works (nondramatic), Notice of intention to obtain compulsory license for making/distributing phonorecords of 201.18
NAFTA[3], Procedures for copyright restoration of certain motion pictures and the contents in accordance with 201.31
Noncommercial educational broadcasting ..... 253.1 to 253.11
Noncommercial performances of nondramatic literary or musical works, Notices of objection to certain 201.13
Nondramatic literary or musical works, Notices of objection to certain noncommercial performances of 201.13
Nondramatic literary works, License to permit reproduction solely for use of blind and physically handicapped[2] 201.15
Nondramatic musical works, Notice of intention to obtain compulsory license for making/distributing phonorecords of 201.18
Nondramatic musical works, Royalties and statements of account under compulsory license for making/distributing phonorecords of 201.19
Nondramatic performances and displays of musical works for public broadcasting entities 253.7
Nonprofit libraries, Warning of copyright for lending of software by 201.24
Notice (Mask work), Method of affixation and placement of 211.6
Notice of copyright 202.2
Notice of copyright, Methods of affixation and positions on works 201.20
Contributions to collective works ..... 201.20(f)
Motion pictures and other audiovisual works ..... 201.20(h)
Pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works ..... 201.20(i)
Single-leaf works ..... 201.20(e)
Works published in book form ..... 201.20(d)
Works reproduced in machine-readable copies ..... 201.20(g)
Notice (initial) of distribution of digital audio recording devices or media 201.27
Notices of Intent to Enforce a restored copyright under the Uruguay Round Agreements Act, Procedures for filing 201.33
Notice of intention to obtain compulsory license for making/distributing phonorecords 201.18
Notices (advance) of potential infringement 201.22
Notices of objection to certain noncommercial performances of nondramatic literary or musical works 201.13
Notices of termination of transfers and licenses covering extended renewal term 201.10
Objection (Notice of) to certain noncommercial performances of nondramatic literary or musical works 201.13
Off-the-air copying of unpublished television transmission programs ..... 202.22(c)
Organization of CARP1 ..... 251.1 to 251.8
Oversize deposits ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xiii)
Panels (CARP)[1], Procedures of ..... 251.40 to 251.58
Performances (nondramatic) and displays of musical works for public broadcasting entities 253.7
Performances of musical compositions by public broadcasting entities ..... 253.4 to 253.6

Performances of nondramatic literary or musical works, Notices of objection to certain noncommercial 201.13
Phonorecords, Deposit for copyright registration 202.20
Phonorecords for Library of Congress, Deposit of published 202.19
Phonorecords of nondramatic musical works, Notice of intention to obtain compulsory license for making/distributing 201.18
Phonorecords of nondramatic musical works, Royalties and statements of account under compulsory license for making/distributing 201.19
Phonorecords, Royalty payable under compulsory license for making and distributing ..... 255.1 to 255.3
Pictorial advertising material, Deposit of ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xiv)
Pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works 202.10
Pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works published by public broadcasting entities, Terms and rates of royalty payments for the use of 253.8
Positions and methods of affixation of copyright notice 201.20
Presumption as to deposit of copies under 17 U.S.C. 407 202.19(f)
Prints (commercial) and labels , Deposit of ..... 202.20(c)(2)(v)
Privacy Act and FOIA (CARP1 proceedings) 251.23
Privacy Act: Policies and Procedures ..... Part 204
Appeal of refusal to correct or amend an individual's record 204.8
Definitions 204.2
Fees 204.6
General policy 204.3
Judicial review 204.9
Procedure for notification of the existence of records pertaining to individuals 204.4
Procedures for requesting access to records 204.5
Request for correction or amendment of records 204.7
Private home viewing, Satellite carrier statements of account covering statutory licenses for secondary transmissions for201.11
Procedures for copyright restoration in U.S.A. of certain motion pictures and their contents in accordance with NAFTA[3] 201.31
Procedures of CARP1 panels ..... 251.40 to 251.58
Proceedings for CARP1 royalty fee distribution ..... 251.70 to 251.73
Proceedings for rate adjustment (CARP1) ..... 251.60 to 251.65
Public access to CARP1 meetings ..... 251.11 to 251.16
Public access to CARP1 records ..... 251.21 to 251.23
Public broadcasting entities, Nondramatic performances and displays of musical works for 253.7
Public broadcasting entities, Performance of musical compositions by ..... 253.4 to 253.6
Public broadcasting entities, Recordation of agreements between copyright owners and 201.9
Public broadcasting entity defined 253.2
Public domain computer software, Recordation of documents pertaining to donation of 201.26
Published copies or phonorecords, Deposit (mandatory) for Library of Congress 202.19
Rate adjustment proceedings (CARP1) ..... 251.60 to 251.65
Record of individual under Privacy Act, Appeal of refusal to correct or amend 204.8
Recordability of documents (general requirements) ..... 201.4(c)
Recordation, Date of ..... 201.4(e)
Recordation fees ..... 201.4(d)
Recordation forms not necessary ..... 201.4(b)
Recordation of agreements between copyright owners and public broadcasting entities 201.9
Recordation of cable contracts for systems outside the 48 contiguous

states 201.12
Recordation of transfers and other documents 201.4
Recording devices (digital audio) or media, Initial notice of distribution of 201.27
Recording devices (digital audio) or media, Statements of account for 201.28
Records and indexes, Inspection and copying of ..... 201.2(b)
Records (CARP1), Inspection of ..... 251.21 to 251.23
Records; filings; addresses for requests 201.1
Records, Request under Privacy Act for amendment or correction of 204.7
Records (System of) under Privacy Act ..... 204.2(d)
Records under Freedom of Information Act (FOIA), Inspection and copying of 203.5
Reference and Bibliography Section as address for search requests ..... 201.1(d)
Refund of Copyright Office fees 201.6
Refusal to correct or amend an individual's record, Appeal of 204.8
Registration (basic), Effect of supplementary registration on ..... 201.5(d)
Registration (copyright), Deposit of copies and phonorecords for 202.20
Registration, Effective date of 202.4
Registration (Group) of copyright ..... 202.3(b)(4) to (8)
Registration of copyright 202.3
Registrations and recordations, Requests for searches of ..... 201.1(d)
Registrations (completed), Cancellation of 201.7
Registrations (corrected and amplified) 201.5
Registrations (supplementary) 201.5
Registry (Visual Arts) 201.25
Relief (Special) ..... 202.19(e), 202.20(d)
Renewal term (extended), Notices of termination of transfers and licenses covering 201.10
Renewals 202.17
Restoration of copyright for certain motion pictures and their contents in accordance with NAFTA[3], Procedures for 201.31
Restoration of copyright under the Uruguay Round Agreement Act 201.33, 202.12
Restored copyrights, Registration of 202.12
Retention (Full-term) of copyright deposits 202.23
Royalties and statements of account under compulsory license for making/distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical works 201.19
Royalty (cable) fees, Filing of claims under 17 U.S.C. 111(d)(4), 801, 803, to ..... 252.1 to 252.5
Royalty fee (CARP1) distribution proceedings ..... 251.70 to 251.73
Royalty fee for cable compulsory license, Adjustment of ..... 256.1 and 256.2
Royalty fee for secondary transmissions by satellite carriers, Adjustment of ..... 258.1 to 258.3
Royalty fees for secondary transmissions by satellite carriers, Filing of claims to ..... 257.1 to 257.6
Royalty payable under compulsory license for making/distributing phonorecords ..... 255.1 to 255.3, 255.5
Royalty payments for digital audio recording devices and media, Filing of claims to ..... 259.1 to 259.6
Royalty payments for use of published pictorial, graphic, and sculptural works 253.8
Royalty rate for coin-operated phonorecord players, Adjustment of ..... 254.1 to 254.3
Satellite carrier royalty fees, Filing of claims to ..... 257.1 to 257.6
Satellite carrier statements of account and royalty fees covering licenses for secondary transmissions for private home viewing 201.11
Satellite carriers, Adjustment of royalty fee for secondary transmissions by ..... 258.1 to 258.3
Sculptural works (Pictorial, graphic, and) 202.10

Search of records, Requests for ..... 201.1(d)
Secondary transmission by cable systems, Royalty fee for compulsory license for 256.2
Secondary transmission by satellite carriers, Royalty fee for 258.3
Second transmissions by cable systems, Statements of Account covering compulsory licenses for 201.17
Serials, Group registration of ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xvii)
Shareware (computer), Recordation of documents pertaining to 201.26
Software lending by nonprofit libraries, Warning of copyright for 201.24
Software (public domain computer), Recordation of documents pertaining to donation of 201.26
Soundtracks, Deposit of ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xii)
Special relief (deposit of copies for registration) ..... 202.20(d)
Special relief (mandatory deposit under 17 U.S.C. 407) ..... 202.19(e)
Special Services (Copyright Office), Fees for 201.32
Standards of conduct for CARP1 arbitrators ..... 251.30 to 251.39
Statements of account (and royalties) under compulsory license for making/distributing phonorecords of nondramatic musical works 201.19
Statements of account and royalty fees (satellite carrier) covering licenses for secondary transmissions for private home viewing 201.11
Statements of Account, Auditor's Reports, etc. filed in Copyright Office for digital audio recording devices or media, Access to and confidentiality of 201.29
Statements of account covering compulsory licenses for secondary transmissions by cable systems 201.17
Statements of account for digital audio recording devices or media 201.28
Statements of Account (In general) 201.11, 201.17, 201.19, 201.28, 201.29
States (48 contiguous), Recordation of cable contracts for systems outside of 201.12
Statutory licenses for secondary transmissions for private home viewing, Satellite carrier statements of account and royalty fees covering 201.11
Supplementary registration application (form and content) ..... 201.5(c)
Supplementary registration, Effect on basic registration of ..... 201.5(d)
Syndex-proof signal (satellite carrier retransmission), Definition of 258.2
System of records under Privacy Act ..... 204.2(d)
Television broadcast signals transmitted by satellite carriers to the public for private home viewing, Adjustment of royalties payable under compulsory license for ..... 258.1 to 258.3
Television broadcast signals transmitted by satellite carriers to the public for private home viewing, Procedures for filing claims for compulsory license royalty fees covering ..... 257.1 to 257.6
Television transmission programs (unpublished), Acquisition and deposit of 202.22
Termination of transfers and licenses covering extended renewal term, Notices of 201.10
Tests, Deposit of ..... 202.20(c)(2)(vi)
Transfer of unpublished copyright deposits to Library of Congress 201.23
Transfers and licenses covering extended renewal term, Notices of termination of 201.10
Transfers and other documents, Recordation of 201.4
Transmission programs (television), Acquisition and deposit of unpublished 202.22
Unpublished copyright deposits, Transfer to Library of Congress of 201.23
Unpublished television transmission programs, Acquisition and deposit of 202.22
Use (routine) under Privacy Act ..... 204.2(e)
Verification information filed in Copyright Office for digital audio recording devices or media, Access to and confidentiality of 201.29

Index

Visual arts registry 201.25
Visually perceptible and machine-readable material other than a CD-ROM format, Deposit of copies containing both ..... 202.20(c)(2)(ix)
Voluntary license to permit reproduction of nondramatic literary works solely for use of the blind and physically handicapped[2] 201.15
Warning of copyright for software lending by nonprofit libraries 201.24
Warnings (display) of copyright for use by certain libraries and archives 201.14
Works:
  Architectural 202.11
  Nondramatic literary 201.13
  Nondramatic musical ..... 201.13, 201.18, and 201.19
  Pictorial, graphic, and sculptural 202.10
Works consisting of sounds, images, or both, Advance notices of potential infringement of 201.22
Works fixed in CD-ROM format, Deposit of ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xix)
Works reproduced in or on sheetlike materials, Deposit of ..... 202.20(c)(2)(x)
Works reproduced in or on three-dimensional objects, Deposit of ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xi)
Xerographic or photographic copies on good quality paper are acceptable deposits for archival purposes in connection with the registration of claims to copyright in architectural works ..... 202.20(c)(2)(xviii)

Notes:

[1] CARP is the acronym for Copyright Arbitration Royalty Panel.

[2] But see 17 U.S.C. 121 (reproduction for blind or other people with disabilities), added by the Act of September 16, 1996, Pub. L. 104-197, 110 Stat. 2394, 2416.

[3] NAFTA is the acronym for North American Free Trade Agreement.

CHAPTER IV—ASSISTANT SECRETARY FOR TECHNOLOGY POLICY, DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Part		*Page*
401	Rights to inventions made by nonprofit organizations and small business firms under Government grants, contracts, and cooperative agreements	502
404	Licensing of Government owned inventions	518

PART 401—RIGHTS TO INVENTIONS MADE BY NONPROFIT ORGANIZATIONS AND SMALL BUSINESS FIRMS UNDER GOVERNMENT GRANTS, CONTRACTS, AND COOPERATIVE AGREEMENTS

Sec.
401.1 Scope.
401.2 Definitions.
401.3 Use of the standard clauses at §401.14.
401.4 Contractor appeals of exceptions.
401.5 Modification and tailoring of clauses.
401.6 Exercise of march-in rights.
401.7 Small business preference.
401.8 Reporting on utilization of subject inventions.
401.9 Retention of rights by contractor employee inventor.
401.10 Government assignment to contractor of rights in invention of government employee.
401.11 Appeals.
401.12 Licensing of background patent rights to third parties.
401.13 Administration of patent rights clauses.
401.14 Standard patent rights clauses.
401.15 Deferred determinations.
401.16 Electronic filing.
401.17 Submissions and inquiries.

AUTHORITY: 35 U.S.C. 206 and the delegation of authority by the Secretary of Commerce to the Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Technology Policy at sec. 3(g) of DOO 10–18.

SOURCE: 52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987, unless otherwise noted.

§401.1 Scope.

(a) Traditionally there have been no conditions imposed by the government on research performers while using private facilities which would preclude them from accepting research funding from other sources to expand, to aid in completing or to conduct separate investigations closely related to research activities sponsored by the government. Notwithstanding the right of research organizations to accept supplemental funding from other sources for the purpose of expediting or more comprehensively accomplishing the research objectives of the government sponsored project, it is clear that the ownership provisions of these regulations would remain applicable in any invention ''conceived or first actually reduced to practice in performance'' of the project. Separate accounting for the two funds used to support the project in this case is not a determining factor.

(1) To the extent that a non-government sponsor established a project which, although closely related, falls outside the planned and committed activities of a government-funded project and does not diminish or distract from the performance of such activities, inventions made in performance of the non-government sponsored project would not be subject to the conditions of these regulations. An example of such related but separate projects would be a government sponsored project having research objectives to expand scientific understanding in a field and a closely related industry sponsored project having as its objectives the application of such new knowledge to develop usable new technology. The time relationship in conducting the two projects and the use of new fundamental knowledge from one in the performance of the other are not important determinants since most inventions rest on a knowledge base built up by numerous independent research efforts extending over many years. Should such an invention be claimed by the performing organization to be the product of non-government sponsored research and be challenged by the sponsoring agency as being reportable to the government as a ''subject invention'', the challenge is appealable as described in §401.11(d).

(2) An invention which is made outside of the research activities of a government-funded project is not viewed as a ''subject invention'' since it cannot be shown to have been ''conceived or first actually reduced to practice'' in performance of the project. An obvious example of this is a situation where an instrument purchased with government funds is later used, without interference with or cost to the government-funded project, in making an invention all expenses of which involve only non-government funds.

(b) This part inplements 35 U.S.C. 202 through 204 and is applicable to all Federal agencies. It applies to all funding agreements with small business firms and nonprofit organizations executed after the effective date of this part, except for a funding agreement

made primarily for educational purposes. Certain sections also provide guidance for the administration of funding agreements which predate the effective date of this part. In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 212, no scholarship, fellowship, training grant, or other funding agreement made by a Federal agency primarily to an awardee for educational purposes will contain any provision giving the Federal agency any rights to inventions made by the awardee.

(c) The *march-in* and appeals procedures in §§ 401.6 and 401.11 shall apply to any march-in or appeal proceeding under a funding agreement subject to Chapter 18 of Title 35, U.S.C., initiated after the effective date of this part even if the funding agreement was executed prior to that date.

(d) At the request of the contractor, a funding agreement for the operation of a government-owned facility which is in effect on the effective date of this part shall be promptly amended to include the provisions required by §§ 401.3(a) unless the agency determines that one of the exceptions at 35 U.S.C. 202(a)(i) through (iv) § 401.3(a)(8) through (iv) of this part) is applicable and will be applied. If the exception at § 401.3(a)(iv) is determined to be applicable, the funding agreement will be promptly amended to include the provisions required by § 401.3(c).

(e) This regulation supersedes OMB Circular A–124 and shall take precedence over any regulations dealing with ownership of inventions made by small businesses and nonprofit organizations which are inconsistent with it. This regulation will be followed by all agencies pending amendment of agency regulations to conform to this part and amended Chapter 18 of Title 35. Only deviations requested by a contractor and not inconsistent with Chapter 18 of Title 35, United States Code, may be made without approval of the Secretary. Modifications or tailoring of clauses as authorized by § 401.5 or §401.3, when alternative provisions are used under § 401.3(a)(1) through (4), are not considered deviations requiring the Secretary's approval. Three copies of proposed and final agency regulations supplementing this part shall be submitted to the Secretary at the office set out in § 401.16 for approval for consistency with this part before they are submitted to the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) for review under Executive Order 12291 or, if no submission is required to be made to OMB, before their submission to the FEDERAL REGISTER for publication.

(f) In the event an agency has outstanding prime funding agreements that do not contain patent flow-down provisions consistent with this part or earlier Office of Federal Procurement Policy regulations (OMB Circular A–124 or OMB Bulletin 81–22), the agency shall take appropriate action to ensure that small business firms or nonprofit organizations that are subcontractors under any such agreements and that received their subcontracts after July 1, 1981, receive rights in their subject inventions that are consistent with Chapter 18 and this part.

(g) This part is not intended to apply to arrangements under which nonprofit organizations, small business firms, or others are allowed to use government-owned research facilities and normal technical assistance provided to users of those facilities, whether on a reimbursable or nonreimbursable basis. This part is also not intended to apply to arrangements under which sponsors reimburse the government or facility contractor for the contractor employee's time in performing work for the sponsor. Such arrangements are not considered ''funding agreements'' as defined at 35 U.S.C. 201(b) and § 401.2(a) of this part.

§ 401.2 Definitions.

As used in this part—

(a) The term *funding agreement* means any contract, grant, or cooperative agreement entered into between any Federal agency, other than the Tennessee Valley Authority, and any contractor for the performance of experimental, developmental, or research work funded in whole or in part by the Federal government. This term also includes any assignment, substitution of parties, or subcontract of any type entered into for the performance of experimental, developmental, or research work under a funding agreement as defined in the first sentence of this paragraph.

(b) The term *contractor* means any person, small business firm or nonprofit organization which is a party to a funding agreement.

(c) The term *invention* means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under Title 35 of the United States Code, or any novel variety of plant which is or may be protectable under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321 *et seq.*).

(d) The term *subject invention* means any invention of a contractor conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the performance of work under a funding agreement; provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act, 7 U.S.C. 2401(d)) must also occur during the period of contract performance.

(e) The term *practical application* means to manufacture in the case of a composition of product, to practice in the case of a process or method, or to operate in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are, to the extent permitted by law or government regulations, available to the public on reasonable terms.

(f) The term *made* when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.

(g) The term *small business firm* means a small business concern as defined at section 2 of Pub. L. 85–536 (15 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration. For the purpose of this part, the size standards for small business concerns involved in government procurement and subcontracting at 13 CFR 121.5 will be used.

(h) The term *nonprofit organization* means universities and other institutions of higher education or an organization of the type described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954 (26 U.S.C. 501(c) and exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of the Internal Revenue Code (26 U.S.C. 501(a)) or any nonprofit scientific or educational organization qualified under a state nonprofit organization statute.

(i) The term *Chapter 18* means Chapter 18 of Title 35 of the United States Code.

(j) The term *Secretary* means the Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Technology Policy.

(k) The term *electronically filed* means any submission of information transmitted by an electronic or optical-electronic system.

(l) The term *electronic or optical-electronic system* means a software-based system approved by the agency for the transmission of information.

(m) The term *patent application* or ''application for patent'' includes a provisional or nonprovisional U.S. national application for patent as defined in 37 CFR 1.9 (a)(2) and (a)(3), respectively, or an application for patent in a foreign country or in an international patent office.

(n) The term *initial patent application* means a nonprovisional U.S. national application for patent as defined in 37 CFR 1.9(a)(3).

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987, as amended at 60 FR 41812, Aug. 14, 1995]

§ 401.3 Use of the standard clauses at § 401.14.

(a) Each funding agreement awarded to a small business firm or nonprofit organization (except those subject to 35 U.S.C. 212) shall contain the clause found in § 401.14(a) with such modifications and tailoring as authorized or required elsewhere in this part. However, a funding agreement may contain alternative provisions—

(1) When the contractor is not located in the United States or does not have a place of business located in the United States or is subject to the control of a foreign government; or

(2) In exceptional circumstances when it is determined by the agency that restriction or elimination of the right to retain title to any subject invention will better promote the policy and objectives of Chapter 18 of Title 35 of the United States Code; or

(3) When it is determined by a government authority which is authorized

by statute or executive order to conduct foreign intelligence or counterintelligence activities that the restriction or elimination of the right to retain title to any subject invention is necessary to protect the security to such activities; or

(4) When the funding agreement includes the operation of the government-owned, contractor-operated facility of the Department of Energy primarily dedicated to that Department's naval nuclear propulsion or weapons related programs and all funding agreement limitations under this subparagraph on the contractor's right to elect title to a subject invention are limited to inventions occurring under the above two programs.

(b) When an agency exercises the exceptions at § 401.3(a)(2) or (3), it shall use the standard clause at § 401.14(a) with only such modifications as are necessary to address the exceptional circumstances or concerns which led to the use of the exception. For example, if the justification relates to a particular field of use or market, the clause might be modified along lines similar to those described in § 401.14(b). In any event, the clause should provide the contractor with an opportunity to receive greater rights in accordance with the procedures at § 401.15. When an agency justifies and exercises the exception at § 401.3(a)(2) and uses an alternative provision in the funding agreement on the basis of national security, the provision shall provide the contractor with the right to elect ownership to any invention made under such funding agreement as provided by the Standard Patent Rights Clause found at § 401.14(a) if the invention is not classified by the agency within six months of the date it is reported to the agency, or within the same time period the Department of Energy does not, as authorized by regulation, law or Executive order or implementing regulations thereto, prohibit unauthorized dissemination of the invention. Contracts in support of DOE's naval nuclear propulsion program are exempted from this paragraph.

(c) When the Department of Energy exercises the exception at § 401.3(a)(4), it shall use the clause prescribed at § 401.14(b) or substitute thereto with such modification and tailoring as authorized or required elsewhere in this part.

(d) When a funding agreement involves a series of separate task orders, an agency may apply the exceptions at § 401.3(a)(2) or (3) to individual task orders, and it may structure the contract so that modified patent rights provisions will apply to the task order even though the clauses at either § 401.14(a) or (b) are applicable to the remainder of the work. Agencies are authorized to negotiate such modified provisions with respect to task orders added to a funding agreement after its initial award.

(e) Before utilizing any of the exceptions in § 401.3(a) of this section, the agency shall prepare a written determination, including a statement of facts supporting the determination, that the conditions identified in the exception exist. A separate statement of facts shall be prepared for each exceptional circumstances determination, except that in appropriate cases a single determination may apply to both a funding agreement and any subcontracts issued under it or to any funding agreement to which such an exception is applicable. In cases when § 401.3(a)(2) is used, the determination shall also include an analysis justifying the determination. This analysis should address with specificity how the alternate provisions will better achieve the objectives set forth in 35 U.S.C. 200. A copy of each determination, statement of facts, and, if applicable, analysis shall be promptly provided to the contractor or prospective contractor along with a notification to the contractor or prospective contractor of its rights to appeal the determination of the exception under 35 U.S.C. 202(b)(4) and § 401.4 of this part.

(f) Except for determinations under § 401.3(a)(3), the agency shall also provide copies of each determination, statement of fact, and analysis to the Secretary. These shall be sent within 30 days after the award of the funding agreement to which they pertain. Copies shall also be sent to the Chief Counsel for Advocacy of the Small Business Administration if the funding agreement is with a small business firm. If the Secretary of Commerce believes

that any individual determination or pattern of determinations is contrary to the policies and objectives of this chapter or otherwise not in conformance with this chapter, the Secretary shall so advise the head of the agency concerned and the Administrator of the Office of Federal Procurement Policy and recommend corrective actions.

(g) To assist the Comptroller General of the United States to accomplish his or her responsibilities under 35 U.S.C. 202, each Federal agency that enters into any funding agreements with nonprofit organizations or small business firms shall accumulate and, at the request of the Comptroller General, provide the Comptroller General or his or her duly authorized representative the total number of prime agreements entered into with small business firms or nonprofit organizations that contain the patent rights clause in this part or under OMB Circular A–124 for each fiscal year beginning with October 1, 1982.

(h) To qualify for the standard clause, a prospective contractor may be required by an agency to certify that it is either a small business firm or a nonprofit organization. If the agency has reason to question the status of the prospective contractor as a small business firm, it may file a protest in accordance with 13 CFR 121.9. If it questions nonprofit status, it may require the prospective contractor to furnish evidence to establish its status as a nonprofit organization.

§ 401.4 Contractor appeals of exceptions.

(a) In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(b)(4) a contractor has the right to an administrative review of a determination to use one of the exceptions at § 401.3(a) (1) through (4) if the contractor believes that a determination is either contrary to the policies and objectives of this chapter or constitutes an abuse of discretion by the agency. Paragraph (b) of this section specifies the procedures to be followed by contractors and agencies in such cases. The assertion of such a claim by the contractor shall not be used as a basis for withholding or delaying the award of a funding agreement or for suspending performance under an award. Pending final resolution of the claim the contract may be issued with the patent rights provision proposed by the agency; however, should the final decision be in favor of the contractor, the funding agreement will be amended accordingly and the amendment made retroactive to the effective date of the funding agreement.

(b)(1) A contractor may appeal a determination by providing written notice to the agency within 30 working days from the time it receives a copy of the agency's determination, or within such longer time as an agency may specify in its regulations. The contractor's notice should specifically identify the basis for the appeal.

(2) The appeal shall be decided by the head of the agency or by his/her designee who is at a level above the person who made the determination. If the notice raises a genuine dispute over the material facts, the head of the agency or the designee shall undertake, or refer the matter for, fact-finding.

(3) Fact-finding shall be conducted in accordance with procedures established by the agency. Such procedures shall be as informal as practicable and be consistent with principles of fundamental fairness. The procedures should afford the contractor the opportunity to appear with counsel, submit documentary evidence, present witnesses and confront such persons as the agency may rely upon. A transcribed record shall be made and shall be available at cost to the contractor upon request. The requirement for a transcribed record may be waived by mutual agreement of the contractor and the agency.

(4) The official conducting the fact-finding shall prepare or adopt written findings of fact and transmit them to the head of the agency or designee promptly after the conclusion of the fact-finding proceeding along with a recommended decision. A copy of the findings of fact and recommended decision shall be sent to the contractor by registered or certified mail.

(5) Fact-finding should be completed within 45 working days from the date the agency receives the contractor's written notice.

(6) When fact-finding has been conducted, the head of the agency or designee shall base his or her decision on

the facts found, together with any argument submitted by the contractor, agency officials or any other information in the administrative record. In cases referred for fact-finding, the agency head or the designee may reject only those facts that have been found to be clearly erroneous, but must explicitly state the rejection and indicate the basis for the contrary finding. The agency head or the designee may hear oral arguments after fact-finding provided that the contractor or contractor's attorney or representative is present and given an opportunity to make arguments and rebuttal. The decision of the agency head or the designee shall be in writing and, if it is unfavorable to the contractor shall include an explanation of the basis of the decision. The decision of the agency or designee shall be made within 30 working days after fact-finding or, if there was no fact-finding, within 45 working days from the date the agency received the contractor's written notice. A contractor adversely affected by a determination under this section may, at any time within sixty days after the determination is issued, file a petition in the United States Claims Court, which shall have jurisdiction to determine the appeal on the record and to affirm, reverse, remand, or modify as appropriate, the determination of the Federal agency.

§401.5 Modification and tailoring of clauses.

(a) Agencies should complete the blank in paragraph (g)(2) of the clauses at §401.14 in accordance with their own or applicable government-wide regulations such as the Federal Acquisition Regulation. In grants and cooperative agreements (and in contracts, if not inconsistent with the Federal Acquisition Regulation) agencies wishing to apply the same clause to all subcontractors as is applied to the contractor may delete paragraph (g)(2) of the clause and delete the words ''to be performed by a small business firm or domestic nonprofit organization'' from paragraph (g)(1). Also, if the funding agreement is a grant or cooperative agreement, paragraph (g)(3) may be deleted. When either paragraph (g)(2) or paragraphs (g) (2) and (3) are deleted, the remaining paragraph or paragraphs should be renumbered appropriately.

(b) Agencies should complete paragraph (l), ''Communications'', at the end of the clauses at §401.14 by designating a central point of contact for communications on matters relating to the clause. Additional instructions on communications may also be included in paragraph (l).

(c) Agencies may replace the italicized words and phrases in the clauses at §401.14 with those appropriate to the particular funding agreement. For example, ''contracts'' could be replaced by ''grant,'' ''contractor'' by ''grantee,'' and ''contracting officer'' by ''grants officer.'' Depending on its use, ''Federal agency'' can be replaced either by the identification of the agency or by the specification of the particular office or official within the agency.

(d) When the agency head or duly authorized designee determines at the time of contracting with a small business firm or nonprofit organization that it would be in the national interest to acquire the right to sublicense foreign governments or international organizations pursuant to any existing treaty or international agreement, a sentence may be added at the end of paragraph (b) of the clause at §401.14 as follows:

> This license will include the right of the government to sublicense foreign governments, their nationals, and international organizations, pursuant to the following treaties or international agreements:
>
> _____.

The blank above should be completed with the names of applicable existing treaties or international agreements, agreements of cooperation, memoranda of understanding, or similar arrangements, including military agreements relating to weapons development and production. The above language is not intended to apply to treaties or other agreements that are in effect on the date of the award but which are not listed. Alternatively, agencies may use substantially similar language relating the government's rights to specific treaties or other agreements identified elsewhere in the funding agreement. The language may also be modified to make clear that the rights granted to

the foreign government, and its nationals or an international organization may be for additional rights beyond a license or sublicense if so required by the applicable treaty or international agreement. For example, in some exclusive licenses or even the assignment of title in the foreign country involved might be required. Agencies may also modify the language above to provide for the direct licensing by the contractor of the foreign government or international organization.

(e) If the funding agreement involves performance over an extended period of time, such as the typical funding agreement for the operation of a government-owned facility, the following language may also be added:

The *agency* reserves the right to unilaterally amend this *funding agreement* to identify specific treaties or international agreements entered into or to be entered into by the government after the effective date of this *funding agreement* and effectuate those license or other rights which are necessary for the government to meet its obligations to foreign governments, their nationals and international organizations under such treaties or international agreements with respect to subject inventions made after the date of the amendment.

(f) Agencies may add additional subparagraphs to paragraph (f) of the clauses at § 401.14 to require the contractor to do one or more of the following:

(1) Provide a report prior to the close-out of a funding agreement listing all subject inventions or stating that there were none.

(2) Provide, upon request, the filing date, patent application number and title; a copy of the patent application; and patent number and issue date for any subject invention in any country in which the contractor has applied for a patent.

(3) Provide periodic (but no more frequently than annual) listings of all subject inventions which were disclosed to the agency during the period covered by the report.

(g) If the contract is with a nonprofit organization and is for the operation of a government-owned, contractor-operated facility, the following will be substituted for paragraph (k)(3) of the clause at § 401.14(a):

(3) After payment of patenting costs, licensing costs, payments to inventors, and other expenses incidental to the administration of subject inventions, the balance of any royalties or income earned and retained by the *contractor* during any fiscal year on subject inventions under this or any successor *contract* containing the same requirement, up to any amount equal to five percent of the budget of the facility for that fiscal year, shall be used by the contractor for scientific research, development, and education consistent with the research and development mission and objectives of the facility, including activities that increase the licensing potential of other inventions of the facility. If the balance exceeds five percent, 75 percent of the excess above five percent shall be paid by the contractor to the Treasury of the United States and the remaining 25 percent shall be used by the *contractor* only for the same purposes as described above. To the extent it provides the most effective technology transfer, the licensing of subject inventions shall be administered by *contractor* employees on location at the facility.

(h) If the contract is for the operation of a government-owned facility, agencies may add the following at the end of paragraph (f) of the clause at § 401.14(a):

(5) The contractor shall establish and maintain active and effective procedures to ensure that subject inventions are promptly identified and timely disclosed and shall submit a description of the procedures to the *contracting officer* so that the *contracting officer* may evaluate and determine their effectiveness.

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987, as amended at 60 FR 41812, Aug. 14, 1995]

§ 401.6 Exercise of march-in rights.

(a) The following procedures shall govern the exercise of the march-in rights of the agencies set forth in 35 U.S.C. 203 and paragraph (j) of the clause at § 401.14.

(b) Whenever an agency receives information that it believes might warrant the exercise of march-in rights, before initiating any march-in proceeding, it shall notify the contractor in writing of the information and request informal written or oral comments from the contractor as well as information relevant to the matter. In the absence of any comments from the contractor within 30 days, the agency may, at its discretion, proceed with the procedures below. If a comment is received within 30 days, or later if the

agency has not initiated the procedures below, then the agency shall, within 60 days after it receives the comment, either initiate the procedures below or notify the contractor, in writing, that it will not pursue march-in rights on the basis of the available information.

(c) A march-in proceeding shall be initiated by the issuance of a written notice by the agency to the contractor and its assignee or exclusive licensee, as applicable and if known to the agency, stating that the agency is considering the exercise of march-in rights. The notice shall state the reasons for the proposed march-in in terms sufficient to put the contractor on notice of the facts upon which the action would be based and shall specify the field or fields of use in which the agency is considering requiring licensing. The notice shall advise the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) of its rights, as set forth in this section and in any supplemental agency regulations. The determination to exercise march-in rights shall be made by the head of the agency or his or her designee.

(d) Within 30 days after the receipt of the written notice of march-in, the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) may submit in person, in writing, or through a representative, information or argument in opposition to the proposed march-in, including any additional specific information which raises a genuine dispute over the material facts upon which the march-in is based. If the information presented raises a genuine dispute over the material facts, the head of the agency or designee shall undertake or refer the matter to another official for fact-finding.

(e) Fact-finding shall be conducted in accordance with the procedures established by the agency. Such procedures shall be as informal as practicable and be consistent with principles of fundamental fairness. The procedures should afford the contractor the opportunity to appear with counsel, submit documentary evidence, present witnesses and confront such persons as the agency may present. A transcribed record shall be made and shall be available at cost to the contractor upon request. The requirement for a transcribed record may be waived by mutual agreement of the contractor and the agency. Any portion of the march-in proceeding, including a fact-finding hearing that involves testimony or evidence relating to the utilization or efforts at obtaining utilization that are being made by the contractor, its assignee, or licensees shall be closed to the public, including potential licensees. In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(5), agencies shall not disclose any such information obtained during a march-in proceeding to persons outside the government except when such release is authorized by the contractor (assignee or licensee).

(f) The official conducting the fact-finding shall prepare or adopt written findings of fact and transmit them to the head of the agency or designee promptly after the conclusion of the fact-finding proceeding along with a recommended determination. A copy of the findings of fact shall be sent to the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) by registered or certified mail. The contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) and agency representatives will be given 30 days to submit written arguments to the head of the agency or designee; and, upon request by the contractor oral arguments will be held before the agency head or designee that will make the final determination.

(g) In cases in which fact-finding has been conducted, the head of the agency or designee shall base his or her determination on the facts found, together with any other information and written or oral arguments submitted by the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) and agency representatives, and any other information in the administrative record. The consistency of the exercise of march-in rights with the policy and objectives of 35 U.S.C. 200 shall also be considered. In cases referred for fact-finding, the head of the agency or designee may reject only those facts that have been found to be clearly erroneous, but must explicitly state the rejection and indicate the basis for the contrary finding. Written notice of the determination whether march-in rights will be exercised shall be made by the head of the agency or designee and sent to the contractor (assignee of exclusive licensee) by certified or registered mail within 90 days

after the completion of fact-finding or 90 days after oral arguments, whichever is later, or the proceedings will be deemed to have been terminated and thereafter no march-in based on the facts and reasons upon which the proceeding was initiated may be exercised.

(h) An agency may, at any time, terminate a march-in proceeding if it is satisfied that it does not wish to exercise march-in rights.

(i) The procedures of this part shall also apply to the exercise of march-in rights against inventors receiving title to subject inventions under 35 U.S.C. 202(d) and, for that purpose, the term ''contractor'' as used in this section shall be deemed to include the inventor.

(j) An agency determination unfavorable to the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) shall be held in abeyance pending the exhaustion of appeals or petitions filed under 35 U.S.C. 203(2).

(k) For purposes of this section the term *exclusive licensee* includes a partially exclusive licensee.

(l) Agencies are authorized to issue supplemental procedures not inconsistent with this part for the conduct of march-in proceedings.

§ 401.7 Small business preference.

(a) Paragraph (k)(4) of the clauses at § 401.14 Implements the small business preference requirement of 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(7)(D). Contractors are expected to use efforts that are reasonable under the circumstances to attract small business licensees. They are also expected to give small business firms that meet the standard outlined in the clause a preference over other applicants for licenses. What constitutes reasonable efforts to attract small business licensees will vary with the circumstances and the nature, duration, and expense of efforts needed to bring the invention to the market. Paragraph (k)(4) is not intended, for example, to prevent nonprofit organizations from providing larger firms with a right of first refusal or other options in inventions that relate to research being supported under long-term or other arrangements with larger companies. Under such circumstances it would not be resonable to seek and to give a preference to small business licensees.

(b) Small business firms that believe a nonprofit organization is not meeting its obligations under the clause may report their concerns to the Secretary. To the extent deemed appropriate, the Secretary will undertake informal investigation of the concern, and, if appropriate, enter into discussions or negotiations with the nonprofit organization to the end of improving its efforts in meeting its obligations under the clause. However, in no event will the Secretary intervene in ongoing negotiations or contractor decisions concerning the licensing of a specific subject invention. All the above investigations, discussions, and negotiations of the Secretary will be in coordination with other interested agencies, including the Small Business Administration; and in the case of a contract for the operation of a government-owned, contractor operated research or production facility, the Secretary will coordinate with the agency responsible for the facility prior to any discussions or negotiations with the contractor.

401.8 Reporting on utilization of subject inventions.

(a) Paragraph (h) of the clauses at § 401.14 and its counterpart in the clause at Attachment A to OMB Circular A–124 provides that agencies have the right to receive periodic reports from the contractor on utilization of inventions. Agencies exercising this right should accept such information, to the extent feasible, in the format that the contractor normally prepares it for its own internal purposes. The prescription of forms should be avoided. However, any forms or standard questionnaires that are adopted by an agency for this purpose must comply with the requirements of the Paperwork Reduction Act. Copies shall be sent to the Secretary.

(b) In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(5) and the terms of the clauses at § 401.14, agencies shall not disclose such information to persons outside the government. Contractors will continue to provide confidential markings to help prevent inadvertent release outside the agency.

§401.9 Retention of rights by contractor employee inventor.

Agencies which allow an employee/inventor of the contractor to retain rights to a subject invention made under a funding agreement with a small business firm or nonprofit organization contractor, as authorized by 35 U.S.C. 202(d), will impose upon the inventor at least those conditions that would apply to a small business firm contractor under paragraphs (d)(1) and (3); (f)(4); (h); (i); and (j) of the clause at §401.14(a).

§401.10 Government assignment to contractor of rights in invention of government Employee.

In any case when a Federal employee is a co-inventor of any invention made under a funding agreement with a small business firm or nonprofit organization and the Federal agency employing such co-inventor transfers or reassigns the right it has acquired in the subject invention from its employee to the contractor as authorized by 35 U.S.C. 202(e), the assignment will be made subject to the same conditions as apply to the contractor under the patent rights clause of its funding agreement. Agencies may add additional conditions as long as they are consistent with 35 U.S.C. 201–206.

§401.11 Appeals.

(a) As used in this section, the term *standard clause* means the clause at §401.14 of this part and the clauses previously prescribed by either OMB Circular A–124 or OMB Bulletin 81–22.

(b) The agency official initially authorized to take any of the following actions shall provide the contractor with a written statement of the basis for his or her action at the time the action is taken, including any relevant facts that were relied upon in taking the action.

(1) A refusal to grant an extension under paragraph (c)(4) of the standard clauses.

(2) A request for a conveyance of title under paragraph (d) of the standard clauses.

(3) A refusal to grant a waiver under paragraph (i) of the standard clauses.

(4) A refusal to approve an assignment under paragraph (k)(1) of the standard clauses.

(5) A refusal to grant an extension of the exclusive license period under paragraph (k)(2) of the clauses prescribed by either OMB Circular A–124 or OMB Bulletin 81–22.

(c) Each agency shall establish and publish procedures under which any of the agency actions listed in paragraph (b) of this section may be appealed to the head of the agency or designee. Review at this level shall consider both the factual and legal basis for the actions and its consistency with the policy and objectives of 35 U.S.C. 200–206.

(d) Appeals procedures established under paragraph (c) of this section shall include administrative due process procedures and standards for fact-finding at least comparable to those set forth in §401.6 (e) through (g) whenever there is a dispute as to the factual basis for an agency request for a conveyance of title under paragraph (d) of the standard clause, including any dispute as to whether or not an invention is a subject invention.

(e) To the extent that any of the actions described in paragraph (b) of this section are subject to appeal under the Contract Dispute Act, the procedures under the Act will satisfy the requirements of paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section.

§401.12 Licensing of background patent rights to third parties.

(a) A funding agreement with a small business firm or a domestic nonprofit organization will not contain a provision allowing a Federal agency to require the licensing to third parties of inventions owned by the contractor that are not subject inventions unless such provision has been approved by the agency head and a written justification has been signed by the agency head. Any such provision will clearly state whether the licensing may be required in connection with the practice of a subject invention, a specifically identified work object, or both. The agency head may not delegate the authority to approve such provisions or to sign the justification required for such provisions.

(b) A Federal agency will not require the licensing of third parties under any such provision unless the agency head determines that the use of the invention by others is necessary for the practice of a subject invention or for the use of a work object of the funding agreement and that such action is necessary to achieve practical application of the subject invention or work object. Any such determination will be on the record after an opportunity for an agency hearing. The contractor shall be given prompt notification of the determination by certified or registered mail. Any action commenced for judicial review of such determination shall be brought within sixty days after notification of such determination.

§ 401.13 Administration of patent rights clauses.

(a) In the event a subject invention is made under funding agreements of more than one agency, at the request of the contractor or on their own initiative the agencies shall designate one agency as responsible for administration of the rights of the government in the invention.

(b) Agencies shall promptly grant, unless there is a significant reason not to, a request by a nonprofit organization under paragraph (k)(2) of the clauses prescribed by either OMB Circular A–124 or OMB Bulletin 81–22 inasmuch as 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(7) has since been amended to eliminate the limitation on the duration of exclusive licenses. Similarly, unless there is a significant reason not to, agencies shall promptly approve an assignment by a nonprofit organization to an organization which has as one of its primary functions the management of inventions when a request for approval has been necessitated under paragraph (k)(1) of the clauses prescribed by either OMB Circular A–124 or OMB Bulletin 81–22 because the patent management organization is engaged in or holds a substantial interest in other organizations engaged in the manfacture or sale of products or the use of processes that might utilize the invention or be in competition with embodiments of the invention. As amended, 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(7) no longer contains this limitation. The policy of this subsection should also be followed in connection with similar approvals that may be required under Institutional Patent Agreements, other patent rights clauses, or waivers that predate Chapter 18 of Title 35, United States Code.

(c) The President's Patent Policy Memorandum of February 18, 1983, states that agencies should protect the confidentiality of invention disclosure, patent applications, and utilization reports required in performance or in consequence of awards to the extent permitted by 35 U.S.C. 205 or other applicable laws. The following requirements should be followed for funding agreements covered by and predating this part 401.

(1) To the extent authorized by 35 U.S.C. 205, agencies shall not disclose to third parties pursuant to requests under the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA) any information disclosing a subject invention for a reasonable time in order for a patent application to be filed. With respect to subject inventions of contractors that are small business firms or nonprofit organizations, a reasonable time shall be the time during which an initial patent application may be filed under paragraph (c) of the standard clause found at § 401.14(a) or such other clause may be used in the funding agreement. However, an agency may disclose such subject inventions under the FOIA, at its discretion, after a contractor has elected not to retain title or after the time in which the contractor is required to make an election if the contractor has not made an election within that time. Similarly, an agency may honor a FOIA request at its discretion if it finds that the same information has previously been published by the inventor, contractor, or otherwise. If the agency plans to file itself when the contractor has not elected title, it may, of course, continue to avail itself of the authority of 35 U.S.C. 205.

(2) In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 205, agencies shall not disclose or release for a period of 18 months from the filing date of the patent application to third parties pursuant to requests under the Freedom of Information Act, or otherwise, copies of any document which the agency obtained under this clause which is part of an application

for patent with the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office or any foreign patent office filed by the contractor (or its assignees, licensees, or employees) on a subject invention to which the contractor has elected to retain title. This prohibition does not extend to disclosure to other government agencies or contractors of government agencies under an obligation to maintain such information in confidence.

(3) A number of agencies have policies to encourage public dissemination of the results of work supported by the agency through publication in government or other publications of technical reports of contractors or others. In recognition of the fact that such publication, if it included descriptions of a subject invention could create bars to obtaining patent protection, it is the policy of the executive branch that agencies will not include in such publication programs copies of disclosures of inventions submitted by small business firms or nonprofit organizations, pursuant to paragraph (c) of the standard clause found at §401.14(a), except that under the same circumstances under which agencies are authorized to release such information pursuant to FOIA requests under paragraph (c)(1) of this section, agencies may publish such disclosures.

(4) Nothing in this paragraph is intended to preclude agencies from including in the publication activities described in the first sentence of paragraph (c)(3), the publication of materials describing a subject invention to the extent such materials were provided as part of a technical report or other submission of the contractor which were submitted independently of the requirements of the patent rights provisions of the contract. However, if a small business firm or nonprofit organization notifies the agency that a particular report or other submission contains a disclosure of a subject invention to which it has elected title or may elect title, the agency shall use reasonable efforts to restrict its publication of the material for six months from date of its receipt of the report or submission or, if earlier, until the contractor has filed an initial patent application. Agencies, of course, retain the discretion to delay publication for additional periods of time.

(5) Nothing in this paragraph is intended to limit the authority of agencies provided in 35 U.S.C. 205 in circumstances not specifically described in this paragraph.

[52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987, as amended at 60 FR 41812, Aug. 14, 1995]

§401.14 Standard patent rights clauses.

(a) The following is the standard patent rights clause to be used as specified in §401.3(a).

Patent Rights (Small Business Firms and Nonprofit Organizations)

(a) Definitions

(1) *Invention* means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under Title 35 of the United States Code, or any novel variety of plant which is or may be protected under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321 *et seq.*).

(2) *Subject invention* means any invention of the *contractor* conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the performance of work under this *contract*, provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act, 7 U.S.C. 2401(d)) must also occur during the period of *contract* performance.

(3) *Practical Application* means to manufacture in the case of a composition or product, to practice in the case of a process or method, or to operate in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are, to the extent permitted by law or government regulations, available to the public on reasonable terms.

(4) *Made* when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.

(5) *Small Business Firm* means a small business concern as defined at section 2 of Pub. L. 85–536 (15 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration. For the purpose of this clause, the size standards for small business concerns involved in government procurement and subcontracting at 13 CFR 121.3–8 and 13 CFR 121.3–12, respectively, will be used.

(6) *Nonprofit Organization* means a university or other institution of higher education or an organization of the type described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954 (26 U.S.C. 501(c) and exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of the Internal

Revenue Code (25 U.S.C. 501(a)) or any nonprofit scientific or educational organization qualified under a state nonprofit organization statute.

(b) Allocation of Principal Rights

The *Contractor* may retain the entire right, title, and interest throughout the world to each subject invention subject to the provisions of this clause and 35 U.S.C. 203. With respect to any subject invention in which the *Contractor* retains title, the Federal government shall have a nonexclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to practice or have practiced for or on behalf of the United States the subject invention throughout the world.

(c) Invention Disclosure, Election of Title and Filing of Patent Application by *Contractor*

(1) The *contractor* will disclose each subject invention to the *Federal Agency* within two months after the inventor discloses it in writing to *contractor* personnel responsible for patent matters. The disclosure to the agency shall be in the form of a written report and shall identify the *contract* under which the invention was made and the inventor(s). It shall be sufficiently complete in technical detail to convey a clear understanding to the extent known at the time of the disclosure, of the nature, purpose, operation, and the physical, chemical, biological or electrical characteristics of the invention. The disclosure shall also identify any publication, on sale or public use of the invention and whether a manuscript describing the invention has been submitted for publication and, if so, whether it has been accepted for publication at the time of disclosure. In addition, after disclosure to the *agency*, the *Contractor* will promptly notify the *agency* of the acceptance of any manuscript describing the invention for publication or of any on sale or public use planned by the *contractor*.

(2) The *Contractor* will elect in writing whether or not to retain title to any such invention by notifying the *Federal agency* within two years of disclosure to the *Federal agency*. However, in any case where publication, on sale or public use has initiated the one year statutory period wherein valid patent protection can still be obtained in the United States, the period for election of title may be shortened by the *agency* to a date that is no more than 60 days prior to the end of the statutory period.

(3) The *contractor* will file its initial patent application on a subject invention to which it elects to retain title within one year after election of title or, if earlier, prior to the end of any statutory period wherein valid patent protection can be obtained in the United States after a publication, on sale, or public use. The *contractor* will file patent applications in additional countries or international patent offices within either ten months of the corresponding initial patent application or six months from the date permission is granted by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to file foreign patent applications where such filing has been prohibited by a Secrecy Order.

(4) Requests for extension of the time for disclosure, election, and filing under subparagraphs (1), (2), and (3) may, at the discretion of the *agency*, be granted.

(d) Conditions When the Government May Obtain Title

The *contractor* will convey to the *Federal agency*, upon written request, title to any subject invention—

(1) If the *contractor* fails to disclose or elect title to the subject invention within the times specified in (c), above, or elects not to retain title; provided that the *agency* may only request title within 60 days after learning of the failure of the *contractor* to disclose or elect within the specified times.

(2) In those countries in which the *contractor* fails to file patent applications within the times specified in (c) above; provided, however, that if the *contractor* has filed a patent application in a country after the times specified in (c) above, but prior to its receipt of the written request of the *Federal agency*, the *contractor* shall continue to retain title in that country.

(3) In any country in which the *contractor* decides not to continue the prosecution of any application for, to pay the maintenance fees on, or defend in reexamination or opposition proceeding on, a patent on a subject invention.

(e) Minimum Rights to *Contractor* and Protection of the *Contractor* Right to File

(1) The *contractor* will retain a nonexclusive royalty-free license throughout the world in each subject invention to which the Government obtains title, except if the *contractor* fails to disclose the invention within the times specified in (c), above. The *contractor's* license extends to its domestic subsidiary and affiliates, if any, within the corporate structure of which the *contractor* is a party and includes the right to grant sublicenses of the same scope to the extent the *contractor* was legally obligated to do so at the time the *contract* was awarded. The license is transferable only with the approval of the *Federal agency* except when transferred to the sucessor of that party of the *contractor's* business to which the invention pertains.

(2) The *contractor's* domestic license may be revoked or modified by the *funding Federal agency* to the extent necessary to achieve expeditious practical application of

the subject invention pursuant to an application for an exclusive license submitted in accordance with applicable provisions at 37 CFR part 404 and *agency* licensing regulations (if any). This license will not be revoked in that field of use or the geographical areas in which the *contractor* has achieved practical application and continues to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public. The license in any foreign country may be revoked or modified at the discretion of the *funding Federal agency* to the extent the *contractor,* its licensees, or the domestic subsidiaries or affiliates have failed to achieve practical application in that foreign country.

(3) Before revocation or modification of the license, the *funding Federal agency* will furnish the *contractor* a written notice of its intention to revoke or modify the license, and the *contractor* will be allowed thirty days (or such other time as may be authorized by the *funding Federal agency* for good cause shown by the *contractor*) after the notice to show cause why the license should not be revoked or modified. The *contractor* has the right to appeal, in accordance with applicable regulations in 37 CFR part 404 and *agency* regulations (if any) concerning the licensing of Government-owned inventions, any decision concerning the revocation or modification of the license.

(f) *Contractor* Action to Protect the Government's Interest

(1) The *contractor* agrees to execute or to have executed and promptly deliver to the *Federal agency* all instruments necessary to (i) establish or confirm the rights the Government has throughout the world in those subject inventions to which the *contractor* elects to retain title, and (ii) convey title to the *Federal agency* when requested under paragraph (d) above and to enable the government to obtain patent protection throughout the world in that subject invention.

(2) The *contractor* agrees to require, by written agreement, its employees, other than clerical and nontechnical employees, to disclose promptly in writing to personnel identified as responsible for the administration of patent matters and in a format suggested by the *contractor* each subject invention made under *contract* in order that the *contractor* can comply with the disclosure provisions of paragraph (c), above, and to execute all papers necessary to file patent applications on subject inventions and to establish the government's rights in the subject inventions. This disclosure format should require, as a minimum, the information required by (c)(1), above. The *contractor* shall instruct such employees through employee agreements or other suitable educational programs on the importance of reporting inventions in sufficient time to permit the filing of patent applications prior to U.S. or foreign statutory bars.

(3) The *contractor* will notify the *Federal agency* of any decisions not to continue the prosecution of a patent application, pay maintenance fees, or defend in a reexamination or opposition proceeding on a patent, in any country, not less than thirty days before the expiration of the response period required by the relevant patent office.

(4) The *contractor* agrees to include, within the specification of any United States patent applications and any patent issuing thereon covering a subject invention, the following statement, ''This invention was made with government support under (identify the *contract*) awarded by (identify the Federal agency). The government has certain rights in the invention.''

(g) Subcontracts

(1) The *contractor* will include this clause, suitably modified to identify the parties, in all subcontracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental or research work to be performed by a small business firm or domestic nonprofit organization. The subcontractor will retain all rights provided for the *contractor* in this clause, and the *contractor* will not, as part of the consideration for awarding the subcontract, obtain rights in the subcontractor's subject inventions.

(2) The *contractor* will include in all other subcontracts, regardless of tier, for experimental developmental or research work the patent rights clause required by (*cite section of agency implementing regulations or FAR*).

(3) In the case of subcontracts, at any tier, when the prime award with the Federal agency was a contract (but not a grant or cooperative agreement), the *agency,* subcontractor, and the contractor agree that the mutual obligations of the parties created by this clause constitute a contract between the subcontractor and the Federal agency with respect to the matters covered by the clause; provided, however, that nothing in this paragraph is intended to confer any jurisdiction under the Contract Disputes Act in connection with proceedings under paragraph (j) of this clause.

(h) Reporting on Utilization of Subject Inventions

The *Contractor* agrees to submit on request periodic reports no more frequently than annually on the utilization of a subject invention or on efforts at obtaining such utilization that are being made by the *contractor* or its licensees or assignees. Such reports shall include information regarding the status of development, date of first commerical sale or use, gross royalties received by the contractor, and such other data and information as the *agency* may reasonably specify. The

contractor also agrees to provide additional reports as may be requested by the *agency* in connection with any march-in proceeding undertaken by the *agency* in accordance with paragraph (j) of this clause. As required by 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(5), the *agency* agrees it will not disclose such information to persons outside the government without permission of the *contractor*.

(i) Preference for United States Industry

Notwithstanding any other provision of this clause, the *contractor* agrees that neither it nor any assignee will grant to any person the exclusive right to use or sell any subject inventions in the United States unless such person agrees that any products embodying the subject invention or produced through the use of the subject invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States. However, in individual cases, the requirement for such an agreement may be waived by the *Federal agency* upon a showing by the *contractor* or its assignee that reasonable but unsuccessful efforts have been made to grant licenses on similar terms to potential licensees that would be likely to manufacture substantially in the United States or that under the circumstances domestic manufacture is not commerically feasible.

(j) March-in Rights

The *contractor* agrees that with respect to any subject invention in which it has acquired title, the *Federal agency* has the right in accordance with the procedures in 37 CFR 401.6 and any supplemental regulations of the *agency* to require the *contractor*, an assignee or exclusive licensee of a subject invention to grant a nonexclusive, partially exclusive, or exclusive license in any field of use to a responsible applicant or applicants, upon terms that are reasonable under the circumstances, and if the *contractor*, assignee, or exclusive licensee refuses such a request the *Federal agency* has the right to grant such a license itself if the *Federal agency* determines that:

(1) Such action is necessary because the *contractor* or assignee has not taken, or is not expected to take within a reasonable time, effective steps to achieve practical application of the subject invention in such field of use.

(2) Such action is necessary to alleviate health or safety needs which are not reasonably satisfied by the *contractor*, assignee or their licensees;

(3) Such action is necessary to meet requirements for public use specified by Federal regulations and such requirements are not reasonably satisfied by the *contractor*, assignee or licensees; or

(4) Such action is necessary because the agreement required by paragraph (i) of this clause has not been obtained or waived or because a licensee of the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the United States is in breach of such agreement.

(k) Special Provisions for *Contracts* with Nonprofit Organizations

If the *contractor* is a nonprofit organization, it agrees that:

(1) Rights to a subject invention in the United States may not be assigned without the approval of the *Federal agency*, except where such assignment is made to an organization which has as one of its primary functions the management of inventions, provided that such assignee will be subject to the same provisions as the *contractor;*

(2) The *contractor* will share royalties collected on a subject invention with the inventor, including Federal employee co-inventors (when the agency deems it appropriate) when the subject invention is assigned in accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(e) and 37 CFR 401.10;

(3) The balance of any royalties or income earned by the *contractor* with respect to subject inventions, after payment of expenses (including payments to inventors) incidential to the administration of subject inventions, will be utilized for the support of scientific research or education; and

(4) It will make efforts that are reasonable under the circumstances to attract licensees of subject invention that are small business firms and that it will give a preference to a small business firm when licensing a subject invention if the *contractor* determines that the small business firm has a plan or proposal for marketing the invention which, if executed, is equally as likely to bring the invention to practical application as any plans or proposals from applicants that are not small business firms; provided, that the *contractor* is also satisfied that the small business firm has the capability and resources to carry out its plan or proposal. The decision whether to give a preference in any specific case will be at the discretion of the *contractor*. However, the *contractor* agrees that the Secretary may review the *contractor's* licensing program and decisions regarding small business applicants, and the *contractor* will negotiate changes to its licensing policies, procedures, or practices with the Secretary when the Secretary's review discloses that the *contractor* could take reasonable steps to implement more effectively the reqirements of this paragraph (k)(4).

(l) Communication

(Complete According to Instructions at 401.5(b))

(b) When the Department of Energy (DOE) determines to use alternative provisions under § 401.3(a)(4), the standard clause at § 401.14(a), of this section,

shall be used with the following modifications unless a substitute clause is drafted by DOE:

(1) The title of the clause shall be changed to read as follows: *Patent Rights to Nonprofit DOE Facility Operators*

(2) Add an ''(A)'' after ''(1)'' in paragraph (c)(1) and add subparagraphs (B) and (C) to paragraph (c)(1) as follows:

(B) If the subject invention occurred under activities funded by the naval nuclear propulsion or weapons related programs of *DOE*, then the provisions of this subparagraph (c)(1)(B) will apply in lieu of paragraphs (c)(2) and (3). In such cases the contractor agrees to assign the government the entire right, title, and interest thereto throughout the world in and to the subject invention except to the extent that rights are retained by the contractor through a greater rights determination or under paragraph (e), below. The contractor, or an employee-inventor, with authorization of the contractor, may submit a request for greater rights at the time the invention is disclosed or within a reasonable time thereafter. *DOE* will process such a request in accordance with procedures at 37 CFR 401.15. Each determination of greater rights will be subject to paragraphs (h)–(k) of this clause and such additional conditions, if any, deemed to be appropriate by the *Department of Energy*.

(C) At the time an invention is disclosed in accordance with (c)(1)(A) above, or within 90 days thereafter, the contractor will submit a written statement as to whether or not the invention occurred under a naval nuclear propulsion or weapons-related program of the *Department of Energy*. If this statement is not filed within this time, subparagraph (c)(1)(B) will apply in lieu of paragraphs (c)(2) and (3). The contractor statement will be deemed conclusive unless, within 60 days thereafter, the Contracting Officer disagrees in writing, in which case the determination of the Contracting Officer will be deemed conclusive unless the contractor files a claim under the Contract Disputes Act within 60 days after the Contracting Officer's determination. Pending resolution of the matter, the invention will be subject to subparagraph (c)(1)(B).

(3) Paragraph (k)(3) of the clause will be modified as prescribed at § 401.5(g).

§ 401.15 Deferred determinations.

(a) This section applies to requests for greater rights in subject inventions made by contractors when deferred determination provisions were included in the funding agreement because one of the exceptions at § 401.3(a) was applied, except that the Department of Energy is authorized to process deferred determinations either in accordance with its waiver regulations or this section. A contractor requesting greater rights should include with its request information on its plans and intentions to bring the invention to practical application. Within 90 days after receiving a request and supporting information, or sooner if a statutory bar to patenting is imminent, the agency should seek to make a determination. In any event, if a bar to patenting is imminent, unless the agency plans to file on its own, it shall authorize the contractor to file a patent application pending a determination by the agency. Such a filing shall normally be at the contractor's own risk and expense. However, if the agency subsequently refuses to allow the contractor to retain title and elects to proceed with the patent application under government ownership, it shall reimburse the contractor for the cost of preparing and filing the patent application.

(b) If the circumstances of concerns which originally led the agency to invoke an exception under § 401.3(a) are not applicable to the actual subject invention or are no longer valid because of subsequent events, the agency should allow the contractor to retain title to the invention on the same conditions as would have applied if the standard clause at § 401.14(a) had been used originally, unless it has been licensed.

(c) If paragraph (b) is not applicable the agency shall make its determination based on an assessment whether its own plans regarding the invention will better promote the policies and objectives of 35 U.S.C. 200 than will contractor ownership of the invention. Moreover, if the agency is concerned only about specific uses or applications of the invention, it shall consider leaving title in the contractor with additional conditions imposed upon the contractor's use of the invention for such applications or with expanded government license rights in such applications.

(d) A determination not to allow the contractor to retain title to a subject invention or to restrict or condition its title with conditions differing from

those in the clause at § 401.14(a), unless made by the head of the agency, shall be appealable by the contractor to an agency official at a level above the person who made the determination. This appeal shall be subject to the procedures applicable to appeals under § 401.11 of this part.

§ 401.16 Electronic filing.

Unless otherwise requested or directed by the agency,

(a) The written report required in (c)(1) of the standard clause in § 401.14(a) may be electronically filed;

(b) The written election required in (c)(2) of the standard clause in § 401.14(a) may be electronically filed; and

(c) The close-out report in (f)(1) and the information identified in (f)(2) and (f)(3) of § 401.5 may be electronically filed.

[60 FR 41812, Aug. 14, 1995]

§ 401.17 Submissions and inquiries.

All submissions or inquiries should be directed to Director, Technology Competitiveness Staff, Office of Technology Policy, Technology Administration, telephone number 202–482–2100, Room H4418, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20230.

[60 FR 41812, Aug. 14, 1995]

PART 404—LICENSING OF GOVERNMENT OWNED INVENTIONS

Sec.

404.1 Scope of part.
404.2 Policy and objective.
404.3 Definitions.
404.4 Authority to grant licenses.
404.5 Restrictions and conditions on all licenses granted under this part.
404.6 Nonexclusive licenses.
404.7 Exclusive and partially exclusive licenses.
404.8 Application for a license.
404.9 Notice to Attorney General.
404.10 Modification and termination of licenses.
404.11 Appeals.
404.12 Protection and administration of inventions.
404.13 Transfer of custody.
404.14 Confidentiality of information.

AUTHORITY: 35 U.S.C. 206 and the delegation of authority by the Secretary of Commerce to the Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Technology Policy at sec. 3(g) of DOO 10–18.

SOURCE: 50 FR 9802, Mar. 12, 1985, unless otherwise noted.

§ 404.1 Scope of part.

This part prescribes the terms, conditions, and procedures upon which a federally owned invention, other than an invention in the custody of the Tennessee Valley Authority, may be licensed. It supersedes the regulations at 41 CFR Subpart 101–4.1. This part does not affect licenses which (a) were in effect prior to July 1, 1981; (b) may exist at the time of the Government's acquisition of title to the invention, including those resulting from the allocation of rights to inventions made under Government research and development contracts; (c) are the result of an authorized exchange of rights in the settlement of patent disputes; or (d) are otherwise authorized by law or treaty.

§ 404.2 Policy and objective.

It is the policy and objective of this subpart to use the patent system to promote the utilization of inventions arising from federally supported research or development.

§ 404.3 Definitions.

(a) *Federally owned invention* means an invention, plant, or design which is covered by a patent, or patent application in the United States, or a patent, patent application, plant variety protection, or other form of protection, in a foreign country, title to which has been assigned to or otherwise vested in the United States Government.

(b) *Federal agency* means an executive department, military department, Government corporation, or independent establishment, except the Tennessee Valley Authority, which has custody of a federally owned invention.

(c) *Small business firm* means a small business concern as defined in section 2 of Pub. L. 85–536 (15 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration.

(d) *Practical application* means to manufacture in the case of a composition or product, to practice in the case of a process or method, or to operate in the case of a machine or system; and,

in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are to the extent permitted by law or Government regulations available to the public on reasonable terms.

(e) *United States* means the United States of America, its territories and possessions, the District of Columbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico.

§404.4 Authority to grant licenses.

Federally owned inventions shall be made available for licensing as deemed appropriate in the public interest. Federal agencies having custody of federally owned inventions may grant nonexclusive, partially exclusive, or exclusive licenses thereto under this part.

§404.5 Restrictions and conditions on all licenses granted under this part.

(a)(1) A license may be granted only if the applicant has supplied the Federal agency with a satifactory plan for development or marketing of the invention, or both, and with information about the applicant's capability to fulfill the plan.

(2) A license granting rights to use or sell under a federally owned invention in the United States shall normally be granted only to a licensee who agrees that any products embodying the invention or produced through the use of the invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States.

(b) Licenses shall contain such terms and conditions as the Federal agency determines are appropriate for the protection of the interests of the Federal Government and the public and are not in conflict with law or this part. The following terms and conditions apply to any license:

(1) The duration of the license shall be for a period specified in the license agreement, unless sooner terminated in accordance with this part.

(2) The license may be granted for all or less than all fields of use of the invention or in specified geographical areas, or both.

(3) The license may extend to subsidiaries of the licensee or other parties if provided for in the license but shall be nonassignable without approval of the Federal agency, except to the successor of that part of the licensee's business to which the invention pertains.

(4) The licensee may provide the license the right to grant sublicenses under the license, subject to the approval of the Federal agency. Each sublicense shall make reference to the license, including the rights retained by the Government, and a copy of such sublicense shall be furnished to the Federal agency.

(5) The license shall require the licensee to carry out the plan for development or marketing of the invention, or both, to bring the invention to practical application within a period specified in the license, and to continue to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public.

(6) The license shall require the licensee to report periodically on the utilization or efforts at obtaining utilization that are being made by the licensee, with particular reference to the plan submitted.

(7) Licenses may be royalty-free or for royalties or other consideration.

(8) Where an agreement is obtained pursuant to §404.5(a)(2) that any products embodying the invention or produced through use of the invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States, the license shall recite such agreement.

(9) The license shall provide for the right of the Federal agency to terminate the license, in whole or in part, if:

(i) The Federal agency determines that the licensee is not executing the plan submitted with its request for a license and the licensee cannot otherwise demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Federal agency that it has taken or can be expected to take within a reasonable time effective steps to achieve practical application of the invention;

(ii) The Federal agency determines that such action is necessary to meet requirements for public use specified by Federal regulations issued after the date of the license and such requirements are not reasonably satisfied by the licensee;

(iii) The licensee has willfully made a false statement of or willfully omitted a material fact in the license application or in any report required by the license agreement; or

(iv) The licensee commits a substantial breach of a covenant or agreement contained in the license.

(10) The license may be modified or terminated, consistent with this part, upon mutual agreement of the Federal agency and the licensee.

(11) Nothing relating to the grant of a license, nor the grant itself, shall be construed to confer upon any person any immunity from or defenses under the antitrust laws or from a charge of patent misuse, and the acquisition and use of rights pursuant to this part shall not be immunized from the operation of state or Federal law by reason of the source of the grant.

§ 404.6 Nonexclusive licenses.

(a) Nonexclusive licenses may be granted under federally owned inventions without publication of availability or notice of a prospective license.

(b) In addition to the provisions of § 404.5, the nonexclusive license may also provide that, after termination of a period specified in the license agreement, the Federal agency may restrict the license to the fields of use or geographic areas, or both, in which the licensee has brought the invention to practical application and continues to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public. However, such restriction shall be made only in order to grant an exclusive or partially exclusive license in accordance with this subpart.

§ 404.7 Exclusive and partially exclusive licenses.

(a)(1) Exclusive or partially exclusive domestic licenses may be granted on federally owned inventions three months after notice of the invention's availability has been announced in the FEDERAL REGISTER, or without such notice where the Federal agency determines that expeditious granting of such a license will best serve the interest of the Federal Government and the public; and in either situation, only if;

(i) Notice of a prospective license, identifying the invention and the prospective licensee, has been published in the FEDERAL REGISTER, providing opportunity for filing written objections within a 60-day period;

(ii) After expiration of the period in § 404.7(a)(1)(i) and consideration of any written objections received during the period, the Federal agency has determined that;

(A) The interests of the Federal Government and the public will best be served by the proposed license, in view of the applicant's intentions, plans, and ability to bring the invention to practical application or otherwise promote the invention's utilization by the public;

(B) The desired practical application has not been achieved, or is not likely expeditiously to be achieved, under any nonexclusive license which has been granted, or which may be granted, on the invention;

(C) Exclusive or partially exclusive licensing is a reasonable and necessary incentive to call forth the investment of risk capital and expenditures to bring the invention to practical application or otherwise promote the invention's utilization by the public; and

(D) The proposed terms and scope of exclusivity are not greater than reasonably necessary to provide the incentive for bringing the invention to practical application or otherwise promote the invention's utilization by the public;

(iii) The Federal agency has not determined that the grant of such license will tend substantially to lessen competition or result in undue concentration in any section of the country in any line of commerce to which the technology to be licensed relates, or to create or maintain other situations inconsistent with the antitrust laws; and

(iv) The Federal agency has given first preference to any small business firms submitting plans that are determined by the agency to be within the capabilities of the firms and as equally likely, if executed, to bring the invention to practical application as any plans submitted by applicants that are not small business firms.

(2) In addition to the provisions of § 404.5, the following terms and conditions apply to domestic exclusive and partially exclusive licenses;

(i) The license shall be subject to the irrevocable, royalty-free right of the Government of the United States to

practice and have practiced the invention on behalf of the United States and on behalf of any foreign government or international organization pursuant to any existing or future treaty or agreement with the United States.

(ii) The license shall reserve to the Federal agency the right to require the licensee to grant sublicenses to responsible applicants, on reasonable terms, when necessary to fulfill health or safety needs.

(iii) The license shall be subject to any licenses in force at the time of the grant of the exclusive or partially exclusive license.

(iv) The license may grant the licensee the right of enforcement of the licensed patent pursuant to the provisions of Chapter 29 of Title 35, United States Code, or other statutes, as determined appropriate in the public interest.

(b)(1) Exclusive or partially exclusive licenses may be granted on a federally owned invention covered by a foreign patent, patent application, or other form of protection, provided that;

(i) Notice of a prospective license, identifying the invention and prospective licensee, has been published in the FEDERAL REGISTER, providing opportunity for filing written objections within a 60-day period and following consideration of such objections;

(ii) The agency has considered whether the interests of the Federal Government or United States industry in foreign commerce will be enhanced; and

(iii) The Federal agency has not determined that the grant of such license will tend substantially to lessen competition or result in undue concentration in any section of the United States in any line of commerce to which the technology to be licensed relates, or to create or maintain other situations inconsistent with antitrust laws.

(2) In addition to the provisions of §404.5 the following terms and conditions apply to foreign exclusive and partially exclusive licenses:

(i) The license shall be subject to the irrevocable, royalty-free right of the Government of the United States to practice and have practiced the invention on behalf of the United States and on behalf of any foreign government or international organization pursuant to any existing or future treaty or agreement with the United States.

(ii) The license shall be subject to any licenses in force at the time of the grant of the exclusive or partially exclusive license.

(iii) The license may grant the licensee the right to take any suitable and necessary actions to protect the licensed property, on behalf of the Federal Government.

(c) Federal agencies shall maintain a record of determinations to grant exclusive or partially exclusive licenses.

§404.8 Application for a license.

An application for a license should be addressed to the Federal agency having custody of the invention and shall normally include:

(a) Identification of the invention for which the license is desired including the patent application serial number or patent number, title, and date, if known;

(b) Identification of the type of license for which the application is submitted;

(c) Name and address of the person, company, or organization applying for the license and the citizenship or place of incorporation of the applicant;

(d) Name, address, and telephone number of the representative of the applicant to whom correspondence should be sent;

(e) Nature and type of applicant's business, identifying products or services which the applicant has successfully commercialized, and approximate number of applicant's employees;

(f) Source of information concerning the availability of a license on the invention;

(g) A statement indicating whether the applicant is a small business firm as defined in §404.3(c)

(h) A detailed description of applicant's plan for development or marketing of the invention, or both, which should include:

(1) A statement of the time, nature and amount of anticipated investment of capital and other resources which applicant believes will be required to bring the invention to practical application;

(2) A statement as to applicant's capability and intention to fulfill the plan, including information regarding manufacuturing, marketing, financial, and technical resources;

(3) A statement of the fields of use for which applicant intends to practice the invention; and

(4) A statement of the geographic areas in which applicant intends to manufacture any products embodying the invention and geographic areas where applicant intends to use or sell the invention, or both;

(i) Identification of licenses previously granted to applicant under federally owned inventions;

(j) A statement containing applicant's best knowledge of the extent to which the invention is being practiced by private industry or Government, or both, or is otherwise available commercially; and

(k) Any other information which applicant believes will support a determination to grant the license to applicant.

§ 404.9 Notice to Attorney General.

A copy of the notice provided for in § 404.7 (a)(1)(i) and (b)(1)(i) will be sent to the Attorney General.

§ 404.10 Modification and termination of licenses.

Before modifying or terminating a license, other than by mutual agreement, the Federal agency shall furnish the licensee and any sublicensee of record a written notice of intention to modify or terminate the license, and the licensee and any sublicensee shall be allowed 30 days after such notice to remedy any breach of the license or show cause why the license shall not be modified or terminated.

§ 404.11 Appeals.

In accordance with procedures prescribed by the Federal agency, the following parties may appeal to the agency head or designee any decision or determination concerning the grant, denial, interpretation, modification, or termination of a license:

(a) A person whose application for a license has been denied.

(b) A licensee whose license has been modified or terminated, in whole or in part; or

(c) A person who timely filed a written objection in response to the notice required by § 404.7(a)(1)(i) or § 404.7(b)(1)(i) and who can demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Federal agency that such person may be damaged by the agency action.

§ 404.12 Protection and administration of inventions.

A Federal agency may take any suitable and necessary steps to protect and administer rights to federally owner inventions, either directly or through contract.

§ 404.13 Transfer of custody.

A Federal agency having custody of a federally owned invention may transfer custody and administration, in whole or in part, to another Federal agency, of the right, title, or interest in such invention.

§ 404.14 Confidentiality of information.

Title 35, United States Code, section 209, provides that any plan submitted pursuant to § 404.8(h) and any report required by § 404.5(b)(6) may be treated by the Federal agency as commercial and financial information obtained from a person and privileged and confidential and not subject to disclosure under section 552 of Title 5 of the United States Code.

CHAPTER V—UNDER SECRETARY FOR TECHNOLOGY, DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Part		*Page*
501	Uniform patent policy for rights in inventions made by government employees	524

PART 501—UNIFORM PATENT POLICY FOR RIGHTS IN INVENTIONS MADE BY GOVERNMENT EMPLOYEES

Sec.
501.1 Purpose.
501.2 Scope.
501.3 Definitions.
501.4 Determination of inventions and rights.
501.5 Agency liaison officer.
501.6 Criteria for the determination of rights in and to inventions.
501.7 Agency determination.
501.8 Appeals by employees.
501.9 Patent protection.
501.10 Dissemination of this part and of implementing regulations.
501.11 Submissions and inquiries.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 4, E.O. 10096, 3 CFR, 1949–1953 Comp., p. 292, as amended by E.O. 10930, 3 CFR, 1959–1963 Comp., p. 456 and by E.O. 10695, 3 CFR, 1954–1958 Comp., p. 355; DOO 10–17, July 15, 1992, and DOO 10–18, March 31, 1994.

SOURCE: 53 FR 39735, Oct. 11, 1988, unless otherwise noted.

§ 501.1 Purpose.

The purpose of this part is to provide for the administration of a uniform patent policy for the Government with respect to the rights in inventions made by Government employees and to prescribe rules and regulations for implementing and effectuating such policy.

[61 FR 40999, Aug. 7, 1996]

§ 501.2 Scope.

This part applies to any invention made by a Government employee and to any action taken with respect thereto.

§ 501.3 Definitions.

(a) The term *Secretary*, as used in this part, means the Under Secretary of Commerce for Technology.

(b) The term *Government agency*, as used in this part, means any Executive department or independent establishment of the Executive branch of the Government (including any independent regulatory commission or board, any corporation wholly owned by the United States, and the Smithsonian Institution), but does not include the Department of Energy for inventions made under the provisions of 42 U.S.C. 2182, the Tennessee Valley Authority, or the Postal Service.

(c) The term *Government employee*, as used in this part, means any officer or employee, civilian or military, of any Government agency, including any special Government employee as defined in 18 U.S.C. 202 or an individual working for a Federal agency pursuant to the Intergovernmental Personnel Act (IPA), 5 U.S.C. 1304 and 3371–3376, or a part-time consultant or part-time employee as defined in 29 U.S.C. 2101(a)(8) except as may otherwise be provided by agency regulation approved by the Secretary.

(d) The term *invention*, as used in this part, means any art or process, machine, manufacture, design, or composition of matter, or any new and useful improvement thereof, or any variety of plant, which is or may be patentable under the patent laws of the United States.

(e) The term *made* as used in this part in relation to any invention, means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention as stated in *In re King*, 3 USPQ2d (BNA) 1747 (Comm'r Pat. 1987).

[61 FR 40999, Aug. 7, 1996]

§ 501.4 Determination of inventions and rights.

Each Government agency has the approval of the Secretary to determine whether the results of research, development, or other activity in the agency constitute an invention within the purview of Executive Order 10096, as amended by Executive Order 10930 and Executive Order 10695, and to determine the rights in and to the invention in accordance with the provisions of §§ 501.6 and 501.7.

[61 FR 40999, Aug. 7, 1996]

§ 501.5 Agency liaison officer.

Each Government agency shall designate a liaison officer to represent the agency before the Secretary; Provided, however, that the Departments of the Army, the Navy, and the Air Force may each designate a liaison officer.

§501.6 Criteria for the determination of rights in and to inventions.

(a) The following rules shall be applied in determining the respective rights of the Government and of the inventor in and to any invention that is subject to the provisions of this part:

(1) The Government shall obtain, except as herein otherwise provided, the entire right, title and interest in and to any invention made by any Government employee:

(i) During working hours, or

(ii) With a contribution by the Government of facilities, equipment, materials, funds or information, or of time or services of other Government employees on official duty, or

(iii) Which bears a direct relation to or is made in consequence of the official duties of the inventor.

(2) In any case where the contribution of the Government, as measured by any one or more of the criteria set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, to the invention is insufficient equitably to justify a requirement of assignment to the Government of the entire right, title and interest in and to such invention, or in any case where the Government has insufficient interest in an invention to obtain the entire right, title and interest therein (although the Government could obtain same under paragraph (a)(1) of this section), the Government agency concerned shall leave title to such invention in the employee, subject however, to the reservation to the Government of a nonexclusive, irrevocable, royalty-free license in the invention with power to grant licenses for all governmental purposes. The terms of such reservation will appear, where practicable, in any patent, domestic or foreign, which may issue on such invention. Reference is made to section 15 of the Federal Technology Transfer Act of 1986 (15 U.S.C. 3710d) which requires a Government agency to allow the inventor to retain title to any covered invention when the agency does not intend to file a patent application or otherwise promote commercialization.

(3) In applying the provisions of paragraphs (a)(1) and (2) of this section to the facts and circumstances relating to the making of a particular invention, it shall be presumed that an invention made by an employee who is employed or assigned:

(i) To invent or improve or perfect any art or process, machine, design, manufacture, or composition of matter;

(ii) To conduct or perform research, development work, or both,

(iii) To supervise, direct, coordinate, or review Government financed or conducted research, development work, or both, or

(iv) To act in a liaison capacity among governmental or non-governmental agencies or individuals engaged in such research or development work,

falls within the provisions of paragraph (a)(1) of this section, and it shall be presumed that any invention made by any other employee falls within the provisions of paragraph (a)(2) of this section. Either presumption may be rebutted by a showing of the facts and circumstances in the case and shall not preclude a determination that these facts and circumstances justify leaving the entire right, title and interest in and to the invention in the Government employee, subject to law.

(4) In any case wherein the Government neither:

(i) Obtains the entire right, title and interest in and to an invention pursuant to the provisions of paragraph (a)(1) of this section nor

(ii) Reserves a nonexclusive, irrevocable, royalty-free license in the invention, with power to grant licenses for all governmental purposes, pursuant to the provisions of paragraph (a)(2) of this section,

the Government shall leave the entire right, title and interest in and to the invention in the Government employee, subject to law.

[53 FR 39735, Oct. 11, 1988, as amended at 61 FR 40999, Aug. 7, 1996]

§501.7 Agency determination.

(a) If the agency determines that the Government is entitled to obtain title pursuant to §501.6(a)(1) and the employee does not appeal, no further review is required.

(b) In the event that a Government agency determines, pursuant to paragraph (a)(2) or (a)(4) of §501.6, that title to an invention will be left with the employee, the agency shall notify the

employee of this determination. In cases pursuant to § 501.6(a)(2) where the Government's insufficient interest in the invention is evidenced by its decision not to file a patent application, the agency may impose on the employee any one or all of the following conditions or any other conditions that may be necessary in a particular case:

(1) That a patent application be filed in the United States and/or abroad, if the Government has determined that it has or may need to practice the invention;

(2) That the invention not be assigned to any foreign-owned or controlled corporation without the written permission of the agency; and

(3) That any assignment or license of rights to use or sell the invention in the United States shall contain a requirement that any products embodying the invention or produced through the use of the invention be substantially manufactured in the United States. The agency shall notify the employee of any conditions imposed.

(c) In the case of a determination under either paragraph (a) or (b) of this section, the agency shall promptly provide the employee with:

(1) A signed and dated statement of its determination and reasons therefor; and

(2) A copy of 37 CFR part 501.

[53 FR 39735, Oct. 11, 1988, as amended at 61 FR 40999, Aug. 7, 1996]

§ 501.8 Appeals by employees.

(a) Any Government employee who is aggrieved by a Government agency determination pursuant to §§ 501.6(a)(1) or (a)(2), may obtain a review of any agency determination by filing, within 30 days (or such longer period as the Secretary may, for good cause shown in writing, fix in any case) after receiving notice of such determination, two copies of an appeal with the Secretary. The Secretary then shall forward one copy of the appeal to the liaison officer of the Government agency.

(b) On receipt of a copy of an appeal filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, the agency liaison officer shall, subject to considerations of national security, or public health, safety or welfare, promptly furnish both the Secretary and the inventor with a copy of a report containing the following information about the invention involved in the appeal:

(1) A copy of the agency's statement specified in § 501.7(c);

(2) A description of the invention in sufficient detail to identify the invention and show its relationship to the employee's duties and work assignments;

(3) The name of the employee and employment status, including a detailed statement of official duties and responsibilities at the time the invention was made; and

(4) A detailed statement of the points of dispute or controversy, together with copies of any statements or written arguments filed with the agency, and of any other relevant evidence that the agency considered in making its determination of Government interest.

(c) Within 25 days (or such longer period as the Secretary may, for good cause shown, fix in any case) after the transmission of a copy of the agency report to the employee, the employee may file a reply with the Secretary and file one copy with the agency liaison officer.

(d) After the time for the inventor's reply to the Government agency's report has expired and if the inventor has so requested in his or her appeal, a date will be set for hearing of oral arguments before the Secretary, by the employee (or by an attorney whom he or she designates by written power of attorney filed before, or at the hearing) and a representative of the Government agency involved. Unless it shall be otherwise ordered before the hearing begins, oral arguments will be limited to thirty minutes for each side. The employee need not retain an attorney or request an oral hearing to secure full consideration of the facts and his or her arguments. The employee may expedite such consideration by notifying the Secretary when he or she does not intend to file a reply to the agency report.

(e) After a hearing on the appeal, if a hearing was requested, or after expiration of the period for the inventor's reply to the agency report if no hearing is set, the Secretary shall issue a decision on the matter within 120 days, which decision shall be final after a

thirty day period for requesting reconsideration expires or on the date that a decision on a petition for reconsideration is finally disposed of. Any request for reconsideration or modification of the decision must be filed within 30 days from the date of the original decision (or within such an extension thereof as may be set by the Secretary before the original period expires). The decision of the Secretary shall be made after consideration of the statements of fact in the employee's appeal, the agency's report, and the employee's reply, but the Secretary at his or her discretion and with due respect to the rights and convenience of the inventor and the Government agency, may call for further statements on specific questions of fact or may request additional evidence in the form of affidavits or depositions on specific facts in dispute.

[53 FR 39735, Oct. 11, 1988, as amended at 61 FR 41000, Aug. 7, 1996]

§501.9 Patent protection.

(a) A Government agency, upon determining that an invention coming within the scope of §§501.6(a)(1) or (a)(2) has been made, shall promptly determine whether patent protection will be sought in the United States by or on behalf of the agency for such invention. A controversy over the respective rights of the Government and of the employee shall not unnecessarily delay the filing of a patent application by the agency to avoid the loss of patent rights. In cases coming within the scope of §501.6(a)(2), the filing of a patent application shall be contingent upon the consent of the employee.

(b) Where there is an appealed dispute as to whether §§501.6 (a)(1) or (a)(2) applies in determining the respective rights of the Government and of an employee in and to any invention, the agency may determine whether patent protection will be sought in the United States pending the Secretary's decision on the dispute. If the agency decides that an application for patent should be filed, the agency will take such rights as are specified in §501.6(a)(2), but this shall be without prejudice to acquiring the rights specified in paragraph (a)(1) of that section should the Secretary so decide.

(c) Where an agency has determined to leave title to an invention with an employee under §501.6(a)(2), the agency will, upon the filing of an application for patent, take the rights specified in that paragraph without prejudice to the subsequent acquisition by the Government of the rights specified in paragraph (a)(1) of that section should the Secretary so decide.

(d) Where an agency has filed a patent application in the United States, the agency will, within 8 months from the filing date of the U.S. application, determine if any foreign patent applications should also be filed. If the agency chooses not to file an application in any foreign country, the employee may request rights in that country subject to the conditions stated in §501.7(b) that may be imposed by the agency. Alternatively, the agency may permit the employee to retain foreign rights by including in any assignment to the Government of an unclassified U.S. patent application on the invention an option for the Government to acquire title in any foreign country within 8 months from the filing date of the U.S. application.

[61 FR 41000, Aug. 7, 1996]

§501.10 Dissemination of this part and of implementing regulations.

Each Government agency shall disseminate to its employees the provisions of this part, and any appropriate implementing agency regulations and delegations. Copies of any such regulations shall be sent to the Secretary. If the Secretary identifies an inconsistency between this part and the agency regulations or delegations, the agency, upon being informed by the Secretary of the inconsistency, shall take prompt action to correct it.

§501.11 Submissions and inquiries.

All submissions or inquiries should be directed to Chief Counsel for Technology, telephone number 202–482–1984, Room H4835, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington DC 20230.

[61 FR 41000, Aug. 7, 1996]

FINDING AIDS

A list of current CFR titles, subtitles, chapters, subchapters and parts and an alphabetical list of agencies publishing in the CFR are included in the CFR Index and Finding Aids volume to the *Code of Federal Regulations* which is published separately and revised annually.

Table of CFR Titles and Chapters
Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR
List of CFR Sections Affected

Table of CFR Titles and Chapters

(Revised as of June 20, 1997)

Title 1—General Provisions

I Administrative Committee of the Federal Register (Parts 1—49)
II Office of the Federal Register (Parts 50—299)
IV Miscellaneous Agencies (Parts 400—500)

Title 2—[Reserved]

Title 3—The President

I Executive Office of the President (Parts 100—199)

Title 4—Accounts

I General Accounting Office (Parts 1—99)
II Federal Claims Collection Standards (General Accounting Office—Department of Justice) (Parts 100—299)

Title 5—Administrative Personnel

I Office of Personnel Management (Parts 1—1199)
II Merit Systems Protection Board (Parts 1200—1299)
III Office of Management and Budget (Parts 1300—1399)
IV Advisory Committee on Federal Pay (Parts 1400—1499)
V The International Organizations Employees Loyalty Board (Parts 1500—1599)
VI Federal Retirement Thrift Investment Board (Parts 1600—1699)
VII Advisory Commission on Intergovernmental Relations (Parts 1700—1799)
VIII Office of Special Counsel (Parts 1800—1899)
IX Appalachian Regional Commission (Parts 1900—1999)
XI Armed Forces Retirement Home (Part 2100)
XIV Federal Labor Relations Authority, General Counsel of the Federal Labor Relations Authority and Federal Service Impasses Panel (Parts 2400—2499)
XV Office of Administration, Executive Office of the President (Parts 2500—2599)
XVI Office of Government Ethics (Parts 2600—2699)
XXI Department of the Treasury (Parts 3100—3199)
XXII Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (Part 3201)
XXIII Department of Energy (Part 3301)

Title 5—Administrative Personnel—Continued

Chap.	
XXIV	Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (Part 3401)
XXVI	Department of Defense (Part 3601)
XXVIII	Department of Justice (Part 3801)
XXIX	Federal Communications Commission (Parts 3900—3999)
XXX	Farm Credit System Insurance Corporation (Parts 4000—4099)
XXXI	Farm Credit Administration (Parts 4100—4199)
XXXIII	Overseas Private Investment Corporation (Part 4301)
XXXV	Office of Personnel Management (Part 4501)
XL	Interstate Commerce Commission (Part 5001)
XLI	Commodity Futures Trading Commission (Part 5101)
XLII	Department of Labor (Part 5201)
XLIII	National Science Foundation (Part 5301)
XLV	Department of Health and Human Services (Part 5501)
XLVI	Postal Rate Commission (Part 5601)
XLVII	Federal Trade Commission (Part 5701)
XLVIII	Nuclear Regulatory Commission (Part 5801)
L	Department of Transportation (Part 6001)
LII	Export-Import Bank of the United States (Part 6201)
LIII	Department of Education (Parts 6300—6399)
LIV	Environmental Protection Agency (Part 6401)
LVII	General Services Administration (Part 6701)
LVIII	Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System (Part 6801)
LIX	National Aeronautics and Space Administration (Part 6901)
LX	United States Postal Service (Part 7001)
LXI	National Labor Relations Board (Part 7101)
LXII	Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (Part 7201)
LXIII	Inter-American Foundation (Part 7301)
LXV	Department of Housing and Urban Development (Part 7501)
LXVI	National Archives and Records Administration (Part 7601)
LXIX	Tennessee Valley Authority (Part 7901)
LXXI	Consumer Product Safety Commission (Part 8101)
LXXIV	Federal Mine Safety and Health Review Commission (Part 8401)
LXXVI	Federal Retirement Thrift Investment Board (Part 8601)
LXXVII	Office of Management and Budget (Part 8701)

Title 6—[Reserved]

Title 7—Agriculture

SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary of Agriculture (Parts 0—26)

SUBTITLE B—Regulations of the Department of Agriculture

I Agricultural Marketing Service (Standards, Inspections, Marketing Practices), Department of Agriculture (Parts 27—209)

II Food and Consumer Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 210—299)

Title 7—Agriculture—Continued

Chap.	
III	Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 300—399)
IV	Federal Crop Insurance Corporation, Department of Agriculture (Parts 400—499)
V	Agricultural Research Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 500—599)
VI	Natural Resources Conservation Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 600—699)
VII	Farm Service Agency, Department of Agriculture (Parts 700—799)
VIII	Grain Inspection, Packers and Stockyards Administration (Federal Grain Inspection Service), Department of Agriculture (Parts 800—899)
IX	Agricultural Marketing Service (Marketing Agreements and Orders; Fruits, Vegetables, Nuts), Department of Agriculture (Parts 900—999)
X	Agricultural Marketing Service (Marketing Agreements and Orders; Milk), Department of Agriculture (Parts 1000—1199)
XI	Agricultural Marketing Service (Marketing Agreements and Orders; Miscellaneous Commodities), Department of Agriculture (Parts 1200—1299)
XIII	Northeast Dairy Compact Commission (Parts 1300—1399)
XIV	Commodity Credit Corporation, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1400—1499)
XV	Foreign Agricultural Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1500—1599)
XVI	Rural Telephone Bank, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1600—1699)
XVII	Rural Utilities Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1700—1799)
XVIII	Rural Housing Service, Rural Business-Cooperative Service, Rural Utilities Service, and Farm Service Agency, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1800—2099)
XXVI	Office of Inspector General, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2600—2699)
XXVII	Office of Information Resources Management, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2700—2799)
XXVIII	Office of Operations, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2800—2899)
XXIX	Office of Energy, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2900—2999)
XXX	Office of Finance and Management, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3000—3099)
XXXI	Office of Environmental Quality, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3100—3199)
XXXII	[Reserved]
XXXIII	Office of Transportation, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3300—3399)
XXXIV	Cooperative State Research, Education, and Extension Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3400—3499)

Title 7—Agriculture—Continued

Chap.

XXXV Rural Housing Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3500—3599)

XXXVI National Agricultural Statistics Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3600—3699)

XXXVII Economic Research Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3700—3799)

XXXVIII World Agricultural Outlook Board, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3800—3899)

XLI [Reserved]

XLII Rural Business-Cooperative Service and Rural Utilities Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 4200—4299)

Title 8—Aliens and Nationality

I Immigration and Naturalization Service, Department of Justice (Parts 1—499)

Title 9—Animals and Animal Products

I Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1—199)

II Grain Inspection, Packers and Stockyards Administration (Packers and Stockyards Programs), Department of Agriculture (Parts 200—299)

III Food Safety and Inspection Service, Meat and Poultry Inspection, Department of Agriculture (Parts 300—599)

Title 10—Energy

I Nuclear Regulatory Commission (Parts 0—199)

II Department of Energy (Parts 200—699)

III Department of Energy (Parts 700—999)

X Department of Energy (General Provisions) (Parts 1000—1099)

XI United States Enrichment Corporation (Parts 1100—1199)

XV Office of the Federal Inspector for the Alaska Natural Gas Transportation System (Parts 1500—1599)

XVII Defense Nuclear Facilities Safety Board (Parts 1700—1799)

Title 11—Federal Elections

I Federal Election Commission (Parts 1—9099)

Title 12—Banks and Banking

I Comptroller of the Currency, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—199)

II Federal Reserve System (Parts 200—299)

III Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (Parts 300—399)

IV Export-Import Bank of the United States (Parts 400—499)

Title 12—Banks and Banking—Continued

Chap.

V Office of Thrift Supervision, Department of the Treasury (Parts 500—599)

VI Farm Credit Administration (Parts 600—699)

VII National Credit Union Administration (Parts 700—799)

VIII Federal Financing Bank (Parts 800—899)

IX Federal Housing Finance Board (Parts 900—999)

XI Federal Financial Institutions Examination Council (Parts 1100—1199)

XIV Farm Credit System Insurance Corporation (Parts 1400—1499)

XV Thrift Depositor Protection Oversight Board (Parts 1500—1599)

XVII Office of Federal Housing Enterprise Oversight, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 1700-1799)

XVIII Community Development Financial Institutions Fund, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1800—1899)

Title 13—Business Credit and Assistance

I Small Business Administration (Parts 1—199)

III Economic Development Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)

Title 14—Aeronautics and Space

I Federal Aviation Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—199)

II Office of the Secretary, Department of Transportation (Aviation Proceedings) (Parts 200—399)

III Commercial Space Transportation, Federal Aviation Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)

V National Aeronautics and Space Administration (Parts 1200—1299)

Title 15—Commerce and Foreign Trade

SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary of Commerce (Parts 0—29)

SUBTITLE B—Regulations Relating to Commerce and Foreign Trade

I Bureau of the Census, Department of Commerce (Parts 30—199)

II National Institute of Standards and Technology, Department of Commerce (Parts 200—299)

III International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)

IV Foreign-Trade Zones Board, Department of Commerce (Parts 400—499)

VII Bureau of Export Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 700—799)

VIII Bureau of Economic Analysis, Department of Commerce (Parts 800—899)

IX National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 900—999)

Title 15—Commerce and Foreign Trade—Continued

Chap.

XI Technology Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 1100—1199)

XIII East-West Foreign Trade Board (Parts 1300—1399)

XIV Minority Business Development Agency (Parts 1400—1499)

SUBTITLE C—Regulations Relating to Foreign Trade Agreements

XX Office of the United States Trade Representative (Parts 2000—2099)

SUBTITLE D—Regulations Relating to Telecommunications and Information

XXIII National Telecommunications and Information Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 2300—2399)

Title 16—Commercial Practices

I Federal Trade Commission (Parts 0—999)

II Consumer Product Safety Commission (Parts 1000—1799)

Title 17—Commodity and Securities Exchanges

I Commodity Futures Trading Commission (Parts 1—199)

II Securities and Exchange Commission (Parts 200—399)

IV Department of the Treasury (Parts 400—499)

Title 18—Conservation of Power and Water Resources

I Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, Department of Energy (Parts 1—399)

III Delaware River Basin Commission (Parts 400—499)

VI Water Resources Council (Parts 700—799)

VIII Susquehanna River Basin Commission (Parts 800—899)

XIII Tennessee Valley Authority (Parts 1300—1399)

Title 19—Customs Duties

I United States Customs Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—199)

II United States International Trade Commission (Parts 200—299)

III International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)

Title 20—Employees' Benefits

I Office of Workers' Compensation Programs, Department of Labor (Parts 1—199)

II Railroad Retirement Board (Parts 200—399)

III Social Security Administration (Parts 400—499)

IV Employees' Compensation Appeals Board, Department of Labor (Parts 500—599)

V Employment and Training Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 600—699)

Title 20—Employees' Benefits—Continued

Chap.

VI Employment Standards Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 700—799)

VII Benefits Review Board, Department of Labor (Parts 800—899)

VIII Joint Board for the Enrollment of Actuaries (Parts 900—999)

IX Office of the Assistant Secretary for Veterans' Employment and Training, Department of Labor (Parts 1000—1099)

Title 21—Food and Drugs

I Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1—1299)

II Drug Enforcement Administration, Department of Justice (Parts 1300—1399)

III Office of National Drug Control Policy (Parts 1400—1499)

Title 22—Foreign Relations

I Department of State (Parts 1—199)

II Agency for International Development, International Development Cooperation Agency (Parts 200—299)

III Peace Corps (Parts 300—399)

IV International Joint Commission, United States and Canada (Parts 400—499)

V United States Information Agency (Parts 500—599)

VI United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency (Parts 600—699)

VII Overseas Private Investment Corporation, International Development Cooperation Agency (Parts 700—799)

IX Foreign Service Grievance Board Regulations (Parts 900—999)

X Inter-American Foundation (Parts 1000—1099)

XI International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, United States Section (Parts 1100—1199)

XII United States International Development Cooperation Agency (Parts 1200—1299)

XIII Board for International Broadcasting (Parts 1300—1399)

XIV Foreign Service Labor Relations Board; Federal Labor Relations Authority; General Counsel of the Federal Labor Relations Authority; and the Foreign Service Impasse Disputes Panel (Parts 1400—1499)

XV African Development Foundation (Parts 1500—1599)

XVI Japan-United States Friendship Commission (Parts 1600—1699)

XVII United States Institute of Peace (Parts 1700—1799)

Title 23—Highways

I Federal Highway Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—999)

II National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Federal Highway Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1200—1299)

Title 23—Highways—Continued

Chap.

III National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1300—1399)

Title 24—Housing and Urban Development

SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 0—99)

SUBTITLE B—Regulations Relating to Housing and Urban Development

I Office of Assistant Secretary for Equal Opportunity, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 100—199)

II Office of Assistant Secretary for Housing-Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 200—299)

III Government National Mortgage Association, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 300—399)

V Office of Assistant Secretary for Community Planning and Development, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 500—599)

VI Office of Assistant Secretary for Community Planning and Development, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 600—699) [Reserved]

VII Office of the Secretary, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Housing Assistance Programs and Public and Indian Housing Programs) (Parts 700—799)

VIII Office of the Assistant Secretary for Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Section 8 Housing Assistance Programs and Section 202 Direct Loan Program) (Parts 800—899)

IX Office of Assistant Secretary for Public and Indian Housing, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 900—999)

X Office of Assistant Secretary for Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Interstate Land Sales Registration Program) (Parts 1700—1799)

XII Office of Inspector General, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 2000—2099)

XX Office of Assistant Secretary for Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 3200—3899)

XXV Neighborhood Reinvestment Corporation (Parts 4100—4199)

Title 25—Indians

I Bureau of Indian Affairs, Department of the Interior (Parts 1—299)

II Indian Arts and Crafts Board, Department of the Interior (Parts 300—399)

III National Indian Gaming Commission, Department of the Interior (Parts 500—599)

IV Office of Navajo and Hopi Indian Relocation (Parts 700—799)

Title 25—Indians—Continued

Chap.

V Bureau of Indian Affairs, Department of the Interior, and Indian Health Service, Department of Health and Human Services (Part 900)

VI Office of the Assistant Secretary-Indian Affairs, Department of the Interior (Part 1001)

VII Office of the Special Trustee for American Indians, Department of the Interior (Part 1200)

Title 26—Internal Revenue

I Internal Revenue Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—799)

Title 27—Alcohol, Tobacco Products and Firearms

I Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—299)

Title 28—Judicial Administration

I Department of Justice (Parts 0—199)

III Federal Prison Industries, Inc., Department of Justice (Parts 300—399)

V Bureau of Prisons, Department of Justice (Parts 500—599)

VI Offices of Independent Counsel, Department of Justice (Parts 600—699)

VII Office of Independent Counsel (Parts 700—799)

Title 29—Labor

SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary of Labor (Parts 0—99)

SUBTITLE B—Regulations Relating to Labor

I National Labor Relations Board (Parts 100—199)

II Office of Labor-Management Standards, Department of Labor (Parts 200—299)

III National Railroad Adjustment Board (Parts 300—399)

IV Office of Labor-Management Standards, Department of Labor (Parts 400—499)

V Wage and Hour Division, Department of Labor (Parts 500—899)

IX Construction Industry Collective Bargaining Commission (Parts 900—999)

X National Mediation Board (Parts 1200—1299)

XII Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service (Parts 1400—1499)

XIV Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (Parts 1600—1699)

XVII Occupational Safety and Health Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 1900—1999)

XX Occupational Safety and Health Review Commission (Parts 2200—2499)

XXV Pension and Welfare Benefits Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 2500—2599)

Title 29—Labor—Continued

Chap.

XXVII Federal Mine Safety and Health Review Commission (Parts 2700—2799)

XL Pension Benefit Guaranty Corporation (Parts 4000—4999)

Title 30—Mineral Resources

I Mine Safety and Health Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 1—199)

II Minerals Management Service, Department of the Interior (Parts 200—299)

III Board of Surface Mining and Reclamation Appeals, Department of the Interior (Parts 300—399)

IV Geological Survey, Department of the Interior (Parts 400—499)

VI Bureau of Mines, Department of the Interior (Parts 600—699)

VII Office of Surface Mining Reclamation and Enforcement, Department of the Interior (Parts 700—999)

Title 31—Money and Finance: Treasury

SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary of the Treasury (Parts 0—50)

SUBTITLE B—Regulations Relating to Money and Finance

I Monetary Offices, Department of the Treasury (Parts 51—199)

II Fiscal Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 200—399)

IV Secret Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 400—499)

V Office of Foreign Assets Control, Department of the Treasury (Parts 500—599)

VI Bureau of Engraving and Printing, Department of the Treasury (Parts 600—699)

VII Federal Law Enforcement Training Center, Department of the Treasury (Parts 700—799)

VIII Office of International Investment, Department of the Treasury (Parts 800—899)

Title 32—National Defense

SUBTITLE A—Department of Defense

I Office of the Secretary of Defense (Parts 1—399)

V Department of the Army (Parts 400—699)

VI Department of the Navy (Parts 700—799)

VII Department of the Air Force (Parts 800—1099)

SUBTITLE B—Other Regulations Relating to National Defense

XII Defense Logistics Agency (Parts 1200—1299)

XVI Selective Service System (Parts 1600—1699)

XIX Central Intelligence Agency (Parts 1900—1999)

XX Information Security Oversight Office, National Archives and Records Administration (Parts 2000—2099)

XXI National Security Council (Parts 2100—2199)

Title 32—National Defense—Continued

Chap.

XXIV Office of Science and Technology Policy (Parts 2400—2499)

XXVII Office for Micronesian Status Negotiations (Parts 2700—2799)

XXVIII Office of the Vice President of the United States (Parts 2800—2899)

XXIX Presidential Commission on the Assignment of Women in the Armed Forces (Part 2900)

Title 33—Navigation and Navigable Waters

I Coast Guard, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—199)

II Corps of Engineers, Department of the Army (Parts 200—399)

IV Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation, Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)

Title 34—Education

SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary, Department of Education (Parts 1—99)

SUBTITLE B—Regulations of the Offices of the Department of Education

I Office for Civil Rights, Department of Education (Parts 100—199)

II Office of Elementary and Secondary Education, Department of Education (Parts 200—299)

III Office of Special Education and Rehabilitative Services, Department of Education (Parts 300—399)

IV Office of Vocational and Adult Education, Department of Education (Parts 400—499)

V Office of Bilingual Education and Minority Languages Affairs, Department of Education (Parts 500—599)

VI Office of Postsecondary Education, Department of Education (Parts 600—699)

VII Office of Educational Research and Improvement, Department of Education (Parts 700—799)

XI National Institute for Literacy (Parts 1100-1199)

SUBTITLE C—Regulations Relating to Education

XII National Council on Disability (Parts 1200—1299)

Title 35—Panama Canal

I Panama Canal Regulations (Parts 1—299)

Title 36—Parks, Forests, and Public Property

I National Park Service, Department of the Interior (Parts 1—199)

II Forest Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 200—299)

III Corps of Engineers, Department of the Army (Parts 300—399)

IV American Battle Monuments Commission (Parts 400—499)

V Smithsonian Institution (Parts 500—599)

VII Library of Congress (Parts 700—799)

Title 36—Parks, Forests, and Public Property—Continued

Chap.

VIII Advisory Council on Historic Preservation (Parts 800—899)

IX Pennsylvania Avenue Development Corporation (Parts 900—999)

XI Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board (Parts 1100—1199)

XII National Archives and Records Administration (Parts 1200—1299)

XIV Assassination Records Review Board (Parts 1400-1499)

Title 37—Patents, Trademarks, and Copyrights

I Patent and Trademark Office, Department of Commerce (Parts 1—199)

II Copyright Office, Library of Congress (Parts 200—299)

IV Assistant Secretary for Technology Policy, Department of Commerce (Parts 400—499)

V Under Secretary for Technology, Department of Commerce (Parts 500—599)

Title 38—Pensions, Bonuses, and Veterans' Relief

I Department of Veterans Affairs (Parts 0—99)

Title 39—Postal Service

I United States Postal Service (Parts 1—999)

III Postal Rate Commission (Parts 3000—3099)

Title 40—Protection of Environment

I Environmental Protection Agency (Parts 1—799)

V Council on Environmental Quality (Parts 1500—1599)

Title 41—Public Contracts and Property Management

SUBTITLE B—Other Provisions Relating to Public Contracts

50 Public Contracts, Department of Labor (Parts 50–1—50–999)

51 Committee for Purchase From People Who Are Blind or Severely Disabled (Parts 51–1—51–99)

60 Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor (Parts 60–1—60–999)

61 Office of the Assistant Secretary for Veterans Employment and Training, Department of Labor (Parts 61–1—61–999)

SUBTITLE C—Federal Property Management Regulations System

101 Federal Property Management Regulations (Parts 101–1—101–99)

105 General Services Administration (Parts 105–1—105–999)

109 Department of Energy Property Management Regulations (Parts 109–1—109–99)

114 Department of the Interior (Parts 114–1—114–99)

115 Environmental Protection Agency (Parts 115–1—115–99)

128 Department of Justice (Parts 128–1—128–99)

Title 41—Public Contracts and Property Management—Continued

Chap.

SUBTITLE D—Other Provisions Relating to Property Management [Reserved]

SUBTITLE E—Federal Information Resources Management Regulations System

201 Federal Information Resources Management Regulation (Parts 201–1—201–99) [Reserved]

SUBTITLE F—Federal Travel Regulation System

301 Travel Allowances (Parts 301–1—301–99)

302 Relocation Allowances (Parts 302–1—302–99)

303 Payment of Expenses Connected with the Death of Certain Employees (Parts 303–1—303–2)

304 Payment from a Non-Federal Source for Travel Expenses (Parts 304–1—304–99)

Title 42—Public Health

I Public Health Service, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1—199)

IV Health Care Financing Administration, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 400—499)

V Office of Inspector General-Health Care, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1000—1999)

Title 43—Public Lands: Interior

SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary of the Interior (Parts 1—199)

SUBTITLE B—Regulations Relating to Public Lands

I Bureau of Reclamation, Department of the Interior (Parts 200—499)

II Bureau of Land Management, Department of the Interior (Parts 1000—9999)

III Utah Reclamation Mitigation and Conservation Commission (Parts 10000—10005)

Title 44—Emergency Management and Assistance

I Federal Emergency Management Agency (Parts 0—399)

IV Department of Commerce and Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)

Title 45—Public Welfare

SUBTITLE A—Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1—199)

SUBTITLE B—Regulations Relating to Public Welfare

II Office of Family Assistance (Assistance Programs), Administration for Children and Families, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 200—299)

III Office of Child Support Enforcement (Child Support Enforcement Program), Administration for Children and Families, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 300—399)

Title 45—Public Welfare—Continued

Chap.

IV Office of Refugee Resettlement, Administration for Children and Families Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 400—499)

V Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States, Department of Justice (Parts 500—599)

VI National Science Foundation (Parts 600—699)

VII Commission on Civil Rights (Parts 700—799)

VIII Office of Personnel Management (Parts 800—899)

X Office of Community Services, Administration for Children and Families, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1000—1099)

XI National Foundation on the Arts and the Humanities (Parts 1100—1199)

XII ACTION (Parts 1200—1299)

XIII Office of Human Development Services, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1300—1399)

XVI Legal Services Corporation (Parts 1600—1699)

XVII National Commission on Libraries and Information Science (Parts 1700—1799)

XVIII Harry S. Truman Scholarship Foundation (Parts 1800—1899)

XXI Commission on Fine Arts (Parts 2100—2199)

XXII Christopher Columbus Quincentenary Jubilee Commission (Parts 2200—2299)

XXIII Arctic Research Commission (Part 2301)

XXIV James Madison Memorial Fellowship Foundation (Parts 2400—2499)

XXV Corporation for National and Community Service (Parts 2500—2599)

Title 46—Shipping

I Coast Guard, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—199)

II Maritime Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 200—399)

IV Federal Maritime Commission (Parts 500—599)

Title 47—Telecommunication

I Federal Communications Commission (Parts 0—199)

II Office of Science and Technology Policy and National Security Council (Parts 200—299)

III National Telecommunications and Information Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)

Title 48—Federal Acquisition Regulations System

1 Federal Acquisition Regulation (Parts 1—99)

2 Department of Defense (Parts 200—299)

3 Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 300—399)

Title 48—Federal Acquisition Regulations System—Continued

Chap.

4 Department of Agriculture (Parts 400—499)

5 General Services Administration (Parts 500—599)

6 Department of State (Parts 600—699)

7 Agency for International Development (Parts 700—799)

8 Department of Veterans Affairs (Parts 800—899)

9 Department of Energy (Parts 900—999)

10 Department of the Treasury (Parts 1000—1099)

12 Department of Transportation (Parts 1200—1299)

13 Department of Commerce (Parts 1300—1399)

14 Department of the Interior (Parts 1400—1499)

15 Environmental Protection Agency (Parts 1500—1599)

16 Office of Personnel Management Federal Employees Health Benefits Acquisition Regulation (Parts 1600—1699)

17 Office of Personnel Management (Parts 1700—1799)

18 National Aeronautics and Space Administration (Parts 1800—1899)

19 United States Information Agency (Parts 1900—1999)

20 Nuclear Regulatory Commission (Parts 2000—2099)

21 Office of Personnel Management, Federal Employees Group Life Insurance Federal Acquisition Regulation (Parts 2100—2199)

23 Social Security Administration (Parts 2300—2399)

24 Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 2400—2499)

25 National Science Foundation (Parts 2500—2599)

28 Department of Justice (Parts 2800—2899)

29 Department of Labor (Parts 2900—2999)

34 Department of Education Acquisition Regulation (Parts 3400—3499)

35 Panama Canal Commission (Parts 3500—3599)

44 Federal Emergency Management Agency (Parts 4400—4499)

51 Department of the Army Acquisition Regulations (Parts 5100—5199)

52 Department of the Navy Acquisition Regulations (Parts 5200—5299)

53 Department of the Air Force Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement (Parts 5300—5399)

54 Defense Logistics Agency, Department of Defense (Part 5452)

57 African Development Foundation (Parts 5700—5799)

61 General Services Administration Board of Contract Appeals (Parts 6100—6199)

63 Department of Transportation Board of Contract Appeals (Parts 6300—6399)

99 Cost Accounting Standards Board, Office of Federal Procurement Policy, Office of Management and Budget (Parts 9900—9999)

Title 49—Transportation

Chap.

SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary of Transportation (Parts 1—99)

SUBTITLE B—Other Regulations Relating to Transportation

I Research and Special Programs Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 100—199)

II Federal Railroad Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 200—299)

III Federal Highway Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 300—399)

IV Coast Guard, Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)

V National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 500—599)

VI Federal Transit Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 600—699)

VII National Railroad Passenger Corporation (AMTRAK) (Parts 700—799)

VIII National Transportation Safety Board (Parts 800—999)

X Surface Transportation Board, Department of Transportation (Parts 1000—1399)

Title 50—Wildlife and Fisheries

I United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Department of the Interior (Parts 1—199)

II National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 200—299)

III International Fishing and Related Activities (Parts 300—399)

IV Joint Regulations (United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Department of the Interior and National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce); Endangered Species Committee Regulations (Parts 400—499)

V Marine Mammal Commission (Parts 500—599)

VI Fishery Conservation and Management, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 600—699)

CFR Index and Finding Aids

Subject/Agency Index

List of Agency Prepared Indexes

Parallel Tables of Statutory Authorities and Rules

Acts Requiring Publication in the Federal Register

List of CFR Titles, Chapters, Subchapters, and Parts

Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR

Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR

(Revised as of June 20, 1997)

Agency	CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
ACTION	45, XII
Administrative Committee of the Federal Register	1, I
Advanced Research Projects Agency	32, I
Advisory Commission on Intergovernmental Relations	5, VII
Advisory Committee on Federal Pay	5, IV
Advisory Council on Historic Preservation	36, VIII
African Development Foundation	22, XV
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 57
Agency for International Development	22, II
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 7
Agricultural Marketing Service	7, I, IX, X, XI
Agricultural Research Service	7, V
Agriculture Department	
Agricultural Marketing Service	7, I, IX, X, XI
Agricultural Research Service	7, V
Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service	7, III; 9, I
Commodity Credit Corporation	7, XIV
Cooperative State Research, Education, and Extension Service	7, XXXIV
Economic Research Service	7, XXXVII
Energy, Office of	7, XXIX
Environmental Quality, Office of	7, XXXI
Farm Service Agency	7, VII, XVIII
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 4
Federal Crop Insurance Corporation	7, IV
Finance and Management, Office of	7, XXX
Food and Consumer Service	7, II
Food Safety and Inspection Service	9, III
Foreign Agricultural Service	7, XV
Forest Service	36, II
Grain Inspection, Packers and Stockyards Administration	7, VIII; 9, II
Information Resources Management, Office of	7, XXVII
Inspector General, Office of	7, XXVI
National Agricultural Library	7, XLI
National Agricultural Statistics Service	7, XXXVI
Natural Resources Conservation Service	7, VI
Operations, Office of	7, XXVIII
Rural Business-Cooperative Service	7, XVIII, XLII
Rural Development Administration	7, XLII
Rural Housing Service	7, XVIII, XXXV
Rural Telephone Bank	7, XVI
Rural Utilities Service	7, XVII, XVIII, XLII
Secretary of Agriculture, Office of	7, Subtitle A
Transportation, Office of	7, XXXIII
World Agricultural Outlook Board	7, XXXVIII
Air Force Department	32, VII
Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement	48, 53
Alaska Natural Gas Transportation System, Office of the Federal Inspector	10, XV
Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms, Bureau of	27, I
AMTRAK	49, VII
American Battle Monuments Commission	36, IV
American Indians, Office of the Special Trustee	25, VII

Agency	CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service	7, III; 9, I
Appalachian Regional Commission	5, IX
Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board	36, XI
Arctic Research Commission	45, XXIII
Armed Forces Retirement Home	5, XI
Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, United States	22, VI
Army Department	32, V
Engineers, Corps of	33, II; 36, III
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 51
Assassination Records Review Board	36, XIV
Benefits Review Board	20, VII
Bilingual Education and Minority Languages Affairs, Office of	34, V
Blind or Severely Disabled, Committee for Purchase From People Who Are	41, 51
Board for International Broadcasting	22, XIII
Census Bureau	15, I
Central Intelligence Agency	32, XIX
Child Support Enforcement, Office of	45, III
Children and Families, Administration for	45, II, III, IV, X
Christopher Columbus Quincentenary Jubilee Commission	45, XXII
Civil Rights, Commission on	45, VII
Civil Rights, Office for	34, I
Coast Guard	33, I; 46, I; 49, IV
Commerce Department	44, IV
Census Bureau	15, I‘
Economic Affairs, Under Secretary	37, V
Economic Analysis, Bureau of	15, VIII
Economic Development Administration	13, III
Emergency Management and Assistance	44, IV
Export Administration, Bureau of	15, VII
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 13
Fishery Conservation and Management	50, VI
Foreign-Trade Zones Board	15, IV
International Trade Administration	15, III; 19, III
National Institute of Standards and Technology	15, II
National Marine Fisheries Service	50, II, IV
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration	15, IX; 50, II, III, IV, VI
National Telecommunications and Information Administration	15, XXIII; 47, III
National Weather Service	15, IX
Patent and Trademark Office	37, I
Productivity, Technology and Innovation, Assistant Secretary for	37, IV
Secretary of Commerce, Office of	15, Subtitle A
Technology, Under Secretary for	37, V
Technology Administration	15, XI
Technology Policy, Assistant Secretary for	37, IV
Commercial Space Transportation	14, III
Commodity Credit Corporation	7, XIV
Commodity Futures Trading Commission	5, XLI; 17, I
Community Planning and Development, Office of Assistant Secretary for	24, V, VI
Community Services, Office of	45, X
Comptroller of the Currency	12, I
Construction Industry Collective Bargaining Commission	29, IX
Consumer Product Safety Commission	5, LXXI; 16, II
Cooperative State Research, Education, and Extension Service	7, XXXIV
Copyright Office	37, II
Cost Accounting Standards Board	48, 99
Council on Environmental Quality	40, V
Customs Service, United States	19, I
Defense Contract Audit Agency	32, I
Defense Department	5, XXVI; 32, Subtitle A
Advanced Research Projects Agency	32, I
Air Force Department	32, VII
Army Department	32, V; 33, II; 36, III, 48, 51

Agency	CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
Defense Intelligence Agency	32, I
Defense Logistics Agency	32, I, XII; 48, 54
Defense Mapping Agency	32, I
Engineers, Corps of	33, II; 36, III
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 2
Navy Department	32, VI; 48, 52
Secretary of Defense, Office of	32, I
Defense Contract Audit Agency	32, I
Defense Intelligence Agency	32, I
Defense Logistics Agency	32, XII; 48, 54
Defense Mapping Agency	32, I
Defense Nuclear Facilities Safety Board	10, XVII
Delaware River Basin Commission	18, III
Drug Enforcement Administration	21, II
East-West Foreign Trade Board	15, XIII
Economic Affairs, Under Secretary	37, V
Economic Analysis, Bureau of	15, VIII
Economic Development Administration	13, III
Economic Research Service	7, XXXVII
Education, Department of	5, LIII
Bilingual Education and Minority Languages Affairs, Office of	34, V
Civil Rights, Office for	34, I
Educational Research and Improvement, Office of	34, VII
Elementary and Secondary Education, Office of	34, II
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 34
Postsecondary Education, Office of	34, VI
Secretary of Education, Office of	34, Subtitle A
Special Education and Rehabilitative Services, Office of	34, III
Vocational and Adult Education, Office of	34, IV
Educational Research and Improvement, Office of	34, VII
Elementary and Secondary Education, Office of	34, II
Employees' Compensation Appeals Board	20, IV
Employees Loyalty Board	5, V
Employment and Training Administration	20, V
Employment Standards Administration	20, VI
Endangered Species Committee	50, IV
Energy, Department of	5, XXIII; 10, II, III, X
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 9
Federal Energy Regulatory Commission	5, XXIV; 18, I
Property Management Regulations	41, 109
Energy, Office of	7, XXIX
Engineers, Corps of	33, II; 36, III
Engraving and Printing, Bureau of	31, VI
Enrichment Corporation, United States	10, XI
Environmental Protection Agency	5, LIV; 40, I
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 15
Property Management Regulations	41, 115
Environmental Quality, Office of	7, XXXI
Equal Employment Opportunity Commission	5, LXII; 29, XIV
Equal Opportunity, Office of Assistant Secretary for	24, I
Executive Office of the President	3, I
Administration, Office of	5, XV
Environmental Quality, Council on	40, V
Management and Budget, Office of	25, III, LXXVII; 48, 99
National Drug Control Policy, Office of	21, III
National Security Council	32, XXI; 47, 2
Presidential Documents	3
Science and Technology Policy, Office of	32, XXIV; 47, II
Trade Representative, Office of the United States	15, XX
Export Administration, Bureau of	15, VII
Export-Import Bank of the United States	5, LII; 12, IV
Family Assistance, Office of	45, II
Farm Credit Administration	5, XXXI; 12, VI
Farm Credit System Insurance Corporation	5, XXX; 12, XIV
Farm Service Agency	7, VII, XVIII
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 1
Federal Aviation Administration	14, I

Agency	CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
Commercial Space Transportation	14, III
Federal Claims Collection Standards	4, II
Federal Communications Commission	5, XXIX; 47, I
Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Office of	41, 60
Federal Crop Insurance Corporation	7, IV
Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation	5, XXII; 12, III
Federal Election Commission	11, I
Federal Emergency Management Agency	44, I
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 44
Federal Employees Group Life Insurance Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 21
Federal Employees Health Benefits Acquisition Regulation	48, 16
Federal Energy Regulatory Commission	5, XXIV; 18, I
Federal Financial Institutions Examination Council	12, XI
Federal Financing Bank	12, VIII
Federal Highway Administration	23, I, II; 49, III
Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation	1, IV
Federal Housing Enterprise Oversight Office	12, XVII
Federal Housing Finance Board	12, IX
Federal Inspector for the Alaska Natural Gas Transportation System, Office of	10, XV
Federal Labor Relations Authority, and General Counsel of the Federal Labor Relations Authority	5, XIV; 22, XIV
Federal Law Enforcement Training Center	31, VII
Federal Maritime Commission	46, IV
Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service	29, XII
Federal Mine Safety and Health Review Commission	5, LXXIV; 29, XXVII
Federal Pay, Advisory Committee on	5, IV
Federal Prison Industries, Inc.	28, III
Federal Procurement Policy Office	48, 99
Federal Property Management Regulations	41, 101
Federal Property Management Regulations System	41, Subtitle C
Federal Railroad Administration	49, II
Federal Register, Administrative Committee of	1, I
Federal Register, Office of	1, II
Federal Reserve System	12, II
Board of Governors	5, LVIII
Federal Retirement Thrift Investment Board	5, VI, LXXVI
Federal Service Impasses Panel	5, XIV
Federal Trade Commission	5, XLVII; 16, I
Federal Transit Administration	49, VI
Federal Travel Regulation System	41, Subtitle F
Finance and Management, Office of	7, XXX
Fine Arts, Commission on	45, XXI
Fiscal Service	31, II
Fish and Wildlife Service, United States	50, I, IV
Fishery Conservation and Management	50, VI
Food and Drug Administration	21, I
Food and Consumer Service	7, II
Food Safety and Inspection Service	9, III
Foreign Agricultural Service	7, XV
Foreign Assets Control, Office of	31, V
Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States	45, V
Foreign Service Grievance Board	22, IX
Foreign Service Impasse Disputes Panel	22, XIV
Foreign Service Labor Relations Board	22, XIV
Foreign-Trade Zones Board	15, IV
Forest Service	36, II
General Accounting Office	4, I, II
General Services Administration	5, LVII
Contract Appeals, Board of	48, 61
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 5
Federal Property Management Regulations System	41, 101, 105
Federal Travel Regulation System	41, Subtitle F
Payment From a Non-Federal Source for Travel Expenses	41, 304
Payment of Expenses Connected With the Death of Certain Employees	41, 303
Relocation Allowances	41, 302

Agency	CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
Travel Allowances	41, 301
Geological Survey	30, IV
Government Ethics, Office of	5, XVI
Government National Mortgage Association	24, III
Grain Inspection, Packers and Stockyards Administration	7, VIII; 9, II
Great Lakes Pilotage	46, III
Harry S. Truman Scholarship Foundation	45, XVIII
Health and Human Services, Department of	5, XLV; 45, Subtitle A
Child Support Enforcement, Office of	45, III
Children and Families, Administration for	45, II, III, IV, X
Community Services, Office of	45, X
Family Assistance, Office of	45, II
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 3
Food and Drug Administration	21, I
Health Care Financing Administration	42, IV
Human Development Services, Office of	45, XIII
Indian Health Service	25, V
Inspector General (Health Care), Office of	42, V
Public Health Service	42, I
Refugee Resettlement, Office of	45, IV
Health Care Financing Administration	42, IV
Housing and Urban Development, Department of	5, LXV; 24, Subtitle B
Community Planning and Development, Office of Assistant Secretary for	24, V, VI
Equal Opportunity, Office of Assistant Secretary for	24, I
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 24
Federal Housing Enterprise Oversight, Office of	12, XVII
Government National Mortgage Association	24, III
Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Office of Assistant Secretary for	24, II, VIII, X, XX
Inspector General, Office of	24, XII
Public and Indian Housing, Office of Assistant Secretary for	24, IX
Secretary, Office of	24, Subtitle A, VII
Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Office of Assistant Secretary for	24, II, VIII, X, XX
Human Development Services, Office of	45, XIII
Immigration and Naturalization Service	8, I
Independent Counsel, Office of	28, VII
Indian Affairs, Bureau of	25, I, V
Indian Affairs, Office of the Assistant Secretary	25, VI
Indian Arts and Crafts Board	25, II
Indian Health Service	25, V
Information Agency, United States	22, V
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 19
Information Resources Management, Office of	7, XXVII
Information Security Oversight Office, National Archives and Records Administration	32, XX
Inspector General	
Agriculture Department	7, XXVI
Health and Human Services Department	42, V
Housing and Urban Development Department	24, XII
Institute of Peace, United States	22, XVII
Inter-American Foundation	5, LXIII; 22, X
Intergovernmental Relations, Advisory Commission on	5, VII
Interior Department	
American Indians, Office of the Special Trustee	25, VII
Endangered Species Committee	50, IV
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 14
Federal Property Management Regulations System	41, 114
Fish and Wildlife Service, United States	50, I, IV
Geological Survey	30, IV
Indian Affairs, Bureau of	25, I, V
Indian Affairs, Office of the Assistant Secretary	25, VI
Indian Arts and Crafts Board	25, II
Land Management, Bureau of	43, II
Minerals Management Service	30, II
Mines, Bureau of	30, VI
National Indian Gaming Commission	25, III

Agency	CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
National Park Service	36, I
Reclamation, Bureau of	43, I
Secretary of the Interior, Office of	43, Subtitle A
Surface Mining and Reclamation Appeals, Board of	30, III
Surface Mining Reclamation and Enforcement, Office of	30, VII
Internal Revenue Service	26, I
International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, United States Section	22, XI
International Development, Agency for	22, II
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 7
International Development Cooperation Agency, United States	22, XII
International Development, Agency for	22, II; 48, 7
Overseas Private Investment Corporation	5, XXXIII; 22, VII
International Fishing and Related Activities	50, III
International Investment, Office of	31, VIII
International Joint Commission, United States and Canada	22, IV
International Organizations Employees Loyalty Board	5, V
International Trade Administration	15, III; 19, III
International Trade Commission, United States	19, II
Interstate Commerce Commission	5, XL
James Madison Memorial Fellowship Foundation	45, XXIV
Japan–United States Friendship Commission	22, XVI
Joint Board for the Enrollment of Actuaries	20, VIII
Justice Department	5, XXVIII; 28, I
Drug Enforcement Administration	21, II
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 28
Federal Claims Collection Standards	4, II
Federal Prison Industries, Inc.	28, III
Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States	45, V
Immigration and Naturalization Service	8, I
Offices of Independent Counsel	28, VI
Prisons, Bureau of	28, V
Property Management Regulations	41, 128
Labor Department	5, XLII
Benefits Review Board	20, VII
Employees' Compensation Appeals Board	20, IV
Employment and Training Administration	20, V
Employment Standards Administration	20, VI
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 29
Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Office of	41, 60
Federal Procurement Regulations System	41, 50
Labor-Management Standards, Office of	29, II, IV
Mine Safety and Health Administration	30, I
Occupational Safety and Health Administration	29, XVII
Pension and Welfare Benefits Administration	29, XXV
Public Contracts	41, 50
Secretary of Labor, Office of	29, Subtitle A
Veterans' Employment and Training, Office of the Assistant Secretary for	41, 61; 20, IX
Wage and Hour Division	29, V
Workers' Compensation Programs, Office of	20, I
Labor-Management Standards, Office of	29, II, IV
Land Management, Bureau of	43, II
Legal Services Corporation	45, XVI
Library of Congress	36, VII
Copyright Office	37, II
Management and Budget, Office of	5, III, LXXVII; 48, 99
Marine Mammal Commission	50, V
Maritime Administration	46, II
Merit Systems Protection Board	5, II
Micronesian Status Negotiations, Office for	32, XXVII
Mine Safety and Health Administration	30, I
Minerals Management Service	30, II
Mines, Bureau of	30, VI
Minority Business Development Agency	15, XIV
Miscellaneous Agencies	1, IV

Agency	CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
Monetary Offices	31, I
National Aeronautics and Space Administration	5, LIX; 14, V
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 18
National Agricultural Library	7, XLI
National Agricultural Statistics Service	7, XXXVI
National Archives and Records Administration	5, LXVI; 36, XII
Information Security Oversight Office	32, XX
National Bureau of Standards	15, II
National Capital Planning Commission	1, IV
National Commission for Employment Policy	1, IV
National Commission on Libraries and Information Science	45, XVII
National and Community Service, Corporation for	45, XXV
National Council on Disability	34, XII
National Credit Union Administration	12, VII
National Drug Control Policy, Office of	21, III
National Foundation on the Arts and the Humanities	45, XI
National Highway Traffic Safety Administration	23, II, III; 49, V
National Indian Gaming Commission	25, III
National Institute for Literacy	34, XI
National Institute of Standards and Technology	15, II
National Labor Relations Board	5, LXI; 29, I
National Marine Fisheries Service	50, II, IV
National Mediation Board	29, X
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration	15, IX; 50, II, III, IV, VI
National Park Service	36, I
National Railroad Adjustment Board	29, III
National Railroad Passenger Corporation (AMTRAK)	49, VII
National Science Foundation	5, XLIII; 45, VI
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 25
National Security Council	32, XXI
National Security Council and Office of Science and Technology Policy	47, II
National Telecommunications and Information Administration	15, XXIII; 47, III
National Transportation Safety Board	49, VIII
National Weather Service	15, IX
Natural Resources Conservation Service	7, VI
Navajo and Hopi Indian Relocation, Office of	25, IV
Navy Department	32, VI
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 52
Neighborhood Reinvestment Corporation	24, XXV
Northeast Dairy Compact Commission	7, XIII
Nuclear Regulatory Commission	5, XLVIII; 10, I
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 20
Occupational Safety and Health Administration	29, XVII
Occupational Safety and Health Review Commission	29, XX
Offices of Independent Counsel	28, VI
Operations Office	7, XXVIII
Overseas Private Investment Corporation	5, XXXIII; 22, VII
Panama Canal Commission	48, 35
Panama Canal Regulations	35, I
Patent and Trademark Office	37, I
Payment From a Non-Federal Source for Travel Expenses	41, 304
Payment of Expenses Connected With the Death of Certain Employees	41, 303
Peace Corps	22, III
Pennsylvania Avenue Development Corporation	36, IX
Pension and Welfare Benefits Administration	29, XXV
Pension Benefit Guaranty Corporation	29, XL
Personnel Management, Office of	5, I, XXXV; 45, VIII
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 17
Federal Employees Group Life Insurance Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 21
Federal Employees Health Benefits Acquisition Regulation	48, 16
Postal Rate Commission	5, XLVI; 39, III
Postal Service, United States	5, LX; 39, I
Postsecondary Education, Office of	34, VI
President's Commission on White House Fellowships	1, IV

Agency	CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
Presidential Commission on the Assignment of Women in the Armed Forces	32, XXIX
Presidential Documents	3
Prisons, Bureau of	28, V
Productivity, Technology and Innovation, Assistant Secretary	37, IV
Public Contracts, Department of Labor	41, 50
Public and Indian Housing, Office of Assistant Secretary for	24, IX
Public Health Service	42, I
Railroad Retirement Board	20, II
Reclamation, Bureau of	43, I
Refugee Resettlement, Office of	45, IV
Regional Action Planning Commissions	13, V
Relocation Allowances	41, 302
Research and Special Programs Administration	49, I
Rural Business-Cooperative Service	7, XVIII, XLII
Rural Development Administration	7, XLII
Rural Housing Service	7, XVIII, XXXV
Rural Telephone Bank	7, XVI
Rural Utilities Service	7, XVII, XVIII, XLII
Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation	33, IV
Science and Technology Policy, Office of	32, XXIV
Science and Technology Policy, Office of, and National Security Council	47, II
Secret Service	31, IV
Securities and Exchange Commission	17, II
Selective Service System	32, XVI
Small Business Administration	13, I
Smithsonian Institution	36, V
Social Security Administration	20, III; 48, 23
Soldiers' and Airmen's Home, United States	5, XI
Special Counsel, Office of	5, VIII
Special Education and Rehabilitative Services, Office of	34, III
State Department	22, I
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 6
Surface Mining and Reclamation Appeals, Board of	30, III
Surface Mining Reclamation and Enforcement, Office of	30, VII
Surface Transportation Board	49, X
Susquehanna River Basin Commission	18, VIII
Technology Administration	15, XI
Technology Policy, Assistant Secretary for	37, IV
Technology, Under Secretary for	37, V
Tennessee Valley Authority	5, LXIX; 18, XIII
Thrift Depositor Protection Oversight Board	12, XV
Thrift Supervision Office, Department of the Treasury	12, V
Trade Representative, United States, Office of	15, XX
Transportation, Department of	5, L
Coast Guard	33, I; 46, I; 49, IV
Commercial Space Transportation	14, III
Contract Appeals, Board of	48, 63
Emergency Management and Assistance	44, IV
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 12
Federal Aviation Administration	14, I
Federal Highway Administration	23, I, II; 49, III
Federal Railroad Administration	49, II
Federal Transit Administration	49, VI
Maritime Administration	46, II
National Highway Traffic Safety Administration	23, II, III; 49, V
Research and Special Programs Administration	49, I
Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation	33, IV
Secretary of Transportation, Office of	14, II; 49, Subtitle A
Surface Transportation Board	49, X
Transportation, Office of	7, XXXIII
Travel Allowances	41, 301
Treasury Department	5, XXI; 17, IV
Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms, Bureau of	27, I
Community Development Financial Institutions Fund	12, XVIII
Comptroller of the Currency	12, I

Agency	CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
Customs Service, United States	19, I
Engraving and Printing, Bureau of	31, VI
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 10
Federal Law Enforcement Training Center	31, VII
Fiscal Service	31, II
Foreign Assets Control, Office of	31, V
Internal Revenue Service	26, I
International Investment, Office of	31, VIII
Monetary Offices	31, I
Secret Service	31, IV
Secretary of the Treasury, Office of	31, Subtitle A
Thrift Supervision, Office of	12, V
Truman, Harry S. Scholarship Foundation	45, XVIII
United States and Canada, International Joint Commission	22, IV
United States and Mexico, International Boundary and Water Commission, United States Section	22, XI
United States Enrichment Corporation	10, XI
Utah Reclamation Mitigation and Conservation Commission	43, III
Veterans Affairs Department	38, I
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 8
Veterans' Employment and Training, Office of the Assistant Secretary for	41, 61; 20, IX
Vice President of the United States, Office of	32, XXVIII
Vocational and Adult Education, Office of	34, IV
Wage and Hour Division	29, V
Water Resources Council	18, VI
Workers' Compensation Programs, Office of	20, I
World Agricultural Outlook Board	7, XXXVIII

List of CFR Sections Affected

All changes in this volume of the *Code of Federal Regulations* which were made by documents published in the FEDERAL REGISTER since January 1, 1986, are enumerated in the following list. Entries indicate the nature of the changes effected. Page numbers refer to FEDERAL REGISTER pages. The user should consult the entries for chapters and parts as well as sections for revisions.

For the period before January 1, 1986, see the ''List of CFR Sections Affected, 1949–1963, 1964–1972, and 1973–1985'' published in seven separate volumes.

1986

37 CFR

51 FR Page

Chapter I

1.24 Revised 28057
Effective date corrected 28556
2 Authority citation revised 28057, 28709
2.1 Revised 28709
2.6 Introductory text republished; (a), (n), (o), and (q) revised 28057
Effective date corrected; text corrected 28556
2.21 (a) introductory text republished; (a)(3) revised 29921
2.52 Revised 29921
2.54 Removed 29922
2.58 (b) revised 29922
2.101 (b) revised 28709
2.104 Revised 28709
2.112 (a) revised 28710
2.114 (c) revised 28710
2.132 (c) revised 28710
2.145 (d)(1) revised 28710

Chapter II

201 Policy statement 599
201.2 (b)(2) and (c)(1) amended 30062
201.17 (j)(3) temporarily waived 599
(k) added; interim 30216
(k) revised 45112
202 Authority citation revised 6403
202.19 Revised 6403

37 CFR—Continued

51 FR Page

Chapter II —Continued

202.20 Revised 6405
202.21 Revised 6409

Chapter III

304.5 (c) amended 43609
306.3 Revised 27537
306.4 Removed 27537

Chapter IV

401 Added; interim 25511

1987

37 CFR

52 FR Page

Chapter I

1.1 (f) added 9394
1.8 (a)(2)(xi) revised 20046
1.20 (n) added 9394
1.61 Removed 20046
1.70 Removed 20046
1.101 (a) revised 20046
1.141 Revised 20046
1.401—1.499 (Subpart C) Authority citation revised 20047
1.401 (g) redesignated as (i); new (g) and (h) added 20047
1.414 Revised 20047
1.416 Added 20047
1.431 (d)(2) revised 20047
1.432 (b) revised 20047
1.445 Heading and (a) revised 20047
1.472 Redesignated from 1.475 20047
1.475 Redesignated as 1.472; new 1.475 added 20047

37 CFR—Continued

52 FR Page

Chapter I —Continued

1.476 Redesignated from 1.481 and (a) revised 20048
1.477 Redesignated from 1.482 and heading and (b) revised 20048
1.480—1.489 Undesignated center heading added 20048
1.480 Added 20048
1.481 Redesignated as 1.476 and (a) revised 20048
1.482 Redesignated as 1.477 and heading and (b) revised; new 1.482 added 20048
1.484 Added 20049
1.485 Added 20049
1.487 Added 20049
1.488 Added 20049
1.489 Added 20050
1.491—1.499 Undesignated center heading added 20050
1.491 Added 20050
1.492 Added 20050
1.494 Added 20050
1.495 Added 20051
1.496 Added 20051
1.497 Added 20052
1.499 Added 20052
1.690 Added 13838
1.710—1.785 (Subpart F) Added 9394

Chapter II

201.11 Heading, (a)(1), (2), and (5), and (b) through (f) removed; (a)(3) and (4) redesignated as 201.17 (b)(2) and (4) 28253
201.17 (b)(2) and (4) redesignated from 201.11 (a)(3) and (4); (b)(7), (e)(2), (9)(vii), and (12), and (g) amended; (d)(2)(i) and (ii), (e)(14)(iii)(E), (h)(2) introductory text, and (3) introductory text revised; footnote 8, (h)(4)(iv), and (j)(5) removed 28253
202 Registration decision 23443
202.23 Revised 28822

Chapter III

304 Revised 49011
307.3 (a), (b) and (c) amended; (d) and (e) added; eff. 7–15–87 22637
(e)(2) correctly revised 23546
(d) and (e)(1) revised 41711

Chapter IV

401 Revised 8554

1988

37 CFR

53 FR Page

Chapter I

1.1 (g) added 16413
1.4 (a)(2) revised 47807
1.5 (a) and (b) revised 47807
1.14 (e) revised; eff. 9–12–88 23733
1.15 Revised 47686
1.53 (c) and (d) revised 47808
1.56 (e) revised 47808
1.71 (d) and (e) added 47808
1.81 Heading and (a) revised 47808
1.84 (a), (b) introductory text, (i), (j), and (l) revised; (b)(2) redesignated as (b)(3); new (b)(2), (n), (o), and (p) added 47809
1.85 Revised 47810
1.131 (a) and (b) revised; eff. 9–12–88 23734
1.152 Revised 47810
1.192 (a) revised; (c) and (d) added; eff. 9–12–88 23734
1.193 (b) revised; eff. 9–12–88 23735
1.194 (b) revised; eff. 9–12–88 23735
1.196 (b)(1) revised; eff. 9–12–88 23735
1.302 (c) added 16414
1.378 (b)(1) and (c)(1) revised 47810
1.421 (f) revised; (g) added 47810
1.480 (d) revised 47810
1.604 (a) revised; eff. 9–12–88 23735
1.607 (a) revised; eff. 9–12–88 23735
1.612 (a) revised; eff. 9–12–88 23735
1.637 (e)(1)(vi) revised; eff. 9–12–88 23735
1.662 (b) revised; eff. 9–12–88 23735
2.145 (b)(3) added 16414
5 Authority citation revised 23735
5.3 (b) revised; eff. 9–12–88 23736
10.6 (d) and (e) removed 38950
10.10 Revised 38950
(b)(1) and (2) corrected 41278
10.23 (c)(13) revised; (c)(19) and (29) added 38950
(c)(13) corrected 41278
10.157 (a) corrected 13120
150 (Subchapter C and part) Added; eff. 8–1–88 24447
100 Removed 39734

Chapter II

201 Policy decision 2493
Policy decision corrected 3118
201.4 (c)(1) revised; (c) introductory text republished 123
201.8 Removed 124
202.3 Registration decision 21817

37 CFR—Continued

53 FR Page

Chapter II —Continued
202.20 (c)(2)(ii) amended 29890
203.6 Revised 8456
Chapter III
304.5 (c)(1) through (4) revised 48535
Chapter V
Chapter V Chapter established 39735
501 Added 39735

1989

37 CFR

54 FR Page

Chapter I
1.1 (h) added 37588
1.8 (a)(2)(xiv), (xv), and (xvi) added 37588
1.12 (a) and (c) revised 6900
1.14 (e) revised 6900
1.16 (a), (b), (d) through (i), and note revised 6900
1.17 (a) through (h), and (j) through (m) revised; existing (i) redesignated as (i)(1) and revised; new (i)(2) added 6901
(g), (h), (l)(1), and (m) corrected 9431
(i)(1) revised 47518
1.18 Revised 6901
1.19 Revised 6901
(a)(1) corrected 9432
1.20 Revised 6902
(i) and (j) corrected 8053
1.21 Introductory text and (b) republished; (a), (b)(1), (d) through (j), (l), and (m) revised 6902
(b) corrected 8053
(e) corrected 9432
(d) and (g) corrected 34282
(n) added 47518
(o) through (q) added 50949
(o) corrected 51550
1.26 (c) revised 6902
1.53 (b) and (c) revised 47518
1.55 (a) revised 47518
1.60 (a) removed; (b) revised; new (c) added 47519
1.62 (e) revised; (j) added 47519
1.96 (b)(1) revised 47519
1.102 (d) revised 6903
1.103 (a) revised 6903
1.136 Revised 29551
(b) corrected 32637

37 CFR—Continued

54 FR Page

Chapter I —Continued
1.171 Revised 6903
Corrected 9432
1.177 Revised 6903
Corrected 9432
1.191 (b) and (d) revised; (e) added 29552
1.196 (a), (b) and (d) revised; (e) and (f) added 29552
1.197 (b) and (c) revised 29552
1.296 Revised 6903
1.301 Revised 29552
1.303 (c) revised 29553
(c) corrected 32637
1.304 Revised 29553
1.313 (a) revised 6903
(a) corrected 9432
1.314 Revised 6903
1.334 (c) revised 6903
1.445 (a) introductory text republished; (a)(2) and (3) revised 6903
Heading and (a) introductory text corrected; (a)(2)(iii) correctly redesignated as (a)(3) 9432
1.451 (b) revised 6903
1.482 (a) revised 6904
1.492 Introductory text and (a) republished; (a)(1) through (3); (b), (d) and (f) revised 6904
1.550 (c) revised 29553
1.645 (a) and (b) revised 29553
1.658 (b) revised 29553
1.666 (b) revised 6904
1.710 Revised 30379
1.720 (e)(2) and (f) revised; (e)(3) added 30380
1.740 (a)(4), (9), (10), and (13) revised 30380
1.741 (a)(2) and (5) revised 30380
1.765 (a) revised 30381
1.775 Heading and (a), (b), (c), and (d) introductory text revised 30381
1.778 Added 30381
1.779 Added 30382
1.785 (b) revised 30382
1.801—1.809 (Subpart G) Undesignated center heading and sections added 34880
2 Technical correction 51550
2.2 Added 37588
2.6 (a) and (q) revised 6904
Introductory text republished; (u) and (v) added 37588

37 CFR—Continued

54 FR Page

Chapter I —Continued
(x) added 50949
(w) added; eff. to 2–12–90 and suspended 50949
2.18 Revised 37588
2.21 (a)(5) and (6) revised 37588
2.24 Revised 37588
2.31 Revised 37589
2.33 (a)(1)(ix) redesignated as (a)(1)(x); Heading, (a)(1)(ii), (iv) through (viii), new (x), (2), (b), and (c) revised; new (a)(1)(ix) and (d) added 37589
2.38 (a) revised 37589
2.39 Revised 37589
2.41 Revised 37590
2.42 Revised 34897
2.44 Revised 37590
2.45 Revised 37590
2.47 Revised 37590
2.51 Revised 37590
2.52 (a), (d), and (e) revised 37591
(e) corrected 46231
2.53 Revised 37591
Corrected 46231
2.56 Revised 37591
2.57 Revised 37591
2.59 Added 37591
2.61 (a) and (c) revised 37592
2.64 (c) added 37592
2.65 (c) added 37592
2.66 Revised 37592
2.68 Revised 34897
2.69 Revised 37592
2.71 Revised 37592
2.72 Revised 37593
2.73 Revised 37593
2.75 Revised 37593
2.76 Added 37593
2.77 Added 37594
2.80 Undesignated center heading revised 37594
2.81 Existing text redesignated as (a); heading and new (a) revised; (b) added 37594
2.82 Revised 37594
2.83 (a) and (b) revised 37594
2.84 Revised 37594
2.86 Revised 37594
2.87 Revised 37595
2.88 Undesignated center heading and section added 37595
2.89 Added 37595
2.91 Heading revised 34897
2.92 Revised 34897
2.93 Revised 34897

37 CFR—Continued

54 FR Page

Chapter I —Continued
2.99 (g) revised; (h) added 37596
2.101 (b) revised 37596
2.104 Revised 34897
2.106 (b)(1) and (c) revised 34897
2.111 (b) revised 37596
2.112 (a) revised 34897
2.113 Revised 34897
Corrected 38041
2.114 (b)(1) and (c) revised 34898
2.119 Heading, (b), and (c) revised; (d) and (e) added 34898
(d) corrected 38041
2.120 (a), (d), (g), (j)(3), (4), (5), and (8) revised 34898
(j)(8) corrected 38041
2.121 (a)(1) revised 34899
2.122 (e) revised 34899
(e) corrected 38041
2.123 (c), (e)(2), and (g)(1) revised 34899
(e) correctly designated 38041
2.125 (a) revised 34900
2.127 (e) and (f) revised 34900
2.128 (b) revised 34900
2.129 (c) revised 29554
(a) revised 34900
(d) added 37597
2.133 Revised 37597
2.134 (a) revised 34900
2.135 Revised 34900
2.142 (f)(6) added; (b) and (e)(1) revised 34901
2.144 Revised 29554
2.145 (a), (c)(2) and (3), (d)(1), (2) and (3) revised; (e) added 29554
(c)(4) added 34901
2.161 Revised 37597
2.162 (e), (f) and (g) revised 37597
2.181 (a) revised 37597
2.186 Revised 34901
2.187 Revised 37597
10.101 (b) corrected 6520
10.155 (d) added; eff. 8–1–89 26026
10.156 (a) revised; (c) added 6660
10.157 (a) revised; eff. 8–1–89 26027
15 Added 3976
15a Added 3977

Chapter II
201.11 Added 27877
201.17 (i)(1) designation and (i)(2) added; eff. 7–1–89 14221
202.19 (c)(5) revised; (d)(2)(vii) added 42299
202 Appendix B added 42299

37 CFR—Continued

54 FR Page

Chapter II —Continued

202.3 (b)(3)(B)(ii) amended; (b)(4) added 13181
(b)(4)(i)(G) and (ii)(C) corrected 21059
202.20 (c)(2)(vii) introductory text and (A) revised; (c)(2)(vii)(B) redesignated as (c)(2)(vii)(D); new (c)(2)(vii)(B) and (C) added 13176
(c)(2)(vii)(B) revised 13181
(c)(2)(vii)(D) correctly designated and corrected 21059

Chapter III

301.1 (d) revised; (e) added 32811
301.4 (a) revised; eff. 7–6–89 24172
301.7 (b) revised 12615
301.14 (b) and (c) introductory text revised 12615
301.22 Revised 12615
301.44 Revised 12616
301.45 Redesignated as 301.51 12616
Added 12617
301.46 Removed 12616
Added 12617
301.47 Redesignated as 301.50 12616
Added 12617
301.48 Redesignated as 301.52 12616
Added 12617
301.49 Removed; new 301.49 redesignated from 301.51 12616
(e), (f), (g), (j), (k), (l) removed; (h) and (i) redesignated as (e) and (f) 12618
301.50 Redesignated as 301.55; new 301.50 redesignated from 301.47 12616
301.51 Redesignated as 301.49; new 301.51 redesignated from 301.45 12616
301.52 Removed 12616
Redesignated from 301.48 12617
301.53 Removed; new 301.53 redesignated from 301.54 12616
(d) removed 12618
301.54 Redesignated as 301.53; new 301.54 redesignated from 301.55 12616
301.55 Redesignated as 301.54 12616
New 301.55 redesignated from 301.50 12616
301.63 Revised 12618
301.64 Revised 12618
301.66 (a) revised 12618
301.70 Revised 32811
301.71 (c) added 32811

37 CFR—Continued

54 FR Page

Chapter III —Continued

301.74 (a) revised 12618
301.80—301.83 (Subpart H) Added 12618
302 Authority citation amended 12619
302.1 Amended 12619
302.2 Removed 12619
302.3 Removed 12619
302.6 Removed 12619
302.7 (a) and (b) introductory text revised 12619
302.8 Revised 12619
302.10 Amended 12619
304.5 (c)(1) through (4) revised 49977
305.2 Revised 12619
305.4 Revised 12619
307.3 Revised 46066
308.2 (a) and (b) amended 12619
Added 32811

1990

37 CFR

55 FR Page

Chapter I

1.16 Notice 46951
Heading, (a) through (d) and (f) through (j) revised; authority citation added; interim 49041
1.17 Notice 46951
Heading, (a) through (g), (l) and (m) and authority citation revised; interim 49041
1.18 Notice 46951
Revised; interim 49041
1.20 Notice 46951
Heading, (d), (h) through (j) and authority citation revised; interim 49042
1.821—1.825 Undesignated center heading and sections added 18245
1.801—1.825 (Subpart G) Appendix A added 18250
Appendix B added 18254
2.6 (w) suspension lifted; eff. 11–13–90 37468

Chapter II

201.11 (c)(3) revised 49998
201.17 (h)(1)(ii) and (2)(ii) revised 49999
202.3 (b)(5) and (6) redesignated as (b)(6) and (7); new (b)(5) added 50557

37 CFR—Continued

55 FR Page

Chapter II —Continued
202.4 Added 50001
202.20 (c)(2)(xvii) added 50557

Chapter III
301.1 Revised 28196
301.61 (b)(3) revised 28197
301.63 Revised 28197
304.5 (c)(1) through (4) revised 49616
306 Authority citation revised 28197
306.3 (e) added 28197
308 Authority citation revised 33613
308.2 (d)(1) and (2) revised 33613
(d) introductory text revised 48601

Chapter IV
Chapter IV Heading revised 38983
401 Authority citation revised 38983
404 Authority citation revised 38983

Chapter V
Chapter V Heading revised 38983
501 Authority citation revised 38983
501.3 (a) amended 38983

1991

37 CFR

56 FR Page

Chapter I
1.8 (a)(2)(xiv), (xv), and (xvi) CFR correction 14648
1.12 (a) and (d) revised 65151
(d) corrected 66670
1.13 (b) revised 65151
1.14 (d) revised 55461
1.16 Revised 65151
1.17 Revised 65152
1.18 Revised 65152
1.19 Revised 65152
1.20 Revised 65153
1.21 Revised 65153
1.24 Revised 65153
1.26 (c) revised 65153
1.171 Revised 65153
1.296 Revised 65153
1.362 (a), (b) and (e) revised 65154
1.378 (a), (b), (c)(1), (2) and (e) revised 65154
1.445 (a) revised 65154
1.482 (a) revised 65154
1.492 Revised 65154

37 CFR—Continued

56 FR Page

Chapter I —Continued
1.651 Revised 42529
(c)(3) corrected 46823
1.684 Revised 42529
(c)(3) corrected 46823
1.740 (a)(14) revised 65155
1.770 Revised 65155
2.6 Revised 65155
(a)(15), (b)(4) and (8) corrected 66670
2.120 (d)(1) revised 46379
(d)(1) corrected 54917
5 Authority citation revised 1928
5.11 (a) and (e) revised 1928
5.15 (a) through (c), (e) and (f) revised 1928
5.25 (a) revised 1929

Chapter II
201 Authority citation amended 7812, 7813
Technical correction 10660
Authority citation corrected 27197, 28959, 38341
201.4 (d) revised 59885
201.5 (c)(1) introductory text and footnote 2 amended 59885
201.6 (c) revised 7813
201.9 (b) revised 59885
201.10 (f)(2) revised 59885
201.11 (f) revised; (g)(3)(iv)(B) and (h)(1) amended 29589
201.12 (b) revised 59885
201.16 (a) revised 7815
201.17 (d)(2)(iii) and (k) removed; (j)(1)(ii) amended 7813
(i)(1) revised; (i)(2) and (j)(3)(iv)(B) amended 29589
201.18 (e)(1) and (3) amended 59885
201.19 (e)(4)(ii) amended 7813
(e)(7)(ii)(D) and (f)(7)(iii)(D) amended 59885
201.24 Added 7812
201.25 Added 38341
201.26 Added 50658
202 Authority citation amended 7813, 7815
202.3 (b)(1) introductory text, (i) and (2) introductory text amended; (b)(1)(v) added 7813
(b)(6)(i)(D) revised 7815
(b)(6)(i)(D) corrected 27197
(b)(4)(ii)(B), (6)(ii)(C) and (c)(2) amended 59885

37 CFR—Continued

56 FR Page

Chapter II —Continued
(b)(6)(ii)(C) and (c)(2) correctly designated; (b)(3)(ii), (6)(ii) introductory text and (C), and (c)(2) footnote 6 amended 65190
202.17 (e)(2)(ii) amended 59885
202.18 Added 65002
202.19 (c)(5) revised 47403
(f)(3) amended 59885
202.20 (c)(2)(vii) introductory text and (ix) revised; (c)(2)(viii) introductory text amended; (c)(2)(xix) added 47403
(c)(2)(xix) correctly designated 55632
(c)(1)(iv) revised 60065
(c)(2)(xvii) amended 65191
202.22 (c)(7) and (8) revised 7815
203.6 (b)(1) through (4) amended 59885
204.6 (a) amended 59886
211 Authority citation revised 7817
211.3 (a) revised 59886
211.4 (c) through (e) revised 7818
Technical correction 10660

Chapter III
301.2 Revised 2438
301.45 (a) revised 2438
302.7 (c) and (d) added 2438
302.8 Introductory text republished; (b) revised 2438
304.5 (c)(1) through (4) revised 60924
305 Authority citation revised 2438
305.1 Revised 2438
305.3 Introductory text republished, (d) and (e) added 2438
305.4 Introductory text republished; (b) revised 2438
307.3 Revised 56158
308.2 (d) introductory text revised 12122
309.3 Introductory text republished; (e) and (f) added 2438
309.4 Introductory text republished; (b) revised 2438

1992

37 CFR

57 FR Page

Chapter I
1.12 (a) and (d) revised 29641

37 CFR—Continued

57 FR Page

Chapter I —Continued
1.16 (a) through (d), (f) through (j) and note revised 38194
1.17 (i)(1) revised; (p) added 2033
(i)(1) revised 29642, 32439
(b) through (g), (j) and (m) through (o) revised 38194
1.18 Revised 38195
1.19 (b)(4), (f) and (h) revised 38195
1.20 (a), (c), (e), (f), (g) and (i) revised 38195
(i) revised; interim 56450
1.21 (a)(1), (5), (6), (b)(2), (3), (e) and (i) revised; (p) added and suspended 38195
(a)(6) corrected 40493
1.26 (a) and (c) revised 38195
1.28 (d)(2) revised 2033
1.32 Removed 29642
1.46 Revised 29642
1.48 (a) revised 56447
1.51 (b) revised 2033
1.52 (c) revised 2033
1.56 Revised 2034
1.60 (b) and (c) revised; (d) added 56447
1.63 (b)(3) and (d) revised 2034
1.67 (c) added 2034
1.97 Revised 2034
1.98 Revised 2035
1.99 Removed 2035
1.104 (e) revised 29642
1.175 (a)(7) revised 2035
1.193 (c) removed 2035
1.291 (a) and (c) revised 2035
1.313 (b) revised 2035
1.331—1.335 Undesignated center heading revised 29642
1.331 Removed 29642
1.332 Removed 29642
1.333 Removed 29642
1.334 Removed 29642
1.378 (a), (b) and (c) revised; interim 56450
1.445 (a) revised 38195
Corrected 40493
1.482 (a) introductory text, (1) and (2)(ii) revised 38196
1.492 (a)(1), (2), (3), (5) and (b) through (d) revised 38196
1.555 Revised 2036
2.6 (a)(1) and (b)(7) revised; (a)(19) added 38196
2.87 Revised 38196
(c) corrected 40493
2.185—2.187 Undesignated center heading removed 29642

37 CFR—Continued

57 FR Page

Chapter I —Continued
2.185 Removed 29642
2.186 Removed 29642
2.187 Removed 29642
3 Added 29642
10.23 (c)(10) and (11) revised 2036

Chapter II
201 Authority citation revised 3296, 55465
201.5 (b)(2)(iv) revised 60482
201.11 (h)(2) and (3) revised 61834
201.17 (k) added; eff. 1–1–94 3296
(i)(2)(i) and (ii) revised; (i)(2)(iii) added 61834
201.27 Added; interim 55465
202.1 (e) added 6202
202.3 (b)(6) and (7) redesignated as (b)(7) and (8); new (b)(6) added 39616
202.11 Added 45310
202.17 Revised 60483
202.19 (b)(3) revised; (b)(4) removed; (d)(2)(viii) added 45310
202.20 (b)(3) revised; (c)(2)(xviii) added 45310

Chapter III
304 Revised 60954
310 Added 19053
Technical correction 21152

1993

37 CFR

58 FR Page

Chapter I
1 Technical correction 64155
1.4 Heading revised; (d), (e) and (f) added 54501
1.5 (a) revised 54501
1.6 Revised 54501
(d)(3) corrected 64154
1.8 Revised 54502
(a)(2) introductory text corrected 64154
1.9 (d) revised 54508
1.13 Revised 54508
1.14 (b) revised 54509
1.17 (h) revised 38723
Corrected 45841
1.19 (a)(3) revised 38723
1.20 (i) revised 44280
1.28 (c) revised 54509
1.55 (a) revised 54509
1.71 (d) revised 38723
1.78 (a) revised 54509
1.84 Revised 38723

37 CFR—Continued

58 FR Page

Chapter I —Continued
(b)(1)(ii) corrected 45841
(g)(3) and (h)(2) corrected 45842
1.88 Removed 38726
1.123 Revised 38726
1.136 (a) revised 54509
1.137 Revised 44280
1.152 Revised 38726
1.155 (b), (c) and (d) revised; (e) and (f) added 44280
1.165 Revised 38726
1.191 (d) revised 54510
1.192 (a), (c) introductory text and (d) revised 54510
1.193 (b) revised 54510
1.194 (b) revised 54510
1.196 (f) revised 54510
1.197 (b) revised 54510
1.304 (a) and (c) revised 54502
1.312 (b) revised 54510
1.316 (b), (c) and (d) revised; (e) and (f) added 44281
1.317 Revised 44281
1.321 Revised 54510
1.352 (a) revised 54511
1.362 (c)(4) and (e) revised; (h) added 54511
1.366 (b) revised 54503
1.378 (a), (b), (c) and (e) revised 44282
1.431 (b)(1) through (3)(ii), (c) and (d) revised; (e) removed 4344
1.432 Revised 4344
1.434 (a) revised 4345
1.445 (a)(4) added 4345
1.446 (d) revised; (e) added 4345
1.451 (a) revised 4345
1.455 (a) revised 4345
1.475 Revised 4345
1.476 (a) revised 4346
1.480 (b) revised 4346
1.482 (a)(2)(i) and (b) revised 4346
1.484 (b) revised 4346
1.485 Revised 4346
1.487 Removed 4346
1.488 (a) revised 4346
1.492 Introductory text and (e) revised 4346
1.494 (a) through (d) and (g) revised; (h) removed 4346
1.495 (a) through (e) and (h) revised; (i) removed 4347
1.499 Revised 4347
1.601 (q) added 49434
1.607 (a)(5)(i) revised 54511
1.637 (a) revised 49434

37 CFR—Continued

58 FR Page

Chapter I —Continued
1.639 (c) revised; (d) through (g) added 49434
1.655 (a) revised 49434
1.741 (a) revised 54503
1.821 (h) revised 4348
2 Technical correction 64154
2.145 (c)(3) and (d)(1) revised 54503
2.165 (a)(1) revised 54503
5 Technical correction 64155
5.19 (a) revised 54511
10 Technical correction 64154, 64155
10.9 (c) added 4348
10.18 Revised 54503
10.23 (c)(9) revised 54504
10.48 (b) revised 54511

Chapter II
201 Authority citation revised 9546
201.17 Regulation at 57 FR 3296 eff. date extended to 1–1–95 40363
(k) revised; eff. 1–1–95 45263
201.26 Revised 29107
201.28 Added; interim 9546
202.3 (b)(3)(ii), (7)(ii) introductory text, (ii)(C) and (c)(2) Footnote 6 amended 17778

Chapter III
Chapter III Nomenclature change; heading revised; interim 67691
301 Technical correction 8655
Heading revised; interim 67691
Authority citation revised 67691
301.1 (g) and (h) added; interim 6445
Regulation at 58 FR 6445 comment period established 13413
(g) and (h) revised 53825
301.2 Revised; interim 67691
301.3 Revised 5616
301.70 Revised; interim 6445
Regulation at 58 FR 6445 comment period established 13413
Revised 53825
301.71 (d) added; interim 6445
Regulation at 58 FR 6445 comment period established 13413
(d) revised 53826
301.72 (d) added; interim 6445
Regulation at 58 FR 6445 comment period established 13413
(d) revised 53826
302 Authority citation revised 67691

37 CFR—Continued

58 FR Page

Chapter III —Continued
303 Authority citation revised 67691
304 Authority citation revised 67691
304.5 (c)(1) through (4) revised 63294
304.7 (b)(2) table corrected 7051
(b)(1)(i) corrected 8820
304.8 (b)(1)(ii)(D) corrected 7051
305 Authority citation revised 67691
306 Authority citation revised 67691
307 Authority citation revised 67691
307.3 Revised 58283
(f) corrected 60787
308 Authority citation revised 67691
309 Authority citation revised 67691
310 Authority citation revised 67691
311 Added; interim 6445
Technical correction 8655
Regulation at 58 FR 6445 comment period established 13413
Revised 53826
Corrected 59658
Authority citation revised 67691

1994

37 CFR

59 FR Page

Chapter I
1 Technical correction 45757
1.16 (a), (b), (d) and (f) through (i) revised 43740
1.17 (b) through (g), (j) and (m) through (p) revised 43740
1.18 Revised 43741
1.20 (c), (e), (f), (g), (i)(1) and (j) revised 43741
1.21 (p) removed 43741
1.97 (c)(2) amended 32658
1.175 Corrected; CFR correction 18300
1.445 (a) revised 43741
1.482 (a)(1) and (2)(ii) revised 43741
1.492 (a)(1) through (5), (b) and (d) revised 43742
(a)(5) correctly revised 47082
2.6 (a)(1) revised 257

37 CFR—Continued

59 FR Page

Chapter II

201—211 (Subchapter A) Heading added; interim 23981
201 Authority citation revised..... 12164, 38371, 67635
201.6 (c) amended; interim..... 38371
201.11 Amended..... 67635
201.16 (a) and (b)(3)(iii) amended 33201
201.17 (a), (b)(2), (5), (h)(1)(i), (iii), (2)(i), (3)(iii)(A) and (9) amended 67635
(k) revised 67636
201.28 Revised; interim 4589
201.31 Added; interim 12164
(d)(2) revised; (d)(3) and (4) redesignated as (d)(6) and (7); new (d)(3), new (4) and (5) added 58789
201.32 Added; interim 38371
211.3 (a)(7) amended; interim..... 38372
251—259 (Subchapter B) Heading added; interim 23981
251 Added; interim 23981
251.2 (f) added..... 63040
251.3 (a) and (b) amended 63040
251.4 (a) and (b) amended 63040
251.11 (b) amended..... 63040
251.13 Introductory text revised..... 63040
251.14 (d) added 63040
251.22 (c) amended..... 63040
251.31 (d) revised 63040
251.32 (b) revised 63040
251.33 (b) revised 63040
(c) amended 63041
251.41 (b) revised 63041
251.43 (a) revised 63041
251.45 Heading, (a), (b) and (c) revised..... 63041
251.47 (l) amended 63041
251.51 Heading revised..... 63041
251.52 (c) amended..... 63041
251.53 (a) amended..... 63041
251.54 (a) and (c) amended..... 63042
251.60 Amended..... 63042
251.61 (d) added 63042
251.63 Revised 63042
251.64 Amended..... 63042
251.65 Revised 63042
251.72 Removed; new 251.72 redesignated from 251.73..... 63042
251.73 Redesignated as 251.72; new 251.73 redesignated from 251.74 63042
251.74 Redesignated as 251.73 63042

37 CFR—Continued

59 FR Page

Chapter II —Continued

252 Added; interim 23992
252.3 (a)(3) and (4) revised; (d) removed 63042
252.4 (a) and (e) revised 63042
253 Authority citation revised..... 23993
Redesignated from 304; heading revised; interim 23993
253.4 Introductory text amended; interim..... 23993
253.5 (c)(1), (2) and (3) revised..... 60901
253.8 (e) amended; interim..... 23993
253.9 Amended; interim 23993
253.10 Amended; interim 23993
Amended 63042
253.12 Removed; interim 23993
253.13 Removed; interim 23993
254 Authority citation revised..... 23993
Redesignated from 306; heading revised; interim 23993
254.1 Amended; interim 23993
255 Authority citation revised..... 23993
Redesignated from 307; heading revised; interim 23993
255.1 Amended; interim 23993
255.2 Amended; interim 23993
255.3 (g)(1) and (2) amended; interim 23993
Corrected..... 33201
256 Redesignated from 308; heading revised; interim 23993
257 Redesignated from 309 and revised; interim 23993
257.3 (a)(3) and (4) revised; (d) removed 63043
257.4 (a) and (e) revised 63043
258 Redesignated from 310; heading revised; interim 23994
258.1 Amended; interim 23994
258.2 Amended; interim 23994
259 Authority citation revised..... 23994
Redesignated from 311; heading revised; interim 23994
259.1 Amended; interim 23994
Corrected..... 33202
259.2 Amended; interim 23994
Corrected..... 33202
Stayed; eff. 12–7–94 through 2–28–95..... 63045
259.3 Amended; (c) revised; interim 23994

37 CFR—Continued

59 FR Page

Chapter II —Continued
Corrected....33202
(d) revised; (f) removed....63043
259.4 Amended; (e) added; interim....23995
Corrected....33202
259.5 Revised; interim....23995
(a) and (e) revised....63043
259.6 Revised; interim....23995

Chapter III
Chapter removed; interim....23995
301 Removed; interim....23981
302 Removed; interim....23992
303 Removed; interim....23993
304 Redesignated as 253; interim....23993
305 Removed; interim....23993
306 Redesignated as 254; interim....23993
307 Redesignated as 255; interim....23993
308 Redesignated as 256; interim....23993
309 Redesignated as 257; interim....23993
310 Redesignated as 258; interim....23994
311 Redesignated as 259; interim....23994

1995

37 CFR

60 FR Page

Chapter I
1 Authority citation revised....14518
Technical correction....16920, 27598, 36462, 44120
1.1 (i) added....20220
1.9 (a) revised....20220
1.11 (e) revised....14518
1.12 (c) revised....20221
1.14 (e) revised....20221
1.16 (a) through (g) revised; (k) and (l) added....20221
(a), (b), (d) and (f) through (i) revised....41022
1.17 (h) and (i) revised; (q), (r) and (s) added....20221
(b) through (g), (j), (m) through (p), (r) and (s) revised....41022
1.18 Revised....41022
1.19 (a)(1)(ii), (iii), (b)(1)(i) and (ii) revised....41022
1.20 (j) revised; eff. 7–11–95....25618

37 CFR—Continued

60 FR Page

Chapter I—Continued
(c), (e), (f), (g), (i)(1), (2) and (j) revised....41022
1.21 (l) revised....20222
(a)(1) revised....41022
1.28 (a) revised....20222
1.45 (c) revised....20222
1.48 Revised....20222
1.51 (a) and (b) revised....20222
1.53 Heading and (a) through (e) revised....20223
1.55 Revised....20224
1.59 Revised....20224
1.60 Heading and (b) revised....20224
1.62 (a) and (e) revised....20225
1.63 (a) revised....20225
1.67 (b) revised....20225
1.78 (a)(1) and (2) revised; (a)(3) and (4) added....20225
1.83 (a) and (c) revised....20226
1.97 (d) revised....20226
1.101 (a) revised....20226
1.102 (d) revised....20226
1.103 (a) revised....20226
1.129 Undesignated center heading and section added....20226
1.131 (a) revised....21044
1.137 (c) revised....20227
1.139 Added....20227
1.177 Revised....20227
1.192 (c)(1) through (7) redesignated as (c)(3) through (9); (a), (c) introductory text, new (7), new (8) introductory text, new (v) and (d) revised; new (c)(1) and new (2) added....14518
1.312 (b) revised....20227
1.313 (a) revised....20227
1.314 Revised....20227
1.316 (d) revised....20228
1.317 (d) removed....20228
1.412 (c)(6) added....21439
1.421 (a) revised....21440
1.445 (a)(5) added....21440
(a) revised....41023
1.482 (a)(1) and (2)(ii) revised....41023
1.492 (a), (b) and (d) revised....41023
1.601 (f), (g), (j) through (n) and (q) revised; (r) and (s) added....14519
1.602 (c) revised....14519
1.603 Revised....14519
1.604 (a)(1) revised....14519
1.605 (a) revised....14519
1.606 Revised....14520
1.607 (a)(4) revised; (a)(6) added....14520

37 CFR—Continued

60 FR Page

Chapter I—Continued

1.608 Revised 14520
1.609 (b)(1), (2) and (3) revised..... 14520
1.610 Revised 14520
1.611 (b), (c)(6), (7) and (d) revised; (c)(8) redesignated as (c)(9); new (c)(8) added 14521
1.612 (a) revised..... 14521
1.613 (c) and (d) revised 14521
1.614 (a) and (c) revised 14521
1.615 Revised 14521
1.616 Revised 14521
1.617 (a), (b), (d), (e), (g) and (h) revised 14522
1.618 (a) revised..... 14522
1.621 (b) revised..... 14522
1.622 (b) revised..... 14522
1.623 Heading and (a) introductory text revised 14522
1.624 Heading, (a) and (c) revised..... 14523
1.625 (a) introductory text revised..... 14523
1.626 Revised 14523
1.627 (b) revised..... 14523
1.628 Revised 14523
1.629 (a), (c)(1) and (d) revised..... 14523
1.630 Revised 14524
1.631 (a) revised..... 14524
1.632 Revised 14524
1.633 (a), (b), (f), (g) and (i) revised..... 14524
1.636 Revised 14524
1.637 (a), (b), (c)(1)(v), (vi), (2)(ii), (iii), (3)(ii), (4)(ii), (d) introductory text, (e)(1)(viii), (2)(vii), (f)(2) and (h)(4) revised; (c)(1)(vii), (e)(1)(ix) and (2)(viii) added; (c)(2)(iv), (3)(iii) and (d)(4) removed..... 14524
1.638 Revised 14525
1.639 (a), (b), (c) and (d)(1) revised..... 14525
1.640 (a), (b), (c), (d) introductory text, (1), (3) and (e) revised..... 14525
1.641 Revised 14526
1.642 Revised 14526
1.643 (b) revised..... 14527
1.644 (a) introductory text, (1), (2), (b), (c), (d), (f) and (g) revised..... 14527
1.645 (a), (b) and (d) revised 14527

37 CFR—Continued

60 FR Page

Chapter I—Continued

1.646 (c)(5) redesignated as (c)(6); (a)(1), (2), (b), (c) introductory text, (1), (4), new (6), (d) and (e) revised; new (c)(5) added..... 14527
1.647 Revised 14528
1.651 (a), (c)(1), (2), (3) and (d) revised..... 14528
1.652 Revised 14528
1.653 (a), (b), (c) introductory text, (1), (4), (d), (g) and (i) revised; (c)(5), (f) and (h) removed 14528
1.654 (a) and (d) revised..... 14529
1.655 Revised 14529
1.656 (b)(1) through (6) redesignated as (b)(3) through (8); (a), new (b)(5), new (6), (d), (e), (g), (h) and (i) revised; new (b)(1) and (2) added 14529
1.657 Revised 14530
1.658 (a) and (b) revised..... 14530
1.660 (e) added 14530
1.662 (a) and (b) revised..... 14530
1.664 Revised 14530
1.666 (b) revised..... 20228
1.671 (h) redesignated as (i); (a) introductory text, (c)(1), (2), (6), (7), (e), (f), (g) and new (i) revised; new (h) and (j) added..... 14530
1.672 Revised 14531
1.673 (a), (b) introductory text, (c), (d), (e) and (g) revised..... 14532
1.674 (a) revised..... 14533
1.675 (d) revised..... 14533
1.676 (a)(4) revised..... 14533
1.677 Revised 14533
1.678 Revised 14533
1.679 Revised 14533
1.682 Revised 14533
1.683 Revised 14534
1.684 Removed 14534
1.685 (d) and (e) revised 14534
1.687 (c) revised..... 14535
1.688 Revised 14535
1.690 (a), (b) and (c) revised 14535
1.701 Added 20228
1.750 Revised; eff. 7–11–95..... 25618
1.760 Heading revised; eff. 7–11–95..... 25618
1.765 (a) revised; eff. 7–11–95 25618
1.780 Revised; eff. 7–11–95..... 25618
1.785 Revised; eff. 7–11–95..... 25618

37 CFR—Continued

60 FR Page

Chapter I—Continued
1.790 Added; eff. 7–11–95 25619
1.791 Added; eff. 7–11–95 25619
2 Technical correction 44120
2.6 (b)(1)(ii), (iii), (2)(i) and (ii) revised 41023
3 Technical correction 36462
3.21 Revised 20228
3.81 (b) revised 20229
7 Technical correction 44120
7.1 Revised 41023
10.9 (c) revised 21440
10.155 (a) revised 64126

Chapter II
201 Authority citation revised 25998, 34168, 50420, 57937
Technical correction 28019
201.1 (b) amended 34168
201.5 (b)(2)(iv), (c)(1) and (iii) amended 34168
201.7 (c)(4)(ii) amended 34168
201.10 (d)(1) and (3) amended 34168
201.11 (f), (g)(3)(iii)(B), (v) and (vi) amended 34168
(c)(4) added; (g)(3)(i) amended; (g)(3)(iii) introductory text revised 57937
201.15 (c) amended 34168
201.16 Removed 34168
201.17 (b)(2)(A) and (B) redesignated as (b)(2)(i) and (ii); (c)(1), (g) introductory text, (h)(4)(iii) and (8) amended 34168
(c)(4) added; (j)(3)(i) amended; (j)(3)(iii) introductory text revised 57938
201.26 (b)(2) amended 34168
201.29 Added 25998
201.31 (a) amended 50420
201.33 Added 50420
202 Policy decision 21983
Authority citation revised 34168, 50422
202.2 (b)(1) amended 34168
202.3 (b)(3)(ii) amended; (b)(8) redesignated as (b)(9); new (b)(8) added; (c)(2) Footnote 6 revised 15875
(b)(5)(i)(D) amended 34168
202.10 (a) and (b) removed; (c) redesignated as (b); new (a) added 15606
202.12 Added 50422
202.18 Removed 34168
202.19 (b)(1)(ii), (iii)(B) and (e)(3) amended 34168

37 CFR—Continued

60 FR Page

Chapter II—Continued
202.20 (b)(2)(iii) amended 34168
202.22 (d)(6)(iii) amended 34168
202.23 (e)(1) and (2) amended 34168
202 Appendix A amended 34168
203 Authority citation revised 34168
203.3 Revised 34168
204 Authority citation revised 34169
204.4 (a) amended 34169
204.5 (a) amended 34169
204.7 (a) amended 34169
211.5 (a) amended 34169
211.6 (b)(1) amended 34169
251.13 (f) amended 8197
251.32 (a) amended 8197
251.33 (c) amended 8197
251.38 (b) amended 8197
251.44 (e)(1) and (g) amended 8197
251.48 (f)(1)(ii) revised 8197
251.50 Amended 8197
251.52 (c) amended; (d) added 8197
251.72 Corrected 8199
252.1 Amended 8198
253.5 (c)(1), (2) and (3) revised 61655
253.6 (c)(4) amended 8198
254.2 Revised 8198
255.1 Revised 61657
255.3 (f) and (g) redesignated as (g) and (h); (a) through (e) and new (g) amended; new (f) added 8198
(h)(2) and (3) amended 34169
Revised 55459
255.4 Added 61657
255.5 Added 61657
256.1 Amended 8198
259.1 Amended 8198
259.2 (a) and (b) amended 8198
Revised 61660
259.3 (a) amended 8198
(d) corrected 8199
259.4 (a) and (b) amended 8198

Chapter IV
401.2 (j) revised; (k) through (m) added; interim 41812
401.5 (f)(2) revised; interim 41812
401.13 (c)(2) revised; interim 41812
401.16 Redesignated as 401.17; new 401.16 added; interim 41812
401.17 Redesignated from 401.16 and revised; interim 41812

1996

37 CFR

61 FR Page

Chapter I

1.1 Heading and (a) revised; (g) removed 56446
1.3 Revised 56446
1.5 (f) added 42802
(a) revised 56446
1.6 (a) revised 56447
1.8 (a)(1)(i)(A) and (2)(ii) revised 56447
1.9 (h) added 56447
1.10 Revised 56447
1.12 (c) added 42802
1.14 Heading, (a), (b) and (e) revised 42802
1.16 (a), (b), (d) and (f) through (i) revised; (m) added 39587
(m) corrected 43400
1.17 (b) through (g), (j), (m) through (p), (r) amd (s) revised 39587
1.18 Revised 39588
1.20 (c), (e), (f), (g), (i)(1), (2), (j)(1), (2) and (3) revised 39588
1.21 (a)(1), (3) and (6) revised 39588
(a)(1) corrected 43400
1.52 (a) and (b) revised 42803
1.54 (b) revised 42803
1.58 Heading and (c) revised; (b) removed 42803
1.62 (e) and (f) revised 42803
1.72 (b) revised 42803
1.75 (g) revised; (h) and (i) added 42803
1.77 Revised 42803
1.78 (a)(2) and (c) revised; (d) removed 42804
1.84 (c), (f), (g) and (x) revised 42804
1.96 Revised 42804
1.97 (a) through (d) revised 42805
1.107 (a) revised 42805
1.110 Revised 42805
1.130 Added 42805
1.131 (a) revised 42806
1.132 Revised 42806
1.154 Revised 42806
1.163 (c) and (d) added 42806
1.291 (a) and (b) revised 42806
1.292 (a) and (b) revised 42807
1.315 Revised 42807
1.321 (c) revised 42807
1.445 (a) revised 39588
1.482 (a)(1)(i), (ii) and (2)(ii) revised 39588
1.492 (a), (b) and (d) revised 39588

37 CFR—Continued

61 FR Page

Chapter I—Continued

1.497 Revised 42807
1.741 (a) revised 64028
2.7 Added 55223
2.53 Removed 55223
2.102 (c)(2) revised 36825
2.165 (a)(1) revised 56448
2.189 Undesignated center heading and section removed 55223
5.33 Revised 56448
10.23 (c)(9) revised 56448
15 Removed 42808
15a Removed 42808
101 Removed 40999
102 Removed 40999

Chapter II

201 Authority citation revised 30813
201 Comment period extension 49680
201.30 Added; interim 30813
251.1 Revised 63717
251.2 Revised 37215
251.3 (a) introductory text and (b) amended 63717
251.5 (c) amended 63717
251.32 (a) and (b)(2)(ii) revised; (d) amended 63717
251.43 (a) amended 63717
251.44 (a), (b), (e)(2), (f) and (g) revised 63717
251.45 (b)(1)(i) and (2)(i) revised 63718
251.58 (c) revised 37215
251.60 Amended 37215
251.61 (a) revised 37215
251.62 (a) amended 37216
251.63 (a) amended 37216, 63718
252.4 (e) revised 63718
253.5 (c)(1), (2) and (3) revised 60613
257.4 (e) revised 63718
259.2 (c) introductory text amended 63718
259.5 (e) revised 63718

Chapter V

501 Authority citation revised 40999
Heading revised; interim 40999
501.1 Revised; interim 40999
501.3 Revised; interim 40999
501.4 Revised; interim 40999
501.6 (a)(1) introductory text, (iii), (2), (3)(i) and (4)(i) revised; interim 40999

37 CFR—Continued

61 FR Page

Chapter V—Continued

501.7 (b) and (c) revised; interim 40999
501.8 (a) and (b) revised; (c) and (d) redesignated as (d) and (e); new (c) added; interim 41000
501.9 Revised; interim 41000
501.11 Added; interim 41000

1997

(Regulations published from January 1, 1997, through July 1, 1997)

37 CFR

62 FR Page

Chapter II

201 Authority citation revised 18710

37 CFR—Continued

62 FR Page

Chapter II—Continued

201.1 (a), (b), (c), and (d) amended 35420
201.2 (b)(5) amended 35421
201.5 (c)(2) amended 35421
201.17 (b)(1), (2) introductory text and (e)(2)(i) amended 18710
(h)(2)(iv) added 23362
202.3 (b)(2) amended 35421
202.20 (c)(2)(vii)(A)(*2*) and (c)(2)(vii)(D)(*1*) amended 35421
203.2 (a) amended 35421